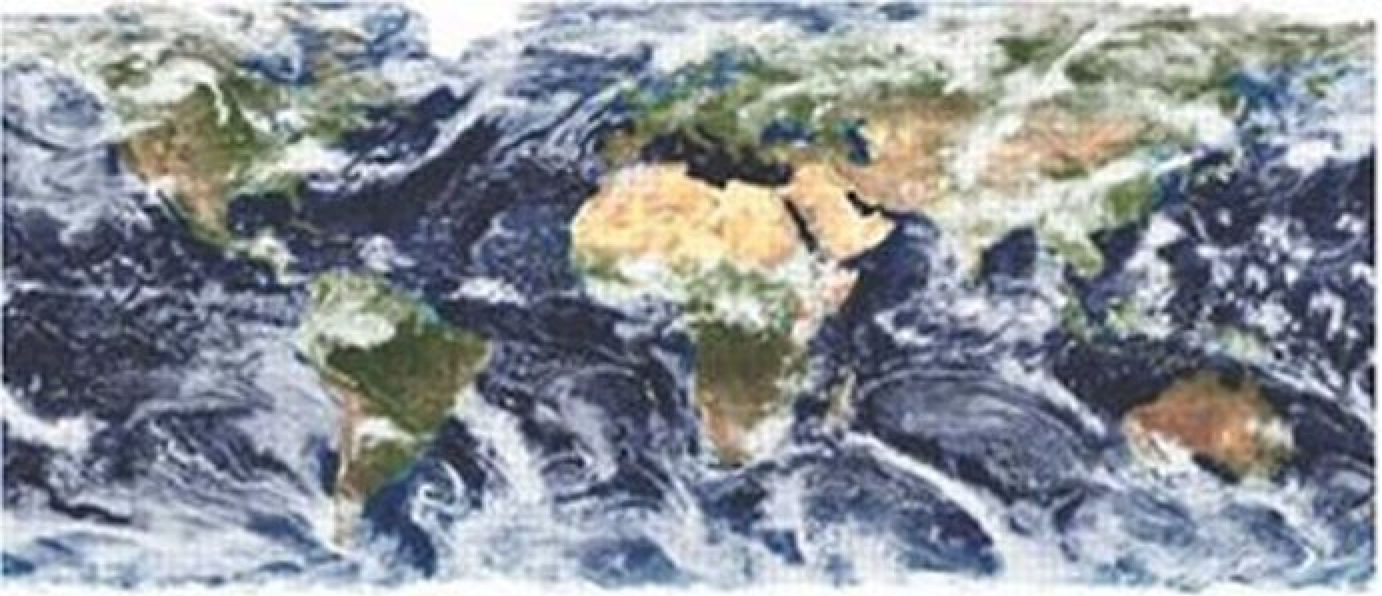
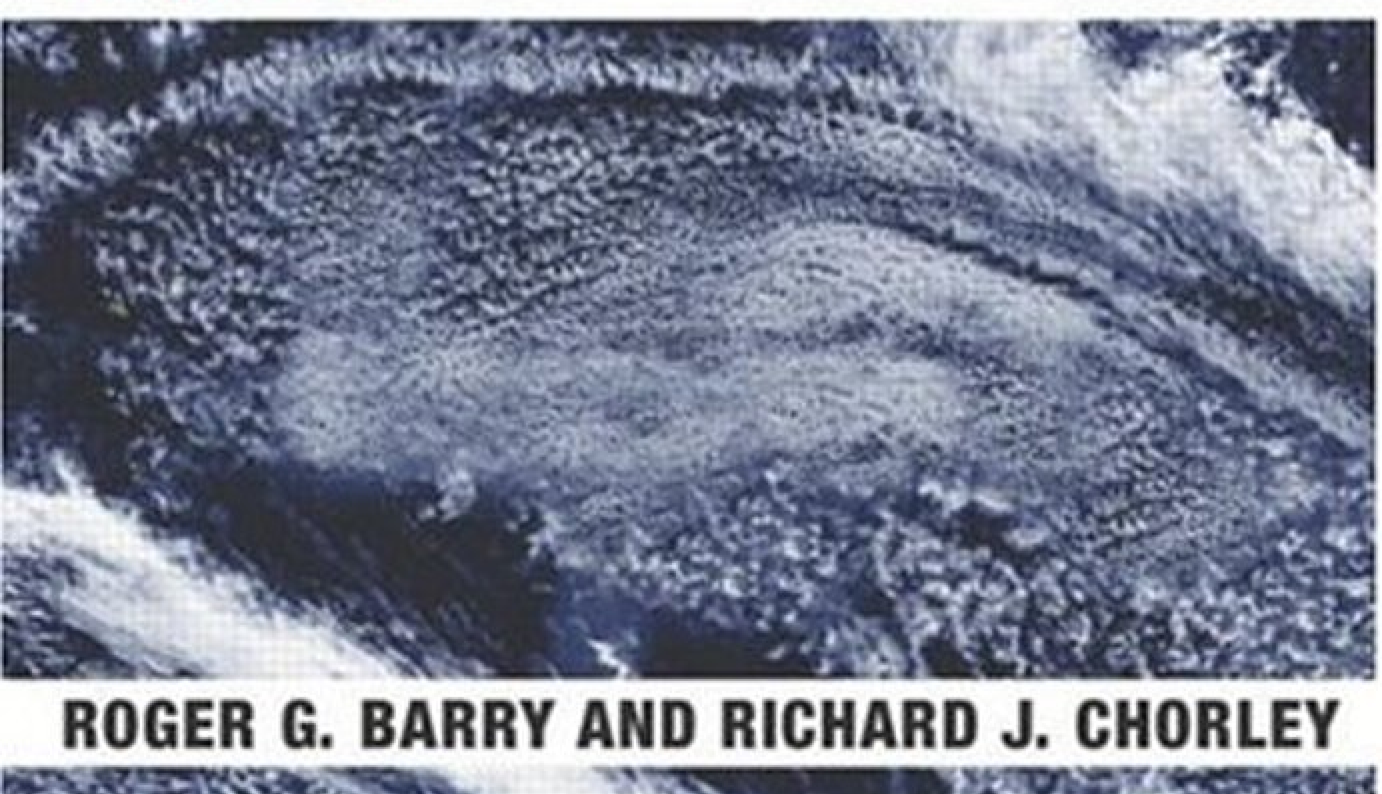


ATMOSPHERE, WEATHER AND CLIMATE

EIGHTH EDITION



ROGER G. BARRY AND RICHARD J. CHORLEY

VISIT…

LANZAROTE
Caliente.COM

Atmosphere, Weather and Climate

Atmosphere, Weather and Climate is the essential introduction to weather processes and climatic conditions around the world, their observed variability and changes, and projected future trends. Extensively revised and updated, this eighth edition retains its popular tried and tested structure while incorporating recent advances in the field. From clear explanations of the basic physical and chemical principles of the atmosphere, to descriptions of regional climates and their changes, *Atmosphere, Weather and Climate* presents a comprehensive coverage of global meteorology and climatology. In this new edition, the latest scientific ideas are expressed in a clear, non-mathematical manner.

New features include:

- new introductory chapter on the evolution and scope of meteorology and climatology
- new chapter on climatic models and climate system feedbacks
- updated analysis of atmospheric composition, weather and climate in middle latitudes, atmospheric and oceanic motion, tropical weather and climate, and small-scale climates
- chapter on climate variability and change has been completely updated to take account of the findings of the IPCC 2001 scientific assessment
- new more attractive and accessible text design
- new pedagogical features include: learning objectives at the beginning of each chapter and discussion points at their ending, and boxes on topical subjects and twentieth-century advances in the field.

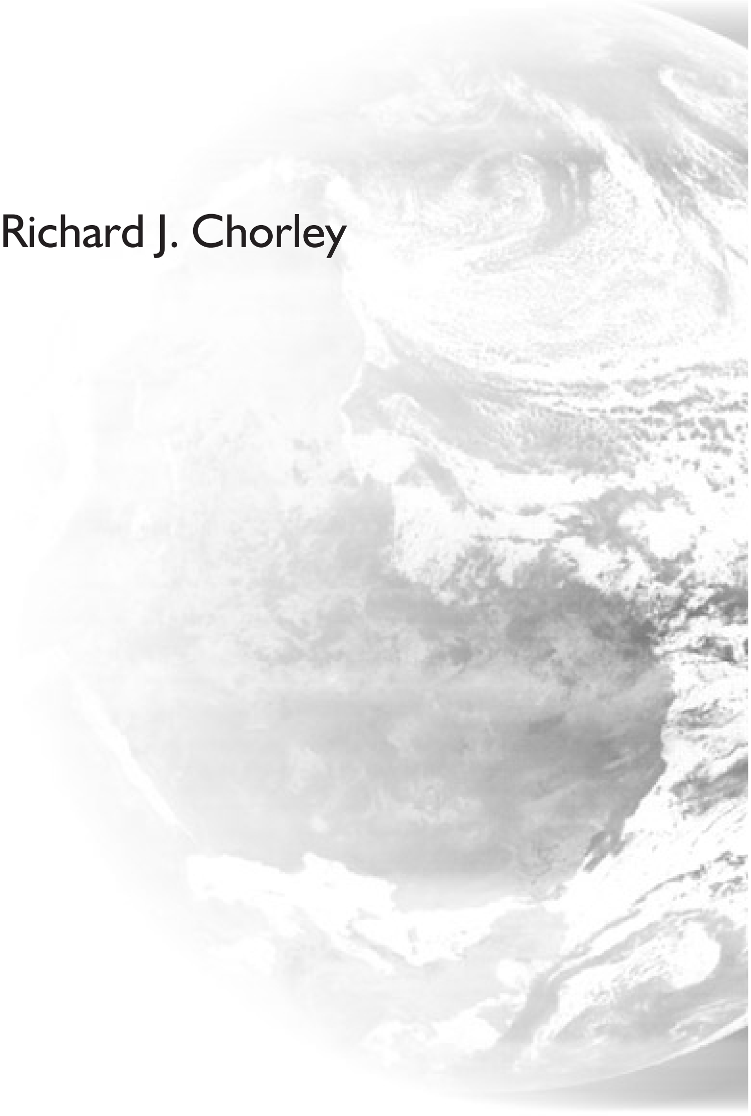
Roger G. Barry is Professor of Geography, University of Colorado at Boulder, Director of the World Data Center for Glaciology and a Fellow of the Cooperative Institute for Research in Environmental Sciences.

The late **Richard J. Chorley** was Professor of Geography at the University of Cambridge.

Atmosphere, Weather and Climate

EIGHTH EDITION

Roger G. Barry and Richard J. Chorley



Routledge
Taylor & Francis Group
LONDON AND NEW YORK

First published 1968 by Methuen & Co. Ltd
Second edition 1971
Third edition 1976
Fourth edition 1982
Fifth edition 1987
Reprinted by Routledge 1989, 1990
Sixth edition 1992
Reprinted 1995
Seventh edition 1998 by Routledge

Eighth edition 2003 by Routledge
11 New Fetter Lane, London EC4P 4EE

Simultaneously published in the USA and Canada
by Routledge
29 West 35th Street, New York, NY 10001

Routledge is an imprint of the Taylor & Francis Group

This edition published in the Taylor & Francis e-Library, 2004.

© 1968, 1971, 1976, 1982, 1987, 1992, 1998, 2003
Roger G. Barry and Richard J. Chorley

All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reprinted or reproduced or utilized in any form or by any electronic, mechanical, or other means, now known or hereafter invented, including photocopying and recording, or in any information storage or retrieval system, without permission in writing from the publishers.

British Library Cataloguing in Publication Data
A catalogue record for this book is available from the British Library

Library of Congress Cataloging in Publication Data
Barry, Roger Graham.
Atmosphere, weather, and climate / Roger G. Barry & Richard J. Chorley. – 8th ed.
p. cm.
Includes bibliographical references and index.
1. Meteorology. 2. Atmospheric physics. 3. Climatology.
I. Chorley, Richard J. II. Title
QC861.2.B36 2004
551.5–dc21 2003000832

ISBN 0-203-42823-4 Master e-book ISBN

ISBN 0-203-44051-X (Adobe eReader Format)
ISBN 0–415–27170–3 (hbk)
ISBN 0–415–27171–1 (pbk)

This edition is dedicated to my co-author Richard J. Chorley, with whom I first entered into collaboration on *Atmosphere, Weather and Climate* in 1966. He made numerous contributions, as always, to this eighth edition, notably Chapter 1 which he prepared as a new introduction. His many insights and ideas for the book and his enthusiasms over the years will be sadly missed.

Roger G. Barry
March 2003

Contents

Preface to the eighth edition xi
Acknowledgements xiii

1 Introduction and history of meteorology and climatology 1

- *A The atmosphere* 1
- *B Solar energy* 2
- *C Global circulation* 3
- *D Climatology* 3
- *E Mid-latitude disturbances* 4
- *F Tropical weather* 5
- *G Palaeoclimates* 6
- *H The global climate system* 6

2 Atmospheric composition, mass and structure 9

- *A Composition of the atmosphere* 9
  - 1 Primary gases 9
  - 2 Greenhouse gases 10
  - 3 Reactive gas species 10
  - 4 Aerosols 12
  - 5 Variations with height 13
  - 6 Variations with latitude and season 15
  - 7 Variations with time 16
- *B Mass of the atmosphere* 22
  - 1 Total pressure 22
  - 2 Vapour pressure 24
- *C The layering of the atmosphere* 25
  - 1 Troposphere 25
  - 2 Stratosphere 27
  - 3 Mesosphere 27
  - 4 Thermosphere 28
  - 5 Exosphere and magnetosphere 28

3 Solar radiation and the global energy budget 32

- *A Solar radiation* 32
  - 1 Solar output 32
  - 2 Distance from the sun 34
  - 3 Altitude of the sun 36
  - 4 Length of day 37
- *B Surface receipt of solar radiation and its effects* 37
  - 1 Energy transfer within the earth–atmosphere system 37
  - 2 Effect of the atmosphere 38
  - 3 Effect of cloud cover 39
  - 4 Effect of latitude 40
  - 5 Effect of land and sea 41
  - 6 Effect of elevation and aspect 48
  - 7 Variation of free-air temperature with height 48
- *C Terrestrial infra-red radiation and the greenhouse effect* 51
- *D Heat budget of the earth* 53
- *E Atmospheric energy and horizontal heat transport* 57
  - 1 The horizontal transport of heat 57
  - 2 Spatial pattern of the heat budget components 59

4 Atmospheric moisture budget 64

- *A The global hydrological cycle* 64
- *B Humidity* 66

1 Moisture content 66
2 Moisture transport 67

C Evaporation 69
D Condensation 73
E Precipitation characteristics and measurement 74
1 Forms of precipitation 74
2 Precipitation characteristics 75
  a Rainfall intensity 75
  b Areal extent of a rainstorm 76
  c Frequency of rainstorms 76
3 The world pattern of precipitation 79
4 Regional variations in the altitudinal maximum of precipitation 80
5 Drought 84

5 Atmospheric instability, cloud formation and precipitation processes 89

A Adiabatic temperature changes 89
B Condensation level 91
C Air stability and instability 91
D Cloud formation 95
1 Condensation nuclei 95
2 Cloud types 96
3 Global cloud cover 99

E Formation of precipitation 99
1 Bergeron–Findeisen theory 100
2 Coalescence theories 102
3 Solid precipitation 102

F Precipitation types 103
1 'Convective type' precipitation 103
2 'Cyclonic type' precipitation 103
3 Orographic precipitation 103

G Thunderstorms 106
1 Development 106
2 Cloud electrification and lightning 106

6 Atmospheric motion: principles 112

A Laws of horizontal motion 112
1 The pressure-gradient force 113
2 The earth's rotational deflective (Coriolis) force 113
3 The geostrophic wind 114
4 The centripetal acceleration 114
5 Frictional forces and the planetary boundary layer 116

B Divergence, vertical motion and vorticity 118
1 Divergence 118
2 Vertical motion 118
3 Vorticity 118

C Local winds 120
1 Mountain and valley winds 120
2 Land and sea breezes 121
3 Winds due to topographic barriers 122

7 Planetary-scale motions in the atmosphere and ocean 127

A Variation of pressure and wind velocity with height 127
1 The vertical variation of pressure systems 128
2 Mean upper-air patterns 129
3 Upper wind conditions 131
4 Surface pressure conditions 133

B The global wind belts 136
1 The trade winds 136
2 The equatorial westerlies 136
3 The mid-latitude (Ferrel) westerlies 139
4 The polar easterlies 139

C The general circulation 139
1 Circulations in the vertical and horizontal planes 142
2 Variations in the circulation of the northern hemisphere 146
  a Zonal index variations 146
  b North Atlantic Oscillation 147

D Ocean structure and circulation 149
1 Above the thermocline 149
  a Vertical 149
  b Horizontal 151
2 Deep ocean water interactions 155
  a Upwelling 155
  b Deep ocean circulation 155
3 The oceans and atmospheric regulation 158

8 Numerical models of the general circulation, climate and weather prediction 162
T.N. Chase and R.G. Barry

A Fundamentals of the GCM 162
B Model simulations 165
1 GCMs 165
2 Simpler models 166
3 Regional models 168

C Data sources for forecasting 168
D Numerical weather prediction 170
1 Short- and medium-range forecasting 170
2 'Nowcasting' 172
3 Long-range outlooks 172

9 Mid-latitude synoptic and mesoscale systems 177

A The airmass concept 177
B Nature of the source area 177
1 Cold airmasses 178
2 Warm airmasses 180

C Airmass modification 181
1 Mechanisms of modification 181
  a Thermodynamic changes *181*
  b Dynamic changes *182*
2 The results of modification: secondary airmasses 182
  a Cold air *182*
  b Warm air *182*
3 The age of the airmass 183

D Frontogenesis 183
1 Frontal waves 184
2 The frontal-wave depression 184

E Frontal characteristics 186
1 The warm front 187
2 The cold front 190
3 The occlusion 191
4 Frontal-wave families 191

F Zones of wave development and frontogenesis 193
G Surface/upper-air relationships and the formation of frontal cyclones 196
H Non-frontal depressions 199
1 The lee cyclone 199
2 The thermal low 199
3 Polar air depressions 201
4 The cold low 201

I Mesoscale convective systems 201

10 Weather and climate in middle and high latitudes 213

A Europe 213
1 Pressure and wind conditions 213
2 Oceanicity and continentality 215
3 British airflow patterns and their climatic characteristics 215
4 Singularities and natural seasons 220
5 Synoptic anomalies 221
6 Topographic effects 222

B North America 225
1 Pressure systems 226
2 The temperate west coast and Cordillera 229
3 Interior and eastern North America 231
  a Continental and oceanic influences *231*
  b Warm and cold spells *233*
  c Precipitation and the moisture balance *234*

C The subtropical margins 238
1 The semi-arid southwestern United States 238
2 The interior southeastern United States 241
3 The Mediterranean 241
4 North Africa 246
5 Australasia 247

D High latitudes 249
1 The southern westerlies 249
2 The sub-Arctic 252
3 The polar regions 253
  a The Arctic *253*
  b Antarctica *255*

11 Tropical weather and climate 262

A The intertropical convergence 263
B Tropical disturbances 265
1 Wave disturbances 266
2 Cyclones 269
  a Hurricanes and typhoons *269*
  b Other tropical disturbances *274*
3 Tropical cloud clusters 274

C The Asian monsoon 276
1 Winter 277
2 Spring 279
3 Early summer 280
4 Summer 281
5 Autumn 288

D East Asian and Australian summer monsoons 289
E Central and southern Africa 292
1 The African monsoon 292
2 Southern Africa 297

F Amazonia **299**
G El Niño–Southern Oscillation (ENSO) events **302**
1 The Pacific Ocean 302
2 Teleconnections 306

H Other sources of climatic variations in the tropics **309**
1 Cool ocean currents 309
2 Topographic effects 309
3 Diurnal variations 311

I Forecasting tropical weather **312**
1 Short- and extended-range forecasts 312
2 Long-range forecasts 313

12 Boundary layer climates 321

A Surface energy budgets **322**
B Non-vegetated natural surfaces **323**
1 Rock and sand 323
2 Water 324
3 Snow and ice 324

C Vegetated surfaces **325**
1 Short green crops 325
2 Forests 327
a Modification of energy transfers *328*
b Modification of airflow *329*
c Modification of the humidity environment *330*
d Modification of the thermal environment *332*

D Urban surfaces **333**
1 Modification of atmospheric composition 333
a Aerosols *334*
b Gases *337*
c Pollution distribution and impacts *338*
2 Modification of the heat budget 339
a Atmospheric composition *340*
b Urban surfaces *341*
c Human heat production *341*
d Heat islands *341*
3 Modification of surface characteristics 344
a Airflow *344*
b Moisture *345*
4 Tropical urban climates 346

13 Climate change 353

A General considerations **353**
B Climate forcings and feedbacks **354**
1 External forcing 356
2 Short-term forcing and feedback 358

C The climatic record **359**
1 The geological record 359
2 Late glacial and post-glacial conditions 361
3 The past 1000 years 362

D Possible causes of recent climatic change **368**
1 Circulation changes 368
2 Energy budgets 368
3 Anthropogenic factors 370

E Model strategies for the prediction of climate change **374**
F The IPCC models **376**
G Other environmental impacts of climate change **378**
1 Sea-level 378
2 Snow and ice 382
3 Hydrology 384
4 Vegetation 384

H Postscript **385**

APPENDICES

1 Climate classification 391
A Generic classifications related to plant growth or vegetation 391
B Energy and moisture budget classifications 392
C Genetic classifications 395
D Classifications of climatic comfort 396

2 Système International (SI) units 399
3 Synoptic weather maps 401

4 Data sources 404
A Daily weather maps and data 404
B Satellite data 404
C Climatic data 404
D Selected sources of information on the World Wide Web 405

Notes 406
Bibliography 409
Index 412

Black and white plates 1–19 are located between pp. 88–9 and plates 20–29 between pp. 111–12.
Colour plates A–H are between pp. 176–7.

Preface to the eighth edition

When the first edition of this book appeared in 1968, it was greeted as being ‘remarkably up to date’ (*Meteorological Magazine*). Since that time, several new editions have extended and sharpened its description and analysis of atmospheric processes and global climates. Indeed, succeeding prefaces provide a virtual commentary on recent advances in meteorology and climatology of relevance to students in these fields and to scholars in related disciplines. This revised and expanded eighth edition of *Atmosphere, Weather and Climate* will prove invaluable to all those studying the earth’s atmosphere and world climate, whether from environmental, atmospheric and earth sciences, geography, ecology, agriculture, hydrology or related disciplinary perspectives.

Atmosphere, Weather and Climate provides a comprehensive introduction to weather processes and climatic conditions. Since the last edition in 1998, we have added an introductory overview of the historical development of the field and its major components. Following this there is an extended treatment of atmospheric composition and energy, stressing the heat budget of the earth and the causes of the greenhouse effect. Then we turn to the manifestations and circulation of atmospheric moisture, including atmospheric stability and precipitation patterns in space and time. A consideration of atmospheric and oceanic motion on small to large scales leads on to a new chapter on modelling of the atmospheric circulation and climate, that also presents weather forecasting on different time scales. This was prepared by my colleague Dr Tom Chase of CIRES and Geography at the University of Colorado, Boulder. This is followed by a discussion of the structure of air masses, the development of frontal and non-frontal cyclones and of mesoscale convective systems in mid-latitudes. The treatment of weather and climate in temperate latitudes begins with studies of Europe and America, extending to the conditions of their subtropical and high-latitude margins and includes the Mediterranean, Australasia, North Africa, the southern westerlies, and the sub-arctic and polar regions. Tropical weather and climate are also described through an analysis of the climatic mechanisms of monsoon Asia, Africa, Australia and Amazonia, together with the tropical margins of Africa and Australia and the effects of ocean movement and the El Niño–Southern Oscillation and teleconnections. Small-scale climates – including urban climates – are considered from the perspective of energy budgets. The final chapter stresses the structure and operation of the atmosphere–earth–ocean system and the causes of its climate changes. Since the previous edition appeared in 1998, the pace of research on the climate system and attention to global climate change has accelerated. A discussion of the various modelling strategies adopted for the prediction of climate change is undertaken, relating in particular to the IPCC 1990 to 2000 models. A consideration of other environmental impacts of climate change is also included.

The new information age and wide use of the World Wide Web has led to significant changes in presentation. Apart from the two new chapters 1 and 8, new features include: learning points and discussion topics for each chapter, and boxes presenting a special topic or a summary of pivotal advances in twentieth-century meteorology and climatology. Throughout the book, some eighty new or redrawn figures, revised tables and new plates are presented. Wherever possible, the criticisms and suggestions of colleagues and reviewers have been taken into account in preparing this latest edition.

This new edition benefited greatly from the ideas and work of my long-time friend and co-author Professor Richard J. Chorley, who sadly did not live to see its completion; he passed away on 12 May 2002. He had planned to play a diminishing role in the eighth edition following his retirement several years earlier, but nevertheless he remained active and fully involved through March 2002 and prepared much of the new Chapter 1. His knowledge, enthusiasm and inspiration will be sorely missed.

R. G. BARRY
CIRES and Department of Geography,
University of Colorado, Boulder

Acknowledgements

We are very much indebted to: Mr A. J. Dunn for his considerable contribution to the first edition; the late Professor F. Kenneth Hare of the University of Toronto, Ontario, for his thorough and authoritative criticism of the preliminary text and his valuable suggestions; Alan Johnson, formerly of Barton Peveril School, Eastleigh, Hampshire, for helpful comments on Chapters 2 to 6 ; and to Dr C. Desmond Walshaw, formerly of the Cavendish Laboratory, Cambridge, and R. H. A. Stewart of the Nautical College, Pangbourne, for offering valuable criticisms and suggestions for the original text. Gratitude is also expressed to the following persons for their helpful comments with respect to the fourth edition: Dr Brian Knapp of Leighton Park School, Reading; Dr L. F. Musk of the University of Manchester; Dr A. H. Perry of University College, Swansea; Dr R. Reynolds of the University of Reading; and Dr P. Smithson of the University of Sheffield. Dr C. Ramage, a former member of the University of Hawaii and of CIRES, University of Colorado, Boulder, made numerous helpful suggestions on the revision of Chapter 11 for the fifth edition. Dr Z. Toth and Dr D. Gilman of the National Meteorological Center, Washington, DC, kindly helped in the updating of Chapter 8D and Dr M. Tolbert of the University of Colorado assisted with the environmental chemistry in the seventh edition and Dr N. Cox of Durham University contributed significantly to the improvement of the seventh edition. The authors accept complete responsibility for any remaining textual errors.

Most of the figures were prepared by the cartographic and photographic staffs in the Geography Departments at Cambridge University (Mr I. Agnew, Mr R. Blackmore, Mr R. Coe, Mr I. Gulley, Mrs S. Gutteridge, Miss L. Judge, Miss R. King, Mr C. Lewis, Mrs P. Lucas, Miss G. Seymour, Mr A. Shelley and Miss J. Wyatt and, especially, Mr M. Young); at Southampton University (Mr A. C. Clarke, Miss B. Manning and Mr R. Smith); and at the University of Colorado, Boulder (Mr T. Wiselogel). Every edition of this book, through the seventh, has been graced by the illustrative imagination and cartographic expertise of Mr M. Young of the Department of Geography, Cambridge University, to whom we owe a considerable debt of gratitude.

Thanks are also due to student assistants Jennifer Gerull, Matthew Applegate and Amara Frontczak, at the NSIDC, for word processing, assistance with figures and permission letters for the eighth edition.

Our grateful thanks go to our families for their constant encouragement and forbearance.

The authors wish to thank the following learned societies, editors, publishers, scientific organizations and individuals for permission to reproduce figures, tables and plates. Every effort has been made to trace the current copyright holders, but in view of the many changes in publishing companies we invite these bodies and individuals to inform us of any omissions, oversights or errors in this list.

Learned societies

American Association for the Advancement of Science for Figure 7.32 from *Science*.

American Meteorological Society for Figures 2.2, 3.21, 3.22, 3.26C, 5.11. 7.21, 9.16, 9.29, 10.34 and 13.8 from the *Bulletin*; for Figure 4.12 from *Journal of Hydrometeorology*; and for Figures 6.12, 6.13, 7.8,

7.25, 7.28, 8.1, 9.6, 9.10, 9.24, 11.5, 11.11 and 11.33 from the *Monthly Weather Review*; for Figure 7.28 from the *Journal of Physical Oceanography*; for Figures 9.2 and 9.4 from *Met. Monogr*. by H. Riehl *et al*.; for Figures 9.8 and 10.38 from the *Journal of Applied Meteorology*; for Figures 9.9, 9.15 and 9.17 from *Extratropical Cyclones* by C. W. Newton and E. D. Holopainen (eds); for Figures 9.34 and 11.54 from the *Journal of Atmospheric Sciences*; for Figures 10.24 and 13.20 from the *Journal of Climate* and for Figure 10.39 from *Arctic Meteorology and Climatology* by D. H. Bromwich and C. R. Stearns (eds).

American Geographical Society for Figure 2.16 from the *Geographical Review*.

American Geophysical Union for Figures 2.3, 2.11, 3.26A, 3.26B and 5.19 from the *Journal of Geophysical Research*; for Figures 3.13 and 13.3 from the *Review of Geophysics and Space Physics*; and for Figure 13.6 from *Geophysical Research Letters*.

American Planning Association for Figure 12.30 from the *Journal*.

Association of American Geographers for Figure 4.20 from the *Annals*.

Climatic Research Center, Norwich, UK, for Figure 10.15.

Geographical Association for Figure 10.4 from *Geography*.

Geographical Society of China for Figures 11.34 and 11.37.

Indian National Science Academy, New Delhi, for Figure 11.28.

International Glaciological Society for Figure 12.6.

Royal Society of Canada for Figure 3.15 from *Special Publication* 5.

Royal Society of London for Figure 9.27 from the *Proceedings, Section A*.

Royal Meteorological Society for Figures 4.7, 4.8, 5.9, 5.13, 5.14, 9.30, 10.5, 10.12, 11.55 and 12.20 from *Weather*; for Figures 5.16 and 10.9, from the *Journal of Climatology*; Royal Meteorological Society for Figures 9.12, 10.7, 10.8, 11.3 and 12.14 from the *Quarterly Journal*; for Figure 10.28; and for Figure 13.7 from *Weather*.

US National Academy of Sciences for Figures 13.4 and 13.5 from *Natural Climate Variability on Decade-to-Century Time Scales* by P. Grootes.

Editors

Advances in Space Research for Figures 3.8 and 5.12.

American Scientist for Figure 11.49.

Climatic Change for Figure 9.30.

Climate Monitor for Figure 13.13.

Climate–Vegetation Atlas of North America for Figures 10.19 and 10.23.

Erdkunde for Figures 11.21, 12.31 and A1.2B.

Endeavour for Figure 5.18.

Geografia Fisica e Dinamica Quaternaria for Figure 13.24.

International Journal of Climatology (John Wiley & Sons, Chichester) for Figures 4.16, 10.33 and A1.1.

Japanese Progress in Climatology for Figure 12.28.

Meteorologische Rundschau for Figure 12.9.

Meteorologiya Gidrologiya (Moscow) for Figure 11.17.

Meteorological Magazine for Figures 9.11 and 10.6.

Meteorological Monographs for Figures 9.2 and 9.4.

New Scientist for Figures 9.25 and 9.28

Science for Figure 7.32.

Tellus for Figures 10.10, 10.11 and 11.25.

Publishers

Academic Press, New York, for Figures 9.13, 9.14, and 11.10 from *Advances in Geophysics*; for Figure 9.31; and for Figure 11.15 from *Monsoon Meteorology* by C. S. Ramage.

Allen & Unwin, London, for Figures 3.14 and 3.16B from *Oceanography for Meteorologists* by the late H. V. Sverdrup.

Butterworth-Heinemann, Oxford, for Figure 7.27 from *Ocean Circulation* by G. Bearman.

Cambridge University Press for Figures 2.4 and 2.8 from *Climate Change: The IPCC Scientific Assessment 1992*; for Figure 5.8 from *Clouds, Rain and Rainmaking* by B. J. Mason; for Figure 7.7 from *World Weather and Climate* by D. Riley and L. Spolton; for Figure 8.2 from *Climate System Modelling* by K. E. Trenberth; for Figure 10.30 from *The Warm Desert Environment* by A. Goudie and J. Wilkinson; for Figure 11.52 from *Teleconnections Linking Worldwide Climate Anomalies* by M. H. Glantz *et al*. (eds); for Figure 12.21 from *Air: Composition and Chemistry* by P. Brimblecombe (ed.); and for Figures 13.10, 13.14, 13.16, 13.17, 13.18, 13.19, 13.21, 13.22 and 13.23.

Chapman and Hall for Figure 7.30 from *Elements of Dynamic Oceanography*; for Figure 10.40 from *Encyclopedia of Climatology* by J. Oliver and R. W. Fairbridge (eds); and for Figure 9.22 from *Weather Systems* by L. F. Musk.

The Controller, Her Majesty's Stationery Office (Crown Copyright Reserved) for Figure 4.3 from *Geophysical Memoirs* 102 by J. K. Bannon and L. P. Steele; for the tephigram base of Figure 5.1 from *RAFForm 2810*; and for Figure 7.33 from *Global Ocean Surface Temperature Atlas* by M. Bottomley *et al*.; for Figure 10.6 from the *Meteorological Magazine*; and for Figures 10.26 and 10.27 from *Weather in the Mediterranean* 1, 2nd edn (1962).

CRC Press, Florida, for Figure 3.6 from *Meteorology: Theoretical and Applied* by E. Hewson and R. Longley.

Elsevier, Amsterdam, for Figure 10.29 from *Climates of the World* by D. Martyn; for Figure 10.37 from *Climates of the Soviet Union* by P. E. Lydolph; for Figure 11.38 from *Palaeogeography, Palaeoclimatology, Palaeoecology*; for Figure 11.40 from *Quarternary Research*; and for Figures 11.46 and 11.47 from *Climates of Central and South America* by W. Schwerdtfeger (ed.).

Hutchinson, London, for Figure 12.27 from the *Climate of London* by T. J. Chandler; and for Figures 11.41 and 11.42 from *The Climatology of West Africa* by D. F. Hayward and J. S. Oguntoyinbo.

Institute of British Geographers for Figures 4.11 and 4.14 from the *Transactions*; and for Figure 4.21 from the *Atlas of Drought in Britain 1975–76* by J. C. Doornkamp and K. J. Gregory (eds).

Kluwer Academic Publishers, Dordrecht, Holland for Figure 2.1 from *Air–Sea Exchange of Gases and Particles* by P. S. Liss and W. G. N. Slinn (eds); and Figures 4.5 and 4.17 from *Variations in the Global Water Budget*, ed. A. Street-Perrott *et al*.

Longman, London, for Figure 7.17 from *Contemporary Climatology* by A. Henderson-Sellers and P. J. Robinson.

McGraw-Hill Book Company, New York, for Figures 4.9 and 5.17 from *Introduction to Meteorology* by S. Petterssen; and for Figure 7.23 from *Dynamical and Physical Meteorology* by G. J. Haltiner and F. L. Martin.

Methuen, London, for Figures 3.19, 4.19 and 11.44 from *Mountain Weather and Climate* by R. G. Barry; for Figures 4.1, 7.18 and 7.20 from *Models in Geography* by R. J. Chorley and P. Haggett (eds); for Figures 11.1 and 11.6 from *Tropical Meteorology* by H. Riehl; and for Figure 12.5.

North-Holland Publishing Company, Amsterdam, for Figure 4.18 from the *Journal of Hydrology*.

Plenum Publishing Corporation, New York, for Figure 10.35B from *The Geophysics of Sea Ice* by N. Untersteiner (ed.).

Princeton University Press for Figure 7.11 from *The Climate of Europe: Past, Present and Future* by H. Flöhn and R. Fantechi (eds).

D. Reidel, Dordrecht, for Figure 12.26 from *Interactions of Energy and Climate* by W. Bach, J. Pankrath and J. Williams (eds); for Figure 10.31 from *Climatic Change*.

Routledge, London, for Figure 11.51 from *Climate Since AD 1500* by R. S. Bradley and P. D. Jones (eds).

Scientific American Inc, New York, for Figure 2.12B by M. R. Rapino and S. Self; for Figure 3.2 by P. V. Foukal; and for Figure 3.25 by R. E. Newell.

Springer-Verlag, Heidelberg, for Figures 11.22 and 11.24.

Springer-Verlag, Vienna and New York, for Figure 6.10 from *Archiv für Meteorologie, Geophysik und Bioklimatologie*.

University of California Press, Berkeley, for Figure 11.7 from *Cloud Structure and Distributions over the Tropical Pacific Ocean* by J. S. Malkus and H. Riehl.

University of Chicago Press for Figures 3.1, 3.5, 3.20, 3.27, 4.4B, 4.5, 12.8 and 12.10 from *Physical Climatology* by W. D. Sellers.

Van Nostrand Reinhold Company, New York, for Figure 11.56 from *The Encyclopedia of Atmospheric Sciences and Astrogeology* by R. W. Fairbridge (ed.).

Walter De Gruyter, Berlin, for Figure 10.2 from *Allgemeine Klimageographie* by J. Blüthgen.

John Wiley, Chichester, for Figures 2.7 and 2.10 from *The Greenhouse Effect, Climatic Change, and Ecosystems* by G. Bolin *et al*.; for Figures 10.9, 11.30, 11.43 and A1.1 from the *Journal of Climatology*.

John Wiley, New York, for Figures 3.3C and 5.10 from *Introduction to Physical Geography* by A. N. Strahler; for Figure 3.6 from *Meteorology, Theoretical and Applied* by E. W. Hewson and R. W. Longley; for Figure 7.31 from *Ocean Science* by K. Stowe; for Figures 11.16, 11.28, 11.29, 11.32 and 11.34 from *Monsoons* by J. S. Fein and

P. L. Stephens (eds); and for Figure 11.30 from *International Journal of Climatology*.

The Wisconsin Press for Figure 10.20 from *The Earth's Problem Climates*.

Organizations

Deutscher Wetterdienst, Zentralamt, Offenbach am Main, for Figure 11.27.

National Academy of Sciences, Washington, DC, for Figure 13.4.

National Aeronautics and Space Administration (NASA) for Figures 2.15 and 7.26.

Natural Environmental Research Council for Figure 2.6 from *Our Future World* and for Figure 4.4A from *NERC News, July 1993* by K. A. Browning.

New Zealand Alpine Club for Figure 5.15.

New Zealand Meteorological Service, Wellington, New Zealand, for Figures 11.26 and 11.57 from the *Proceedings of the Symposium on Tropical Meteorology* by J. W. Hutchings (ed.).

Nigerian Meteorological Service for Figure 11.39 from *Technical Note 5*.

NOAA-CIRES Climate Diagnostics Center for Figures 7.3, 7.4, 7.9, 7.10, 7.12, 7.15, 8.6, 8.7, 8.8, 9.32 and 13.9.

Quartermaster Research and Engineering Command, Natick, MA., for Figure 10.17 by J. N. Rayner.

Risø National Laboratory, Roskilde, Denmark, for Figures 6.14 and 10.1 from *European Wind Atlas* by I. Troen and E. L. Petersen.

Smithsonian Institution, Washington, DC, for Figure 2.12A.

United Nations Food and Agriculture Organization, Rome, for Figure 12.17 from *Forest Influences*.

United States Department of Agriculture, Washington, DC, for Figure 12.16 from *Climate and Man*.

United States Department of Commerce for Figure 10.13.

United States Department of Energy, Washington, DC, for Figure 3.12.

United States Environmental Data Service for Figure 4.10.

United States Geological Survey, Washington, DC, for Figures 10.19, 10.21 and 10.23, mostly from *Circular 1120-A*.

University of Tokyo for Figure 11.35 from *Bulletin of the Department of Geography*.

World Meteorological Organization for Figure 3.24 from *GARP Publications Series, Rept No. 16*; for Figure 7.22; for Figure 11.50 from *The Global Climate System 1982–84*; and for Figure 13.1 from WMO Publication No. 537 by F. K. Hare.

Individuals

Dr R. M. Banta for Figure 6.12.

Dr R. P. Beckinsale, of Oxford University, for suggested modification to Figure 9.7.

Dr B. Bolin, of the University of Stockholm, for Figure 2.7.

Prof. R. A. Bryson for Figure 10.15.

The late Prof. M. I. Budyko for Figure 4.6.

Dr G. C. Evans, of the University of Cambridge, for Figure 12.18.

The late Prof. H. Flohn, of the University of Bonn, for Figures 7.14 and 11.14.

Prof. S. Gregory, of the University of Sheffield, for Figures 11.13 and 11.53.

Dr J. Houghton, formerly of the Meteorological Office, Bracknell, for Figure 2.8 from *Climate Change 1992*.

Dr R. A. Houze, of the University of Washington, for Figures 9.13 and 11.12.

Dr V. E. Kousky, of São Paulo, for Figure 11.48.

Dr Y. Kurihara, of Princeton University, for Figure 11.10.

Dr J. Maley, of the Université des Sciences et des Techniques du Languedoc, for Figure 11.40.

Dr Yale Mintz, of the University of California, for Figure 7.17.

Dr L. F. Musk, of the University of Manchester, for Figures 9.22 and 11.9.

Dr T. R. Oke, of the University of British Columbia, for Figures 6.11, 12.2, 12.3, 12.5, 12.7, 12.15, 12.19, 12.22, 12.23, 12.24, 12.25 and 12.29.

Dr W. Palz for Figure 10.25.

Mr D. A. Richter, of Analysis and Forecast Division, National Meteorological Center, Washington, DC, for Figure 9.24.

Dr J. C. Sadler, of the University of Hawaii, for Figure 11.19.

The late Dr B. Saltzman, of Yale University, for Figure 8.4.

Dr Glenn E. Shaw, of the University of Alaska, for Figure 2.1A.

Dr W. G. N. Slinn for Figure 2.1B.

Dr A. N. Strahler, of Santa Barbara, California, for Figures 3.3C and 5.10.

Dr R. T. Watson, of NASA, Houston, for Figures 3.3C and 3.4.

1

Introduction and history of meteorology and climatology

Learning objectives
When you have read this chapter you will:

- ☐ Be familiar with key concepts in meteorology and climatology,
- ☐ Know how these fields of study evolved and the contributions of leading individuals.

A THE ATMOSPHERE

The atmosphere, vital to terrestrial life, envelops the earth to a thickness of only 1 per cent of the earth's radius. It had evolved to its present form and composition at least 400 million years ago by which time a considerable vegetation cover had developed on land. At its base, the atmosphere rests on the ocean surface which, at present, covers some 70 per cent of the surface of the globe. Although air and water share somewhat similar physical properties, they differ in one important respect – air is compressible, water incompressible. Study of the atmosphere has a long history involving both observations and theory. Scientific measurements became possible only with the invention of appropriate instruments; most had a long and complex evolution. A thermometer was invented by Galileo in the early 1600s, but accurate liquid-in-glass thermometers with calibrated scales were not available until the early 1700s (Fahrenheit), or the 1740s (Celsius). In 1643 Torricelli demonstrated that the weight of the atmosphere would support a 10 m column of water or a 760 mm column of liquid mercury. Pascal used a barometer of Torricelli to show that pressure decreases with altitude, by taking one up the Puy de Dôme in France. This paved the way for Boyle (1660) to demonstrate the compressibility of air by propounding his law that volume is inversely proportional to pressure. It was not until 1802 that Charles showed that air volume is directly proportional to its temperature. By the end of the nineteenth century the four major constituents of the dry atmosphere (nitrogen 78.08 per cent, oxygen 20.98 per cent, argon 0.93 per cent and carbon dioxide 0.035 per cent) had been identified. In the twentieth century it became apparent that CO_2, produced mainly by plant and animal respiration and since the Industrial Revolution by the breakdown of mineral carbon, had changed greatly in recent historic times, increasing by some 25 per cent since 1800 and by fully 7 per cent since 1950.

The hair hygrograph, designed to measure relative humidity, was only invented in 1780 by de Saussure. Rainfall records exist from the late seventeenth century in England, although early measurements are described from India in the fourth century BC, Palestine about AD 100 and Korea in the 1440s. A cloud classification scheme was devised by Luke Howard in 1803, but was not fully developed and implemented in observational practice until the 1920s. Equally vital was the establishment of networks of observing stations, following a standardized set of procedures for observing the weather and its elements, and a rapid means of exchanging the data (the telegraph). These two developments went hand-in-hand in Europe and North America in the 1850s to 1860s.

The greater density of water, compared with that of air, gives water a higher specific heat. In other words, much more heat is required to raise the temperature of a cubic metre of water by 1°C than to raise the temperature of a similar volume of air by the same amount. In terms of understanding the operations of the coupled earth–atmosphere–ocean system, it is interesting to note that the top 10–15 cm of ocean waters contain as much heat as does the total atmosphere. Another important feature of the behaviour of air and water appears during the process of evaporation or condensation. As Black showed in 1760, during evaporation, heat energy of water is translated into kinetic energy of water vapour molecules (i.e. latent heat), whereas subsequent condensation in a cloud or as fog releases kinetic energy which returns as heat energy. The amount of water which can be stored in water vapour depends on the temperature of the air. This is why the condensation of warm moist tropical air releases large amounts of latent heat, increasing the instability of tropical air masses. This may be considered as part of the process of convection in which heated air expands, decreases in density and rises, perhaps resulting in precipitation, whereas cooling air contracts, increases in density and subsides.

The combined use of the barometer and thermometer allowed the vertical structure of the atmosphere to be investigated. A low-level temperature inversion was discovered in 1856 at a height of about 1 km on a mountain in Tenerife where temperature ceased to decrease with height. This so-called Trade Wind Inversion is found over the eastern subtropical oceans where subsiding dry high-pressure air overlies cool moist maritime air close to the ocean surface. Such inversions inhibit vertical (convective) air movements, and consequently form a lid to some atmospheric activity. The Trade Wind Inversion was shown in the 1920s to differ in elevation between some 500 m and 2 km in different parts of the Atlantic Ocean in the belt 30°N to 30°S. Around 1900 a more important continuous and widespread temperature inversion was revealed by balloon flights to exist at about 10 km at the equator and 8 km at high latitudes. This inversion level (the tropopause) was recognized to mark the top of the so-called troposphere within which most weather systems form and decay. By 1930 balloons equipped with an array of instruments to measure pressure, temperature and humidity, and report them back to earth by radio (radiosonde), were routinely investigating the atmosphere.

B SOLAR ENERGY

The exchanges of potential (thermal) and kinetic energy also take place on a large scale in the atmosphere as potential energy gradients produce thermally forced motion. Indeed, the differential heating of low and high latitudes is the mechanism which drives both atmospheric and oceanic circulations. About half of the energy from the sun entering the atmosphere as short-wave radiation (or 'insolation') reaches the earth's surface. The land or oceanic parts are variously heated and subsequently re-radiate this heat as long-wave thermal radiation. Although the increased heating of the tropical regions compared with the higher latitudes had long been apparent, it was not until 1830 that Schmidt calculated heat gains and losses for each latitude by incoming solar radiation and by outgoing re-radiation from the earth. This showed that equatorward of about latitudes 35° there is an excess of incoming over outgoing energy, while poleward of those latitudes there is a deficit. The result of the equator–pole thermal gradients is a poleward flow (or flux) of energy, interchangeably thermal and kinetic, reaching a maximum between latitudes 30° and 40°. It is this flux which ultimately powers the global scale movements of the atmosphere and of oceanic waters. The amount of solar energy being received and re-radiated from the earth's surface can be computed theoretically by mathematicians and astronomers. Following Schmidt, many such calculations were made, notably by Meech (1857), Wiener (1877), and Angot (1883) who calculated the amount of extraterrestrial insolation received at the outer limits of the atmosphere at all latitudes. Theoretical calculations of insolation in the past by Milankovitch (1920, 1930), and Simpson's (1928 to 1929) calculated values of the insolation balance over the earth's surface, were important contributions to understanding astronomic controls of climate. Nevertheless, the solar radiation received by the earth was only accurately determined by satellites in the 1990s.

C GLOBAL CIRCULATION

The first attempt to explain the global atmospheric circulation was based on a simple convectional concept. In 1686 Halley associated the easterly trade winds with low-level convergence on the equatorial belt of greatest heating (i.e. the thermal equator). These flows are compensated at high levels by return flows aloft. Poleward of these convectional regions, the air cools and subsides to feed the northeasterly and southeasterly trades at the surface. This simple mechanism, however, presented two significant problems – what mechanism produced high-pressure in the subtropics and what was responsible for the belts of dominantly westerly winds poleward of this high pressure zone? It is interesting to note that not until 1883 did Teisserenc de Bort produce the first global mean sea-level map showing the main zones of anticyclones and cyclones (i.e. high and low pressure). The climatic significance of Halley's work rests also in his thermal convectional theory for the origin of the Asiatic monsoon which was based on the differential thermal behaviour of land and sea; i.e. the land reflects more and stores less of the incoming solar radiation and therefore heats and cools faster. This heating causes continental pressures to be generally lower than oceanic ones in summer and higher in winter, causing seasonal wind reversals. The role of seasonal movements of the thermal equator in monsoon systems was only recognized much later. Some of the difficulties faced by Halley's simplistic large-scale circulation theory began to be addressed by Hadley in 1735. He was particularly concerned with the deflection of winds on a rotating globe, to the right (left) in the northern (southern) hemisphere. Like Halley, he advocated a thermal circulatory mechanism, but was perplexed by the existence of the westerlies. Following the mathematical analysis of moving bodies on a rotating earth by Coriolis (1831), Ferrel (1856) developed the first three-cell model of hemispherical atmospheric circulation by suggesting a mechanism for the production of high pressure in the subtropics (i.e. 35°N and S latitude). The tendency for cold upper air to subside in the subtropics, together with the increase in the deflective force applied by terrestrial rotation to upper air moving poleward above the Trade Wind Belt, would cause a build-up of air (and therefore of pressure) in the subtropics. Equatorward of these subtropical highs the thermally direct Hadley cells dominate the Trade Wind Belt but poleward of them air tends to flow towards higher latitudes at the surface. This airflow, increasingly deflected with latitude, constitutes the westerly winds in both hemispheres. In the northern hemisphere, the highly variable northern margin of the westerlies is situated where the westerlies are undercut by polar air moving equatorward. This margin was compared with a battlefield front by Bergeron who, in 1922, termed it the Polar Front. Thus Ferrel's three cells consisted of two thermally direct Hadley cells (where warm air rises and cool air sinks), separated by a weak, indirect Ferrel cell in mid-latitudes. The relation between pressure distribution and wind speed and direction was demonstrated by Buys-Ballot in 1860.

D CLIMATOLOGY

During the nineteenth century it became possible to assemble a large body of global climatic data and to use it to make useful regional generalizations. In 1817 Alexander von Humboldt produced his valuable treatise on global temperatures containing a map of mean annual isotherms for the northern hemisphere but it was not until 1848 that Dove published the first world maps of monthly mean temperature. An early world map of precipitation was produced by Berghaus in 1845; in 1882 Loomis produced the first world map of precipitation employing mean annual isohyets; and in 1886 de Bort published the first world maps of annual and monthly cloudiness. These generalizations allowed, in the later decades of the century, attempts to be made to classify climates regionally. In the 1870s Wladimir Koeppen, a St Petersburg-trained biologist, began producing maps of climate based on plant geography, as did de Candolle (1875) and Drude (1887). In 1883 Hann's massive three-volume *Handbook of Climatology* appeared, which remained a standard until 1930–40 when the five-volume work of the same title by Koeppen and Geiger replaced it. At the end of the First World War Koeppen (1918) produced the first detailed classification of world climates based on terrestrial vegetation cover. This was followed by Thornthwaite's (1931–33) classification of climates employing evaporation and precipitation amounts, which he made more widely applicable in 1948 by the use of the theoretical concept of potential evapo-transpiration. The inter-war period was particularly notable for the appearance of a number of climatic ideas which were not brought to fruition until the 1950s. These included the use of frequencies of various weather types (Federov, 1921), the concepts of variability of temperature and rainfall (Gorczynski, 1942, 1945) and microclimatology (Geiger, 1927).

Despite the problems of obtaining detailed measurements over the large ocean areas, the later nineteenth century saw much climatic research which was concerned with pressure and wind distributions. In 1868 Buchan produced the first world maps of monthly mean pressure; eight years later Coffin composed the first world wind charts for land and sea areas, and in 1883 Teisserenc de Bort produced the first mean global pressure maps showing the cyclonic and anticyclonic ‘centres of action’ on which the general circulation is based. In 1887 de Bort began producing maps of upper-air pressure distributions and in 1889 his world map of January mean pressures in the lowest 4 km of the atmosphere was particularly effective in depicting the great belt of the westerlies between 30° and 50° north latitudes.

E MID-LATITUDE DISTURBANCES

Theoretical ideas about the atmosphere and its weather systems evolved in part through the needs of nineteenth-century mariners for information about winds and storms, especially predictions of future behaviour. At low levels in the westerly belt (approximately 40° to 70° latitude) there is a complex pattern of moving high and low pressure systems, while between 6000 m and 20,000 m there is a coherent westerly airflow. Dove (1827 and 1828) and Fitz Roy (1863) supported the ‘opposing current’ theory of cyclone (i.e. depression) formation, where the energy for the systems was produced by converging airflow. Espy (1841) set out more clearly a convection theory of energy production in cyclones with the release of latent heat as the main source. In 1861, Jinman held that storms develop where opposing air currents form lines of confluence (later termed ‘fronts’). Ley (1878) gave a three-dimensial picture of a low-pressure system with a cold air wedge behind a sharp temperature discontinuity cutting into warmer air, and Abercromby (1883) described storm systems in terms of a pattern of closed isobars with typical associated weather types. By this time, although the energetics were far from clear, a picture was emerging of mid-latitude storms being generated by the mixing of warm tropical and cool polar air as a fundamental result of the latitudinal gradients created by the patterns of incoming solar radiation and of outgoing terrestrial radiation. Towards the end of the nineteenth century two important European research groups were dealing with storm formation: the Vienna group under Margules, including Exner and Schmidt; and the Swedish group led by Vilhelm Bjerknes. The former workers were concerned with the origins of cyclone kinetic energy which was thought to be due to differences in the potential energy of opposing air masses of different temperature. This was set forth in the work of Margules (1901), who showed that the potential energy of a typical depression is less than 10 per cent of the kinetic energy of its constituent winds. In Stockholm V. Bjerknes’ group concentrated on frontal development (Bjerknes, 1897, 1902) but its researches were particularly important during the period 1917 to 1929 after J. Bjerknes moved to Bergen and worked with Bergeron. In 1918 the warm front was identified, the occlusion process was described in 1919, and the full Polar Front Theory of cyclone development was presented in 1922 (J. Bjerknes and Solberg). After about 1930, meteorological research concentrated increasingly on the importance of mid- and upper-tropospheric influences for global weather phenomena. This was led by Sir Napier Shaw in Britain and by Rossby, with Namias and others, in the USA. The airflow in the 3–10 km high layer of the polar vortex of the northern hemisphere westerlies was shown to form large-scale horizontal (Rossby) waves due to terrestrial rotation, the influence of which was simulated by rotation ‘dish pan’ experiments in the 1940s and 1950s. The number and amplitude of these waves appears to depend on the hemispheric energy gradient, or ‘index’. At times of high index, especially in winter, there may be as few as three Rossby waves of small amplitude giving a strong zonal (i.e. west to east) flow. A weaker hemispheric energy gradient (i.e. low index) is characterized by four to six Rossby waves of larger amplitude. As with most broad fluid-like flows in nature, the upper westerlies were shown by observations in the 1920s and 1930s, and particularly by aircraft observations in the Second World War, to possess narrow high-velocity threads, termed ‘jet streams’ by Seilkopf in 1939. The higher and more important jet streams approximately lie along the Rossby waves. The most important jet stream, located at 10 km, clearly affects surface weather by guiding the low pressure systems which tend to form beneath it. In addition, air subsiding beneath the jet streams strengthens the subtropical high pressure cells.

F TROPICAL WEATHER

The success in modelling the life cycle of the mid-latitude frontal depression, and its value as a forecasting tool, naturally led to attempts in the immediate pre-Second World War period to apply it to the atmospheric conditions which dominate the tropics (i.e. 30°N – 30°S), comprising half the surface area of the globe. This attempt was doomed largely to failure, as observations made during the air war in the Pacific soon demonstrated. This failure was due to the lack of frontal temperature discontinuities between air masses and the absence of a strong Coriolis effect and thus of Rossby-like waves. Tropical airmass discontinuities are based on moisture differences, and tropical weather results mainly from strong convectional features such as heat lows, tropical cyclones and the intertropical convergence zone (ITCZ). The huge instability of tropical airmasses means that even mild convergence in the trade winds gives rise to atmospheric waves travelling westward with characteristic weather patterns.

Above the Pacific and Atlantic Oceans the intertropical convergence zone is quasi-stationary with a latitudinal displacement annually of 5° or less, but elsewhere it varies between latitudes 17°S and 8°N in January and between 2°N and 27°N in July – i.e. during the southern and northern summer monsoon seasons, respectively. The seasonal movement of the ITCZ and the existence of other convective influences make the south and east Asian monsoon the most significant seasonal global weather phenomenon.

Investigations of weather conditions over the broad expanses of the tropical oceans were assisted by satellite observations after about 1960. Observations of waves in the tropical easterlies began in the Caribbean during the mid-1940s, but the structure of mesoscale cloud clusters and associated storms was recognized only in the 1970s. Satellite observations also proved very valuable in detecting the generation of hurricanes over the great expanses of the tropical oceans.

In the late 1940s and subsequently, most important work was conducted on the relations between the south Asian monsoon mechanism in relation to the westerly subtropical jet stream, the Himalayan mountain barrier and the displacement of the ITCZ. The very significant failure of the Indian summer monsoon in 1877 had led Blanford (1860) in India, Todd (1888) in Australia, and others, to seek correlations between Indian monsoon rainfall and other climatic phenomena such as the amount of Himalayan snowfall and the strength of the southern Indian Ocean high pressure centre. Such correlations were studied intensively by Sir Gilbert Walker and his co-workers in India between about 1909 and the late 1930s. In 1924 a major advance was made when Walker identified the 'Southern Oscillation' – an east–west seesaw of atmospheric pressure and resulting rainfall (i.e. negative correlation) between Indonesia and the eastern Pacific. Other north–south climatic oscillations were identified in the North Atlantic (Azores vs. Iceland) and the North Pacific (Alaska vs. Hawaii). In the phase of the Southern Oscillation when there is high pressure over the eastern Pacific, westward-flowing central Pacific surface water, with a consequent upwelling of cold water, plankton-rich, off the coast of South America, are associated with ascending air, gives heavy summer rains over Indonesia. Periodically, weakening and breakup of the eastern Pacific high pressure cell leads to important consequences. The chief among these are subsiding air and drought over India and Indonesia and the removal of the mechanism of the cold coastal upwelling off the South American coast with the consequent failure of the fisheries there. The presence of warm coastal water is termed 'El Niño'. Although the central role played by lower latitude high pressure systems over the global circulations of atmosphere and oceans is well recognized, the cause of the east Pacific pressure change which gives rise to El Niño is not yet fully understood. There was a waning of interest in the Southern Oscillation and associated phenomena during the 1940s to mid-1960s, but the work of Berlage (1957), the increase in the number of Indian droughts during the period 1965 to 1990, and especially the strong El Niño which caused immense economic hardship in 1972, led to a revival of interest and research. One feature of this research has been the thorough study of the 'teleconnections' (correlations between climatic conditions in widely separated regions of the earth) pointed out by Walker.

G PALAEOCLIMATES

Prior to the mid-twentieth century thirty years of record was generally regarded as sufficient in order to define a given climate. By the 1960s the idea of a static climate was recognized as being untenable. New approaches to palaeoclimatology were developed in the 1960s to 1970s. The astronomical theory of climatic changes during the Pleistocene proposed by Croll (1867), and developed mathematically by Milankovitch, seemed to conflict with evidence for dated climate changes. However, in 1976, Hays, Imbrie and Shackleton recalculated Milankovitch's chronology using powerful new statistical techniques and showed that it correlated well with past temperature records, especially for ocean palaeotemperatures derived from isotopic ($^{18}O/^{16}O$) ratios in marine organisms.

H THE GLOBAL CLIMATE SYSTEM

Undoubtedly the most important outcome of work in the second half of the twentieth century was the recognition of the existence of the global climate system (see Box 1.1). The climate system involves not just the atmosphere elements, but the five major

box 1.1 **topical issue**

GLOBAL ATMOSPHERIC RESEARCH PROGRAMME (GARP) AND THE WORLD CLIMATE RESEARCH PROGRAMME (WCRP)

The idea of studying global climate through co-ordinated intensive programmes of observation emerged through the World Meteorological Organization (WMO: http://www.wmo.ch/) and the International Council on Science (ICSU: http://www.icsu.org) in the 1970s. Three 'streams' of activity were planned: a physical basis for long-range weather forecasting; interannual climate variability; and long-term climatic trends and climate sensitivity. Global meteorological observation became a major concern and this led to a series of observational programmes. The earliest was the Global Atmospheric Research Programme (GARP). This had a number of related but semi-independent components. One of the earliest was the GARP Atlantic Tropical Experiment (GATE) in the eastern North Atlantic, off West Africa, in 1974 to 1975. The objectives were to examine the structure of the trade wind inversion and to identify the conditions associated with the development of tropical disturbances. There was a series of monsoon experiments in West Africa and the Indian Ocean in the late 1970s to early 1980s and also an Alpine Experiment. The First GARP Global Experiment (FGGE), between November 1978 and March 1979, assembled global weather observations. Coupled with these observational programmes, there was also a co-ordinated effort to improve numerical modelling of global climate processes.

The World Climate Research Programme (WCRP: http://www.wmo.ch/web/wcrp/wcrp-home.html), established in 1980, is sponsored by the WMO, ICSU and the International Ocean Commission (IOC). The first major global effort was the World Ocean Circulation Experiment (WOCE) which provided detailed understanding of ocean currents and the global thermohaline circulation. This was followed in the 1980s by the Tropical Ocean Global Atmosphere (TOGA).

Current major WCRP projects are Climate Variability and Predictability (CLIVAR: http://www.clivar.org/), the Global Energy and Water Cycle Experiment (GEWEX), and Stratospheric Processes and their Role in Climate (SPARC). Under GEWEX are the International Satellite Cloud Climatology Project (ISCCP) and the International Land Surface Climatology Project (ISLSCP) which provide valuable datasets for analysis and model validation. A regional project on the Arctic Climate System (ACSYS) is nearing completion and a new related project on the Cryosphere and Climate (CliC: http://clic.npolar.no/) has been established.

Reference

Houghton, J. D. and Morel, P. (1984) The World Climate Research Programme. In J. D. Houghton (ed.) *The Global Climate*, Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, pp. 1–11.

subsystems: the atmosphere (the most unstable and rapidly changing); the ocean (very sluggish in terms of its thermal inertia and therefore important in regulating atmospheric variations); the snow and ice cover (the cryosphere); and the land surface with its vegetation cover (the lithosphere and biosphere). Physical, chemical and biological processes take place in and among these complex subsystems. The most important interaction takes place between the highly dynamic atmosphere, through which solar energy is input into the system, and the oceans which store and transport large amounts of energy (especially thermal), thereby acting as a regulator to more rapid atmospheric changes. A further complication is provided by the living matter of the biosphere. The terrestrial biosphere influences the incoming radiation and outgoing re-radiation and, through human transformation of the land cover, especially deforestation and agriculture, affects the atmospheric composition via greenhouse gases. In the oceans, marine biota play a major role in the dissolution and storage of CO_2. All subsystems are linked by fluxes of mass, heat and momentum into a very complex whole.

The driving mechanisms of climate change referred to as 'climate forcing' can be divided conveniently into external (astronomical effects on incoming short-wave solar radiation) and internal (e.g. alterations in the composition of the atmosphere which affect outgoing long-wave radiation). Direct solar radiation measurements have been made via satellites since about 1980, but the correlation between small changes in solar radiation and in the thermal economy of the global climate system is still unclear. However, observed increases in the greenhouse gas content of the atmosphere (0.1 per cent of which is composed of the trace gases carbon dioxide, methane, nitrous oxide and ozone), due to the recent intensification of a wide range of human activities, appear to have been very significant in increasing the proportion of terrestrial long-wave radiation trapped by the atmosphere, thereby raising its temperature. These changes, although small, appear to have had a significant thermal effect on the global climate system in the twentieth century. The imbalance between incoming solar radiation and outgoing terrestrial radiation is termed 'forcing'. Positive forcing implies a heating up of the system, and adjustments to such imbalance take place in a matter of months in the surface and tropospheric subsystems but are slower (centuries or longer) in the oceans. The major greenhouse gas is water vapour and the effect of changes in this, together with that of cloudiness, are as yet poorly understood.

The natural variability of the global climate system depends not only on the variations in external solar forcing but also on two features of the system itself – feedback and non-linear behaviour. Major feedbacks involve the role of snow and ice reflecting incoming solar radiation and atmospheric water vapour absorbing terrestrial re-radiation, and are positive in character. For example: the earth warms; atmospheric water vapour increases; this, in turn, increases the greenhouse effect; the result being that the earth warms further. Similar warming occurs as higher temperatures reduce snow and ice cover allowing the land or ocean to absorb more radiation. Clouds play a more complex role by reflecting solar (short-wave radiation) but also by trapping terrestrial outgoing radiation. Negative feedback, when the effect of change is damped down, is a much less important feature of the operation of the climate system, which partly explains the tendency to recent global warming. A further source of variability within the climate system stems from changes in atmospheric composition resulting from human action. These have to do with increases in the greenhouse gases, which lead to an increase in global temperatures, and increases in particulate matter (carbon and mineral dust, aerosols). Particulates, including volcanic aerosols, which enter the stratosphere, have a more complex influence on global climate. Some are responsible for heating the atmosphere and others for cooling it.

Recent attempts to understand the global climate system have been aided greatly by the development of numerical models of the atmosphere and of climate systems since the 1960s. These are essential to deal with non-linear processes (i.e. those which do not exhibit simple proportional relationships between cause and effect) and operate on many different timescales.

The first edition of this book appeared some thirty-five years ago, before many of the advances described in the latest editions were even conceived. However, our continuous aim in writing it is to provide a non-technical account of how the atmosphere works, thereby helping the understanding of both weather phenomena and global climates. As always, greater explanation inevitably results in an increase in the range of phenomena requiring explanation. That is our only excuse for the increased size of this eighth edition.

DISCUSSION TOPICS

- How have technological advances contributed to the evolution of meteorology and climatology?
- Consider the relative contributions of observation, theory and modelling to our knowledge of atmospheric processes.

FURTHER READING

Books

Allen, R., Lindsay, J. and Parker, D, (1996) *El Niño Southern Oscillations and Climatic Variability*, CSIRO, Australia, 405pp. [Modern account of ENSO and its global influences.]

Fleming, J. R. (ed.) (1998) *Historical Essays in Meteorology, 1919–1995*, American Meteorological Society, Boston, MA, 617 pp. [Valuable accounts of the evolution of meteorological observations, theory, and modelling and of climatology.]

Houghton, J. T. *et al*. eds (2001) *Climate Change 2001: The Scientific Basis; The Climate System: An Overview*, Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, 881pp. [Working Group I contribution to The Third Assessment Report of the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change (IPCC); a comprehensive assessment from observations and models of past, present and future climatic variability and change. It includes a technical summary and one for policy-makers.]

Peterssen, S. (1969) *Introduction to Meteorology* (3rd edn), McGraw Hill, New York, 333pp. [Classic introductory text, including world climates.]

Stringer, E. T. (1972) *Foundations of Climatology. An Introduction to Physical, Dynamic, Synoptic, and Geographical Climatology*, Freeman, San Francisco, 586pp. [Detailed and advanced survey with numerous references to key ideas; equations are in Appendices.]

Van Andel, T. H. (1994) *New Views on an Old Planet* (2nd edn), Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, 439pp. [Readable introduction to earth history and changes in the oceans, continents and climate.]

Articles

Browning, K. A. (1996) Current research in atmospheric sciences. *Weather* 51, 167–72.

Grahame, N. S. (2000) The development of meteorology over the last 150 years as illustrated by historical weather charts. *Weather* 55(4),108–16.

Hare, F. K. (1951) Climatic classification. In L. D. Stamp, L. D. and Wooldridge, S. W. (eds) *London Essays in Geography*, Longman, London, pp. 111–34.

2

Atmospheric composition, mass and structure

Learning objectives
When you have read this chapter you will:

- ☐ Be familiar with the composition of the atmosphere – its gases and other constituents,
- ☐ Understand how and why the distribution of trace gases and aerosols varies with height, latitude and time,
- ☐ Know how atmospheric pressure, density and water vapour pressure vary with altitude,
- ☐ Be familiar with the vertical layers of the atmosphere, their terminology and significance.

This chapter describes the composition of the atmosphere – its major gases and impurities, their vertical distribution, and variations through time. The various greenhouse gases and their significance are discussed. It also examines the vertical distribution of atmospheric mass and the structure of the atmosphere, particularly the vertical variation of temperature.

A COMPOSITION OF THE ATMOSPHERE

1 Primary gases

Air is a mechanical mixture of gases, not a chemical compound. Dry air, by volume, is more than 99 per cent composed of nitrogen and oxygen (Table 2.1). Rocket observations show that these gases are mixed in remarkably constant proportions up to about 100 km altitude. Yet, despite their predominance, these gases are of little climatic importance.

Table 2.1 Average composition of the dry atmosphere below 25 km.

Component	*Symbol*	*Volume % (dry air)*	*Molecular weight*
Nitrogen	N_2	78.08	28.02
Oxygen	O_2	20.95	32.00
*‡Argon	Ar	0.93	39.88
Carbon dioxide	CO_2	0.037	44.00
‡Neon	Ne	0.0018	20.18
*‡Helium	He	0.0005	4.00
†Ozone	O_3	0.00006	48.00
Hydrogen	H	0.00005	2.02
‡Krypton	Kr	0.0011	
‡Xenon	Xe	0.00009	
§Methane	CH_4	0.00017	

Notes: * Decay products of potassium and uranium.
† Recombination of oxygen.
‡ Inert gases.
§ At surface.

2 Greenhouse gases

In spite of their relative scarcity, the so-called *greenhouse gases* play a crucial role in the thermodynamics of the atmosphere. They trap radiation emitted by the earth, thereby producing the *greenhouse effect* (see Chapter 3C). Moreover, the concentrations of these trace gases are strongly affected by human (i.e. anthropogenic) activities:

1 Carbon dioxide (CO_2) is involved in a complex global cycle (see 2A.7). It is released from the earth's interior and produced by respiration of biota, soil microbia, fuel combustion and oceanic evaporation. Conversely, it is dissolved in the oceans and consumed by plant photosynthesis. The imbalance between emissions and uptake by the oceans and terrestrial biosphere leads to the net increase in the atmosphere.

2 Methane (CH_4) is produced primarily through anaerobic (i.e. oxygen-deficient) processes by natural wetlands and rice paddies (together about 40 per cent of the total), as well as by enteric fermentation in animals, by termites, through coal and oil extraction, biomass burning, and from landfills.

$$CO_2 + 4H_2 \rightarrow CH_4 + 2H_2O$$

Almost two-thirds of the total production is related to anthropogenic activity.

Methane is oxidized to CO_2 and H_2O by a complex photochemical reaction system.

$$CH_4 + O_2 + 2x \rightarrow CO_2 + 2x\,H_2$$

where x denotes any specific methane destroying species (e.g. H, OH, NO, Cl or Br).

3 Nitrous oxide (N_2O) is produced primarily by nitrogen fertilizers (50–75 per cent) and industrial processes. Other sources are transportation, biomass burning, cattle feed lots and biological mechanisms in the oceans and soils. It is destroyed by photochemical reactions in the stratosphere involving the production of nitrogen oxides (NO_x).

4 Ozone (O_3) is produced through the breakup of oxygen molecules in the upper atmosphere by solar ultraviolet radiation and is destroyed by reactions involving nitrogen oxides (NO_x) and chlorine (Cl) (the latter generated by CFCs, volcanic eruptions and vegetation burning) in the middle and upper stratosphere.

5 Chlorofluorocarbons (CFCs: chiefly $CFCl_3$ (F–12) and CF_2Cl_2 (F–12)) are entirely anthropogenically produced by aerosol propellants, refrigerator coolants (e.g. 'freon'), cleansers and air-conditioners, and were not present in the atmosphere until the 1930s. CFC molecules rise slowly into the stratosphere and then move poleward, being decomposed by photochemical processes into chlorine after an estimated average lifetime of some 65 to 130 years.

6 Hydrogenated halocarbons (HFCs and HCFCs) are also entirely anthropogenic gases. They have increased sharply in the atmosphere over the past few decades, following their use as substitutes for CFCs. Trichloroethane ($C_2H_3Cl_3$), for example, which is used in dry-cleaning and degreasing agents, increased fourfold in the 1980s and has a seven-year residence time in the atmosphere. They generally have lifetimes of a few years, but still have substantial greenhouse effects. The role of *halogens* of carbon (CFCs and HCFCs) in the destruction of ozone in the stratosphere is described below

7 Water vapour (H_2O), the primary greenhouse gas, is a vital atmospheric constituent. It averages about 1 per cent by volume but is very variable both in space and time, being involved in a complex global hydrological cycle (see Chapter 3).

3 Reactive gas species

In addition to the greenhouse gases, important *reactive gas species* are produced by the cycles of sulphur, nitrogen and chlorine. These play key roles in acid precipitation and in ozone destruction. Sources of these species are as follows:

Nitrogen species. The reactive species of nitrogen are nitric oxide (NO) and nitrogen dioxide (NO_2). NO_x refers to these and other odd nitrogen species with oxygen. Their primary significance is as a catalyst for tropospheric ozone formation. Fossil fuel combustion (approximately 40 per cent for transportation and 60 per cent for other energy uses) is the primary source of NO_x (mainly NO) accounting for ~25×10^9 kg N/year. Biomass burning and lightning activity are other important sources. NO_x emissions increased by some 200 per cent between 1940 and 1980. The total source of NO_x is about 40×10^9 kg N/year. About 25 per cent of this enters the stratosphere, where it undergoes photochemical dissociation. It is also removed as nitric acid (HNO_3) in snowfall. Odd nitrogen is also released as NH_x by ammonia oxidation in fertilizers and by domestic animals (6–10 × 10^9 kg N/year).

Sulphur species. Reactive species are sulphur dioxide (SO_2) and reduced sulphur (H_2S, DMS). Atmospheric sulphur is almost entirely anthropogenic in origin: 90 per cent from coal and oil combustion, and much of the remainder from copper smelting. The major sources are sulphur dioxide (80–100 × 10^9 kg S/year), hydrogen sulphide (H_2S) (20–40 × 10^9 g S/year) and dimethyl sulphide (DMS) (35–55 × 10^9 kg S/year). DMS is produced primarily by biological productivity near the ocean surface. SO_2 emissions increased by about 50 per cent between 1940 and 1980, but declined in the 1990s. Volcanic activity releases approximately 10_9 kg S/year as sulphur dioxide. Because the lifetime of SO_2 and H_2S in the atmosphere is only about one day, atmospheric sulphur occurs largely as carbonyl sulphur (COS), which has a lifetime of about one year. The conversion of H_2S gas to sulphur particles is an important source of atmospheric aerosols.

Despite its short lifetime, sulphur dioxide is readily transported over long distances. It is removed from the atmosphere when condensation nuclei of SO_2 are precipitated as acid rain containing sulphuric acid (H_2SO_4). The acidity of fog deposition can be more serious because up to 90 per cent of the fog droplets may be deposited.

Acid deposition includes both acid rain and snow (wet deposition) and dry deposition of particulates. Acidity of precipitation represents an excess of positive hydrogen ions [H^+] in a water solution. Acidity is measured on the pH scale ($1 - \log[H^+]$) ranging from 1 (most acid) to 14 (most alkaline), 7 is neutral (i.e. the hydrogen cations are balanced by anions of sulphate, nitrate and chloride). Peak pH readings in the eastern United States and Europe are ≤4.3.

Over the oceans, the main anions are Cl^- and SO_4^{2-} from sea-salt. The background level of acidity in rainfall is about pH 4.8 to 5.6, because atmospheric CO_2 reacts with water to form carbonic acid. Acid solutions in rainwater are enhanced by reactions involving both gas-phase and aqueous-phase chemistry with sulphur dioxide and nitrogen dioxide. For sulphur dioxide, rapid pathways are provided by:

$$HOSO_2 + O_2 \rightarrow HO_2 + SO_3$$
$$H_2O + SO_3 \rightarrow H_2\,SO_4 \text{ (gas phase)}$$

and

$$H_2O + HSO_3 \rightarrow H^+ + SO_4^{2-} + H_2O \text{ (aqueous phase)}$$

The OH radical is an important catalyst in gas-phase reaction and hydrogen peroxide (H_2O_2) in the aqueous phase.

Acid deposition depends on emission concentrations, atmospheric transport and chemical activity, cloud type, cloud microphysical processes, and type of precipitation. Observations in northern Europe and eastern North America in the mid-1970s, compared with the mid-1950s, showed a twofold to threefold increase in hydrogen ion deposition and rainfall acidity. Sulphate concentrations in rainwater in Europe increased over this twenty-year period by 50 per cent in southern Europe and 100 per cent in Scandinavia, although there has been a subsequent decrease, apparently associated with reduced sulphur emissions in both Europe and North America. The emissions from coal and fuel oil in these regions have high sulphur content (2–3 per cent) and, since major SO_2 emissions occur from elevated stacks, SO_2 is readily transported by the low-level winds. NO_x emissions, by contrast, are primarily from automobiles and thus NO_3– is deposited mainly locally. SO_2 and NO_x have atmospheric resident times of one to three days. SO_2 is not dissolved readily in cloud or raindrops unless oxidized by OH or H_2O_2, but dry deposition is quite rapid. NO is insoluble in water, but it is oxidized to NO_2 by reaction with ozone, and ultimately to HNO_3 (nitric acid), which dissolves readily.

In the western United States, where there are fewer major sources of emission, H^+ ion concentrations in rainwater are only 15 to 20 per cent of levels in the east, while sulphate and nitrate anion concentrations are one-third to one-half of those in the east. In China, high-sulphur coal is the main energy source and rainwater sulphate concentrations are high; observations in southwest China show levels six times those in New York City. In winter, in Canada, snow has been found to have more nitrate and less sulphate than rain, apparently because falling snow scavenges nitrate faster and more effectively. Consequently, nitrate accounts for about half of the snowpack acidity. In spring, snow-melt runoff causes an acid flush that may be harmful to fish populations in rivers and lakes, especially at the egg or larval stages.

In areas with frequent fog, or hill cloud, acidity may be greater than with rainfall; North American data indicate pH values averaging 3.4 in fog. This is a result of several factors. Small fog or cloud droplets have a large surface area, higher levels of pollutants provide more time for aqueous-phase chemical reactions, and the pollutants may act as nuclei for fog droplet condensation. In California, pH values as low as 2.0 to 2.5 are not uncommon in coastal fogs. Fog water in Los Angeles usually has high nitrate concentrations due to automobile traffic during the morning rush-hour.

The impact of acid precipitation depends on the vegetation cover, soil and bedrock type. Neutralization may occur by addition of cations in the vegetation canopy or on the surface. Such buffering is greatest if there are carbonate rocks (Ca, Mg cations); otherwise the increased acidity augments normal leaching of bases from the soil.

4 Aerosols

There are significant quantities of *aerosols* in the atmosphere. These are suspended particles of sea-salt, mineral dust (particularly silicates), organic matter and smoke. Aerosols enter the atmosphere from a variety of natural and anthropogenic sources (Table 2.2). Some originate as particles – soil grains and mineral dust from dry surfaces, carbon soot from coal fires and biomass burning, and volcanic dust. Figure 2.1B shows their size distributions. Others are converted into particles from inorganic gases (sulphur from anthropogenic SO_2 and natural H_2S; ammonium salts from NH_3; nitrogen from NO_x). Sulphate aerosols, two-thirds of which come from coal-fired power station emissions, now play an important role in countering global warming effects by

Table 2.2 Aerosol production estimates, less than 5 μm radius (10^9 kg/year) and typical concentrations near the surface ($\mu g\ m^{-3}$).

		Concentration	
	Production	*Remote*	*Urban*
Natural			
Primary production			
Sea salt	2300	5–10	
Mineral particles	900–1500	0.5–5*	
Volcanic	20		
Forest fires and biological debris	50		
Secondary production (gas → particle):			
Sulphates from H_2S	70	1–2	
Nitrates from NO_x	22		
Converted plant hydrocarbons	25		
Total natural	3600		
Anthropogenic			
Primary production:			
Mineral particles	0–600		
Industrial dust	50		
Combustion (black carbon)	10		}100–500†
(organic carbon)	50		
Secondary production (gas → particle):			
Sulphate from SO_2	140	0.5–1.5	10–20
Nitrates from NO_x	30	0.2	0.5
Biomass combustion (organics)	20		
Total anthropogenic	290–890		

Notes: *10–60 $\mu g\ m^{-3}$ during dust episodes from the Sahara over the Atlantic.
† Total suspended particles.
10^9 kg = 1 Tg

Sources: Ramanathan *et al.* (2001), Schimel *et al*. (1996), Bridgman (1990).

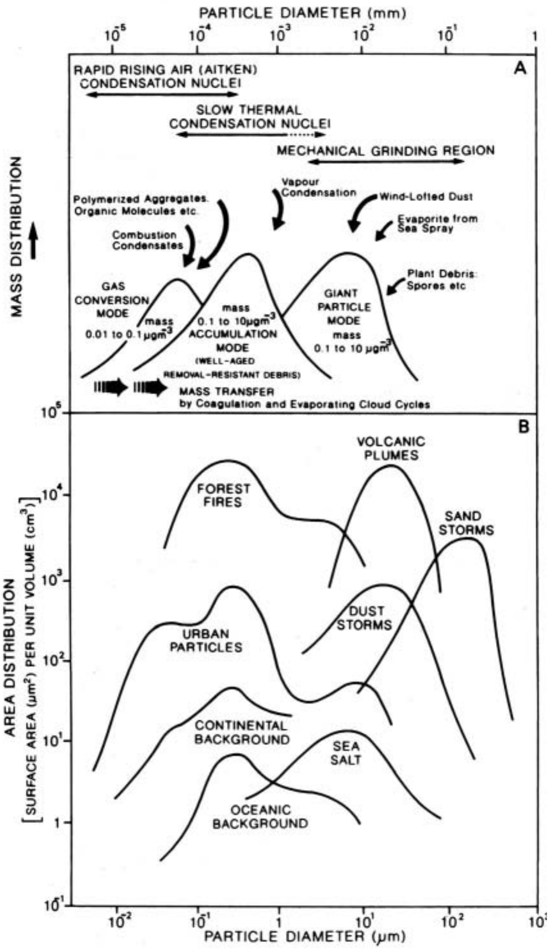


Figure 2.1 Atmospheric particles. (A) Mass distribution, together with a depiction of the surface–atmosphere processes that create and modify atmospheric aerosols, illustrating the three size modes. Aitken nuclei are solid and liquid particles that act as condensation nuclei and capture ions, thus playing a role in cloud electrification. (B) Distribution of surface area per unit volume.

Sources: (A) After Glenn E. Shaw, University of Alaska, Geophysics Institute. (B) After Slinn (1983).

reflecting incoming solar radiation (see Chapter 13). Other aerosol sources are sea-salt and organic matter (plant hydrocarbons and anthropogenically derived). Natural sources are several times larger than anthropogenic ones on a global scale, but the estimates are wide-ranging. Mineral dust is particularly hard to estimate due to the episodic nature of wind events and the considerable spatial variability. For example, the wind picks up some 1500 Tg (10^{12} g) of crustal material annually, about half from the Sahara and the Arabian Peninsula (see Plate 5). Most of this is deposited downwind over the Atlantic. There is similar transport from western China and Mongolia eastward over the North Pacific Ocean. Large particles originate from mineral dust, sea salt spray, fires and plant spores (Figure 2.1A); these sink rapidly back to the surface or are washed out (scavenged) by rain after a few days. Fine particles from volcanic eruptions may reside in the upper stratosphere for one to three years.

Small (Aitken) particles form by the condensation of gas-phase reaction products and from organic molecules and polymers (natural and synthetic fibres, plastics, rubber and vinyl). There are 500 to 1000 Aitken particles per cm^3 in air over Europe. Intermediate-sized (accumulation mode) particles originate from natural sources such as soil surfaces, from combustion, or they accumulate by random coagulation and by repeated cycles of condensation and evaporation (Figure 2.1A). Over Europe, 2000 to 3500 such particles per cm^3 are measured. Particles with diameters <10 μm (PM_{10}), originating especially from mechanical breakdown processes, are now often documented separately. Particles with diameters of 0.1 to 1.0 μm are highly effective in scattering solar radiation (Chapter 3B.2), and those of about 0.1 μm diameter are important in cloud condensation.

Having made these generalizations about the atmosphere, we now examine the variations that occur in composition with height, latitude and time.

5 Variations with height

The light gases (hydrogen and helium especially) might be expected to become more abundant in the upper atmosphere, but large-scale turbulent mixing of the atmosphere prevents such diffusive separation up to at least 100 km above the surface. The height variations that do occur are related to the source locations of the two major non-permanent gases – water vapour and ozone. Since both absorb some solar and terrestrial radiation, the heat budget and vertical temperature structure of the atmosphere are affected considerably by the distribution of these two gases.

Water vapour comprises up to 4 per cent of the atmosphere by volume (about 3 per cent by weight) near the surface, but only 3 to 6 ppmv (parts per million by volume) above 10 to 12 km. It is supplied to the atmosphere by evaporation from surface water or by transpiration from plants and is transferred upwards by atmospheric turbulence. Turbulence is most effective below about 10 or 15 km and as the maximum possible water vapour density of cold air is very low anyway (see B.2, this chapter), there is little water vapour in the upper layers of the atmosphere.

Ozone (O_3) is concentrated mainly between 15 and 35 km. The upper layers of the atmosphere are irradiated by ultraviolet radiation from the sun (see C.1, this chapter), which causes the breakup of oxygen molecules at altitudes above 30 km (i.e. $O_2 \rightarrow O + O$). These separated atoms (O + O) may then combine individually with other oxygen molecules to create ozone, as illustrated by the simple photochemical scheme:

$$O_2 + O + M \rightarrow O_3 + M$$

where M represents the energy and momentum balance provided by collision with a third atom or molecule; this Chapman cycle is shown schematically in Figure 2.2A. Such three-body collisions are rare at 80 to 100 km because of the very low density of the atmosphere, while below about 35 km most of the incoming ultraviolet radiation has already been absorbed at higher levels. Therefore ozone is formed mainly between 30 and 60 km, where collisions between O and O_2 are more likely. Ozone itself is unstable; its abundance is determined by three different photochemical interactions. Above 40 km odd oxygen is destroyed primarily by a cycle involving molecular oxygen; between 20 and 40 km NO_x cycles are dominant; while below 20 km a hydrogen–oxygen radical (HO_2) is responsible. Additional important cycles involve chlorine (ClO) and bromine (BrO) chains at various altitudes. Collisions with monatomic oxygen may recreate oxygen (see Figure 2.2B), but ozone is destroyed mainly through cycles involving catalytic reactions, some of which are photochemical associated with longer wavelength ultraviolet radiation (2.3 to 2.9 μm). The destruction of ozone involves a recombination with atomic oxygen, causing a net loss of the odd oxygen. This takes place through the catalytic effect of a radical such as OH (hydroxyl):

$$H + O \rightarrow HO_2$$
$$\left.\begin{aligned} HO_2 + O &\rightarrow OH + O_2 \\ OH + O &\rightarrow H + O_2 \end{aligned}\right\} \text{net: } 2O \rightarrow O_2$$

The odd hydrogen atoms and OH result from the dissociation of water vapour, molecular hydrogen and methane (CH_4).

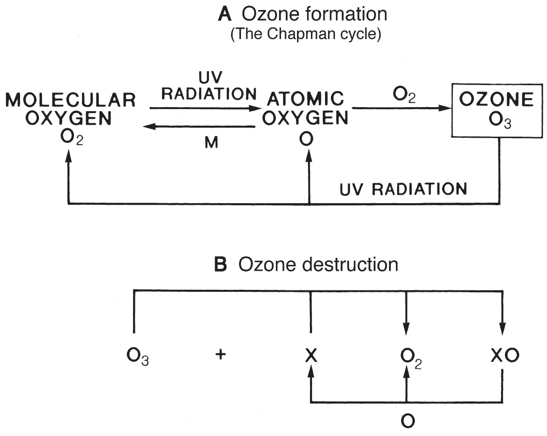


Figure 2.2 Schematic illustrations of (A) the Chapman cycle of ozone formation and (B) ozone destruction. X is any ozone-destroying species (e.g. H, OH, NO, CR, Br).

Source: After Hales (1996), from *Bulletin of the American Meteorological Society*, by permission of the American Meteorological Society.

Stratospheric ozone is similarly destroyed in the presence of nitrogen oxides (NO_x, i.e. NO_2 and NO) and chlorine radicals (Cl, ClO). The source gas of the NO_x is nitrous oxide (N_2O), which is produced by combustion and fertilizer use, while chlorofluorocarbons (CFCs), manufactured for ‘freon’, give rise to the chlorines. These source gases are transported up to the stratosphere from the surface and are converted by oxidation into NO_x, and by UV photodecomposition into chlorine radicals, respectively.

The chlorine chain involves:

$$2\,(Cl + O_3 \rightarrow ClO + O_2)$$
$$ClO + ClO \rightarrow Cl_2O_2$$

and

$$Cl + O_3 \rightarrow ClO + O_2$$
$$OH + O_3 \rightarrow HO_3 + 2O_2$$

Both reactions result in a conversion of O_3 to O_2 and the removal of all odd oxygens. Another cycle may involve an interaction of the oxides of chlorine and bromine (Br). It appears that the increases of Cl and Br species during the years 1970 to 1990 are sufficient to explain the observed decrease of stratospheric ozone over Antarctica (see Box 2.1). A mechanism that may enhance the catalytic process involves polar stratospheric clouds. These can form readily during the austral

OZONE IN THE STRATOSPHERE

box 2.1
significant
20th-c. advance

Ozone measurements were first made in the 1930s. Two properties are of interest: (i) the total ozone in an atmospheric column. This is measured with the Dobson spectrophotometer by comparing the solar radiation at a wavelength where ozone absorption occurs with that in another wavelength where such effects are absent; (ii) the vertical distribution of ozone. This can be measured by chemical soundings of the stratosphere, or calculated at the surface using the *Umkehr* method; here the effect of solar elevation angle on the scattering of solar radiation is measured. Ozone measurements, begun in the Antarctic during the International Geophysical Year, 1957–58, showed a regular annual cycle with an austral spring (October–November) peak as ozone-rich air from mid-latitudes was transported poleward as the winter polar vortex in the stratosphere broke down. Values declined seasonally from around 450 Dobson units (DU) in spring to about 300 DU in summer and continued about this level through the autumn and winter. Scientists of the British Antarctic Survey noted a different pattern at Halley Base beginning in the 1970s. In spring, with the return of sunlight, values began to decrease steadily between about 12 and 20 km altitude. Also in the 1970s, satellite sounders began mapping the spatial distribution of ozone over the polar regions. These revealed that low values formed a central core and the term "Antarctic ozone hole" came into use. Since the mid-1970s, values start decreasing in late winter and reach minima of around 100 DU in the austral spring.

Using a boundary of 220 DU (corresponding to a thin, 2.2-mm ozone layer, if all the gas were brought to sea level temperature and pressure), the extent of the Antarctic ozone hole at the end of September averaged 21 million km^2, during 1990–99. This expanded to cover 27 million km^2 by early September in 1999 and 2000.

In the Arctic, temperatures in the stratosphere are not as low as over the Antarctic, but in recent years ozone depletion has been large when temperatures fall well below normal in the winter stratosphere. In February 1996, for example, column totals averaging 330 DU for the Arctic vortex were recorded compared with 360 DU, or higher, in other years. A series of mini-holes was observed over Greenland, the northern North Atlantic and northern Europe with an absolute low over Greenland below 180 DU. An extensive ozone hole is less likely to develop in the Arctic because the more dynamic stratospheric circulation, compared with the Antarctic, transports ozone poleward from mid-latitudes.

spring (October), when temperatures decrease to 185 to 195 K, permitting the formation of particles of nitric acid (HNO_3) ice and water ice. It is apparent, however, that anthropogenic sources of the trace gases are the primary factor in the ozone decline. Conditions in the Arctic are somewhat different as the stratosphere is warmer and there is more mixing of air from lower latitudes. Nevertheless, ozone decreases are now observed in the boreal spring in the Arctic stratosphere.

The constant metamorphosis of oxygen to ozone and from ozone back to oxygen involves a very complex set of photochemical processes, which tend to maintain an approximate equilibrium above about 40 km. However, the ozone mixing ratio is at its maximum at about 35 km, whereas maximum ozone concentration (see Note 1) occurs lower down, between 20 and 25 km in low latitudes and between 10 and 20 km in high latitudes. This is the result of a circulation mechanism transporting ozone downward to levels where its destruction is less likely, allowing an accumulation of the gas to occur. Despite the importance of the ozone layer, it is essential to realize that if the atmosphere were compressed to sealevel (at normal sea-level temperature and pressure) ozone would contribute only about 3 mm to the total atmospheric thickness of 8 km (Figure 2.3).

6 Variations with latitude and season

Variations of atmospheric composition with latitude and season are particularly important in the case of water vapour and stratospheric ozone.

Ozone content is low over the equator and high in subpolar latitudes in spring (see Figure 2.3). If the distribution were solely the result of photochemical

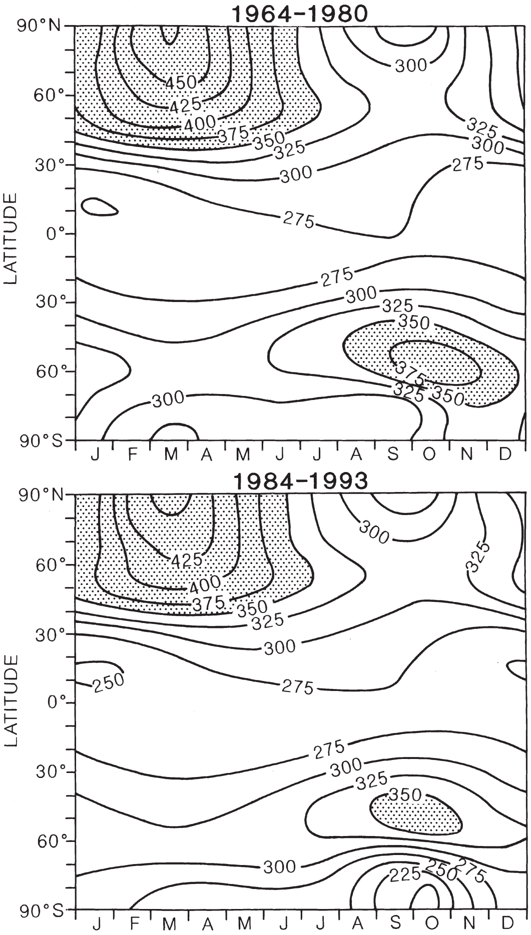


Figure 2.3 Variation of total ozone with latitude and season in Dobson units (milliatmosphere centimeters) for two time intervals: (top) 1964–1980 and (bottom) 1984–1993. Values over 350 units are stippled.

Source: From Bojkov and Fioletov (1995). From *Journal of Geophysical Research* 100 (D), Fig. 15, pp. 16, 548. Courtesy of American Geophysical Union.

processes, the maximum would occur in June near the equator, so the anomalous pattern must result from a poleward transport of ozone. Apparently, ozone moves from higher levels (30 to 40 km) in low latitudes towards lower levels (20 to 25 km) in high latitudes during the winter months. Here the ozone is stored during the *polar night*, giving rise to an ozone-rich layer in early spring under natural conditions. It is this feature that has been disrupted by the stratospheric ozone 'hole' that now forms each spring in the Antarctic and in some recent years in the Arctic also (see Box 2.1). The type of circulation responsible for this transfer is not yet known with certainty, although it does not seem to be a simple, direct one.

The water vapour content of the atmosphere is related closely to air temperature (see B.2, this chapter, and Chapter 4B and C) and is therefore greatest in summer and in low latitudes. There are, however, obvious exceptions to this generalization, such as the tropical desert areas of the world.

The carbon dioxide content of the air (currently averaging 372 parts per million (ppm)) has a large seasonal range in higher latitudes in the northern hemisphere associated with photosynthesis and decay in the biosphere. At 50°N, the concentration ranges from about 365 ppm in late summer to 378 ppm in spring. The low summer values are related to the assimilation of CO_2 by the cold polar seas. Over the year, a small net transfer of CO_2 from low to high altitudes takes place to maintain an equilibrium content in the air.

7 Variations with time

The quantities of carbon dioxide, other greenhouse gases and particles in the atmosphere undergo long-term variations that may play an important role in the earth's radiation budget. Measurements of atmospheric trace gases show increases in nearly all of them since the Industrial Revolution began (Table 2.3). The burning of fossil fuels is the primary source of these increasing trace gas concentrations. Heating, transportation and industrial activities generate almost 5×10^{20} J/year of energy. Oil and natural gas consumption account for 60 per cent of global energy and coal about 25 per cent. Natural gas is almost 90 per cent methane (CH_4), whereas the burning of coal and oil releases not only CO_2 but also odd nitrogen (NO_x), sulphur and carbon monoxide (CO). Other factors relating to agricultural practices (land clearance, farming, paddy cultivation and cattle raising) also contribute to modifying the atmospheric composition. The concentrations and sources of the most important greenhouse gases are considered in turn.

Carbon dioxide (CO_2). The major reservoirs of carbon are in limestone sediments and fossil fuels. The atmosphere contains just over 775×10^{12} kg of carbon (C), corresponding to a CO_2 concentration of 370 ppm (Figure 2.4). The major fluxes of CO_2 are a result of solution/dissolution in the ocean and photosynthesis/respiration and decomposition by biota. The average

Table 2.3 Anthropogenically induced changes in concentration of atmospheric trace gases.

Gas	*Concentration*		*Annual Increase (%)*	*Sources*
	*1850**	*2000*	*1990s*	
Carbon dioxide	280 ppm	370 ppm	0.4	Fossil fuels
Methane	800 ppbv	1750ppbv	0.3	Rice paddies, cows, wetlands
Nitrous oxide	280 ppbv	316 ppbv	0.25	Microbiological activity, fertilizer, fossil fuel
CFC–11	0	0.27 ppbv	≈ 0	Freon†
HCFC–22	0	0.11 ppbv	5	CFC substitute
Ozone (troposphere)	?	10–50 ppbv	≈ 0	Photochemical reactions

Notes: * Pre-industrial levels are derived primarily from measurements in ice cores where air bubbles are trapped as snow accumulates on polar ice sheets.
† Production began in the 1930s.

Source: Updated from Schimel *et al*. (1996), in Houghton *et al*. (1996).

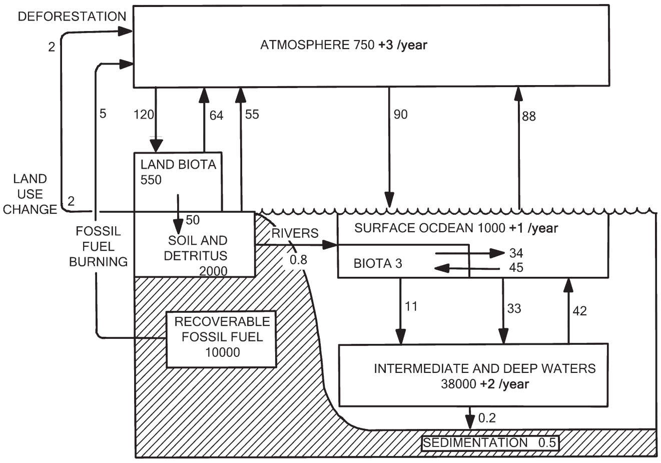


Figure 2.4 Global carbon reservoirs (gigatonnes of carbon (GtC): where 1 Gt = 10^9 metric tons = 10^{12} kg) and gross annual fluxes (GtC yr^{-1}). Numbers emboldened in the reservoirs suggest the net annual accumulation due to anthropogenic causes.

Source: Based on Sundquist, Trabalka, Bolin and Siegenthaler; after Houghton et *al*. (1990 and 2001).

time for a CO_2 molecule to be dissolved in the ocean or taken up by plants is about four years. Photosynthetic activity leading to primary production on land involves 50×10^{12} kg of carbon annually, representing 7 per cent of atmospheric carbon; this accounts for the annual oscillation in CO_2 observed in the northern hemisphere due to its extensive land biosphere.

The oceans play a key role in the global carbon cycle. Photosynthesis by phytoplankton generates organic compounds of aqueous carbon dioxide. Eventually, some of the biogenic matter sinks into deeper water, where it undergoes decomposition and oxidation back into carbon dioxide. This process transfers carbon dioxide from the surface water and sequesters it in the ocean deep water. As a consequence, atmospheric concentrations of CO_2 can be maintained at a lower level than otherwise. This mechanism is known as a 'biologic pump'; long-term changes in its operation may have caused the rise in atmospheric CO_2 at the end of the last glaciation. Ocean biomass productivity is limited by the availability of nutrients and by light. Hence, unlike the land biosphere, increasing CO_2 levels will not necessarily affect ocean productivity; inputs of fertilizers in river runoff may be a more significant factor. In the oceans, the carbon dioxide ultimately goes to produce carbonate of lime, partly in the form of shells and the skeletons of marine creatures. On land, the dead matter becomes humus, which may subsequently

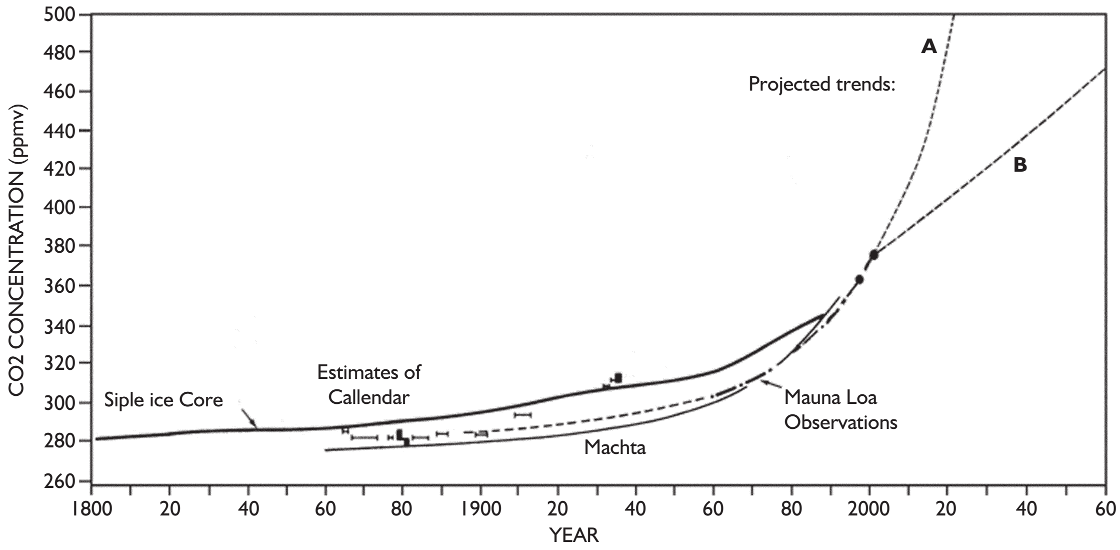


Figure 2.5 Estimated carbon dioxide concentration: since 1800 from air bubbles in an Antarctic ice core, early measurements from 1860 to 1960; observations at Mauna Loa, Hawaii, since 1957; and projected trends for this century.

Source: After Keeling, Callendar, Machta, Broecker and others.
Note: (A) and (B) indicate different scenarios of global fossil fuel use (IPCC, 2001).

form a fossil fuel. These transfers within the oceans and lithosphere involve very long timescales compared with exchanges involving the atmosphere.

As Figure 2.4 shows, the exchanges between the atmosphere and the other reservoirs are more or less balanced. Yet this balance is not an absolute one; between AD1750 and 2001 the concentration of atmospheric CO_2 is estimated to have increased by 32 per cent, from 280 to 370 ppm (Figure 2.5). Half of this increase has taken place since the mid-1960s; currently, atmospheric CO_2 levels are increasing by 1.5 ppmv per year. The primary net source is fossil fuel combustion, now accounting for 6.55×10^{12} kg C/year. Tropical deforestation and fires may contribute a further 2×10^{12} kg C/year; the figure is still uncertain. Fires destroy only above-ground biomass, and a large fraction of the carbon is stored as charcoal in the soil. The consumption of fossil fuels should actually have produced an increase almost twice as great as is observed. Uptake and dissolution in the oceans and the terrestrial biosphere account primarily for the difference.

Carbon dioxide has a significant impact on global temperature through its absorption and re-emission of radiation from the earth and atmosphere (see Chapter 3C). Calculations suggest that the increase from 320 ppm in the 1960s to 370 ppm (AD 2001) raised the mean surface air temperature by 0.5°C (in the absence of other factors).

Research on deep ice cores taken from Antarctica has allowed changes in past atmospheric composition to be calculated by extracting air bubbles trapped in the old ice. This shows large natural variations in CO_2 concentration over the ice age cycles (Figure 2.6). These variations of up to 100 ppm were contemporaneous with temperature changes that are estimated to be about 10°C. These long-term variations in carbon dioxide and climate are discussed further in Chapter 13.

Methane (CH_4) concentration (1750 ppbv) is more than double the pre-industrial level (750 ppbv). It increased by about 4 to 5 ppbv annually in the 1990s but this dropped to zero in 1999 to 2000 (Figure 2.7). Methane has an atmospheric lifetime of about nine years and is responsible for some 18 per cent of the greenhouse effect. Cattle populations have increased by 5 per cent per year over thirty years and paddy rice area by 7 per cent per year, although it is uncertain whether these account quantitatively for the annual increase of 120 ppbv in methane over the past decade. Table 2.4, showing the mean annual release and consumption, indicates the uncertainties in our knowledge of its sources and sinks.

Nitrous oxide (N_2O), which is relatively inert, orig-

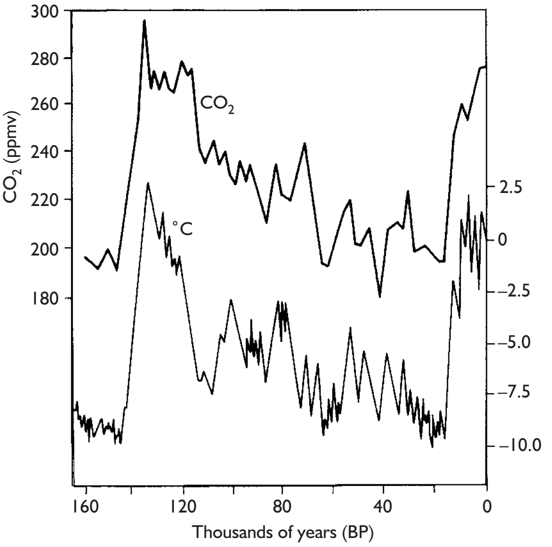


Figure 2.6 Changes in atmospheric CO_2 (ppmv: parts per million by volume) and estimates of the resulting global temperature deviations from the present value obtained from air trapped in ice bubbles in cores at Vostok, Antarctica.

Source: *Our Future World*, Natural Environment Research Council (NERC) (1989).

Table 2.4 Mean annual release and consumption of CH_4 (Tg).

	Mean	*Range*
A *Release*		
Natural wetlands	115	100–200
Rice paddies	110	25–170
Enteric fermentation (mammals)	80	65–110
Gas drilling	45	25–50
Biomass burning	40	20–80
Termites	40	10–100
Landfills	40	20–70
Total	c. 530	
B *Consumption*		
Soils	30	15–30
Reaction with OH	500	400–600
Total	c. 530	

Source: Tetlow-Smith 1995.

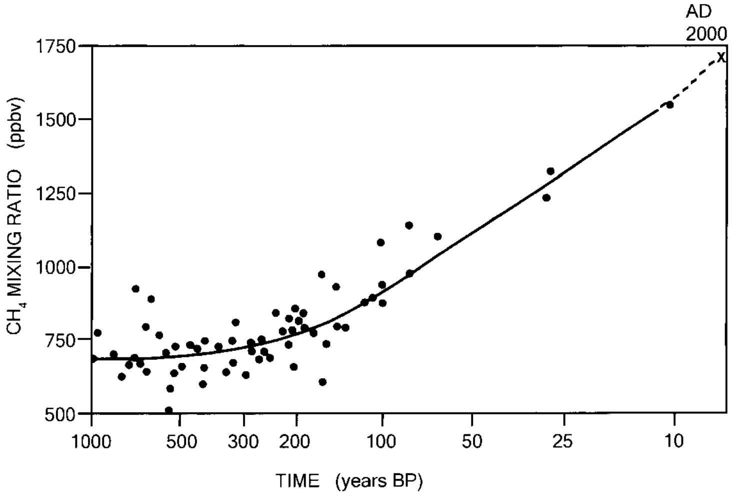


Figure 2.7 Methane concentration (parts per million by volume) in air bubbles trapped in ice dating back to 1000 years BP obtained from ice cores in Greenland and Antarctica and the global average for AD 2000 (X).

Source: Data from Rasmussen and Khalil, Craig and Chou, and Robbins; adapted from Bolin *et al*. (eds) *The Greenhouse Effect, Climatic Change, and Ecosystems* (SCOPE 29). Copyright ©1986. Reprinted by permission of John Wiley & Sons, Inc.

inates primarily from microbial activity (nitrification) in soils and in the oceans (4 to 8 × 10^9 kg N/year), with about 1.0 × 10^9 kg N/year from industrial processes. Other major anthropogenic sources are nitrogen fertilizers and biomass burning. The concentration of N_2O has increased from a pre-industrial level of about 285 ppbv to 316 ppbv (in clean air). Its increase began around 1940 and is now about 0.8 ppbv per year (Figure 2.8A). The major sink of N_2O is in the stratosphere, where it is oxidized into NO_x.

Chlorofluorocarbons (CF_2Cl_2 and $CFCl_3$), better known as ‘freons’ CFC-11 and CFC-12, respectively, were first produced in the 1930s and now have a total atmospheric burden of 10^{10} kg. They increased at 4 to 5 per cent per year up to 1990, but CFC-11 is declining slowly and CFC-12 is nearly static as a result of the

Montreal Protocol agreements to curtail production and use substitutes (see Figure 2.8B). Although their concentration is <1 ppbv, CFCs account for nearly 10 per cent of the greenhouse effect. They have a residence time of 55 to 130 years in the atmosphere. However, while the replacement of CFCs by hydrohalocarbons (HCFCs) can reduce significantly the depletion of stratospheric ozone, HCFCs still have a large greenhouse potential.

Ozone (O_3) is distributed very unevenly with height and latitude (see Figure 2.3) as a result of the complex photochemistry involved in its production (A.2, this chapter). Since the late 1970s, dramatic declines in springtime total ozone have been detected over high southern latitudes. The normal increase in stratospheric ozone associated with increasing solar radiation in spring apparently failed to develop. Observations in Antarctica show a decrease in total ozone in September to October from 320 Dobson units (DU) (10^{-3} cm at standard atmospheric temperature and pressure) in the 1960s to around 100 in the 1990s. Satellite measurements of stratospheric ozone (Figure 2.9) illustrate the presence of an 'ozone hole' over the south polar region (see Box 2.2). Similar reductions are also evident in the Arctic and at lower latitudes. Between 1979 and 1986, there was a 30 per cent decrease in ozone at 30 to 40-km altitude between latitudes 20 and 50°N and S (Figure 2.10); along with this there has been an increase in ozone in the lowest 10 km as a result of anthropogenic activities. Tropospheric ozone represents about 34 DU compared with 25 pre-industrially. These changes in the vertical distribution of ozone concentration are likely to lead to changes in atmospheric heating (Chapter 2C), with implications for future climate trends (see Chapter 13). The global mean column total decreased from 306 DU for 1964 to 1980 to 297 for 1984 to 1993 (see Figure 2.3). The decline over the past twenty-five years has exceeded 7 per cent in middle and high latitudes.

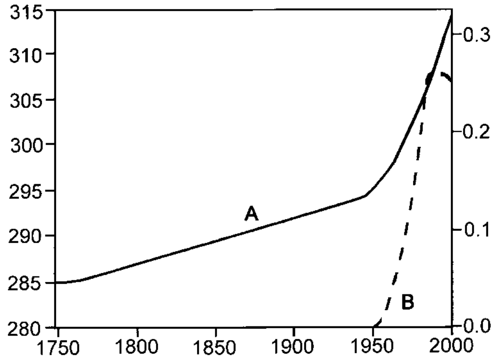


Figure 2.8 Concentration of: (A) nitrous oxide, N_2O (left scale), which has increased since the mid-eighteenth century and especially since 1950; and of (B) CFC-11 since 1950 (right scale). Both in parts per billion by volume (ppbv).

Source: After Houghton *et al*. (1990 and 2001).

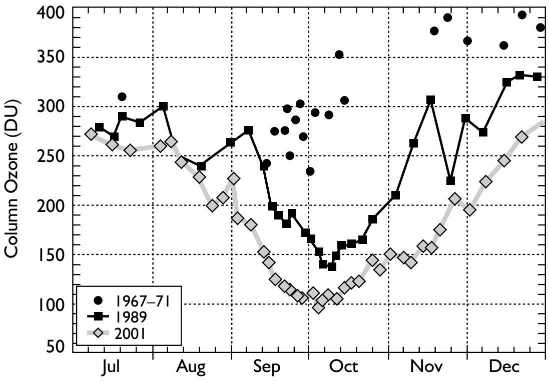


Figure 2.9 Total ozone measurements from ozonesondes over South Pole for 1967 to 1971, 1989, and 2001, showing deepening of the Antarctic ozone hole.

Source: Based on Climate Monitoring and Diagnostics Laboratory, NOAA.

The effects of reduced stratospheric ozone are particularly important for their potential biological damage to living cells and human skin. It is estimated that a 1 per cent reduction in total ozone will increase ultraviolet-B radiation by 2 per cent, for example, and ultraviolet radiation at 0.30 μm is a thousand times more damaging to the skin than at 0.33 μm (see Chapter 3A). The ozone decrease would also be greater in higher latitudes. However, the mean latitudinal and altitudinal gradients of radiation imply that the effects of a 2 per cent UV-B increase in mid-latitudes could be offset by moving poleward 60 km or 100 m lower in altitude! Recent polar observations suggest dramatic changes. Stratospheric ozone totals in the 1990s over Palmer Station, Antarctica (65°S), now maintain low levels from September until early December, instead of recovering in November. Hence, the altitude of the sun has been higher and the incoming radiation much greater than in previous years, especially at wavelengths ≤0.30 μm. However, the possible effects of increased UV radiation on biota remain to be determined.

Aerosol loading may change due to natural and human-induced processes. Atmospheric particle con-

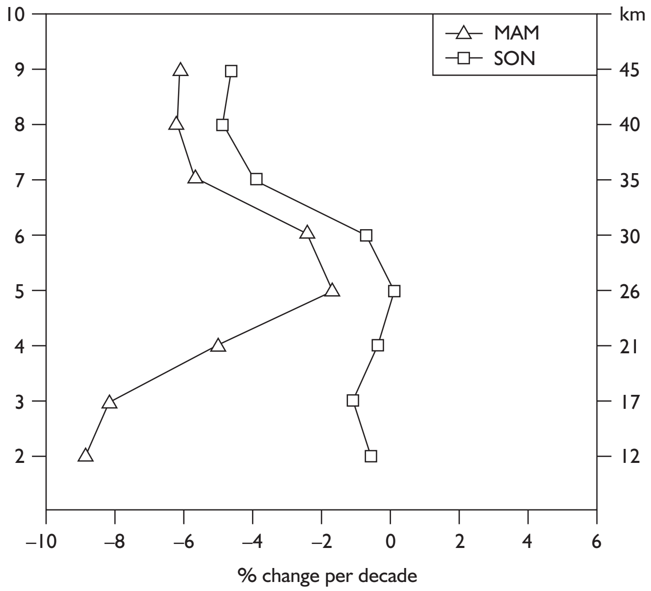


Figure 2.10 Changes in stratospheric ozone content (per cent per decade) during March to May and September to November 1978 to 1997 over Europe (composite of Belsk, Poland, Arosa, Switzerland and Observatoire de Haute Provence, France) based on umkehr measurements.

Source: Adapted from Bojkov *et al*. (2002), *Meteorology and Atmospheric Physics*, 79, p. 148, Fig. 14a.

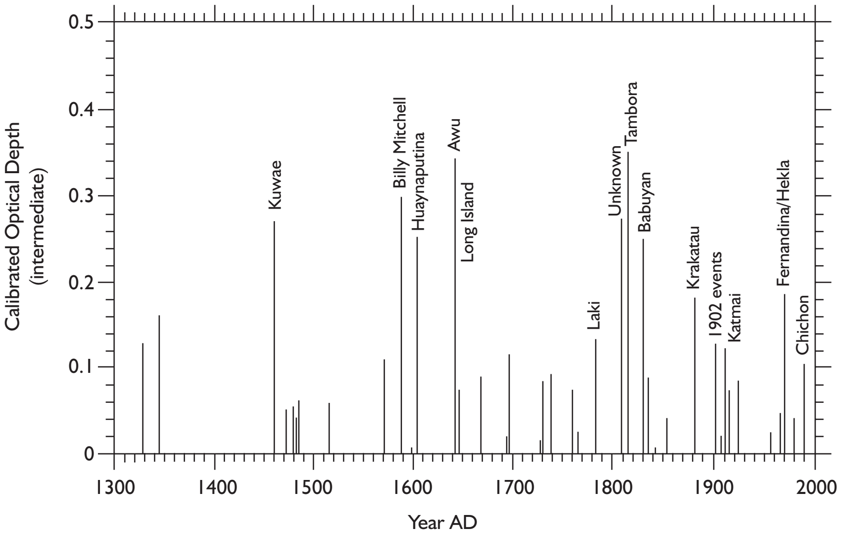


Figure 2.11 Record of volcanic eruptions in the GISP 2 ice core and calibrated visible optical depth for AD 1300 to 2000, together with the names of major volcanic eruptions. Note that the record reflects eruptions in the northern hemisphere and equatorial region only; optical depth estimates depend on the latitude and the technique used for calibration.

Source: Updated after Zielinski *et al*. (1995), *Journal of Geophysical Research* 100 (D), courtesy of the American Geophysical Union, pp. 20, 950, Fig. 6.

centration derived from volcanic dust is extremely irregular (see Figure 2.11), but individual volcanic emissions are rapidly diffused geographically. As shown in Figure 2.12, a strong westerly wind circulation carried the El Chichón dust cloud at an average velocity of 20 m s^{-1} so that it encircled the globe in less than three weeks. The spread of the Krakatoa dust in 1883 was more rapid and extensive due to the greater amount of fine dust that was blasted into the stratosphere. In June 1991, the eruption of Mount Pinatubo in the

Philippines injected twenty megatons of SO_2 into the stratosphere. However, only about twelve eruptions have produced measurable dust veils in the past 120 years. They occurred mainly between 1883 and 1912, and 1982 and 1992. In contrast, the contribution of man-made particles (particularly sulphates and soil) has been progressively increasing, and now accounts for about 30 per cent of the total.

The overall effect of aerosols on the lower atmosphere is uncertain; urban pollutants generally warm the atmosphere through absorption and reduce solar radiation reaching the surface (see Chapter 3C). Aerosols may lower the planetary albedo above a high-albedo desert or snow surface but increase it over an ocean surface. Thus the global role of tropospheric aerosols is difficult to evaluate, although many authorities now consider it to be one of cooling. Volcanic eruptions, which inject dust and sulphur dioxide high into the stratosphere, are known to cause a small deficit in surface heating with a global effect of –0.1° to –0.2°C, but the effect is short-lived, lasting only a year or so after the event (see Box 13.3). In addition, unless the eruption is in low latitudes, the dust and sulphate aerosols remain in one hemisphere and do not cross the equator.

B MASS OF THE ATMOSPHERE

Atmospheric gases obey a few simple laws in response to changes in pressure and temperature. The first, Boyle's Law, states that, at a constant temperature, the volume (V) of a mass of gas varies inversely as its pressure (P), i.e.

$$P = \frac{k_1}{V}$$

(k_1 is a constant). The second, Charles's Law, states that, at a constant pressure, volume varies directly with absolute temperature (T) measured in degrees Kelvin (see Note 2):

$$V = k_2 T$$

These laws imply that the three qualities of pressure, temperature and volume are completely interdependent, such that any change in one of them will cause a compensating change to occur in one, or both, of the remainder. The gas laws may be combined to give the following relationship:

$$PV = RmT$$

where m = mass of air, and R = a gas constant for dry air (287 J kg^{-1} K^{-1}) (see Note 3). If m and T are held fixed, we obtain Boyle's Law; if m and P are held fixed, we obtain Charles's Law. Since it is convenient to use density, ρ (= mass/volume), rather than volume when studying the atmosphere, we can rewrite the equation in the form known as the equation of state:

$$P = R\rho T$$

Thus, at any given pressure, an increase in temperature causes a decrease in density, and vice versa.

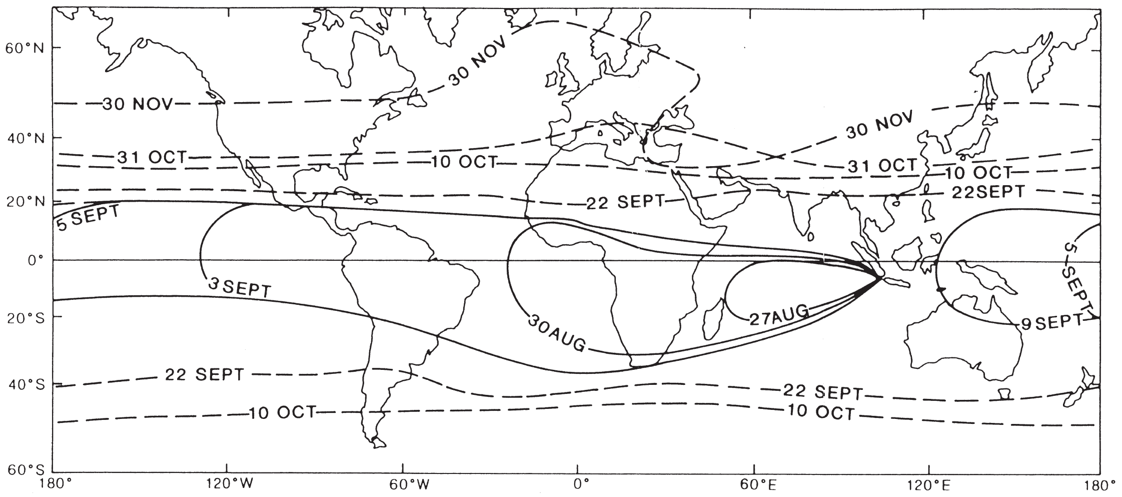
1 Total pressure

Air is highly compressible, such that its lower layers are much more dense than those above. Fifty per cent of the total mass of air is found below 5 km (see Figure 2.13), and the average density decreases from about 1.2 kg m^{-3} at the surface to 0.7 kg m^{-3} at 5000 m (approximately 16,000 ft), close to the extreme limit of human habitation.

Pressure is measured as a force per unit area. A force of 10^5 newtons acting on 1 m^2 corresponds to the Pascal (Pa) which is the Système International (SI) unit of pressure. Meteorologists still commonly use the millibar (mb) unit; 1 millibar = 10^2 Pa (or 1 hPa; h = hecto) (see Appendix 2). Pressure readings are made with a mercury barometer, which in effect measures the height of the column of mercury that the atmosphere is able to support in a vertical glass tube. The closed upper end of the tube has a vacuum space and its open lower end is immersed in a cistern of mercury. By exerting pressure downward on the surface of mercury in the cistern, the atmosphere is able to support a mercury column in the tube of about 760 mm (29.9 in or approximately 1013 mb). The weight of air on a surface at sea-level is about 10,000 kg per square metre.

Pressures are standardized in three ways. The readings from a mercury barometer are adjusted to correspond to those for a standard temperature of 0°C (to allow for the thermal expansion of mercury); they are referred to a standard gravity value of 9.81 ms^{-2} at 45° latitude (to allow for the slight latitudinal variation in g from 9.78 ms^{-2} at the equator to 9.83 ms^{-2} at the poles);

A 1883 (AUG-NOV)


60°N
40°N
20°N
0°
20°S
40°S
60°S
180°
120°W
60°W
0°
60°E
120°E
180°
30 NOV
30 NOV
30 NOV
31 OCT
31 OCT
10 OCT
10 OCT
22 SEPT
22SEPT
5 SEPT
5 SEPT
3 SEPT
30AUG
27AUG
9 SEPT
22 SEPT
22 SEPT
10 OCT
10 OCT

B 1982 (APRIL)

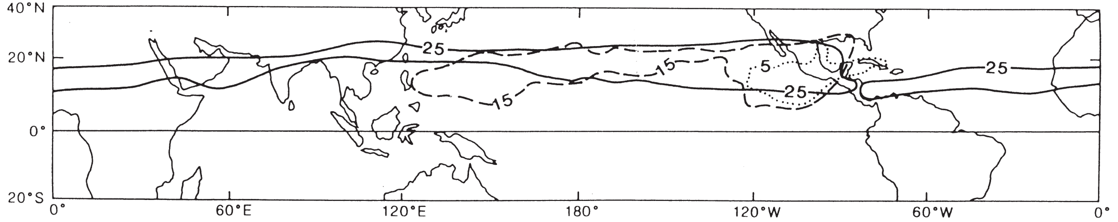

40°N
20°N
0°
20°S
0°
60°E
120°E
180°
120°W
60°W
0°
25
25
15
15
5
25

Figure 2.12 The spread of volcanic material in the atmosphere following major eruptions. (A) Approximate distributions of observed optical sky phenomena associated with the spread of Krakatoa volcanic dust between the eruption of 26 August and 30 November 1883. (B) The spread of the volcanic dust cloud following the main eruption of the El Chichón volcano in Mexico on 3 April 1982. Distributions on 5, 15 and 25 April are shown.

Sources: Russell and Archibald (1888), Simkin and Fiske (1983), Rampino and Self (1984), Robock and Matson (1983). (A) by permission of the Smithsonian Institution; (B) by permission of Scientific American Inc.

and they are calculated for mean sea-level to eliminate the effect of station elevation. This third correction is the most significant, because near sea-level pressure decreases with height by about 1 mb per 8 m. A fictitious temperature between the station and sea-level has to be assumed and in mountain areas this commonly causes bias in the calculated mean sea-level pressure (see Note 4).

The mean sea-level pressure (p_0) can be estimated from the total mass of the atmosphere (M, the mean acceleration due to gravity (g_0) and the mean earth radius (R):

$$P_0 = g_0 \, (M/4 \pi R_E^2)$$

where the denominator is the surface area of a spherical earth. Substituting appropriate values into this expression ($M = 5.14 \times 10^{18}$ kg, $g_0 = 9.8$ ms^{-2}, $R_E = 6.36 \times 10^6$ m), we find $p_0 = 10^5$ kg ms^{-2} = 10^5 Nm^{-2}, or 10^5 Pa. Hence the mean sea-level pressure is approximately 10^5 Pa or 1000 mb. The global mean value is 1013.25 mb. On average, nitrogen contributes about 760 mb, oxygen 240 mb and water vapour 10 mb. In other words, each gas exerts a partial pressure independent of the others.

Atmospheric pressure, depending as it does on the weight of the overlying atmosphere, decreases logarithmically with height. This relationship is expressed by the *hydrostatic equation*:

$$\frac{\partial p}{\partial z} = -g\rho$$

i.e. the rate of change of pressure (p) with height (z) is dependent on gravity (g) multiplied by the air density (ρ). With increasing height, the drop in air density causes a decline in this rate of pressure decrease. The temperature of the air also affects this rate, which is greater for cold dense air (see Chapter 7A.1). The relationship between pressure and height is so significant that meteorologists often express elevations in millibars: 1000 mb represents sea-level, 500 mb about 5500 m and 300 mb about 9000 m. A conversion nomogram for an idealized (standard) atmosphere is given in Appendix 2.

2 Vapour pressure

At any given temperature there is a limit to the density of water vapour in the air, with a consequent upper limit to the vapour pressure, termed the *saturation vapour pressure* (e_s). Figure 2.14A illustrates how e_s increases with temperature (the Clausius–Clapeyron relationship), reaching a maximum of 1013 mb (1 atmosphere) at boiling-point. Attempts to introduce more vapour into the air when the vapour pressure is at saturation produce condensation of an equivalent amount of vapour. Figure 2.14B shows that whereas the saturation vapour pressure has a single value at any temperature above freezing-point, below 0°C the saturation vapour pressure above an ice surface is lower than that above a supercooled water surface. The significance of this will be discussed in Chapter 5D.1.

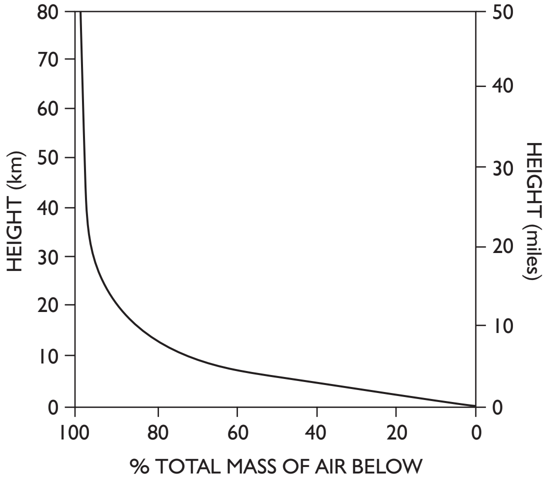


Figure 2.13 The percentage of the total mass of the atmosphere lying below elevations up to 80 km (50 miles). This illustrates the shallow character of the earth's atmosphere.

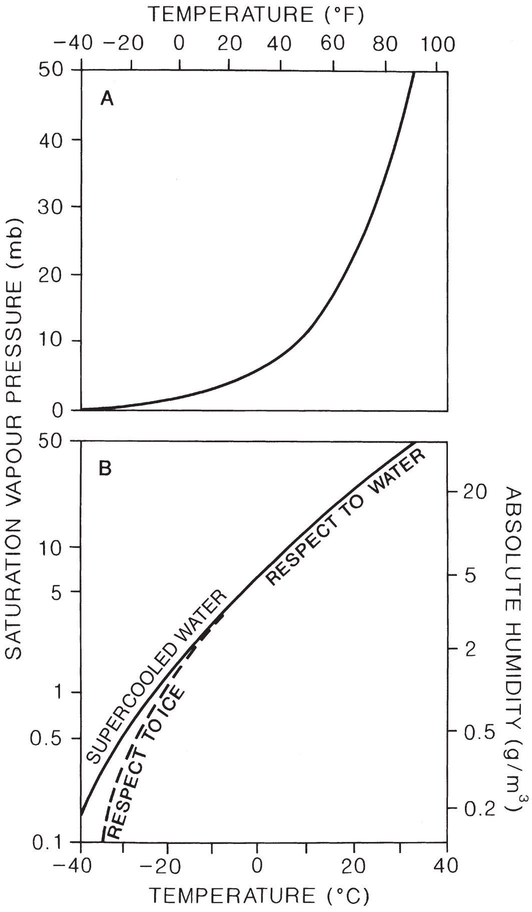


Figure 2.14 Plots of saturation vapour pressure as a function of temperature (i.e. the dew-point curve). (A) The semi-logarithmic plot. (B) shows that below 0°C the atmospheric saturation vapour pressure is less with respect to an ice surface than with respect to a water drop. Thus condensation may take place on an ice crystal at lower air humidity than is necessary for the growth of water drops.

Vapour pressure (e) varies with latitude and season from about 0.2 mb over northern Siberia in January to over 30 mb in the tropics in July, but this is not reflected in the pattern of surface pressure. Pressure decreases at the surface when some of the overlying air is displaced horizontally, and in fact the air in high-pressure areas is generally dry owing to dynamic factors, particularly vertical air motion (see Chapter 7A.1), whereas air in low-pressure areas is usually moist.

C THE LAYERING OF THE ATMOSPHERE

The atmosphere can be divided conveniently into a number of rather well-marked horizontal layers, mainly on the basis of temperature (Figure 2.15). The evidence for this structure comes from regular rawinsonde (radar wind-sounding) balloons, radio wave investigations, and, more recently, from rocket flights and satellite sounding systems. There are three relatively warm layers (near the surface; between 50 and 60 km; and above about 120 km) separated by two relatively cold layers (between 10 and 30 km; and 80 and 100 km). Mean January and July temperature sections illustrate the considerable latitudinal variations and seasonal trends that complicate the scheme (see Figure 2.16).

1 Troposphere

The lowest layer of the atmosphere is called the *troposphere*. It is the zone where weather phenomena and atmospheric turbulence are most marked, and it contains 75 per cent of the total molecular or gaseous mass of the atmosphere and virtually all the water vapour and aerosols. Throughout this layer, there is a general decrease of temperature with height at a mean rate of about 6.5°C/km. The decrease occurs because air is compressible and its density decreases with height, allowing rising air to expand and thereby cool. In addition, turbulent heat transfer from the surface mainly heats the atmosphere, not direct absorption of radiation. The troposphere is capped in most places by

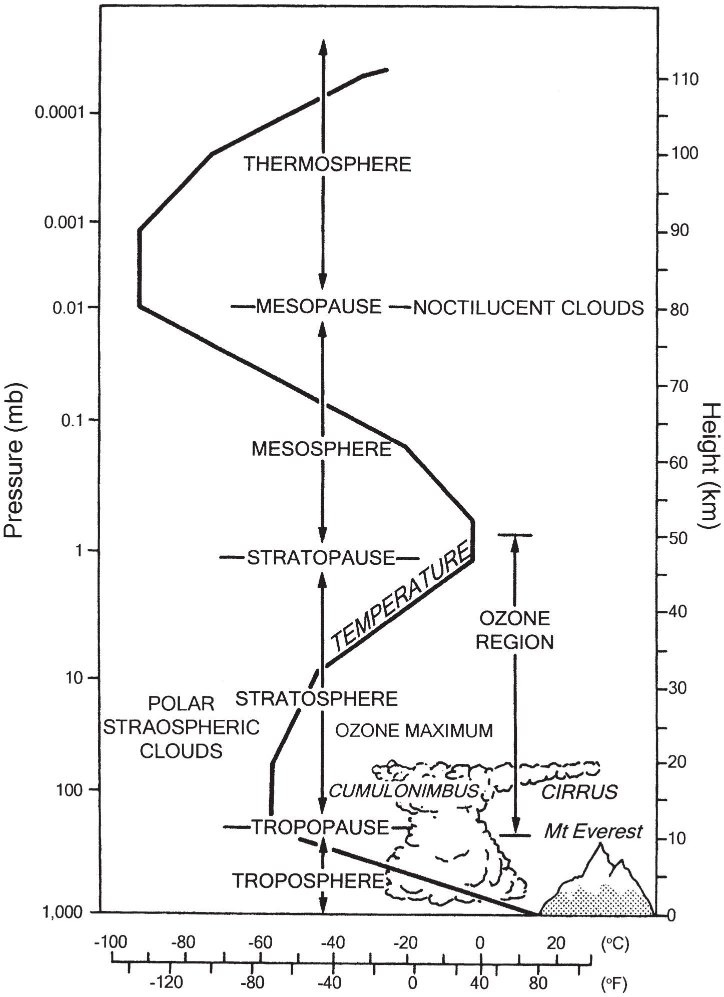


Figure 2.15 The generalized vertical distribution of temperature and pressure up to about 110 km. Note particularly the tropopause and the zone of maximum ozone concentration with the warm layer above. The typical altitudes of polar stratospheric and noctilucent clouds are indicated.

Source: After NASA (n.d.). Courtesy of NASA.

a temperature inversion level (i.e. a layer of relatively warm air above a colder layer) and in others by a zone that is isothermal with height. The troposphere thus remains to a large extent self-contained, because the inversion acts as a ‘lid’ that effectively limits convection (see Chapter 4E). This inversion level or weather ceiling is called the *tropopause* (see Note 5 and Box 2.2). Its height is not constant in either space or time. It seems that the height of the tropopause at any point is correlated with sea-level temperature and pressure, which are in turn related to the factors of latitude, season and daily changes in surface pressure. There are marked variations in the altitude of the tropopause with latitude (Figure 2.16), from about 16 km at the equator, where there is strong heating and vertical convective turbulence, to only 8 km at the poles.

The equator–pole (meridional) temperature gradients in the troposphere in summer and winter are roughly parallel, as are the tropopauses (see Figure 2.16), and the strong lower mid-latitude temperature gradient in the troposphere is reflected in the tropopause breaks (see also Figure 7.8). In these zones, important interchange can occur between the troposphere and stratosphere, and vice versa. Traces of water vapour can penetrate into the stratosphere by this means, while dry, ozone-rich stratospheric air may be brought down into the mid-latitude troposphere. Thus above-average concentrations of ozone are observed in the rear of mid-latitude low-pressure systems where the tropopause elevation tends to be low. Both facts are probably the result of stratospheric subsidence, which warms the lower stratosphere and causes downward transfer of the ozone.

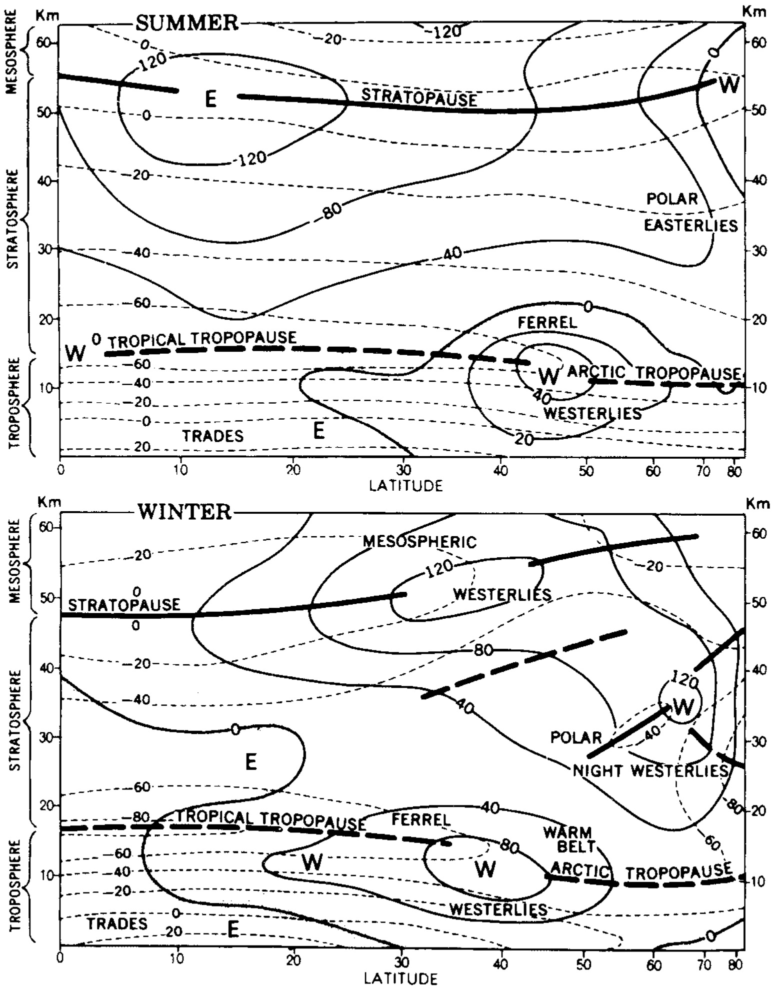


Figure 2.16 Mean zonal (westerly) winds (solid isolines, in knots; negative values from the east) and temperatures (in °C, dashed isolines), showing the broken tropopause near the mean Ferrel jet stream.

Source: After Boville (from Hare 1962).
Notes: The term ‘Ferrel Westerlies’ was proposed by F. K. Hare in honour of W. Ferrel (see p. 139). The heavy black lines denote reversals of the vertical temperature gradient of the tropopause and stratopause. Summer and winter refer to the northern hemisphere.

DISCOVERY OF THE TROPOPAUSE AND STRATOSPHERE

box 2.2
significant 20th-c. advance

Early scientific exploration of the upper atmosphere began with manned balloon flights in the mid-nineteenth century. Notable among these was the ascent by J. Glaisher and H. T. Coxwell in 1862. Glaisher last consciousness due to lack of oxygen at about 8800-m altitude and they barely survived the hypoxia. In 1902 L. Teisserenc de Bort in France reported a totally unexpected finding: that temperatures ceased decreasing at altitudes of around 12 km. Indeed, at higher elevations temperatures were commonly observed to begin increasing with altitude. This mean structure is shown in Figure 2.15.

The terms *troposphere* (turbulent sphere) and *stratosphere* (stratified sphere) were proposed by Teisserenc de Bort in 1908; the use of *tropopause* to denote the inversion or isothermal layer separating them was introduced in Great Britain during the First World War. The distinctive features of the stratosphere are its stability compared with the troposphere, its dryness, and its high concentration of ozone.

2 Stratosphere

The stratosphere extends upward from the tropopause to about 50 km and accounts for about 10 per cent of the atmospheric mass. Although the stratosphere contains much of the total atmospheric ozone (it reaches a peak density at approximately 22 km), maximum temperatures associated with the absorption of the sun's ultraviolet radiation by ozone occur at the *stratopause*, where they may exceed 0°C (see Figure 2.15). The air density is much lower here, so even limited absorption produces a high temperature rise. Temperatures increase fairly generally with height in summer, with the coldest air at the equatorial tropopause. In winter, the structure is more complex with very low temperatures, averaging –80°C, at the equatorial tropopause, which is highest at this season. Similar low temperatures are found in the middle stratosphere at high latitudes, whereas over 50–60°N there is a marked warm region with nearly isothermal conditions at about –45 to –50°C. In the circumpolar low-pressure vortex over both polar regions, polar stratospheric clouds (PSCs) are sometimes present at 20 to 30 km altitude. These have a nacreous ('mother-of-pearl') appearance. They can absorb odd nitrogen and thereby cause catalytic destruction of ozone.

Marked seasonal changes of temperature affect the stratosphere. The cold 'polar night' winter stratosphere in the Arctic often undergoes dramatic *sudden warmings* associated with subsidence due to circulation changes in late winter or early spring, when temperatures at about 25 km may jump from –80 to –40°C over a two-day period. The autumn cooling is a more gradual process. In the tropical stratosphere, there is a quasi-biennial (twenty-six-month) wind regime, with easterlies in the layer 18 to 30 km for twelve to thirteen months, followed by westerlies for a similar period. The reversal begins first at high levels and takes approximately twelve months to descend from 30 to 18 km (10 to 60 mb).

How far events in the stratosphere are linked with temperature and circulation changes in the troposphere remains a topic of meteorological research. Any such interactions are undoubtedly complex.

3 Mesosphere

Above the stratopause, average temperatures decrease to a minimum of about –133°C (140 K) or around 90 km (Figure 2.15). This layer is commonly termed the *mesosphere*, although as yet there is no universal terminology for the upper atmospheric layers. Pressure is very low in the mesosphere, decreasing from about 1 mb at 50 km to 0.01 mb at 90 km. Above 80 km, temperatures again begin rising with height and this inversion is referred to as the *mesopause*. Molecular oxygen and ozone absorption bands contribute to heating around 85 km altitude. It is in this region that *noctilucent* clouds are observed on summer 'nights' over high latitudes. Their presence appears to be due to meteoric dust particles, which act as ice crystal nuclei when traces of water vapour are carried upward by high-level convection caused by the vertical decrease of temperature in the mesosphere. However, their formation may also be related to the production of water vapour through the oxidation of atmospheric methane, since apparently they were not observed prior to the Industrial Revolution. The layers between the tropopause and the lower thermosphere are commonly referred to as the *middle atmosphere*, with the upper atmosphere designating the regions above about 100 km altitude.

4 Thermosphere

Atmospheric densities are extremely low above the mesopause, although the tenuous atmosphere still effects drag on space vehicles above 250 km. The lower portion of the thermosphere is composed mainly of nitrogen (N_2) and oxygen in molecular (O_2) and atomic (O) forms, whereas above 200 km atomic oxygen predominates over nitrogen (N_2 and N). Temperatures rise with height, owing to the absorption of extreme ultraviolet radiation (0.125 to 0.205 μm) by molecular and atomic oxygen, probably approaching 800 to 1200 K at 350 km, but these temperatures are essentially theoretical. For example, artificial satellites do not acquire such temperatures because of the rarefied air. 'Temperatures' in the upper thermosphere and exosphere undergo wide diurnal and seasonal variations. They are higher by day and are also higher during a sunspot maximum, although the changes are only represented in varying velocities of the sparse air molecules.

Above 100 km, cosmic radiation, solar X-rays and ultraviolet radiation increasingly affect the atmosphere, which cause *ionization*, or electrical charging, by separating negatively charged electrons from neutral oxygen atoms and nitrogen molecules, leaving the atom or molecule with a net positive charge (an *ion*). The term *ionosphere* is commonly applied to the layers above 80 km. The Aurora Borealis and Aurora Australis are produced by the penetration of ionizing particles through the atmosphere from about 300 km to 80 km, particularly in zones about 10 to 20° latitude from the earth's magnetic poles. On occasion, however, aurora may appear at heights up to 1000 km, demonstrating the immense extension of a rarefied atmosphere.

5 Exosphere and magnetosphere

The base of the exosphere is between about 500 km and 750 km. Here atoms of oxygen, hydrogen and helium (about 1 per cent of which are ionized) form the tenuous atmosphere, and the gas laws (see B, this chapter) cease to be valid. Neutral helium and hydrogen atoms, which have low atomic weights, can escape into space since the chance of molecular collisions deflecting them downward becomes less with increasing height. Hydrogen is replaced by the breakdown of water vapour and methane (CH_4) near the mesopause, while helium is produced by the action of cosmic radiation on nitrogen and from the slow but steady breakdown of radioactive elements in the earth's crust.

Ionized particles increase in frequency through the exosphere and, beyond about 200 km, in the magnetosphere there are only electrons (negative) and protons (positive) derived from the solar wind – which is a plasma of electrically conducting gas.

SUMMARY

The atmosphere is a mixture of gases with constant proportions up to 80 km or more. The exceptions are ozone, which is concentrated in the lower stratosphere, and water vapour in the lower troposphere. The principal greenhouse gas is water vapour. Carbon dioxide, methane and other trace gases have increased since the Industrial Revolution, especially in the twentieth century due to the combustion of fossil fuels, industrial processes and other anthropogenic effects, but larger natural fluctuations occurred during the geologic past.

Reactive gases include nitrogen and sulphur and chlorine species. These play important roles in acid precipitation and ozone destruction. Acid precipitation (by wet or dry deposition) results from the reaction of cloud droplets with emissions of SO_2 and NO_x. There are large geographical variations in acid deposition. The processes leading to destruction of stratospheric ozone are complex, but the roles of nitrogen oxides and chlorine radicals are very important in causing polar ozone holes. Aerosols in the atmosphere originate from natural and anthropogenic sources and they play an important but complex role in climate.

Air is highly compressible, so that half of its mass occurs in the lowest 5 km, and pressure decreases logarithmically with height from an average sea-level value of 1013 mb. The vertical structure of the atmosphere comprises three relatively warm layers – the lower troposphere, the stratopause and the upper thermosphere – separated by a cold layer above the tropopause (in the lower stratosphere), and the mesopause. The temperature profile is determined by atmospheric absorption of solar radiation, and the decrease of density with height.

DISCUSSION TOPICS

- What properties distinguish the different layers of the atmosphere?
- What differences would exist in a dry atmosphere compared with the real atmosphere?
- What role is played by water vapour, ozone, carbon dioxide, methane and CFCs in the radiation balance of the atmosphere?
- Given the strong pressure gradient upward from the surface, why is there no large-scale upward flow of air?

FURTHER READING

Books

Andreae, M. O. and Schimel, D. S. (1989) *Exchange of Trace Gases Between Terrestrial Ecosystems and the Atmosphere*, J. Wiley & Sons, Chicester, 347pp. [Detailed technical treatment.]

Bolin, B., Degens, E. T., Kempe, S. and Ketner, P. (eds) (1979) *The Global Carbon Cycle* (SCOPE 13), J. Wiley & Sons, Chichester, 528pp. [Important early overview.]

Bolin, B., Döös, B. R., Jäger, J. and Warrick, R. A. (eds) (1986) *The Greenhouse Effect, Climatic Change, and Ecosystems* (SCOPE 29), J. Wiley & Sons, Chichester, 541pp.

Bridgman, H. A. (1990) *Global Air Pollution: Problems for the 1990s*, Belhaven Press, London, 201pp. [Broad survey of air pollution causes and processes by a geographer; includes greenhouse gases.]

Brimblecombe, P. (1986) *Air: Composition and Chemistry*, Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, 224pp.

Craig, R. A. (1965) *The Upper Atmosphere: Meteorology and Physics*, Academic Press, New York, 509pp. [Classic text on the upper atmosphere, prior to the recogntion of the ozone problem.]

Crowley, T. J. and North, G. R. (1991) *Paleoclimatology*, Oxford University Press, New York and Oxford, 339pp. [Thorough, modern overview of climate history.]

Houghton, J. T., Jenkins, G. J. and Ephraums, J. J. (eds) (1990) *Climate Change: The IPCC Scientific Assessment*, Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, 365pp. [The first comprehensive assessment of global climate change.]

Houghton, J. Y. *et al*. (2001) *Climate Change 2001. The Scientific Basis*, Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, 881pp. [The third IPCC assessment.]

Kellogg, W. W. and Schware, R. (1981) *Climate Change and Society*, Westview Press, Boulder, CO, 178pp. [Early coverage of the societal implications of climate change.]

NERC (1989) *Our Future World: Global Environmental Research*, NERC, London, 28pp. [Brief overview of major issues.]

Rex, D. F. (ed.) (1969) *Climate of the Free Atmosphere, Vol.1: World Survey of Climatology*, Elsevier, Amsterdam, 450 pp. [Useful reference on atmospheric structure and the stratosphere.]

Roland, F. S. and Isaksen, I. S. A. (eds) (1988) *The Changing Atmosphere*, J. Wiley & Sons, Chichester, 296 pp. [Treats atmospheric chemistry, especially trace gases, aerosols, tropospheric pollution and acidification.]

Articles

Bach, W. (1976) Global air pollution and climatic change. *Rev. Geophys. Space Phys*. 14, 429–74.

Bojkov, R. D. and Fioletov, V. E. (1995) Estimating the global ozone characteristics during the last 30 years. *J. Geophys. Res.* 100 (D8), 16, 537–51.

Bojkov, R. D. *et al*. (2002) Vertical ozone distribution characteristics deduced from ~44,000 re-evaluated Umkehr profiles (1957–2000). *Met. Atmos. Phys.* 79(3–4), 1217–58.

Bolle, H-J., Seiler, W. and Bolin, B. (1986) Other greenhouse gases and aerosols. In Bolin, B. *et al*. (eds) *The Greenhouse Effect, Climatic Change, and Ecosystems*, John Wiley & Sons, Chichester, pp. 157–203.

Brugge, R. (1996) Back to basics: Atmospheric stability. Part I – Basic concepts. *Weather* 51(4), 134–40.

Defant, F. R. and Taba, H. (1957) The threefold structure of the atmosphere and the characteristics of the tropopause. *Tellus* 9, 259–74.

Hales, J. (1996) Scientific background for AMS policy statement on atmospheric ozone. *Bull. Amer. Met. Soc.* 77(6), 1249–53.

Hare, F. K. (1962) The stratosphere. *Geog. Rev*. 52, 525–47.

Hastenrath, S. L. (1968) Der regionale und jahrzeithliche Wandel des vertikalen Temperaturgradienten und seine Behandlung als Wärmhaushaltsproblem. *Meteorologische Rundschau* 1, 46–51.

Husar, R.B. *et al*. (2001) Asian dust events of April 1998. *J. Geophys. Res*. 106(D16), 18317–330.

Jiang, Y. B., Yung, Y. L. and Zurek, R. W. (1996) Decadal evolution of the Antarctic ozone hole. *J. Geophys. Res*. 101(D4), 8985–9000.

Kondratyev, K. Y. and Moskalenko, N. I. (1984) The role of carbon dioxide and other minor gaseous components and aerosols in the radiation budget. In Houghton, J. T. (ed.) *The Global Climate*, Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, pp. 225–33.

LaMarche, V. C., Jr. and Hirschboeck, K. K. (1984) Frost rings in trees as records of major volcanic eruptions. *Nature* 307, 121–6.

Lashof, D. A. and Ahnja, D. R. (1990) Relative contributions of greenhouse gas emissions to global warming. *Nature* 344, 529–31.

London, J. (1985) The observed distribution of atmospheric ozone and its variations. In Whitten, R. C. and Prasad, T. S. (eds) *Ozone in the Free Atmosphere*, Van Nostrand Reinhold, New York, pp. 11–80.

McElroy, M. B. and Salawitch, R. J. (1989) Changing composition of the global stratosphere. *Science* 243, 763–70.

Machta, L. (1972) The role of the oceans and biosphere in the carbon dioxide cycle. In Dyrssen, D. and Jagner, D. (eds) *The Changing Chemistry of the Oceans*, Nobel Symposium 20, Wiley, New York, pp. 121–45.

Mason, B. J. (1990) Acid rain – cause and consequence. *Weather* 45, 70–79.

Neuendorffer, A. C. (1996) Ozone monitoring with the TIROS-N operational vertical sounders. *J. Geophys. Res.* 101(D13), 8807–28.

Paffen, K. (1967) Das Verhältniss der Tages–zur Jahreszeitlichen Temperaturschwankung. *Erdkunde* 21, 94–111.

Pearce, F. (1989) Methane: the hidden greenhouse gas. *New Scientist* 122, 37–41.

Plass, G. M. (1959) Carbon dioxide and climate. *Sci. American* 201, 41–7.

Prather, M. and Enhalt, D. (with 10 lead authors and 57 contributing authors) (2001) Atmospheric chemistry and greenhouse gases. In Houghton, J.T. *et al*. *Climate Change 2001. The Scientific Basis*, Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, pp. 239–87.

Prospero, J.M. (2001) African dust in America. *Geotimes* 46(11), 24–7.

Ramanathan, V., Cicerone, R. J., Singh, H. B. and Kiehl, J. T. (1985) Trace gas trends and their potential role in climatic change. *J. Geophys. Res*. 90(D3), 5547–66.

Ramanathan, V., Crutzen, P. J., Kiehl, J. T. and Rosenfeld, D. (2001) Aerosols, climate, and the hydrologic cycle. *Science* 294 (5549): 2119–24.

Rampino, M. R. and Self, S. (1984) The atmospheric effects of El Chichón. *Sci. American* 250(1), 34–43.

Raval, A. and Ramanathan, V. (1989) Observational determination of the greenhouse effect. *Nature* 342, 758–61.

Robock, A. and Matson, M. (1983) Circumglobal transport of the El Chichón volcanic dust cloud. *Science* 221, 195–7.

Rodhe, H. (1990) A comparison of the contribution of various gases to the greenhouse effect. *Science* 244, 763–70.

Russell, F. A. R. and Archibald, E. D. (1888) On the unusual optical phenomena of the atmosphere, 1883–6, including twilight effects, coronal appearances, sky haze, coloured suns, moons, etc. In *The Eruption of Krakatoa, and Subsequent Phenomena*, Royal Society, Krakatoa Committee, Tubner & Co, London, pp. 151–463.

Schimel, D. *et al*. (1996) Radiative forcing of climate change. In Houghton, J. T. *et al*. (eds) *Climate Change 1995. The Science of Climate Change*, Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, pp. 65–131.

Shanklin, J.D. (2001) Back to basics: the ozone hole. *Weather* 56, 222–30.

Shine, K. (1990) Effects of CFC substitutes. *Nature* 344, 492–3.

Simkin, T. and Fiske, R. S. (1983) Krakatau 1883: a centennial retrospective on the eruption and its atmospheric effects. *Weatherwise* 36, 244–54.

Slinn, W. G. N. (1983) Air-to-sea transfer of particles. In Liss, P. S. and Slinn, W. G. N. (eds) *Air–Sea Exchange of Gases and Particles*, D. Reidel, Dordrecht, pp. 299–407.

Solomon, S. (1988) The mystery of the Antarctic ozone hole. *Rev. Geophys*. 26, 131–48.

Staehelin, J., Harris, N.R.P., Appenzeller, C. and Eberhard, J. (2001) Ozone trends: a review. *Rev. Geophys*. 39(2), 231–90.

Strangeways, I. (2002) Back to basics: the 'met. enclosure': Part 8(a) – Baometric pressure, mercury barometers. *Weather* 57(4), 132–9.

Tetlow-Smith, A. (1995) Environmental factors affecting global atmospheric methane concentrations. *Prog. Phys. Geog*. 19, 322–35.

Thompson, R. D. (1995) The impact of atmospheric aerosols on global climate. *Prog. Phys. Geog*. 19, 336–50.

Trenberth, K. E., Houghton, J. T. and Meira Filho, L. G. (1996) The climate system: an overview. In Houghton, J.T. *et al*. (eds) *Climate Change 1995. The Science of Climate Change*, Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, pp. 51–64.

Webb, A. R. (1995) To burn or not to burn. *Weather* 50(5), 150–4.

World Meteorological Organization (1964) Regional basic networks. *WMO Bulletin* 13, 146–7.

3

Solar radiation and the global energy budget

Learning objectives
When you have read this chapter you will:

- ☐ Know the characteristics of solar radiation and the electromagnetic spectrum,
- ☐ Know the effects of the atmosphere on solar and terrestrial radiation,
- ☐ Understand the cause of the atmospheric greenhouse effect,
- ☐ Understand the earth's heat budget and the importance of horizontal transfers of energy as sensible and latent heat.

This chapter describes how radiation from the sun enters the atmosphere and reaches the surface. The effects on solar radiation of absorbing gases and the scattering effects of aerosols are examined. Then terrestrial long-wave (infra-red) radiation is discussed in order to explain the radiation balance. At the surface, an energy balance exists due to the additional transfers of sensible and latent heat to the atmosphere. The effects of heating on surface temperature characteristics are then presented.

A SOLAR RADIATION

The source of the energy injected into our atmosphere is the sun, which is continually shedding part of its mass by radiating waves of electromagnetic energy and high-energy particles into space. This constant emission represents all the energy available to the earth (except for a small amount emanating from the radioactive decay of earth minerals). The amount of energy received at the top of the atmosphere is affected by four factors: solar output, the sun–earth distance, the altitude of the sun, and day length.

1 Solar output

Solar energy originates from nuclear reactions within the sun's hot core (16×10^6 K), and is transmitted to the sun's surface by radiation and hydrogen convection. Visible solar radiation (light) comes from a 'cool' (~6000 K) outer surface layer called the *photosphere*. Temperatures rise again in the outer chromosphere (10,000 K) and corona (10^6 K), which is continually expanding into space. The outflowing hot gases (plasma) from the sun, referred to as the *solar wind* (with a speed of 1.5×10^6 km hr^{-1}), interact with the earth's magnetic field and upper atmosphere. The earth intercepts both the normal electromagnetic radiation and energetic particles emitted during solar flares.

The sun behaves virtually as a *black body*; i.e. it absorbs all energy received and in turn radiates energy

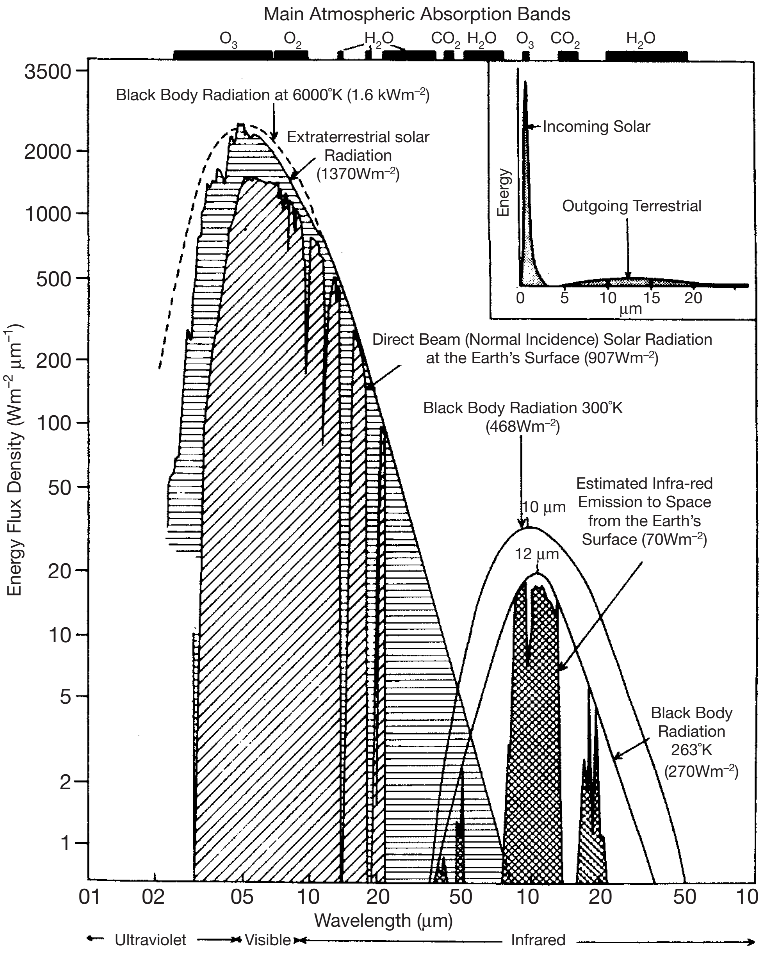


Figure 3.1 Spectral distribution of solar and terrestrial radiation, plotted logarithmically, together with the main atmospheric absorption bands. The cross-hatched areas in the infra-red spectrum indicate the 'atmospheric windows' where radiation escapes to space. The black-body radiation at 6000 K is that proportion of the flux which would be incident on the top of the atmosphere. The inset shows the same curves for incoming and outgoing radiation with the wavelength plotted arithmetically on an arbitrary vertical scale.

Source: Mostly after Sellers (1965).

at the maximum rate possible for a given temperature. The energy emitted at a particular wavelength by a perfect radiator of given temperature is described by a relationship due to Max Planck. The black-body curves in Figure 3.1 illustrate this relationship. The area under each curve gives the total energy emitted by a black body (F); its value is found by integration of Planck's equation, known as Stefan's Law:

$$F = \sigma T^4$$

where $\sigma = 5.67 \times 10^{-8}\ W\ m^{-2}\ K^{-4}$ (the Stefan–Boltzmann constant), i.e. the energy emitted is proportional to the fourth power of the absolute temperature of the body (T).

The total solar output to space, assuming a temperature of 5760 K for the sun, is 3.84×10^{26}W, but only a tiny fraction of this is intercepted by the earth, because the energy received is inversely proportional to the square of the solar distance (150 million km). The energy received at the top of the atmosphere on a surface perpendicular to the solar beam for mean solar distance is termed the *solar constant* (see Note 1). Satellite measurements since 1980 indicate a value of about 1366 W m $^{-2}$, with an absolute uncertainty of about ± 2 W m $^{-2}$. Figure 3.1 shows the wavelength range of solar (short-wave) radiation and the infra-red (long-wave) radiation emitted by the earth and atmosphere. For solar radiation, about 7 per cent is ultraviolet (0.2-0.4 μm), 41 per cent visible light (0.4–0.7 μm) and 52 per cent near-infra-red (>0.7 μm); (1 μm = 1 micrometre = 10^{-6} m). The figure illustrates the black-body radiation curves for 6000 K at the top of the atmosphere (which slightly exceeds the observed extraterrestrial radiation), for 300 K, and for 263 K. The mean temperature of the earth's surface is about 288 K (15°C) and of the atmosphere about 250 K (–23°C). Gases do not behave as black bodies, and Figure 3.1 shows the absorption bands in the atmosphere, which cause its emission to be much less than that from an equivalent black body. The wavelength of maximum emission (λ_{max}) varies inversely with the absolute temperature of the radiating body:

$$\lambda_{max} = \frac{2897}{T} 10^{-6} \text{ m (Wien's Law)}$$

Thus solar radiation is very intense and is mainly shortwave between about 0.2 and 4.0 μm, with a maximum (per unit wavelength) at 0.5 μm because $T \sim 6000$ K. The much weaker terrestrial radiation with $T \approx 280$ K has a peak intensity at about 10 μm and a range from about 4 to 100 μm.

The solar constant undergoes small periodic variations of just over 1 Wm^{-2} related to sunspot activity. Sunspot number and positions change in a regular manner, known as sunspot cycles. Satellite measurements during the latest cycle show a small decrease in solar output as sunspot number approached its *minimum*, and a subsequent recovery. *Sunspots* are dark (*i.e.* cooler) areas visible on the sun's surface. Although sunspots are cool, bright areas of activity known as *faculae* (or *plages*), that have higher temperatures, surround them. The net effect is for solar output to vary in parallel with the number of sunspots. Thus the solar 'irradiance' decreases by about 1.1 Wm^{-2} from sunspot maximum to minimum. Sunspot cycles have wavelengths averaging 11 years (the Schwabe cycle, varying between 8 and 13 years), the 22-year (Hale) magnetic cycle, much less importantly 37.2 years (18.6 years – the luni–solar oscillation), and 88 years (Gleissberg). Figure 3.2 shows the estimated variation of sunspot activity since 1610. Between the thirteenth and eighteenth centuries sunspot activity was generally low, except during AD 1350–1400 and 1600–1645. Output within the ultraviolet part of the spectrum shows considerable variability, with up to twenty times more ultraviolet radiation emitted at certain wavelengths during a sunspot maximum than a minimum.

How to translate sunspot activity into solar radiation and terrestrial temperatures is a matter of some dispute. It has been suggested that the sun is more active when the sunspot cycle length is short, but this is disputed. However, anomalies of temperature over northern hemisphere land areas do correlate inversely with cycle length between 1860 and 1985. Prolonged time-spans of sunspot minima (e.g. AD 1645–1715, the Maunder Minimum) and maxima (e.g. 1895–1940 and post-1970) produce measurable global cooling and warming, respectively. Solar radiation may have been reduced by 0.25 per cent during the Maunder Minimum. It is suggested that almost three-quarters of the variations in global temperature between 1610 and 1800 were attributable to fluctuations in solar radiation and during the twentieth century there is evidence for a modest contribution from solar forcing. Shorter term relationships are more difficult to support, but mean annual temperatures have been correlated with the combined 10 to 11 and 18.6-year solar cycles. Assuming that the earth behaves as a black body, a persistent anomaly of 1 per cent in the solar constant could change the effective mean temperature of the earth's surface by as much as 0.6°C. However, the observed fluctuations of about 0.1 per cent would change the mean global temperature by ≤0.06°C (based on calculations of radiative equilibrium).

2 Distance from the sun

The annually changing distance of the earth from the sun produces seasonal variations in solar energy received by the earth. Owing to the eccentricity of the earth's orbit around the sun, the receipt of solar energy on a surface normal to the beam is 7 per cent more on 3 January at the perihelion than on 4 July at the aphelion (Figure 3.3). In theory (that is, discounting the interposition of the atmosphere and the difference in degree of conductivity between large land and sea masses), this difference should produce an increase in the effective January world surface temperatures of about 4°C over those of July. It should also make northern winters warmer than those in the southern hemisphere, and southern summers warmer than those in the northern hemisphere. In practice, atmospheric heat circulation and the effects of continentality mask this global tendency, and the actual seasonal contrast between the hemispheres is reversed. Moreover, the northern summer half-year (21 March to 22 September) is five days longer than the austral summer (22 September to 21 March). This difference slowly changes; about 10,000 years ago the aphelion occurred in the northern hemisphere winter, and northern summers received 3 to

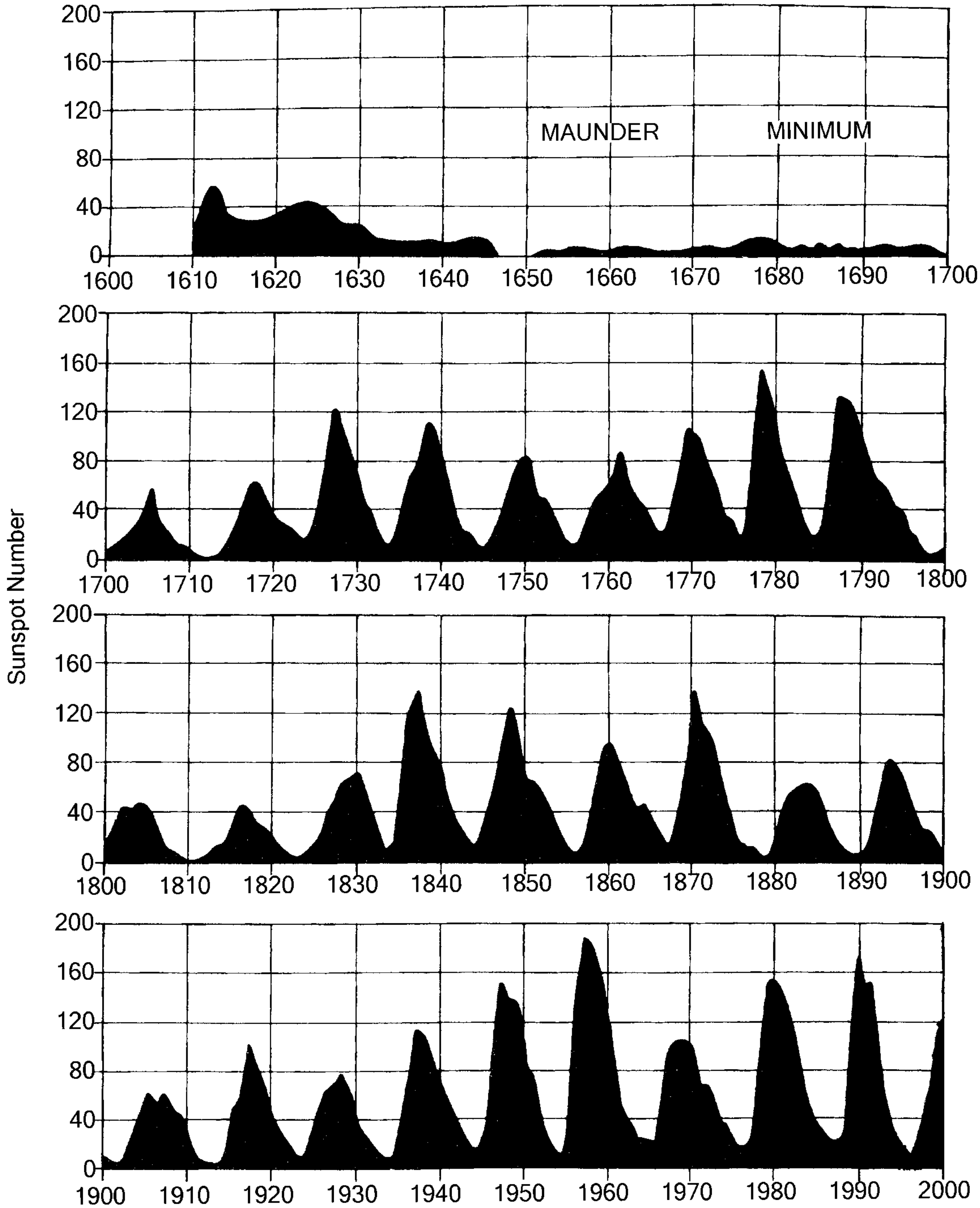


Figure 3.2 Yearly sunspot numbers for the sun's visible surface for the period 1700 to 2000.

Sources: Reproduced by courtesy of the National Geophysical Data Center, NOAA, Boulder, CO. Data before AD 1700 courtesy of Foukal (1990) and *Scientific American*.

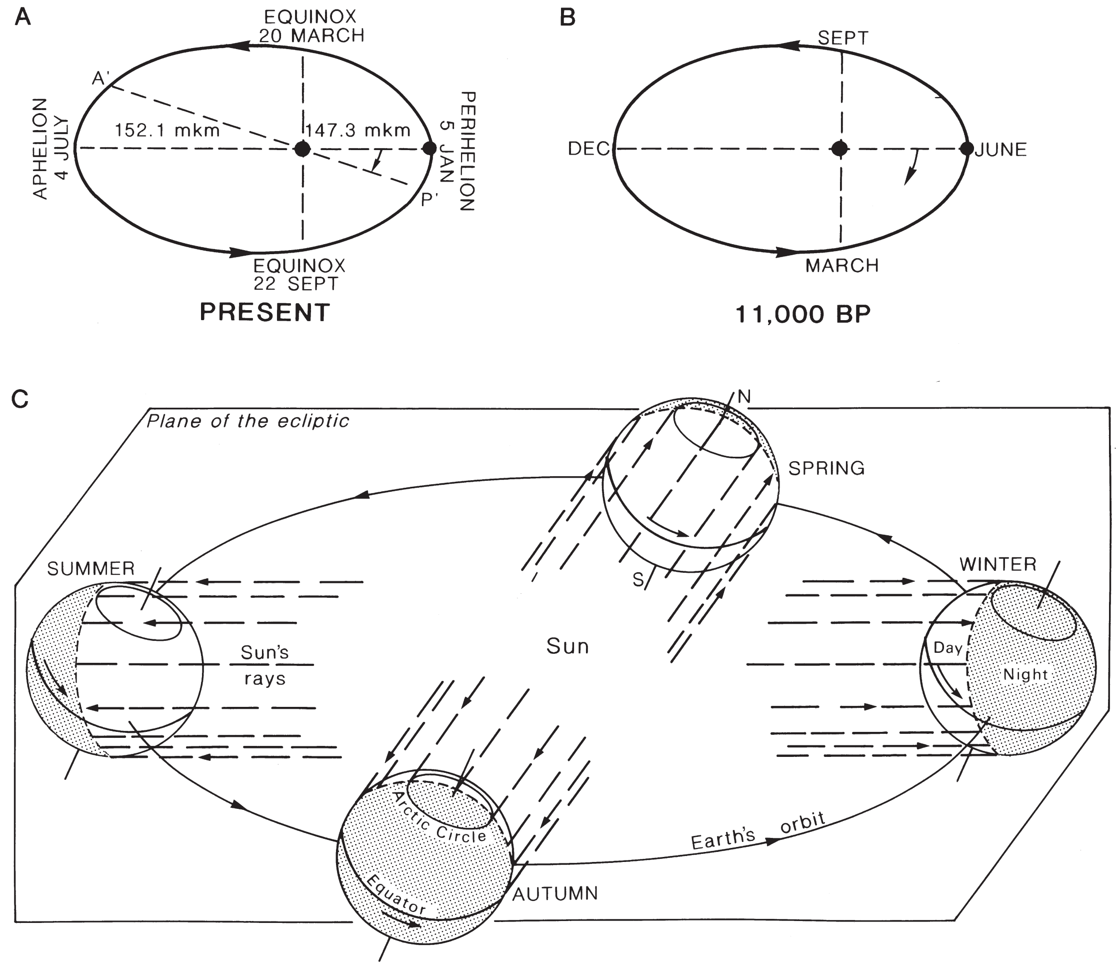

A
EQUINOX
20 MARCH
A'
APHELION
4 JULY
152.1 mkm
147.3 mkm
PERIHELION
5 JAN
P'
EQUINOX
22 SEPT
PRESENT
B
SEPT
DEC
JUNE
MARCH
11,000 BP
C
Plane of the ecliptic
N
SPRING
SUMMER
WINTER
S
Sun's
rays
Sun
Day
Night
Arctic Circle
Equator
Earth's orbit
AUTUMN

Figure 3.3 Perihelion shifts. (A) The present timing of perihelion. (B) The direction of its shift and the situation at 11,000 years BP. (C) The geometry of the present seasons (northern hemisphere).

Source: Partly after Strahler (1965).

4 per cent more radiation than today (Figure 3.3B). This same pattern will return about 10,000 years from now.

Figure 3.4 graphically illustrates the seasonal variations of energy receipt with latitude. Actual amounts of radiation received on a horizontal surface outside the atmosphere are given in Table 3.1. The intensity on a horizontal surface (I_h) is determined from:

$$I_h = I_0 \sin d$$

where I_0 = the solar constant and d = the angle between the surface and the solar beam.

3 Altitude of the sun

The altitude of the sun (i.e. the angle between its rays and a tangent to the earth's surface at the point of observation) also affects the amount of solar radiation received at the surface of the earth. The greater the sun's altitude, the more concentrated is the radiation intensity per unit area at the earth's surface and the shorter is the path length of the beam through the atmosphere, which decreases the atmospheric absorption. There are, in addition, important variations with solar altitude of the proportion of radiation reflected by the surface, particularly in the case of a water surface (see B.5, this

Table 3.1 Daily solar radiation on a horizontal surface outside the atmosphere: W m^{-2}.

Date	*90°N*	*70*	*50*	*30*	*0*	*30*	*50*	*70*	*90°S*
21 Dec	0	0	86	227	410	507	514	526	559
21 Mar	0	149	280	378	436	378	280	149	0
22 June	524	492	482	474	384	213	80	0	0
23 Sept	0	147	276	373	430	372	276	147	0

Source: After Berger (1996).

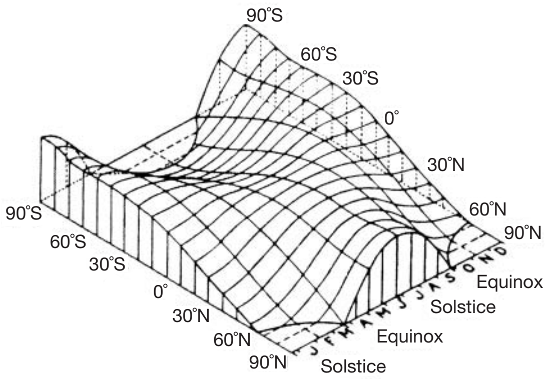


Figure 3.4 The variations of solar radiation with latitude and season for the whole globe, assuming no atmosphere. This assumption explains the abnormally high amounts of radiation received at the poles in summer, when daylight lasts for twenty-four hours each day.

Source: After W. M. Davis.

chapter). The principal factors that determine the sun's altitude are, of course, the latitude of the site, the time of day and the season (see Figure 3.3). At the June solstice, the sun's altitude is a constant 23½° throughout the day at the North Pole and the sun is directly overhead at noon at the Tropic of Cancer (23½°N).

4 Length of day

The length of daylight also affects the amount of radiation that is received. Obviously, the longer the time the sun shines the greater is the quantity of radiation that a given portion of the earth will receive. At the equator, for example, the day length is close to 12 hours in all months, whereas at the poles it varies between 0 and 24 hours from winter (polar night) to summer (see Figure 3.3).

The combination of all these factors produces the pattern of receipt of solar energy at the top of the atmosphere shown in Figure 3.4. The polar regions receive their maximum amounts of solar radiation during their summer solstices, which is the period of continuous day. The amount received during the December solstice in the southern hemisphere is theoretically greater than that received by the northern hemisphere during the June solstice, due to the previously mentioned elliptical path of the earth around the sun (see Table 3.1). The equator has two radiation maxima at the equinoxes and two minima at the solstices, due to the apparent passage of the sun during its double annual movement between the northern and southern hemispheres.

B SURFACE RECEIPT OF SOLAR RADIATION AND ITS EFFECTS

1 Energy transfer within the earth–atmosphere system

So far, we have described the distribution of solar radiation as if it were all available at the earth's surface. This is, of course, unrealistic because of the effect of the atmosphere on energy transfer. Heat energy can be transferred by three mechanisms:

1 *Radiation*: Electromagnetic waves transfer energy (both heat and light) between two bodies, without the necessary aid of an intervening material medium, at a speed of 300×10^6 m s^{-1} (i.e. the speed of light). This is so with solar energy through space, whereas the earth's atmosphere allows the passage of radiation only at certain wavelengths and restricts that at others.

Radiation entering the atmosphere may be absorbed in certain wavelengths by atmospheric gases but, as shown in Figure 3.1, most short-wave radiation is transmitted without absorption. Scattering occurs if the direction of a photon of radiation is changed by interaction with atmospheric gases and aerosols. Two types of scattering are distinguished. For gas molecules smaller than the radiation wavelength (λ), *Rayleigh scattering* occurs in all directions (i.e. it is *isotropic*) and is proportional to ($1/\lambda^4$). As a result, the scattering of blue light ($\lambda \sim 0.4$ µm) is an order of magnitude (i.e. × 10) greater than that of red light ($\lambda \sim 0.7$ µm), thus creating the daytime blue sky. However, when water droplets or aerosol particles, with similar sizes (0.1–0.5 µm radius) to the radiation wavelength are present, most of the light is scattered forward. This *Mie scattering* gives the greyish appearance of polluted atmospheres.

Within a cloud, or between low clouds and a snow-covered surface, radiation undergoes multiple scattering. In the latter case, the 'white-out' conditions typical of polar regions in summer (and mid-latitude snowstorms) are experienced, when surface features and the horizon become indistinguishable.

2 *Conduction*: By this mechanism, heat passes through a substance from a warmer to a colder part through the transfer of adjacent molecular vibrations. Air is a poor conductor so this type of heat transfer is negligible in the atmosphere, but it is important in the ground. The thermal conductivity increases as the water content of a given soil increases and is greater in a frozen soil than in an unfrozen one.

3 *Convection*: This occurs in fluids (including gases) that are able to circulate internally and distribute heated parts of the mass. It is the chief means of atmospheric heat transfer due to the low viscosity of air and its almost continual motion. *Forced convection* (mechanical turbulence) occurs when eddies form in airflow over uneven surfaces. In the presence of surface heating, *free* (thermal) *convection* develops.

Convection transfers energy in two forms. The first is the *sensible heat* content of the air (called enthalpy by physicists), which is transferred directly by the rising and mixing of warmed air. It is defined as c_pT, where T is the temperature and c_p (= 1004 J kg^{-1} K^{-1}) is the specific heat at constant pressure (the heat absorbed by unit mass for unit temperature increase). Sensible heat is also transferred by conduction. The second form of energy transfer by convection is indirect, involving *latent heat*. Here, there is a phase change but no temperature change. Whenever water is converted into water vapour by evaporation (or boiling), heat is required. This is referred to as the latent heat of vaporization (L). At 0°C, L is 2.50×10^6 J kg^{-1} of water. More generally,

$$L\,(10^6\,J\,\mathrm{kg}^{-1}) = (2.5 - 0.00235T)$$

where T is in °C. When water condenses in the atmosphere (see Chapter 4D), the same amount of latent heat is given off as is used for evaporation *at the same temperature*. Similarly, for melting ice at 0°C, the latent heat of fusion is required, which is 0.335×10^6 J kg^{-1}. If ice evaporates without melting, the latent heat of this sublimation process is 2.83×10^6 J kg^{-1} at 0°C (i.e. the sum of the latent heats of melting and vaporization). In all of these phase changes of water there is an energy transfer. We discuss other aspects of these processes in Chapter 4.

2 Effect of the atmosphere

Solar radiation is virtually all in the short-wavelength range, less than 4 µm (see Figure 3.1). About 18 per cent of the incoming energy is absorbed directly by ozone and water vapour. Ozone absorption is concentrated in three solar spectral bands (0.20–0.31, 0.31–0.35 and 0.45–0.85 µm), while water vapour absorbs to a lesser degree in several bands between 0.9 and 2.1 µm (see Figure 3.1). Solar wavelengths shorter than 0.285 µm scarcely penetrate below 20 km altitude, whereas those >0.295 µm reach the surface. Thus the 3 mm (equivalent) column of stratospheric ozone attenuates ultraviolet radiation almost entirely, except for a partial window around 0.20 µm, where radiation reaches the lower stratosphere. About 30 per cent of incoming solar radiation is immediately reflected back into space from the atmosphere, clouds and the earth's surface, leaving approximately 70 per cent to heat the earth and its atmosphere. The surface absorbs almost half of the incoming energy available at the top of the atmosphere and re-radiates it outward as long (infra-red) waves of greater than 3 µm (see Figure 3.1). Much of this re-radiated long-wave energy is then absorbed by the water vapour, carbon dioxide and ozone in the atmosphere, the rest escaping through atmospheric *windows* back into outer space, principally between 8 and 13 µm (see Figure 3.1). This retention of energy by the atmosphere is vital to most life forms, since otherwise the average

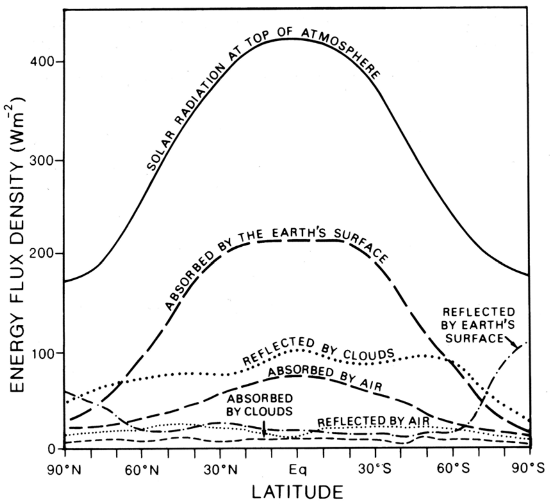


Figure 3.5 The average annual latitudinal disposition of solar radiation in W m^{-2}. Of 100 per cent radiation entering the top of the atmosphere, about 20 per cent is reflected back to space by clouds, 3 per cent by air (plus dust and water vapour), and 8 per cent by the earth's surface. Three per cent is absorbed by clouds, 18 per cent by the air, and 48 per cent by the earth.

Source: After Sellers (1965).

temperature of the earth's surface would fall by some 40°C!

The atmospheric scattering, noted above, gives rise to *diffuse* (or sky) radiation and this is sometimes measured separately from the direct beam radiation. On average, under cloud-free conditions the ratio of diffuse to total (or global) solar radiation is about 0.15–0.20 at the surface. For average cloudiness, the ratio is about 0.5 at the surface, decreasing to around 0.1 at 4 km, as a result of the decrease in cloud droplets and aerosols with altitude. During a total solar eclipse, experienced over much of western Europe in August 1999, the elimination of direct beam radiation caused diffuse radiation to drop from 680 W m^{-2} at 10.30 a.m. to only 14 W m^{-2} at 11.00 a.m. at Bracknell in southern England.

Figure 3.5 illustrates the relative roles of the atmosphere, clouds and the earth's surface in reflecting and absorbing solar radiation at different latitudes. (A more complete analysis of the heat budget of the earth–atmosphere system is given in D, this chapter.)

3 Effect of cloud cover

Thick and continuous cloud cover forms a significant barrier to the penetration of radiation. The drop in surface temperature often experienced on a sunny day when a cloud temporarily cuts off the direct solar radiation illustrates our reliance upon the sun's radiant energy. How much radiation is actually reflected by clouds depends on the amount of cloud cover and its thickness (Figure 3.6). The proportion of incident radiation that is reflected is termed the *albedo*, or reflection coefficient (expressed as a fraction or percentage). Cloud type affects the albedo. Aircraft measurements show that the albedo of a complete overcast ranges from 44 to 50 per cent for cirrostratus to 90 per cent for cumulonimbus. Average albedo values, as determined by satellites, aircraft and surface measurements, are summarized in Table 3.2 (see Note 2).

The total (or global) solar radiation received at the surface on cloudy days is

$$S = S_0 [b + (1 - b)(1 - c)]$$

where S_0 = global solar radiation for clear skies;
c = cloudiness (fraction of sky covered);
b = a coefficient depending on cloud type and thickness; and the depth of atmosphere through which the radiation must pass.

For mean monthly values for the United States, $b \approx 0.35$, so that

$$S \approx S_0 [1 - 0.65c]$$

Table 3.2 The average (integrated) albedo of various surfaces (0.3–0.4 μm).

Planet earth	0.31
Global surface	0.14–0.16
Global cloud	0.23
Cumulonimbus	0.9
Stratocumulus	0.6
Cirrus	0.4–0.5
Fresh snow	0.8–0.9
Melting snow	0.4–0.6
Sand	0.30–0.35
Grass, cereal crops	0.18–0.25
Deciduous forest	0.15–0.18
Coniferous forest	0.09–0.15
Tropical rainforest	0.07–0.15
Water bodies*	0.06–0.10

Note: *Increases sharply at low solar angles.

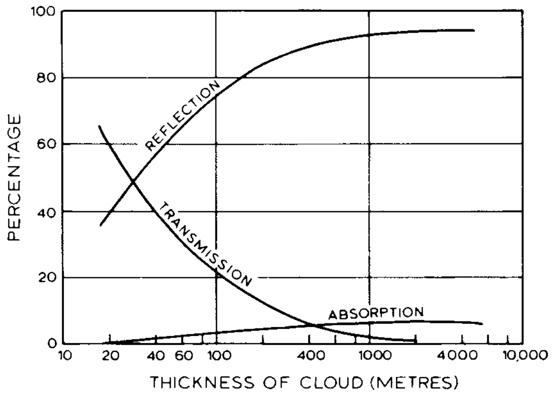


Figure 3.6 Percentage of reflection, absorption and transmission of solar radiation by cloud layers of different thickness.

Source: From Hewson and Longley (1944). Reprinted with permission. Copyright © CRC Press, Boca Raton, Florida.

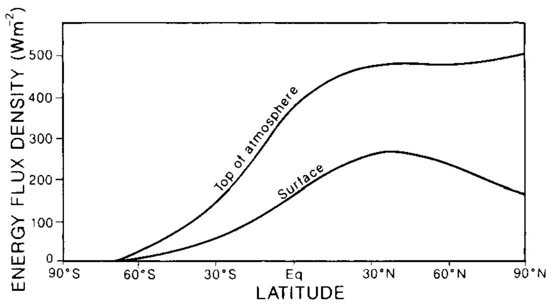


Figure 3.7 The average receipt of solar radiation with latitude at the top of the atmosphere and at the earth's surface during the June solstice.

The effect of cloud cover also operates in reverse, since it serves to retain much of the heat that would otherwise be lost from the earth by long-wave radiation throughout the day and night. In this way, cloud cover lessens appreciably the daily temperature range by preventing high maxima by day and low minima by night. As well as interfering with the transmission of radiation, clouds act as temporary thermal reservoirs because they absorb a certain proportion of the energy they intercept. The modest effects of cloud reflection and absorption of solar radiation are illustrated in Figures 3.5 to 3.7.

Global cloudiness is not yet known accurately. Ground-based observations are mostly at land stations and refer to a small (~ 250 km^2) area. Satellite estimates are derived from the reflected short-wave radiation and infra-red irradiance measurements, with various threshold assumptions for cloud presence/absence; typically they refer to a grid area of 2500 km^2 to 37,500 km^2. Surface-based observations tend to be about 10 per cent greater than satellite estimates due to the observer's perspective. Average winter and summer distributions of total cloud amount from surface observations are shown in Figure 3.8. The cloudiest areas are the Southern Ocean and the mid- to high-latitude North Pacific and North Atlantic storm tracks. Lowest amounts are over the Saharan–Arabian desert area (see Plate 1). Total global cloud cover is just over 60 per cent in January and July.

4 Effect of latitude

As Figure 3.4 has already shown, different parts of the earth's surface receive different amounts of solar radiation. The time of year is one factor controlling this, more radiation being received in summer than in winter because of the higher altitude of the sun and the longer days. Latitude is a very important control because this determines the duration of daylight and the distance travelled through the atmosphere by the oblique rays of the sun. However, actual calculations show the effect of the latter to be negligible near the poles, due apparently to the low vapour content of the air limiting tropospheric absorption. Figure 3.7 shows that in the upper atmosphere over the North Pole there is a marked maximum of solar radiation at the June solstice, yet only about 30 per cent is absorbed at the surface. This may be compared with the global average of 48 per cent of solar radiation being absorbed at the surface. The explanation lies in the high average cloudiness over the Arctic in summer and also in the high reflectivity of the snow and ice surfaces. This example illustrates the complexity of the radiation budget and the need to take into account the interaction of several factors.

A special feature of the latitudinal receipt of radiation is that the maximum temperatures experienced at the earth's surface do not occur at the equator, as one might expect, but at the tropics. A number of factors need to be taken into account. The apparent migration of the vertical sun is relatively rapid during its passage over the equator, but its rate slows down as it reaches the tropics. Between 6°N and 6°S the sun's rays remain almost vertically overhead for only thirty days during each of the spring and autumn equinoxes, allowing little time for any large buildup of surface heat and high temperatures. On the other hand, between 17.5° and 23.5° latitude the sun's rays shine down almost

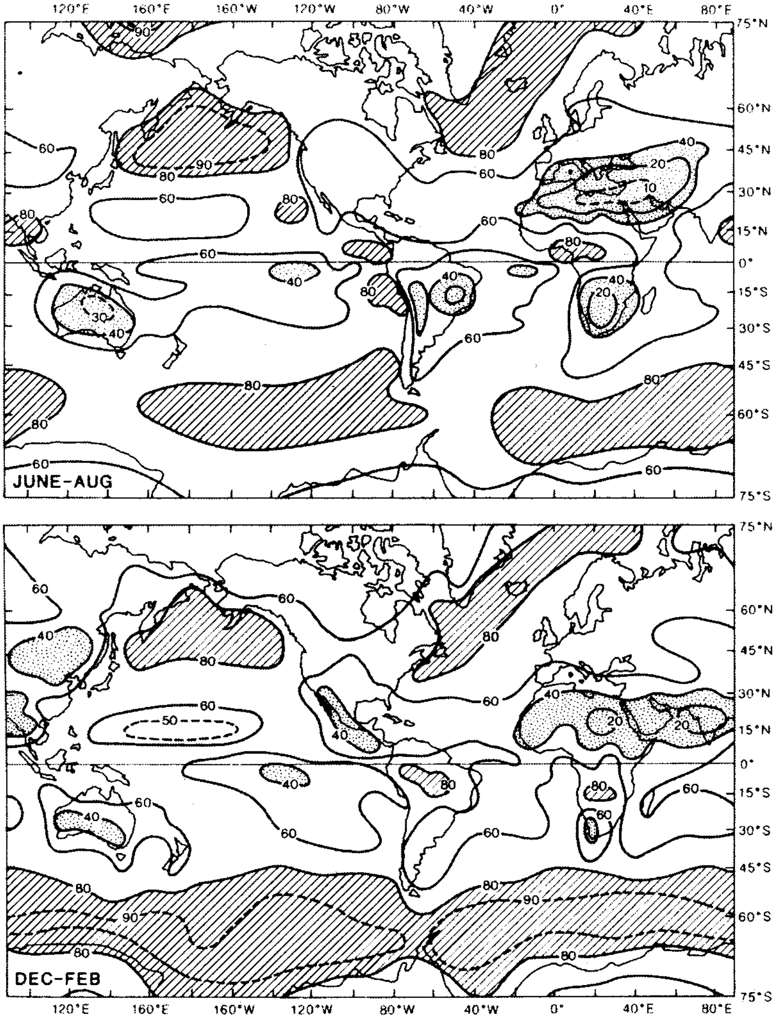


Figure 3.8 The global distribution of total cloud amount (per cent) derived from surface-based observations during the period 1971 to 1981, averaged for the months June to August (above) and December to February (below). High percentages are shaded and low percentages stippled.

Source: From London *et al*. (1989).

vertically for eighty-six consecutive days during the period of the solstice. This longer interval, combined with the fact that the tropics experience longer days than at the equator, makes the maximum zones of heating occur nearer the tropics than the equator. In the northern hemisphere, this poleward displacement of the zone of maximum heating is enhanced by the effect of *continentality* (see B.5, this chapter), while low cloudiness associated with the subtropical high-pressure belts is an additional factor. The clear skies allow large annual receipts of solar radiation in these areas. The net result of these influences is shown in Figure 3.9 in terms of the average annual solar radiation on a horizontal surface at ground level, and by Figure 3.10 in terms of the average daily maximum shade temperatures. Over land, the highest values occur at about 23°N and 10–15°S. Hence the mean annual *thermal equator* (i.e. the zone of maximum temperature) is located at about 5°N. Nevertheless, the mean air temperatures, reduced to mean sea-level, are related very broadly to latitude (see Figures 3.11A and B).

5 Effect of land and sea

Another important control on the effect of incoming solar radiation stems from the different ways in which land and sea are able to profit from it. Whereas water has a tendency to store the heat it receives, land, in contrast, quickly returns it to the atmosphere. There are several reasons for this.

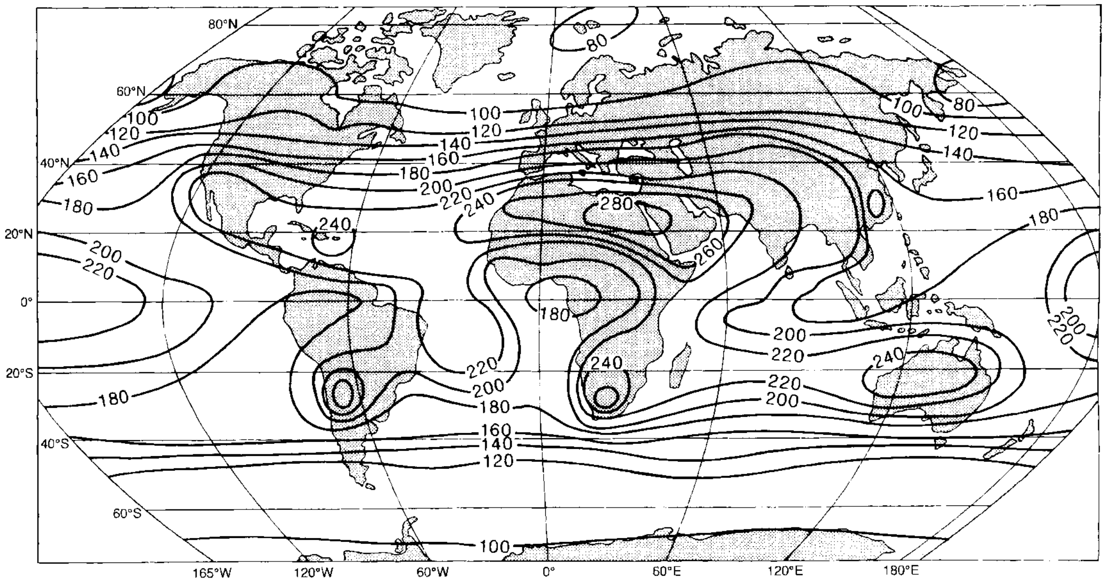

80°N
60°N
40°N
20°N
0°
20°S
40°S
60°S
165°W
120°W
60°W
0°
60°E
120°E
180°E
80
100
120
140
160
180
200
220
240
260
280
180
240
220
200
200
220
240
180
160
140
120
100

Figure 3.9 The mean annual global solar radiation ($Q + q$) (W m^{-2}) (i.e. on a horizontal surface at ground level). Maxima are found in the world's hot deserts, where as much as 80 per cent of the solar radiation annually incident on the top of the unusually cloud-free atmosphere reaches the ground.

Source: After Budyko *et al*. (1962).

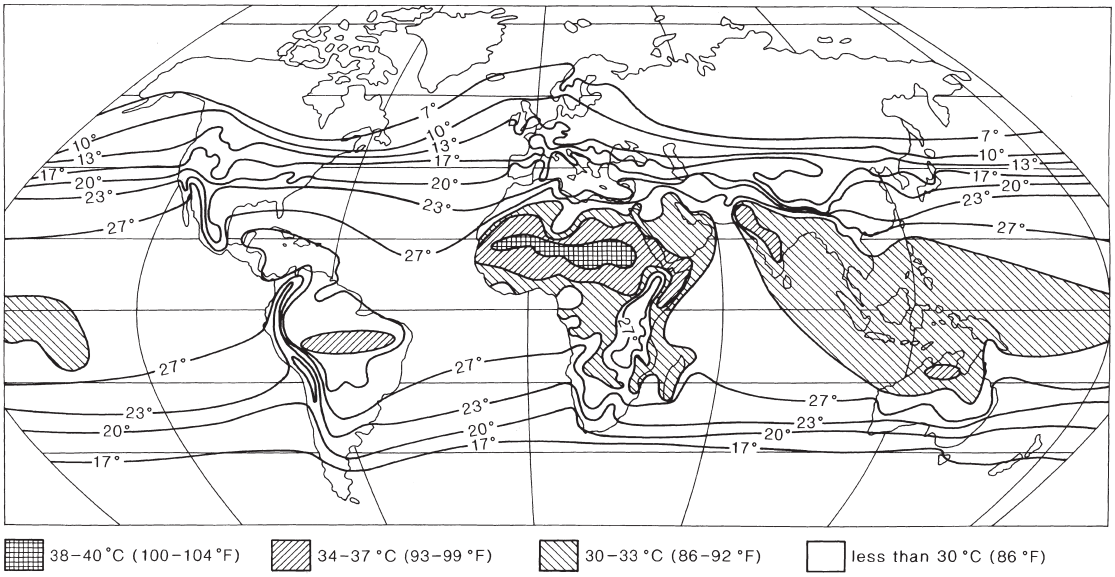

7°
10°
13°
17°
20°
23°
27°
27°
23°
20°
17°
38–40 °C (100–104 °F)
34–37 °C (93–99 °F)
30–33 °C (86–92 °F)
less than 30 °C (86 °F)

Figure 3.10 Mean daily maximum shade air temperature (C).

Source: After Ransom (1963).

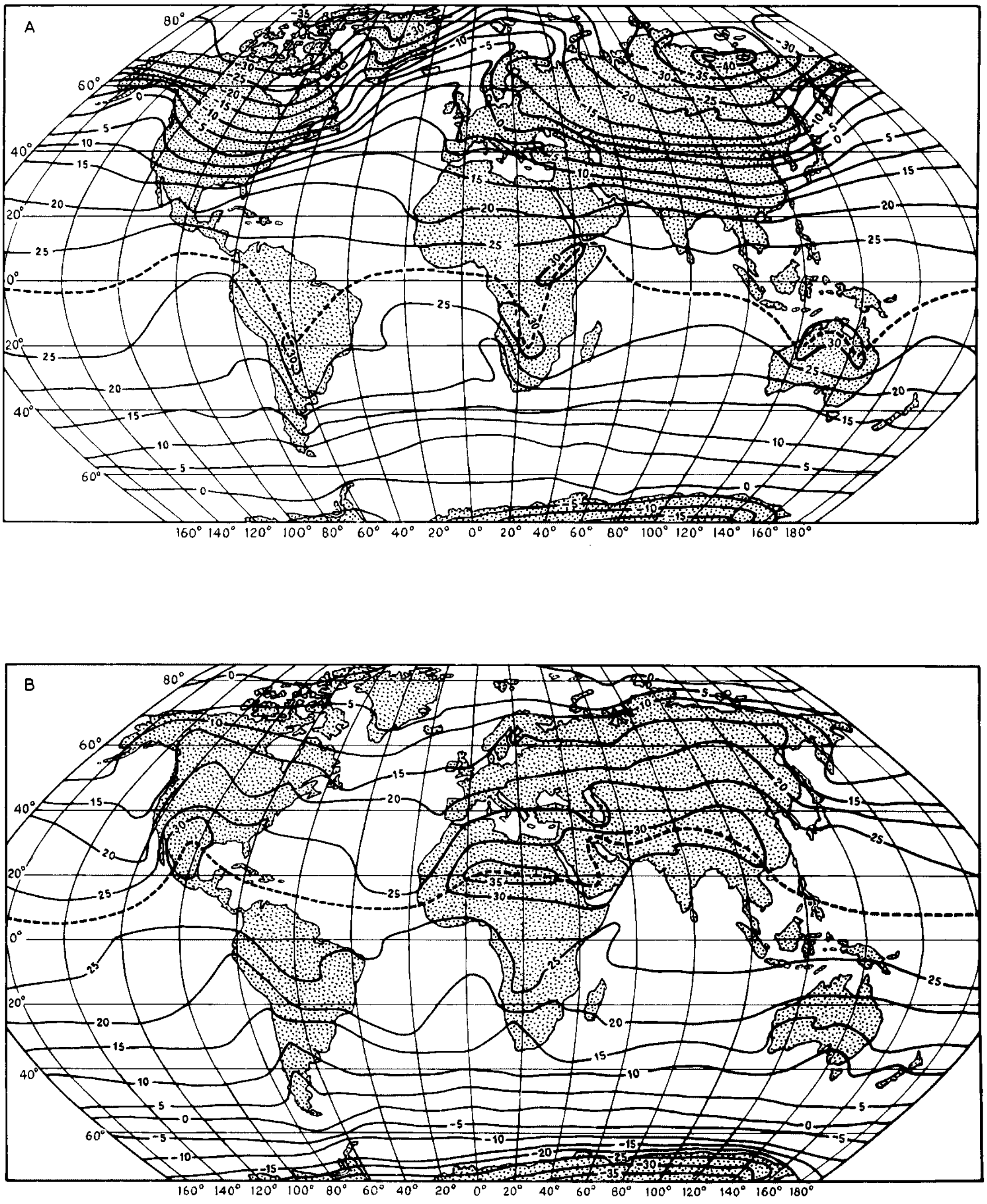

A
80°
60°
40°
20°
0°
20°
40°
60°
160° 140° 120° 100° 80° 60° 40° 20° 0° 20° 40° 60° 80° 100° 120° 140° 160° 180°
B
80°
60°
40°
20°
0°
20°
40°
60°
160° 140° 120° 100° 80° 60° 40° 20° 0° 20° 40° 60° 80° 100° 120° 140° 160° 180°

Figure 3.11 (A) Mean sea-level temperatures (°C) in January. The position of the thermal equator is shown approximately by the line dashes. (B) Mean sea-level temperatures (°C) in July. The position of the thermal equator is shown approximately by the line dashes.

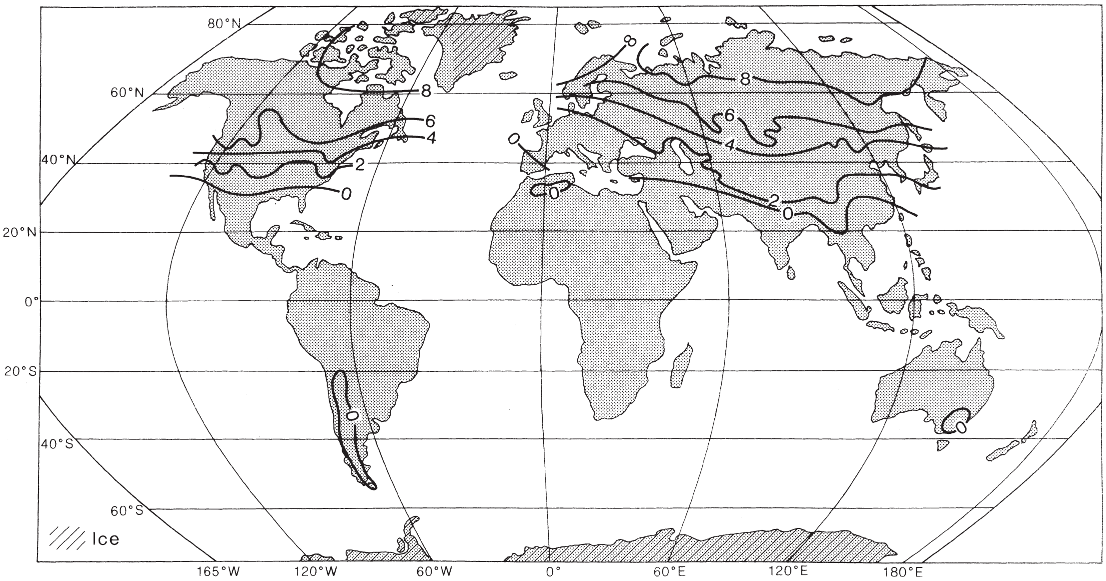


Figure 3.12 Average annual snow-cover duration (months).

Source: Henderson-Sellers and Wilson (1983).

A large proportion of the incoming solar radiation is reflected back into the atmosphere without heating the earth's surface. The proportion depends upon the type of surface (see Table 3.2). A sea surface reflects very little unless the angle of incidence of the sun's rays is large. The albedo for a calm water surface is only 2 to 3 per cent for a solar elevation angle exceeding 60°, but is more than 50 per cent when the angle is 15°. For land surfaces, the albedo is generally between 8 and 40 per cent of the incoming radiation. The figure for forests is about 9 to 18 per cent according to the type of tree and density of foliage (see Chapter 12C), for grass approximately 25 per cent, for cities 14 to 18 per cent, and for desert sand 30 per cent. Fresh snow may reflect as much as 90 per cent of solar radiation, but snow cover on vegetated, especially forested, surfaces is much less reflective (30 to 50 per cent). The long duration of snow cover on the northern continents (see Figure 3.12 and Plate A) causes much of the incoming radiation in winter to spring to be reflected. However, the global distribution of annual average surface albedo (Figure 3.13A) shows mainly the influence of the snow-covered Arctic sea ice and Antarctic ice sheet (compare Figure 3.13B for planetary albedo).

The global solar radiation absorbed at the surface is determined from measurements of radiation incident on the surface and its albedo (a). It may be expressed as

$$S(100 - a)$$

where the albedo is a percentage. A snow cover will absorb only about 15 per cent of the incident radiation, whereas for the sea the figure generally exceeds 90 per cent. The ability of the sea to absorb the heat received also depends upon its transparency. As much as 20 per cent of the radiation penetrates as far down as 9 m (30 ft). Figure 3.14 illustrates how much energy is absorbed by the sea at different depths. However, the heat absorbed by the sea is carried down to considerable depths by the turbulent mixing of water masses by the action of waves and currents. Figure 3.15, for example, illustrates the mean monthly variations with depth in the upper 100 metres of the waters of the eastern North Pacific (around 50°N, 145°W); it shows the development of the seasonal thermocline under the influences of surface heating, vertical mixing and surface conduction.

A measure of the difference between the subsurfaces of land and sea is given in Figure 3.16, which shows ground temperatures at Kaliningrad (Königsberg) and sea temperature deviations from the annual mean at various depths in the Bay of Biscay. Heat transmission in the soil is carried out almost wholly by conduction, and the degree of conductivity varies with the moisture content and porosity of each particular soil.

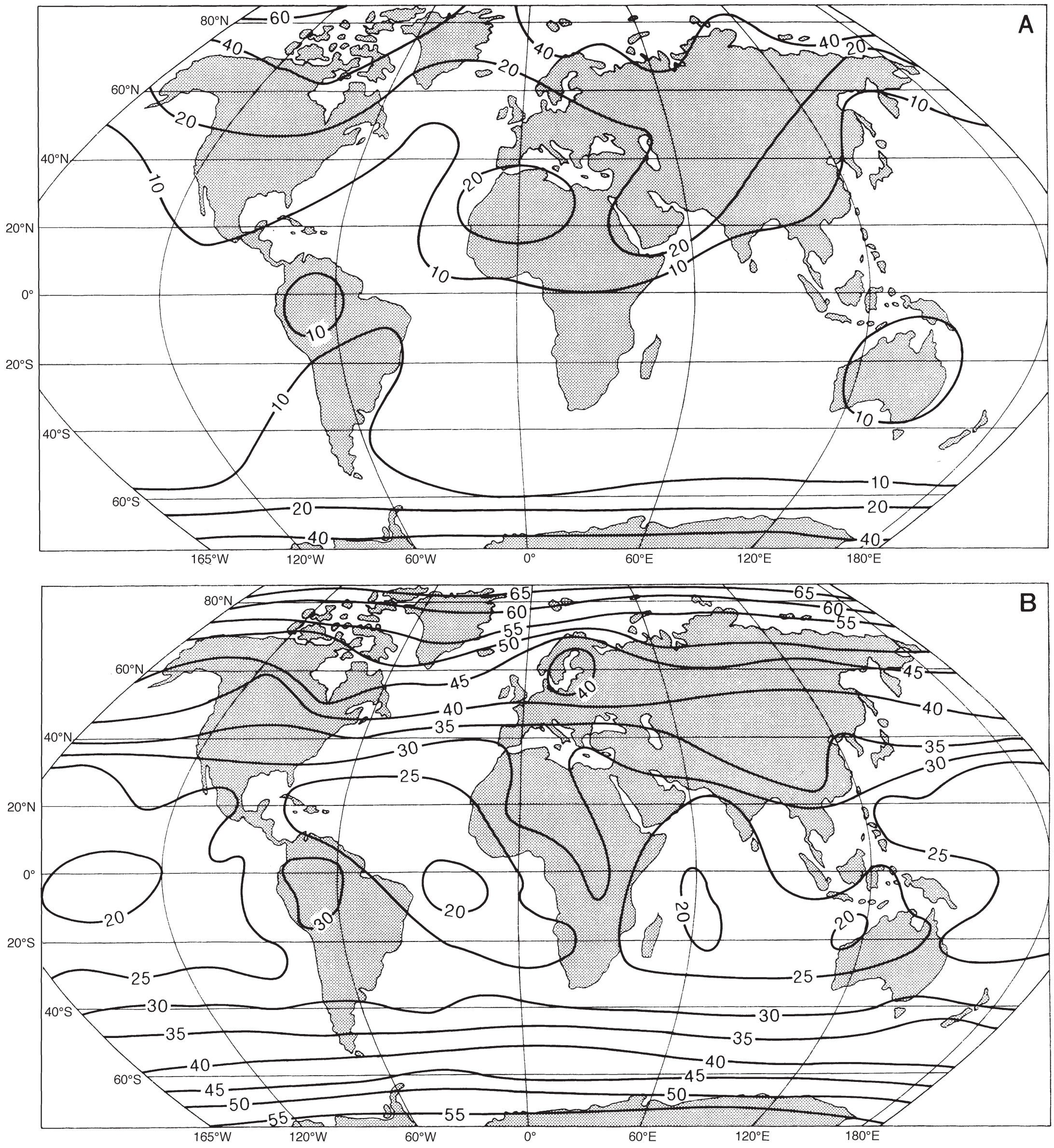


Figure 3.13 Mean annual albedos (per cent): (A) At the earth's surface. (B) On a horizontal surface at the top of the atmosphere.

Source: After Hummel and Reck; from Henderson-Sellers and Wilson (1983), and Stephens *et al*. (1981), by permission of the American Geophysical Union.

Air is an extremely poor conductor, and for this reason a loose, sandy soil surface heats up rapidly by day, as the heat is not conducted away. Increased soil moisture tends to raise the conductivity by filling the soil pores, but too much moisture increases the soil's heat capacity, thereby reducing the temperature response. The relative depths over which the annual and diurnal temperature variations are effective in wet and dry soils are approximately as follows:

	Diurnal variation	*Annual variation*
Wet soil	0.5 m	9 m
Dry sand	0.2 m	3 m

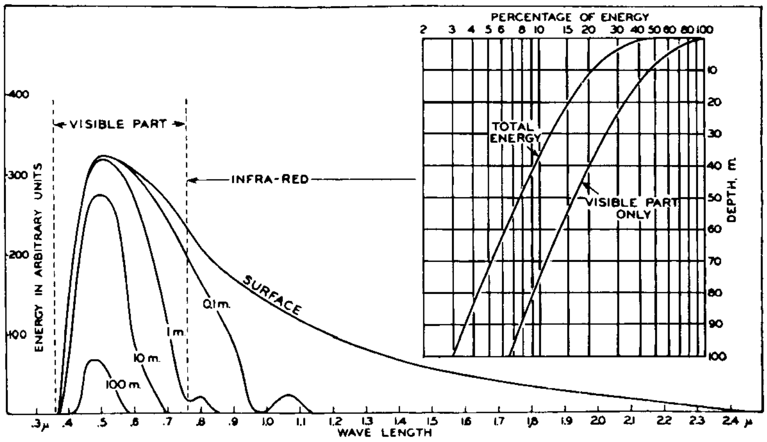


Figure 3.14 Schematic representation of the energy spectrum of the sun's radiation (in arbitrary units) that penetrates the sea surface to depths of 0.1, 1, 10 and 100 m. This illustrates the absorption of infra-red radiation by water, and also shows the depths to which visible (light) radiation penetrates.

Source: From Sverdrup (1945).

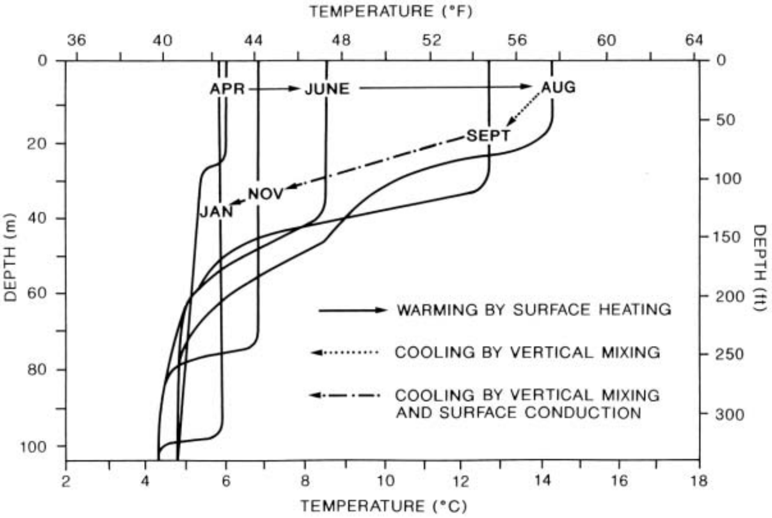


Figure 3.15 Mean monthly variations of temperature with depth in the surface waters of the eastern North Pacific. The layer of rapid temperature change is termed the thermocline.

Source: After Tully and Giovando (1963). Reproduced by permission of the Royal Society of Canada.

However, the *actual* temperature change is greater in dry soils. For example, the following values of diurnal temperature range have been observed during clear summer days at Sapporo, Japan:

	Sand	*Loam*	*Peat*	*Clay*
Surface	40°C	33°C	23°C	21°C
5 cm	20	19	14	14
15 cm	7	6	2	4

The different heating qualities of land and water are also accounted for partly by their different *specific heats*. The specific heat (c) of a substance can be represented by the number of thermal units required to raise a unit mass of it through 1°C (4184 J kg^{-1} K^{-1}). The specific heat of water is much greater than for most other common substances, and water must absorb five times as much heat energy to raise its temperature by the same amount as a comparable mass of dry soil. Thus for dry sand, $c = 840$ J kg^{-1} K^{-1}.

If unit volumes of water and soil are considered, the heat capacity, ρc, of the water, where ρ = density ($\rho c = 4.18 \times 10^6$ J m^{-3} K^{-1}), exceeds that of the sand approximately threefold ($\rho c = 1.3 \times 1.6$ J m^{-3} K^{-1}) if the sand is dry and twofold if it is wet. When this water is cooled the situation is reversed, for then a large quantity of heat is released. A metre-thick layer of sea water being cooled by as little as 0.1°C will release enough heat to

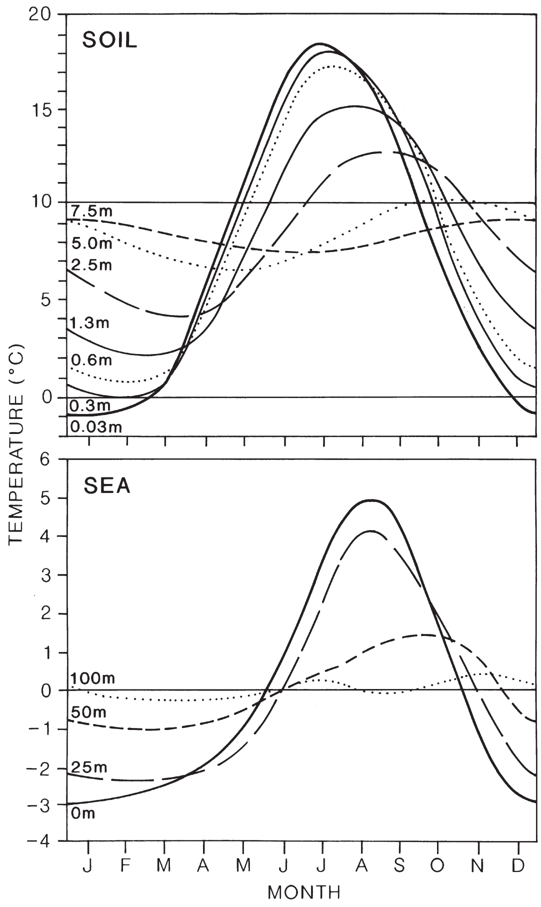


Figure 3.16 Annual variation of temperature at different depths in soil at Kaliningrad, European Russia (above) and in the water of the Bay of Biscay (at approximately 47° N, 12°W) (below), illustrating the relatively deep penetration of solar energy into the oceans as distinct from that into land surfaces. The bottom figure shows the temperature deviations from the annual mean for each depth.

Sources: Geiger (1965) and Sverdrup (1945).

raise the temperature of an approximately 30 m thick air layer by 10°C. In this way, the oceans act as a very effective reservoir for much of the world's heat. Similarly, evaporation of sea water causes large heat expenditure because a great amount of energy is needed to evaporate even a small quantity of water (see Chapter 3C).

The thermal role of the ocean is an important and complex one (see Chapter 7D). The ocean comprises three thermal layers:

1 A seasonal boundary, or upper mixed layer, lying above the thermocline. This is less than 100 m deep in the tropics but is hundreds of metres deep in the subpolar seas. It is subject to annual thermal mixing from the surface (see Figure 3.15).
2 A warm water sphere or lower mixed layer. This underlies layer 1 and slowly exchanges heat with it down to many hundreds of metres.
3 The deep ocean. This contains some 80 per cent of the total oceanic water volume and exchanges heat with layer 1 in the polar seas.

This vertical thermal circulation allows global heat to be conserved in the oceans, thus damping down the global effects of climatic change produced by thermal forcing (see Chapter 13B). The time for heat energy to diffuse within the upper mixed layer is two to seven months, within the lower mixed layer seven years, and within the deep ocean upwards of 300 years. The comparative figure for the outer thermal layer of the solid earth is only eleven days.

These differences between land and sea help to produce what is termed *continentality*. Continentality implies, first, that a land surface heats and cools much more quickly than that of an ocean. Over the land, the lag between maximum (minimum) periods of radiation and the maximum (minimum) surface temperature is only one month, but over the ocean and at coastal stations the lag is up to two months. Second, the annual and diurnal ranges of temperature are greater in continental than in coastal locations. Figure 3.17 illustrates the annual variation of temperature at Toronto, Canada and Valentia, western Ireland, while diurnal temperature ranges experienced in continental and maritime areas are described below (see pp. 55–6). The third effect of continentality results from the global distribution of the landmasses. The smaller ocean area of the northern hemisphere causes the boreal summer to be warmer but its are winters colder on average than the austral equivalents of the southern hemisphere (summer, 22.4°C versus 17.1°C; winter, 8.1°C versus 9.7°C). Heat storage in the oceans causes them to be warmer in winter and cooler in summer than land in the same latitude, although ocean currents give rise to some local departures from this rule. The distribution of temperature anomalies for the latitude in January and July (Figure 3.18) illustrates the significance of continentality and the influence of the warm currents in the North Atlantic and the North Pacific in winter.

Sea-surface temperatures can now be estimated by the use of infra-red satellite imagery (see C, this

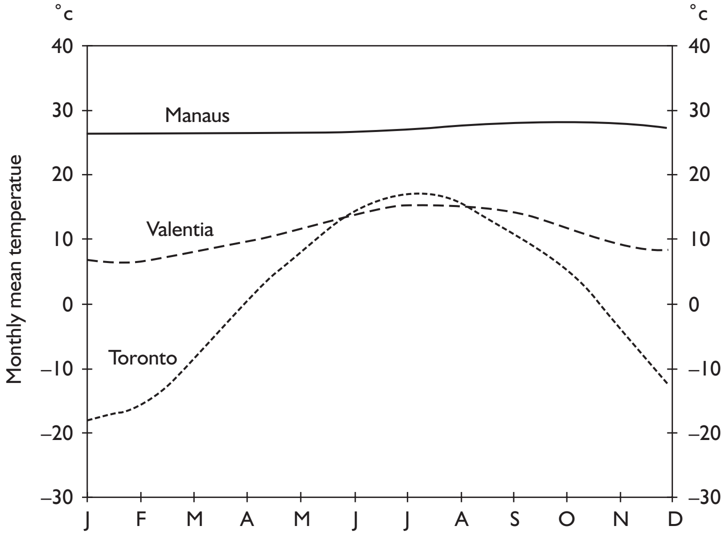


Figure 3.17 Mean annual temperature regimes in various climates. Manaus, Brazil (equatorial), Valentia, Ireland (temperate maritime) and Toronto, Canada (temperate continental).

chapter). Plate B shows a false-colour satellite thermal image of the western North Atlantic showing the relatively warm, meandering Gulf Stream. Maps of sea-surface temperatures are now routinely constructed from such images.

6 Effect of elevation and aspect

When we come down to the local scale, differences in the elevation of the land and its *aspect* (that is, the direction that the surface faces) strongly control the amount of solar radiation received.

High elevations that have a much smaller mass of air above them (see Figure 2.13) receive considerably more direct solar radiation under clear skies than do locations near sea-level due to the concentration of water vapour in the lower troposphere (Figure 3.19). On average in middle latitudes the intensity of incident solar radiation increases by 5 to 15 per cent for each 1000 m increase in elevation in the lower troposphere. The difference between sites at 200 and 3000 m in the Alps, for instance, can amount to 70 W m^{-2} on cloudless summer days. However, there is also a correspondingly greater net loss of terrestrial radiation at higher elevations because the low density of the overlying air results in a smaller fraction of the outgoing radiation being absorbed. The overall effect is invariably complicated by the greater cloudiness associated with most mountain ranges, and it is therefore impossible to generalize from the limited data available.

Figure 3.20 illustrates the effect of aspect and slope angle on theoretical maximum solar radiation receipts at two locations in the northern hemisphere. The general effect of latitude on insolation amounts is clearly shown, but it is also apparent that increasing latitude causes a relatively greater radiation loss for north-facing slopes, as distinct from south-facing ones. The radiation intensity on a sloping surface (I_s) is

$$I_s = I_o \cos i$$

where i = the angle between the solar beam and a beam normal to the sloping surface. Relief may also affect the quantity of insolation and the duration of direct sunlight when a mountain barrier screens the sun from valley floors and sides at certain times of day. In many Alpine valleys, settlement and cultivation are noticeably concentrated on southward-facing slopes (the adret or sunny side), whereas northward slopes (ubac or shaded side) remain forested.

7 Variation of free-air temperature with height

Chapter 2C described the gross characteristics of the vertical temperature profile in the atmosphere. We will now examine the vertical temperature gradient in the lower troposphere.

Vertical temperature gradients are determined in part by energy transfers and in part by vertical motion of the

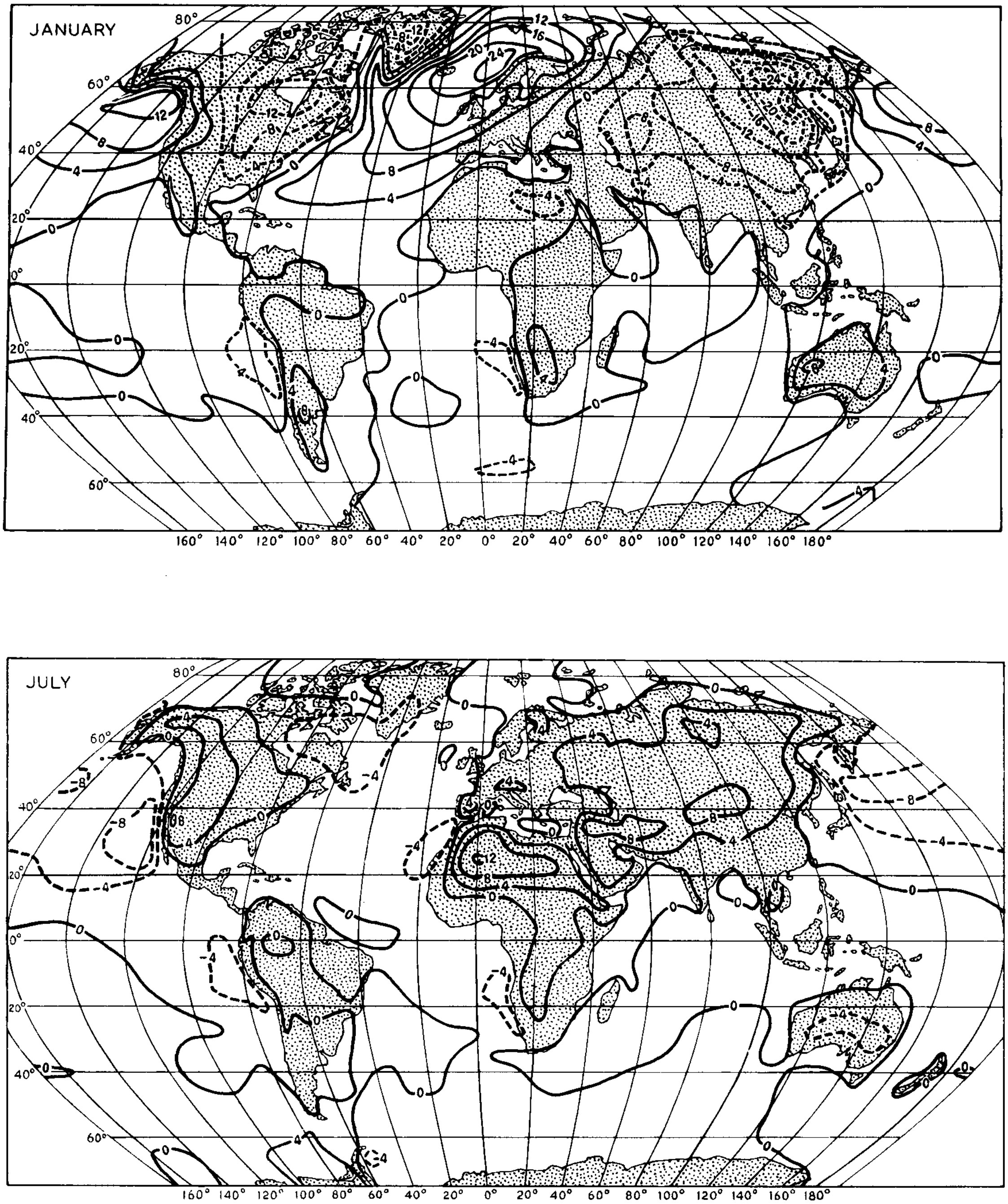

JANUARY
80°
60°
40°
20°
0°
20°
40°
60°
160° 140° 120° 100° 80° 60° 40° 20° 0° 20° 40° 60° 80° 100° 120° 140° 160° 180°
JULY
80°
60°
40°
20°
0°
20°
40°
60°
160° 140° 120° 100° 80° 60° 40° 20° 0° 20° 40° 60° 80° 100° 120° 140° 160° 180°

Figure 3.18 World temperature anomalies (i.e. the difference between recorded temperatures °C and the mean for that latitude) for January and July. Solid lines indicate positive, and dashed lines negative, anomalies.

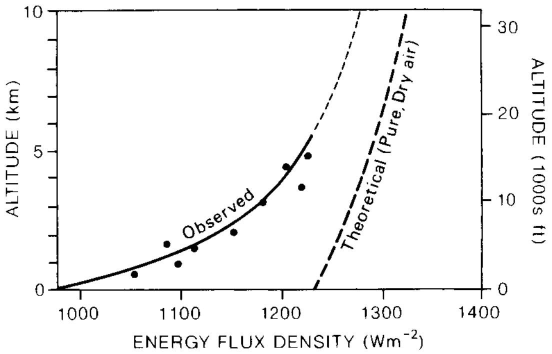


Figure 3.19 Direct solar radiation as a function of altitude observed in the European Alps. The absorbing effects of water vapour and dust, particularly below about 3000 m, are shown by comparison with a theoretical curve for an ideal atmosphere.

Source: After Albetti, Kastrov, Kimball and Pope; from Barry (1992).

air. The various factors interact in a highly complex manner. The energy terms are the release of latent heat by condensation, radiative cooling of the air and sensible heat transfer from the ground. Horizontal temperature advection, by the motion of cold and warm airmasses, may also be important. Vertical motion is dependent on the type of pressure system. High-pressure areas are generally associated with descent and warming of deep layers of air, hence decreasing the temperature gradient and frequently causing temperature inversions in the lower troposphere. In contrast, low-pressure systems are associated with rising air, which cools upon expansion and increases the vertical temperature gradient. Moisture is an additional complicating factor (see Chapter 3E), but it remains true that the middle and upper troposphere is relatively cold above a surface low-pressure area, leading to a steeper temperature gradient.

The overall vertical decrease of temperature, or *lapse rate*, in the troposphere is about 6.5°C/km. However, this is by no means constant with height, season or location. Average global values calculated by C. E. P. Brooks for July show increasing lapse rate with height: about 5°C/km in the lowest 2 km, 6°C/km between 4 and 5km, and 7°C/km between 6 and 8 km. The seasonal regime is very pronounced in continental regions with cold winters. Winter lapse rates are generally small and, in areas such as central Canada or eastern Siberia, may even be negative (i.e. temperatures increase with height in the lowest layer) as a result of excessive radiational

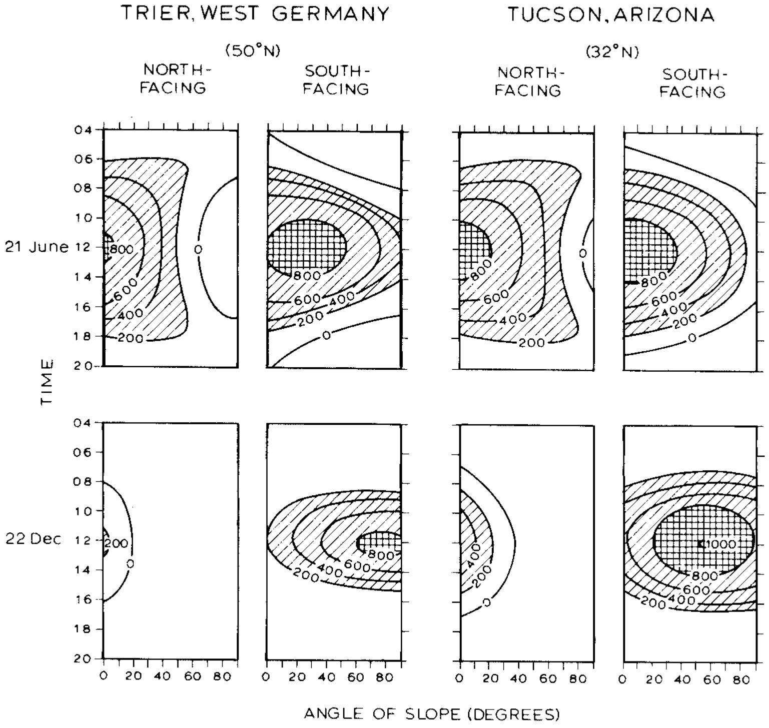


Figure 3.20 Average direct beam solar radiation (W m^{-2}) incident at the surface under cloudless skies at Trier, West Germany, and Tucson, Arizona, as a function of slope, aspect, time of day and season of year.

Source: After Geiger (1965) and Sellers (1965).

cooling over a snow surface. A similar situation occurs when dense, cold air accumulates in mountain basins on calm, clear nights. On such occasions, mountain summits may be many degrees warmer than the valley floor below (see Chapter 6C.2). For this reason, the adjustment of average temperature of upland stations to mean sea-level may produce misleading results. Observations in Colorado at Pike's Peak (4301 m) and Colorado Springs (1859 m) show the mean lapse rate to be 4.1°C/km in winter and 6.2°C/km in summer. It should be noted that such topographic lapse rates may bear little relation to free air lapse rates in nocturnal radiation conditions, and the two must be carefully distinguished.

In the Arctic and over Antarctica, surface temperature inversions persist for much of the year. In winter the Arctic inversion is due to intense radiational cooling, but in summer it is the result of the surface cooling of advected warmer air. The tropical and subtropical deserts have very steep lapse rates in summer causing considerable heat transfer from the surface and generally ascending motion; subsidence associated with high-pressure cells is predominant in the desert zones in winter. Over the subtropical oceans, sinking air leads to warming and a subsidence inversion near the surface (see Chapter 13).

C TERRESTRIAL INFRA-RED RADIATION AND THE GREENHOUSE EFFECT

Radiation from the sun is predominantly short-wave, whereas that leaving the earth is long-wave, or infra-red, radiation (see Figure 3.1). The infra-red emission from the surface is slightly less than that from a black body at the same temperature and, accordingly, Stefan's Law (see p. 33) is modified by an emissivity coefficient (ε), which is generally between 0.90 and 0.95, i.e. $F = \varepsilon\sigma T^4$. Figure 3.1 shows that the atmosphere is highly absorbent to infra-red radiation (due to the effects of water vapour, carbon dioxide and other trace gases), except between about 8.5 and 13.0 μm – the 'atmospheric window'. The opaqueness of the atmosphere to infra-red radiation, relative to its transparency to short-wave radiation, is commonly referred to as the *greenhouse effect*. However, in the case of an actual greenhouse, the effect of the glass roof is probably as significant in reducing cooling by restricting the turbulent heat loss as it is in retaining the infra-red radiation.

The total 'greenhouse' effect results from the net infra-red absorption capacity of water vapour, carbon dioxide and other trace gases – methane (CH_4), nitrous oxide (N_2O) and tropospheric ozone (O_3). These gases absorb strongly at wavelengths within the atmospheric window region, in addition to their other absorbing bands (see Figure 3.1 and Table 3.3). Moreover, because concentrations of these trace gases are low, their radiative effects increase approximately linearly with concentration, whereas the effect of CO_2 is related to the logarithm of the concentration. In addition, because of the long atmospheric residence time of nitrous oxide (132 years) and CFCs (65 to 140 years), the cumulative effects of human activities will be substantial. It is estimated that between 1765 and 2000, the radiative effect of increased CO_2 concentration was 1.5 W m^{-2}, and of all trace gases about 2.5 W m^{-2} (cf. the solar constant value of 1366 W m^{-2}).

The net warming contribution of the natural (non-anthropogenic) greenhouse gases to the mean 'effective' planetary temperature of 255 K (corresponding to the emitted infra-red radiation) is approximately 33 K. Water vapour accounts for 21 K of this amount, carbon dioxide 7 K, ozone 2 K, and other trace gases (nitrous oxide, methane) about 3 K. The present global mean surface temperature is 288 K, but the surface was considerably warmer during the early evolution of the earth, when the atmosphere contained large quantities of methane, water vapour and ammonia. The largely carbon dioxide atmosphere of Venus creates a 500 K greenhouse effect on that planet.

Stratospheric ozone absorbs significant amounts of both incoming ultraviolet radiation, harmful to life, and outgoing terrestrial long-wave re-radiation, so that its overall thermal role is a complex one. Its net effect on earth surface temperatures depends on the elevation at which the absorption occurs, being to some extent a trade-off between short- and long-wave absorption in that:

1 An increase of ozone above about 30 km absorbs relatively more incoming short-wave radiation, causing a net *decrease* of surface temperatures.
2 An increase of ozone below about 25 km absorbs relatively more outgoing long-wave radiation, causing a net *increase* of surface temperatures.

Long-wave radiation is not merely terrestrial in the narrow sense. The atmosphere radiates to space, and

Table 3.3 Influence of greenhouse gases on atmospheric temperature.

Gas	*Centres of main absorption bands (μm)*	*Temperature increase (K) for ×2 present concentration*	*Global warming potential on a weight basis (kg^{-1} of air)†*
Water vapour (H_2O)	6.3–8.0, >15 (8.3–12.5)*		
Carbon dioxide (CO_2)	(5.2), (10), 14.7	3.0 ± 1.5	1
Methane (CH_4)	6.52, 7.66	0.3–0.4	11
Ozone (O_3)	4.7, 9.6, (14.3)	0.9	
Nitrous oxide (N_2O)	7.78, 8.56, 17.0	0.3	270
Chlorofluoromethanes			
($CFCl_3$)	4.66, 9.22, 11.82 6	0.1	3400
(CF_2Cl_2)	8.68, 9.13, 10.93		7100

Notes: * Important in moist atmospheres.
† Refers to direct annual radiative forcing for the surface-troposphere system.

Sources: After Campbell; Ramanathan; Lashof and Ahuja; Luther and Ellingson; IPCC (1992).

THE GREENHOUSE EFFECT

box 3.1 topical issue

The *natural* greenhouse effect of the earth's atmosphere is attributable primarily to water vapour. It accounts for 21 K of the 33 K difference between the effective temperature of a dry atmosphere and the real atmosphere through the trapping of infra-red radiation. Water vapour is strongly absorptive around 2.4–3.1 μm, 4.5–6.5 μm and above 16 μm. The concept of greenhouse gas-induced warming is commonly applied to the effects of the increases in atmospheric carbon dioxide concentrations resulting from *anthropogenic* activities, principally the burning of fossil fuels. Sverre Arrhenius in Sweden drew attention to this possibility in 1896, but observational evidence was forthcoming only some forty years later (Callendar, 1938, 1959). However, a careful record of of atmospheric concentrations of carbon dioxide was lacking until Charles Keeling installed calibrated instruments at the Mauna Loa Observatory, Hawaii, in 1957. Within a decade, these observations became the global benchmark . They showed an annual cycle of about 5 ppm at the Observatory, caused by the biospheric uptake and release, and the *c*. 0.5 per cent annual increase in CO_2 from 315 ppm in 1957 to 370 ppm in 2001, due to fossil fuel burning. The annual increase is about half of the total emission due to CO_2 uptake by the oceans and the land biosphere. The principal absorption band for radiation by carbon dioxide is around 14–16 μm, but there are others at 2.6 and 4.2 μm. Most of the effect of increasing CO_2 concentration is by enhanced absorption in the latter, as the main band is almost saturated. The sensitivity of mean global air temperature to a doubling of CO_2 in the range 2 to 5°C, while a removal of all atmospheric CO_2 might lower the mean surface temperature by more than 10°C.

The important role of other trace greenhouse gases (methane and fluorocarbons) recognized in the 1980s and many additional trace gases began to be monitored and their past histories reconstructed from ice core records. These show that the pre-industrial level of CO_2 was 280 ppm and methane 750 ppb; these values decreased to about 180 ppm and 350 ppb, respectively, during the maximum phases of continental glaciation in the Ice Age.

The positive feedback effect of CO_2, which involves greenhouse gas-induced warming leading to an enhanced hydrological cycle with a larger atmospheric vapour content and therefore further warming, is still not well resolved quantitatively.

clouds are particularly effective since they act as black bodies. For this reason, cloudiness and cloud-top temperature can be mapped from satellites by day and by night using infra-red sensors (see Plates 2, 3 and 15, where high clouds appear cold). Radiative cooling of cloud layers averages about 1.5°C per day.

For the globe as a whole, satellite measurements show that in cloud-free conditions the mean absorbed solar radiation is approximately 285W m^{-2}, whereas the emitted terrestrial radiation is 265W m^{-2}. Including cloud-covered areas, the corresponding global values are 235 W m^{-2} for both terms. Clouds reduce the absorbed solar radiation by 50 W m^{-2}, but reduce the emitted radiation by only 30 W m^{-2}. Hence global cloud cover causes a net radiative loss of about 20 W m^{-2}, due to the dominance of cloud albedo reducing short-wave radiation absorption. In lower latitudes this effect is much larger (up to –50 to –100 W m^{-2}), whereas in high latitudes the two factors are close to balance, or the increased infra-red absorption by clouds may lead to a small positive value. These results are important in terms of changing concentrations of greenhouse gases, since the net radiative forcing by cloud cover is four times that expected from CO_2 doubling (see Chapter 13).

D HEAT BUDGET OF THE EARTH

We can now summarize the net effect of the transfers of energy in the earth–atmosphere system averaged over the globe and over an annual period.

The incident solar radiation averaged over the globe is

$$\text{Solar constant} \times \pi r^2 / 4\pi r^2$$

where r = radius of the earth and $4\pi r^2$ is the surface area of a sphere. This figure is approximately 342 W m^{-2}, or 11×10^9 J m^{-2} yr^{-1} (10^9 J = 1GJ); for convenience we will regard it as 100 units. Referring to Figure 3.21, incoming radiation is absorbed in the stratosphere (3 units), by ozone mainly, and 20 units are absorbed in the troposphere by carbon dioxide (1), water vapour (13), dust (3) and water droplets in clouds (3). Twenty units are reflected back to space from clouds, which

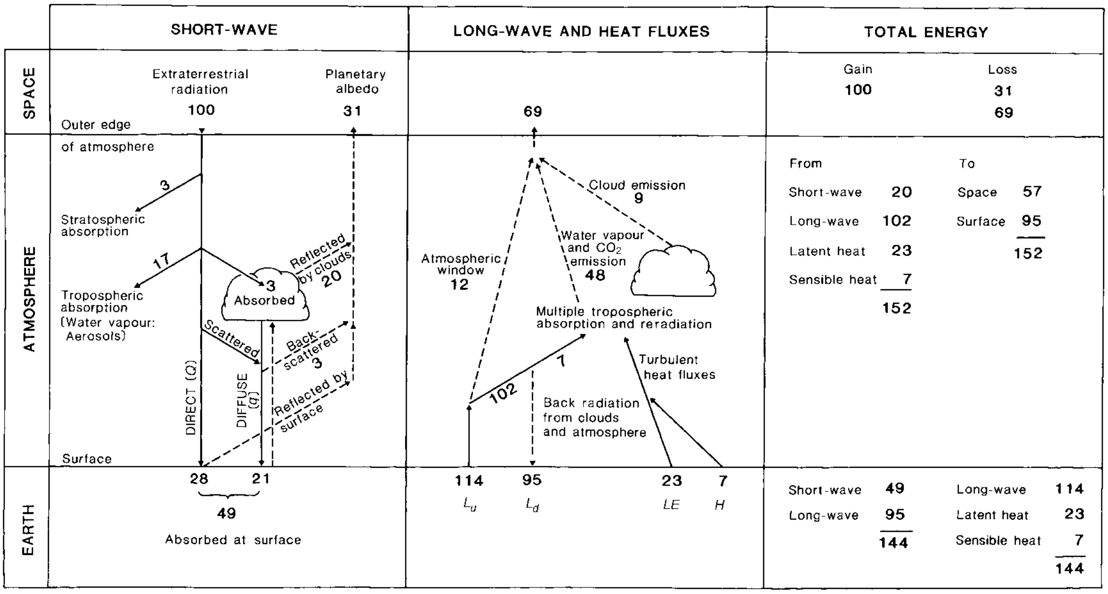

SHORT-WAVE
LONG-WAVE AND HEAT FLUXES
TOTAL ENERGY
SPACE
ATMOSPHERE
EARTH
Extraterrestrial radiation
100
Planetary albedo
31
Outer edge of atmosphere
3
Stratospheric absorption
17
Tropospheric absorption (Water vapour: Aerosols)
3
Absorbed
Reflected by clouds
20
Scattered
Back-scattered
3
Reflected by surface
DIRECT (Q)
DIFFUSE (q)
Surface
28
21
49
Absorbed at surface
69
Cloud emission
9
Water vapour and CO_2 emission
48
Atmospheric window
12
Multiple tropospheric absorption and reradiation
7
102
Turbulent heat fluxes
Back radiation from clouds and atmosphere
114
L_u
95
L_d
23
LE
7
H
Gain
100
Loss
31
69
From
Short-wave 20
Long-wave 102
Latent heat 23
Sensible heat 7
152
To
Space 57
Surface 95
152
Short-wave 49
Long-wave 95
144
Long-wave 114
Latent heat 23
Sensible heat 7
144

Figure 3.21 The balance of the atmospheric energy budget. The transfers are explained in the text. Solid lines indicate energy gains by the atmosphere and surface in the left-hand diagram and the troposphere in the right-hand diagram. The exchanges are referred to 100 units of incoming solar radiation at the top of the atmosphere (equal to 342 W m^{-2}).

Source: After Kiehl and Trenberth (1997) From *Bulletin of the American Meteorological Society*, by permission of the American Meteorological Society.

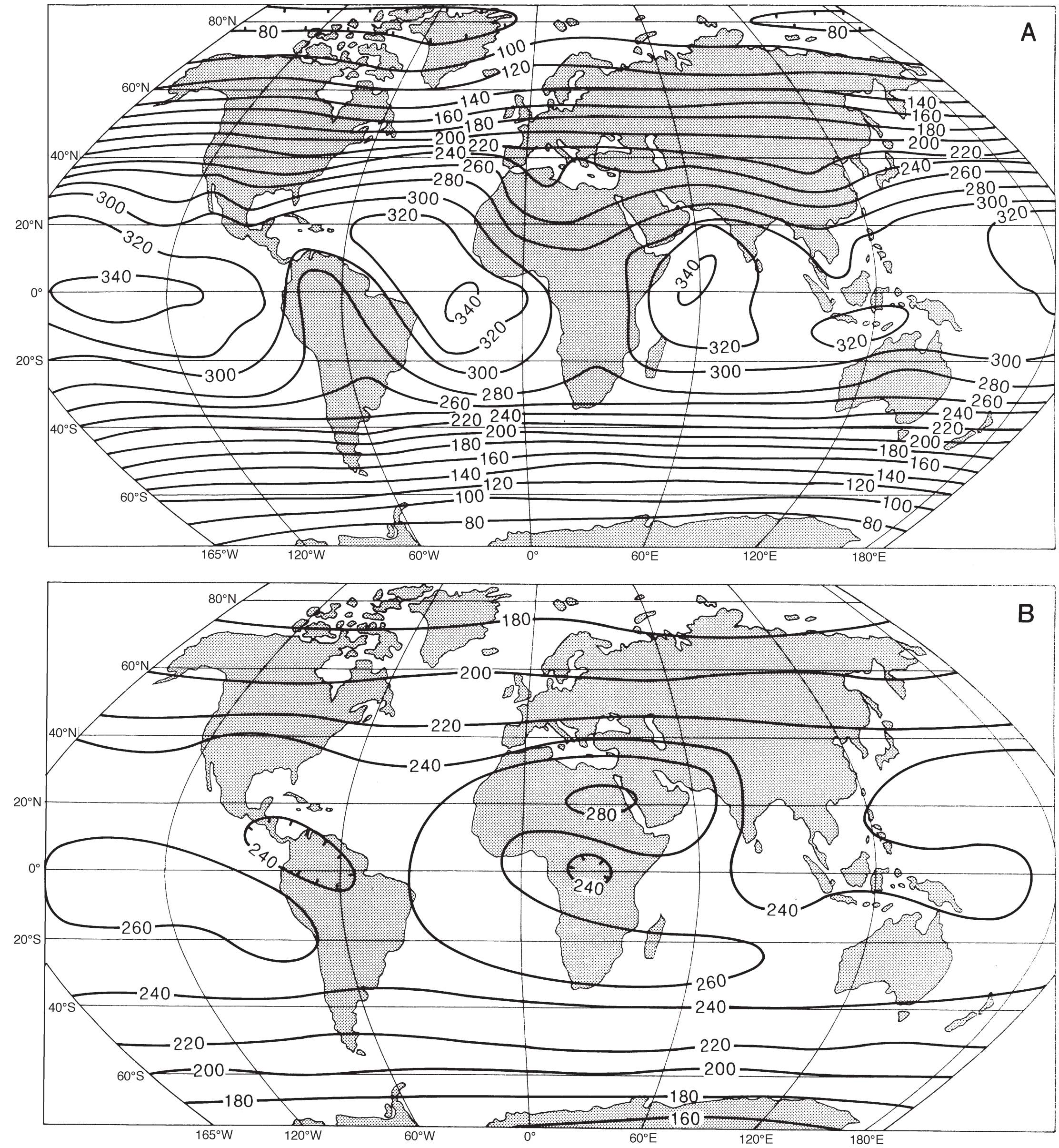

A
80°N
60°N
40°N
20°N
0°
20°S
40°S
60°S
165°W
120°W
60°W
0°
60°E
120°E
180°E
80
100
120
140
160
180
200
220
240
260
280
300
320
340
B
180
200
220
240
260
280
240
260
240
220
200
180
160

Figure 3.22 Planetary short- and long-wave radiation (W^{m-2}). (A) Mean annual absorbed short-wave radiation for the period April 1979 to March 1987. (B) Mean annual net planetary long-wave radiation (L_n) on a horizontal surface at the top of the atmosphere.

Sources: (A) Ardanuy *et al*. (1992) and Kyle *et al*. (1993) *From Bulletin of the American Meteorological Society*, by permission of the American Meteorological Society. (B) Stephens *et al*. (1981).

cover about 62 per cent of the earth's surface on average. A further nine units are similarly reflected from the surface and three units are returned by atmospheric scattering. The total reflected radiation is the *planetary albedo* (31 per cent or 0.31). The remaining forty-nine units reach the earth either directly ($Q = 28$) or as diffuse radiation ($q = 21$) transmitted via clouds or by downward scattering.

The pattern of outgoing terrestrial radiation is quite different (see Figure 3.22). The black-body radiation, assuming a mean surface temperature of 288 K, is equivalent to 114 units of infra-red (long-wave) radiation. This is possible since most of the outgoing radiation is reabsorbed by the atmosphere; the *net* loss of infra-red radiation at the surface is only nineteen units. These exchanges represent a time-averaged state for the whole globe. Recall that solar radiation affects only the sunlit hemisphere, where the incoming radiation exceeds 342 W m^{-2}. Conversely, no solar radiation is received by the night-time hemisphere. Infra-red exchanges continue, however, due to the accumulated heat in the ground. Only about twelve units escape through the atmospheric window directly from the surface. The atmosphere itself radiates fifty-seven units to space (forty-eight from the emission by atmospheric water vapour and CO_2 and nine from cloud emission), giving a total of sixty-nine units (L_u); the atmosphere in turn radiates ninety-five units back to the surface (L_d); thus $L_u + L_d = L_n$ is negative.

These radiation transfers can be expressed symbolically:

$$R_n = (Q + q)\,(1 - a) + L_n$$

where R_n = net radiation, $(Q + q)$ = global solar radiation, a = albedo and L_n = net long-wave radiation. At the surface, R_n = 30 units. This surplus is conveyed to the atmosphere by the turbulent transfer of sensible heat, or enthalpy (seven units), and latent heat (twenty-three units):

$$R_n = LE + H$$

where H = sensible heat transfer and LE = latent heat transfer. There is also a flux of heat into the ground (B.5, this chapter), but for annual averages this is approximately zero.

Figure 3.22 summarizes the total balances at the surface (± 144 units) and for the atmosphere (± 152 units). The total absorbed solar radiation and emitted radiation for the entire earth–atmosphere system is estimated to be ±7 GJ m^{-2} yr^{-1} (± 69 units). Various uncertainties are still to be resolved in these estimates. The surface short-wave and long-wave radiation budgets have an uncertainty of about 20 W m^{-2}, and the turbulent heat fluxes of about 10 W m^{-2}.

Satellite measurements now provide global views of the energy balance at the top of the atmosphere. The incident solar radiation is almost symmetrical about the equator in the annual mean (cf. Table 3.1). The mean annual totals on a horizontal surface at the top of the atmosphere are approximately 420 W m^{-2} at the equator and 180 W m^{-2} at the poles. The distribution of the planetary albedo (see Figure 3.13B) shows the lowest values over the low-latitude oceans compared with the more persistent areas of cloud cover over the continents. The highest values are over the polar ice-caps. The resulting planetary short-wave radiation ranges from 340 Wm^{-2} at the equator to 80 Wm^{-2} at the poles. The net (outgoing) long-wave radiation (Figure 3.22B) shows the smallest losses where the temperatures are lowest and highest losses over the largely clear skies of the Saharan desert surface and over low-latitude oceans. The difference between Figure 3.22A and 3.22B represents the net radiation of the earth–atmosphere system which achieves balance about latitude 30°. The consequences of a low-latitude energy surplus and a high-latitude deficit are examined below.

The diurnal and annual variations of temperature are related directly to the local energy budget. Under clear skies, in middle and lower latitudes, the diurnal regime of radiative exchanges generally shows a midday maximum of absorbed solar radiation (see Figure 3.23A). A maximum of infra-red (long-wave) radiation (see Figure 3.1) is also emitted by the heated ground surface at midday, when it is warmest. The atmosphere re-radiates infra-red radiation downward, but there is a net loss at the surface (L_n). The difference between the absorbed solar radiation and L_n is the net radiation, R_n; this is generally positive between about an hour after sunrise and an hour or so before sunset, with a midday maximum. The delay in the occurrence of the maximum air temperature until about 14:00 hours local time (Figure 3.23B) is caused by the gradual heating of the air by convective transfer from the ground. Minimum R_n occurs in the early evening, when the ground is still warm; there is a slight increase thereafter. The temperature decrease after midday is slowed by heat supplied from the ground. Minimum air temperature occurs shortly after sunrise due to the lag in the transfer of heat from the surface to the air. The annual pattern of the net radiation budget and temperature regime is closely analogous to the diurnal one, with a seasonal lag in the temperature curve relative to the radiation cycle, as noted above (p. 47).

There are marked latitudinal variations in the diurnal and annual ranges of temperature. Broadly, the annual range is a maximum in higher latitudes, with extreme

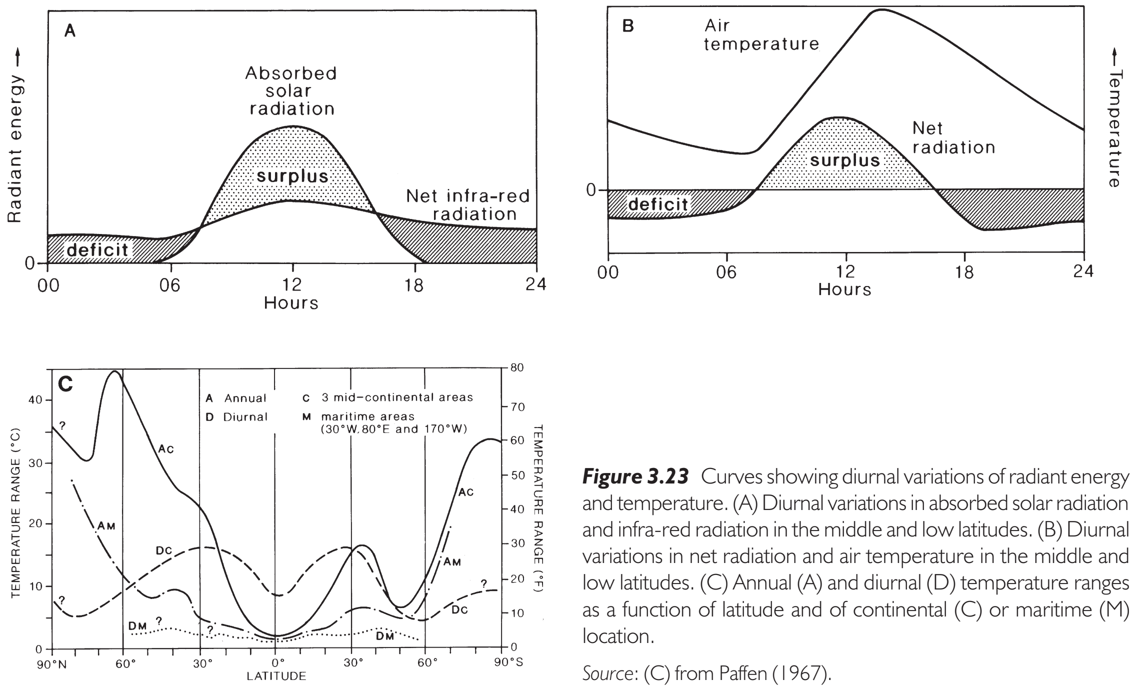


Figure 3.23 Curves showing diurnal variations of radiant energy and temperature. (A) Diurnal variations in absorbed solar radiation and infra-red radiation in the middle and low latitudes. (B) Diurnal variations in net radiation and air temperature in the middle and low latitudes. (C) Annual (A) and diurnal (D) temperature ranges as a function of latitude and of continental (C) or maritime (M) location.

Source: (C) from Paffen (1967).

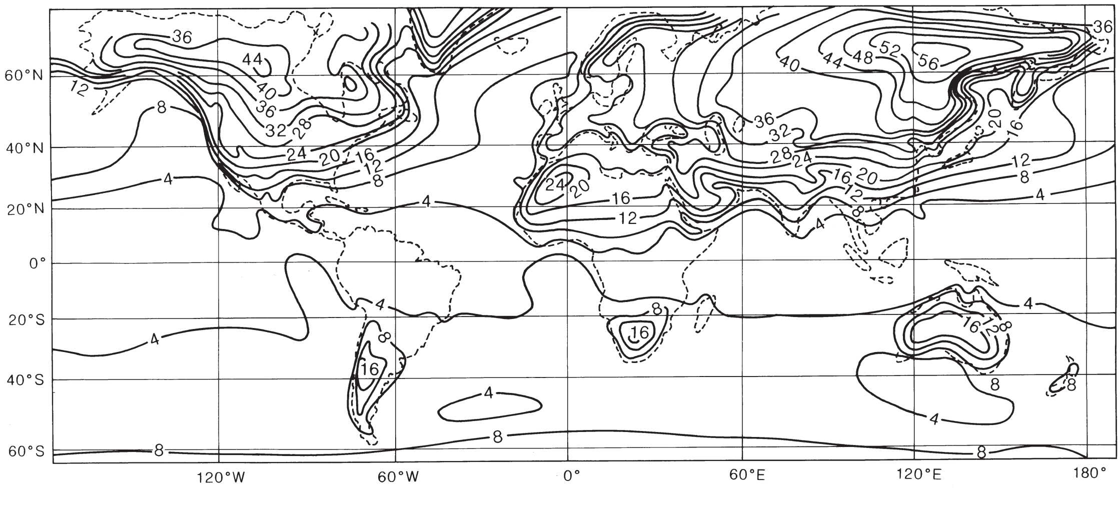


Figure 3.24 The mean annual temperature range (°C) at the earth's surface.

Source: Monin, Crowley and North (1991). Courtesy of the World Meteorological Organization.

values about 65°N related to the effects of continentality and distance to the ocean in interior Asia and North America (Figure 3.24). In contrast, in low latitudes the annual range differs little between land and sea because of the thermal similarity between tropical rainforests and tropical oceans. The diurnal range is a maximum over tropical land areas, but it is in the equatorial zone that the diurnal variation of heating and cooling exceeds the annual one (Figure 3.23C), due to the small seasonal change in solar elevation angle at the equator.

E ATMOSPHERIC ENERGY AND HORIZONTAL HEAT TRANSPORT

So far, we have given an account of the earth's heat budget and its components. We have already referred to two forms of energy: internal (or heat) energy, due to the motion of individual air molecules, and latent energy, which is released by condensation of water vapour. Two other forms of energy are important: geopotential energy due to gravity and height above the surface, and kinetic energy associated with air motion.

Geopotential and internal energy are interrelated, since the addition of heat to an air column not only increases its internal energy but also adds to its geopotential as a result of the vertical expansion of the air column. In a column extending to the top of the atmosphere, the geopotential is approximately 40 per cent of the internal energy. These two energy forms are therefore usually considered together and termed the total potential energy (*PE*). For the whole atmosphere

potential energy $\approx 10^{24}$ J
kinetic energy $\approx 10^{10}$ J

In a later section (Chapter 6C), we shall see how energy is transferred from one form to another, but here we consider only heat energy. It is apparent that the receipt of heat energy is very unequal geographically and that this must lead to great lateral transfers of energy across the surface of the earth. In turn, these transfers give rise, at least indirectly, to the observed patterns of global weather and climate.

The amounts of energy received at different latitudes vary substantially, the equator on the average receiving 2.5 times as much annual solar energy as the poles. Clearly, if this process were not modified in some way the variations in receipt would cause a massive accumulation of heat within the tropics (associated with gradual increases of temperature) and a corresponding deficiency at the poles. Yet this does not happen, and the earth as a whole is approximately in a state of thermal equilibrium. One explanation of this equilibrium could be that for each region of the world there is equalization between the amount of incoming and outgoing radiation. However, observation shows that this is not so (Figure 3.25), because, whereas incoming radiation varies appreciably with changes in latitude, being highest at the equator and declining to a minimum at the poles, outgoing radiation has a more even latitudinal distribution owing to the rather small variations in atmospheric temperature. Some other explanation therefore becomes necessary.

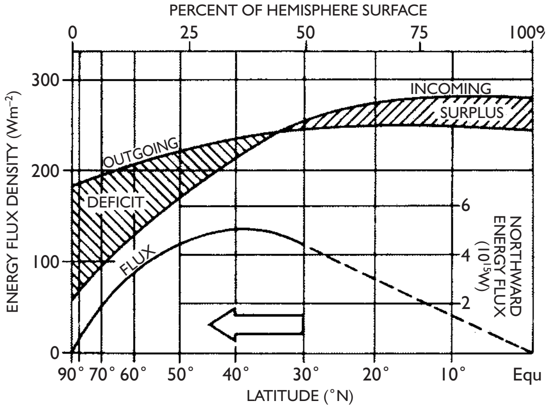


Figure 3.25 A meridional illustration of the balance between incoming solar radiation and outgoing radiation from the earth and atmosphere* in which the zones of permanent surplus and deficit are maintained in equilibrium by a poleward energy transfer.†

Sources: *Data from Houghton; after Newell (1964) and *Scientific American*. †After Gabites.

1 The horizontal transport of heat

If the net radiation for the whole earth–atmosphere system is calculated, it is found that there is a positive budget between 35°S and 40°N, as shown in Figure 3.26C. The latitudinal belts in each hemisphere separating the zones of positive and negative net radiation budgets oscillate dramatically with season (Figure 3.26A and B). As the tropics do not get progressively hotter or the high latitudes colder, a redistribution of world heat energy must occur constantly, taking the form of a continuous movement of energy from the tropics to the poles. In this way the tropics shed their excess heat and the poles, being global heat sinks, are not allowed to reach extremes of cold. If there were no meridional interchange of heat, a radiation balance at each latitude would be achieved only if the equator were 14°C warmer and the North Pole 25°C colder than today. This poleward heat transport takes place within the atmosphere and oceans, and it is estimated that the former accounts for approximately two-thirds of the required total. The horizontal transport (*advection* of heat) occurs in the form of both latent heat (that is, water vapour, which subsequently condenses) and sensible

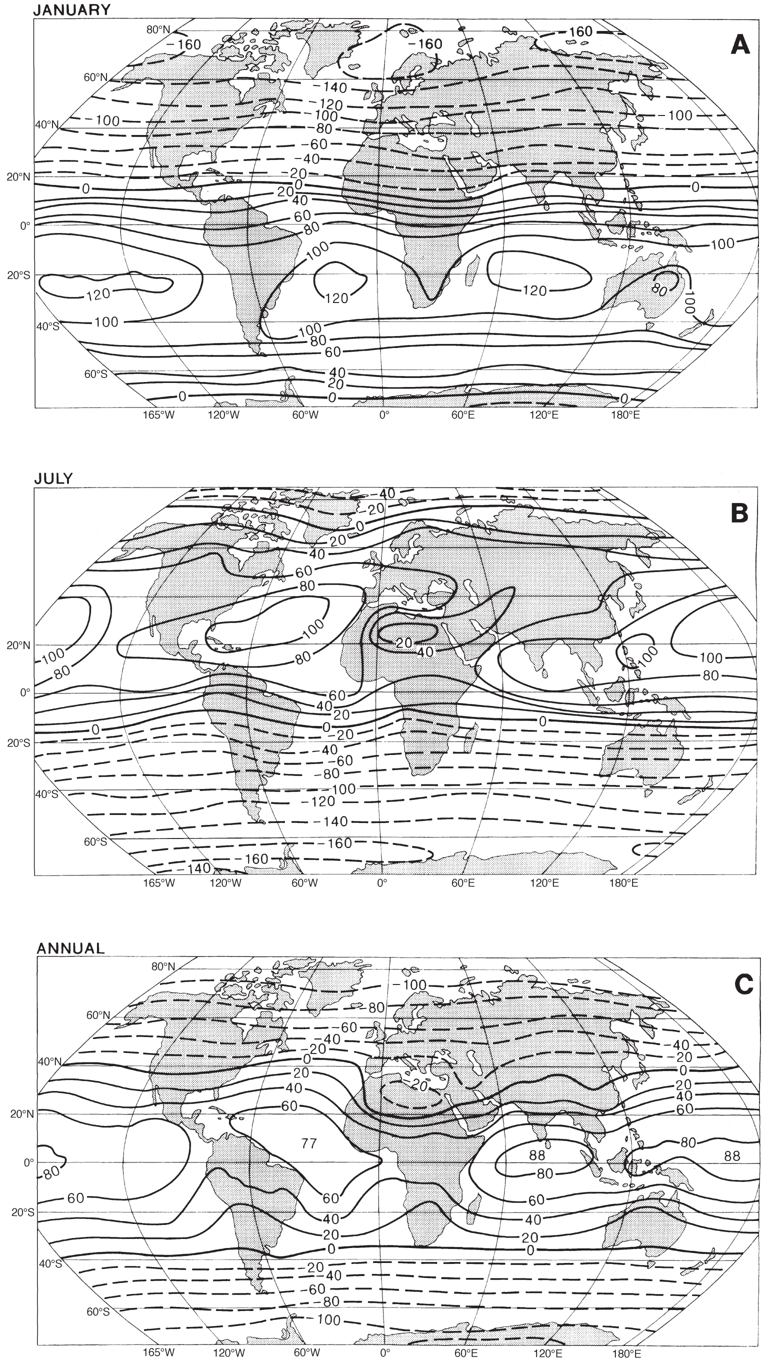

JANUARY
A
80°N
60°N
40°N
20°N
0°
20°S
40°S
60°S
−160
−140
−120
−100
−80
−60
−40
−20
0
20
40
60
80
100
120
165°W
120°W
60°W
0°
60°E
120°E
180°E
JULY
B
−40
−20
0
20
40
60
80
100
−60
−80
−100
−120
−140
−160
ANNUAL
C
−100
−80
−60
−40
−20
0
20
40
60
77
80
88

Figure 3.26 Mean net planetary radiation budget (R_n) (W m^{-2}) for a horizontal surface at the top of the atmosphere (i.e. for the earth–atmosphere system). (A) January. (B) July. (C) Annual.

Sources: Ardanuy *et al*. (1992) and Kyle *et al*. (1993). Stephens *et al*. (1981). (A), (B) By permission of the American Geophysical Union. (C) *From Bulletin of the American Meteorological Society*, by permission of the American Meteorological Society.

heat (that is, warm airmasses). It varies in intensity according to the latitude and the season. Figure 3.27B shows the mean annual pattern of energy transfer by the three mechanisms. The latitudinal zone of maximum total transfer rate is found between latitudes 35° and 45° in both hemispheres, although the patterns for the individual components are quite different from one another. The latent heat transport, which occurs almost wholly in the lowest 2 or 3 km, reflects the global wind belts on either side of the subtropical high-pressure zones (see Chapter 7B). The more important meridional transfer of sensible heat has a double maximum not only latitudinally but also in the vertical plane, where there are maxima near the surface and at about 200 mb. The high-level transport is particularly significant over the subtropics, whereas the primary latitudinal maximum of about 50° to 60°N is related to the travelling low-pressure systems of the westerlies.

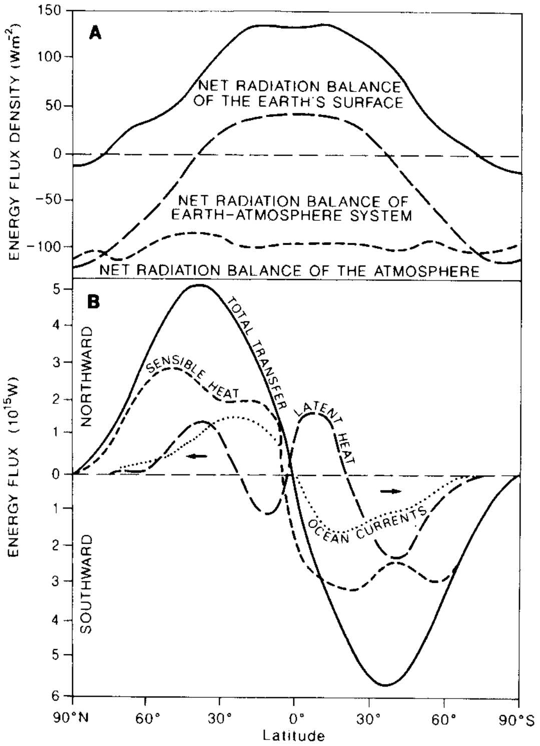


Figure 3.27 (A) Net radiation balance for the earth's surface of 101 W m^{-2} (incoming solar radiation of 156 W m^{-2}, minus outgoing long-wave energy to the atmosphere of 55 W m^{-2}); for the atmosphere of –101 W m^{-2} (incoming solar radiation of 84 W m^{-2}, minus outgoing long-wave energy to space of 185 W m^{-2}); and for the whole earth–atmosphere system of zero. (B) The average annual latitudinal distribution of the components of the poleward energy transfer (in 10^{15} W) in the earth–atmosphere system.

Source: From Sellers (1965).

The intensity of the poleward energy flow is closely related to the meridional (that is, north–south) temperature gradient. In winter this temperature gradient is at a maximum, and in consequence the hemispheric air circulation is most intense. The nature of the complex transport mechanisms will be discussed in Chapter 7C.

As shown in Figure 3.27B, ocean currents account for a significant proportion of the poleward heat transfer in low latitudes. Indeed, recent satellite estimates of the required total poleward energy transport indicate that the previous figures are too low. The ocean transport may be 47 per cent of the total at 30 to 35°N and as much as 74 per cent at 20°N; the Gulf Stream and Kuro Shio currents are particularly important. In the southern hemisphere, poleward transport is mainly in the Pacific and Indian Oceans (see Figure 8.30). The energy budget equation for an ocean area must be expressed as

$$R_n = LE + H + G + \Delta A$$

where ΔA = horizontal advection of heat by currents and G = the heat transferred into or out of storage in the water. The storage is more or less zero for annual averages.

2 Spatial pattern of the heat budget components

The mean latitudinal values of the heat budget components discussed above conceal wide spatial variations. Figure 3.28 shows the global distribution of the annual net radiation at the surface. Broadly, its magnitude decreases poleward from about 25° latitude. However, as a result of the high absorption of solar radiation by the sea, net radiation is greater over the oceans – exceeding 160 W m^{-2} in latitudes 15 to 20° – than over land areas, where it is about 80 to 105 W m^{-2} in the same latitudes. Net radiation is also lower in arid continental areas than in humid ones, because in spite of the increased insolation receipts under clear skies there is at the same time greater net loss of terrestrial radiation.

Figures 3.29 and 3.30 show the annual vertical transfers of latent and sensible heat to the atmosphere. Both fluxes are distributed very differently over land and seas. Heat expenditure for evaporation is at a maximum in tropical and subtropical ocean areas, where it

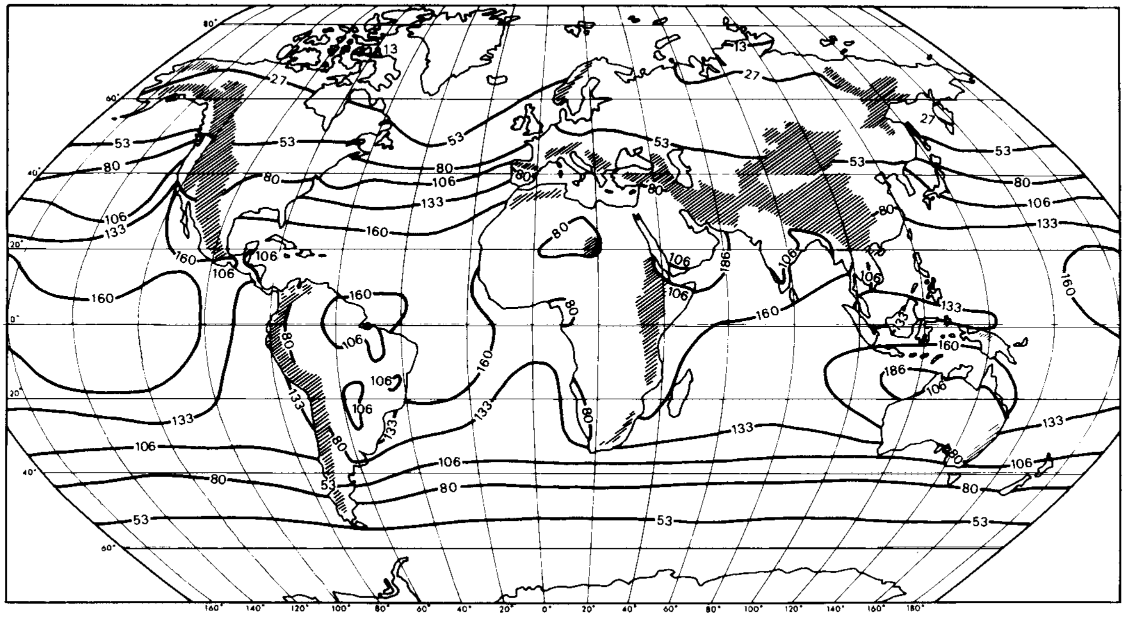

80°
60°
40°
20°
0°
20°
40°
60°
160°
140°
120°
100°
80°
60°
40°
20°
0°
20°
40°
60°
80°
100°
120°
140°
160°
180°
13
27
53
80
106
133
160
186

Figure 3.28 Global distribution of the annual net radiation at the surface, in W m^{-2}.

Source: After Budyko *et al*. (1962).

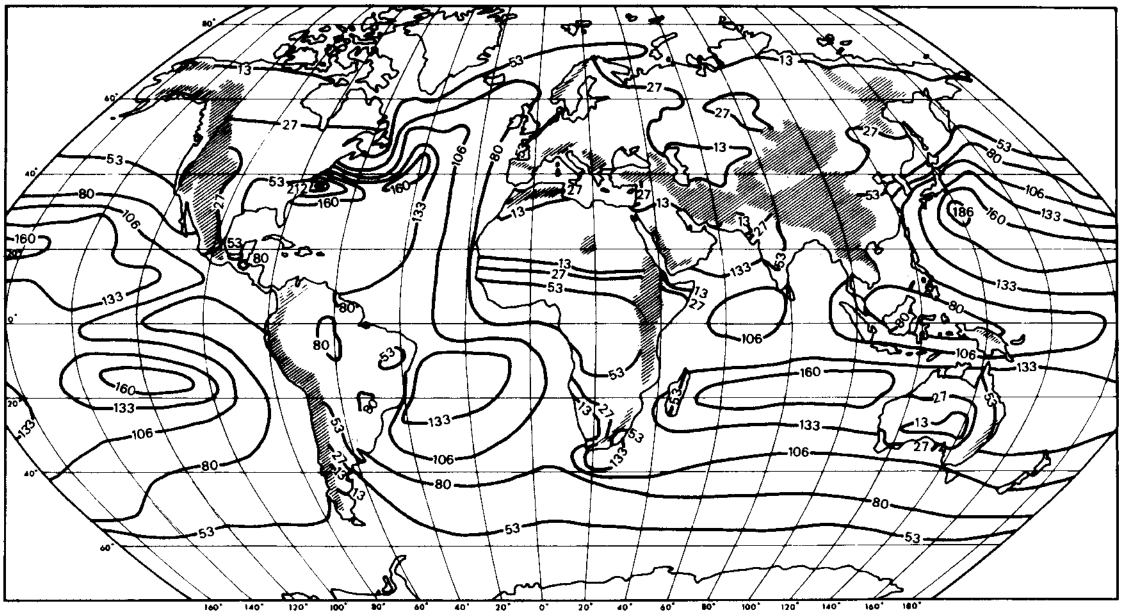

80°
60°
40°
20°
0°
20°
40°
60°
160°
140°
120°
100°
80°
60°
40°
20°
0°
20°
40°
60°
80°
100°
120°
140°
160°
180°
13
27
53
80
106
133
160
186
212

Figure 3.29 Global distribution of the vertical transfer of latent heat, in W m^{-2}.

Source: After Budyko *et al*. (1962).

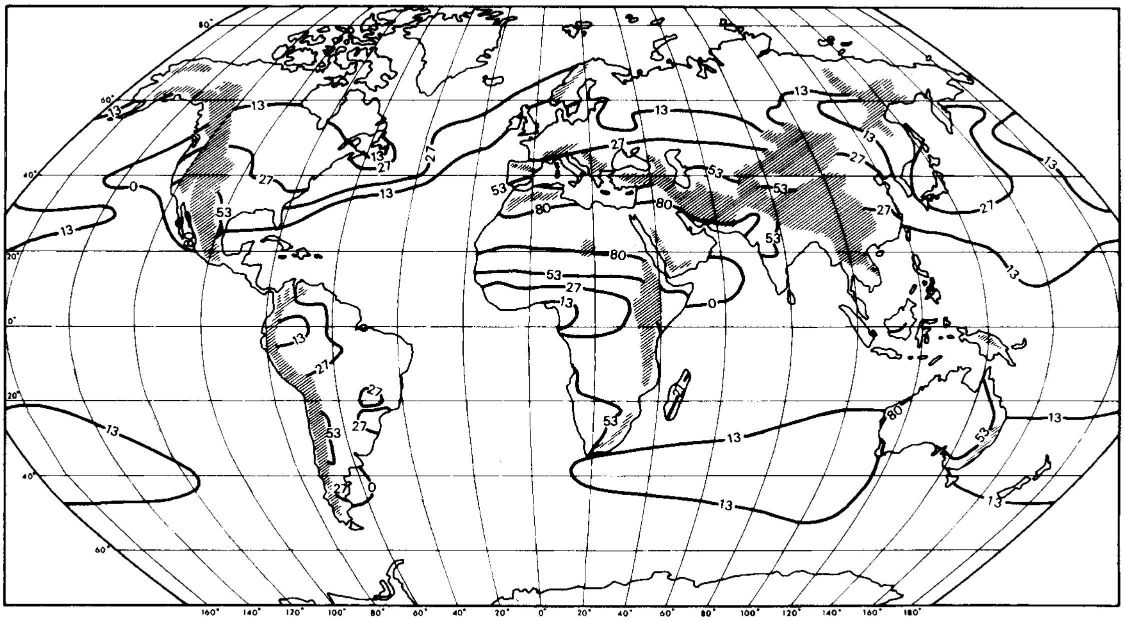


Figure 3.30 Global distribution of the vertical transfer of sensible heat, in W m^{-2}.

Source: After Budyko *et al*. (1962).

exceeds 160 W m^{-2}. It is less near the equator, where wind speeds are somewhat lower and the air has a vapour pressure close to the saturation value (see Chapter 3A). It is clear from Figure 3.29 that the major warm currents greatly increase the evaporation rate. On land, the latent heat transfer is largest in hot, humid regions. It is least in arid areas with low precipitation and in high latitudes, where there is little available energy.

The largest exchange of sensible heat occurs over tropical deserts, where more than 80 W m^{-2} is transferred to the atmosphere (see Figure 3.30). In contrast to latent heat, the sensible heat flux is generally small over the oceans, reaching only 25–40 W m^{-2} in areas of warm currents. Indeed, negative values occur (transfer to the ocean) where warm continental airmasses move offshore over cold currents.

SUMMARY

Almost all energy affecting the earth is derived from solar radiation, which is of short wavelength ($<4\,\mu$m) due to the high temperature of the sun (6000 K) (i.e. Wien's Law). The solar constant has a value of approximately 1368 W m^{-2}. The sun and the earth radiate almost as black bodies (Stefan's Law, $F = \sigma T^4$), whereas the atmospheric gases do not. Terrestrial radiation, from an equivalent black body, amounts to only about 270 W m^{-2} due to its low radiating temperature (263 K); this is infra-red (long-wave) radiation between 4 and 100 μm. Water vapour and carbon dioxide are the major absorbing gases for infra-red radiation, whereas the atmosphere is largely transparent to solar radiation (the greenhouse effect). Trace gas increases are now augmenting the 'natural' greenhouse effect (33 K). Solar radiation is lost by reflection, mainly from clouds, and by absorption (largely by water vapour). The planetary albedo is 31 per cent; 49 per cent of the extraterrestrial radiation reaches the surface. The atmosphere is heated primarily from the surface by the absorption of terrestrial infra-red radiation and by turbulent heat transfer. Temperature usually decreases with height at an average rate of about 6.5°C/km in the troposphere. In the stratosphere and thermosphere, it increases with height due to the presence of radiation absorbing gases.

The excess of net radiation in lower latitudes leads to a poleward energy transport from tropical latitudes by ocean currents and by the atmosphere. This is in the form of sensible heat (warm airmasses/ocean water) and latent heat (atmospheric water vapour). Air temperature at any point is affected by the incoming solar radiation and other vertical energy exchanges, surface properties (slope, albedo, heat capacity), land and sea distribution and elevation, and also by horizontal advection due to airmass movements and ocean currents.

DISCUSSION TOPICS

- Explain the respective roles of the earth's orbit about the sun and the tilt of the axis of rotation for global climate.
- Explain the differences between the transmission of solar and terrestrial radiation by the atmosphere.
- What is the relative importance of incoming solar radiation, turbulent energy exchanges and other factors in determining local daytime temperatures?
- Consider the role of clouds in global climate from a radiative perspective.
- What effects do ocean currents have on regional climates? Consider the mechanisms involved for both warm and cold currents.
- Explain the concept of 'continentality'. What climatic processes are involved and how do they operate?

FURTHER READING

Books

Barry, R. G. (1992) *Mountain Weather and Climate* (2nd edn), Routledge, London and New York, 402pp.

Budyko, M. I. (1974) *Climate and Life*, New York, Academic Press, 508pp. [Provides ready access to the work of a pre-eminent Russian climatologist.]

Campbell, I. M. (1986) *Energy and the Atmosphere. A Physical–Chemical Approach* (2nd edn), John Wiley & Sons, Chichester, 337pp.

Essenwanger, O. M. (1985) *General Climatology. Vol. 1A. Heat Balance Climatology. World Survey of Climatology*, Elsevier, Amsterdam, 224pp. [Comprehensive overview of net radiation, latent, sensible and ground heat fluxes; units are calories.]

Fröhlich, C. and London, J. (1985) *Radiation Manual*, World Meteorological Organization, Geneva.

Geiger, R. (1965) *The Climate Near the Ground* (2nd edn), Harvard University Press, Cambridge, MA, 611pp.

Herman, J. R. and Goldberg, R. A. (1985) *Sun, Weather and Climate*, Dover, New York, 360pp. [Useful survey of solar variability (sunspots, electromagnetic and corpuscular radiation, cosmic rays and geomagetic sector structure), long- and short-term relations with weather and climate, and design of experiments.]

Hewson, E. W. and Longley, R. W. (1944) *Meteorology, Theoretical and Applied*, Wiley, New York, 468pp.

Miller, D. H. (1981) *Energy at the Surface of the Earth*, Academic Press, New York, 516pp. [Comprehensive treatment of radiation and energy fluxes in ecosystems and fluxes of carbon; many original illustrations, tables and references.]

NASA (nd) *From Pattern to Process: The Strategy of the Earth Observing System*, Vol. III, EOS Science Steering Committee Report, NASA, Houston, Texas.

Sellers, W. D. (1965) *Physical Climatology*, University of Chicago Press, Chicago, IL, 272pp. [Classic treatment of the physical mechanisms of radiation, the budgets of energy, momentum and moisture, turbulent transfer and diffusion.]

Simpkin, T. and Fiske, R. S. (1983) *Krakatau 1883*, Smithsonian Institution Press, Washington, DC, 464pp.

Strahler, A. N. (1965) *Introduction to Physical Geography*, Wiley, New York, 455pp.

Sverdrup, H. V. (1945) *Oceanography for Meteorologists*, Allen & Unwin, London, 235pp. [Classic text.]

Articles

Ahmad, S. A. and Lockwood, J. G. (1979) Albedo. *Prog. Phys. Geog*. 3, 520–43.

Ardanuy, P. E., Kyle, H. L. and Hoyt, D. (1992) Global relationships among the earth's radiation budget, cloudiness, volcanic aerosols and surface temperature. *J. Climate* 5(10), 1120–39.

Barry, R. G. (1985) The cryosphere and climatic change. In MacCracken, M. C. and Luther, F. M. (eds) *Detecting the Climatic Effects of Increasing Carbon Dioxide*, DOE/ER-0235, US Department of Energy, Washington, DC, pp. 109–48.

Barry, R. G. and Chambers, R. E. (1966) A preliminary map of summer albedo over England and Wales. *Quart. J. Roy. Met. Soc*. 92, 543–8.

Beckinsale, R. P. (1945) The altitude of the zenithal sun: a geographical approach. *Geog. Rev*. 35, 596–600.

Berger, A. (1996) Orbital parameters and equations. In Schneider, S. H. (ed.) *Encyclopedia of Climate and Weather*, Vol. 2, New York, Oxford University Press, pp. 552–7.

Budyko, M. I., Nayefimova, N. A., Aubenok, L. I. and Strokhina, L. A. (1962) The heat balance of the surface of the earth. *Soviet Geography* 3(5), 3–16.

Currie, R. G. (1993) Luni–solar 18.6 and solar cycle 10–11 year signals in U.S.A. air temperature records. *Int. J. Climatology* 13, 31–50.

Foukal, P. V. (1990) The variable sun. *Sci. American* 262 (2), 34–41.

Garnett, A. (1937) Insolation and relief. *Trans. Inst. Brit. Geog*. 5 (71pp.).

Henderson-Sellers, A. and Wilson, M. F. (1983) Surface albedo data for climate modeling. *Rev. Geophys. Space Phys*. 21(1), 743–78.

Kiehl, J. T. and Trenbreth, K. E. (1997) Earth's annual global mean energy budget. *Bull. Amer. Met. Soc.* 78, 197–208.

Kraus, H. and Alkhalaf, A. (1995) Characteristic surface energy balances for different climate types. *Int. J. Climatology* 15, 275–84.

Kung, E. C., Bryson, R. A. and Lenschow, D. H. (1964) Study of a continental surface albedo on the basis of flight measurements and structure of the earth's surface cover over North America. *Mon. Weather Rev*. 92, 543–64.

Kyle, H. L. *et al*. (1993) The Nimbus Earth Radiation Budget (ERB) experiment: 1975–1992. *Bull. Amer. Met. Soc*. 74, 815–30.

Lean, J. (1991) Variations in the sun's radiative output. *Rev. Geophys*. 29, 505–35.

Lean, J. and Rind, D. (1994) Solar variability: implications for global change. *EOS* 75(1), 1 and 5–7.

London, J., Warren, S. G. and Hahn, C. J. (1989) The global distribution of observed cloudiness – a contribution to the ISCCP. *Adv. Space Res*. 9, 161–5.

Lumb, F. E. (1961) *Seasonal variation of the sea surface temperature in coastal waters of the British Isles*. Sci. Paper No. 6, Meteorological Office, HMSO, London (21pp.).

McFadden, J. D. and Ragotzkie, R. A. (1967) Climatological significance of albedo in central Canada. *J. Geophys. Res.* 72(1), 135–43.

Minami, K. and Neue, H-U. (1994) Rice paddies as a methane source. *Climatic Change* 27, 13–26.

Newell, R. E. (1964) The circulation of the upper atmosphere. *Sci American* 210, 62–74.

Paffen, K. (1967) Das Verhältniss der Tages – zur Jahreszeitlichen Temperaturschwankung. *Erdkunde* 21, 94–111.

Ramanathan, V., Barkstrom, B. R. and Harrison, E. F. (1990) Climate and the earth's radiation budget. *Physics Today* 42, 22–32.

Ramanathan, V., Cess, R. D., Harrison, E. F., Minnis, P., Barkstrom, B. R., Ahmad, E. and Hartmann, D. (1989) Cloud-radiative forcing and climate: results from the Earth Radiation Budget Experiment. *Science* 243, 57–63.

Ransom, W. H. (1963) Solar radiation and temperature. *Weather* 8, 18–23.

Sellers, W. D. (1980) A comment on the cause of the diurnal and annual temperature cycles. *Bull. Amer. Met. Soc*. 61, 741–55.

Stephens, G. L., Campbell, G. G. and Vonder Haar, T. H. (1981) Earth radiation budgets. *J. Geophys. Res*. 86(C10), 9739–60.

Stone, R. (1955) Solar heating of land and sea. *J. Geography* 40, 288.

Strangeways, I. (1998) Back to basics: the 'met. enclosure'. Part 3: Radiation. *Weather* 53, 43–9.

Tully, J. P. and Giovando, L. F. (1963) Seasonal temperature structure in the eastern subarctic Pacific Ocean. In Dunbar, M. J. (ed.) *Maritime Distributions, Roy. Soc. Canada, Spec. Pub*. 5, 10–36.

Weller, G. and Wendler G. (1990) Energy budgets over various types of terrain in polar regions. *Ann. Glac.* 14, 311–14.

Wilson, R. C. and Hudson, H. S. (1991) The sun's luminosity over a complete solar cycle. *Nature* 351, 42–3.

4

Atmospheric moisture budget

Learning objectives
When you have read this chapter you will:

- ☐ Be familiar with the major atmospheric components of the hydrological cycle,
- ☐ Know the main controls of evaporation and condensation,
- ☐ Be aware of the spatial and temporal characteristics of moisture in the atmosphere, evaporation and precipitation,
- ☐ Know the different forms of precipitation and typical statistical characteristics,
- ☐ Know the major geographical and altitudinal patterns of precipitation and their basic causes,
- ☐ Understand the nature and characteristics of droughts.

This chapter considers the role of water in its various phases (solid, liquid and vapour) in the climate system and the transfers (or cycling) of water between the major reservoirs – the oceans, the land surface and the atmosphere. We discuss measures of humidity, large-scale moisture transport, moisture balance, evaporation and condensation.

A THE GLOBAL HYDROLOGICAL CYCLE

The global hydrosphere consists of a series of reservoirs interconnected by water cycling in various phases. These reservoirs are the oceans; ice sheets and glaciers; terrestrial water (rivers, soil moisture, lakes and ground water); the biosphere (water in plants and animals); and the atmosphere. The oceans, with a mean depth of 3.8 km and covering 71 per cent of the earth's surface, hold 97 per cent of *all* the earth's water (23.4×10^6 km^3). Approximately 70 per cent of the total *fresh* water is locked up in ice sheets and glaciers, while almost all of the remainder is ground water. It is an astonishing fact that rivers and lakes hold only 0.3 per cent of all fresh water and the atmosphere a mere 0.04 per cent (Figure 4.1). The average residence time of water within these reservoirs varies from hundreds or thousands of years for the oceans and polar ice to only about ten days for the atmosphere. Water cycling involves evaporation, the transport of water vapour in the atmosphere, condensation, precipitation and terrestrial runoff. The equations of the water budget for the atmosphere and for the surface are respectively:

$$\Delta Q = E - P + D_Q$$

and

$$\Delta S = P - E - r$$

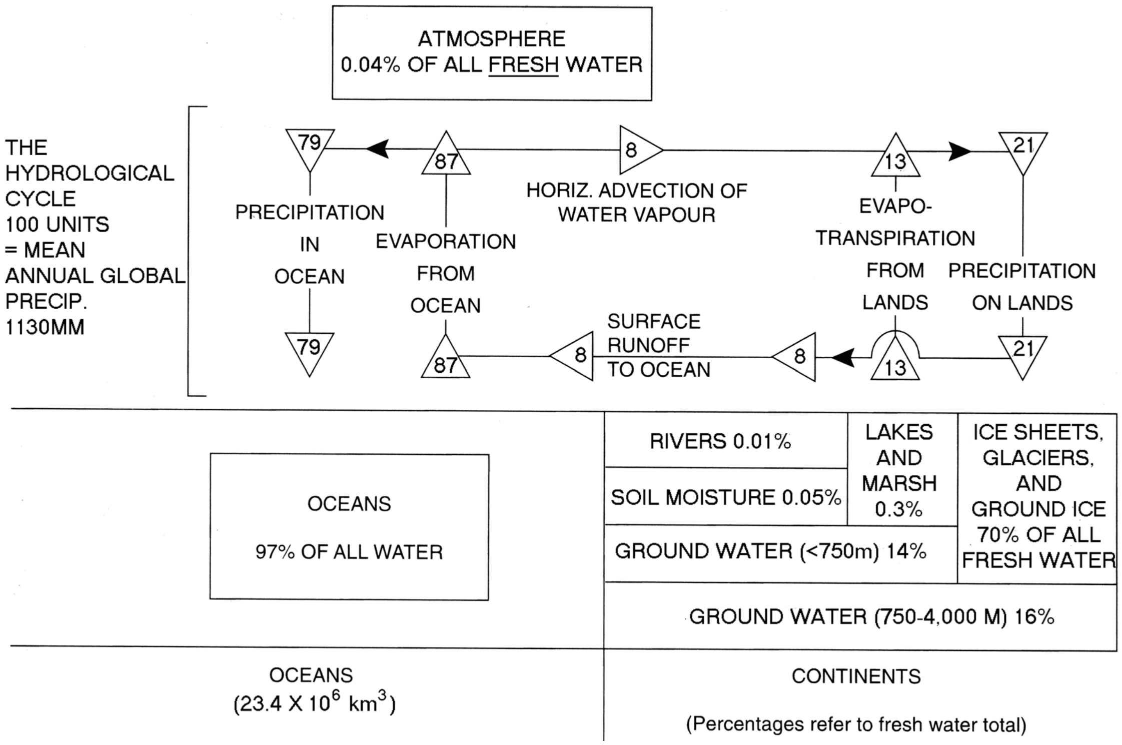

ATMOSPHERE
0.04% OF ALL FRESH WATER
THE HYDROLOGICAL CYCLE 100 UNITS = MEAN ANNUAL GLOBAL PRECIP. 1130MM
79
87
8
13
21
PRECIPITATION IN OCEAN
EVAPORATION FROM OCEAN
HORIZ. ADVECTION OF WATER VAPOUR
EVAPO-TRANSPIRATION FROM LANDS
PRECIPITATION ON LANDS
79
87
8
SURFACE RUNOFF TO OCEAN
8
13
21
OCEANS
97% OF ALL WATER
RIVERS 0.01%
SOIL MOISTURE 0.05%
LAKES AND MARSH 0.3%
ICE SHEETS, GLACIERS, AND GROUND ICE 70% OF ALL FRESH WATER
GROUND WATER (<750m) 14%
GROUND WATER (750-4,000 M) 16%
OCEANS
(23.4 X 10⁶ km³)
CONTINENTS
(Percentages refer to fresh water total)

Figure 4.1 The hydrological cycle and water storage of the globe. The exchanges in the cycle are referred to 100 units, which equal the mean annual global precipitation of 1130 mm. The percentage storage figures for atmospheric and continental water are percentages of all *fresh* water. The saline ocean waters make up 97 per cent of *all* water. The horizontal advection of water vapour indicates the *net* transfer.

Source: From More (1967) updated after Korzun (1978).

where ΔQ is the time change of moisture in an atmospheric column, E = evaporation, P = precipitation, D_Q = moisture divergence out of the column, ΔS = surface storage of water, and r = runoff. For short-term processes, the water balance of the atmosphere may be assumed to be in equilibrium; however, over periods of tens of years, global warming may increase its water storage capacity.

Because of its large heat capacity, the global occurrence and transport of water is closely linked to global energy. Atmospheric water vapour is responsible for the bulk of total global energy lost into space by infra-red radiation. Over 75 per cent of the energy input from the surface into the atmosphere is a result of the liberation of latent heat by condensation and, principally, the production of rainfall.

Table 4.1 Mean water content of the atmosphere (in mm of rainfall equivalent).

	Northern hemisphere	*Southern hemisphere*	*World*
January	19	25	22
July	34	20	27

Source: After Sutcliffe (1956).

The average storage of water vapour in the atmosphere (Table 4.1), termed the precipitable water content (about 25 mm), is sufficient for only ten days' supply of rainfall over the earth as a whole. However, intense (horizontal) influx of moisture into the air over a given region makes possible short-term rainfall totals greatly in excess of 30 mm. The phenomenal record total of 1870 mm fell on the island of Réunion, off Madagascar, during twenty-four hours in March 1952, and much greater intensities have been observed over shorter periods (see E.2a, this chapter).

B HUMIDITY

1 Moisture content

Atmospheric moisture comprises water vapour, and water droplets and ice crystals in clouds. Moisture content is determined by local evaporation, air temperature and the horizontal atmospheric transport of moisture. Cloud water, on average, amounts to only 4 per cent of atmospheric moisture. The moisture content of the atmosphere can be expressed in several ways, apart from the vapour pressure (p. 24), depending on which aspect the user wishes to emphasize. The total mass of water in a given volume of air (i.e. the density of the water vapour) is one such measure. This is termed the *absolute humidity* (r_w) and is measured in grams per cubic metre (g m^{-3}). Volumetric measurements are seldom used in meteorology and more convenient is the *mass mixing ratio* (x). This is the mass of water vapour in grams per kilogram of dry air. For most practical purposes, the *specific humidity* (q) is identical, being the mass of vapour per kilogram of air, including its moisture.

More than 50 per cent of atmospheric moisture content is below 850 mb (approximately 1450 m) and more than 90 per cent below 500 mb (5575 m). Figure 4.2 illustrates typical vertical distributions in spring in middle latitudes. It is also apparent that the seasonal effect is most marked in the lowest 3000 m (i.e. below 700 mb). Air temperature sets an upper limit to water vapour pressure – the saturation value (i.e. 100 per cent relative humidity); consequently we may expect the distribution of mean vapour content to reflect this control. In January, minimum values of 1–2 mm (equivalent depth of water) occur in northern continental interiors and high latitudes, with secondary minima of 5–10 mm in tropical desert areas, where there is subsiding air (Figure 4.3). Maximum vapour contents of 50–60 mm are over southern Asia during the summer monsoon and over equatorial latitudes of Africa and South America.

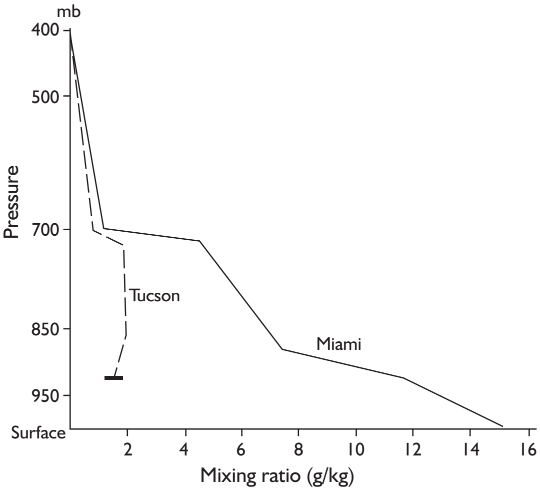


Figure 4.2 The vertical variation of atmospheric vapour content (g/kg) at Tucson, AZ and Miami, FL at 12 UTC on 27 March 2002.

Another important measure is *relative humidity* (r), which expresses the actual moisture content of a sample of air as a percentage of that contained in the same volume of saturated air at the same temperature. The relative humidity is defined with reference to the mixing ratio, but it can be determined approximately in several ways:

$$r = \frac{x}{x_s} \times 100 < \frac{q}{q_s} \times 100 < \frac{e}{e_s} \times 100$$

where the subscript s refers to the respective saturation values at the same temperature; e denotes vapour pressure.

A further index of humidity is the dew-point temperature. This is the temperature at which saturation occurs if air is cooled at constant pressure without addition or removal of vapour. When the air temperature and dew point are equal the relative humidity is 100 per cent, and it is evident that relative humidity can also be determined from:

$$\frac{e_s \text{ at dew-point}}{e_s \text{ at air temperature}} \times 100$$

The relative humidity of a parcel of air will change if either its temperature or its mixing ratio is changed. In general, the relative humidity varies inversely with temperature during the day, tending to be lower in the early afternoon and higher at night.

Atmospheric moisture can be measured by at least five types of instrument. For routine measurements the *wet-bulb thermometer* is installed in a louvred instrument shelter (Stevenson screen). The bulb of the standard thermometer is wrapped in muslin, which is kept moist by a wick from a reservoir of pure water. The

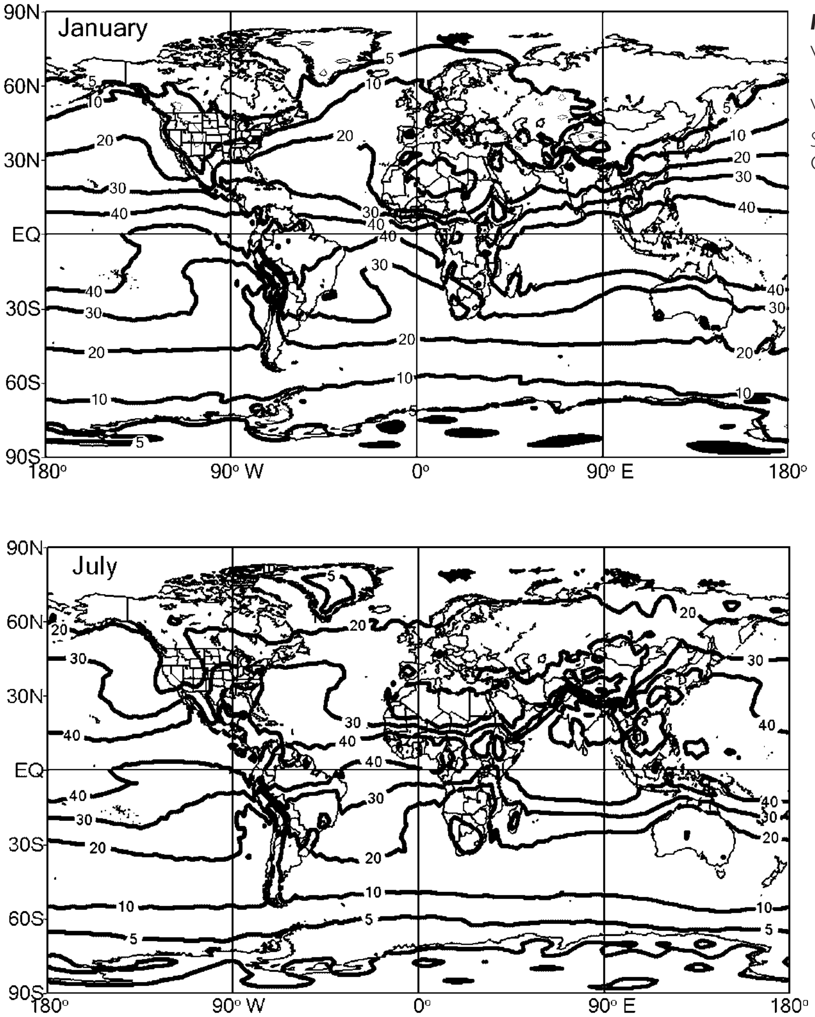


Figure 4.3 Mean atmospheric water vapour content in January and July 1970 to 1999, in mm of precipitable water.

Source: Climate Diagnostics Center, CIRES-NOAA, Boulder, CO.

evaporative cooling of this wet bulb gives a reading that can be used in conjunction with a simultaneous dry-bulb temperature reading to calculate the dew-point temperature. A similar portable device – the aspirated *psychrometer* – uses a forced flow of air at a fixed rate over the dry and wet bulbs. A sophisticated instrument for determining the dew-point, based on a different principle, is the *dew-point hygrometer*. This detects when condensation first occurs on a cooled surface. Two other types of instrument are used to determine relative humidity. The *hygrograph* utilizes the expansion/contraction of a bundle of human hair, in response to humidity, to register relative humidity continuously by a mechanical coupling to a pen arm marking on a rotating drum. It has an accuracy of ± 5 to 10 per cent. For upper air measurements, a *lithium chloride* element detects changes in electrical resistance to vapour pressure differences. Relative humidity changes are accurate within ± 3 per cent.

2 Moisture transport

The atmosphere transports moisture horizontally as well as vertically. Figure 4.1 shows a net transport from oceans to land areas. Moisture must also be transported meridionally (south–north) in order to maintain the required moisture balance at a given latitude (i.e. evaporation – precipitation = net horizontal transport of moisture into an air column). Comparison of annual average precipitation and evaporation totals

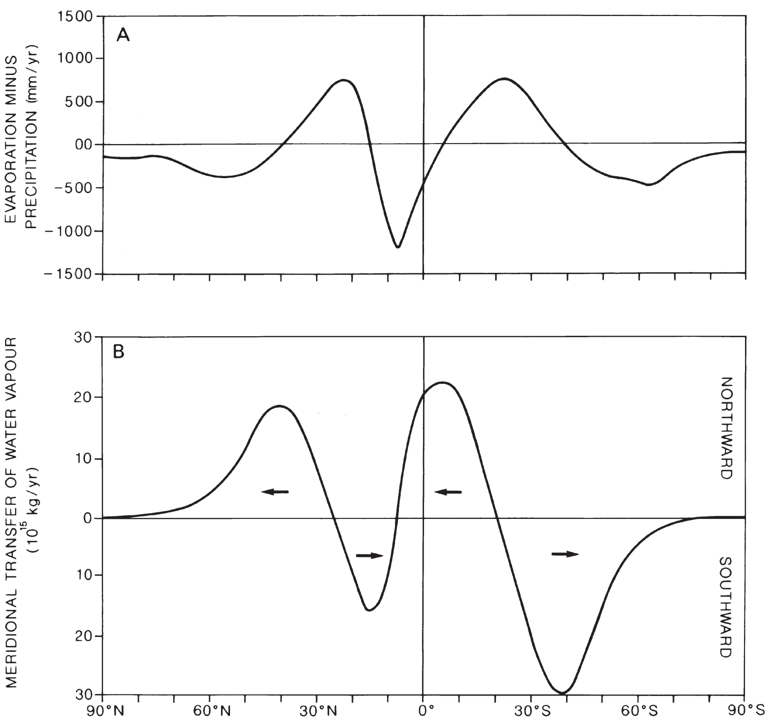


Figure 4.4 Meridional aspects of global moisture. (A) Estimates of annual evaporation minus precipitation (in mm) as a function of latitude; (B) Annual meridional transfer of water vapour (in 10^{15} kg).

Source: (A) After J. Dodd, from Browning (1993). By permission of NERC. (B) From Sellers (1965).

for latitude zones shows that in low and middle latitudes $P > E$, whereas in the subtropics $P < E$ (Figure 4.4A). These regional imbalances are maintained by net moisture transport into (convergence) and out of (divergence) the respective zones (D_Q, where divergence is positive):

$$E - P = D_Q$$

A prominent feature is the equatorward transport into low latitudes and the poleward transport in middle latitudes (Figure 4B). Atmospheric moisture is transported by the global westerly wind systems of middle latitudes towards higher latitudes and by the easterly trade wind systems towards the equatorial region (see Chapter 7). There is also significant exchange of moisture between the hemispheres. During June to August there is a moisture transport northward across the equator of 18.8×10^8 kg s^{-1}; during December to February the southward transport is 13.6×10^8 kg s^{-1}. The net annual south to north transport is 3.2×10^8 kg s^{-1}, giving an annual excess of net precipitation in the northern hemisphere of 39 mm. This is returned by terrestrial runoff into the oceans.

It is important to stress that local evaporation is, in general, not the major source of local precipitation. For example, 32 per cent of the summer season precipitation over the Mississippi River basin and between 25 and 35 per cent of that over the Amazon basin is of 'local' origin, the remainder being transported into these basins by moisture advection. Even when moisture is available in the atmosphere over a region, only a small portion of it is usually precipitated. This depends on the efficiency of the condensation and precipitation mechanisms, both microphysical and large scale.

Using atmospheric sounding data on winds and moisture content, global patterns of average water vapour flux divergence (i.e. $E - P > 0$) or convergence (i.e. $E - P < 0$) can be determined. The distribution of atmospheric moisture 'sources' (i.e. $P < E$) and 'sinks' (i.e. $P > E$) form an important basis for understanding global climates. Strong divergence (outflow) of moisture occurs over the northern Indian Ocean in summer, providing moisture for the monsoon. Subtropical divergence zones are associated with the high-pressure areas. The oceanic subtropical highs are evaporation sources; divergence over land may reflect underground water supply or may be artefacts of sparse data.

C EVAPORATION

Evaporation (including transpiration from plants) provides the moisture input into the atmosphere; the oceans provide 87 per cent and the continents 13 per cent.

The highest annual values (1500 mm), averaged zonally around the globe, occur over the tropical oceans, associated with trade wind belts, and over equatorial land areas in response to high solar radiation receipts and luxuriant vegetation growth (Figure 4.5A). The larger oceanic evaporative losses in winter, for each hemisphere (Figure 4.5B), represent the effect of outflows of cold continental air over warm ocean currents in the western North Pacific and North Atlantic (Figure 4.6) and stronger trade winds in the cold season of the southern hemisphere.

Evaporation requires an energy source at a surface that is supplied with moisture; the vapour pressure in the air must be below the saturated value (e_s); and air motion removes the moisture transferred into the surface layer of air. As illustrated in Figure 2.14, the saturation vapour pressure increases with temperature. The change in state from liquid to vapour requires energy to be expended in overcoming the intermolecular attractions of the water particles. This energy is often acquired by the removal of heat from the immediate surroundings, causing an apparent heat loss (*latent heat*), as discussed on p. 55, and a consequent drop in temperature. The latent heat of vaporization needed to evaporate 1 kg of water at 0°C is 2.5×10^6 J. Conversely, condensation releases this heat, and the temperature of an airmass in which condensation is occurring is increased as the water vapour reverts to the liquid state.

The diurnal range of temperature can be moderated by humid air, when evaporation takes place during the day and condensation at night. The relationship of saturation vapour pressure to temperature (Figure 2.14) means that evaporation processes limit low latitude ocean surface temperature (i.e. where evaporation is at a maximum) to values of about 30°C. This plays an important role in regulating the temperature of ocean surfaces and overlying air in the tropics.

The rate of evaporation depends on a number of factors, the two most important of which are the difference between the saturation vapour pressure at the water surface and the vapour pressure of the air, and the existence of a continual supply of energy to the surface. Wind velocity also affects the evaporation rate, because

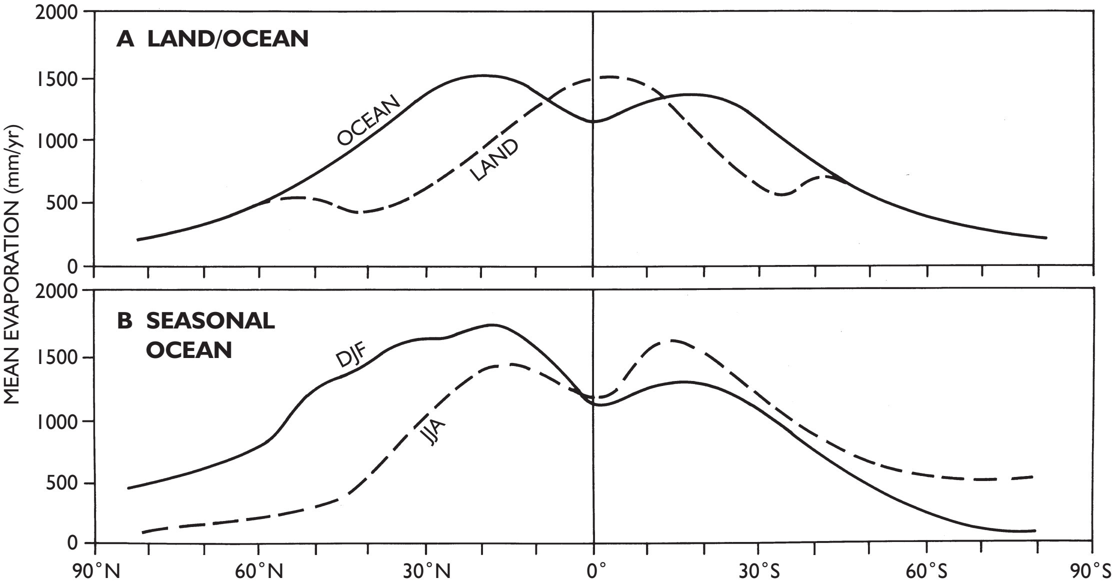


Figure 4.5 Zonal distribution of mean evaporation (mm/year): (A) annually for the ocean and land surfaces, and (B) over the oceans for December to February and June to August.

Sources: After Peixoto and Oort (1983). From *Variations in the Global Water Budget*, ed. A. Street-Perrott, M. Beran and R. Ratcliffe (1983), Fig. 22. Copyright © D. Reidel, Dordrecht, by kind permission of Kluwer Academic Publishers. Also partly from Sellers (1965).

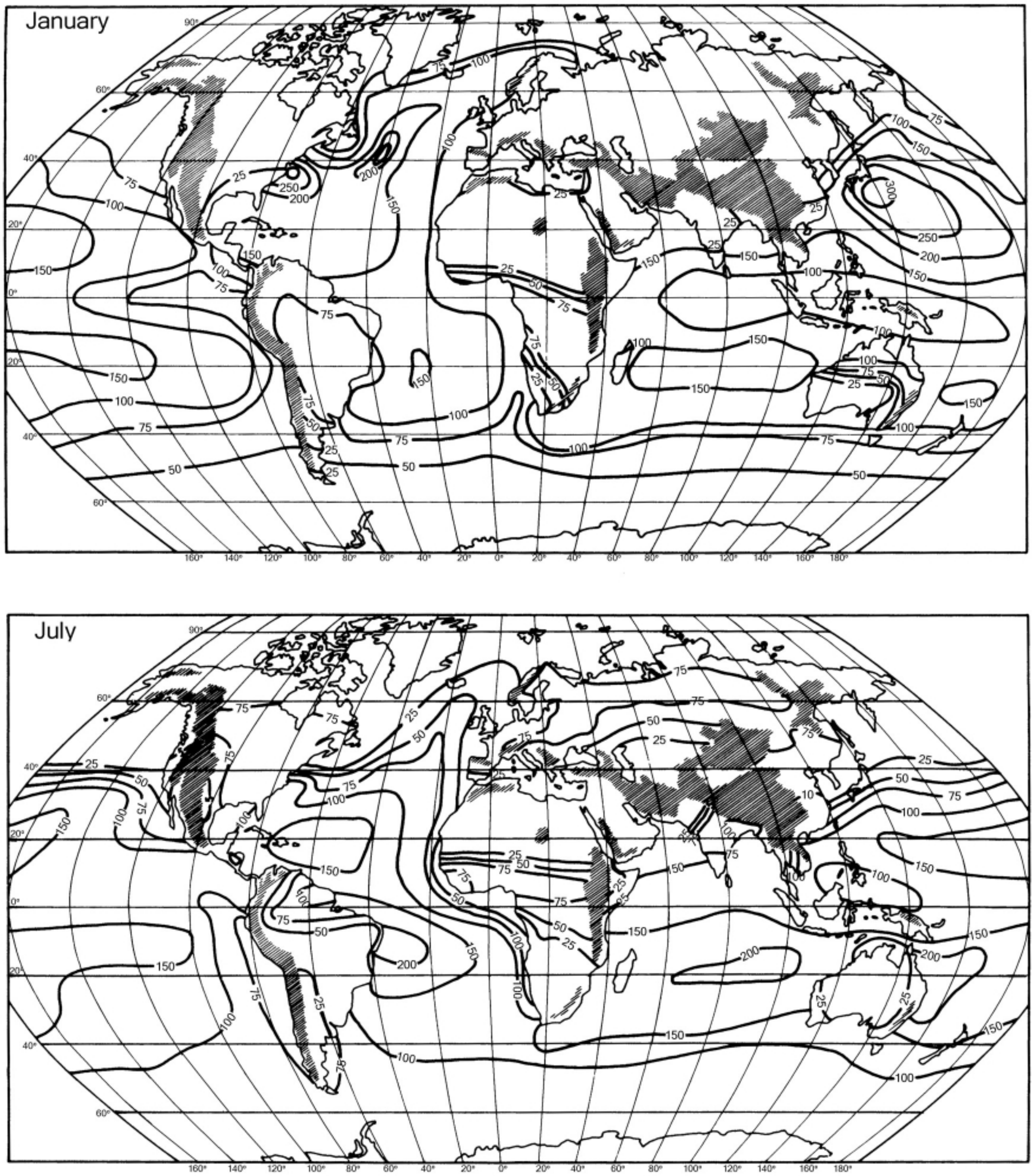

January
July
90°
60°
40°
20°
0°
20°
40°
60°
160° 140° 120° 100° 80° 60° 40° 20° 0° 20° 40° 60° 80° 100° 120° 140° 160° 180°
25
50
75
100
150
200
250
300

Figure 4.6 Mean evaporation (mm) for January and July.

Source: After M.I. Budyko, *Heat Budget Atlas of the Earth* (1958).

the wind is generally associated with the advection of unsaturated air, which will absorb the available moisture.

Water loss from plant surfaces, chiefly leaves, is a complex process termed *transpiration*. It occurs when the vapour pressure in the leaf cells is greater than the atmospheric vapour pressure. It is vital as a life function in that it causes a rise of plant nutrients from the soil and cools the leaves. The cells of the plant roots can exert an osmotic tension of up to about 15 atmospheres upon the water films between the adjacent soil particles. As these soil water films shrink, however, the tension within them increases. If the tension of the soil films exceeds the osmotic root tension, the continuity of the plant's water uptake is broken and wilting occurs. Transpiration is controlled by the atmospheric factors that determine evaporation as well as by plant factors such as the stage of plant growth, leaf area and leaf temperature, and also by the amount of soil moisture (see Chapter 12C). It occurs mainly during the day, when the *stomata* (small pores in the leaves), through which transpiration takes place, are open. This opening is determined primarily by light intensity. Transpiration naturally varies greatly with season, and during the winter months in mid-latitudes conifers lose only 10 to 18 per cent of their total annual transpiration losses and deciduous trees less than 4 per cent.

In practice, it is difficult to separate water evaporated from the soil, *intercepted moisture* remaining on vegetation surfaces after precipitation and subsequently evaporated, and transpiration. For this reason, evaporation, or the compound term *evapotranspiration*, may be used to refer to the total loss. Over land, annual evaporation is 52 per cent due to transpiration, 28 per cent soil evaporation and 20 per cent interception.

Evapotranspiration losses from natural surfaces cannot be measured directly. There are, however, various indirect methods of assessment, as well as theoretical formulae. One method of estimation is based on the moisture balance equation at the surface:

$$\mathrm{P} - \mathrm{E} = \mathrm{r} + \Delta \mathrm{S}$$

This can be applied to a gauged river catchment, where precipitation and runoff are measured, or to a block of soil. In the latter case we measure the percolation through an enclosed block of soil with a vegetation cover (usually grass) and record the rainfall upon it. The block, termed a *lysimeter*, is weighed regularly so that weight changes unaccounted for by rainfall or runoff can be ascribed to evapotranspiration losses, provided the grass is kept short! The technique allows the determination of daily evapotranspiration amounts. If the soil block is regularly 'irrigated' so that the vegetation cover is always yielding the maximum possible evapotranspiration, the water loss is called the *potential evapotranspiration* (or PE). More generally, PE may be defined as the water loss corresponding to the available energy. Potential evapotranspiration forms the basis for the climate classification developed by C. W. Thornthwaite (see Appendix 1).

In regions where snow cover is long-lasting, evaporation/sublimation from the snowpack can be estimated by lysimeters sunk into the snow that are weighed regularly.

A meteorological solution to the calculation of evaporation uses sensitive instruments to measure the net effect of eddies of air transporting moisture upward and downward near the surface. In this 'eddy correlation' technique, the vertical component of wind and the atmospheric moisture content are measured simultaneously at the same level (say, 1.5 m) every few seconds. The product of each pair of measurements is then averaged over some time interval to determine the evaporation (or condensation). This method requires delicate rapid-response instruments, so it cannot be used in very windy conditions.

Theoretical methods for determining evaporation rates have followed two lines of approach. The first relates average monthly evaporation (E) from large water bodies to the mean wind speed (u) and the mean vapour pressure difference between the water surface and the air ($e_w - e_d$) in the form:

$$E = K_u(e_w - e_d)$$

where K is an empirical constant. This is termed the *aerodynamic approach* because it takes account of the factors responsible for removing vapour from the water surface. The second method is based on the energy budget. The *net balance* of solar and terrestrial radiation at the surface (R_n) is used for evaporation (E) and the transfer of heat to the atmosphere (H). A small proportion also heats the soil by day, but since nearly all of this is lost at night it can be disregarded. Thus:

$$R_n = LE + H$$

where L is the latent heat of evaporation (2.5×10^6 J kg^{-1}). R_n can be measured with a net radiometer and the ratio $H/LE = ß$, referred to as *Bowen's ratio*, can be estimated from measurements of temperature and vapour content at two levels near the surface. ß ranges from <0.1 for water to ≥ 10 for a desert surface. The use of this ratio assumes that the vertical transfers of heat and water vapour by turbulence take place with equal efficiency. Evaporation is then determined from an expression of the form:

$$E = \frac{R_n}{L(1 + b)}$$

The most satisfactory climatological method devised so far combines the energy budget and aerodynamic approaches. In this way, H.L. Penman succeeded in expressing evaporation losses in terms of four meteorological elements that are measured regularly, at least in Europe and North America. These are net radiation (or an estimate based on duration of sunshine), mean air temperature, mean air humidity and mean wind speed (which limit the losses of heat and vapour from the surface).

The relative roles of these factors are illustrated by the global pattern of evaporation (see Figure 4.6). Losses decrease sharply in high latitudes, where there is little available energy. In middle and lower latitudes there are appreciable differences between land and sea. Rates are naturally high over the oceans in view of the unlimited availability of water, and on a seasonal basis the maximum rates occur in January over the western Pacific and Atlantic, where cold continental air blows across warm ocean currents. On an annual basis, maximum oceanic losses occur about 15 to 20°N and 10 to 20°S, in the belts of the constant trade winds (see Figures 4.5B and 4.6). The highest annual losses, estimated to be about 2000 mm, are in the western Pacific and central Indian Ocean near 15°S (cf. Figure 3.30); 2460 MJ m^{-2} yr^{-1} (78 W m^{-2} over the year) are equivalent to an evaporation of 900 mm of water. There is a subsidiary equatorial minimum over the oceans, as a result of the lower wind speeds in the doldrum belt and the proximity of the vapour pressure in the air to its saturation value. The land maximum occurs more or less at the equator due to the relatively high solar radiation receipts and the large transpiration losses from the luxuriant vegetation of this region. The secondary maximum over land in mid-latitudes is related to the strong prevailing westerly winds.

The annual evaporation over Britain, calculated by Penman's formula, ranges from about 380 mm in Scotland to 500 mm in parts of south and southeast England. Since this loss is concentrated in the period May to September, there may be seasonal water deficits of 120 to 150 mm in these parts of the country necessitating considerable use of irrigation water by farmers. The annual moisture budget can also be determined approximately by a bookkeeping method devised by C.E. Thornthwaite, where potential evapotranspiration

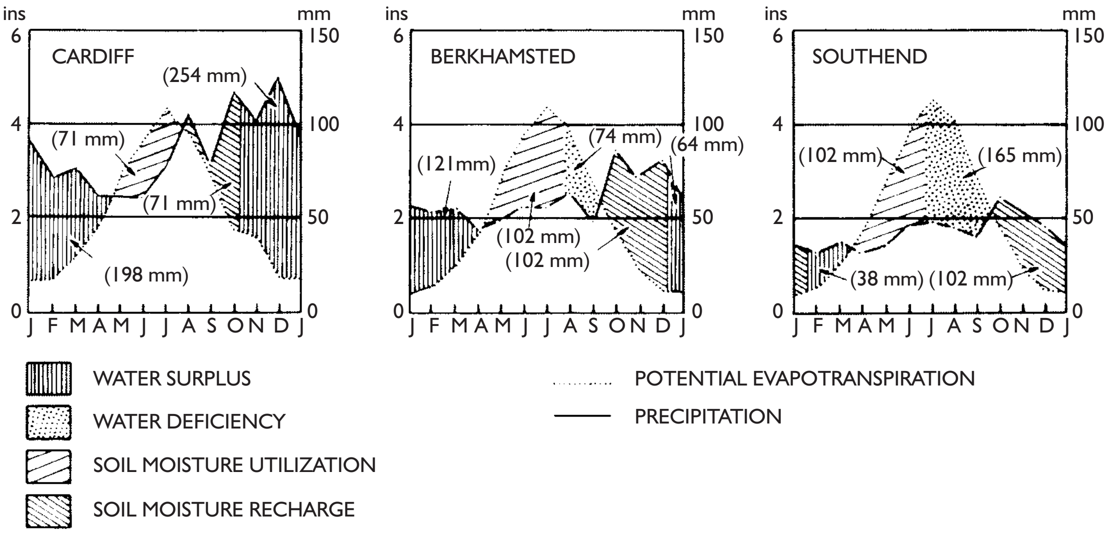


Figure 4.7 The average annual moisture budget for stations in western, central and eastern Britain determined by Thornthwaite's method. When potential evaporation exceeds precipitation soil moisture is used; at Berkhamsted in central England and Southend on the east coast, this is depleted by July to August. Autumn precipitation excess over potential evaporation goes into replenishing the soil moisture until field capacity is reached.

Source: From Howe (1956). Reprinted from *Weather*, by permission of the Royal Meteorological Society. Crown copyright ©.

is estimated from mean temperature. Figure 4.7 illustrates this for stations in western, central and eastern Britain (compare Figure 10.22). In the winter months there is an excess of precipitation over evaporation; this goes to recharging the soil moisture, and further surplus runs off. In summer, when evaporation exceeds precipitation, soil moisture is used initially to maintain evaporation at the potential value, but when this store is depleted there is a water deficiency, as shown in Figure 4.7 for Southend.

In the United States, monthly moisture conditions are commonly evaluated on the basis of the Palmer Drought Severity Index (PDSI). This is determined from accumulated weighted differences between actual precipitation and the calculated amount required for evapotranspiration, soil recharge and runoff. Accordingly, it takes account of the persistence effects of drought situations. The PDSI ranges from ≥4 (extremely moist) to ≤–4 (extreme drought). Figure 4.8 indicates an oscillation between drought and unusually moist conditions in the continental USA during the period October 1992 to August 1993.

D CONDENSATION

Condensation is the direct cause of all the various forms of precipitation. It occurs as a result of changes in air volume, temperature, pressure or humidity. Four mechanisms may lead to condensation: (1) the air is cooled to dew-point but its volume remains constant; (2) the volume of the air is increased without addition of heat; this cooling occurs because adiabatic expansion causes energy to be consumed through work (see Chapter 5); (3) a joint change of temperature and volume reduces the moisture-holding capacity of the air below its existing moisture content; or (4) evaporation adds moisture to the air. The key to understanding condensation lies in the fine balance that exists between these variables. Whenever the balance between one or more of these variables is disturbed beyond a certain limit, condensation may result.

The most common circumstances favouring condensation are those producing a drop in air temperature; namely contact cooling, radiative cooling, mixing of airmasses of different temperatures and dynamic cooling of the atmosphere. Contact cooling occurs

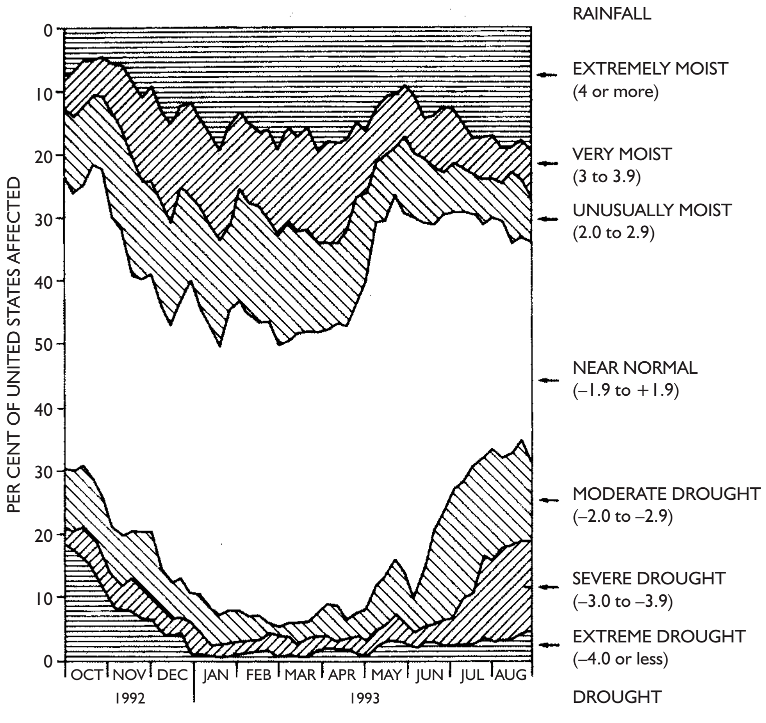


Figure 4.8 Percentage of the continental USA affected by wet spells or drought, based on the Palmer Index (see scale on right), during the period October 1992 to August 1993.

Sources: US Climate Analysis Center and Lott (1994). Reprinted from *Weather*, by permission of the Royal Meteorological Society. Crown copyright ©.

within warm, moist air passing over a cold land surface. On a clear winter's night, strong radiation will cool the surface very quickly. This surface cooling extends gradually to the moist lower air, reducing the temperature to a point where condensation occurs in the form of dew, fog or frost, depending on the amount of moisture involved, the thickness of the cooling air layer and the dew-point value. When the latter is below 0°C, it is referred to as the hoar-frost point if the air is saturated with respect to ice.

The mixing of contrasting layers within a single airmass, or of two different airmasses, can also produce condensation. Figure 4.9 indicates how the horizontal mixing of two airmasses (A and B), of given temperature and moisture characteristics, may produce an airmass (C) that is supersaturated at the intermediate temperature and consequently forms cloud. Vertical mixing of an air layer, discussed in Chapter 5 (see Figure 5.7), can have the same effect. Fog, or low stratus, with drizzle – known as 'crachin' – is common along the coasts of south China and the Gulf of Tonkin between February and April. It develops either through airmass mixing or warm advection over a colder surface.

The addition of moisture into the air near the surface by evaporation occurs when cold air moves out over a warm water surface. This can produce steam fog, which is common in arctic regions. Attempts at fog dispersal are one area where some progress has been made in local weather modification. Cold fogs can be dissipated locally by the use of dry ice (frozen CO_2) or the release of propane gas through expansion nozzles to produce freezing and the subsequent fall-out of ice crystals (cf. p. 101). Warm fogs (i.e. having drops above freezing temperatures) present bigger problems, but attempts at dissipation have shown some limited success in evaporating droplets by artificial heating, the use of large fans to draw down dry air from above, the sweeping out of fog particles by jets of water, and the injection of electrical charges into the fog to produce coagulation.

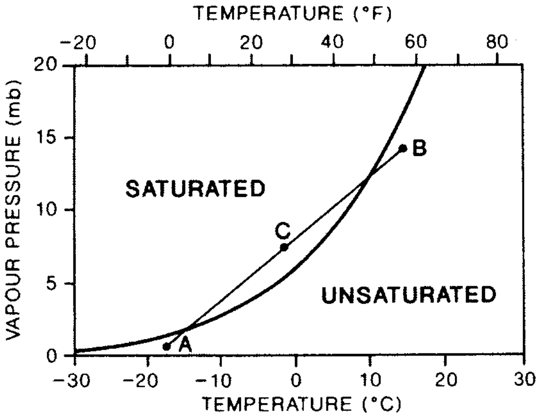


Figure 4.9 The effect of airmass mixing. The horizontal mixing of two unsaturated airmasses (A) and (B) will produce one supersaturated airmass (C). The saturation vapour pressure curve is shown (cf. Figure 2.14B, which is a semi-logarithmic plot).

Source: After Petterssen (1969).

The most effective cause of condensation is undoubtedly the dynamic process of adiabatic cooling associated with instability. This is discussed in Chapter 5.

E PRECIPITATION CHARACTERISTICS AND MEASUREMENT

1 Forms of precipitation

Strictly, *precipitation* refers to all liquid and frozen forms of water. The primary ones are:

Rain	Falling water drops with a diameter of at least 0.5 mm and typically 2 mm; droplets of less than 0.5 mm are termed *drizzle*. Rainfall has an accumulation rate of ≥1 mm/hour. Rain (or drizzle) that falls on a surface at subzero temperature forms a glazed ice layer and is termed *freezing rain*. During the protracted 'ice storm' of 5–9 January 1998 in the northeastern United States and eastern Canada, some areas received up to 100 mm of freezing rain.
Snow	Ice crystals falling in branched clusters as snowflakes. Wet snow has crystals bonded by liquid water in interior pores and crevices. Individual crystals have a hexagonal form (needles or platelets, see Plate 10). At low temperatures (–40°C), crystals may float in the air, forming 'diamond dust'.
Hail	Hard pellets, balls or irregular lumps of ice, at least 5 mm across, formed of alternating shells of opaque and clear ice. The core of a hailstone is a frozen water drop (ice pellet) or an ice particle (graupel).
Graupel	Snow pellets, opaque conical or rounded ice particles 2 to 5 mm in diameter formed by aggregation.

Sleet	Refers in the UK to a rain–snow mixture; in North America, to small translucent ice pellets (frozen raindrops) or snowflakes that have melted and refrozen.
Dew	Condensation droplets on the ground surface or grass, deposited when the surface temperature is below the air's dew-point temperature. *Hoar-frost* is the frozen form, when ice crystals are deposited on a surface.
Rime	Clear crystalline or granular ice deposited when supercooled fog or cloud droplets encounter a vertical structure, trees or suspended cable. The rime deposit grows into the wind in a triangular form related to the wind speed. It is common in cold, maritime climates and on mid-latitude mountains in winter.

In general, only rain and snow make significant contributions to precipitation totals. In many parts of the world, the term *rainfall* may be used interchangeably with *precipitation*. Precipitation is measured in a rain gauge, a cylindrical container capped by a funnel to reduce evaporative losses, which most commonly stands on the ground. Its height is about 60 cm and its diameter about 20 cm. More than fifty types of rain gauge are in use by national meteorological services around the world. In windy and snowy regions they are often equipped with a windshield to increase the catch efficiency. It must be emphasized that precipitation records are only *estimates*. Factors of gauge location, its height above ground, large- and small-scale turbulence in the airflow, splash-in and evaporation all introduce errors in the catch. Gauge design differences affect the airflow over the gauge aperture and the evaporation losses from the container. Falling snow is particularly subject to wind effects, which can result in under-representation of the true amount by 50 per cent or more. It has been shown that a double snow fence erected around the gauge installation greatly improves the measured catch. Corrections to gauge data need to take account of the proportion of precipitation falling in liquid and solid form, wind speeds during precipitation events, and precipitation intensity. Studies in Switzerland suggest that observed totals underestimate the true amounts by 7 per cent in summer and 11 per cent in winter below 2000 m, but by as much as 15 per cent in summer and 35 per cent in winter in the Alps between 2000 and 3000 m.

The density of gauge networks limits the accuracy of areal precipitation estimates. The number of gauges per 10,000-km^2 area ranges from 245 gauges in Britain to ten in the United States and only three in Canada and Asia. The coverage is particularly sparse in mountain and polar regions. In many land areas, weather radar provides unique information on storm systems and quantitative estimates of area-averaged precipitation (see Box 4.1). Ocean data come from island stations and ship observations of precipitation frequency and relative intensity. Satellite remote sensing, using infra-red and passive microwave data, provides independent estimates of large-scale ocean rainfall.

2 Precipitation characteristics

The climatological characteristics of precipitation may be described in terms of mean annual precipitation, annual variability and year-to-year trends. However, hydrologists are interested in the properties of individual rainstorms. Weather observations usually indicate the amount, duration and frequency of precipitation, and these enable other derived characteristics to be determined. Three of these are discussed below.

a Rainfall intensity

The intensity (= amount/duration) of rainfall during an individual storm, or a still shorter period, is of vital interest to hydrologists and water engineers concerned with flood forecasting and prevention, as well as to conservationists dealing with soil erosion. Chart records of the rate of rainfall (*hyetograms*) are necessary to assess intensity, which varies markedly with the time interval selected. Average intensities are greatest for short periods (thunderstorm-type downpours) as Figure 4.10 illustrates for Milwaukee, USA.

In the case of extreme rates at different points over the earth (Figure 4.11), the record intensity over ten minutes is approximately three times that for 100 minutes, and the latter exceeds by as much again the record intensity over 1000 minutes (i.e. 16.5 hours). Note that many of the records for events with a duration greater than a day are from the tropics. High-intensity rain is associated with increased drop size rather than an increased number of drops. For example, with precipitation intensities of 1, 13 and 100 mm/hr (or 0.05, 0.5 and 4.0 in/hr), the most frequent raindrop diameters are 1, 2 and 3 mm, respectively. Figure 4.12 shows

RADAR METEOROLOGY

box 4.1
significant 20th-c. advance

Radio detection and ranging (*radar*), developed for aircraft detection during the Second World War, was swiftly applied to tracking precipitation areas from the radar echoes. Radio waves transmitted by an antenna in the cm wavelength range (typically 3 and 10 cm) are back-scattered by raindrops and ice particles, as well as by cloud droplets, particulates, insect swarms and flocks of birds. The return signal and its time delay provide information on the objects in the path of the beam and their direction, distance and altitude. The need to detect tropical rainstorms led to the first training programmes in radar interpretation in 1944. In 1946 to 1947, the Thunderstorm Project led by H. R. Byers used radar to track the growth and organization of thunderstorms in Florida and Ohio. Gradually, indicators of storm severity were devised based on the shape and arrangement of echoes, their vertical extent and the strength of the back scatter measured in decibels (dB). Much of this process is now automated. Specifically designed weather radars for the US Weather Bureau became available only in 1957. In the 1970s the Doppler radar, which uses the frequency shift produced by a moving target to determine the horizontal motion relative to the radar location, began to be used for research on hail and tornadoes. Dual Doppler systems are used to calculate the horizontal wind vector. The Next Generation Weather Radar (NEXRAD) deployed in the 1990s in the United States, and similar systems in Canada and European countries, are modern Doppler instruments. The vertical profile of winds in the atmosphere can be determined with vertically pointing Doppler radar operating in the VHF (30 MHz) to UHF (3 GHz) ranges. The wind velocity is calculated from variations in the clear air refractive index caused by turbulence.

A major application of radar is in estimating precipitation intensity. R. Wexler and J.S. Marshall and colleagues first established a relationship between radar reflectivity and rain rate in 1947. The reflectivity, Z, was found to depend on the droplet concentration (N) times the sixth power of the diameter (D^6). The basis of this relationship has recently been questioned. Estimates are generally calibrated with reference to rain gauge measurements.

Reference

Rogers, R.R. and Smith, P.L. (1996) A short history of radar meteorology. In J.R. Fleming (ed.) *Historical Essays on Meteorology 1919–1995*. American Meteorological Society, Boston, MA, pp. 57–98.

maximum expected precipitation for storms of different duration and frequency in the USA. The maxima are along the Gulf Coast and in Florida.

b *Areal extent of a rainstorm*

The rainfall totals received in a given time interval depend on the size of the area that is considered. Rainfall averages for a twenty-four-hour storm covering 100,00 km^2 may be only one-third to one-tenth of those for a storm over a 25 km^2 area. The curvilinear relationship is similar to that for rainfall duration and intensity. Figure 4.13 illustrates the relationship between rain area and frequency of occurrence in Illinois, USA. Here a log–log plot gives a straight line fit. For 100-year, or heavier falls, the storm frequency in this region may be estimated from $0.0011\ (\text{area})^{0.896}$ where the area is in km^2.

c *Frequency of rainstorms*

It is useful to know the average time period within which a rainfall of specified amount or intensity may be expected to occur once. This is termed the *recurrence interval* or *return period*. Figure 4.14 gives this type of information for six contrasting stations. From this, it would appear that on average, each twenty years, a twenty-four-hour rainfall of at least 95 mm is likely to occur at Cleveland and 216 mm at Lagos. However, this *average* return period does not mean that such falls necessarily occur in the twentieth year of a selected period. Indeed, they might occur in the first or not at all! These estimates require long periods of observational data, but the approximately linear relationships shown by such graphs are of great practical significance for the design of flood-control systems.

Studies of rainstorm events have been carried out in many different climatic areas. An example for

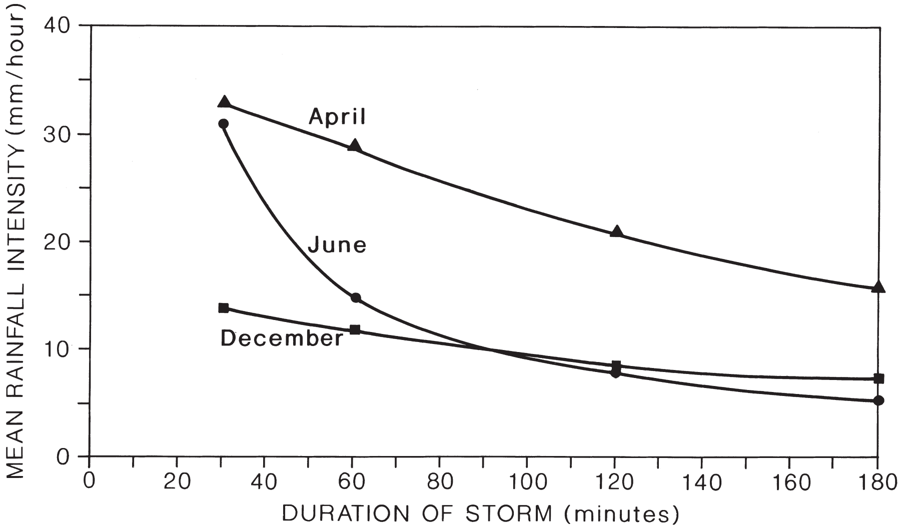


Figure 4.10 Relation between rainfall intensity and duration for Milwaukee, USA, during three months in 1973.

Source: US Environmental Data Service (1974). Courtesy US Environmental Data Service.

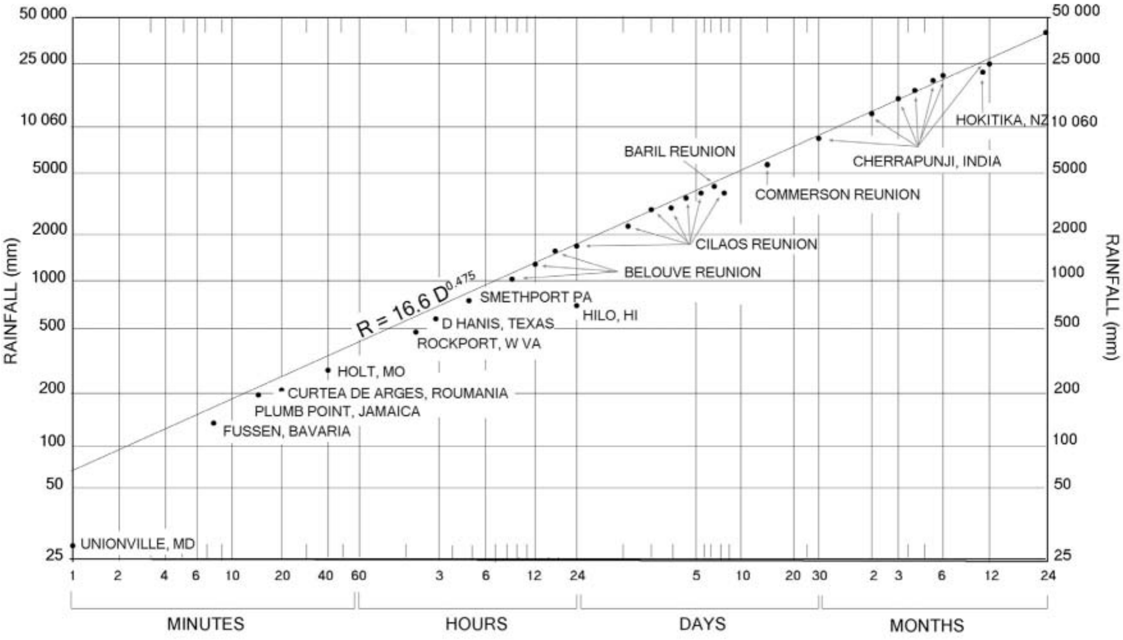


Figure 4.11 World record rainfalls (mm) with an envelope line prior to 1967. The equation of the line is given and the state or country where important records were established.

Source: Modified and updated after Rodda (1970).

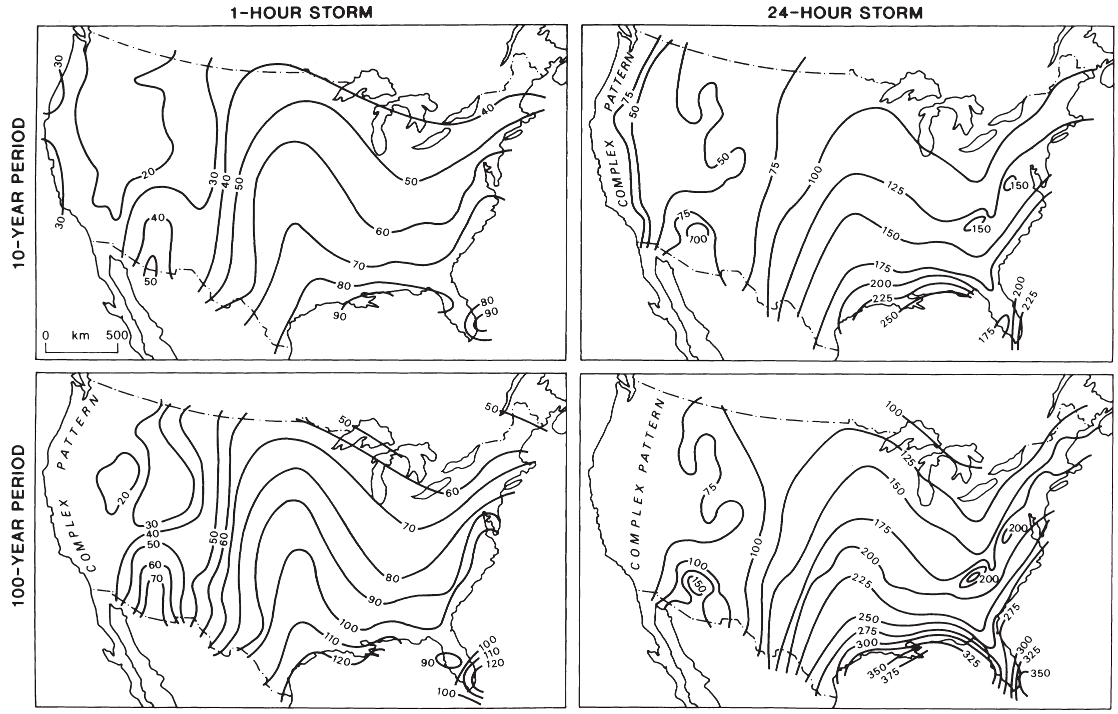

1-HOUR STORM
24-HOUR STORM
10-YEAR PERIOD
100-YEAR PERIOD
COMPLEX PATTERN
0 km 500
20
30
40
50
60
70
80
90
100
110
120
75
125
150
175
200
225
250
275
300
325
350
375

Figure 4.12 Maximum expected precipitation (mm) for storms of one-hour and twenty-four-hour duration occurring once in ten years and once in 100 years over the continental United States, calculated from records prior to 1961.

Source: US National Weather Service, courtesy NOAA.

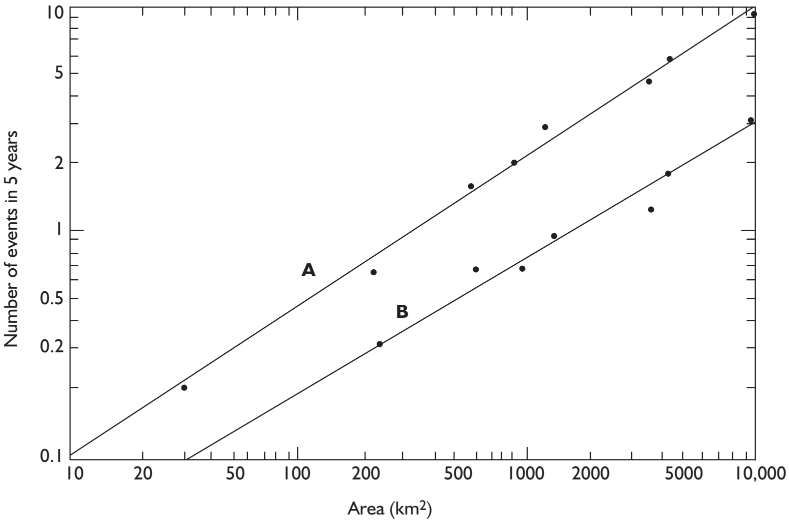


Figure 4.13 The relationship between area (km^2) and frequency of occurrence, during a five-year period, of rainstorms that produce (A) 25-year and (B) 100-year or heavier rain amounts for six- to twelve-hour periods over 50 per cent or more of each area in Illinois.

Source: Chagnon (2002), by permission of the American Meteorological Society.

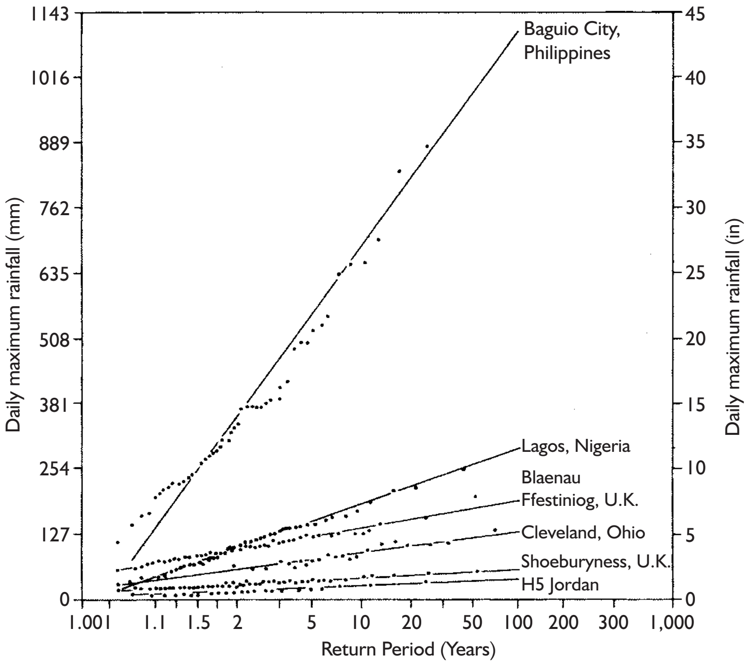


Figure 4.14 Rainfall/duration/frequency plots for daily maximum rainfalls in respect of a range of stations from the Jordan desert to an elevation of 1482 m in the monsoonal Philippines.

Source: After Rodda (1970); Linsley *et al*. (1992); Ayoade (1976).

southwest England is shown in Figure 4.15. The twenty-four-hour storm had an estimated 150 to 200-year return period. By comparison, tropical rainstorms have much higher intensities and shorter recurrence intervals for comparable totals.

3 The world pattern of precipitation

Globally, 79 per cent of total precipitation falls on the oceans and 21 per cent on land (Figure 4.1). A glance at the maps of precipitation amount for December to February and June to August (Figure 4.16) indicates that the distributions are considerably more complex than those, for example, of mean temperature (see Figure 3.11). Comparison of Figure 4.17 with the meridional profile of average precipitation for each latitude (Figure 4.18) brings out the marked longitudinal variations that are superimposed on the zonal pattern. The zonal pattern has several significant features:

1. The 'equatorial' maximum, which is displaced into the northern hemisphere. This is related primarily to the converging trade wind systems and monsoon regimes of the summer hemisphere, particularly in South Asia and West Africa. Annual totals over large areas are of the order of 2000 to 2500 mm or more.
2. The west coast maxima of mid-latitudes associated with the storm tracks in the westerlies. The precipitation in these areas has a high degree of reliability.
3. The dry areas of the subtropical high-pressure cells, which include not only many of the world's major deserts but also vast oceanic expanses. In the northern hemisphere, the remoteness of the continental interiors extends these dry conditions into mid-latitudes. In addition to very low average annual totals (less than 150 mm), these regions have considerable year-to-year variability.
4. Low precipitation in high latitudes and in winter over the continental interiors of the northern hemisphere. This reflects the low vapour content of the extremely cold air. Most of this precipitation occurs in solid form.

Figure 4.17 demonstrates why the subtropics do not appear as particularly dry on the meridional profile in spite of the known aridity of the subtropical high-pressure areas (see Chapter 10). In these latitudes, the eastern sides of the continents receive considerable rainfall in summer.

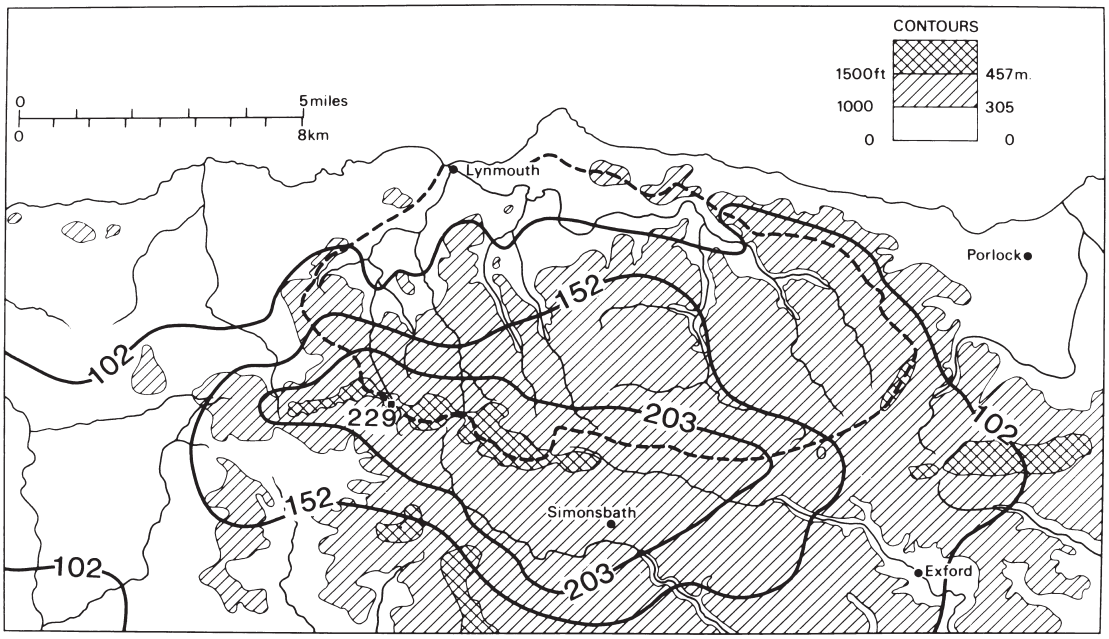


Figure 4.15 Distribution of rainfall (mm) over Exmoor, southwest England, during a twenty-four-hour period on 15 August 1952 which produced catastrophic local flooding at Lynmouth. The catchment is marked (by dashes). Seventy-five per cent of the rain fell in just seven hours.

Source: Dobbie and Wolf (1953).

In view of the complex controls involved, no brief explanation of these precipitation distributions can be very satisfactory. Various aspects of selected precipitation regimes are examined in Chapters 10 and 11, after consideration of the fundamental ideas about atmospheric motion and weather disturbances. Here we simply point out four factors that have to be taken into account in studying Figures 4.16 and 4.17:

1. The limit imposed on the maximum moisture content of the atmosphere by air temperature. This is important in high latitudes and in winter in continental interiors.
2. The major latitudinal zones of moisture influx due to atmospheric advection. This in itself is a reflection of the global wind systems and their disturbances (i.e. the converging trade wind systems and the cyclonic westerlies, in particular).
3. The distribution of the landmasses. The southern hemisphere lacks the vast, arid, mid-latitude continental interiors of the northern hemisphere. The oceanic expanses of the southern hemisphere allow the mid-latitude storms to increase the zonal precipitation average for 45°S by about one-third compared with that of the northern hemisphere for 50°N. Longitudinal irregularities are also created by the monsoon regimes, especially in Asia.
4. The orientation of mountain ranges with respect to the prevailing winds.

4 Regional variations in the altitudinal maximum of precipitation

The increase of mean precipitation with height on mountain slopes is a widespread characteristic in mid-latitudes, where the vertical increase in wind speed augments the moisture flux. An increase may be observed up to at least 3000 to 4000 m in the Rocky Mountains in Colorado and in the Alps. In western Britain, with mountains of about 1000 m, the maximum falls are recorded to leeward of the summits. This probably reflects the general tendency of air to continue rising for a while after it has crossed the crestline and the time lag involved in the precipitation process after condensation. Over narrow uplands, the horizontal distance may allow insufficient time for maximum cloud buildup

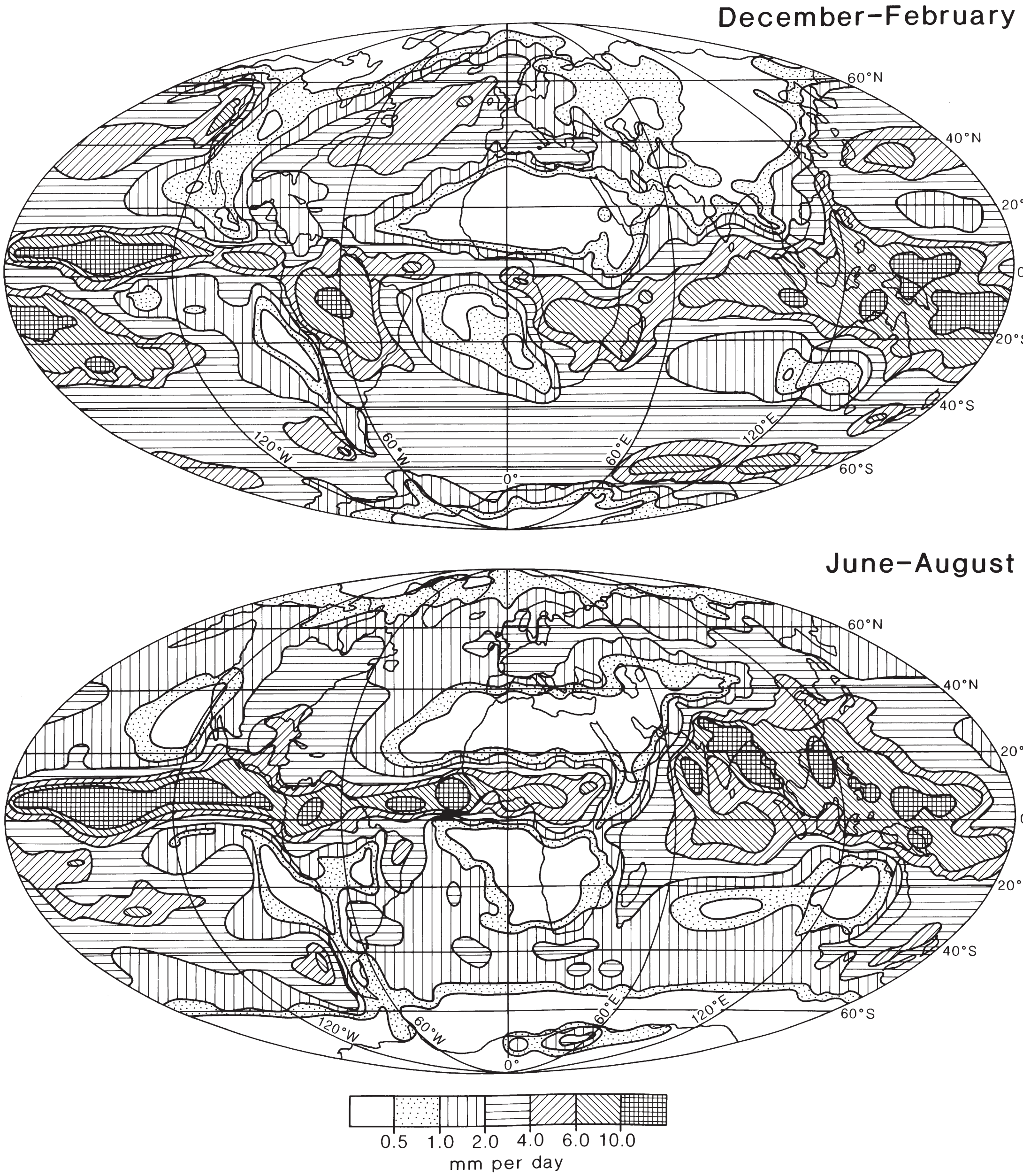

December–February
60°N
40°N
20°N
0°
20°S
40°S
60°S
120°W
60°W
0°
60°E
120°E
June–August
60°N
40°N
20°N
0°
20°S
40°S
60°S
120°W
60°W
0°
60°E
120°E
0.5
1.0
2.0
4.0
6.0
10.0
mm per day

Figure 4.16 Mean global precipitation (mm per day) for the periods December to February and June to August.

Source: From Legates (1995), copyright © John Wiley & Sons Ltd. Reproduced with permission.

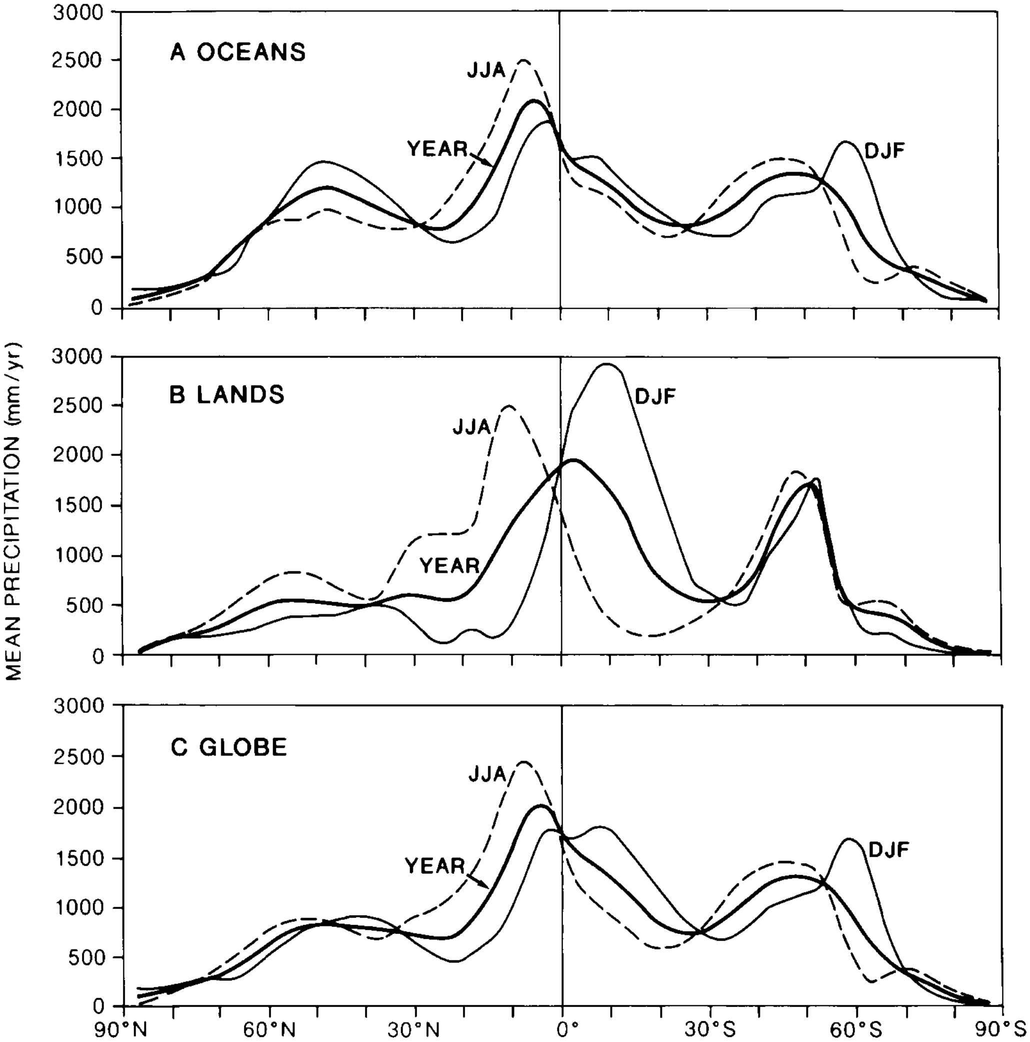


Figure 4.17 Mean precipitation (mm/yr) over (A) the oceans, (B) the land and (C) globally for December to February, June to August and annually.

Source: Peixoto and Oort (1983). From *Variations in the Global Water Budget*, ed. A. Street-Perrott, M. Beran and R. Ratciffe (1983), Fig. 23. Copyright © D. Reidel, Dordrecht, by kind permission of Kluwer Academic Publishers.

and the occurrence of precipitation. However, a further factor may be the effect of eddies, set up in the airflow by the mountains, on the catch of rain gauges. Studies in Bavaria at the Hohenpeissenberg Observatory show that standard rain gauges may overestimate amounts by about 10 per cent on the lee slopes and underestimate them by 14 per cent on the windward slopes.

In the tropics and subtropics, maximum precipitation occurs below the higher mountain summits, from which level it decreases upward towards the crest. Observations are generally sparse in the tropics, but numerous records from Java show that the average elevation of greatest precipitation is approximately 1200 m. Above about 2000 m, the decrease in amounts becomes quite marked. Similar features are reported from Hawaii and, at a rather higher elevation, on mountains in East Africa (see Chapter 11H.2). Figure 4.18A shows that, despite the wide range of records for individual stations, this effect is clearly apparent along the Pacific flank of the Guatemalan highlands. Further north along the coast, the occurrence of a precipitation maximum below the mountain crest is observed in the Sierra Nevada, despite some complication introduced by the shielding effect of the Coast Ranges (Figure 4.18B), but in the Olympic Mountains of Washington precipitation increases right up to the summits. Precipitation gauges on mountain crests may underestimate the actual precipitation due to the effect of eddies, and this is particularly true where much of the precipitation falls in the form of snow, which is very susceptible to blowing by the wind.

One explanation of the orographic difference between tropical and temperate rainfall is based on the concentration of moisture in a fairly shallow layer of air near the surface in the tropics (see Chapter 11). Much of the orographic precipitation seems to derive from warm clouds (particularly cumulus congestus), composed of water droplets, which commonly have an upper limit at about 3000 m. It is probable that the height of the maximum precipitation zone is close to the mean cloud base, since the maximum size and number of falling drops will occur at that level. Thus, stations located above the level of mean cloud base will receive only a proportion of the orographic increment. In temperate latitudes, much of the precipitation, especially in winter, falls from stratiform cloud, which commonly extends through a considerable depth of the troposphere. In this case, there tends to be a smaller fraction of the total cloud depth below the station level. These differences according to cloud type and depth are apparent even on a day-to-day basis in mid-latitudes. Seasonal variations in the altitude of the mean condensation level and zone of maximum precipitation are similarly observed. In the Pamir and Tien Shan of Central Asia. for instance, the maximum is reported to occur at about 1500 m in winter and at 3000 m or more in summer. A further difference between orographic effects on precipitation in the tropics and the mid-latitudes relates to the high instability of many tropical airmasses. Where mountains obstruct the flow of moist tropical airmasses, the upwind turbulence may be sufficient to trigger convection, producing a rainfall maximum at low elevations. This is illustrated in Figure 4.19A for Papua New Guinea, where there is a seasonally alternating

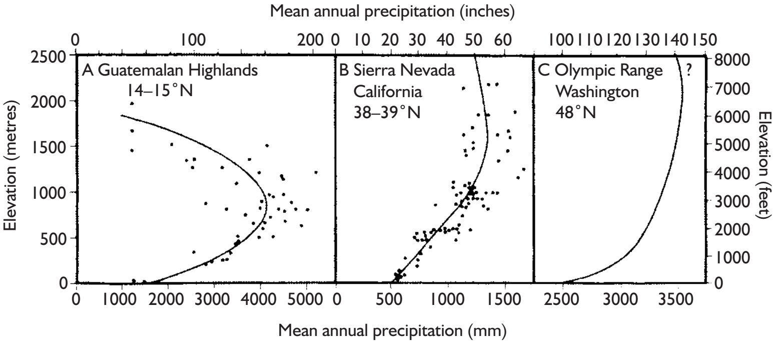


Figure 4.18 Generalized curves showing the relationship between elevation and mean annual precipitation for west-facing mountain slopes in Central and North America. The dots give some indication of the wide scatter of individual precipitation readings.

Source: Adapted from Hastenrath (1967), and Armstrong and Stidd (1967).

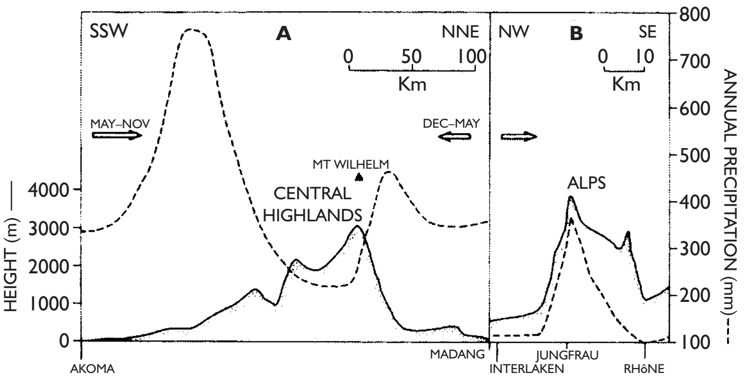


Figure 4.19 The relationship between precipitation (broken line) and relief in the tropics and mid-latitudes. (A) The highly saturated airmasses over the Central Highlands of Papua New Guinea give seasonal maximum precipitations on the windward slopes of the mountains with changes in the monsoonal circulation; (B) Across the Jungfrau massif in the Swiss Alps the precipitation is much less than in (A) and is closely correlated with the topography on the windward side of the mountains. The arrows show the prevailing airflow directions.

Sources: (A) After Barry 1991); (B) After Maurer and Lütschg (from Barry).

wind regime – northwesterly (southeasterly) in the austral summer (winter). By contrast, in more stable mid-latitude airflow, the rainfall maximum is related closely to the topography (see Figure 4.19B for the Swiss Alps).

5 Drought

The term *drought* implies an absence of significant precipitation for a period long enough to cause moisture deficits in the soil through evapotranspiration and decreases in stream flow, so disrupting normal biological and human activities. Thus a drought condition may obtain after only three weeks without rain in parts of Britain, whereas areas of the tropics regularly experience many successive dry months. There is no universally applicable definition of drought. Specialists in meteorology, agriculture, hydrology and socioeconomic studies, who have differing perspectives, have suggested at least 150 different definitions. All regions suffer the temporary but irregularly recurring condition of drought, but particularly those with marginal climates alternately influenced by differing climatic mechanisms. Causes of drought conditions include:

1. Increases in the size and persistence of subtropical high-pressure cells. The major droughts in the African Sahel (see Figure 13.11) have been attributed to an eastward and southward expansion of the Azores anticyclone.
2. Changes in the summer monsoon circulation. This may cause a postponement or failure of moist tropical incursions in areas such as Nigeria or the Punjab of India.
3. Lower ocean-surface temperatures produced by changes in currents or increased upwelling of cold waters. Rainfall in California and Chile may be affected by such mechanisms (see p. 155), and adequate rainfall in the drought-prone region of northeast Brazil appears to be strongly dependent on high sea-surface temperatures at 0 to 15°S in the South Atlantic.
4. Displacement of mid-latitude storm tracks. This may be associated with an expansion of the circumpolar westerlies into lower latitudes or with the development of persistent blocking circulation patterns in mid-latitudes (see Figure 8.25). It has been suggested that droughts on the Great Plains east of the Rockies in the 1890s and 1930s were due to such changes in

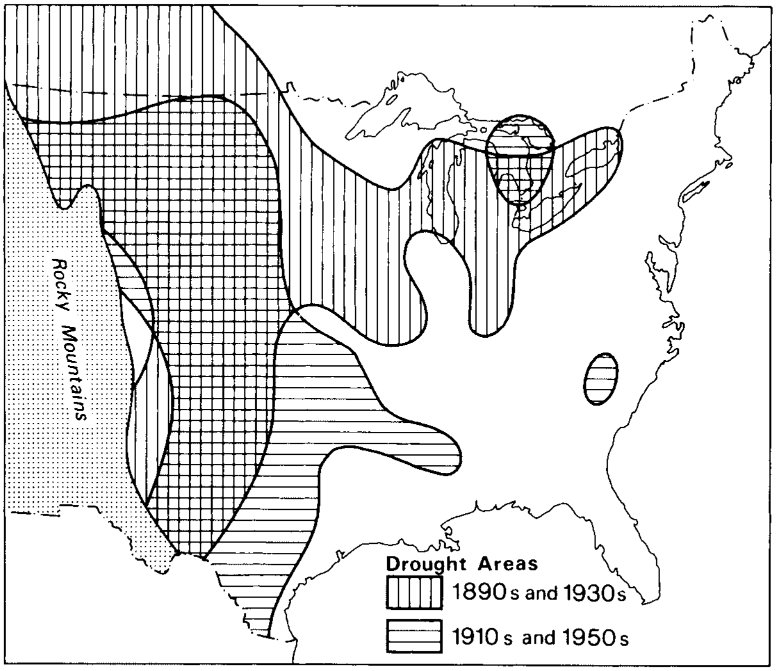


Figure 4.20 Drought areas of central USA, based on areas receiving less than 80 per cent of the normal July to August precipitation.

Source: After Borchert (1971).

the general circulation. However, the droughts of the 1910s and 1950s in this area were caused by persistent high pressure in the southeast and the northward displacement of storm tracks (Figure 4.20).

From May 1975 to August 1976, parts of northwest Europe from Sweden to western France experienced severe drought conditions. Southern England received less than 50 per cent of average rainfall, the most severe and prolonged drought since records began in 1727 (Figure 4.21). The immediate causes of this regime were the establishment of a persistent blocking ridge of high pressure over the area, displacing depression tracks 5 to 10° latitude northward over the eastern North Atlantic. Upstream, the circulation over the North Pacific had changed earlier, with the development of a stronger high-pressure cell and stronger upper-level westerlies, associated perhaps with a cooler than average sea surface. The westerlies were displaced northward over both the Atlantic and the Pacific. Over Europe, the dry conditions at the surface increased the stability of the atmosphere, further lessening the possibility of precipitation. Rainfall for April to August 1995 over England and Wales was only 46 per cent of average (compared with 47 per cent in 1976), again associated with a northward extension of the Azores anticyclone. This deficit has an estimated return period in excess of 200 years! Nevertheless, the fifteen-year period 1983 to 1995 included six summers that were dry and also warm relative to the central England temperature record for 1659 to 1975.

Persistent, severe droughts involve combinations of several mechanisms. The prolonged drought in the Sahel – a 3000 × 700-km zone stretching along the southern edge of the Sahara from Mauritania to Chad – which began in 1969 and has continued with interruptions up to the present (see Figure 13.11), has been attributed to several factors. These include an expansion of the circumpolar westerly vortex, shifting of the subtropical high-pressure belt towards the equator, and lower sea-surface temperatures in the eastern North Atlantic. There is no evidence that the subtropical high pressure was further south, but dry easterly airflow was stronger across Africa during drought years.

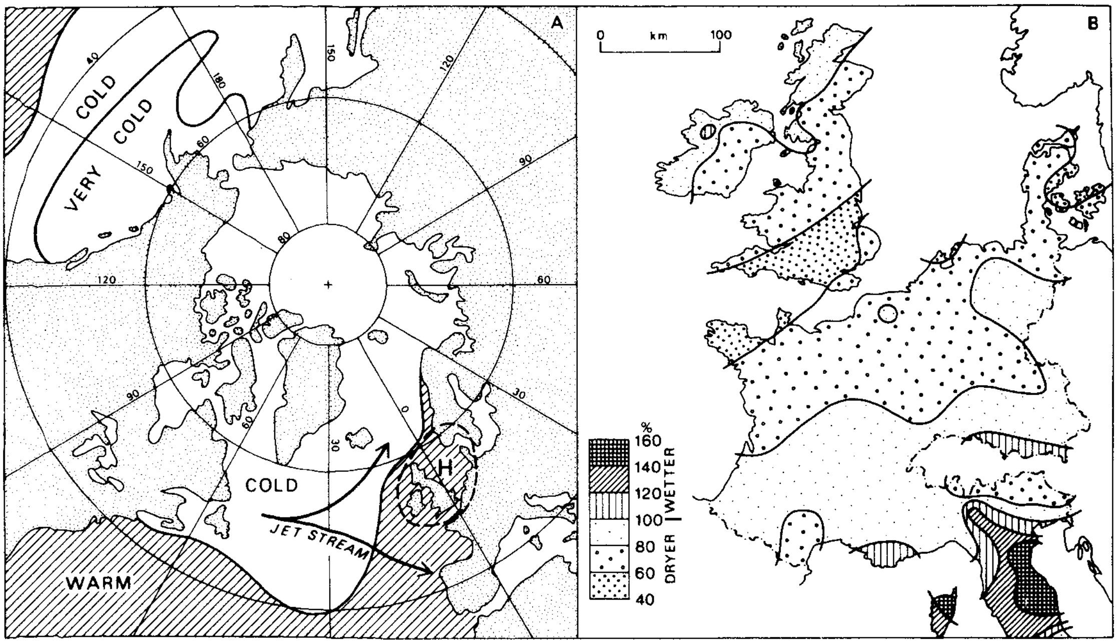


Figure 4.21 The drought of northwest Europe between May 1975 and August 1976. (A) Conditions of a blocking high pressure over Britain, jet stream bifurcation and low sea-surface temperatures. (B) Rainfall over western Europe between May 1975 and August 1976 expressed as a percentage of a thirty-year average.

Source: From Doornkamp and Gregory (1980).

The meteorological definition of drought has become clouded by the subject of *desertification*, particularly since the UN conference on the subject in 1977 in Nairobi. This concern was sparked by the protracted drought, resulting in desiccation, in much of the Sahel zone. In turn, the removal of vegetation, increasing the surface albedo and lowering evapotranspiration, is believed to result in decreased rainfall. The problem for climatologists is that desertification involves land degradation as a result of human activities, primarily in areas of savanna and steppe surrounding the major desert regions. These areas have always been subject to climatic *fluctuations* (as distinct from climatic *change*) and to human impacts (e.g. deforestation, mismanagement of irrigation, overgrazing) initiating changes in surface cover, which modify the moisture budget.

SUMMARY

Measures of atmospheric humidity are: the absolute mass of moisture in unit mass (or volume) of air, as a proportion of the saturation value; and the water vapour pressure. When cooled at constant pressure, air becomes saturated at the dew-point temperature.

The components of the surface moisture budget are total precipitation (including condensation on the surface), evaporation, storage change of water in the soil or in snow cover, and runoff (on the surface or in the ground). Evaporation rate is determined by the available energy, the surface–air difference in vapour pressure, and the wind speed, assuming the moisture supply is unlimited. If the moisture supply is limited, soil water tension and plant factors affect the evaporation rate. Evapotranspiration is best determined with a lysimeter. Otherwise, it may be calculated by formulae based on the energy budget, or on the aerodynamic profile method using the measured gradients of wind speed, temperature and moisture content near the ground.

Condensation in the atmosphere may occur by continued evaporation into the air; by mixing of air of different temperatures and vapour pressures, such that the saturation point is reached; or by adiabatic cooling of the air through lifting until the condensation level is reached.

Rainfall is described statistically by the intensity, areal extent and frequency (or recurrence interval) of rainstorms. Orography intensifies the precipitation on windward slopes, but there are geographical differences in this altitudinal effect. Global patterns of precipitation amount and annual regime are determined by the regional atmospheric circulation, the proximity to ocean areas, sea-surface temperatures, and the atmospheric moisture budget. Droughts may occur in many different climatic regions due to various causal factors. In mid-latitudes, blocking anticyclones are a major factor. The primary cause of protracted drought in the African Sahel seems to be climatic fluctuations.

DISCUSSION TOPICS

- Trace the possible paths of a water molecule through the hydrological cycle and consider the measurements that need to be made to determine the quantities of water involved in the various transformations.
- What processes lead to phase changes of water in the atmosphere and what are some of their consequences?
- What is the significance of clouds in the global water balance?
- Compare the moisture balance of an air column and that of a small drainage basin.
- What are the various statistics used to characterize rainfall events and for what different purposes are they important?
- Consider how an annual water budget diagram might differ between a wet year and a dry year at the same location.

FURTHER READING

Books

Baumgartner, A. and Reichel, E. (1975) *The World Water Balance: Mean Annual Global, Continental and Maritime Precipitation, Evaporation and Runoff*, Elsevier, Amsterdam, 179pp. [Statistical assessment of the major components of the hydrological cycle; one of the standard summaries.]

Brutsaert, W. (1982) *Evaporation into the Atmosphere:*

Theory, History and Applications, Kluwer, Dordrecht, 279pp. [Thorough survey of evaporation processes and applications.]

Doornkamp, J. C. and Gregory, K. J. (eds) (1980) *Atlas of Drought in Britain 1975–6*, Institute of British Geographers, London, 82 pp. [Detailed case study of a major UK drought.]

Korzun, V. I. (ed.-in-chief) USSR Committee for the International Hydrological Decade (1978) *World Water Balance and Water Resources of the Earth*, UNESCO, Paris (translation of Russian edn, Leningrad, 1974), 663pp. [Comprehensive account of atmospheric and terrestrial components of the water balance for the globe and by continent; numerous figures, tables and extensive references.]

Linsley, R. K. Franzini, J. B., Freyberg. D.L. and Tchbanoglous, G. (1992) *Water-resources Engineering* (4th edn), McGraw-Hill. New York, 841pp. [Chapters on descriptive and quantitative hydrology and ground water; water supply and engineering topics predominate.]

Miller, D. H. (1977) *Water at the Surface of the Earth*, Academic Press, New York, 557pp. [Comprehensive treatment of all components of the water cycle and water in ecosystems; well illustrated with many references.]

Pearl, R. T. *et al*. (1954) *The Calculation of Irrigation Need*, Tech. Bull. No. 4, Min. Agric., Fish and Food, HMSO, London, 35pp. [Handbook based on the Penman formulae for the UK.]

Peixoto, J. P. and Oort, A. H. (1992) *Physics of Climate*, American Institute of Physics, New York [Ch. 12 deals with the water cycle in the atmosphere.]

Penman, H. L. (1963) *Vegetation and Hydrology*, Tech. Comm. No. 53, Commonwealth Bureau of Soils, Harpenden, 124pp. [A survey of the literature on the effects of vegetation on the hydrological cycle through interception, evapotranspiration, infiltration and runoff, and of related catchment experiments around the world.]

Petterssen, S. (1969) *Introduction to Meteorology* (3rd edn), McGraw Hill, New York, 333pp.

Sellers, W. D. (1965) *Physical Climatology*, University of Chicago Press, Chicago, IL, 272pp.

Sumner, G. (1988) *Precipitation. Process and Analysis*, J. Wiley & Sons, Chichester, UK, 455pp. [Comprehensive discussion of cloud and precipitation formation, precipitation systems, surface measurements and their analysis in time and space.]

World Meteorological Organization (1972) *Distribution of Precipitation in Mountainous Areas* (2 vols), WMO No. 326, Geneva, 228 and 587pp. [Conference proceedings with many valuable papers.]

Articles

Acreman, M. (1989) Extreme rainfall in Calderdale, 19 May 1989. *Weather* 44, 438–46.

Agnew, C.T. and Chappell, A. (2000) Desiccation in the Sahel. In McLaren, S.J. and Kniveton, D.R. (eds) *Linking Climate Change to Land Surface Changes*, Kluwer, Dordrecht, p. 27–48.

Armstrong, C. F. and Stidd, C. K. (1967) A moisture-balance profile in the Sierra Nevada. *J. of Hydrology* **5**, 258–68.

Atlas, D., Chou, S-H. and Byerly, W. P. (1983) The influence of coastal shape on winter mesoscale air-sea interactions. *Monthly Weather Review* 111, 245–52.

Ayoade, J. A. (1976) A preliminary study of the magnitude, frequency and distribution of intense rainfall in Nigeria. *Hydro. Sci. Bull*. 21(3), 419–29.

Bannon, J. K. and Steele, L. P. (1960) Average water-vapour content of the air. *Geophysical Memoirs* 102, Meteorological Office 38pp.

Borchert, J. R. (1971) The dust bowl in the 1970s. *Ann. Assn Amer. Geogr*. 61, 1–22.

Browning, K. (1993) The global energy and water cycle. *NERC News* July, 21–3.

Bryson, R. A. (1973) Drought in the Sahel: who or what is to blame? *The Ecologist* 3(10), 366–71.

Chacon, R. E. and Fernandez, W. (1985) Temporal and spatial rainfall variability in the mountainous region of the Reventazon River Basin, Costa Rica. *J. Climatology* 5, 175–88.

Chagnon, S. A. (2002) Frequency of heavy rainstorms on areas from 10 to 10,000 km^2, defined using dense rain gauge networks. *J. Hydromet*. 3(2), 220–3.

Choudhury, B. J. (1993) Desertification. In Gurney, R. J. *et al*. (eds) *Atlas of Satellite Observations Related to Global Change*, Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, pp. 313–25.

Deacon, E. L. (1969) Physical processes near the surface of the earth. In Flohn, H. (ed.) *General Climatology*, World Survey of Climatology 2, Elsevier, Amsterdam, pp. 39–104.

Dobbie, C. H. and Wolf, P. O. (1953) The Lynmouth flood of August 1952. *Pro. Inst. Civ. Eng*. Part III, 522–88.

Dorman, C. E. and Bourke, R. H. (1981) Precipitation over the Atlantic Ocean, 30°S to 70°N. *Monthly Weather Review* 109, 554–63.

Garcia-Prieto, P. R., Ludlam, F. H. and Saunders, P. M. (1960) The possibility of artificially increasing rainfall on Tenerife in the Canary Islands. *Weather* 15, 39–51.

Gilman, C. S. (1964) Rainfall. In Chow, V. T. (ed.) *Handbook of Applied Hydrology*, McGraw-Hill, New York, section 9.

Harrold, T. W. (1966) The measurement of rainfall using radar. *Weather* 21, 247–9 and 256–8.

Hastenrath, S. L. (1967) Rainfall distribution and regime in Central America. *Archiv. Met. Geophys. Biokl*. B. 15(3), 201–41.

Hershfield, D. M. (1961) Rainfall frequency atlas of the United States for durations from 30 minutes to 24 hours and return periods of 1 to 100 years. *US Weather Bureau, Tech. Rept.* 40.

Howarth, D. A. and Rayner, J. N. (1993) An analysis of the atmospheric water balance over the southern hemisphere. *Phys. Geogr.* 14, 513–35.

Howe, G. M. (1956) The moisture balance in England and Wales. *Weather* 11, 74–82.

Lesanmi, O. O. (1971) An empirical formulation of an ITD rainfall model for the tropics: a case study for Nigeria. *J. App. Met*. 10(5), 882–91.

Jaeger, L. (1976) Monatskarten des Niederschlags für die ganze Erde. *Berichte des Deutsches Wetterdienstes* 18(139), Offenbach am Main (38pp. + plates).

Jiusto, J. E. and Weickmann, H. K. (1973) Types of snowfall. *Bull. Amer. Met. Soc*. 54, 148–62.

Kelly, P. M. and Wright, P. B. (1978) The European drought of 1975–6 and its climatic context. *Prog. Phys. Geog.* 2, 237–63.

Landsberg, H. E. (1974) Drought, a recurring element of climate. Graduate Program in Meteorology, University of Maryland, Contribution No. 100 47pp.

Legates, D. R. (1995) Global and terrestrial precipitation: a comparative assessment of existing climatologies. *Int. J. Climatol*. 15, 237–58.

Legates, D. R. (1996) Precipitation. In Schneider, S. H. (ed.) *Encyclopedia of Climate and Weather*, Oxford University Press, New York, pp. 608–12.

Lott, J. N. (1994) The U.S. summer of 1993: A sharp contrast in weather extremes. *Weather* 49, 370–83.

McCallum, E. and Waters, A. J. (1993) Severe thunderstorms over southeast England, 20/21 July 1992. *Weather* 48, 198–208.

MacDonald, J. E. (1962) The evaporation–precipitation fallacy. *Weather* 17, 168–77.

Markham, C. G. and McLain, D. R. (1977) Sea-surface temperature related to rain in Ceará, north-eastern Brazil. *Nature* 265, 320–3.

Marsh, T. J. and Turton, P. S. (1996) The 1995 drought – a water resources perspective. *Weather* 51(2), 46–53.

Mather, J. R. (1985) The water budget and the distribution of climates, vegetation and soils. *Publications in Climatology* 38(2), University of Delaware, Center for Climatic Research, Newark 36pp.

Möller, F. (1951) Vierteljahrkarten des Niederschlags für die ganze Erde. *Petermanns Geographische Mitteilungen*, 95 Jahrgang, 1–7.

More, R. J. (1967) Hydrological models and geography. In Chorley, R. J. and Haggett, P. (eds) *Models in Geography*, Methuen, London, pp. 145–85.

Palmer, W. C. (1965) Meteorological drought, Research Paper No. 45. US Weather Bureau, Washington, DC.

Parrett, C., Melcher, N. B. and James, R. W., Jr. (1993) Flood discharges in the upper Mississippi River basin. *U.S. Geol. Sur. Circular* 1120–A 14pp.

Paulhus, J. L. H. (1965) Indian Ocean and Taiwan rainfall set new records. *Monthly Weather Review* 93, 331–5.

Peixoto, J. P. and Oort, A. H. (1983) The atmospheric branch of the hydrological cycle and climate. In Street-Perrott, A., Beran, M. and Ratcliffe, R. (eds) *Variations in the Global Water Budget*, D. Reidel, Dordrecht, pp. 5–65.

Pike, W. S. (1993) The heavy rainfalls of 22–23 September 1992. *Met. Mag*. 122, 201–9.

Ratcliffe, R. A. S. (1978) Meteorological aspects of the 1975–6 drought. *Proc. Roy. Soc. Lond. Sect. A* 363, 3–20.

Reitan, C. H. (1960) Mean monthly values of precipitable water over the United States, 1946–56. *Mon. Weather Rev*., 88, 25–35.

Roach, W. T. (1994) Back to basics: Fog. Part 1 – Definitions and basic physics. *Weather* 49(12), 411–15.

Rodda, J. C. (1970) Rainfall excesses in the United Kingdom. *Trans. Inst. Brit. Geog*. 49, 49–60.

Rodhe, H. (1989) Acidication in a global perspective. *Ambio* 18, 155–60.

Rossow, W. B. (1993) Clouds. In R. J. Gurney, J. L. Foster and C.L. Parkinson (eds) *Atlas of Satellite Observations Related to Global Change*, Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, pp. 141–63.

Schwartz, S. E. (1989) Acid deposition: unravelling a regional phenomenon. *Science* 243, 753–63.

Sevruk, B. (ed.) (1985) Correction of precipitation measurements. *Zürcher Geogr. Schriften* No. 23 (also appears as WMO Rep. No. 24, Instruments and Observing Methods, WMO, Geneva) 288pp.

Smith, F. B. (1991) An overview of the acid rain problem. *Met. Mag.* 120, 77–91.

So, C. L. (1971) Mass movements associated with the rainstorm of June 1966 in Hong Kong. *Trans. Inst. Brit. Geog*. 53, 55–65.

Strangeways, I. (1996) Back to basics: the 'met. enclosure': Part 2 – Rainguages. *Weather* 51, 274–9, 298–303.

Strangeways, I. (2001) Back to basics: the 'met. enclosure': Part 7 – Evaporation. *Weather* 56, 419–27.

Weischet, W. (1965) Der tropische-konvective und der ausser tropischeadvektive Typ der vertikalen Niederschlagsverteilung. *Erdkunde* 19, 6–14.

Wilhite, D. A. and Glantz, M. H. (1982) Understanding the drought phenomenon: the role of definitions. *Water Internat*. 10, 111–30.

Yarnell, D. L. (1935) Rainfall intensity–frequency data. US Dept. Agr., Misc. Pub. no. 204.

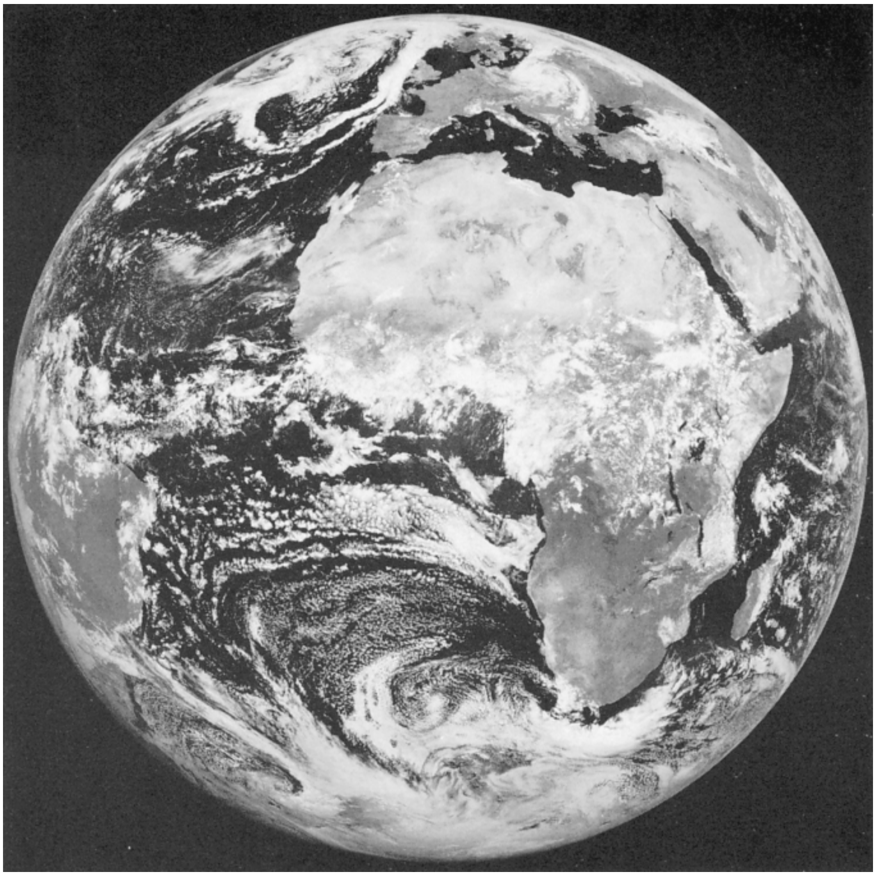


Plate 1 Visible image of Africa, Europe and the Atlantic Ocean taken by METEOSAT on 19 August 1978 at 11:55 hours GMT. An anticyclone is associated with clear skies over Europe and the Mediterranean, while frontal-wave cyclones are evident in the North Atlantic. Cloud clusters appear along the oceanic intertropical convergence zone (ITCZ) and there are extensive monsoon cloud masses over equatorial West Africa. Less organized cloud cover is present over East Africa. The subtropical anticyclone areas are largely cloud-free but possess trade wind cumulus, particularly in the southeast trade wind belt of the South Atlantic. The highly reflective desert surfaces of the Sahara are prominent (*METEOSAT image supplied by the European Space Agency*).

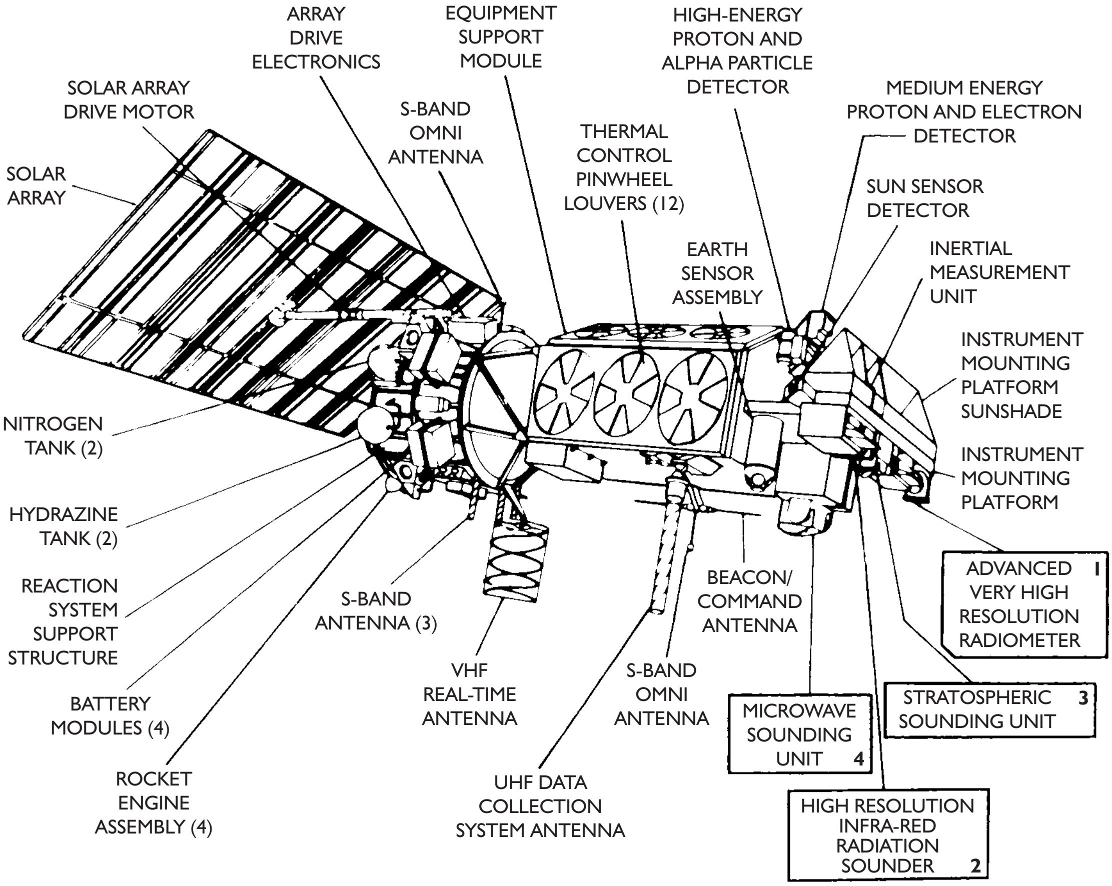

ARRAY DRIVE ELECTRONICS
EQUIPMENT SUPPORT MODULE
HIGH-ENERGY PROTON AND ALPHA PARTICLE DETECTOR
SOLAR ARRAY DRIVE MOTOR
MEDIUM ENERGY PROTON AND ELECTRON DETECTOR
S-BAND OMNI ANTENNA
THERMAL CONTROL PINWHEEL LOUVERS (12)
SOLAR ARRAY
SUN SENSOR DETECTOR
EARTH SENSOR ASSEMBLY
INERTIAL MEASUREMENT UNIT
INSTRUMENT MOUNTING PLATFORM SUNSHADE
NITROGEN TANK (2)
INSTRUMENT MOUNTING PLATFORM
HYDRAZINE TANK (2)
ADVANCED VERY HIGH RESOLUTION RADIOMETER 1
BEACON/ COMMAND ANTENNA
REACTION SYSTEM SUPPORT STRUCTURE
S-BAND ANTENNA (3)
VHF REAL-TIME ANTENNA
S-BAND OMNI ANTENNA
STRATOSPHERIC SOUNDING UNIT 3
BATTERY MODULES (4)
MICROWAVE SOUNDING UNIT 4
ROCKET ENGINE ASSEMBLY (4)
UHF DATA COLLECTION SYSTEM ANTENNA
HIGH RESOLUTION INFRA-RED RADIATION SOUNDER 2

Plate 2 The TIROS-N spacecraft, having a length of 3.71 m and a weight of 1421 kg. The four instruments of particular meteorological importance are shown in the numbered boxes. 1. Visible and infra-red detector – discerns clouds, land–sea boundaries, snow and ice extent and temperatures of clouds, earth's surface and sea surface. 2. Infra-red detector – permits calculation of temperatures profile from the surface to the 10-mb level, as well as the water vapour and ozone contents of the atmosphere in cloud-free areas. 3. Device for measuring temperatures in the stratosphere. 4. Device for measuring microwave radiation from the earth's surface which supplements unit 2 in cloudy areas (*NOAA: National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration*).

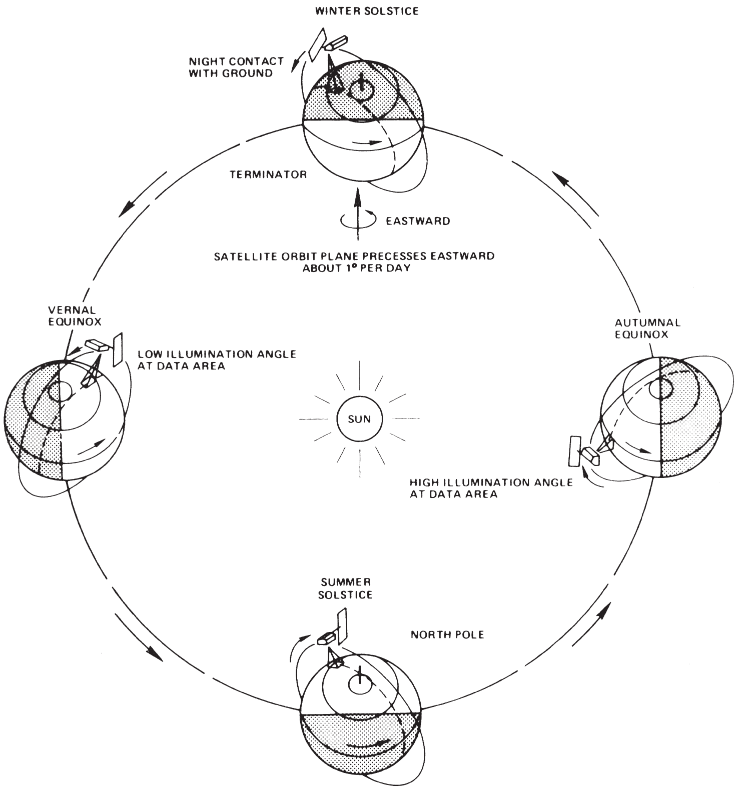

WINTER SOLSTICE
NIGHT CONTACT WITH GROUND
TERMINATOR
EASTWARD
SATELLITE ORBIT PLANE PRECESSES EASTWARD ABOUT 1° PER DAY
VERNAL EQUINOX
LOW ILLUMINATION ANGLE AT DATA AREA
SUN
AUTUMNAL EQUINOX
HIGH ILLUMINATION ANGLE AT DATA AREA
SUMMER SOLSTICE
NORTH POLE

Plate 3 The TIROS-N satellite system consisting of two spacecraft in polar orbit at 833 and 870 km, respectively. The orbital plane of the second satellite lags 90° longitude behind that of the first and the orbital plane of each processes eastward at about 1° longitude per day. Each satellite transmits data from a circular area of the earth's surface 6200 km in diameter. The satellites make 14.18 and 14.07 orbits of the earth per day, respectively, such that each point on the earth is sensed for 13 to 14 minutes at a time (*NOAA*).

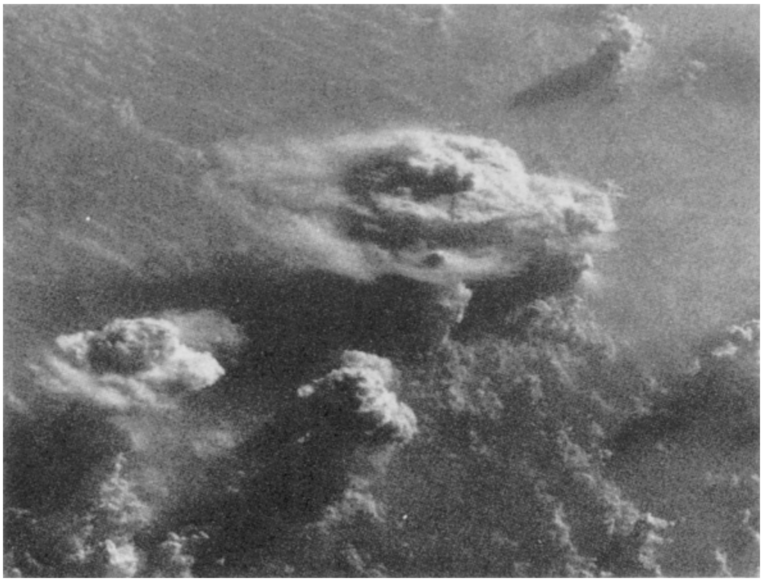
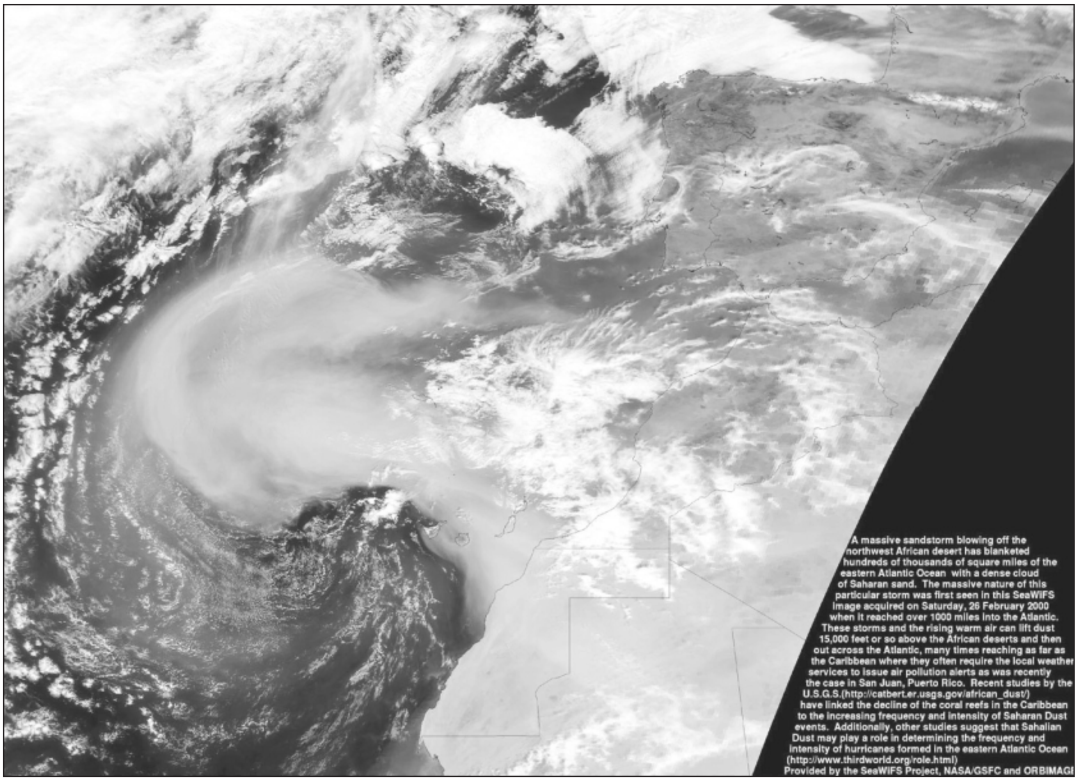


Plate 4 Cumulus towers with powerful thunderstorms along the ITCZ over Zaire photographed in April 1983 from the space shuttle at an elevation of 280 km. The largest tower shows a double mushroom cap reaching to more than 15,240 m and the symmetrical form of the caps indicates a lack of pronounced airflow at high levels (*courtesy of NASA*).



A massive sandstorm blowing off the northwest African desert has blanketed hundreds of thousands of square miles of the eastern Atlantic Ocean with a dense cloud of Saharan sand. The massive nature of this particular storm was first seen in this SeaWIFS image acquired on Saturday, 26 February 2000 when it reached over 1000 miles into the Atlantic. These storms and the rising warm air can lift dust 15,000 feet or so above the African deserts and then out across the Atlantic, many times reaching as far as the Caribbean where they often require the local weather services to issue air pollution alerts as was recently the case in San Juan, Puerto Rico. Recent studies by the U.S.G.S.(http://catbert.er.usgs.gov/african_dust/) have linked the decline of the coral reefs in the Caribbean to the increasing frequency and intensity of Saharan Dust events. Additionally, other studies suggest that Sahalian Dust may play a role in determining the frequency and intensity of hurricanes formed in the eastern Atlantic Ocean (http://www.thirdworld.org/role.html)

Provided by the SeaWIFS Project, NASA/GSFC and ORBIMAG

Plate 5 Massive dust plumes over the eastern North Atlantic on 26 February 2000 as viewed by the SeaWiFs sensor on board the NASA OrbView-2 satellite. Dust is transported from the western Sahara and coastal areas of Africa across the Canary Islands (Prospero 2001) (*NASA photograph, courtesy of J.M. Prospero*).

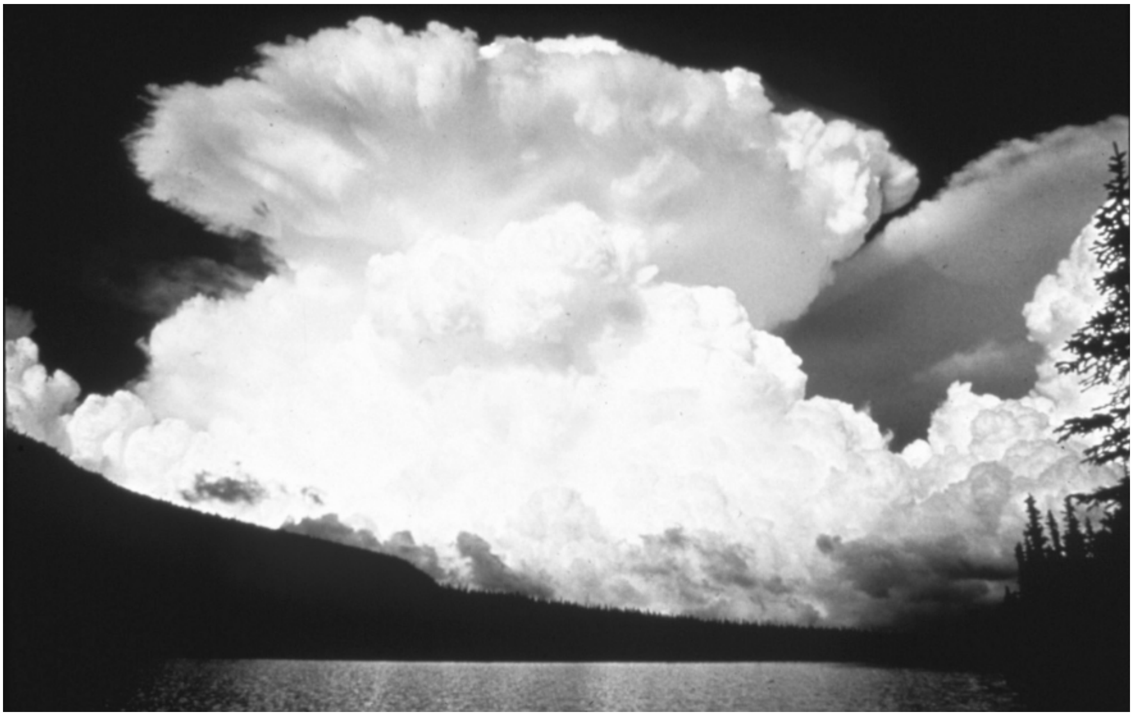


Plate 6 Cumulonimbus cloud with anvil (*courtesy of NOAA Photo Library, Historic NWS Collection, wea 02023*).

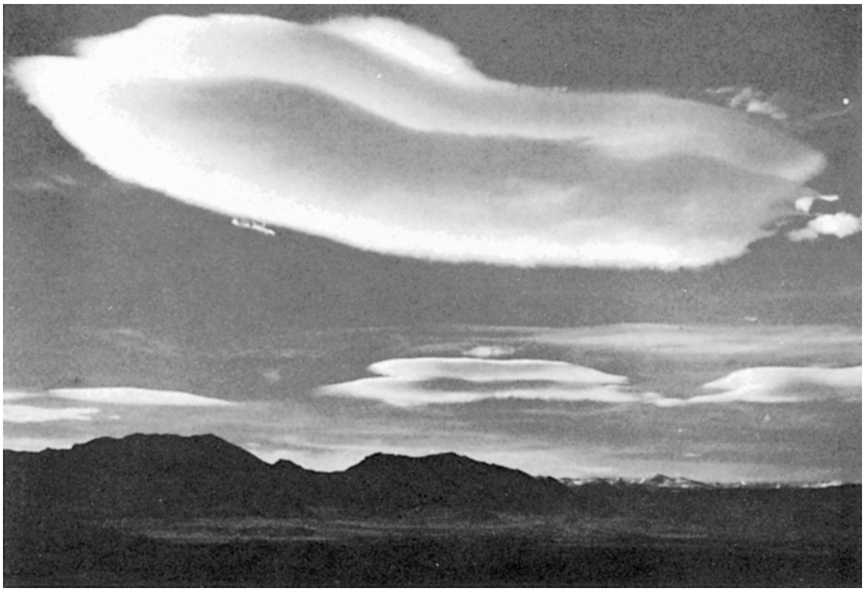


Plate 7 View north along the eastern front of the Colorado Rockies, showing lee-wave clouds (*NCAR photograph by Robert Bumpas*).

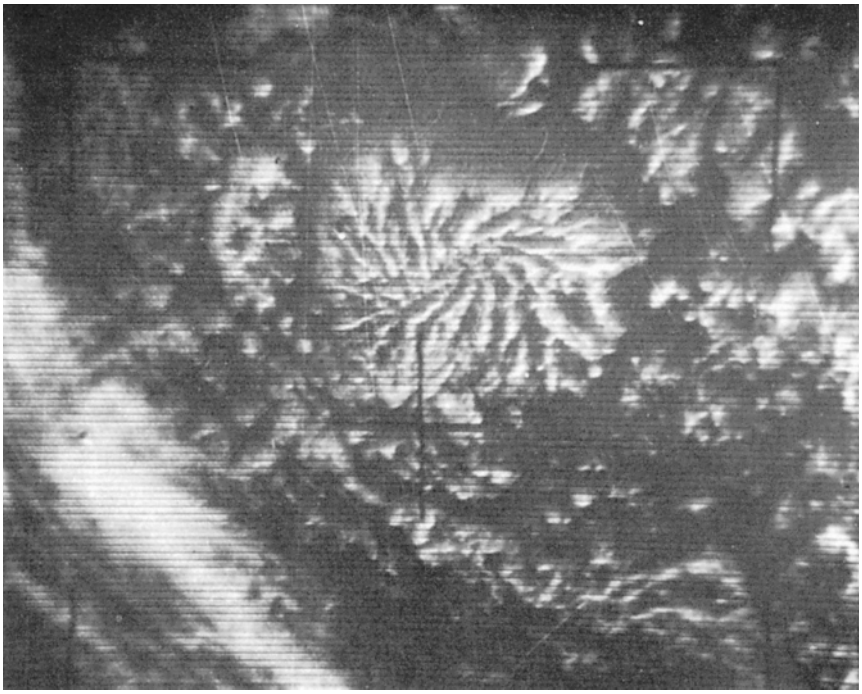


Plate 8 Radiating or dendritic cellular (actiniform) cloud pattern. These complex convective systems some 150 to 250 km across were only discovered from satellite photographs. They usually occur in groups over areas of subsidence inversions, intensified by cold ocean currents (e.g. in low latitudes of the eastern Pacific) (*NOAA*).

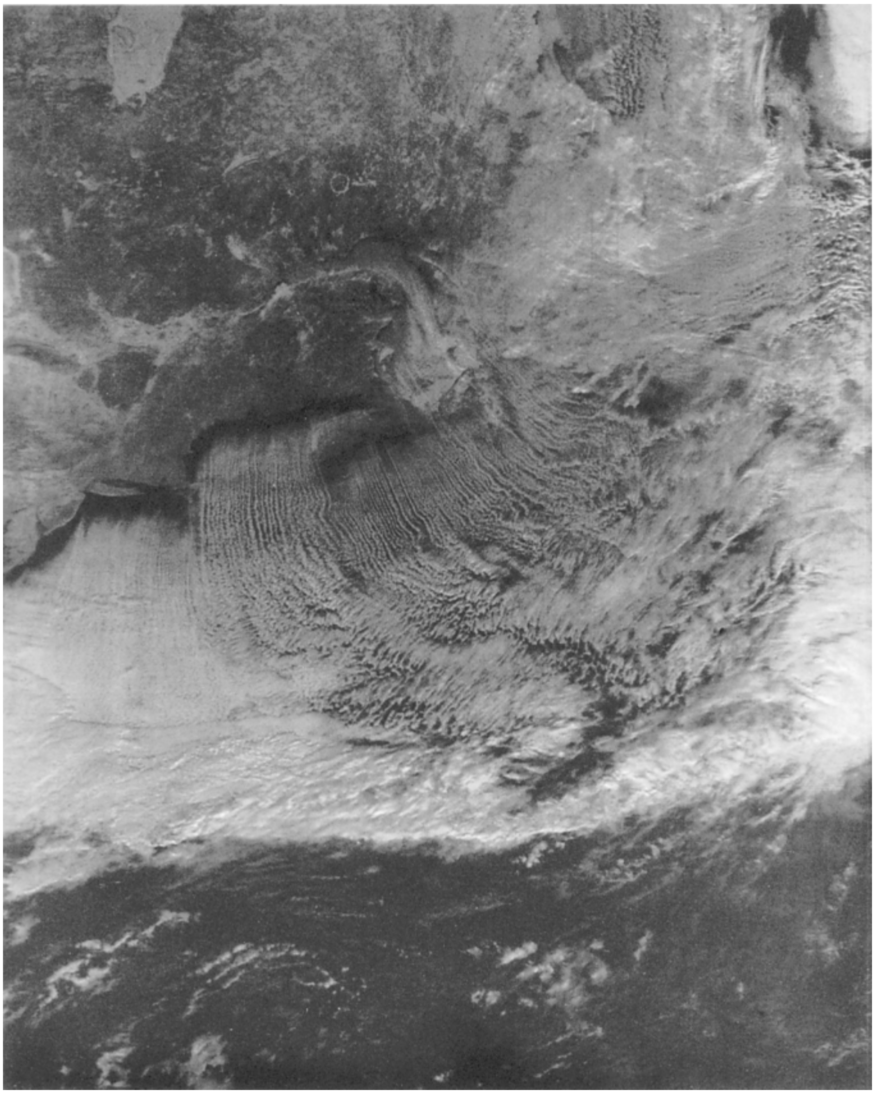


Plate 9 DMSP visible image of the coastal area off New England at 14:33 hours GMT, 17 February 1979. A northerly airflow averaging 10ms^{-1}, with surface air temperatures of about –15°C, moves offshore where sea-surface temperatures increase to 9°C within 250 km of the coast. Convective cloud streets are visible, also ice in James Bay (*upper left*), and in the Gulf of St Lawrence (*image courtesy of National Snow and Ice Data Center, University of Colorado, Boulder*) (see *Monthly Weather Review III*, 1983, p. 245).

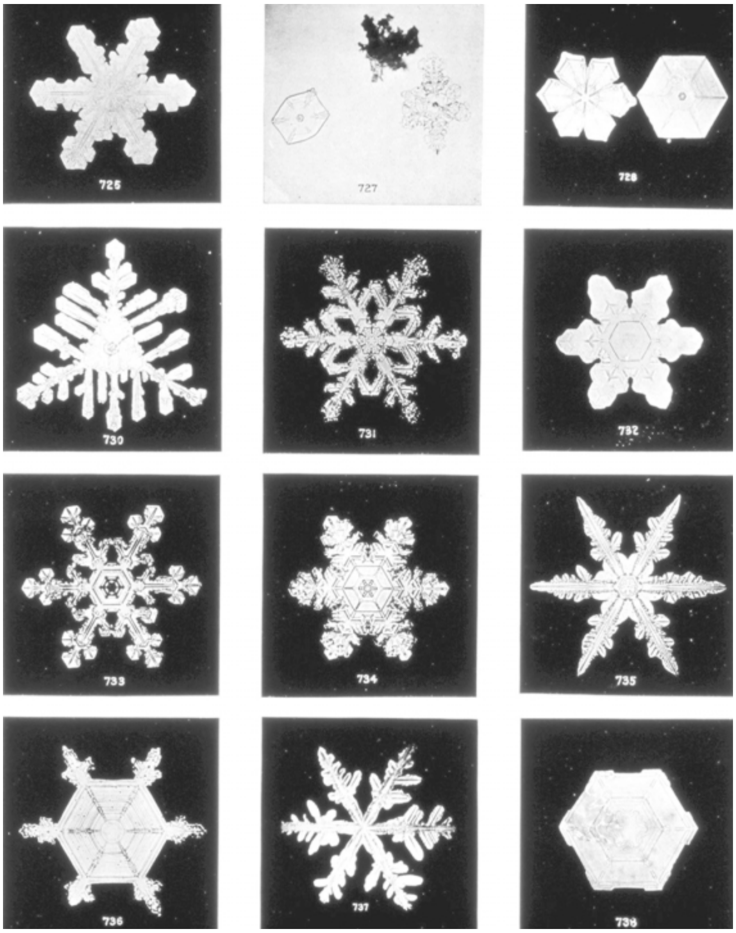

725
727
728
730
731
732
733
734
735
736
737
738

Plate 10 Snow crystals showing the variety of hexagonal plates (*courtesy of NOAA Photo Library*).

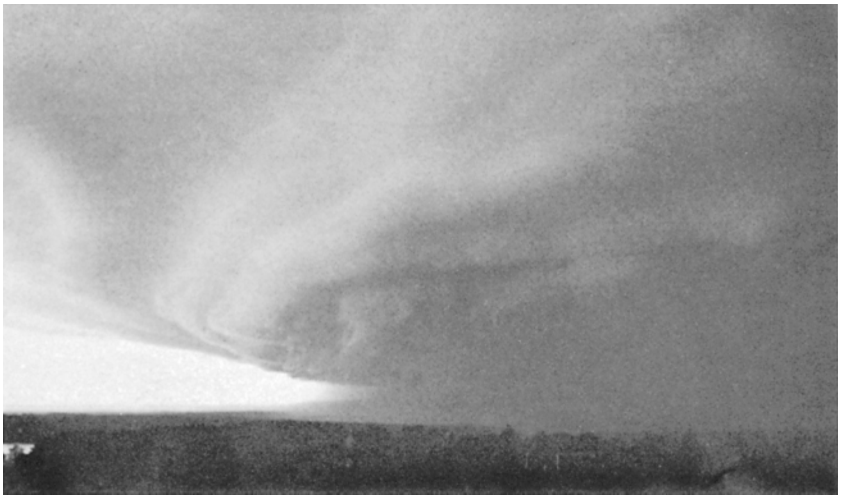


Plate 11 Thunderstorm approaching Östersund, Sweden, during late afternoon on 23 June 1955. Ahead of the region of intense precipitation there are rings of cloud formed over the squall front (*copyright F.H. Ludlam; originally published in* Weather, *vol. XV. no. 2, 1960, p. 63*).

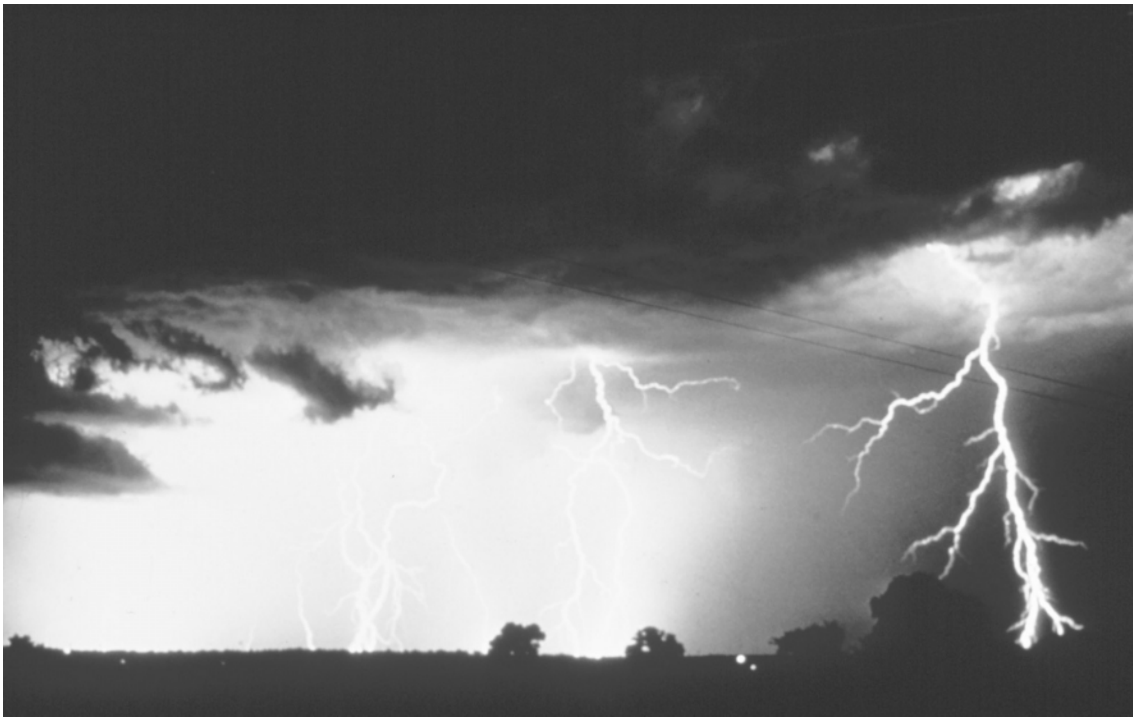


Plate 12 Multiple cloud-to-cloud and cloud-to-ground lightning from time-lapse photography during a nocturnal thunderstorm (*courtesy of National Severe Storms Laboratory, OAR/ERL. NOAA, NOAA Photo Library nss. 10012*).

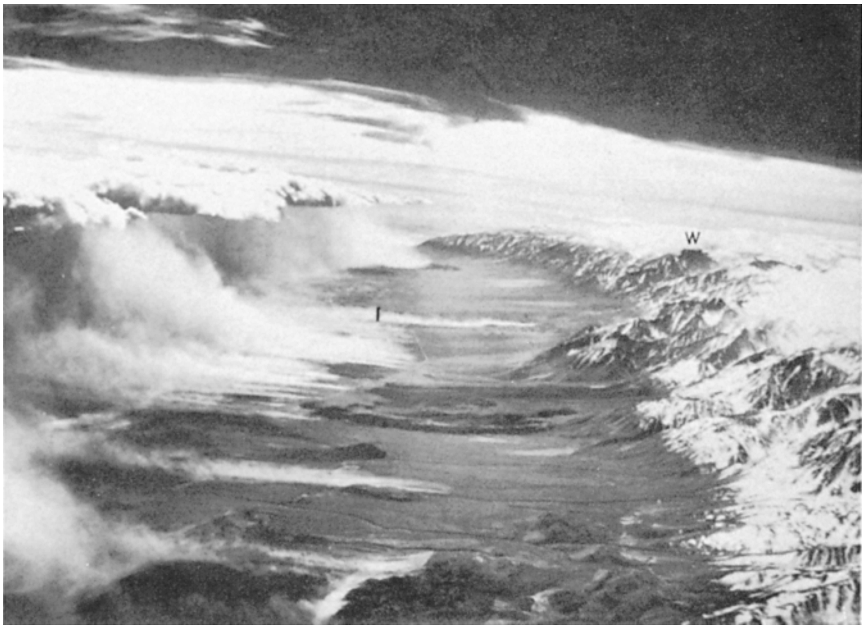


Plate 13 View looking south-southeast from about 9000 m (30,000 ft) along the Owen's Valley, California, showing a roll cloud developing in the lee of the Sierra Nevada mountains. The lee-wave crest is marked by the cloud layer, and the vertical turbulence is causing dust to rise high into the air (W = Mount Whitney, 4418 m (14,495 ft); I = Independence) (*photograph by Robert F. Symons: courtesy R. S. Scorer*).

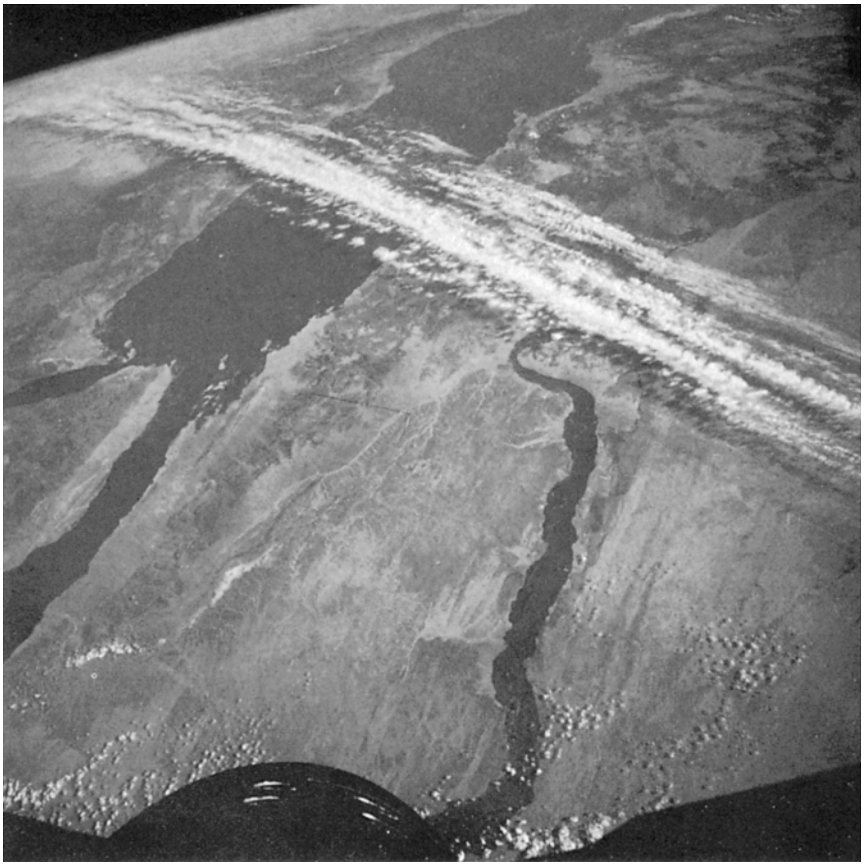


Plate 14 Photograph by an astronaut from Gemini XII manned spacecraft from an elevation of some 180 km (112 miles) looking southeast over Egypt and the Red Sea. The bank of cirrus clouds is associated with strong upper winds, possibly concentrated as a jet stream (*NASA photograph*).

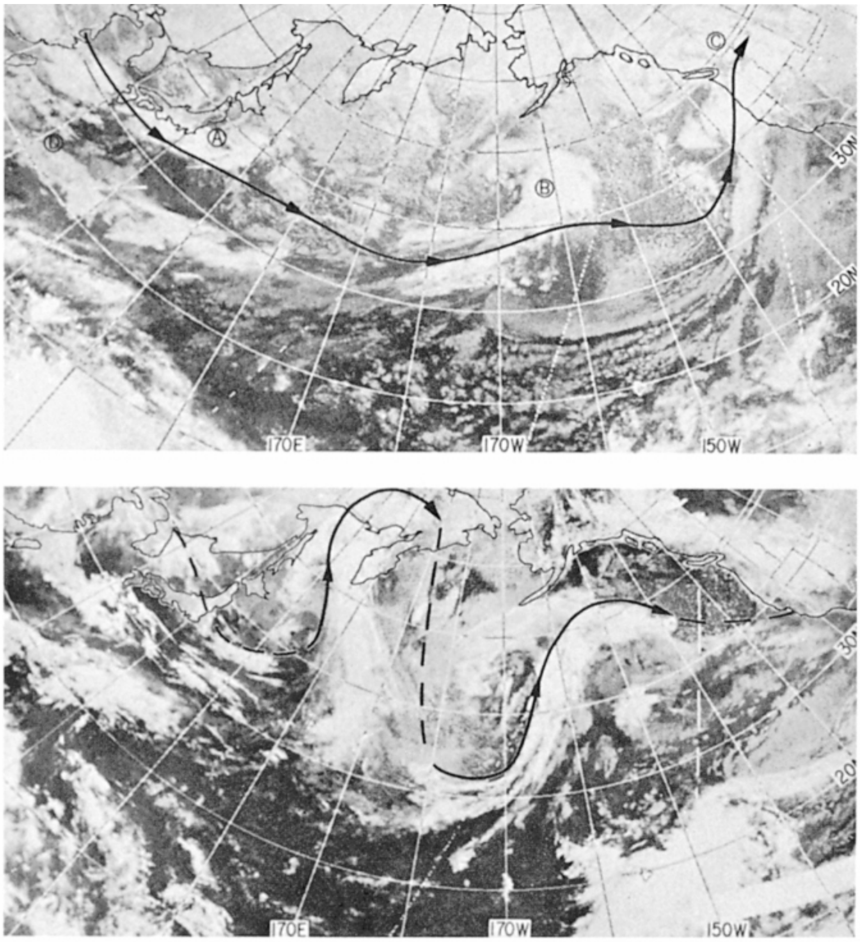


Plate 15 Infra-red photographs of the North Pacific, with the 200-mb jet stream inserted. *Above*: general zonal flow associated with a high zonal index, 12 March 1971: three major cloud systems (A, B, C) occur along the belt of zonal flow, and the largest east–west belt of cloud (D) to the south of Japan is also characteristic of accentuated zonal flow. *Below*: large-amplitude flow regime associated with a lower zonal index and a blocking ridge, 23 April 1971 (*World Meteorological Organization 1973*).

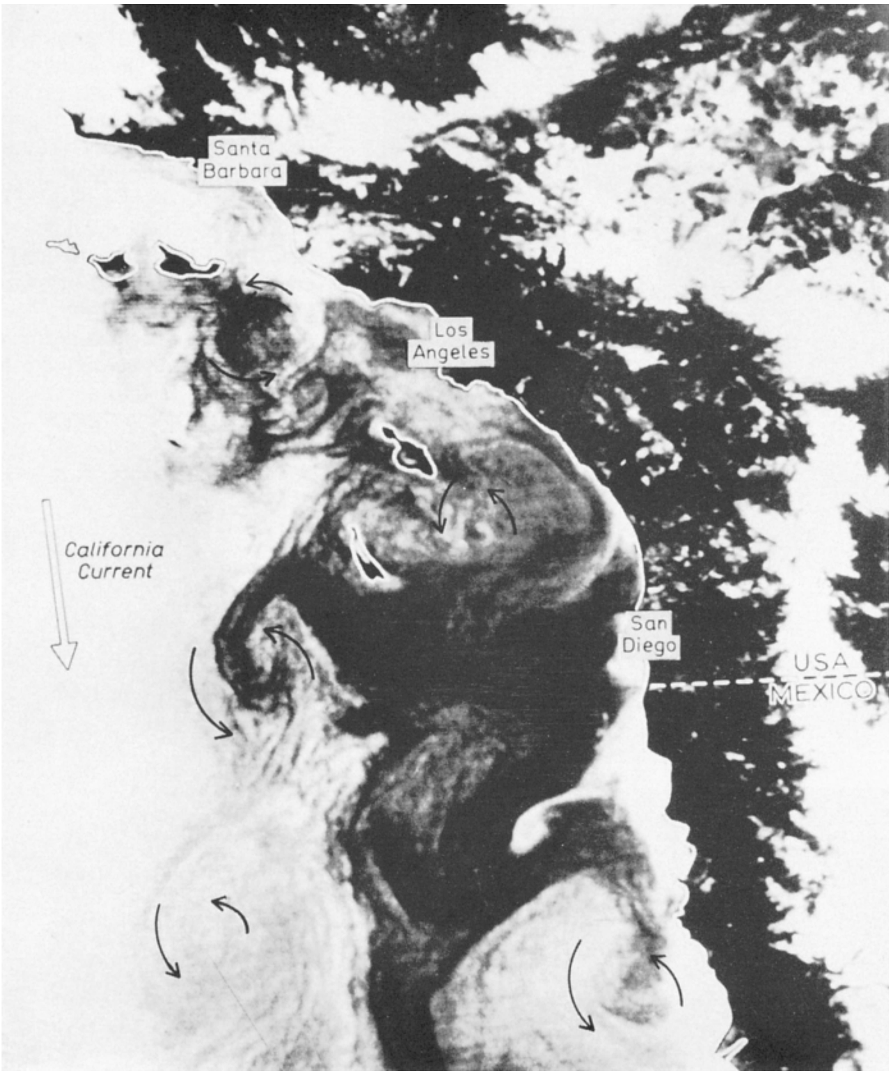

Santa Barbara
Los Angeles
California Current
San Diego
USA
MEXICO

Plate 16 Infra-red photograph showing large vortices of cold water (*light*) upwelling in the warmer surface coastal waters (*dark*) off southern California. The colder offshore California current is clearly shown (*NASA photograph*).

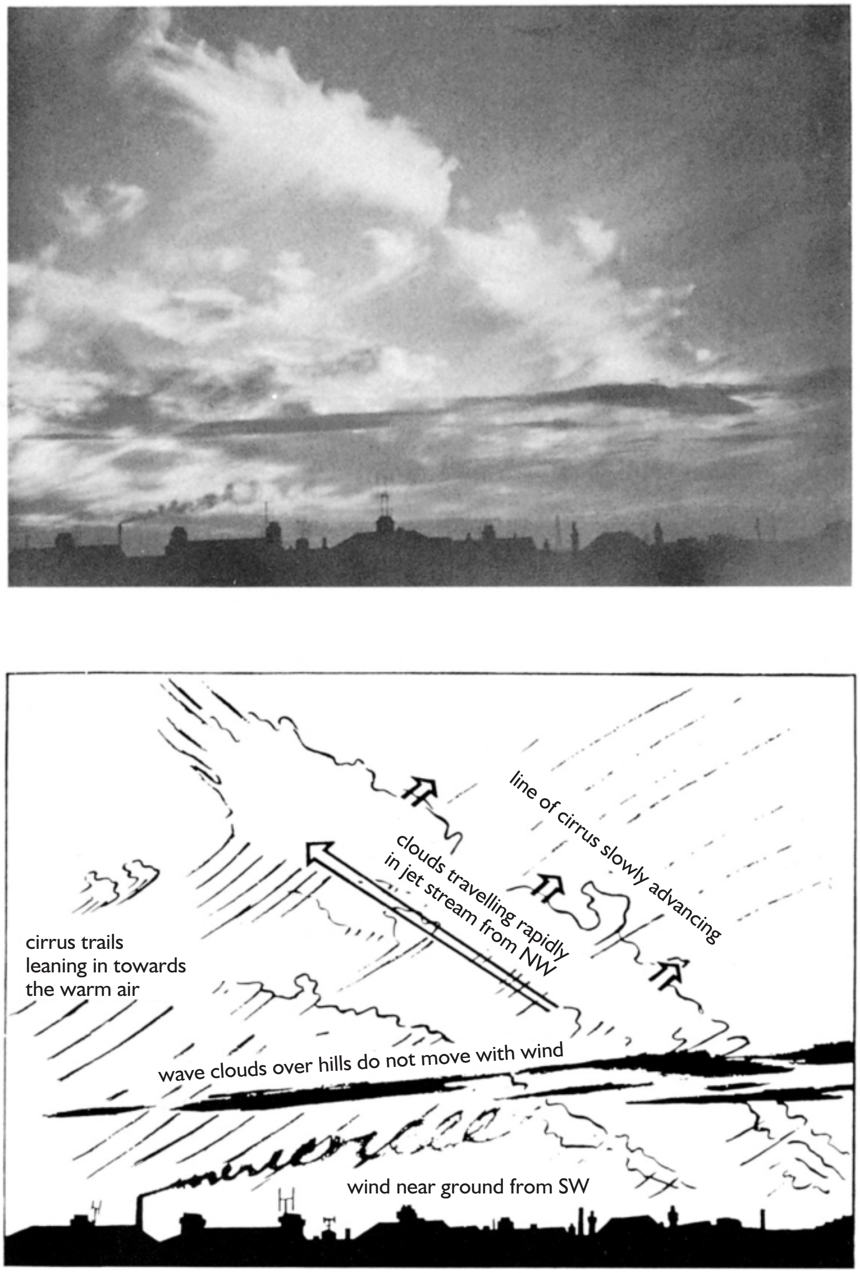

line of cirrus slowly advancing
clouds travelling rapidly in jet stream from NW
cirrus trails leaning in towards the warm air
wave clouds over hills do not move with wind
wind near ground from SW

Plate 17 View looking westward towards an approaching warm front, with lines of jet stream clouds extending from the northwest, from which trails of ice crystals are falling. In the middle levels are dark wave clouds formed in the lee of small hills by the southwesterly airflow, whereas the wind direction at the surface is more southerly – as indicated by the smoke from the chimney (*photograph copyright by F.H. Ludlam: diagram by R.S. Scorer: both published in* Weather, *vol. 17, no. 8, 1962, pp. 266–7*).

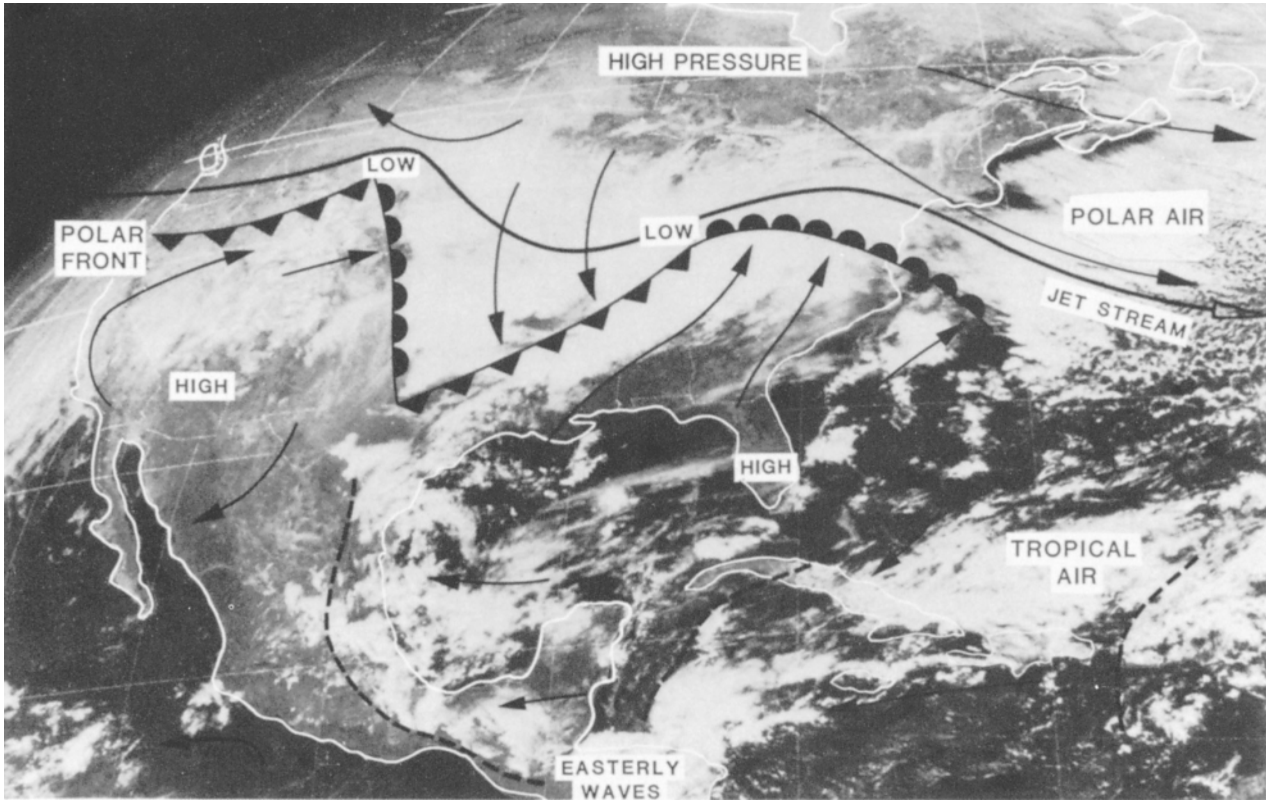

HIGH PRESSURE
LOW
POLAR FRONT
LOW
POLAR AIR
JET STREAM
HIGH
HIGH
TROPICAL AIR
EASTERLY WAVES

Plate 18 Satellite photograph of North America taken at 17:00 hours GMT on 12 February 1979 from a GOES weather satellite located some 35,800 km above the equator. Two depressions are located below an upper jet stream located between polar and subtropical high-pressure cells. The more westerly depression is forming in the lee of the Rocky Mountains; cold polar air streaming off New England is becoming cloudy over the warmer sea; weak easterly waves (dashed) have developed equatorward of the subtropical high-pressure cells over the Caribbean and Central America (*courtesy of NOAA*).

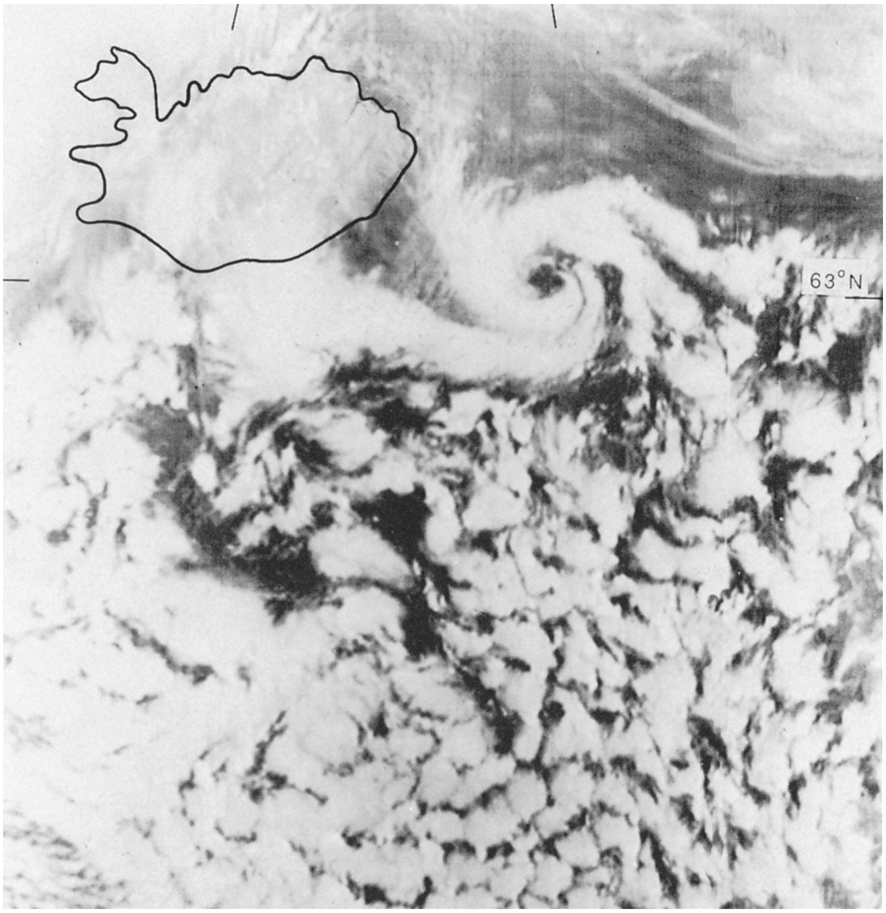


Plate 19 A polar low near Iceland, 14 January 1984, as seen on a visible band DMSP satellite image. This mesoscale low and the closed cellular cloud patterns to the south developed in a northerly airflow behind an occluded depression situated over the coast of Norway (*courtesy of National Snow and Ice Data Center, University of Colorado, Boulder*).

5

Atmospheric instability, cloud formation and precipitation processes

Learning objectives
When you have read this chapter you will:

- ☐ Know the effects of vertical displacements on the temperature of unsaturated and saturated air parcels,
- ☐ Know what determines atmospheric stability/instability,
- ☐ Be familiar with the basic cloud types and how they form,
- ☐ Understand the two main mechanisms leading to precipitation formation,
- ☐ Know the basic features of thunderstorms and how lightning develops.

To understand how clouds form and precipitation occurs, we first discuss the change of temperature with height in a rising air parcel and temperature lapse rates. We then consider atmospheric stability/instability and what causes air to rise and condensation to occur. Cloud mechanisms and cloud classifications are described next, followed by a discussion of the growth of raindrops and precipitation processes, and finally thunderstorms.

A ADIABATIC TEMPERATURE CHANGES

When an air parcel moves to an environment of lower pressure (without heat exchange with surrounding air) its volume increases. Volume increase involves work and the consumption of energy; this reduces the heat available per unit volume and hence the temperature. Such a temperature change, involving no subtraction (or addition) of heat, is termed *adiabatic*. Vertical displacements of air are the major cause of adiabatic temperature changes.

Near the earth's surface, most temperature changes are non-adiabatic (also termed *diabatic*) because of energy transfer from the surface and the tendency of air to mix and modify its characteristics by lateral movement and turbulence. When an air parcel moves vertically, the changes that take place are generally adiabatic, because air is fundamentally a poor thermal conductor, and the air parcel tends to retain its own thermal identity, which distinguishes it from the surrounding air. However, in some circumstances, mixing of air with its surroundings must be taken into account.

Consider the changes that occur when an air parcel rises: the decrease of pressure (and density) cause its volume to increase and temperature to decrease (see Chapter 2B). The rate at which temperature decreases in a rising, expanding air parcel is called the *adiabatic lapse rate*. If the upward movement of air does not produce condensation, then the energy expended by expansion will cause the temperature of the mass to fall at the constant *dry adiabatic lapse rate* (DALR) (9.8°C/km). However, prolonged cooling of air invariably produces condensation, and when this happens latent heat is liberated, counteracting the dry adiabatic temperature decrease to a certain extent. Therefore, rising and saturated (or precipitating) air cools at a slower rate (the *saturated adiabatic lapse rate* (SALR)) than air that is unsaturated. Another difference between the dry and saturated adiabatic rates is that whereas the DALR is constant the SALR varies with temperature. This is because air at higher temperatures is able to hold more moisture and therefore on condensation releases a greater quantity of latent heat. At high temperatures, the saturated adiabatic lapse rate may be as low as 4°C/km, but this rate increases with decreasing temperatures, approaching 9°C/km at –40°C. The DALR is reversible (i.e. subsiding air warms at 9.8°C/km); in any descending cloud air, saturation cannot persist because droplets evaporate.

Three different lapse rates must be distinguished, two dynamic and one static. The static, *environmental lapse rate* (ELR) is the actual temperature decrease with height on any occasion, such as an observer ascending in a balloon would record (see Chapter 2C.1). This is not an adiabatic rate, therefore, and may assume any form depending on the local vertical profile of air temperature. In contrast, the dynamic *adiabatic dry and saturated lapse rates* (or cooling rates) apply to rising parcels of air moving through their environment. Above a heated surface, the vertical temperature gradient sometimes exceeds the dry adiabatic lapse rate (i.e. it is superadiabatic). This is common in arid areas in summer. Over most ordinary dry surfaces, the lapse rate approaches the dry adiabatic value at an elevation of 100 m or so.

The changing properties of rising air parcels may be determined by plotting *path curves* on suitably constructed graphs such as the skew *T*-log *p* chart and the *tephigram*, or *T*-ϕ-gram, where ϕ refers to entropy. A tephigram (Figure 5.1) displays five sets of lines representing properties of the atmosphere:

1. Isotherms – i.e. lines of constant temperature (parallel lines from bottom left to top right).
2. Dry adiabats (parallel lines from bottom right to top left).
3. Isobars – i.e. lines of constant pressure and corresponding height contours (slightly curved nearly horizontal lines).
4. Saturated adiabats (curved lines sloping up from right to left).
5. Saturation mixing ratio lines (at a slight angle to the isotherms).

Air temperature and dew-point temperature, determined from atmospheric soundings, are the variables that

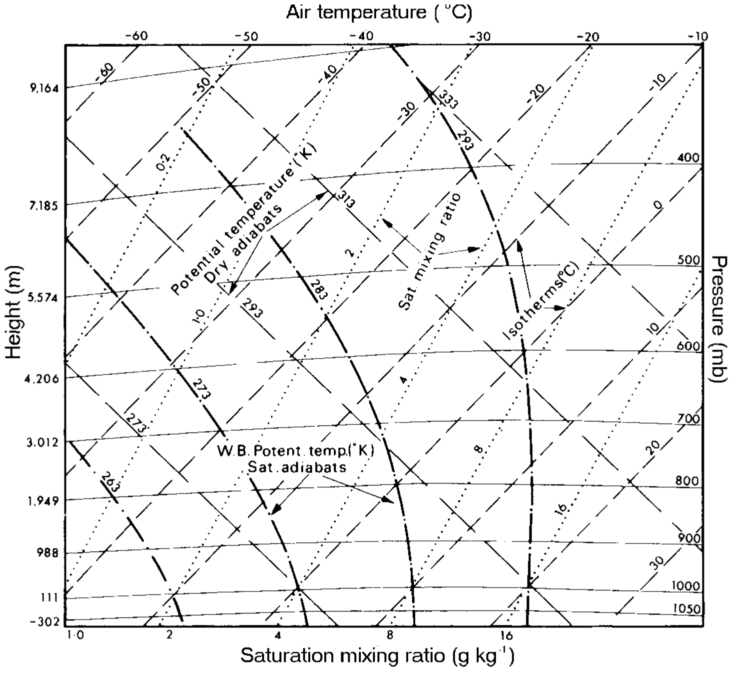

Air temperature (°C)
-60
-50
-40
-30
-20
-10
Height (m)
9,164
7,185
5,574
4,206
3,012
1,949
988
111
-302
Pressure (mb)
400
500
600
700
800
900
1000
1050
Saturation mixing ratio (g kg^{-1})
1.0
2
4
8
16
-60
-50
-40
-30
-20
-10
0
10
20
30
333
293
313
283
293
273
273
263
0.2
2
1.0
4
8
16
Potential temperature (°K)
Dry adiabats
Sat mixing ratio
Isotherms (°C)
W.B. Potent temp (°K)
Sat. adiabats

Figure 5.1 Adiabatic charts such as the tephigram allow the following properties of the atmosphere to be displayed: temperature, pressure, potential temperature, wet-bulb potential temperature and saturation (humidity) mixing ratio.

are commonly plotted on an adiabatic chart. The dry adiabats are also lines of constant potential temperature, θ (or isentropes). Potential temperature is the temperature of an air parcel brought dry adiabatically to a pressure of 1000 mb. Mathematically,

$$\theta = T\left(\frac{1000}{p}\right)^{0.286}$$

where θ and T are in K, and p = pressure (mb).

The relationship between T and θ; also between T and θ_w, the wet-bulb potential temperature (where the air parcel is brought to a pressure of 1000 mb by a saturated adiabatic process), is shown schematically in Figure 5.2. Potential temperature provides an important yardstick for airmass characteristics, since if the air is affected only by dry adiabatic processes the potential temperature remains constant. This helps to identify different airmasses and indicates when latent heat has been released through saturation of the airmass or when non-adiabatic temperature changes have occurred.

B CONDENSATION LEVEL

Figure 5.2 illustrates an important property of the tephigram. A line along a dry adiabat (θ) through the dry-bulb temperature of the surface air (T_A), an isopleth of saturation mixing ratio (x_s) through the dew-point (T_d), and a saturated adiabat (θ_w) through the wet-bulb temperature (T_w), all intersect at a point corresponding to saturation for the airmass. This relationship, known as Normand's theorem, is used to estimate the *lifting condensation level* (see Figure 5.3). For example, with an air temperature of 20°C and a dew-point of 10°C at 1000 mb surface pressure (Figure 5.1), the lifting condensation level is at 860 mb with a temperature of 8°C. The height of this 'characteristic point' is approximately

$$h\ (\mathrm{m}) = 120(T - T_d)$$

where T = air temperature and T_d = dew-point temperature at the surface in °C.

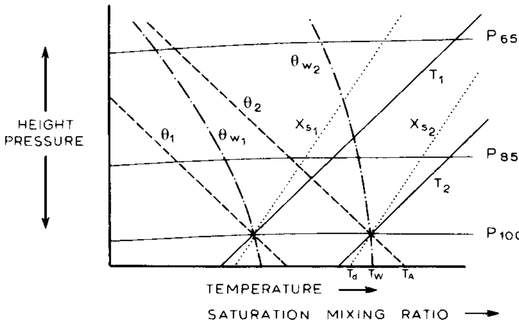


Figure 5.2 Graph showing the relationships between temperature (T), potential temperature (θ), wet-bulb potential temperature (θ_w) and saturation mixing ratio (X_s). T_d = dew-point, T_w = wet-bulb temperature and T_A = air temperature.

The lifting condensation level (LCL) formulation does not take account of vertical mixing. A modified calculation defines a *convective condensation level* (CCL). In the near-ground layer surface heating may establish a superadiabatic lapse rate, but convection modifies this to the DALR profile. Daytime heating steadily raises the surface air temperature from T_0 to T_1, T_2 and T_3 (Figure 5.4). Convection also equalizes the humidity mixing ratio, assumed equal to the value for the initial temperature. The CCL is located at the intersection of the environment temperature curve with a saturation mixing ratio line corresponding to the average mixing ratio in the surface layer (1000 to 1500 m). Expressed in another way, the surface air temperature is the minimum that will allow cloud to form as a result of free convection. Because the air near the surface is often well mixed, the CCL and LCL, in practice, are commonly nearly identical.

Experimentation with a tephigram shows that both the convective and the lifting condensation levels rise as the surface temperature increases, with little change of dew-point. This is commonly observed in the early afternoon, when the base of cumulus clouds tends to be at higher levels.

C AIR STABILITY AND INSTABILITY

If stable (unstable) air is forced up or down it has a tendency to return to (continue to move away from) its former position once the motivating force ceases. Figure 5.3 shows the reason for this important characteristic. The environment temperature curve (A) lies to the right of any *path curve* representing the lapse rate of an unsaturated air parcel cooling dry adiabatically when forced to rise. At any level, the rising parcel is cooler and more dense than its surroundings and therefore tends to revert to its former level. Similarly, if air is forced

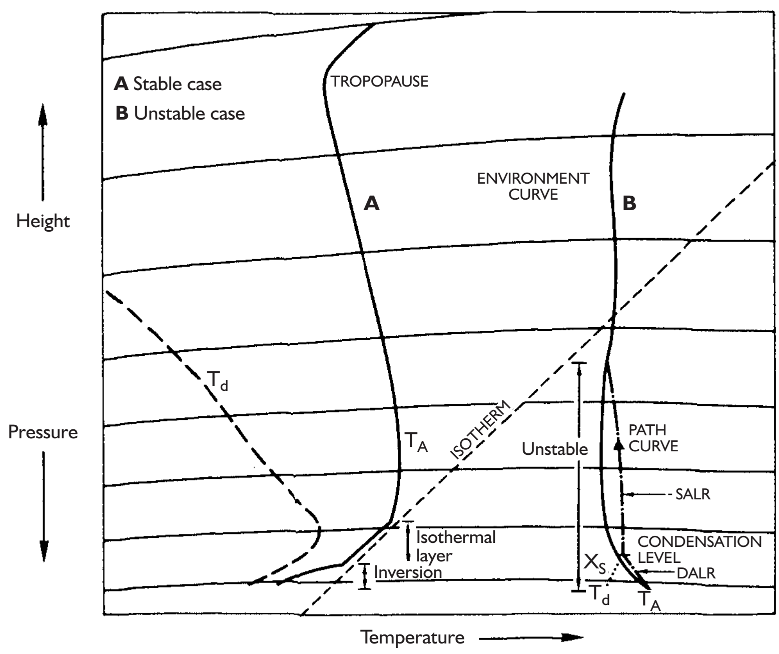

A Stable case
B Unstable case
TROPOPAUSE
Height
ENVIRONMENT CURVE
A
B
Pressure
Td
TA
ISOTHERM
Unstable
PATH CURVE
SALR
Isothermal layer
Inversion
CONDENSATION LEVEL
DALR
XS
Td
TA
Temperature

Figure 5.3 Tephigram showing (A) stable air case – T_A is the air temperature and T_d the dew-point; and (B) unstable air case. The lifting condensation level is shown, together with the path curve (arrowed) of a rising air parcel. X_s is the saturation humidity mixing ratio line through the dew-point temperature (see text).

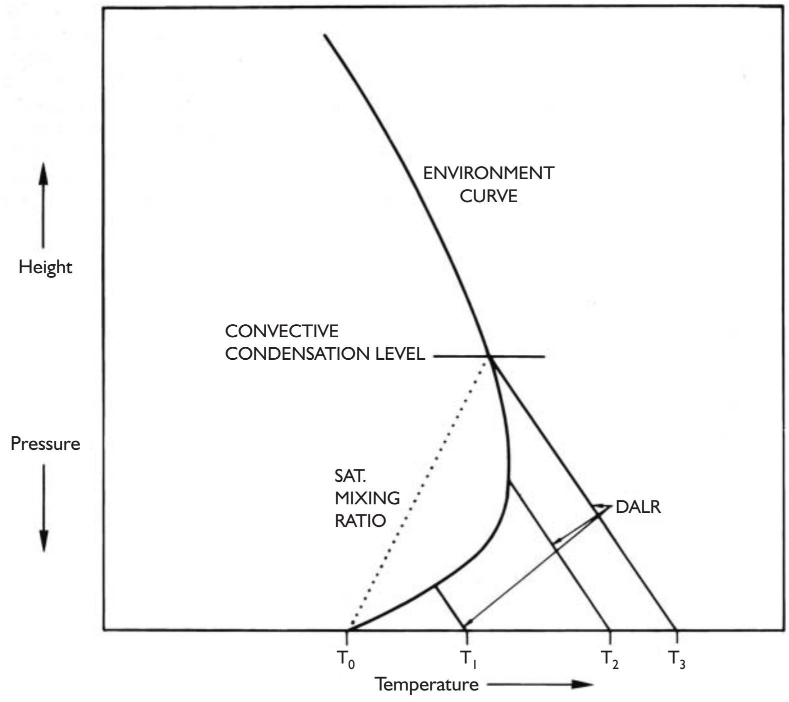

ENVIRONMENT CURVE
Height
CONVECTIVE CONDENSATION LEVEL
Pressure
SAT. MIXING RATIO
DALR
T0
T1
T2
T3
Temperature

Figure 5.4 Schematic adiabatic chart used to determine the convective condensation level (see p. 91). T_0 represents the early morning temperature: T_1, T_2 and T_3 illustrate daytime heating of the surface air.

downward it will warm at the dry adiabatic rate; the parcel will always be warmer and less dense than the surrounding air, and tend to return to its former position (unless prevented from doing so). However, if local surface heating causes the environmental lapse rate near the surface to exceed the dry adiabatic lapse rate (b), then the adiabatic cooling of a convective air parcel allows it to remain warmer and less dense than the surrounding air, so it continues to rise through buoyancy. The characteristic of unstable air is a tendency to continue moving away from its original level when set in motion. The transition between the stable and unstable states is termed *neutral*.

We can summarize the five basic states of static stability which determine the ability of air at rest to remain laminar or become turbulent through buoyancy. The key is the temperature of a displaced air parcel relative to that in the surrounding air.

- Absolutely stable: ELR < SALR
- Saturated neutral: ELR = SALR
- Conditionally unstable: SALR < ELR < DALR
- Dry neutral: ELR = DALR
- Absolutely unstable: ELR > DALR

Air that is colder than its surroundings tends to sink. Cooling in the atmosphere usually results from radiative processes, but subsidence also results from horizontal convergence of upper tropospheric air (see Chapter 6B.2). Subsiding air has a typical vertical velocity of only 1–10 cm s^{-1}, unless convective downdraft conditions prevail (see below). Subsidence can produce substantial changes in the atmosphere; for instance, if a typical airmass sinks about 300 m, all average-size cloud droplets will usually be evaporated through the adiabatic warming.

Figure 5.5 illustrates a common situation where the air is stable in the lower layers. If the air is forced upward by a mountain range, or through local surface heating, the path curve may eventually cross to the right of the environment curve (the level of free convection). The air, now warmer than its surroundings, is buoyant

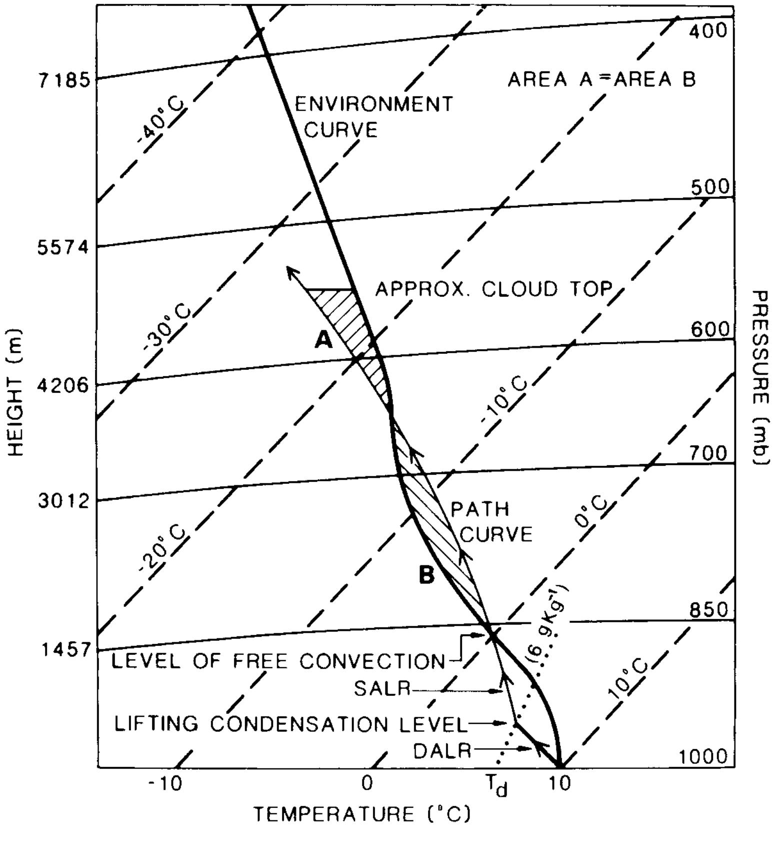


Figure 5.5 Schematic tephigram illustrating the conditions associated with the conditional instability of an airmass that is forced to rise. The saturation mixing ratio is a broken line and the lifting condensation level (cloud base) is below the level of free convection.

and free to rise. This is termed *conditional instability*; the development of instability is dependent on the airmass becoming saturated. Since the environmental lapse rate is frequently between the dry and saturated adiabatic rates, a state of conditional instability is common. The path curve intersects the environment curve at 650 mb. Above this level the atmosphere is stable, but the buoyant energy gained by the rising parcel enables it to move some distance into this region. The theoretical upper limit of cloud development can be estimated from the tephigram by determining an area (B) above the intersection of the environment and path curves equal to that between the two curves from the level of free convection to the intersection (A) in Figure 5.5. The tephigram is so constructed that equal areas represent equal energy.

These examples assume that a small air parcel is being displaced without any compensating air motion or mixing of the parcel with its surroundings. These assumptions are rather unrealistic. Dilution of an ascending air parcel by mixing of the surrounding air with it through *entrainment* will reduce its buoyant energy. However, the parcel method is generally satisfactory for routine forecasting because the assumptions approximate conditions in the updraft of cumulonimbus clouds.

In some situations a deep layer of air may be displaced over an extensive topographic barrier. Figure 5.6 shows a case where the air in the upper levels is less moist than that below. If the whole layer is forced upward, the drier air at B cools at the dry adiabatic rate, and so initially will the air about A. Eventually the lower air reaches condensation level, after which this layer cools at the saturated adiabatic rate. This results in an increase in the actual lapse rate of the total thickness of the raised layer, and, if this new rate exceeds the saturated adiabatic, the air layer becomes unstable and may overturn. This is termed *convective* (or *potential*) *instability*.

Vertical mixing of air was identified earlier as a possible cause of condensation. This is best illustrated by use of a tephigram. Figure 5.7 shows an initial distribution of temperature and dew-point. Vertical mixing leads to averaging these conditions through the layer affected. Thus, the *mixing condensation level* is determined from the intersection of the average values of saturation humidity mixing ratio and potential temperature. The areas above and below the points where these

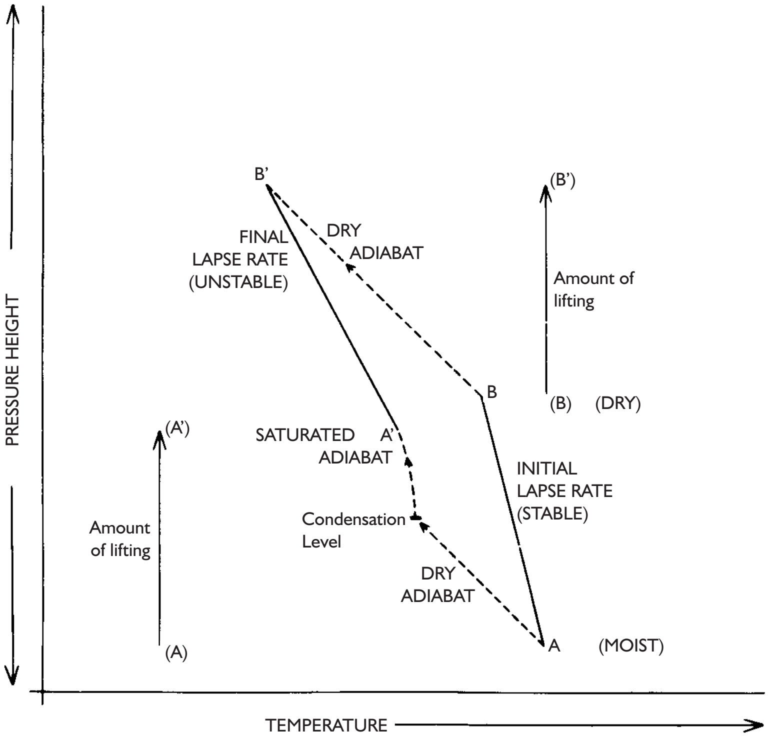


Figure 5.6 Convective instability. AB represents the initial state of an air column; moist at A, dry at B. After uplift of the whole air column the temperature gradient A´ B´ exceeds the saturated adiabatic lapse rate, so the air column is unstable.

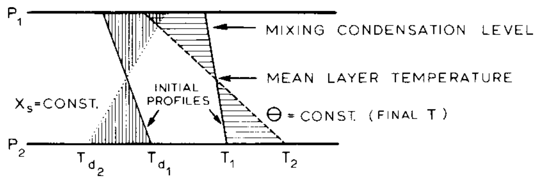


Figure 5.7 Graph illustrating the effects of vertical mixing in an airmass. The horizontal lines are pressure surfaces (P_2, P_1). The initial temperature (T_1) and dew-point temperature (T_{d1}) gradients are modified by turbulent mixing to T_2 and T_{d2}. The condensation level occurs where the dry adiabat (θ) through T_1 intersects the saturation humidity mixing ratio line (X_s) through T_{d2}.

average-value lines cross the initial environment curves are equal.

D CLOUD FORMATION

The formation of clouds depends on atmospheric instability and vertical motion but it also involves microscale processes. These are discussed before we examine cloud development and cloud types.

1 Condensation nuclei

Remarkably, condensation occurs with utmost difficulty in *clean* air; moisture needs a suitable surface upon which it can condense. If clean air is cooled below its dew-point it becomes *supersaturated* (i.e. relative humidity exceeding 100 per cent). To maintain a pure water drop of radius 10^{-7} cm (0.001 mm) requires a relative humidity of 320 per cent, and for one of radius 10^{-5} cm (0.1 mm) only 101 per cent.

Usually, condensation occurs on a foreign surface; this can be a land or plant surface in the case of dew or frost, while in the free air condensation begins on *hygroscopic nuclei*. These are microscopic particles – *aerosols* – the surfaces of which (like the weather enthusiast's seaweed!) have the property of *wettability*. Aerosols include dust, smoke, salts and chemical compounds. Sea-salts, which are particularly hygroscopic, enter the atmosphere by the bursting of air bubbles in foam. They are a major component of the aerosol load near the ocean surface but tend to be removed rapidly due to their size. Other contributions are from fine soil particles and various natural, industrial and domestic combustion products raised by the wind. A further source is the conversion of atmospheric trace gas to particles through photochemical reactions, particularly over urban areas. Nuclei range in size from 0.001 μm radius, which are ineffective because of the high supersaturation required for their activation, to *giants* of over 10 μm, which do not remain airborne for very long (see pp. 12–13). On average, oceanic air contains 1 million condensation nuclei per litre (i.e. dm^3), and land air holds some 5 or 6 million. In the marine troposphere there are fine particles, mainly ammonium sulphate. A photochemical origin associated with anthropogenic activities accounts for about half of these in the nor thern hemisphere. Dimethyl sulphide (DMS), associated with algal decomposition, also undergoes oxidation to sulphate. Over the tropical continents, aerosols are produced by forest vegetation and surface litter, and through biomass burning; particulate organic carbon predominates. In mid-latitudes, remote from anthropogenic sources, coarse particles are mostly of crustal origin (calcium, iron, potassium and aluminium) whereas crustal, organic and sulphate particles are represented almost equally in the fine aerosol load.

Hygroscopic aerosols are soluble. This is very important since the saturation vapour pressure is less over a solution droplet (for example, sodium chloride or sulphuric acid) than over a pure water drop of the same size and temperature (Figure 5.8). Indeed, condensation begins on hygroscopic particles before the air is saturated; in the case of sodium chloride nuclei at 78 per cent relative humidity. Figure 5.8 illustrates Kohler curves showing droplet radii for three sets of solution droplets of sodium chloride (a common sea-salt) in relation to their equilibrium relative humidity. Droplets in an environment where values are below/above the appropriate curve will evaporate/grow. Each curve has a maximum beyond which the droplet can grow in air with less supersaturation.

Once formed, the growth of water droplets is far from simple. In the early stages the solution effect is predominant and small drops grow more quickly than large ones, but as the size of a droplet increases, its growth rate by condensation decreases (Figure 5.9). Radial growth rate slows down as the drop size increases, because there is a greater surface area to cover with every increment of radius. However, the condensation rate is limited by the speed with which the released latent heat can be lost from the drop by conduction to the air; this heat reduces the vapour gradient. In addition, competition between droplets for the available moisture acts to reduce the degree of supersaturation.

Supersaturation in clouds rarely exceeds 1 per cent and, because the saturation vapour pressure is greater over a curved droplet surface than over a plane water surface, minute droplets (<0.1 μm radius) are readily evaporated (see Figure 5.8). Initially, the nucleus size is important; for supersaturation of 0.05 per cent, a droplet of 1 μm radius with a salt nucleus of mass 10^{-13} g reaches 10 μm in 30 minutes, whereas one with a salt nucleus of 10^{-14} g would take 45 minutes. Later, when the dissolved salt has ceased to have significant effect, the radial growth rate slows due to decreasing supersaturation.

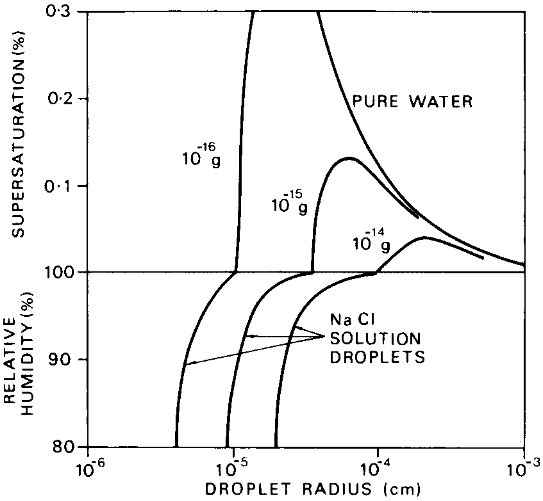


Figure 5.8 Kohler curves showing the variation of equilibrium relative humidity or supersaturation (per cent) with droplet radius for pure water and NaCl solution droplets. The numbers show the mass of sodium chloride (a similar family of curves is obtained for sulphate solutions). The pure water droplet line illustrates the curvature effect.

Figure 5.9 illustrates the very slow growth of water droplets by condensation – in this case, at 0.2 per cent supersaturation from an initial radius of 10 μm. As there is an immense size difference between cloud droplets (<1 to 50 μm radius) and raindrops (>1 mm diameter), it is apparent that the gradual process of condensation cannot explain the rates of formation of raindrops that are often observed. For example, in most clouds precipitation develops within an hour. The alternative coalescence mechanism illustrated in Figure 5.9 is described below (p. 102). It must be remembered too that falling raindrops undergo evaporation in the unsaturated air below the cloud base. A droplet of 0.1mm radius evaporates after falling only 150 m at a temperature of 5°C and 90 per cent relative humidity, but a drop of 1 mm radius would fall 42 km before evaporating. On average, clouds contain only 4 per cent of the total water in the atmosphere at any one time but they are a crucial element in the hydrological cycle.

2 Cloud types

The wide variety of cloud forms necessitates a classification for purposes of weather reporting. The internationally adopted system is based upon (1) the general shape, structure and vertical extent of the clouds, and (2) their altitude.

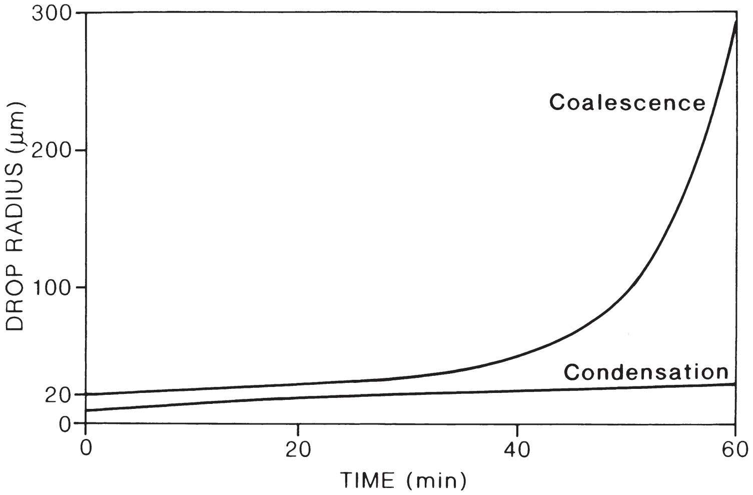


Figure 5.9 Droplet growth by condensation and coalescence.

Source: Jonas (1994). Reprinted from *Weather*, by permission of the Royal Meteorological Society. Crown copyright ©.

Table 5.1 Cloud base height (in 000s m).

	Tropics	*Middle latitudes*	*High latitudes*
High cloud	Above 6	Above 5	Above 3
Medium cloud	2–7.5	2.7	2–4
Low cloud	Below 2	Below 2	Below 2

These primary characteristics are used to define the ten basic groups (or genera) as shown in Figure 5.10. High cirriform cloud is composed of ice crystals, giving a fibrous appearance (Plate 17). Stratiform clouds are in layers, while cumuliform clouds have a heaped appearance and usually show progressive vertical development. Other prefixes are *alto*- for middle-level (medium) clouds and *nimbo*- for thick, low clouds which appear dark grey and from which continuous rain is falling.

The height of the cloud base may show a considerable range for any of these types and varies with latitude. The approximate limits in thousands of metres for different latitudes are shown in Table 5.1.

Following taxonomic practice, the classification subdivides the major groups into species and varieties with Latin names according to their appearance. The *International Cloud Atlas* (WMO 1956) provides illustrations.

Clouds can also be grouped in their mode of origin. A genetic grouping can be made based on the mechanism of vertical motion that produces condensation. Four categories are:

1. gradual uplift of air over a wide area in association with a low-pressure system;
2. thermal convection (on the local cumulus scale);
3. uplift by mechanical turbulence (*forced convection*);
4. ascent over an orographic barrier.

Group 1 includes a wide range of cloud types and is discussed more fully in Chapter 9D.2. With cumuliform clouds (group 2), upward convection currents (thermals) form plumes of warm air that, as they rise, expand and are carried downwind. Towers in cumulus and other clouds (Plates 4 and 6) are caused not by thermals of surface origin, but by ones set up *within* the cloud as a result of the release of latent heat by condensation. Thermals gradually lose their impetus as mixing of cooler, drier air from the surroundings dilutes the more buoyant warm air. Cumulus towers also tend to evaporate as updrafts diminish, leaving a shallow oval-shaped ‘shelf’ cloud (*stratocumulus cumulogenitus*), which may amalgamate with others to produce a high overcast. Group 3 includes fog, stratus or stratocumulus and is important whenever air near the surface is cooled to dew-point by conduction or night-time radiation and the air is stirred by irregularities of the ground. The final group (4) includes stratiform or cumulus clouds produced by forced uplift of air over mountains. Hill fog is simply stratiform cloud enveloping high ground. A special and important category is the wave (lenticular) cloud (Plate 7), which develops when air flows over hills, setting up a wave motion in the air current downwind of the ridge (see Chapter 6C.3). Clouds form in the crest of these waves if the air reaches its condensation level.

Operational weather satellites provide information on cloudiness over the oceans, and on cloud patterns in relation to weather systems. They supply direct-readout imagery and information not obtainable by ground observations. Special classifications of cloud elements and patterns have been devised in order to analyse satellite imagery. A common pattern seen on satellite photographs is cellular, or honeycomb-like, with a typical diameter of 30 km. This develops from the movement of cold air over a warmer sea surface. An open cellular pattern, where cumulus clouds are along the cell sides, forms where there is a large air–sea temperature difference, whereas closed polygonal cells occur if this difference is small. In both cases there is subsidence above the cloud layer. Open (closed) cells are more common over warm (cool) ocean currents to the east (west) of the continents. The honeycomb pattern has been attributed to mesoscale convective mixing, but the cells have a width–depth ratio of about 30:1, whereas laboratory thermal convection cells have a corresponding ratio of only 3:1. Thus the true explanation may be more complicated. Less common is a radiating cellular pattern (Plate 8). Another common pattern over oceans and uniform terrain is provided by linear cumulus cloud ‘streets’. Helical motion in these two-dimensional cloud cells develops with surface heating, particularly when outbreaks of polar air move over warm seas (see Plate 9) and there is a capping inversion.

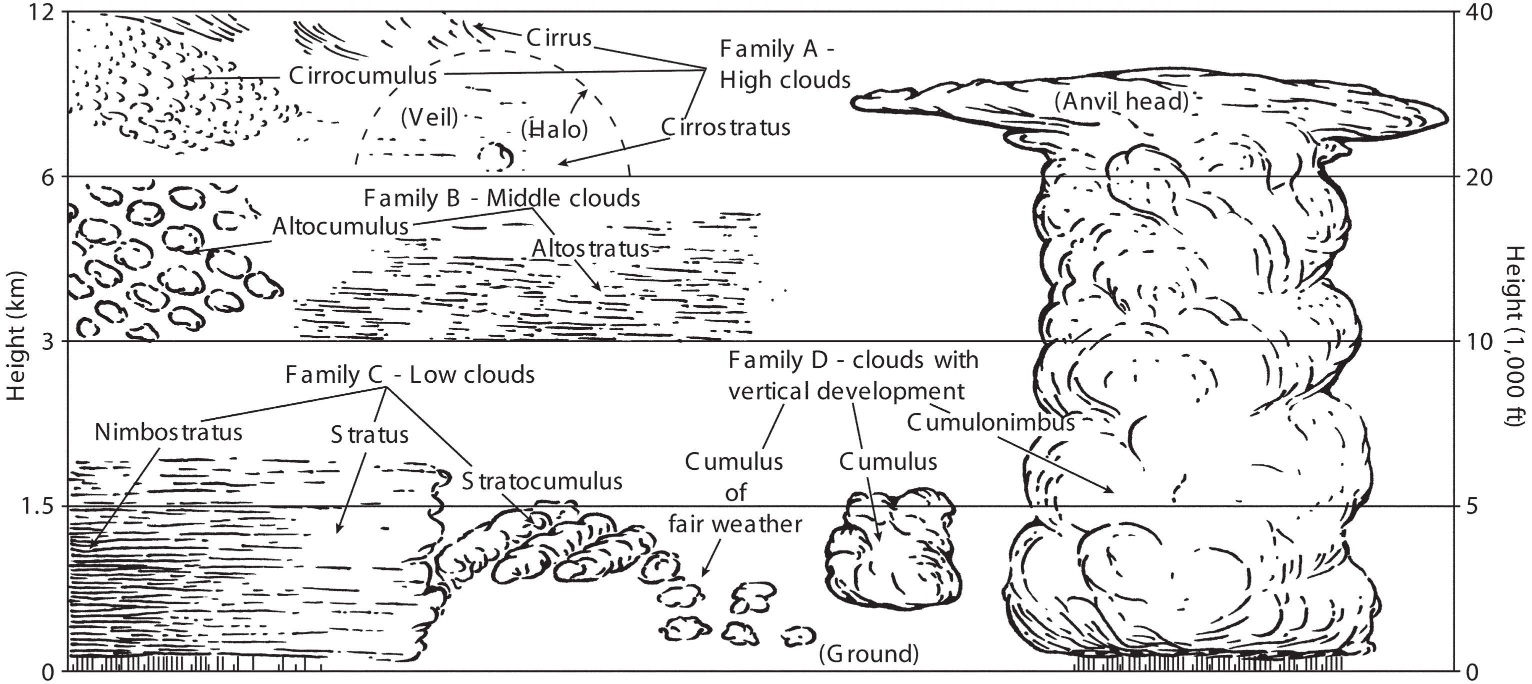

12
6
3
1.5
0
Height (km)
40
20
10
5
0
Height (1,000 ft)
Cirrus
Family A -
High clouds
Cirrocumulus
(Veil)
(Halo)
Cirrostratus
(Anvil head)
Family B - Middle clouds
Altocumulus
Altostratus
Family C - Low clouds
Nimbostratus
Stratus
Stratocumulus
Family D - clouds with
vertical development
Cumulonimbus
Cumulus
of
fair weather
Cumulus
(Ground)

Figure 5.10 The ten basic cloud groups classified according to height and form.

Source: Modified after Strahler (1965).

3 Global cloud cover

There are difficulties in determining cloud cover and layer structure from both satellite and ground observations. Surface-based estimates of cloud amounts are some 10 per cent greater than those derived from satellites, mainly because of the problem of estimating gaps near the horizon. The greatest discrepancies occur in summer in the subtropics and in polar regions. Total cloud amounts show characteristic geographical, latitudinal and seasonal distributions (see Figures 3.8 and 5.11). During the northern summer there are high percentages over West Africa, northwestern South America and Southeast Asia, with minima over the southern hemisphere continents, southern Europe, North Africa and the Near East. During austral summer there are high percentages over tropical land areas in the southern hemisphere, due partly to convection along the Intertropical Convergence Zone, and in subpolar ocean areas due to moist air advection. Minimal cloud cover is associated with the subtropical high-pressure regions throughout the year, whereas persistent maximum cloud cover occurs over the Southern Ocean storm belt at 50–70°S and over much of the ocean area north of 45°N.

Cloud acts both as an important sink for radiative energy in the earth–atmosphere system, through absorption, as well as a source due to reflection and re-radiation (see Chapter 3B, C). The mean annual net forcing effect of clouds is negative (~ –20 W m^{-2}) because the albedo effect on incoming solar radiation outweighs the infrared absorption (Figure 5.12). However, cloud forcing is complex; for example, more total cloud implies more absorption of outgoing terrestrial radiation (positive forcing, leading to warming) whereas more high cloud produces increased reflection of incoming solar radiation (negative forcing, leading to cooling).

There is evidence that cloud amounts increased during the twentieth century. Observations, for example, show a striking increase in cloud cover over the United States (especially between 1940 and 1950). This may be associated with higher atmospheric sulphate concentrations due to increased coal burning. The relationship with temperature is unclear.

E FORMATION OF PRECIPITATION

The puzzle of raindrop formation has already been noted. The simple growth of cloud droplets by condensation is apparently an inadequate mechanism and more complex processes have to be envisaged.

Various early theories of raindrop growth can be discounted. Proposals were that differently charged droplets could coalesce by electrical attraction, but it appears that distances between drops are too great and the difference between the electrical charges too small for this to happen. It was suggested that large drops

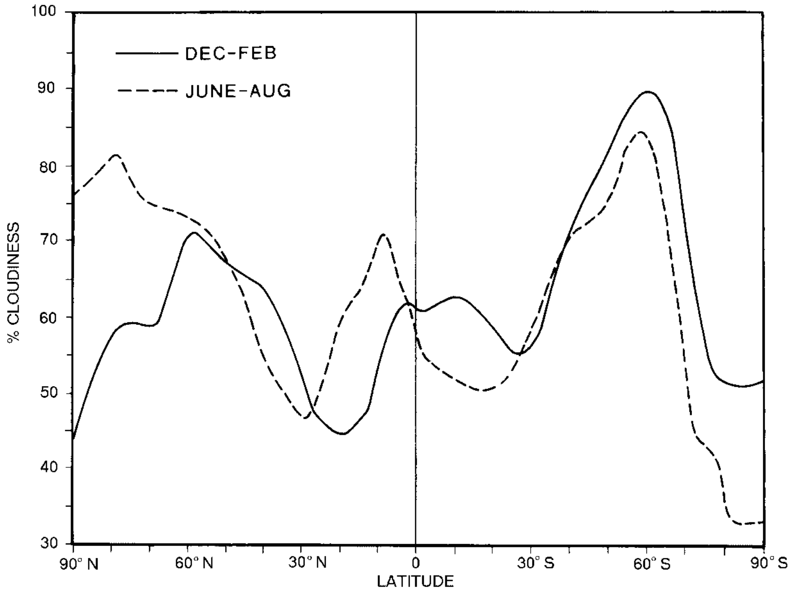


Figure 5.11 Average zonal distribution of total cloud amount (per cent), derived from surface observations over the total global surface (i.e. land plus water) for the months of December to February and June to August during the period 1971 to 1981.

Source: From London *et al*. (1989).

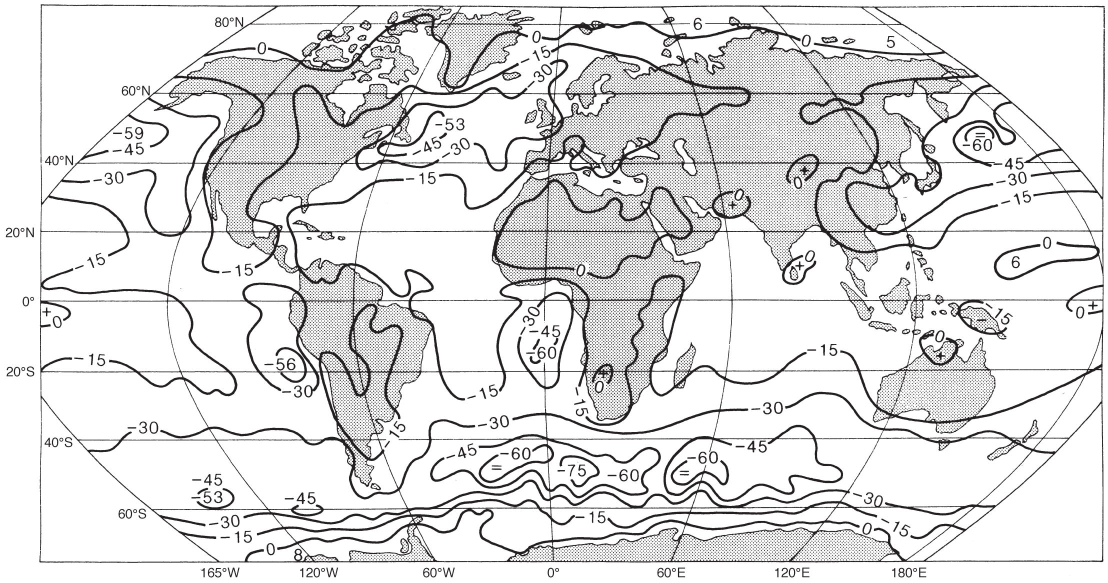


Figure 5.12 Mean annual net cloud forcing (W m^{-2}) observed by the *Nimbus*-7 ERB satellite for the period June 1979 to May 1980.

Source: Kyle *et al*. (1993) From *Bulletin of the American Meteorological Society*, by permission of the American Meteorological Society.

might grow at the expense of small ones. However, observations show that the distribution of droplet size in a cloud tends to maintain a regular pattern; the average radius is between 10 and 15 μm, and few are larger than 40 μm. A further idea was that atmospheric turbulence might bring warm and cold cloud droplets into close conjunction. The supersaturation of the air with reference to the cold droplets and the undersaturation with reference to the warm ones would cause the latter to evaporate and cold droplets to develop at their expense. However, except perhaps in some tropical clouds, the temperature of cloud droplets is too low for this differential mechanism to operate. Figure 2.14 shows that, below about –10°C, the slope of the saturation vapour pressure curve is low. Another theory was that raindrops grow around exceptionally large condensation nuclei (observed in some tropical storms). Large nuclei do experience a more rapid rate of initial condensation, but after this stage they are subject to the same limiting rates of growth that apply to all cloud drops.

Current theories for the rapid growth of raindrops involve either the growth of ice crystals at the expense of water drops, or the coalescence of small droplets by the sweeping action of falling drops.

1 Bergeron–Findeisen theory

This widely accepted theory is based on the fact that at subzero temperatures the atmospheric vapour pressure decreases more rapidly over an ice surface than over water (Figure 2.14). The saturation vapour pressure over water becomes greater than over ice, especially between temperatures of –5 and –25°C, where the difference exceeds 0.2 mb. If ice crystals and supercooled water droplets exist together in a cloud, the drops tend to evaporate and direct deposition takes place from the vapour on to the ice crystals.

Freezing nuclei are necessary before ice particles can form – usually at temperatures of about –15 to –25°C. Small water droplets can, in fact, be supercooled in pure air to –40°C before spontaneous freezing occurs. But ice crystals generally predominate in clouds where temperatures are below about –22°C. Freezing nuclei are far less numerous than condensation nuclei; there may be as few as 10 per litre at –30°C and probably rarely more than 1000. However, some become active at higher temperatures. Kaolinite, a common clay mineral, initially becomes active at –9°C and on subsequent occasions at –4°C. The origin of freezing nuclei has been a subject of much debate but it is generally considered that very fine soil particles are a major source. Biogenic aerosols emitted by decaying plant litter, in the form of complex chemical compounds, also serve as freezing nuclei. In the presence of certain associated bacteria, ice nucleation can take place at only –2 to –5°C.

Tiny ice crystals grow readily by deposition from vapour, with different hexagonal forms (Plate 10) developing at different temperature ranges. The number of ice crystals also tends to increase progressively because small splinters become detached by air currents during growth and act as fresh nuclei. The freezing of supercooled water drops may also produce ice splinters (see F, this chapter). Figure 5.13 shows that a low density of ice particles is capable of rapid growth in an environment of cloud water droplets. This results in a slower decrease in the average size of the much larger number of cloud droplets although this still takes place on a time scale of 10^1 minutes. Ice crystals readily aggregate upon collision, due to their branched (dendritic) shape, and groups of ten crystals may form a single snowflake. Temperatures between about 0 and –5°C are particularly favourable to aggregation, because fine films of water on the crystal surfaces freeze when two crystals touch, binding them together. When the fall speed of the growing ice mass exceeds the existing velocities of the air upcurrents the snowflake falls, melting into a raindrop if it falls about 250 m below the freezing level.

This theory can account for most precipitation in middle and higher latitudes, yet it is not completely satisfactory. Cumulus clouds over tropical oceans can give rain when they are only some 2000 m deep and the cloud-top temperature is 5°C or more. In mid-latitudes in summer, precipitation may fall from cumuli that have no subfreezing layer (*warm clouds*). A suggested mechanism in such cases is that of 'droplet coalescence', discussed below.

Practical *rainmaking* has been based on the Bergeron theory with some success. The basis of such experiments is the freezing nucleus. Supercooled (water) clouds between –5 and –15°C are *seeded* with especially effective materials, such as silver iodide or 'dry ice' (CO_2) from aircraft or ground-based silver iodide generators, promoting the growth of ice crystals and encouraging precipitation. The seeding of some cumulus clouds at these temperatures probably produces a mean increase of precipitation of 10 to 15 per cent from clouds that are already precipitating or are 'about to precipitate'. Increases of up to 10 per cent have resulted from seeding winter orographic storms. However, it appears likely that clouds with an abundance of natural ice crystals, or with above-freezing temperatures throughout, are not susceptible to rainmaking. Premature release of precipitation may destroy the updrafts and cause dissipation of the cloud. This explains why some seeding experiments have actually *decreased* the rainfall! In other instances, cloud growth and precipitation have been achieved by such methods in Australia and the United States. Programmes aimed at increasing winter snowfall on the western slopes of the Sierra Nevada and Rocky Mountains by seeding cyclonic storms have been carried out for a number of years with mixed results. Their success depends on the presence of suitable supercooled clouds. When several cloud layers are present in the atmosphere, natural seeding may be important. For example, if ice crystals fall from high-level cirrostratus or altostratus (a 'releaser' cloud) into nimbostratus (a 'spender' cloud)

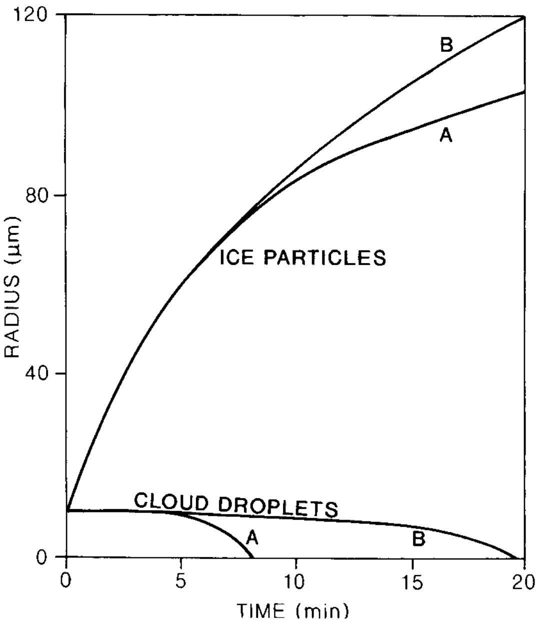


Figure 5.13 The effect of a small proportion of initially frozen droplets on the relative increase/decrease in the sizes of cloud ice and water particles. The initial droplets were at a temperature of –10°C and at water saturation. (A) A density of 100 drops per cc, 1 per cent of which were assumed to be frozen. (B) A density of 1000 drops per cc, 0.1 per cent of which were assumed to be frozen.

Source: Jonas (1994). Reprinted from *Weather*, by permission of the Royal Meteorological Society. Crown copyright ©.

composed of supercooled water droplets, the latter can grow rapidly by the Bergeron process and such situations may lead to extensive and prolonged precipitation. This is a frequent occurrence in cyclonic systems in winter and is important in orographic precipitation (see E3, this chapter).

2 Coalescence theories

Theories of raindrop growth use collision, coalescence and 'sweeping' as the growth mechanisms. It was originally thought that cloud particle collisions due to atmospheric turbulence would cause a significant proportion to coalesce. However, particles break up just as easily if subject to collisions. Langmuir offered a variation of this simple idea. He pointed out that falling drops have terminal velocities (typically 1 to 10 cm s^{-1}) directly related to their diameters, such that the larger drops can overtake and absorb small droplets; the latter might also be swept into the wake of larger drops and absorbed by them. Figure 5.9 gives experimental results of the rate of growth of water drops by coalescence, from an initial radius of 20 mm in a cloud having a water content of 1 g/m^3 (assuming maximum efficiency). Although coalescence is initially slow, droplets reach 100 to 200 μm radius in 50 minutes. Moreover, the growth rate is rapid for drops with radii greater than 40 μm. Calculations show that drops must exceed 19 μm radius before they can coalesce with others; smaller droplets are swept aside without colliding. The initial presence of a few very large droplets calls for the availability of giant nuclei (e.g. salt particles) if the cloud top does not reach above the freezing level. Observations show that maritime clouds do have relatively few large condensation nuclei (10–50 μm radius) and a high liquid water content, whereas continental air tends to contain many small nuclei (~ 1 μm) and less liquid water. Hence, rapid onset of showers is feasible by the coalescence mechanism in maritime clouds. Alternatively, if a few ice crystals are present at higher levels in the cloud (or if seeding occurs with ice crystals falling from higher clouds) they may eventually fall through the cloud as drops and the coalescence mechanism comes into action. Turbulence in cumulus clouds serves to encourage collisions in the early stages. Thus, the coalescence process allows more rapid growth than simple condensation and is, in fact, common in 'warm' clouds in tropical maritime airmasses, even in temperate latitudes.

3 Solid precipitation

Rain has been discussed at length because it is the most common form of precipitation. Snow occurs when the freezing level is so near the surface that aggregations of ice crystals do not have time to melt before reaching the ground. Generally, this means that the freezing level must be below 300 m. Mixed snow and rain ('sleet' in British usage) is especially likely when the air temperature at the surface is about 1.5°C. Snowfall rarely occurs with a surface air temperature exceeding 4°C.

Soft hail pellets (roughly spherical, opaque grains of ice with much enclosed air) occur when the Bergeron process operates in a cloud with a small liquid water content and ice particles grow mainly by deposition of water vapour. Limited accretion of small, supercooled droplets forms an aggregate of soft, opaque ice particles 1 mm or so in radius. Showers of such graupel pellets are quite common in winter and spring from cumulonimbus clouds.

Ice pellets may develop if the soft hail falls through a region of large liquid water content above the freezing level. Accretion forms a casing of clear ice around the pellet. Alternatively, an ice pellet consisting entirely of transparent ice may result from the freezing of a raindrop or the refreezing of a melted snowflake.

True hailstones are roughly concentric accretions of clear and opaque ice. The embryo is a raindrop carried aloft in an updraft and frozen. Successive accretions of opaque ice (rime) occur due to impact of supercooled droplets, which freeze instantaneously. The clear ice (glaze) represents a wet surface layer, developed as a result of very rapid collection of supercooled drops in parts of the cloud with large liquid water content, which has subsequently frozen. A major difficulty in early theories was the necessity to postulate violently fluctuating upcurrents to give the observed banded hailstone structure. Modern thunderstorm models successfully account for this; the growing hailstones are recycled by a traveling storm (see Chapter 9I). On occasions, hailstones may reach giant size, weighing up to 0.76 kg each (recorded in September 1970 at Coffeyville, Kansas). In view of their rapid fall speeds, hailstones may fall considerable distances with little melting. Hailstorms are a cause of severe damage to crops and property when large hailstones fall.

F PRECIPITATION TYPES

It is usual to identify three main types of precipitation – convective, cyclonic and orographic – according to the primary mode of uplift of the air. Essential to this analysis is some knowledge of storm systems. These are treated in later chapters, and the newcomer to the subject may prefer to read the following in conjunction with them (Chapter 9).

1 'Convective type' precipitation

This is associated with towering cumulus (*cumulus congestus*) and cumulonimbus clouds. Three subcategories may be distinguished according to their degree of spatial organization.

1. Scattered convective cells develop through strong heating of the land surface in summer (Plate 25), especially when low temperatures in the upper troposphere facilitate the release of conditional or convective instability (see B, this chapter). Precipitation, often including hail, is of the thunderstorm type, although thunder and lightning do not necessarily occur. Small areas (20 to 50 km^2) are affected by individual heavy downpours, which generally last for about 30 minutes to an hour.
2. Showers of rain, snow or soft hail pellets may form in cold, moist, unstable air passing over a warmer surface. Convective cells moving with the wind can produce a streaky distribution of precipitation parallel to the wind direction. Such cells tend to occur parallel to a surface cold front in the warm sector of a depression (sometimes as a squall line), or parallel to and ahead of the warm front (see Chapter 9D). Hence the precipitation is widespread, although of limited duration at any locality.
3. In tropical cyclones, cumulonimbus cells become organized around the centre in spiralling bands (see Chapter 11B.2). Particularly in the decaying stages of such cyclones, typically over land, the rainfall can be very heavy and prolonged, affecting areas of thousands of square kilometres.

2 'Cyclonic type' precipitation

Precipitation characteristics vary according to the type of low-pressure system and its stage of development, but the essential mechanism is ascent of air through horizontal convergence of airstreams in an area of low pressure (see Chapter 6B). In extra-tropical depressions, this is reinforced by uplift of warm, less dense air along an airmass boundary (see Chapter 9D.2). Such depressions give moderate and generally continuous precipitation over very extensive areas as they move, usually eastward, in the westerly wind belts between about 40° and 65° latitude. The precipitation belt in the forward sector of the storm can affect a locality in its path for 6 to 12 hours, whereas the belt in the rear gives a shorter period of thunderstorm-type precipitation. These sectors are therefore sometimes distinguished in precipitation classifications, and a more detailed breakdown is illustrated in Table 10.2. Polar lows (see Chapter 9H.3) combine the effects of airstream convergence and convective activity of category 2 (previous section), whereas troughs in the equatorial low-pressure area give convective precipitation as a result of airstream convergence in the tropical easterlies (see Chapter 11B.1).

3 Orographic precipitation

Orographic precipitation is commonly regarded as a distinct type, but this requires careful qualification. Mountains are not especially efficient in causing moisture to be removed from airstreams crossing them, yet because precipitation falls repeatedly in more or less the same locations, the cumulative totals are large. An orographic barrier may produce several effects, depending on its alignment and size. They include: (1) forced ascent on a smooth mountain slope, producing adiabatic cooling, condensation and precipitation; (2) triggering of conditional or convective instability by blocking of the airflow and upstream lifting; (3) triggering of convection by diurnal heating of slopes and up-slope winds; (4) precipitation from low-level cloud over the mountains through 'seeding' of ice crystals or droplets from an upper-level feeder cloud (Figure 5.14); and (5) increased frontal precipitation by retarding the movement of cyclonic systems and fronts. West coast mountains with onshore flow, such as the Western Ghats, India, during the southwest summer monsoon; the west coasts of Canada, Washington and Oregon; or coastal Norway, in winter months, supposedly illustrate smooth forced ascent, yet many other processes seem to be involved. The limited width of some coastal ranges, with average wind speeds, generally allows insufficient time for the basic mechanisms of precipitation growth to operate (see Figure 5.9). In view of the complexity of

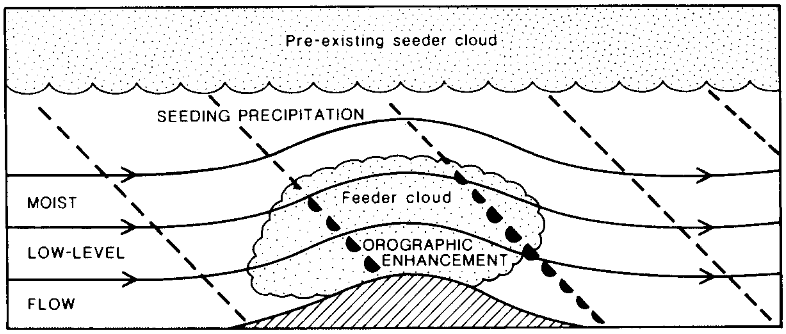


Figure 5.14 Schematic diagram of T. Bergeron's 'seeder–feeder' cloud model of orographic precipitation over hills.

Note: This process may also operate in deep nimbostratus layers.
Source: After Browning and Hill (1981). Reprinted from *Weather*, by permission of the Royal Meteorological Society. Crown copyright ©.

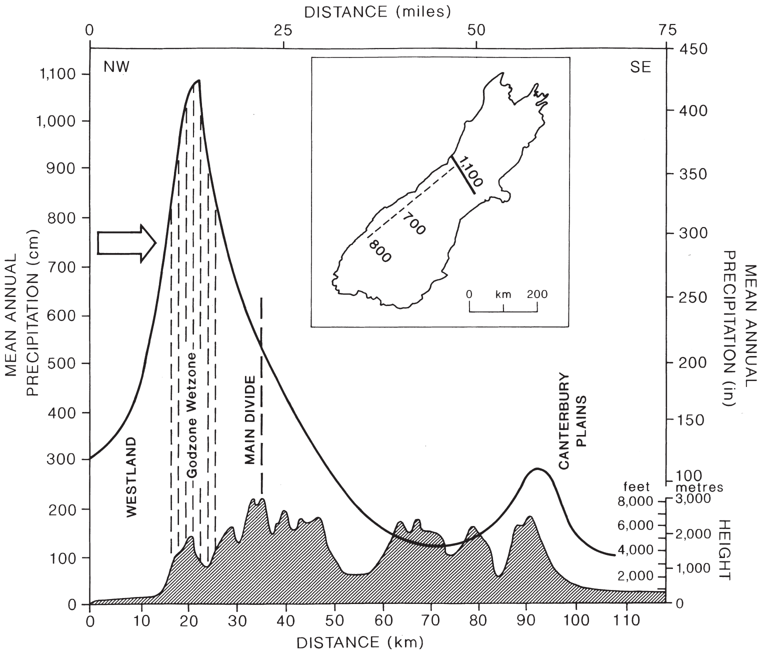


Figure 5.15 Mean annual precipitation (1951 to 1980) along a transect of the South Island of New Zealand, shown as the solid line in the inset map. On the latter, the dashed line indicates the position of the Godzone Wetzone and the figures give the precipitation peaks (cm) at three locations along the Godzone Wetzone.

Sources: Chinn (1979) and Henderson (1993), by permission of the New Zealand Alpine Club Inc and T.J. Chinn.

processes involved, Tor Bergeron proposed using the term 'orogenic', rather than orographic, precipitation (i.e. an origin related to various orographically produced effects). An extreme example of orographic precipitation is found on the western side of the Southern Alps of New Zealand, where mean annual rainfall totals exceed 10 metres! (Figure 5.15).

In mid-latitude areas where precipitation is predominantly of cyclonic origin, orographic effects tend to increase both the frequency and intensity of winter precipitation, whereas during summer and in continental climates with a higher condensation level the main effect of relief is the occasional triggering of intense thunderstorm-type precipitation. The orographic influence occurs only in the proximity of high ground in the case of a stable atmosphere. Radar studies show that the main effect in this case is one of redistribution, whereas in the case of an unstable atmosphere precipitation appears to be increased, or at least redistributed on a larger scale, since the orographic effects may extend well downwind due to the activation of mesoscale rain bands (see Figure 9.13).

In tropical highland areas there is a clearer distinction between orographic and convective contributions to total rainfall than in the mid-latitude cyclonic belt. Figure 5.16 shows that in the mountains of Costa Rica the temporal character of convective and orographic rainfalls and their seasonal occurrences are quite

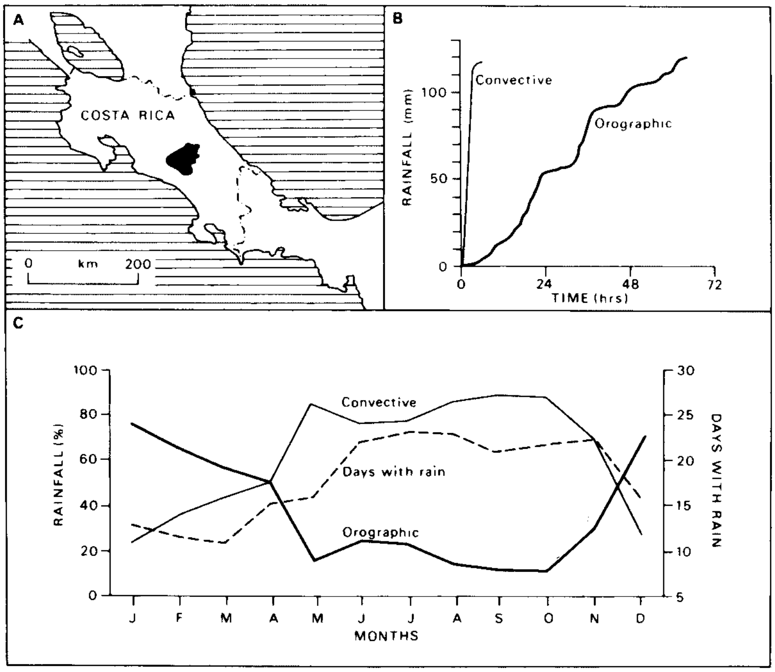


Figure 5.16 Orographic and convective rainfall in the Cachi region of Costa Rica for the period 1977 to 1980. (A) The Cachi region, elevation 500 to 3,000 m. (B) Typical accumulated rainfall distributions for individual convective (duration 1 to 6 hours, high intensity) and orographic (1 to 5 days, lower intensity except during convective bursts) rainstorms. (C) Monthly rainfall divided into percentages of convective and orographic, plus days with rain, for Cachi (1018 m).

Source: From Chacon and Fernandez (1985), by permission of the Royal Meteorological Society.

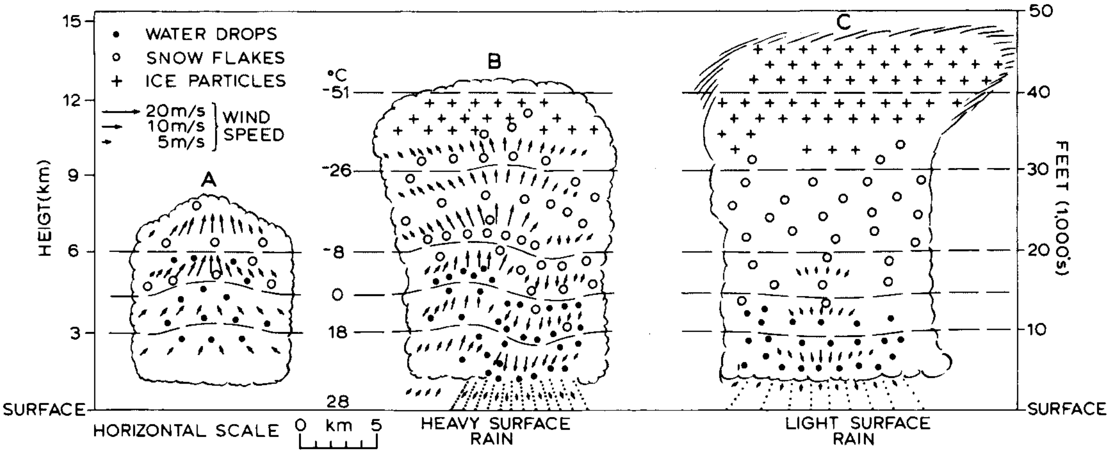

15
12
9
6
3
SURFACE
HEIGT(km)
• WATER DROPS
o SNOW FLAKES
+ ICE PARTICLES
20m/s
10m/s
5m/s
WIND SPEED
A
B
C
°C
-51
-26
-8
0
18
28
HORIZONTAL SCALE 0 km 5
HEAVY SURFACE RAIN
LIGHT SURFACE RAIN
50
40
30
20
10
SURFACE
FEET (1,000's)

Figure 5.17 Classic view of the cycle of a local thunderstorm. The arrows indicate the direction and speed of air currents. (A) The developing stage of the initial updraft. (B) The mature stage with updrafts, downdrafts and heavy rainfall. (C) The dissipating stage, dominated by cool downdrafts.

Source: After Byers and Braham; adapted from Petterssen (1969).

distinguishable. Convective rain occurs mainly in the May to November period, when 60 per cent of the rain falls in the afternoons between 12:00 and 18:00 hours; orographic rain predominates between December and April, with a secondary maximum in June and July coinciding with an intensification of the trades.

Even low hills may have an orographic effect. Research in Sweden shows that wooded hills, rising only 30 to 50 m above the surrounding lowlands, increase precipitation amounts locally by 50 to 80 per cent during cyclonic spells. Until Doppler radar studies of the motion of falling raindrops became feasible, the processes responsible for such effects were unknown. A principal cause is the 'seeder–feeder' ('releaser–spender') cloud mechanism, proposed by Tor Bergeron and illustrated in Figure 5.14. In moist, stable airflow, shallow cap clouds form over hilltops. Precipitation falling from an upper layer of altostratus (the seeder cloud) grows rapidly by the wash-out of droplets in the lower (feeder) cloud. The seeding cloud may release ice crystals, which subsequently melt. Precipitation from the upper cloud layer alone would not give significant amounts at the ground, as the droplets would have insufficient time to grow in the airflow, which may traverse the hills in 15 to 30 minutes. Most of the precipitation intensification happens in the lowest kilometre layer of moist, fast-moving airflows.

G THUNDERSTORMS

1 Development

In mid-latitudes the most spectacular example of moisture changes and associated energy releases in the atmosphere is the thunderstorm. Extreme upward and downward movements of air are both the principal ingredients and motivating machinery of such storms. They occur: (1) due to rising cells of excessively heated moist air in an unstable airmass; (2) through the triggering of conditional instability by uplift over mountains; or (3) through mesoscale circulations or lifting along convergence lines (see p. 201).

The lifecycle of a local storm lasts for only a few hours and begins when a parcel of air is either warmer than the air surrounding it or is actively undercut by colder encroaching air. In both instances, the air begins to rise and the embryo thunder cell forms as an unstable updraft of warm air (Figure 5.17). As condensation begins to form cloud droplets, latent heat is released and the initial upward impetus of the air parcel is augmented by an expansion and a decrease in density until the whole mass becomes completely out of thermal equilibrium with the surrounding air. At this stage, updrafts may increase from 3 to 5 m s^{-1} at the cloud base to 8 to 10 m s^{-1} some 2 to 3 km higher, and they can exceed 30 m s^{-1}. The constant release of latent heat continuously injects fresh supplies of energy, which accelerate the updraft. The airmass will continue to rise as long as its temperature remains greater (or, in other words, its density less) than that of the surrounding air. Cumulonimbus clouds form where the air is already moist, as a result of previous penetrating towers from a cluster of clouds, and there is persistent ascent (Plate 6).

Raindrops begin to develop rapidly when the ice stage (or freezing stage) is reached by the vertical buildup of the cell, allowing the Bergeron process to operate. They do not immediately fall to the ground, because the updrafts are able to support them. The minimum cumulus depth for showers over ocean areas seems to be between 1 and 2 km, but 4 to 5 km is more typical inland. The corresponding minimum time intervals needed for showers to fall from growing cumulus are about 15 minutes over ocean areas and ≥30 minutes inland. Falls of hail require the special cloud processes, described in the last section, involving phases of 'dry' (rime accretion) and 'wet' growth on hail pellets. The mature stage of a storm (see Figure 5.17B) is usually associated with precipitation downpours and lightning (see Plate 12). The precipitation causes frictional downdrafts of cold air. As these gather momentum, cold air may eventually spread out in a wedge below the thunder cell. Gradually, as the moisture of the cell is expended, the supply of released latent heat energy diminishes, the downdrafts progressively gain in power over the warm updrafts, and the cell dissipates.

To simplify the explanation, a thunderstorm with only one cell was illustrated. Storms are usually far more complex in structure and consist of several cells arranged in clusters of 2 to 8 km across, 100 km or so in length and extending up to 10 km or more (see Plate 11). Such systems are known as *squall lines* (see Chapter 9I).

2 Cloud electrification and lightning

Two general hypotheses help to account for thunderstorm electrification. One involves induction in the presence of an electric field, the other is non-inductive charge transfer. The ionosphere at 30 to 40 km altitude is positively charged (owing to the action of cosmic and solar ultraviolet radiation in ionization) and the earth's surface is negatively charged during fine weather. Thus cloud droplets can acquire an induced positive charge on their lower side and negative charge on their upper side. Non-inductive charge transfer requires contact between cloud and precipitation particles. According to J. Latham (1966), the major factor in cloud electrification is non-inductive charge transfer involving collisions between splintered ice crystals and warmer pellets of soft hail (graupel). The accretion of

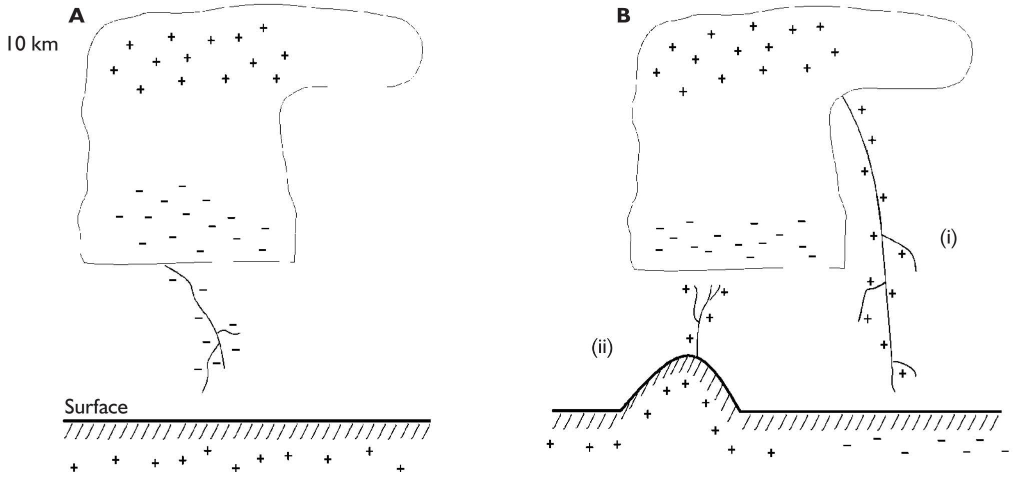


Figure 5.18 Classic view of the vertical distribution of electrostatic charges in a thundercloud and at the ground. (A) shows the common transfer of negative charge to the surface in a lightning stroke; (B) shows other cases: (i) when positive charge from the upper part of the cloud is transferred towards a locally induced area of negative charge at the surface; (ii) when positive charge transfer is from a summit or surface structure towards the cloud base.

supercooled droplets (riming) on hail pellets produces an irregular surface, which is warmed as the droplets release latent heat on freezing. The impacts of ice crystals on this irregular surface generate negative charge, while the crystals acquire positive charge. Negative charge is usually concentrated between about –10° and –25°C in a thundercloud, where ice crystal concentrations are large, and due to splintering at about the 0° to –5°C level and the ascent of the crystals in upcurrents. The separation of electrical charges of opposite signs may involve several mechanisms: one is the differential movement of particles under gravity and convective updrafts; another is the splintering of ice crystals during the freezing of cloud droplets. This operates as follows: a supercooled droplet freezes inward from its surface and this leads to a negatively charged warmer core (OH^- ions) and a positively charged colder surface due to the migration of H^+ ions outward down the temperature gradient. When this soft hailstone ruptures during freezing, small ice splinters carrying a positive charge are ejected by the ice shell and preferentially lifted to the upper part of the convection cell in updrafts (see Figure 5.18). However, the ice-splintering mechanism appears to work only for a narrow range of temperature conditions, and the charge transfer is small.

The vertical distribution of charges in a thundercloud, based on balloon soundings, is shown in Figure 5.19. This general scheme applies to airmass thunderstorms in the southwestern USA, as well as to supercell storms and mesoscale convective systems described in Chapter 9I. There are four alternating bands of positive and negative charges in the updraft and six outside the updraft area. The lower three bands of the four in the updraft are attributed to collision processes. Ice crystals carried upward may explain why the upper part of the cloud (above the –25°C isotherm) is positively charged. Negatively charged graupel accounts for the main region of negative charge. There is a temperature threshold of around –10° to –20°C (depending on the cloud liquid water content and the rate of accretion on the graupel) where charge-sign reversal takes place. Above/below the altitude of this threshold, graupel pellets charge negatively/positively. The lower area of positive charge represents larger precipitation particles acquiring positive charge at temperatures higher than this threshold. The origin of the uppermost zone of negative charge is uncertain, but may involve induction (so-called 'screening layer' formation) since it is near the upper cloud boundary and the ionosphere is positively charged. The non-updraft structure may represent spatial variations or a temporal evolution of the storm system. The origin of the positive area at the cloud base outside the updraft is uncertain, but it may be a screening layer.

Radar studies show that lightning is associated both with ice particles in clouds and rising air currents

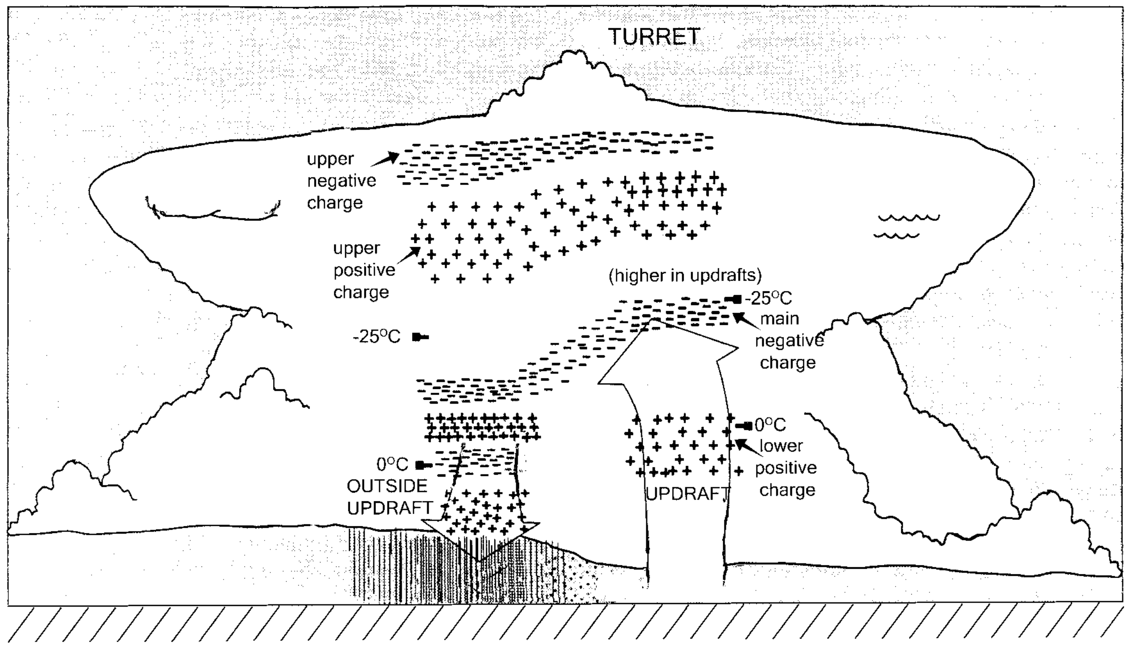


Figure 5.19 The electric charge structure in airmass storms in New Mexico, supercell storms and the convective elements of mesoscale convective systems (see Chapter 9), based on balloon soundings of the electric field – 33 in updrafts and 16 outside them. There are four vertical zones in the updraft region and six in the downdraft region, but the size, strength and relative positions of the up- and downdrafts vary, as do the heights and temperatures shown.

Source: Stolzenburg *et al*. (1998) Fig. 3, by permission of the American Geophysical Union.

carrying small hail aloft. Lightning commonly begins more or less simultaneously with precipitation downpours and rainfall yield appears to be correlated with flash density. The most common form of lightning (about two-thirds of all flashes) occurs within a cloud and is visible as *sheet lightning*. More significant are cloud–ground (CG) strokes. These are frequently between the lower part of the cloud and the ground which locally has an induced positive charge. The first (leader) stage of the flash bringing down negative charge from the cloud is met about 30 m above the ground by a return stroke, which rapidly takes positive charge upward along the already formed channel of ionized air. Just as the leader is neutralized by the return stroke, so the cloud neutralizes the latter in turn. Subsequent leaders and return strokes drain higher regions of the cloud until its supply of negative charge is temporarily exhausted. The total flash, with about eight return strokes, typically lasts for only about 0.5 seconds (Plate 12). The extreme heating and explosive expansion of air immediately around the path of the lightning sets up intense sound-waves, causing thunder to be heard. The sound travels at about 300 m s^{-1}. Less commonly, positive CG flashes occur from the upper positive region (Figure 5.18B, case (i)), and they predominate in the stratiform cloud sector of a travelling convective storm (Chapter 9I). Positive charge can also be transferred from a mountaintop or high structure towards the cloud base (case (ii)). In the United States, over 20 per cent of flashes are positive in the Midwest, along the Gulf Coast and in Florida. Figure 5.18A represents a simple dipole model of cloud electricity; schemes to address the complexity shown in Figure 5.19 remain to be developed.

Lightning is only one aspect of the atmospheric electricity cycle. During fine weather, the earth's surface is negatively charged, the ionosphere positively charged. The potential gradient of this vertical electrical field in fine weather is about 100 V m^{-1} near the surface, decreasing to about 1 Vm^{-1} at 25 km, whereas beneath a thundercloud it reaches 10,000 V m^{-1} immediately before a discharge. The 'breakdown potential' for lightning to occur in dry air is 3×10^6 V m^{-1}, but this is ten times the largest observed potential in thunderclouds. Hence the necessity for localized cloud droplet/ice crystal charging processes, as already described, to initiate flash leaders. Atmospheric ions conduct electricity from the ionosphere down to the earth, and hence a return supply must be forthcoming to maintain the observed electrical field. A major source is the slow *point discharge*, from objects such as buildings and trees, of ions carrying positive charge (electrons) induced by the negative thundercloud base.

Upward currents have recently been discovered high above the stratiform regions of large convective storm systems with positive CG lightning. Brief luminous emissions, due to electrical discharges, appear in the mesosphere and extend downward to 30 to 40 km. These so-called *sprites* are red in the upper part, with blue tendrils below. The red colour is from neutral nitrogen molecules excited by free electrons. In the ionosphere above, a luminous expanding ring (termed *elve*) may occur. High above the lightning storm, a discharge takes place because the imposed electric field of a vertical dipole exceeds the breakdown potential of the low-density air. The electrically conductive ionosphere prevents sprites from extending above 90-km altitude.

The other source of a return supply (estimated to be smaller in its effect over the earth as a whole than point discharges) is the instantaneous upward transfer of positive charge by lightning strokes, leaving the earth negatively charged. The joint operation of these supply currents, with approximately 50 flashes/sec over the globe at any time, is thought to be sufficient to balance the air–earth leakage, and this number matches reasonably well with observations.

Globally, thunderstorms are most frequent between 12:00 and 21:00 local time, with a minimum around 03:00. An analysis of lightning on satellite imaging systems for 1995 to 2002 shows a predominance of flashes over tropical land areas between 15°N and 30°S (Plate C). In the austral summer, lightning signatures are along the equatorial trough and south to about 30°S over the Congo, South Africa, Brazil, Indonesia and northern Australia, with activity along cyclone paths in the northern hemisphere. In the boreal summer, activity is concentrated in central and northern South America, West Africa – the Congo, northern India and Southeast Asia and the southeastern United States. The North American lightning detection network recorded 28 to 31 million flashes per year for 1998 to 2000. The median peak current was about 16 kA. In Florida and along the Gulf Coast there were nine flashes/km^2. Lightning is a significant environmental hazard. In the United States alone there are 100 to 150 deaths per year on average, as a result of lightning accidents.

SUMMARY

Air may be lifted through instability due to surface heating or mechanical turbulence, ascent of air at a frontal zone, or forced ascent over an orographic barrier. Instability is determined by the actual rate of temperature decrease with height in the atmosphere relative to the appropriate adiabatic rate. The dry adiabatic lapse rate is 9.8°C/km; the saturated adiabatic rate is less than the DALR due to latent heat released by condensation. It is least (around 5°C/km) at high temperatures, but approaches the DALR at subzero temperatures.

Condensation requires the presence of hygroscopic nuclei such as salt particles in the air. Otherwise, supersaturation occurs. Similarly, ice crystals only form naturally in clouds containing freezing nuclei (clay mineral particles). Otherwise, water droplets may supercool to –39°C. Both supercooled droplets and ice crystals may be present at cloud temperatures of –10 to –20°C.

Clouds are classified in ten basic types, according to altitude and cloud form. Satellites are providing new information on spatial patterns of cloudiness, revealing cellular (honeycomb) areas and linear cloud streets, as well as large-scale storm patterns.

Precipitation drops do not form directly by growth of cloud droplets through condensation. Two processes may be involved – coalescence of falling drops of differing sizes, and the growth of ice crystals by vapour deposition (the Bergeron–Findeisen process). Low-level cloud may be seeded naturally by ice crystals from upper cloud layers, or by introducing artificial nuclei. There is no single cause of the orographic enhancement of precipitation totals, and at least four contributing processes may be distinguished.

Thunderstorms are generated by convective uplift, which may result from daytime heating, orographic ascent or squall lines. The freezing process appears to be a major element of cloud electrification in thunderstorms. Lightning plays a key role in maintaining the electrical field between the surface and the ionosphere.

DISCUSSION TOPICS

- Account for the differences between the environmental, dry adiabatic and saturated adiabatic lapse rates.
- What processes determine the presence of stability and instability in the troposphere?
- What factors cause air to ascend/descend on small and large scales and what are the associated weather outcomes?
- Maintain a record of cloud type and amount over several days and compare what you observe with the cloud cover shown for your location on satellite imagery from an appropriate website (see Appendix 4D).
- Make a cross-section of terrain height and precipitation amounts at stations along a height transect in your own region/country. Use daily, monthly or annual data as available. Note also the prevailing wind direction with respect to the mountains/hills.
- From national records/websites, examine the occurrence of convective systems (thunderstorms, tornadoes, lightning) in your country and determine whether they are airmass storms, connected with frontal lows, or mesoscale convective systems.

FURTHER READING

Books

Byers, H. R. and Braham, R. R. (1949) *The Thunderstorm*, US Weather Bureau. [Classic study of thunderstorm processes.]

Cotton, W. R. and Anthes, R. A. (1989) *Storm and Cloud Dynamics*, Academic Press, San Diego, CA, 883pp. [Discusses cloud types and physical and dynamical processes, mesoscale structures, and the effects of mountains on airflow and cloud formation.]

Kessler, E. (ed.) (1986) *Thunderstorm Morphology and Dynamics*, University of Oklahoma Press, Norman, OK, 411 pp. [Comprehensive accounts by leading experts on convection and its modelling, all aspects of thunderstorm processes and occurrence in different environments, hail, lightning and tornadoes.]

Ludlam, F. H. (1980) *Clouds and Storms. The Behavior and Effect of Water in the Atmosphere*, Pennsylvania State University, University Park and London, 405pp. [A monumental work by a renowned specialist.]

Mason, B. J. (1975) *Clouds, Rain and Rainmaking* (2nd edn), Cambridge University Press, Cambridge and New York, 189pp. [Valuable overview by a leading cloud physicist.]

Petterssen, S. (1969) *Introduction to Meteorology* (3rd edn), McGraw-Hill, New York, 333pp.

Strahler, A. N. (1965) *Introduction to Physical Geography*, Wiley, New York, 455pp.

World Meteorological Organization (1956) *International Cloud Atlas*, Geneva. [Cloud classification and photographs of all sky types.]

Articles

Andersson, T. (1980) Bergeron and the oreigenic (orographic) maxima of precipitation. *Pure Appl. Geophys*. 119, 558–76.

Bennetts, D. A., McCallum, E. and Grant, J. R. (1986) Cumulonimbus clouds: an introductory review. *Met. Mag*. 115, 242–56.

Bergeron, T. (1960) Problems and methods of rainfall investigation. In *The Physics of Precipitation*, Geophysical Monograph 5, Amer. Geophys. Union, Washington, DC, pp. 5–30.

Bering, E.A. III., Few, A.A. and Benbrook, J.R. (1998) The global electric circuit. *Physics Today* 51(9), 24–30.

Braham, R. R. (1959) How does a raindrop grow? *Science* 129, 123–9.

Browning, K. A. (1980) Local weather forecasting. *Proc. Roy. Soc. Lond. Sect. A* 371, 179–211.

Browning, K. A. (1985) Conceptual models of precipitation systems. *Met. Mag*. 114, 293–319.

Browning, K. A. and Hill, F. F. (1981) Orographic rain. *Weather* 36, 326–9.

Brugge, R. (1996) Back to basics. Atmospheric stability: Part 1. Basic concepts. *Weather* 51(4), 134–40.

Chacon, R. E. and Fernandez, W. (1985) Temporal and spatial rainfall variability in the mountainous region of the Reventazon River Basin, Costa Rica. *J. Climatology* 5, 175–88.

Chinn, T. J. (1979) How wet is the wettest of the wet West Coast? *New Zealand Alpine Journal* 32, 85–7.

Dudhia, J. (1996) Back to basics: Thunderstorms. Part 1. *Weather* 51(11), 371–6.

Dudhia, J. (1997) Back to basics: Thunderstorms. Part 2 – Storm types and associated weather. *Weather* 52(1), 2–7.

Durbin, W. G. (1961) An introduction to cloud physics. *Weather* 16, 71–82, 113–25.

East, T. W. R. and Marshall, J. S. (1954) Turbulence in clouds as a factor in precipitation. *Quart. J. Roy. Met. Soc*. 80, 26–47.

Eyre, L. A. (1992) How severe can a ‘severe thunderstorm’ be? *Weather* 47, 374–83.

Galvin, J. F. H. (2003) Observing the sky – How do we recognize clouds? *Weather* 58, 55–62.

Griffiths, D. J., Colquhoun, J. R., Batt, K. L. and Casinader, T. R. (1993) Severe thunderstorms in New South Wales: climatology and means of assessing the impact of climate change. *Climatic Change* 25, 369–88.

Henderson, R. (1993) Extreme storm rainfalls in the Southern Alps, New Zealand. In *Extreme Hydrological Events: Precipitation, Floods and Droughts (Proceedings of the Yokohama Symposium)*, IAHS Pub. No. 213, pp. 113–20.

Hirschboeck, K. K. (1987) Catastrophic flooding and atmospheric circulation anomalies. In Mayer, L. and Nash, D. (eds) *Catastrophic Flooding*, Allen & Unwin, Boston, pp. 23–56.

Hopkins, M. M., Jr. (1967) An approach to the classification of meteorological satellite data. *J. Appl. Met.* 6, 164–78.

Houze, R. A., Jr. and Hobbs, P. V. (1982) Organization and structure of precipitating cloud systems. *Adv. Geophys.* 24, 225–315.

Jonas, P. R. (1994) Back to basics: Why do clouds form? *Weather* 49(5), 176–80.

Jonas, P. R. (1994) Back to basics: Why does it rain? *Weather* 49(7), 258–60.

Kyle, H. L. *et al*. (1993) The Nimbus Earth Radiation Budget (ERB) experiment: 1975–1992. *Bull. Amer. Met. Soc.* 74, 815–30.

Latham, J. (1966) Some electrical processes in the atmosphere. *Weather* 21, 120–7.

London, J., Warren, S. G. and Hahn, C. J. (1989) The global distribution of observed cloudiness – a contribution to the ISCPP. *Adv. Space Res*. 9(7), 161–5.

Mason, B. J. (1962) Charge generation in thunderstorms. *Endeavour* 21, 156–63.

Orville, R.E. *et al*. (2002) The North American lightning detection network (NALDN) – first results: 1998–2000. *Mon. Wea. Rev.* 130(8), 2098–2109.

Pearce, F. (1994) Not warming, but cooling. *New Scientist* 143, 37–41.

Pike, W. S. (1993) The heavy rainfalls of 22–23 September 1992. *Met. Mag.* 122, 201–9.

Sawyer, J. S. (1956) The physical and dynamical problems of orographic rain. *Weather* 11, 375–81.

Schermerhorn, V. P. (1967) Relations between topography and annual precipitation in western Oregon and Washington. *Water Resources Research* 3, 707–11.

Smith, R. B. (1989) Mechanisms of orographic precipitation. *Met. Mag.* 118, 85–8.

Sumner, G. (1996) Precipitation weather. *J. Geography* 81(4), 327–45.

Stolzenburg, M., Rust, W. D. and Marshal, T. C. (1998) Electrical structure in thunderstorm convective regions. 3. Synthesis. *J. Geophys. Res.* 103(D12), 14097–108.

Weston, K. J. (1977) Cellular cloud patterns. *Weather* 32, 446–50.

Wratt, D. S. *et al*. (1996) The New Zealand Southern Alps Experiment. *Bull. Amer. Met. Soc.* 77(4), 683–92.

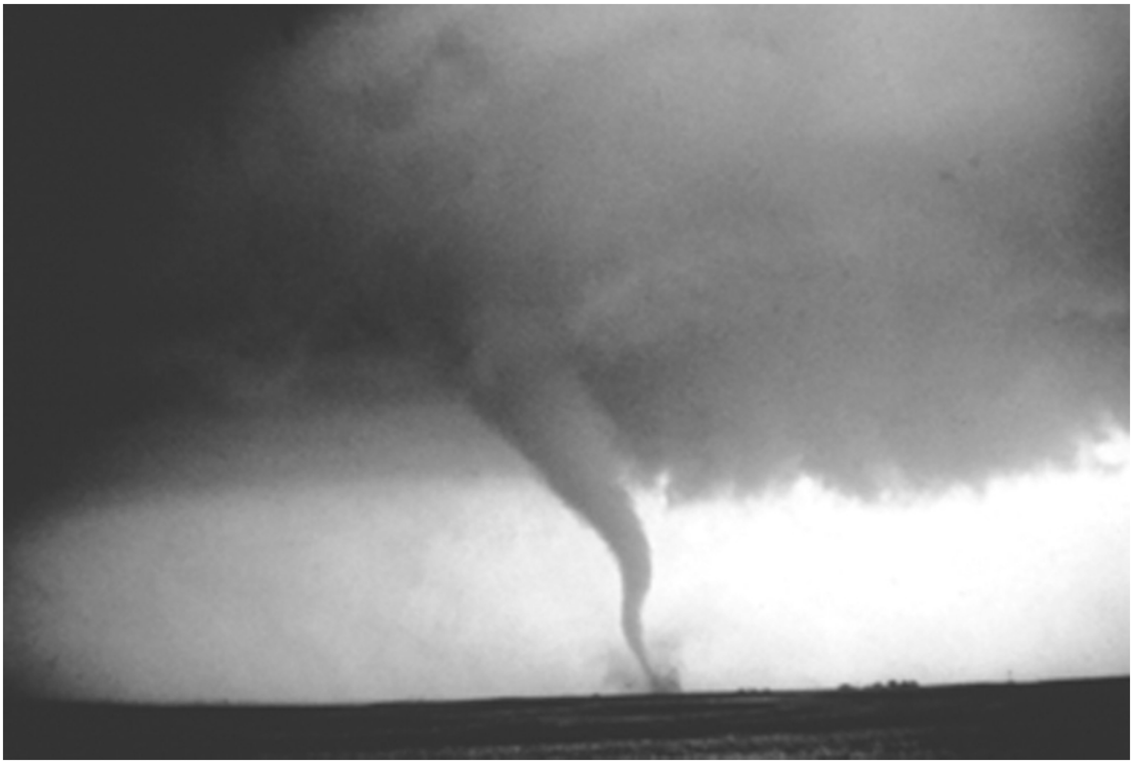


Plate 20 Tornado with dust and debris cloud forming at the surface, 22 May 1981, Cordell, Oklahoma (*courtesy of National Severe Storms Laboratory, OAR/ERL. NOAA, NOAA Photo Library nss. 10054*).

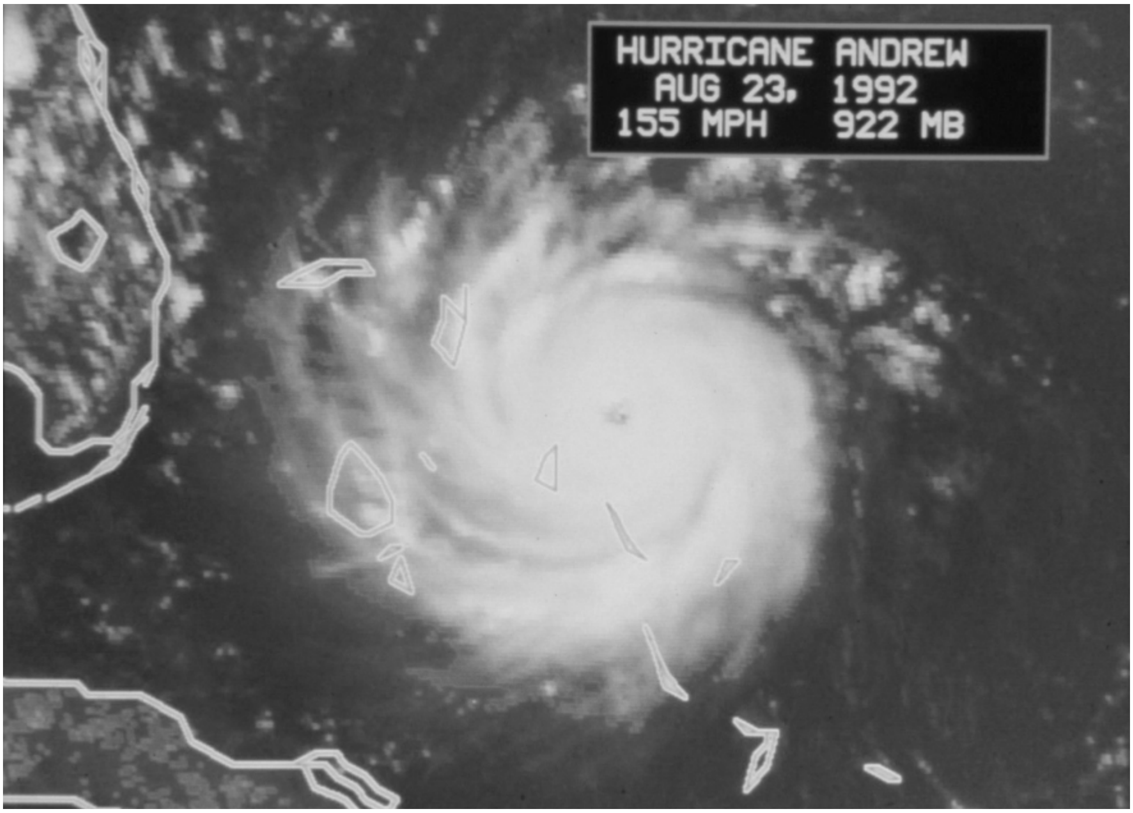

HURRICANE ANDREW
AUG 23, 1992
155 MPH 922 MB

Plate 21 Hurricane Andrew, 23 August 1992, during its maximum intensity over the Bahamas. Visible image from Meteosat 3 (*courtesy of NOAA, NOAA Photo Library Historic NWS Collection wea 00520*).

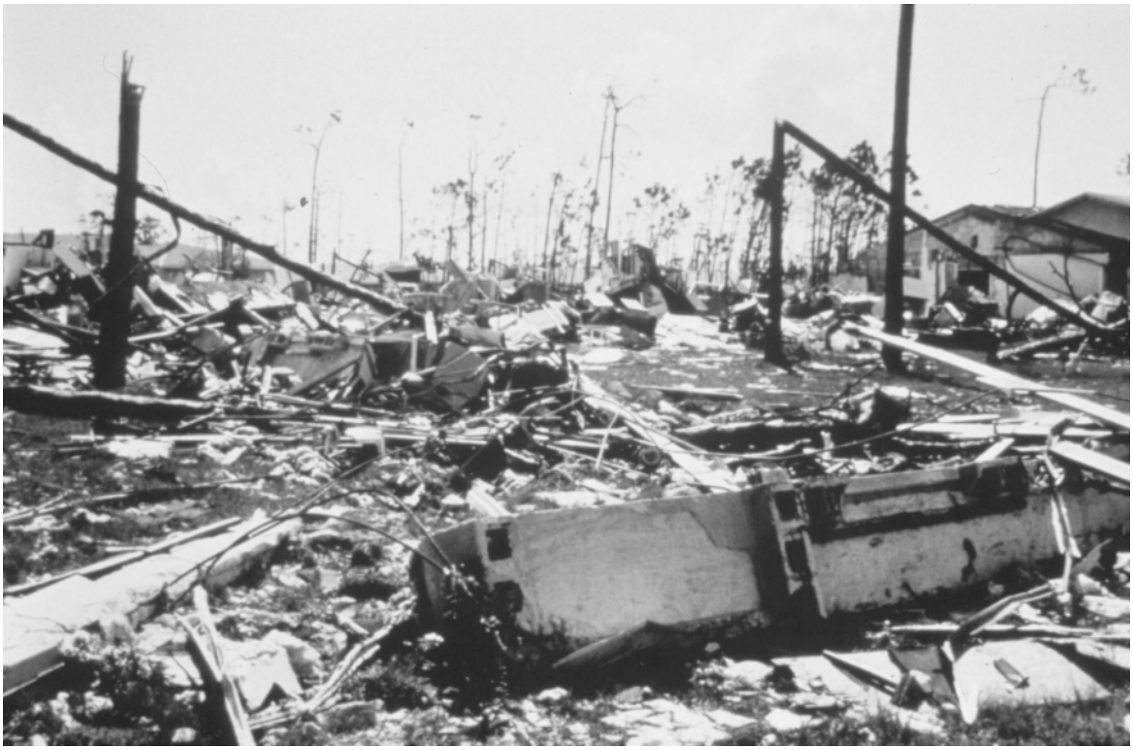


Plate 22 Ground view of the devastation caused by Hurricane Andrew in Pinewoods Villa, southern Florida, 23–24 August 1992 (*courtesy of NOAA, NOAA Photo Library Historic NWS Collection wea 00534*).

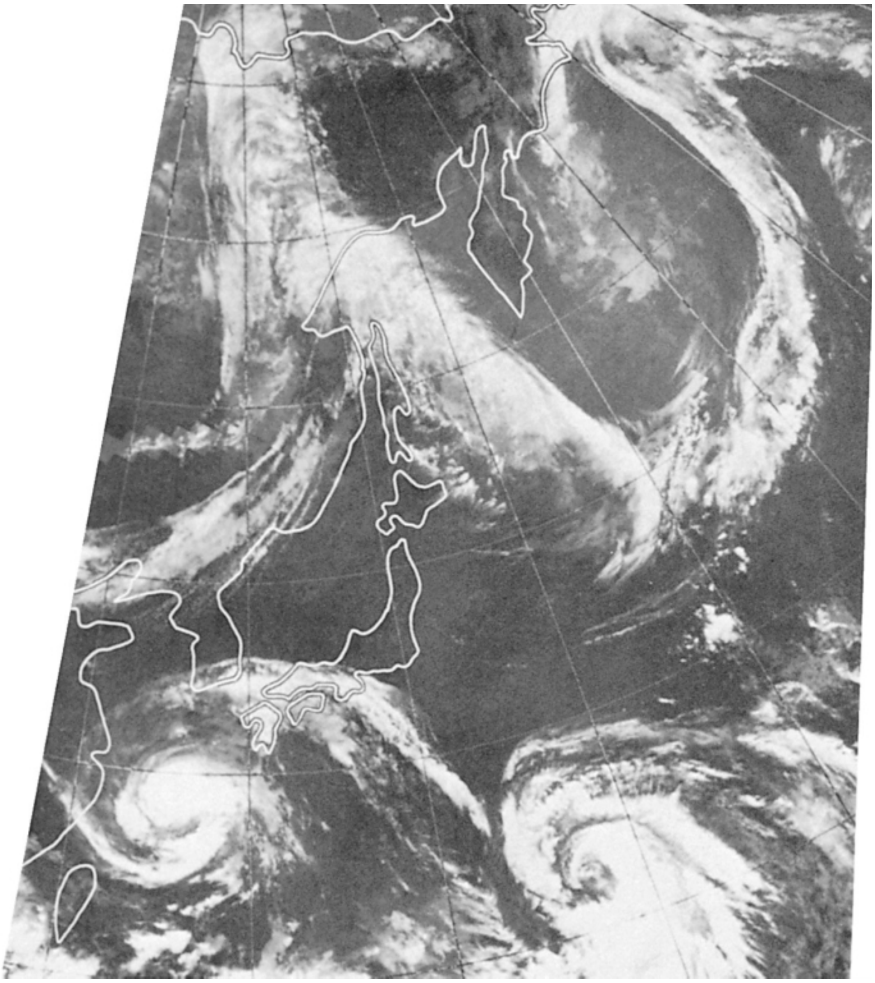


Plate 23 A satellite infra-red mosaic of eastern Asia and the western North Pacific showing two mid-latitude depression systems and typhoons 'Wendy' (28°N, 126°E) and 'Virginia' (22°N, 147°N) on 29 July 1978, about 09:00 local time (Tokyo). The typhoons had maximum winds of about 36 ms^{-1} and sea-level pressure minima of about 965 mb ('Wendy') and 975 mb ('Virginia'). A subtropical high-pressure ridge about 35°N separates the tropical and mid-latitude storms minimizing any interaction (*Defense Meteorological Satellite Program imagery, National Snow and Ice Data Center, University of Colorado, Boulder*).

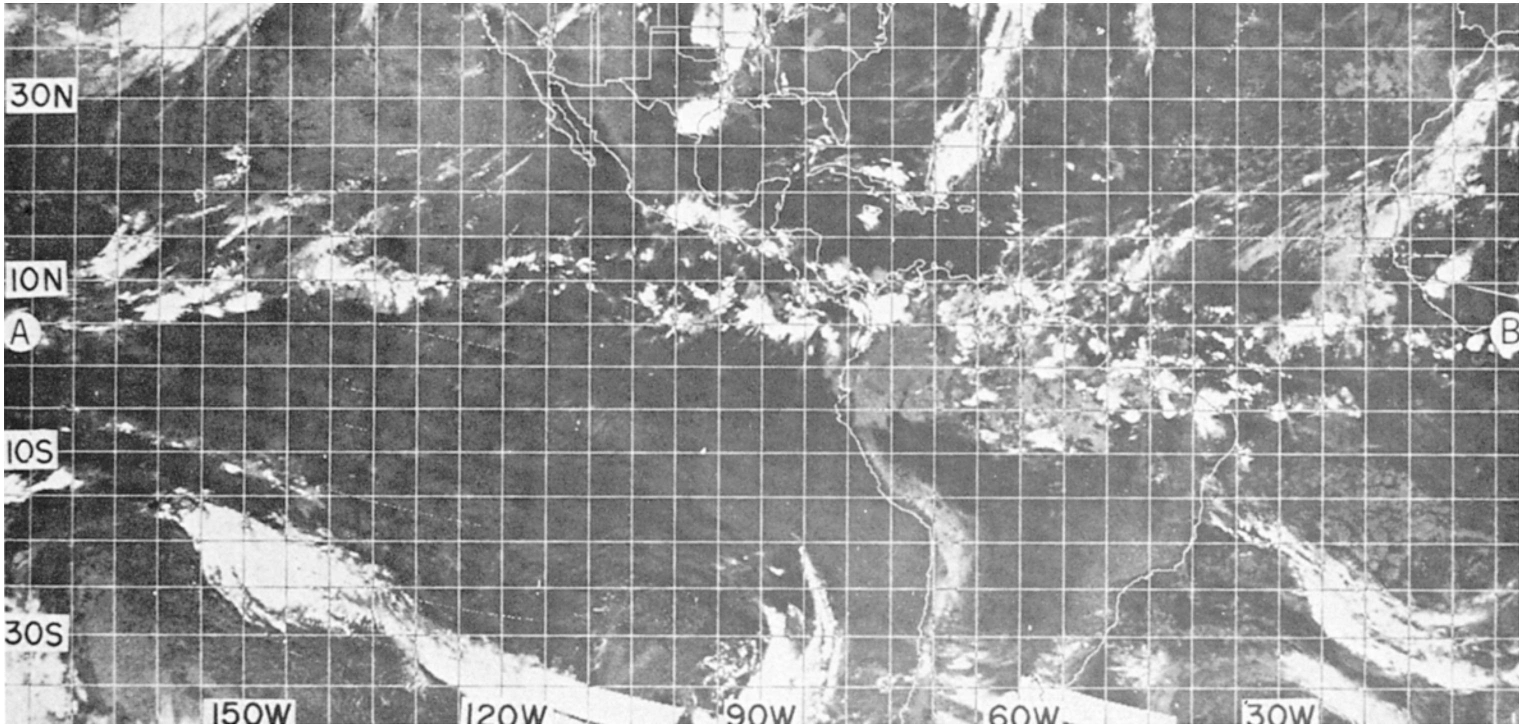

30N
10N
A
10S
30S
150W
120W
90W
60W
30W
B

Plate 24 Infra-red photograph showing the intertropical convergence zone on 1 June 1971, along which active thunderstorms appear as bright spots. There is also a cyclonic cloud band in the western South Pacific representing the South Pacific convergence zone (*NOAA-1 photograph, World Meteorological Organization 1973*).

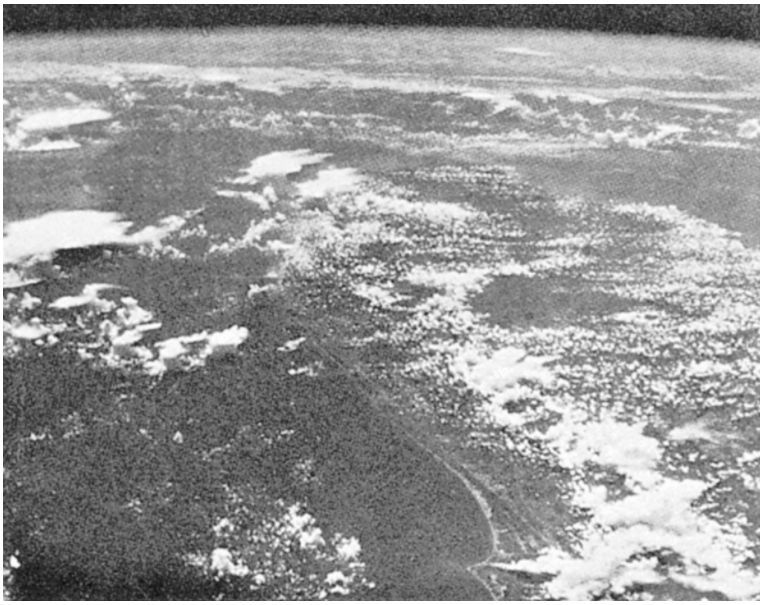


Plate 25 View south over Florida from the *Gemini V* manned spacecraft at an elevation of 180 km on 22 August 1965, with Cape Kennedy launching site in the foreground. Cumulus clouds have formed over the warmer land, with a tendency to align in east–west 'streets', and are notably absent over Lake Okeechobee. In the south, thunder-head anvils can be seen (*NASA photograph*).

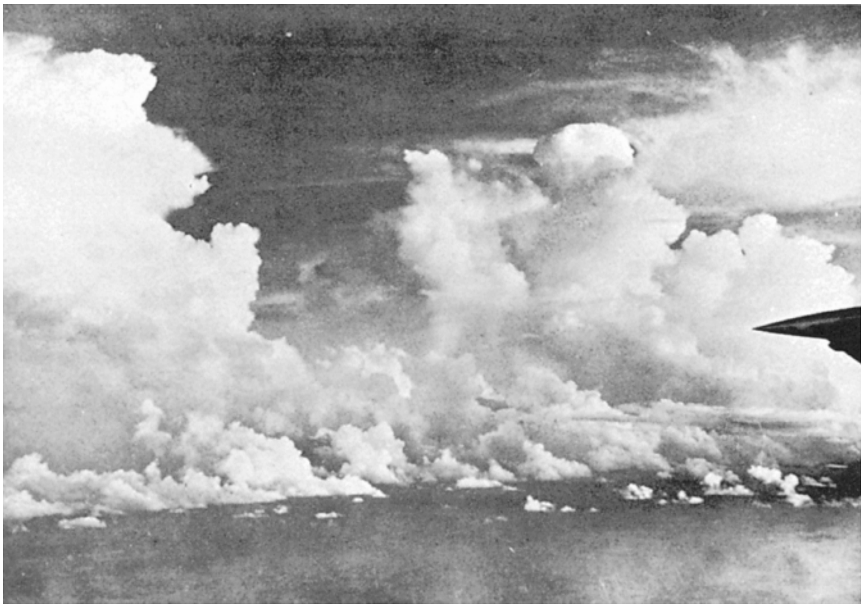


Plate 26 An air view looking southeastward towards the line of high cumulus towers marking the convergence zone near the Wake Island wave trough shown in Figure 11.7 (*from Malkus and Riehl 1964*).

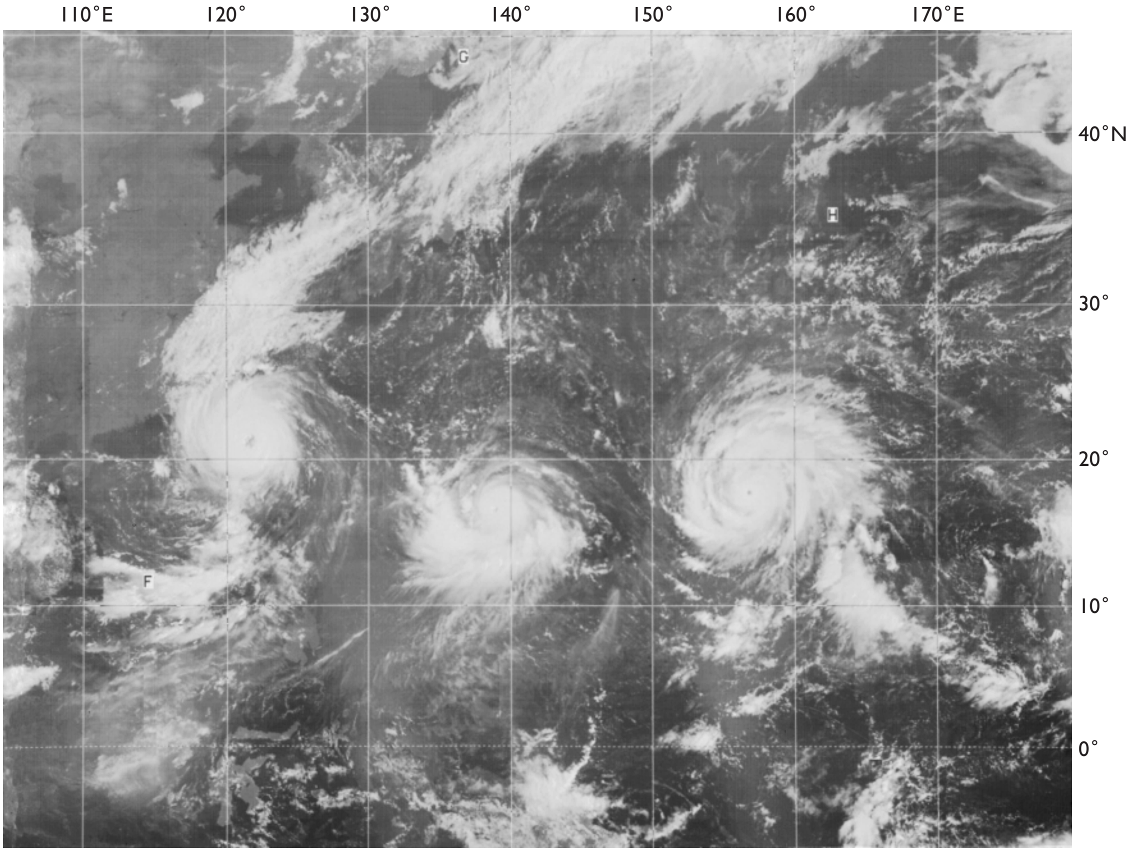


Plate 27 A sequence of three typhoons over the northwestern Pacific, 8 September 1987. A visible band 5.4-km resolution DMSP image. The longitudes are marked at the top. All three formed in an active monsoon trough. Typhoon Freda, in the centre, developed first and moved mainly northward. The leading typhoon in the image (Gerald) has a very large eye. Super-typhoon Holly, the easternmost system, had maximum winds above 70 m s-1 and an estimated central pressure of 898 mb; it recurved to the east of Japan (*National Snow and Ice Data Center, Boulder, CO*).

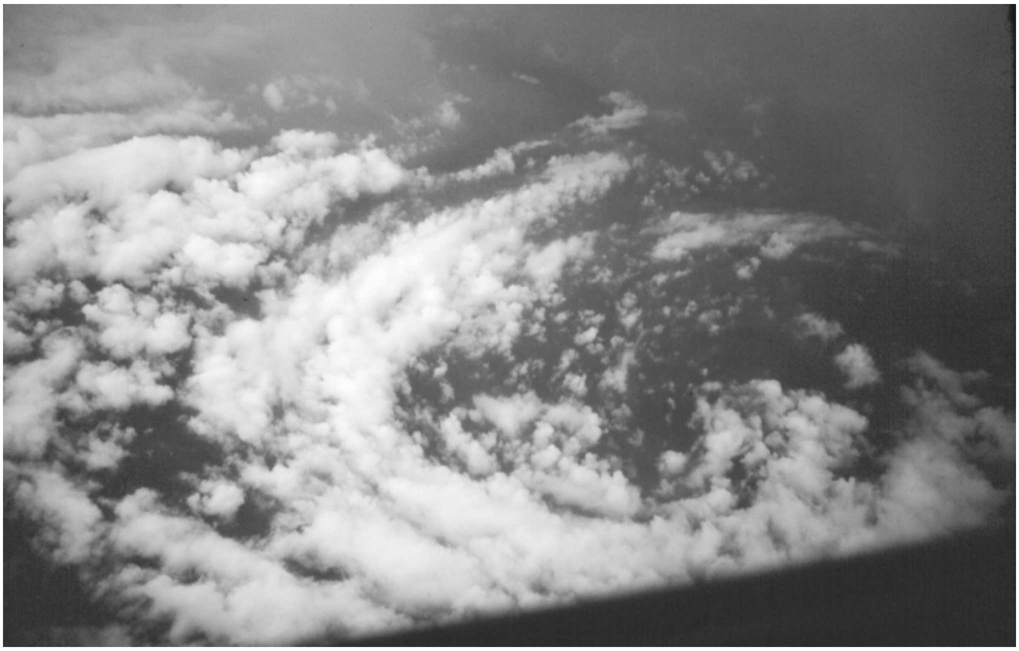


Plate 28 In the eye of Hurricane Caroline, 30 August 1975 (*courtesy of NOAA, Flying with NOAA Collection fly 00174*).

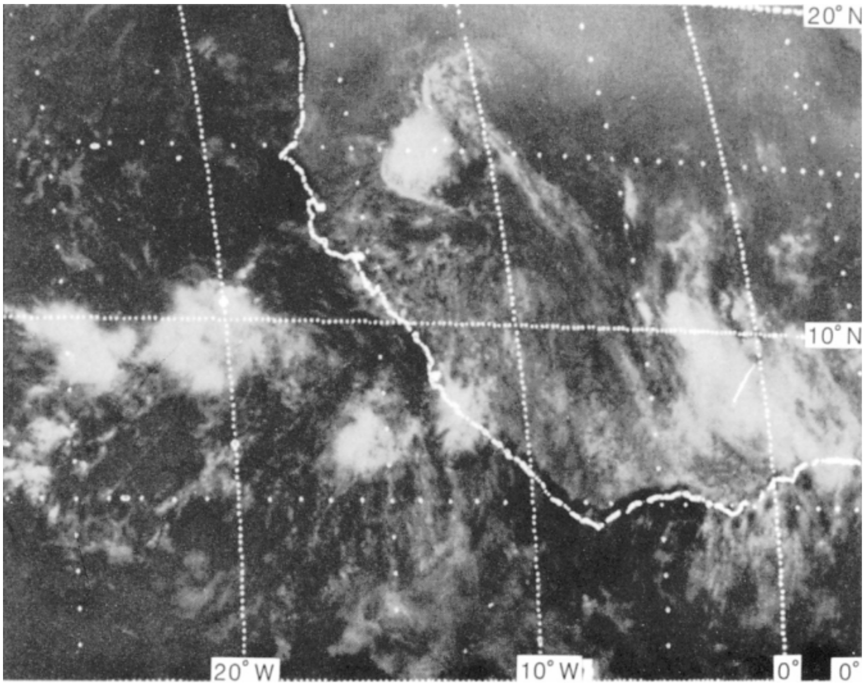


Plate 29 Visible satellite image showing five large tropical cloud clusters topped by cirrus shields situated between latitudes 5° and 10°N in the vicinity of West Africa, together with one squall line cloud cluster at 15°N having a well-defined arc cloud squall line on its leading (southwest) edge. Taken by SMS-1 satellite at 11:30 hours GMT on 5 September 1974 (*courtesy of NOAA*).

6

Atmospheric motion: principles

Learning objectives
When you have read this chapter you will:

- ☐ Know the basic laws of horizontal motion in the atmosphere,
- ☐ Know how the Coriolis force arises and its effects,
- ☐ Be able to define the geostrophic wind,
- ☐ Know how friction modifies wind velocity in the boundary layer,
- ☐ Understand the principles of divergence/convergence and vorticity and their roles in atmospheric processes,
- ☐ Understand the thermodynamic, dynamic and topographic factors that lead to distinctive local wind regimes.

The atmosphere is in constant motion on scales ranging from short-lived, local wind gusts to storm systems spanning several thousand kilometres and lasting for about a week, and to the more or less constant global-scale wind belts circling the earth. Before considering the global aspects, however, it is important to look at the immediate controls on air motion. The downward-acting gravitational field of the earth sets up the observed decrease of pressure away from the earth's surface that is represented in the vertical distribution of atmospheric mass (see Figure 2.13). This mutual balance between the force of gravity and the vertical pressure gradient is referred to as *hydrostatic equilibrium* (p. 23). This state of balance, together with the general stability of the atmosphere and its shallow depth, greatly limits vertical air motion. Average horizontal wind speeds are of the order of one hundred times greater than average vertical movements, although individual exceptions occur – particularly in convective storms.

A LAWS OF HORIZONTAL MOTION

There are four controls on the horizontal movement of air near the earth's surface: the pressure-gradient force, the Coriolis force, centripetal acceleration, and frictional forces. The primary cause of air movement is the development of a horizontal pressure gradient through spatial differences in surface heating and consequent changes in air density and pressure. The fact that such a gradient can persist (rather than being destroyed by air motion towards the low pressure) results from the effect of the earth's rotation in giving rise to the Coriolis force.

1 The pressure-gradient force

The pressure-gradient force has vertical and horizontal components but, as already noted, the vertical component is more or less in balance with the force of gravity. Horizontal differences in pressure arise from thermal heating contrasts or mechanical causes such as mountain barriers and these differences control the horizontal movement of an airmass. The horizontal pressure gradient serves as the motivating force that causes air to move from areas of high pressure towards areas where it is lower, although other forces prevent air from moving directly across the isobars (lines of equal pressure). The pressure-gradient force per unit mass is expressed mathematically as

$$-\frac{1}{\rho}\frac{\mathrm{d}p}{\mathrm{d}n}$$

where ρ = air density and $\mathrm{d}p/\mathrm{d}n$ = the horizontal gradient of pressure. Hence the closer the isobar spacing the more intense is the pressure gradient and the greater the wind speed (Figure 6.1). The pressure-gradient force is also inversely proportional to air density, and this relationship is of particular importance in understanding the behaviour of upper winds.

2 The earth's rotational deflective (Coriolis) force

The Coriolis force arises from the fact that the movement of masses over the earth's surface is referenced to a moving co-ordinate system (i.e. the latitude and longitude grid, which 'rotates' with the earth). The simplest way to visualize how this deflecting force operates is to picture a rotating disc on which moving objects are deflected. Figure 6.1 shows the effect of such a deflective force operating on a mass moving outward from the centre of a spinning disc. The body follows a straight path in relation to a fixed frame of reference (for instance, a box that contains the spinning disc), but viewed relative to co-ordinates rotating with the disc the body swings to the right of its initial line of motion. This effect is readily demonstrated if a pencil line is drawn across a white disc on a rotating turntable. Figure 6.2 illustrates a case where the movement is not from the centre of the turntable and the object possesses an initial momentum in relation to its distance from the axis of rotation. Note that the turntable model is not strictly analogous since the outwardly directed centrifugal force is involved. In the case of the rotating earth (with rotating reference co-ordinates of latitude and longitude), there is apparent deflection of moving objects to the right of their line of motion in the northern hemisphere and to the left in the southern hemisphere, as viewed by observers on the earth. The idea of a deflective force is credited to the work of French mathematician G.G. Coriolis in the 1830s. The 'force' (per unit mass) is expressed by:

$$-2\,\Omega\,V\sin\phi$$

where Ω = the angular velocity of spin ($15°\mathrm{hr}^{-1}$ or $2\pi/24$ rad hr^{-1} for the earth = 7.29×10^{-5} rad s^{-1}); ϕ = the latitude and V = the velocity of the mass. $2\Omega \sin\phi$ is referred to as the Coriolis parameter (f).

The magnitude of the deflection is directly proportional to: (1) the horizontal velocity of the air (i.e. air moving at 10 m s^{-1} has half the deflective force operating on it as on that moving at 20 m s^{-1}); and (2) the sine of the latitude (sin 0 = 0; sin 90 = 1). The effect is thus a maximum at the poles (i.e. where the plane of the deflecting force is parallel to the earth's surface). It decreases with the sine of the latitude, becoming zero at the equator (i.e. where there is no component of the deflection in a plane parallel to the surface). The Coriolis 'force' depends on the motion itself. Hence, it affects the direction but not the speed of the air motion, which would involve doing work (i.e. changing the kinetic energy). The Coriolis force always acts at right-angles to the direction of the air motion, to the right in the northern hemisphere (f positive) and to the left in

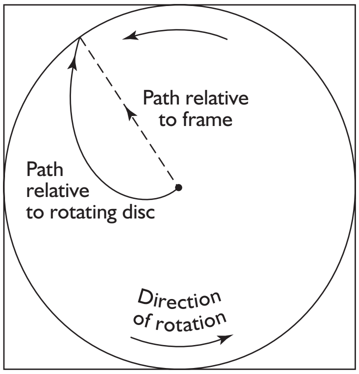


Figure 6.1 The Coriolis deflecting force operating on an object moving outward from the centre of a rotating turntable.

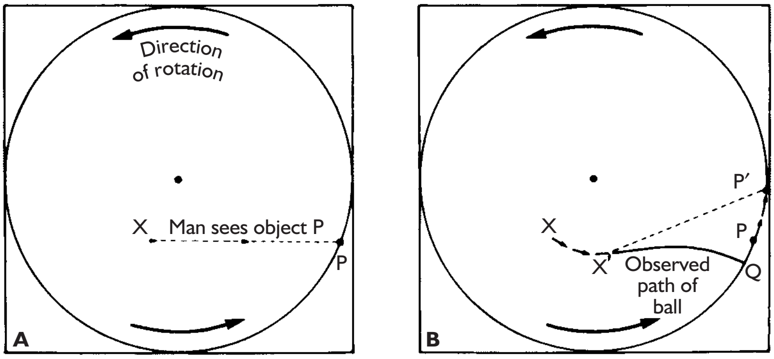


Figure 6.2 The Coriolis deflecting force on a rotating turntable. (A) An observer at X sees the object P and attempts to throw a ball towards it. Both locations are rotating anticlockwise. (B) The observer's position is now X′ and the object is at P′. To the observer, the ball appears to follow a curved path and lands at Q. The observer overlooked the fact that position P was moving counterclockwise and that the path of the ball would be affected by the initial impulse due to the rotation of point X.

the southern hemisphere (f negative). Absolute values of f vary with latitude as follows:

Latitude	0°	10°	20°	43°	90°
$f(10^{-4}\ \mathrm{s}^{-1})$	0	0.25	0.50	1.00	1.458

The earth's rotation also produces a vertical component of rotation about a horizontal axis. This is a maximum at the equator (zero at the poles) and it causes a vertical deflection upward (downward) for horizontal west/east winds. However, this effect is of secondary importance due to the existence of hydrostatic equilibrium.

3 The geostrophic wind

Observations in the *free atmosphere* (above the level affected by surface friction up to about 500 to 1000 m) show that the wind blows more or less at right angles to the pressure gradient (i.e. parallel to the isobars) with, for the northern hemisphere, high pressure on the right and low pressure on the left when viewed downwind. This implies that for steady motion the pressure-gradient force is balanced exactly by the Coriolis deflection acting in the diametrically opposite direction (Figure 6.3A). The wind in this idealized case is called a *geostrophic wind*, the velocity (V_g) of which is given by the following formula:

$$V_g = \frac{1}{2\Omega \sin \phi} \cdot \frac{\mathrm{d}p}{\mathrm{d}n}$$

where $\mathrm{d}p/\mathrm{d}n$ = the pressure gradient. The velocity is inversely dependent on latitude, such that the same pressure gradient associated with a geostrophic wind speed of 15 m s^{-1} at latitude 43° will produce a velocity of only 10 m s^{-1} at latitude 90°. Except in low latitudes, where the Coriolis parameter approaches zero, the geostrophic wind is a close approximation to the observed air motion in the free atmosphere. Since pressure systems are rarely stationary, this fact implies that air motion must change continually towards a new balance. In other words, mutual adjustments of the wind and pressure fields are constantly taking place. The common 'cause-and-effect' argument that a pressure gradient is formed and air begins to move towards low pressure before coming into geostrophic balance is an unfortunate oversimplification of reality.

4 The centripetal acceleration

For a body to follow a curved path there must be an inward acceleration (c) towards the centre of rotation. This is expressed by:

$$c = -\frac{mV^2}{r}$$

where m = the moving mass, V = its velocity and r = the radius of curvature. This effect is sometimes regarded for convenience as a centrifugal 'force' operating radially outward (see Note 1). In the case of the earth itself, this is valid. The centrifugal effect due to rotation has in fact resulted in a slight bulging of the earth's mass in low latitudes and a flattening near the poles. The small decrease in apparent gravity towards the equator (see Note 2) reflects the effect of the centrifugal force working against the gravitational attraction directed towards the earth's centre. It is therefore necessary only to consider the forces involved in the rotation of the air

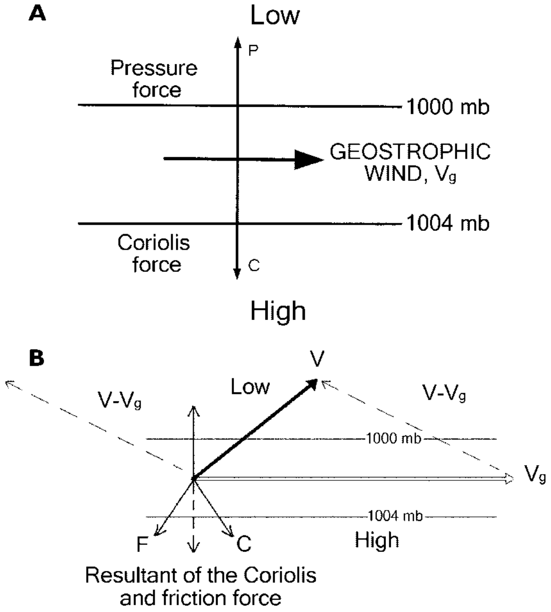

A
Low
P
Pressure force
1000 mb
GEOSTROPHIC WIND, V_g
1004 mb
Coriolis force
C
High
B
V
Low
V-V_g
V-V_g
1000 mb
V_g
1004 mb
High
F
C
Resultant of the Coriolis and friction force

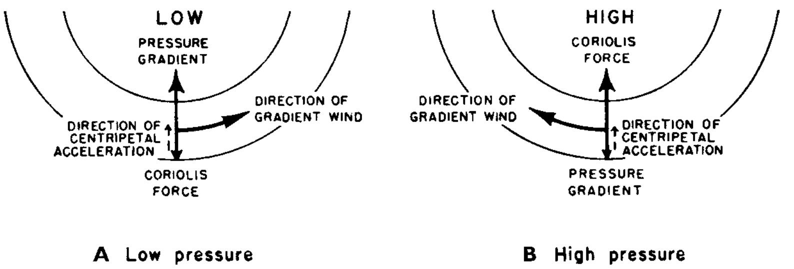
Figure 6.3 (A) The geostrophic wind case of balanced motion (northern hemisphere) above the friction layer. (B) Surface wind V represents a balance between the geostrophic wind, V_g, and the resultant of the Coriolis force (C) and the friction force (F). Note that F is not generally directly opposite to the surface wind.

about a local axis of high or low pressure. Here the curved path of the air (parallel to the isobars) is maintained by an inward-acting, or centripetal, acceleration.

Figure 6.4 shows (for the northern hemisphere) that in a low-pressure system balanced flow is maintained in a curved path (referred to as the *gradient wind*) by the Coriolis force being weaker than the pressure force. The difference between the two gives the net centripetal acceleration inward. In the high-pressure case, the inward acceleration exists because the Coriolis force exceeds the pressure force. Since the pressure gradients are assumed to be equal, the different contributions of the Coriolis force in each case imply that the wind speed around the low pressure must be lower than the geostrophic value (*subgeostrophic*), whereas in the case of high pressure it is *supergeostrophic*. In reality, this effect is obscured by the fact that the pressure gradient in a high is usually much weaker than in a low. Moreover, the fact that the earth's rotation is cyclonic imposes a limit on the speed of anticyclonic flow. The maximum occurs when the angular velocity is $f/2$ (= $V \sin \varphi$), at which value the absolute rotation of the air (viewed from space) is just cyclonic. Beyond this point anticyclonic flow breaks down ('dynamic instability'). There is no maximum speed in the case of cyclonic rotation.

The magnitude of the centripetal acceleration is generally small, but it becomes important where high-velocity winds are moving in very curved paths (i.e. around an intense low-pressure vortex). Two cases are of meteorological significance: first, in intense cyclones near the equator, where the Coriolis force is negligible; and, second, in a narrow vortex such as a tornado. Under these conditions, when the large pressure-gradient force provides the necessary centripetal acceleration for balanced flow parallel to the isobars, the motion is called *cyclostrophic*.

The above arguments assume steady conditions of balanced flow. This simplification is useful, but in reality two factors prevent a continuous state of balance. Latitudinal motion changes the Coriolis parameter, and the movement or changing intensity of a pressure system leads to acceleration or deceleration of the air, causing some degree of cross-isobaric flow. Pressure change itself depends on air displacement through the breakdown of the balanced state. If air movement were purely geostrophic there would be no growth or decay of pressure systems. The acceleration of air at upper levels from a region of cyclonic isobaric curvature (subgeostrophic wind) to one of anticyclonic curvature (supergeostrophic wind) causes a fall of pressure at


LOW
PRESSURE GRADIENT
DIRECTION OF GRADIENT WIND
DIRECTION OF CENTRIPETAL ACCELERATION
CORIOLIS FORCE
HIGH
CORIOLIS FORCE
DIRECTION OF GRADIENT WIND
DIRECTION OF CENTRIPETAL ACCELERATION
PRESSURE GRADIENT

A Low pressure

B High pressure

Figure 6.4 The gradient wind case of balanced motion around a low pressure (A) and a high pressure (B) in the northern hemisphere.

lower levels in the atmosphere to compensate for the removal of air aloft. The significance of this fact will be discussed in Chapter 9G. The interaction of horizontal and vertical air motions is outlined in B.2 (this chapter).

5 Frictional forces and the planetary boundary layer

The last force that has an important effect on air movement is that due to friction from the earth's surface. Towards the surface (i.e. below about 500 m for flat terrain), friction begins to reduce the wind velocity below its geostrophic value. The slowing of the wind towards the surface modifies the deflective force, which is dependent on velocity, causing it also to decrease. Initially, the frictional force is opposite to the wind velocity, but in a balanced state – when the velocity and therefore the Coriolis deflection decrease – the vector sum of the Coriolis and friction components balances the pressure gradient force (Figure 6.3B). The friction force now acts to the right of the surface wind vector. Thus, at low levels, due to frictional effects, the wind blows obliquely across the isobars in the direction of the pressure gradient. The angle of obliqueness increases with the growing effect of frictional drag due to the earth's surface averaging about 10 to 20° at the surface over the sea and 25 to 35° over land.

In summary, the surface wind (neglecting any curvature effects) represents a balance between the pressure-gradient force and the Coriolis force perpendicular to the air motion, and friction roughly parallel, but opposite, to the air motion.

The layer of frictional influence is known as the *planetary boundary layer* (PBL). Atmospheric profilers (lidar and radar) can routinely measure the temporal variability of PLB structure. Its depth varies over land from a few hundred metres at night, when the air is stable as a result of nocturnal surface cooling, to 1 to 2 km during afternoon convective conditions. Exceptionally, over hot dry surfaces, convective mixing may extend to 4 to 5 km. Over the oceans, it is more consistently near 1 km deep and in the tropics especially is often capped by an inversion due to sinking air. The boundary layer is typically either stable or unstable. Yet, for theoretical convenience, it is often treated as being neutrally stable (i.e. the lapse rate is that of the DALR, or the potential temperature is constant with height; see Figure 5.1). For this ideal state, the wind turns clockwise (veers) with increased height above the surface, setting up a wind spiral (Figure 6.5). This spiral profile was first demonstrated in the turning of ocean currents with depth (see Chapter 7D1.a) by V. W. Ekman; both are referred to as *Ekman spirals*. The inflow of air towards the low-pressure centre generates upward motion at the top of the PBL, known as *Ekman pumping*.

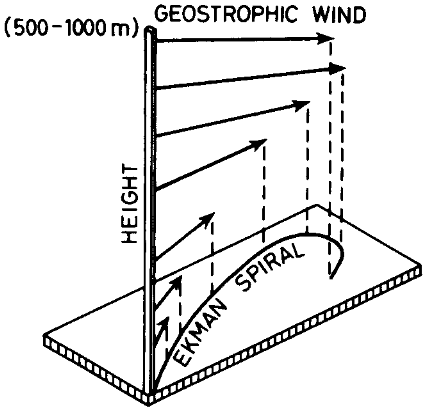


Figure 6.5 The Ekman spiral of wind with height, in the northern hemisphere. The wind attains the geostrophic velocity at between 500 and 1000 m in the middle and higher latitudes as frictional drag effects become negligible. This is a theoretical profile of wind velocity under conditions of mechanical turbulence.

Wind velocity decreases exponentially close to the earth's surface due to frictional effects. These consist of 'form drag' over obstacles (buildings, forests and hills), and the stress exerted by the air at the surface

Table 6.1 Typical roughness lengths (m) associated with terrain surface characteristics.

Terrain surface characteristics	*Roughness length (m)*
Groups of high buildings	1–10
Temperate forest	0.8
Groups of medium buildings	0.7
Suburbs	0.5
Trees and bushes	0.2
Farmland	0.05–0.1
Grass	0.008
Bare soil	0.005
Snow	0.001
Smooth sand	0.0003
Water	0.0001

Source: After Troen and Petersen (1989).

interface. The mechanism of *form drag* involves the creation of locally higher pressure on the windward side of an obstacle and a lateral pressure gradient. Wind stress arises from, first, the molecular resistance of the air to the vertical wind shear (i.e. increased wind speed with height above the surface); such molecular viscosity operates in a laminar sub-layer only millimetres thick. Second, turbulent eddies, a few metres to tens of metres across, brake the air motion on a larger scale (eddy viscosity). The aerodynamic roughness of terrain is described by the *roughness length* (z_0), or height at which the wind speed falls to zero based on extrapolation of the neutral wind profile. Table 6.1 lists typical roughness lengths.

Turbulence in the atmosphere is generated by the vertical change in wind velocity (i.e. a vertical wind shear), and is suppressed by an absence of buoyancy. The dimensionless ratio of buoyant suppression of turbulence to its generation by shear, known as the Richardson number (*Ri*), provides a measure of dynamic stability. Above a critical threshold, turbulence is likely to occur.

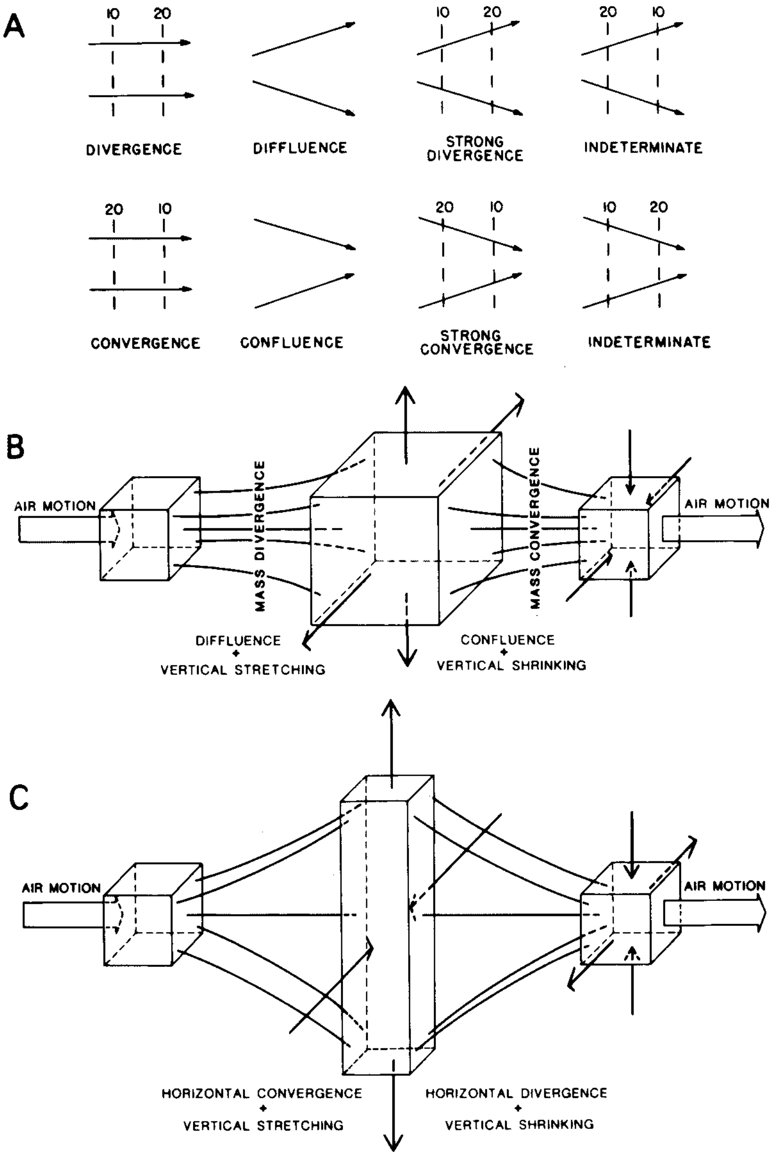

A
10 20
DIVERGENCE
DIFFLUENCE
10 20
STRONG DIVERGENCE
20 10
INDETERMINATE
20 10
CONVERGENCE
CONFLUENCE
20 10
STRONG CONVERGENCE
10 20
INDETERMINATE
B
AIR MOTION
MASS DIVERGENCE
MASS CONVERGENCE
AIR MOTION
DIFFLUENCE + VERTICAL STRETCHING
CONFLUENCE + VERTICAL SHRINKING
C
AIR MOTION
AIR MOTION
HORIZONTAL CONVERGENCE + VERTICAL STRETCHING
HORIZONTAL DIVERGENCE + VERTICAL SHRINKING

Figure 6.6 Convergence and divergence. (A) Plan view of horizontal flow patterns producing divergence and convergence – the broken lines are schematic isopleths of wind speed (isotachs). (B) Schematic illustration of local mass divergence and convergence, assuming density changes. (C) Typical convergence-stretching and divergence-shrinking relationships in atmospheric flow.

B DIVERGENCE, VERTICAL MOTION AND VORTICITY

These three terms are the key to a proper understanding of wind and pressure systems on a synoptic and global scale. Mass uplift or descent of air occurs primarily in response to dynamic factors related to horizontal airflow and is affected only secondarily by airmass stability. Hence the significance of these factors for weather processes.

1 Divergence

Different types of horizontal flow are shown in Figure 6.6A. The first panel shows that air may accelerate (decelerate), leading to velocity divergence (convergence). When streamlines (lines of instantaneous air motion) spread out or squeeze together, this is termed *diffluence* or *confluence*, respectively. If the streamline pattern is strengthened by that of the isotachs (lines of equal wind speed), as shown in the third panels of Figure 6.6A, then there may be mass divergence or convergence at a point (Figure 6.6B). In this case, the compressibility of the air causes the density to decrease or increase, respectively. Usually, however, confluence is associated with an increase in air velocity and diffluence with a decrease. In the intermediate case, confluence is balanced by an increase in wind velocity and diffluence by a decrease in velocity. Hence, convergence (divergence) may give rise to vertical stretching (shrinking), as illustrated in Figure 6.6C. It is important to note that if all winds were geostrophic, there could be no convergence or divergence, and hence no weather!

Convergence or divergence may also occur as a result of frictional effects. Onshore winds undergo convergence at low levels when the air slows down on crossing the coastline owing to the greater friction overland, whereas offshore winds accelerate and become divergent. Frictional differences may also set up coastal convergence (or divergence) if the geostrophic wind is parallel to the coastline with, for the northern hemisphere, land to the right (or left) of the air current viewed downwind.

2 Vertical motion

Horizontal inflow or outflow near the surface has to be compensated by vertical motion, as illustrated in Figure 6.7, if the low- or high-pressure systems are to persist and there is to be no continuous density increase or decrease. Air rises above a low-pressure cell and subsides over high pressure, with compensating divergence and convergence, respectively, in the upper troposphere. In the middle troposphere, there must clearly be some level at which horizontal divergence or convergence is effectively zero; the mean ‘level of non-divergence’ is generally at about 600 mb. Large-scale vertical motion is extremely slow compared with convective up- and downdrafts in cumulus clouds, for example. Typical rates in large depressions and anticyclones are of the order of ±5 to 10 cm s^{-1}, whereas updrafts in cumulus may exceed 10 m s^{-1}.

3 Vorticity

Vorticity implies the rotation, or angular velocity, of small (imaginary) parcels in any fluid. The air within a low-pressure system may be regarded as comprising an infinite number of small air parcels, each rotating cyclonically about an axis vertical to the earth’s surface (Figure 6.8). Vorticity has three elements – *magnitude* (defined as twice the angular velocity, Ω) (see Note 3),

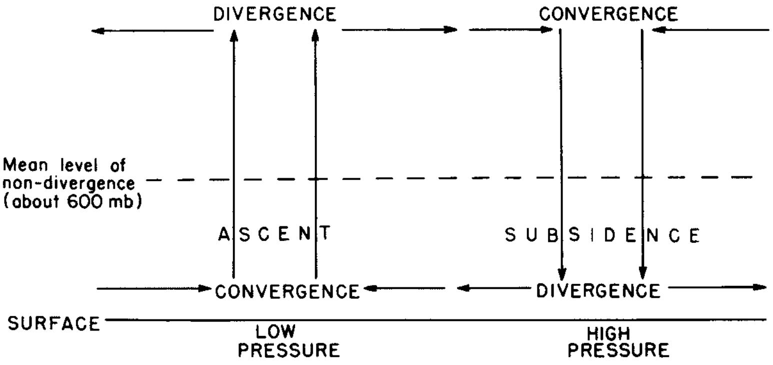


Figure 6.7 Cross-section of the patterns of vertical motion associated with (mass) divergence and convergence in the troposphere, illustrating mass continuity.

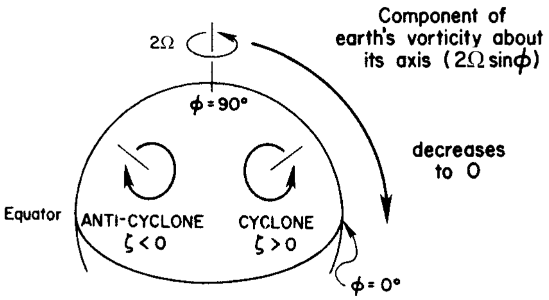

2Ω
Component of earth's vorticity about its axis (2Ω sinφ)
φ = 90°
decreases to 0
Equator
ANTI-CYCLONE ζ < 0
CYCLONE ζ > 0
φ = 0°

Figure 6.8 Sketch of the relative vertical vorticity (ζ) about a cyclone and an anticyclone in the northern hemisphere. The component of the earth's vorticity about its axis of rotation (or the Coriolis parameter, *f*) is equal to twice the angular velocity (Ω) times the sine of the latitude (f). At the pole *f* = 2Ω, diminishing to 0 at the equator. Cyclonic vorticity is in the same sense as the earth's rotation about its own axis, viewed from above, in the northern hemisphere: this cyclonic vorticity is defined as positive (ζ >0).

direction (the horizontal or vertical axis about which the rotation occurs) and the sense of *rotation*. Rotation in the same sense as the earth's rotation – cyclonic in the northern hemisphere – is defined as positive. Cyclonic vorticity may result from cyclonic curvature of the streamlines, from cyclonic shear (stronger winds on the right side of the current, viewed downwind in the northern hemisphere), or a combination of the two (Figure 6.9). Lateral shear (see Figure 6.9B) results from changes in isobar spacing. Anticyclonic vorticity occurs with the corresponding anticyclonic situation. The component of vorticity about a vertical axis is referred to as the vertical vorticity. This is generally the most important, but near the ground surface frictional shear causes vorticity about an axis parallel to the surface and normal to the wind direction.

Vorticity is related not only to air motion around a cyclone or anticyclone (*relative vorticity*), but also to the location of that system on the rotating earth. The vertical component of *absolute vorticity* consists of the relative vorticity (ζ) and the latitudinal value of the Coriolis parameter, $f = 2\Omega \sin \varphi$ (see Chapter 6A). At the equator, the local vertical is at right-angles to the earth's axis, so $f = 0$, but at the North Pole cyclonic relative vorticity and the earth's rotation act in the same sense (see Figure 6.8).

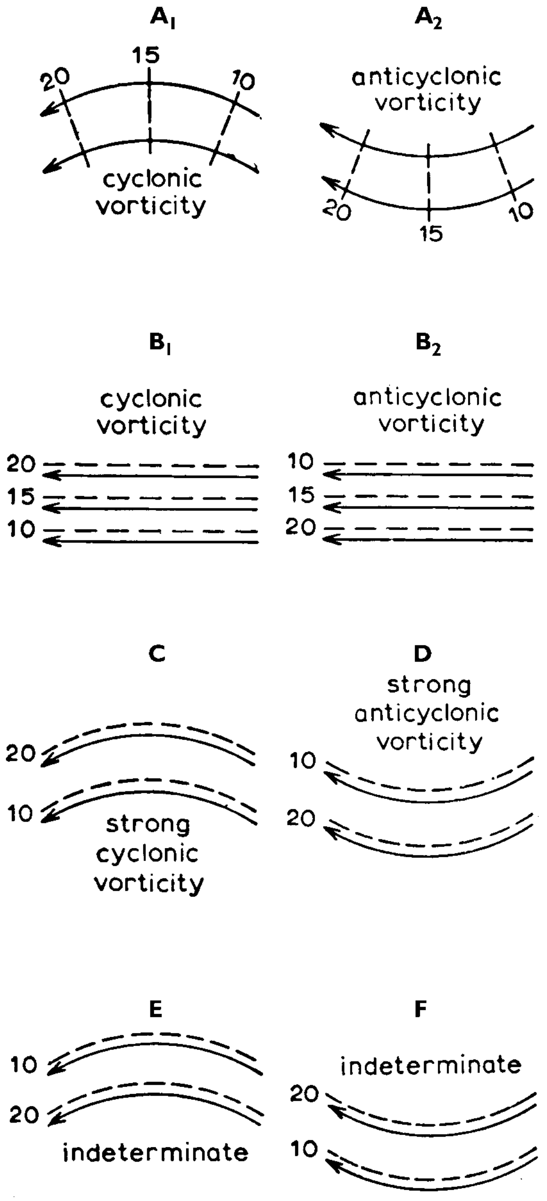

A1
15
20
10
cyclonic vorticity
A2
anticyclonic vorticity
20
15
10
B1
cyclonic vorticity
20
15
10
B2
anticyclonic vorticity
10
15
20
C
20
10
strong cyclonic vorticity
D
strong anticyclonic vorticity
10
20
E
10
20
indeterminate
F
indeterminate
20
10

Figure 6.9 Streamline models illustrating in plan view the flow patterns with cyclonic and anticyclonic vorticity in the northern hemisphere. In C and D, the effects of curvature (A_1 and A_2) and lateral shear (B_1 and B_2) are additive, whereas in E and F they more or less cancel out. Dashed lines are schematic isopleths of wind speed.

Source: After Riehl *et al*. (1954).

C LOCAL WINDS

For a weather observer, local controls of air movement may present more problems than the effects of the major planetary forces discussed above. Diurnal tendencies are superimposed upon both the large- and the small-scale patterns of wind velocity. These are particularly noticeable in the case of local winds. Under normal conditions, wind velocities tend to be least about dawn when there is little vertical thermal mixing and the lower air is less affected by the velocity of the air aloft (see Chapter 7A). Conversely, velocities of some local winds are greatest around 13:00 to 14:00 hours, when the air is most subject to terrestrial heating and vertical motion, thereby enabling coupling to the upper-air movement. Air always moves more freely away from the surface, because it is not subject to the retarding effects of friction and obstruction.

1 Mountain and valley winds

Terrain features give rise to their own special meteorological conditions. On warm, sunny days, the heated air in a valley is laterally constricted, compared with that over an equivalent area of lowland, and so tends to expand vertically. The volume ratio of lowland/valley air is typically about 2 or 3:1 and this difference in heating sets up a density and pressure differential, which causes air to flow from the lowland up the axis of the valley. This valley wind (Figure 6.10) is generally light and requires a weak regional pressure gradient in order to develop. This flow along the main valley develops more or less simultaneously with *anabatic* (upslope) winds, which result from greater heating of the valley sides compared with the valley floor. These slope winds rise above the ridge tops and feed an upper return current along the line of the valley to compensate for the valley wind. This feature may be obscured, however, by the regional airflow. Speeds reach a maximum at around 14:00 hours.

At night, there is a reverse process as denser cold air at higher elevations drains into depressions and valleys; this is known as a *katabatic* wind. If the air drains downslope into an open valley, a 'mountain wind' develops more or less simultaneously along the axis of the valley. This flows towards the plain, where it replaces warmer,

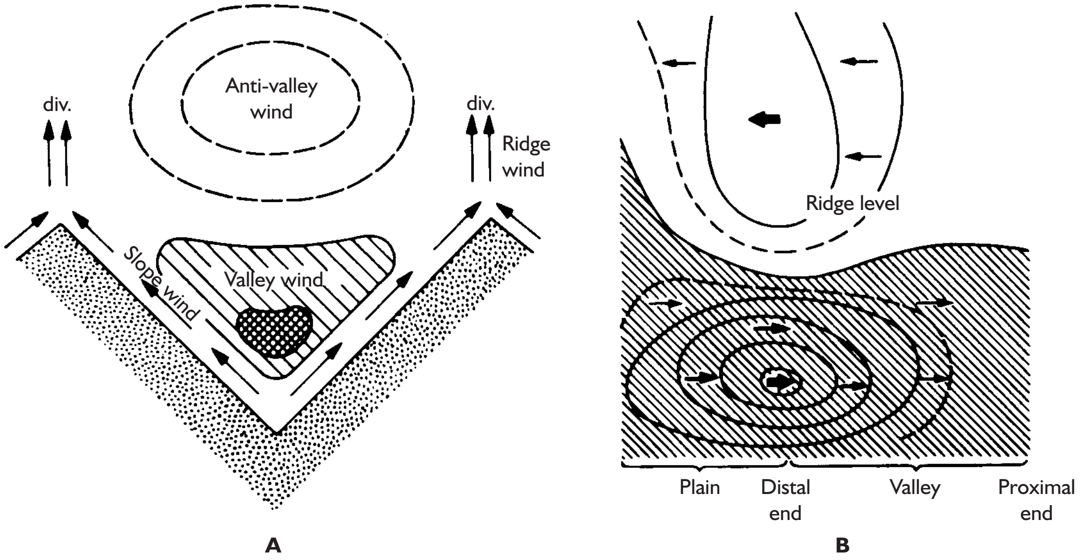


Figure 6.10 Valley winds in an ideal V-shaped valley. (A) Section across the valley. The valley wind and anti-valley wind are directed at right angles to the plane of the paper. The arrows show the slope and ridge wind in the plane of the paper, the latter diverging (div.) into the anti-valley wind system. (B) Section running along the centre of the valley and out on to the adjacent plain, illustrating the valley wind (below) and the anti-valley wind (above).

Source: After Buettner and Thyer (1965).

less dense air. The maximum velocity occurs just before sunrise at the time of maximum diurnal cooling. As with the valley wind, an upper return current, in this case up-valley, also overlays the mountain wind.

Katabatic drainage is usually cited as the cause of frost pockets in hilly and mountainous areas. It is argued that greater radiational cooling on the slopes, especially if they are snow-covered, leads to a gravity flow of cold, dense air into the valley bottoms. Observations in California and elsewhere, however, suggest that the valley air remains colder than the slope air from the onset of nocturnal cooling, so that the air moving down-slope slides over the denser air in the valley bottom. Moderate drainage winds will also act to raise the valley temperatures through turbulent mixing. Cold air pockets in valley bottoms and hollows probably result from the cessation of turbulent heat transfer to the surface in sheltered locations rather than by cold air drainage, which is often not present.

2 Land and sea breezes

Another thermally induced wind regime is the land and sea breeze (see Figure 6.11). The vertical expansion of the air column that occurs during daytime heating over the more rapidly heated land (see Chapter 3B.5) tilts the isobaric surfaces downward at the coast, causing onshore winds at the surface and a compensating offshore movement aloft. Typical land–sea pressure differences are of the order of 2 mb. At night, the air over the sea is warmer and the situation is reversed, although this reversal is also the effect of down-slope winds blowing off the land. Figure 6.12 shows that sea breezes can have a decisive effect on temperature and humidity on the coast of California. A basic offshore gradient flow is perturbed during the day by a westerly sea breeze. Initially, the temperature difference between the sea and the coastal mountains of central California sets up a shallow sea breeze, which by midday is 300 m deep. In the early afternoon, a deeper regional-scale circulation between the ocean and the hot interior valleys generates a 1-km deep onshore flow that persists until two to four hours after sunset. Both the shallow and the deeper breeze have maximum speeds of 6 m s^{-1}. A shallow evening land breeze develops by 1900 PST but is indistinguishable from the gradient offshore flow.

The advancing cool sea air may form a distinct line (or *front*, see Chapter 9D) marked by cumulus cloud development, behind which there is a distinct wind velocity maximum. This often develops in summer, for example, along the Gulf Coast of Texas. On a smaller scale, such features are observed in Britain, particularly along the south and east coasts. The sea breeze has a depth of about 1km, although it thins towards the advancing edge. It may penetrate 50 km or more inland by 21:00 hours. Typical wind speeds in such sea breezes are 4 to 7 ms^{-1}, although these may be greatly increased where a well-marked low-level temperature inversion produces a ‘Venturi effect’ by constricting and accelerating the flow. The much shallower land breezes are usually weaker, about 2 m s^{-1}. Counter-currents aloft are generally weak and may be obscured by the regional airflow, but studies on the Oregon coast suggest that under certain conditions this upper return flow may be related very closely to the lower sea breeze conditions, even to the extent of mirroring the surges in the latter. In mid-latitudes the Coriolis deflection causes turning of a well-developed onshore sea breeze (clockwise in the

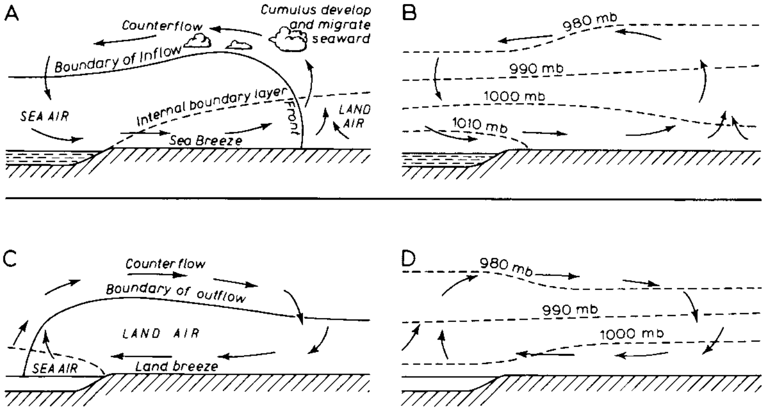


Figure 6.11 Diurnal land and sea breezes. (A) and (B) Sea breeze circulation and pressure distribution in the early afternoon during anticyclonic weather. (C) and (D) Land breeze circulation and pressure distribution at night during anticyclonic weather.

Source: (A) and (C) after Oke (1978).

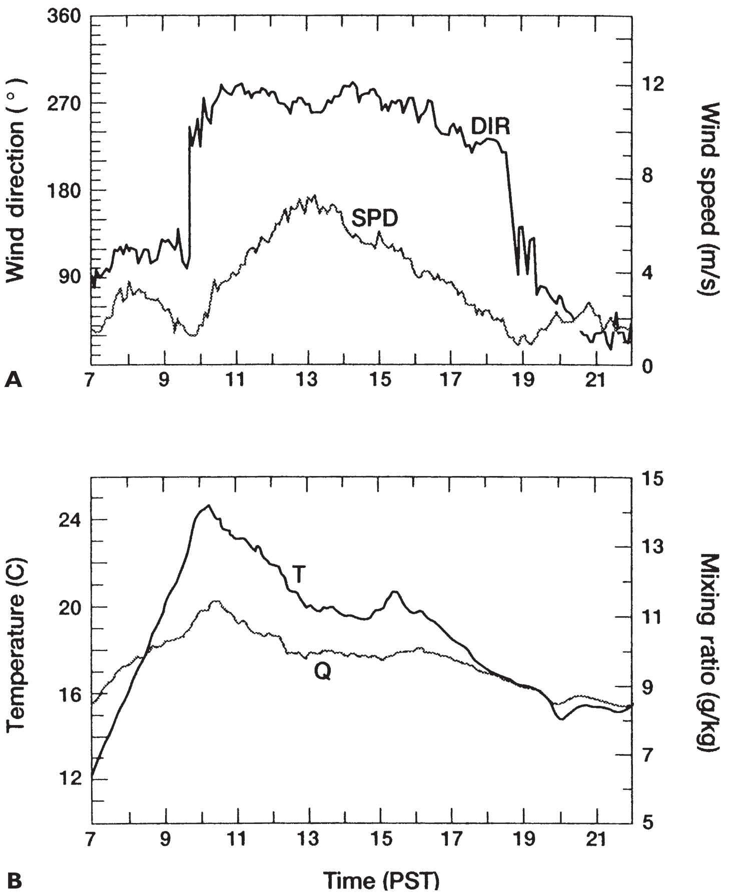


Figure 6.12 The effects of a westerly sea breeze on the California coast on 22 September 1987 on temperature and humidity. (A) Wind direction (DIR) and speed (SPD). (B) Air temperature (T) and humidity mixing ratio (Q) on a 27-m mast near Castroville, Monterey Bay, California. The gradient flow observed in the morning and evening was easterly.

Source: Banta (1995, p. 3621, Fig. 8), by permission of the American Meteorological Society.

northern hemisphere) so that eventually it may blow more or less parallel to the shore. Analogous 'lake breeze' systems develop adjacent to large inland water bodies such as the Great Lakes and even the Great Salt Lake in Utah.

Small-scale circulations may be generated by local differences in albedo and thermal conductivity. Salt flats (playas) in the western deserts of the United States and in Australia, for example, cause an off-playa breeze by day and an on-playa flow at night due to differential heating. The salt flat has a high albedo, and the moist substrate results in a high thermal conductivity relative to the surrounding sandy terrain. The flows are about 100 m deep at night and up to 250 m by day.

3 Winds due to topographic barriers

Mountain ranges strongly influence airflow crossing them. The displacement of air upward over the obstacle may trigger instability if the air is conditionally unstable and buoyant (see Chapter 5B), whereas stable air returns to its original level in the lee of a barrier as the gravitational effect counteracts the initial displacement. This descent often forms the first of a series of *lee waves* (or *standing waves*) downwind, as shown in Figure 6.13. The wave form remains more or less stationary relative to the barrier, with the air moving quite rapidly through it. Below the crest of the waves, there may be circular air motion in a vertical plane, which is termed a *rotor*. The formation of such features is of vital interest to pilots. The presence of lee waves is often marked by the development of lenticular clouds (see Plate 7), and on occasion a rotor causes reversal of the surface wind direction in the lee of high mountains (Plate 13).

Winds on mountain summits are usually strong, at least in middle and higher latitudes. Average speeds on summits in the Colorado Rocky Mountains in winter months are around 12 to 15 m s^{-1}, for example, and on Mount Washington, New Hampshire, an extreme value of 103 m s^{-1} has been recorded. Peak speeds in

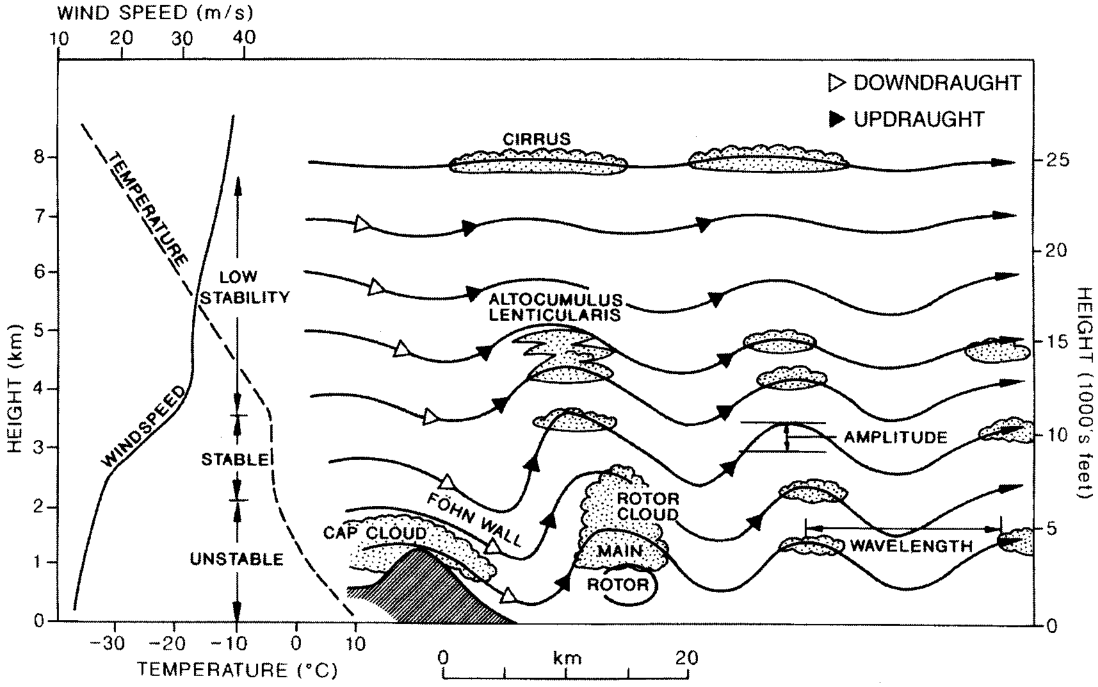


Figure 6.13 Lee waves and rotors are produced by airflow across a long mountain range. The first wave crest usually forms less than one wavelength downwind of the ridge. There is a strong surface wind down the lee slope. Wave characteristics are determined by the wind speed and temperature relationships, shown schematically on the left of the diagram. The existence of an upper stable layer is particularly important.

Source: After Ernst (1976), by permission of the American Meteorological Society.

excess of 40 to 50 m s^{-1} are typical in both these areas in winter. Airflow over a mountain range causes the air below the tropopause to be compressed and thus accelerated particularly at and near the crest line (the Venturi effect), but friction with the ground also retards the flow, compared with free air at the same level. The net result is predominantly one of retardation, but the outcome depends on the topography, wind direction and stability.

Over low hills, the boundary layer is displaced upward and acceleration occurs immediately above the summit. Figure 6.14 shows instantaneous airflow conditions across Askervein Hill (relief *c*. 120 m) on the island of South Uist in the Scottish Hebrides, where the wind speed at a height of 10 m above the ridge crest approaches 80 per cent more than the undisturbed upstream velocity. In contrast, there was a 20 per cent decrease on the initial run-up to the hill and a 40 per cent decrease on the lee side, probably due to horizontal divergence. Knowledge of such local factors is critical for siting wind-energy systems.

A wind of local importance near mountain areas is the *föhn*, or *chinook*. It is a strong, gusty, dry and warm wind that develops on the lee side of a mountain range when stable air is forced to flow across the barrier by the regional pressure gradient; the air descending on the lee slope warms adiabatically. Sometimes, there is a loss of moisture by precipitation on the windward side of the mountains (Figure 6.15). The air, having cooled at the saturated adiabatic lapse rate above the condensation level, subsequently warms at the greater dry adiabatic lapse rate as it descends on the lee side. This also reduces both the relative and the absolute humidity. Other investigations show that in many instances there is no loss of moisture over the mountains. In such cases, the föhn effect is the result of the blocking of air to windward of the mountains by a summit-level temperature inversion. This forces air from higher levels to descend and warm adiabatically. Southerly föhn winds are common along the northern flanks of the Alps and the mountains of the Caucasus and Central Asia in winter

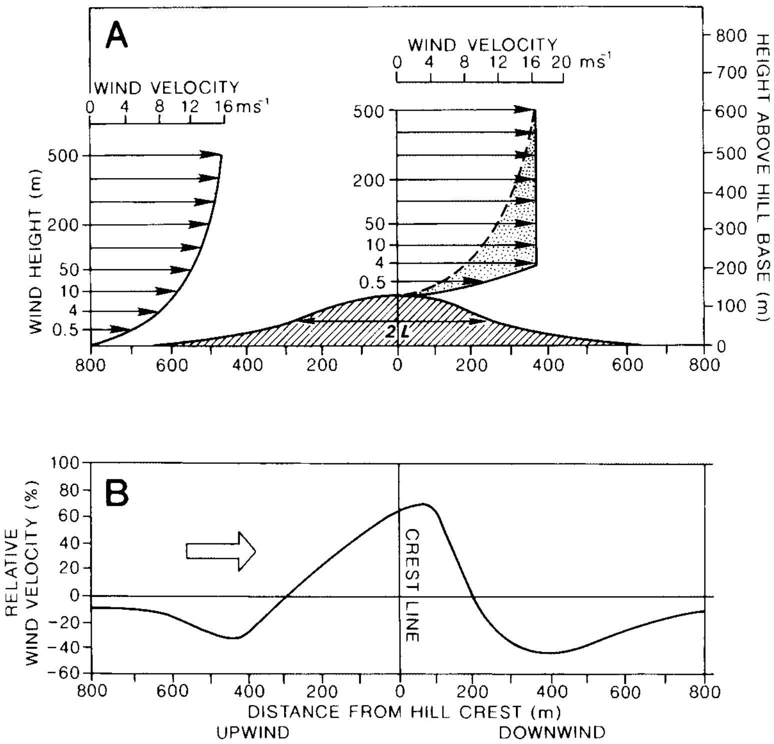


Figure 6.14 Airflow over Askervein Hill, South Uist, off the west coast of Scotland. (A) Vertical airflow profiles (not true to scale) measured simultaneously 800 m upwind of the crest line and at the crest line. L is the *characteristic length* of the obstruction (i.e. one-half the hill width at mid-elevation, here 500 m) and is also the height above ground level to which the flow is increased by the topographic obstruction (shaded). The maximum speed-up of the airflow due to vertical convergence over the crest is to about 16.5 m s^{-1} at a height of 4 m. (B) The relative speed-up (per cent) of airflow upwind and downwind of the crest line measured 14 m above ground level.

Source: After Taylor, Teunissen and Salmon *et al*. From Troen and Petersen (1989).

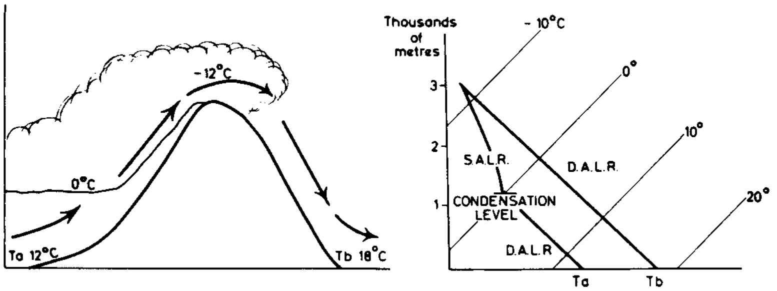


Figure 6.15 The föhn effect when an air parcel is forced to cross a mountain range. T_a refers to the temperature at the windward foot of the range and T_b to that at the leeward foot.

and spring, when the accompanying rapid temperature rise may help to trigger avalanches on the snow-covered slopes. At Tashkent in Central Asia, where the mean winter temperature is about freezing point, temperatures may rise to more than 21°C during a föhn. In the same way, the chinook is a significant feature at the eastern foot of the New Zealand Alps, the Andes in Argentina, and the Rocky Mountains. At Pincher Creek, Alberta, a temperature rise of 21°C occurred in four minutes with the onset of a chinook on 6 January 1966. Less spectacular effects are also noticeable in the lee of the Welsh mountains, the Pennines and the Grampians in Great Britain, where the importance of föhn winds lies mainly in the dispersal of cloud by the subsiding dry air. This is an important component of so-called ‘rain shadow’ effects.

In some parts of the world, winds descending on the lee slope of a mountain range are cold. The type example of such ‘fall-winds’ is the bora of the northern Adriatic, although similar winds occur on the northern Black Sea coast, in northern Scandinavia, in Novaya Zemlya and in Japan. These winds occur when cold continental airmasses are forced across a mountain range by the pressure gradient and, despite adiabatic warming, displace warmer air. They are therefore primarily a winter phenomenon.

On the eastern slope of the Rocky Mountains in Colorado (and in similar continental locations), winds of either bora or chinook type can occur depending on the initial airflow characteristics. Locally, at the foot of the mountains, such winds may reach hurricane force, with gusts exceeding 45 m s^{-1} (100 mph). Down-slope storms of this type have caused millions of dollars of property damage in Boulder, Colorado, and the immediate vicinity. These windstorms develop when a stable layer close to the mountain-crest level prevents air to windward from crossing over the mountains. Extreme amplification of a lee wave (see Figure 6.13) drags air from above the summit level (4000 m) down to the plains (1700 m) over a short distance, leading to high velocities. However, the flow is not simply 'down-slope'; winds may affect the mountain slopes but not the foot of the slope, or vice versa, depending on the location of the lee wave trough. High winds are caused by the horizontal acceleration of air towards this local pressure minimum.

SUMMARY

Air motion is described by its horizontal and vertical components; the latter are much smaller than the horizontal velocities. Horizontal motions compensate for vertical imbalances between gravitational acceleration and the vertical pressure gradient.

The horizontal pressure gradient, the earth's rotational effect (Coriolis force), and the curvature of the isobars (centripetal acceleration) determine horizontal wind velocity. All three factors are accounted for in the gradient wind equation, but this can be approximated in large-scale flow by the geostrophic wind relationship. Below 1500 m, the wind speed and direction are affected by surface friction.

Air ascends (descends) in association with surface convergence (divergence) of air. Air motion is also subject to relative vertical vorticity as a result of curvature of the streamlines and/or lateral shear; this, together with the earth's rotational effect, makes up the absolute vertical vorticity.

Local winds occur as a result of diurnally varying thermal differences setting up local pressure gradients (mountain–valley winds and land–sea breezes) or due to the effect of a topographic barrier on airflow crossing it (examples are the leeside föhn and bora winds).

DISCUSSION TOPICS

- Compare the wind direction and speed reported at a station near you with the geostrophic wind velocity determined from the MSL pressure map for the same time (data sources are listed in Appendix 4).
- Why would there be no 'weather' if the winds were strictly geostrophic?
- What are the causes of mass divergence (convergence) and what roles do they play in weather processes?
- In what situations do local wind conditions differ markedly from those expected for a given large-scale pressure gradient?

FURTHER READING

Books

Barry, R. G. (1992) *Mountain Weather and Climate*, Routledge, London, 402pp. [Chapter on circulation systems related to orographic effects.]

Oke, T. R. (1978) *Boundary Layer Climates*, Methuen, London, 372pp. [Prime text on surface climate processes in natural and human-modified environments.]

Scorer, R. S. (1958) *Natural Aerodynamics*, Pergamon Press, Oxford, 312pp.

Simpson, J. E. (1994) *Sea Breeze and Local Wind*, Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, 234pp. [A well-illustrated descriptive account of the sea breeze and its effects; see chapter on local orographic winds.]

Troen, I. and Petersen, E. L. (1989) *European Wind Atlas*, Commission of the Economic Community, Risø National Laboratory, Roskilde, Denmark, 656pp.

Articles

Banta, R.M. (1995) Sea breezes: shallow and deep on the California coast. *Mon. Wea. Rev.*, 123(12), 3614–22.

Beran, W. D. (1967) Large amplitude lee waves and chinook winds. *J. Appl. Met*. 6, 865–77.

Brinkmann, W. A. R. (1971) What is a foehn? *Weather* 26, 230–9.

Brinkmann, W. A. R. (1974) Strong downslope winds at Boulder, Colorado. *Monthly Weather Review* 102, 592–602.

Buettner, K. J. and Thyer, N. (1965) Valley winds in the Mount Rainer area. *Archiv. Met. Geophys. Biokl*. B 14, 125–47.

Eddy, A. (1966) The Texas coast sea-breeze: a pilot study. *Weather* 21, 162–70.

Ernst, J. A. (1976) SMS-1 night-time infrared imagery of low-level mountain waves. *Monthly Weather Review* 104, 207–9.

Flohn, H. (1969) Local wind systems. In Flohn, H. (ed.) *General Climatology*, World Survey of Climatology 2, Elsevier, Amsterdam, pp. 139–71.

Geiger, R. (1969) Topoclimates. In Flohn, H. (ed.) *General Climatology*, World Survey of Climatology 2, Elsevier, Amsterdam, pp. 105–38.

Glenn, C. L. (1961) The chinook. *Weatherwise* 14, 175–82.

Johnson, A. and O'Brien, J. J. (1973) A study of an Oregon sea breeze event. *J. Appl. Met*. 12, 1267–83.

Lockwood, J. G. (1962) Occurrence of föhn winds in the British Isles. *Met. Mag*. 91, 57–65.

McDonald, J. E. (1952) The Coriolis effect. *Sci. American* 186, 72–8.

Persson, A. (1998) How do we understand the Coriolis force. *Weather* 79, 1373–85.

Persson, A. (2000) Back to basics. Coriolis: Part 1 – What is the Coriolis force? *Weather* 55(5), 165–70; Part 2 – The Coriolis force according to Coriolis. *Ibid*., 55(6), 182–8; Part 3 – The Coriolis force on the physical earth. *Ibid*., 55(7), 234–9.

Persson, A. (2001) The Coriolis force and the geostrophic wind. *Weather* 56(8), 267–72.

Riehl, H. *et al*. (1954) The jet stream. *Met. Monogr*. 2(7), American Meteorological Society, Boston, MA.

Scorer, R. S. (1961) Lee waves in the atmosphere. *Sci. American* 204, 124–34.

Steinacker, R. (1984) Area–height distribution of a valley and its relation to the valley wind. *Contrib. Atmos. Phys.* 57, 64–74.

Thompson, B. W. (1986) Small-scale katabatics and cold hollows. *Weather* 41, 146–53.

Waco, D. E. (1968) Frost pockets in the Santa Monica Mountains of southern California. *Weather* 23, 456–61.

Wallington, C. E. (1960) An introduction to lee waves in the atmosphere. *Weather* 15, 269–76.

Wheeler, D. (1997) North-east England and Yorkshire. In Wheeler, D. and Mayes, J. (eds) *Regional Climates of the British Isles*, Routledge, London, pp. 158–80.

Wickham, P. G. (1966) Weather for gliding over Britain. *Weather* 21, 154–61.

7

Planetary-scale motions in the atmosphere and ocean

Learning objectives
When you have read this chapter you will:

☐ Learn how and why pressure patterns and wind velocity change with altitude,
☐ Become familiar with the relationships between surface and mid-tropospheric pressure patterns,
☐ Know the features of the major global wind belts,
☐ Be familiar with the basic concepts of the general circulation of the atmosphere,
☐ Understand the basic structure of the oceans, their circulation and role in climate,
☐ Know the nature and role of the thermohaline circulation.

In this chapter, we examine global-scale motions in the atmosphere and their role in redistributing energy, momentum and moisture. As noted in Chapter 3 (p. 59), there are close links between the atmosphere and oceans with the latter making a major contribution to poleward energy transport. Thus, we also discuss ocean circulation and the coupling of the atmosphere–ocean system.

The atmosphere acts rather like a gigantic heat engine in which the temperature difference existing between the poles and the equator provides the energy supply needed to drive the planetary atmospheric and ocean circulation. The conversion of heat energy into kinetic energy to produce motion must involve rising and descending air, but vertical movements are generally less obvious than horizontal ones, which may cover vast areas and persist for periods of a few days to several months. We begin by examining the relationships between winds and pressure patterns in the troposphere and those at the surface.

A VARIATION OF PRESSURE AND WIND VELOCITY WITH HEIGHT

Both pressure and wind characteristics change with height. Above the level of surface frictional effects (about 500 to 1000 m), the wind increases in speed and becomes more or less geostrophic. With further height increase, the reduction of air density leads to a general increase in wind speed (see Chapter 6A.1). At 45°N, a geostrophic wind of 14 m s^{-1} at 3 km is equivalent to one of 10 m s^{-1} at the surface for the same pressure gradient. There is also a seasonal variation in wind speeds aloft, these being much greater in the northern hemisphere during winter months, when the meridional temperature gradients are at a maximum. Such seasonal variation is absent in the southern hemisphere. In addition, the persistence of these gradients tends to cause the upper winds to be more constant in direction. A history of upper air observations is given in Box 7.1.

THE HISTORY OF UPPER AIR MEASUREMENTS

box 7.1
significant 20th-c. advance

Manned balloon flights during the nineteenth century attempted to measure temperatures in the upper air but the equipment was generally inadequate for the purpose. Kite measurements were common in the 1890s. During and after the First World War, balloon, kite and aircraft measurements of temperatures and winds were collected in the lower few kilometres of the atmosphere. Forerunners of the modern radiosonde, which comprises a package of pressure, temperature and humidity sensors suspended beneath a hydrogen-filled balloon and transmitting radio signals of the measurements during its ascent, were developed independently in France, Germany and the USSR and first used in about 1929 to 1930. Soundings began to be made up to about 3 to 4 km, mainly in Europe and North America, in the 1930s and the radiosonde was used widely during and after the Second World War. It was improved in the late 1940s when radar tracking of the balloon enabled the calculation of upper-level wind speed and direction; the system was named the radar windsonde or rawinsonde. There are now about 1000 upper-air-sounding stations worldwide making soundings once or twice daily at 00 and 12 hours UTC. In addition to these systems, meteorological research programmes and operational aircraft reconnaissance flights through tropical and extra-tropical cyclones commonly make use of dropsondes that are released from the aircraft and give a profile of the atmosphere below it.

Satellites began to provide a new source of upper-air data in the early 1970s through the use of vertical atmospheric sounders. These operate in the infra-red and microwave wavelengths and provide information on the temperature and moisture content of different layers in the atmosphere. They operate on the principle that the energy emitted by a given atmospheric layer is proportional to its temperature (see Figure 3.1) (and is also a function of its moisture content). The data are obtained through a complex 'inversion' technique whereby the radiative transfer relationships (p. 33) are inverted so as to calculate the temperature (moisture) from the measured radiances. Infra-red sensors operate only for cloud-free conditions whereas microwave sounders record in the presence of clouds. Neither system is able to measure low-level temperatures in the presence of a low-level temperature inversion because the method assumes that temperatures are a unique function of altitude.

Ground-based remote sensing provides another means of profiling the atmosphere. Detailed information on wind velocity is available from upward-pointing high-powered radar (radio detection and ranging) systems of between 10 cm (UHF) and 10 m (VHF) wavelength. These wind profilers detect motion in clear air via measurements of variations in atmospheric refractivity. Such variations depend on atmospheric temperature and humidity. Radars can measure winds up to stratospheric levels, depending on their power, with a vertical resolution of a few metres. Such systems are in use in the equatorial Pacific and in North America. Information on the general structure of the boundary layer and low-level turbulence can be obtained from lidar (light detection and ranging) and sonar (sound detection and ranging) systems, but these have a vertical range of only a few kilometres.

1 The vertical variation of pressure systems

The air pressure at the surface, or at any level in the atmosphere, depends on the weight of the overlying air column. In Chapter 2B, we noted that air pressure is proportional to air density and that density varies inversely with air temperature. Accordingly, increasing the temperature of an air column between the surface and, say, 3 km will reduce the air density and therefore lower the air pressure at the surface without affecting the pressure at 3 km altitude. Correspondingly, if we compare the heights of the 1000 and 700 mb pressure surfaces, warming of the air column will lower the height of the 1000 mb surface but will not affect the height of the 700 mb surface (i.e. the thickness of the 1000 to 700 mb layer increases).

The models of Figure 7.1 illustrate the relationships between surface and tropospheric pressure conditions. A low-pressure cell at sea-level with a cold core will intensify with elevation, whereas one with a warm core will tend to weaken and may be replaced by high pressure. A warm air column of relatively low density

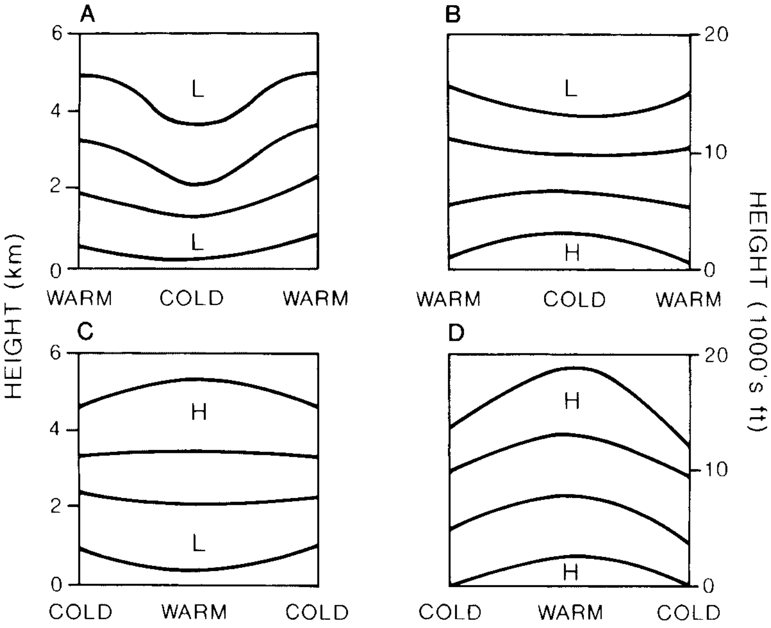


Figure 7.1 Models of the vertical pressure distribution in cold and warm air columns. (A) A surface low pressure intensifies aloft in a cold air column. (B) A surface high pressure weakens aloft and may become a low pressure in a cold air column. (C) A surface low pressure weakens aloft and may become a high pressure in a warm air column. (D) A surface high pressure intensifies aloft in a warm air column.

causes the pressure surfaces to bulge upward, and conversely a cold, more dense air column leads to downward contraction of the pressure surfaces. Thus, a surface high-pressure cell with a cold core (a *cold anticyclone*), such as the Siberian winter anticyclone, weakens with increasing elevation and is replaced by low pressure aloft. Cold anticyclones are shallow and rarely extend their influence above about 2500 m. By contrast, a surface high with a warm core (a *warm anticyclone*) intensifies with height (Figure 7.1D). This is characteristic of the large subtropical cells, which maintain their warmth through dynamic subsidence. The warm low (Figure 7.1C) and cold high (Figure 7.1B) are consistent with the vertical motion schemes illustrated in Figure 6.7, whereas the other two types are produced primarily by dynamic processes. The high surface pressure in a warm anticyclone is linked hydrostatically with cold, relatively dense air in the lower stratosphere. Conversely, a cold depression (Figure 7.1A) is associated with a warm lower stratosphere.

Mid-latitude low-pressure cells have cold air in the rear, and hence the axis of low pressure slopes with height towards the colder air to the west. High-pressure cells slope towards the warmest air (Figure 7.2). Thus, northern hemisphere subtropical high-pressure cells are shifted 10 to 15° latitude southward at 3 km, and towards the west. Even so, this slope of the high-pressure axes is not constant through time.

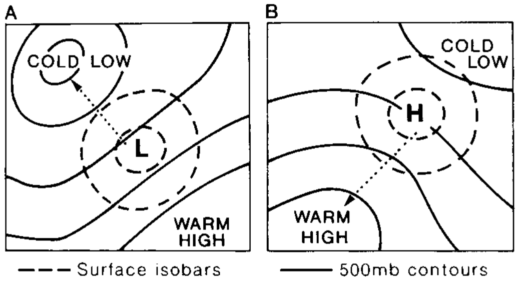


Figure 7.2 The characteristic slope of the axes of low- and high-pressure cells with height in the northern hemisphere.

2 Mean upper-air patterns

The patterns of pressure and wind in the middle troposphere are less complicated in appearance than at the surface as a result of the diminished effects of the landmasses. Rather than using pressure maps at a particular height, it is convenient to depict the height of a selected pressure surface; this is termed a *contour chart* by analogy with topographic relief map (see Note 1). Figure 7.3 and 7.4 show that in the middle troposphere of the southern hemisphere there is a vast circumpolar

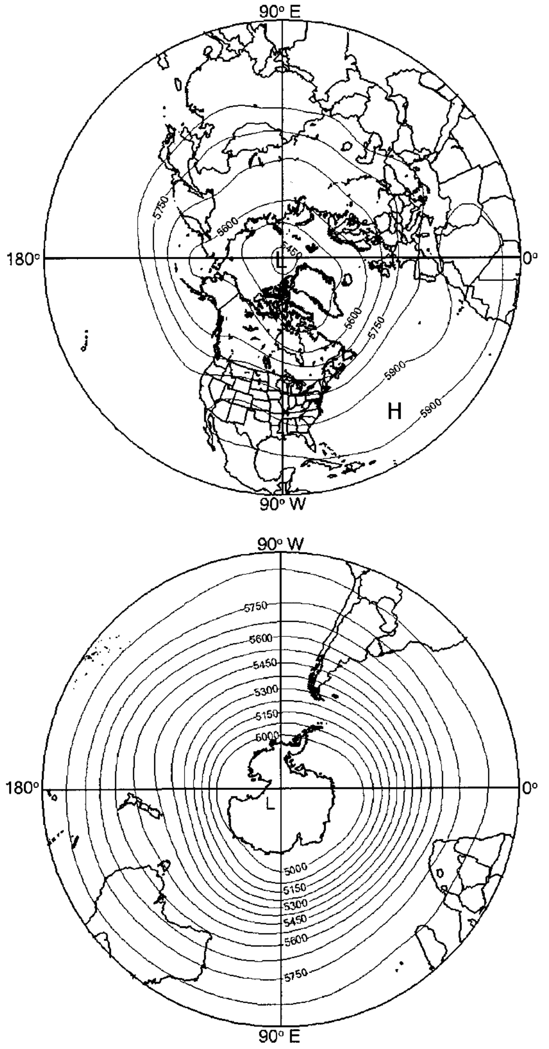


Figure 7.3 The mean contours (gpm) of the 500-mb pressure surface in July for the northern and southern hemispheres, 1970 to 1999.

Source: NCEP/NCAR Reanalysis Data from the NOAA-CIRES Climate Diagnostics Center.

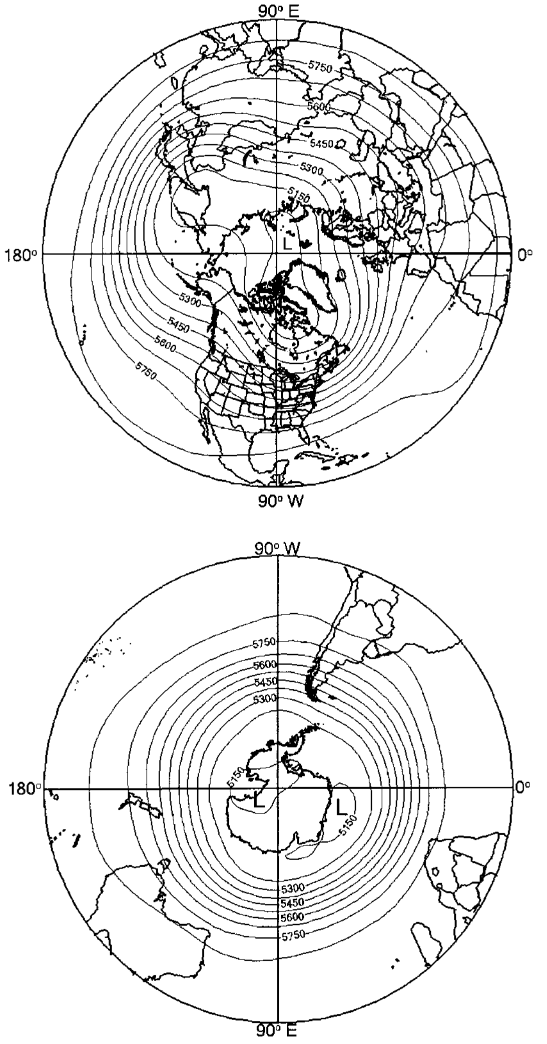


Figure 7.4 The mean contours (gpm) of the 500-mb pressure surface in January for the northern and southern hemispheres, 1970 to 1999.

Source: NCEP/NCAR Reanalysis Data from the NOAA-CIRES Climate Diagnostics Center.

cyclonic vortex poleward of latitude 30°S in summer and winter. The vortex is more or less symmetrical about the pole, although the low centre is towards the Ross Sea sector. Corresponding charts for the northern hemisphere also show an extensive cyclonic vortex, but one that is markedly more asymmetric with a primary centre over the eastern Canadian Arctic and a secondary one over eastern Siberia. The major troughs and ridges form what are referred to as *long waves* (or *Rossby waves*) in the upper flow. It is worth considering why the hemispheric westerlies show such large-scale waves. The key to this problem lies in the rotation of the earth and the latitudinal variation of the Coriolis parameter (Chapter 6A.2). It can be shown that for large-scale motion the absolute vorticity about a vertical axis ($f + \zeta$) tends to be conserved, i.e.

$$\mathrm{d}\,(f + \zeta)\ \mathrm{d}t = 0$$

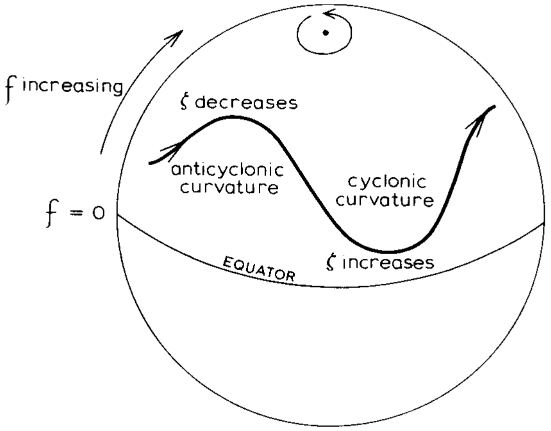


Figure 7.5 A schematic illustration of the mechanism of long-wave development in the tropospheric westerlies.

The symbol d/d*t* denotes a rate of change following the motion (a total differential). Consequently, if air moves poleward so that *f* increases, the cyclonic vorticity tends to decrease. The curvature thus becomes anticyclonic and the current returns towards lower latitudes. If the air moves equatorward of its original latitude, *f* tends to decrease (Figure 7.5), requiring ζ to increase, and the resulting cyclonic curvature again deflects the current polewards. In this manner, large-scale flow tends to oscillate in a wave pattern.

C-G. Rossby related the motion of these waves to their wavelength (*L*) and the speed of the zonal current (*U*). The speed of the wave (or phase speed, *c*), is

$$c = U - ß \left(\frac{L}{2\pi}\right)^2$$

where $ß = \partial f/\partial y$ (i.e. the variation of the Coriolis parameter with latitude) (a local, partial differential). For stationary waves, where $c = 0$, $L = 2\pi\sqrt{(U/ß)}$. At 45° latitude, this stationary wavelength is 3120 km for a zonal velocity of 4 m s^{-1}, increasing to 5400 km at 12 m s^{-1}. The wavelengths at 60° latitude for zonal currents of 4 and 12 m s^{-1} are, respectively, 3170 and 6430 km. Long waves tend to remain stationary, or even to move westward against the current, so that $c \leq 0$. Shorter waves travel eastward with a speed close to that of the zonal current and tend to be steered by the quasi-stationary long waves.

The two major troughs at about 70°W and 150°E are thought to be induced by the combined influence on upper-air circulation of large orographic barriers, such as the Rocky Mountains and the Tibetan Plateau, and heat sources such as warm ocean currents (in winter) or landmasses (in summer). It is noteworthy that land surfaces occupy over 50 per cent of the northern hemisphere between latitudes 40° and 70°N. The subtropical high-pressure belt has only one clearly distinct cell in January over the eastern Caribbean, whereas in July cells are well developed over the North Atlantic and North Pacific. In addition, the July map shows greater prominence of the subtropical high over the Sahara and southern North America. The northern hemisphere shows a marked summer to winter intensification of the mean circulation, which is explained below.

In the southern hemisphere, the fact that oceans comprise 81 per cent of the surface makes for a more zonal pattern of westerly flow. Nevertheless, asymmetries are initiated by the effects on the atmosphere of features such as the Andes, the high dome of eastern Antarctica, and ocean currents, particularly the Humboldt and Benguela currents (see Figure 7.29), and the associated cold coastal upwellings.

3 Upper wind conditions

It is often observed that clouds at different levels move in different directions. The wind speeds at these levels may also differ markedly, although this is not so evident to the casual observer. The gradient of wind velocity with height is referred to as the (vertical) *wind shear*, and in the free air, above the friction level, the amount of shear depends upon the vertical temperature profile. This important relationship is illustrated in Figure 7.6. The diagram shows hypothetical contours of the 1000 and 500 mb pressure surfaces. As discussed in A.1 above, the *thickness* of the 1000 to 500 mb layer is proportional to its mean temperature: low thickness values correspond to cold air, high thickness values to warm air. This relationship is shown in Figure 7.1. The theoretical wind vector (V_T) blowing parallel to the thickness lines, with a velocity proportional to their gradient, is termed the *thermal wind*. The geostrophic wind velocity at 500 mb (G_{500}) is the vector sum of the 1000 mb geostrophic wind (G_{1000}) and the thermal wind (V_T), as shown in Figure 7.6.

The thermal wind component blows with cold air (low thickness) to the left in the northern hemisphere when viewed downwind; hence the poleward decrease of temperature in the troposphere is associated with

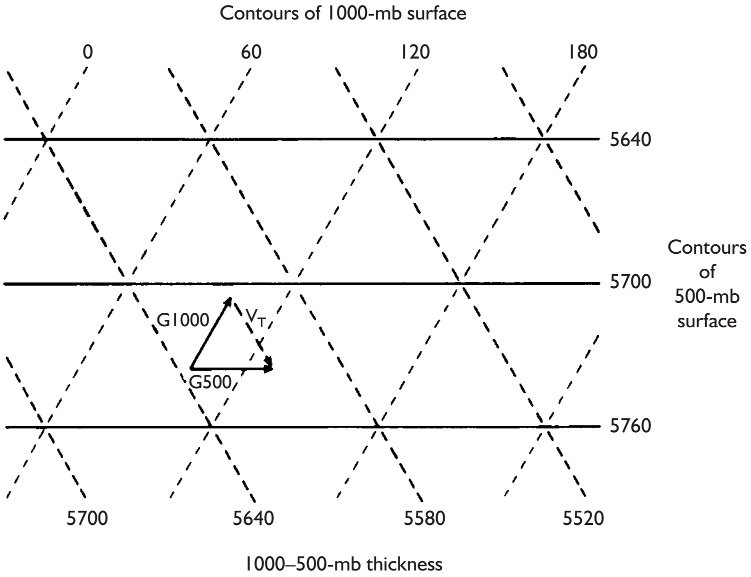

Contours of 1000-mb surface
0
60
120
180
5640
5700
5760
Contours of 500-mb surface
G1000
V_T
G500
5700
5640
5580
5520
1000–500-mb thickness

Figure 7.6 Schematic map of superimposed contours of isobaric height and thickness of the 1000 to 500-mb layer (in metres). G_{1000} is the geostrophic velocity at 1000 mb, G_{500} that at 500 mb; V_T is the resultant 'thermal wind' blowing parallel to the thickness lines.

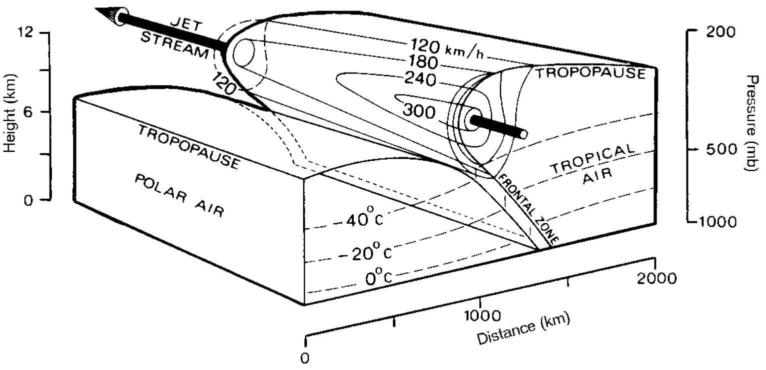

JET STREAM
120 km/h
180
240
300
120
TROPOPAUSE
TROPOPAUSE
POLAR AIR
TROPICAL AIR
FRONTAL ZONE
-40°C
-20°C
0°C
Height (km)
12
6
0
Pressure (mb)
200
500
1000
0
1000
2000
Distance (km)

Figure 7.7 Structure of the mid-latitude frontal zone and associated jet stream showing generalized distribution of temperature, pressure and wind velocity.

Source: After Riley and Spolton (1981).

a large westerly component in the upper winds. Furthermore, the zonal westerlies are strongest when the meridional temperature gradient is at a maximum (winter in the northern hemisphere).

The total result of the above influences is that in both hemispheres the mean upper geostrophic winds are dominantly westerly between the subtropical high-pressure cells (centred aloft at about 15° latitude) and the polar low-pressure centre aloft. Between the subtropical high-pressure cells and the equator the winds are easterly. The dominant westerly circulation reaches maximum speeds of 45 to 65 m s^{-1}, which even increase to 135 m s^{-1} in winter. These maximum speeds are concentrated in a narrow band, often situated at about 30° latitude between 9000 and 15000 m, called the *jet stream* (see Note 2 and Box 7.2). Plate 14 shows bands of cirrus cloud that may have been related to jet-stream systems.

The jet stream is essentially a fast-moving ribbon of air, connected with the zone of maximum slope, folding or fragmentation of the tropopause; this in turn coincides with the latitude of maximum poleward temperature gradient, or frontal zone, shown schematically in Figure 7.7. The thermal wind, as described above, is a major component of the jet stream, but the basic reason for the concentration of the meridional temperature gradient in a narrow zone (or zones) is dynamical. In essence, the temperature gradient becomes accentuated when the upper wind pattern is confluent (see Chapter 6B.1).

Figure 7.8 shows a north–south cross-section with three westerly jet streams in the northern hemisphere. The more northerly ones, termed the *polar front* and

THE DISCOVERY OF JET STREAMS

box 7.2
significant
20th-c. advance

Late nineteenth-century observers of high-level cloud motion noted the occasional existence of strong upper winds, but their regularity and persistence were not suspected at the time. The recognition that there are coherent bands of very strong winds in the upper troposphere was an operational discovery by Allied bomber pilots flying over Europe and the North Pacific during the Second World War. Flying westward, headwinds were sometimes encountered that approached the air speed of the planes. The term *jet stream*, used earlier for certain ocean current systems, was introduced in 1944 and soon became widely adopted. The corresponding German word *Strahlstrome* had in fact first been used in the 1930s.

Bands of strong upper winds are associated with intense horizontal temperature gradients. Locally enhanced equator to pole temperature gradients are associated with westerly jets and pole to equator gradients with easterly jets. The principal westerly jet streams are the subtropical westerly jet stream at about 150 to 200 mb, and one associated with the main polar front at around 250 to 300 mb. The former is located between latitudes 30 to 35° and the latter between 40 to 50° in both hemispheres. The strongest jet cores tend to occur over East Asia and eastern North America in winter. There may be additional jet-stream bands associated with a strong arctic frontal zone. In the tropics there are strong easterly jet streams in summer at 100 mb over southern India and the Indian Ocean and over West Africa (see Figure 7.8). These are linked to the monsoon systems.

arctic front jet streams (Chapter 9E), are associated with the steep temperature gradient where polar and tropical air and polar and arctic air, respectively, interact, but the *subtropical jet stream* is related to a temperature gradient confined to the upper troposphere. The polar front jet stream is very irregular in its longitudinal location and is commonly discontinuous (Plate 15), whereas the subtropical jet stream is much more persistent. For these reasons, the location of the mean jet stream in each hemisphere and season (Plate D) reflects primarily the position of the subtropical jet stream. The austral summer (DJF) map shows a strong zonal feature around 50°S, while the boreal summer jet is weaker and more discontinuous over Europe and North America. The winter maps (Plate D, [A] and [D]) show a pronounced double structure in the southern hemisphere from 60°E eastward to 120°W, a more limited analogue over the eastern and central North Atlantic Ocean (0 to 40°W). This double structure represents the subtropical and polar jets.

The synoptic pattern of jet stream occurrence may be complicated further in some sectors by the presence of additional frontal zones (see Chapter 9E), each associated with a jet stream. This situation is common in winter over North America. Comparison of Figures 7.3, 7.4 and Plate D indicates that the main jet-stream cores are associated with the principal troughs of the Rossby long waves. In summer, an *easterly tropical jet stream* forms in the upper troposphere over India and Africa due to regional reversal of the S–N temperature gradient (p. 284). The relationships between upper tropospheric wind systems and surface weather and climate will be considered below.

In the southern hemisphere, the mean jet stream in winter is similar in strength to its northern hemisphere winter counterpart and it weakens less in summer, because the meridional temperature gradient between 30° and 50°S is reinforced by heating over the southern continents (Plate D).

4 Surface pressure conditions

The most permanent features of the mean sea-level pressure maps are the oceanic subtropical high-pressure cells (Figures 7.9 and 7.10). These anticyclones are located at about 30° latitude, suggestively situated below the mean subtropical jet stream. They move a few degrees equatorward in winter and poleward in summer in response to the seasonal expansion and contraction of the two circumpolar vortices. In the northern hemisphere, the subtropical ridges of high pressure weaken over the heated continents in summer but are thermally intensified over them in winter. The principal subtropical high-pressure cells are located: (1) over the

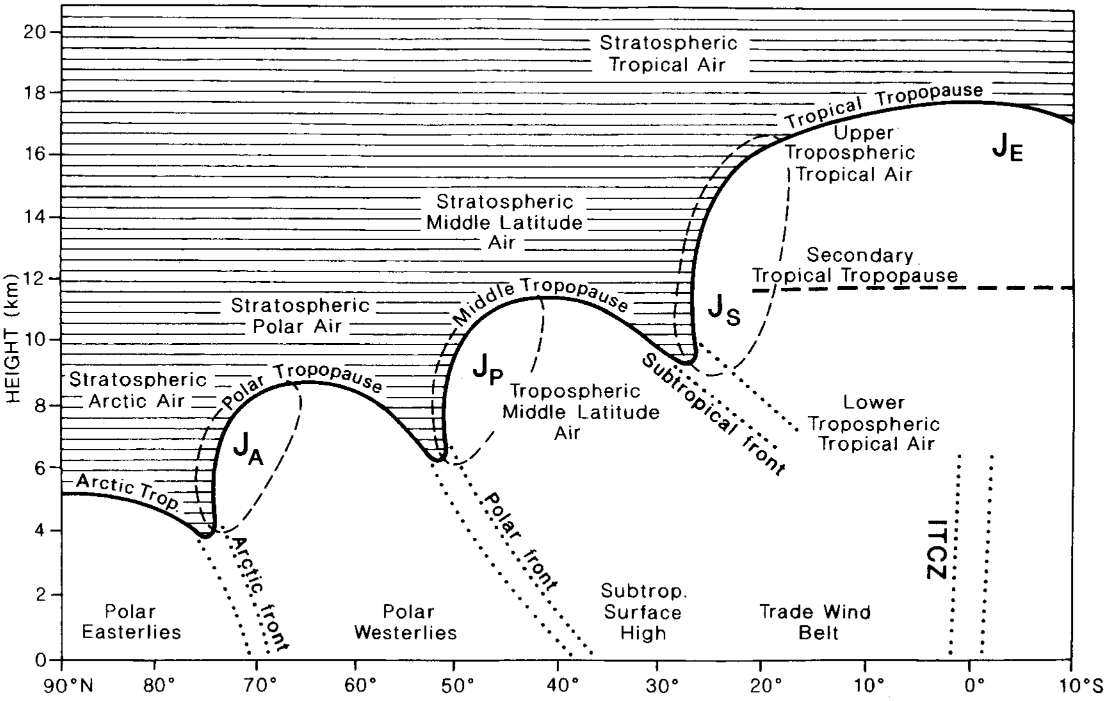

Stratospheric Tropical Air
Tropical Tropopause
Upper Tropospheric Tropical Air
J_E
Stratospheric Middle Latitude Air
Secondary Tropical Tropopause
Middle Tropopause
Stratospheric Polar Air
J_S
J_P
Stratospheric Arctic Air
Polar Tropopause
Tropospheric Middle Latitude Air
Subtropical front
Lower Tropospheric Tropical Air
J_A
Arctic Trop.
Polar front
Arctic front
ITCZ
Polar Easterlies
Polar Westerlies
Subtrop. Surface High
Trade Wind Belt
HEIGHT (km)
0
2
4
6
8
10
12
14
16
18
20
90°N
80°
70°
60°
50°
40°
30°
20°
10°
0°
10°S

Figure 7.8 The meridional structure of the tropopause and the primary frontal zones. The 40 m s^{-1} isotach (dashed) encloses the Arctic (J_A), polar (J_P) and subtropical (J_S) jet streams. The tropical easterly (J_E) jet stream is also shown. Occasionally, the Arctic and polar or the polar and subtropical fronts and jet streams may merge to form single systems in which about 50 per cent of the pole-to-equator mid-tropospheric pressure gradient is concentrated into a singe frontal zone approximately 200 km wide. The tropical easterly jet stream may be accompanied by a lower easterly jet at about 5 km elevation. (see chapter 11C, D).

Source: Shapiro *et al*. (1987) *From Monthly Weather Review* 115, p. 450, by permission of the American Meteorological Society.

Bermuda–Azores ocean region (at 500 mb the centre of this cell lies over the east Caribbean); (2) over the south and southwest United States (the Great Basin or Sonoran cell) – this continental cell is seasonal, being replaced by a thermal surface low in summer; (3) over the east and north Pacific – a large and powerful cell (sometimes dividing into two, especially during the summer); and (4) over the Sahara – this, like other continental source areas, is seasonally variable both in intensity and extent, being most prominent in winter. In the southern hemisphere, the subtropical anticyclones are oceanic, except over southern Australia in winter.

The latitude of the subtropical high-pressure belt depends on the meridional temperature difference between the equator and the pole and on the temperature lapse rate (i.e. vertical stability). The greater the meridional temperature difference the more equatorward is the location of the subtropical high-pressure belt (Figure 7.11).

In low latitudes there is an equatorial trough of low pressure, associated broadly with the zone of maximum insolation and tending to migrate with it, especially towards the heated continental interiors of the summer hemisphere. Poleward of the subtropical anticyclones lies a general zone of subpolar low pressure. In the southern hemisphere, this sub-Antarctic trough is virtually circumpolar (see Figure 7.10), whereas in the northern hemisphere the major centres are near Iceland and the Aleutians in winter and primarily over continental areas in summer. It is commonly stated that in high latitudes there is a surface anticyclone due to the cold polar air, but in the Arctic this is true only in spring over the Canadian Arctic Archipelago. In winter, the polar basin is affected by high- and low-pressure cells with semi-permanent cold air anticyclones over Siberia and, to a lesser extent, northwestern Canada. The shallow Siberian high is in part a result of the exclusion of tropical airmasses from the interior by the Tibetan

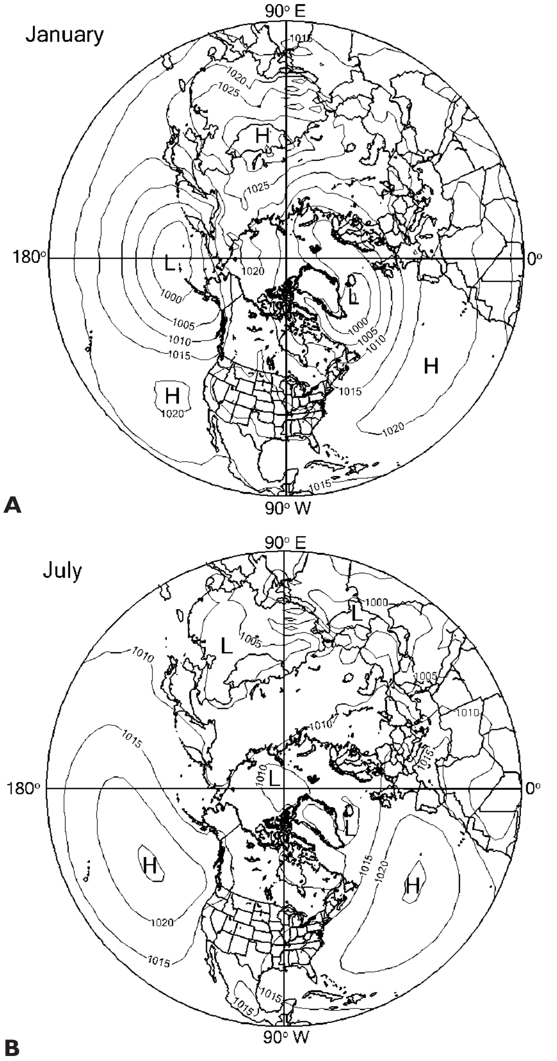


Figure 7.9 The mean sea-level pressure distribution (mb) in January and July for the northern hemisphere, 1970 to 1999.

Source: NCEP/NCAR Reanalysis Data from the NOAA-CIRES Climate Diagnostics Center.

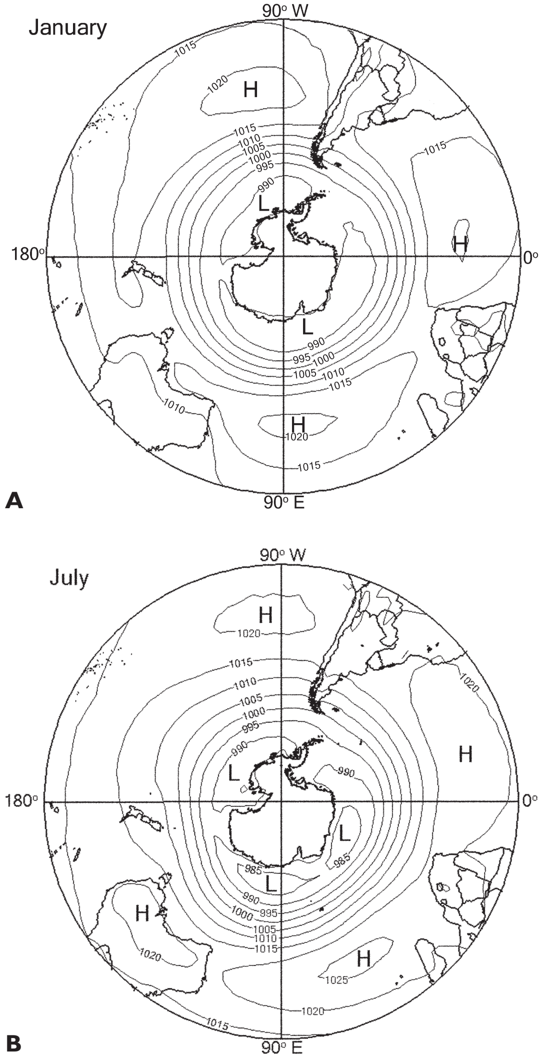


Figure 7.10 The mean sea-level pressure distribution (mb) in January and July for the southern hemisphere, 1970 to 1999. Isobars not plotted over the Antarctic ice sheet.

Source: NCEP/NCAR Reanalysis Data from the NOAA-CIRES Climate Diagnostics Center.

massif and the Himalayas. Over Antarctica, it is meaningless to speak of sea-level pressure but, on average, there is high pressure over the 3 to 4-km-high eastern Antarctic plateau.

The mean circulation in the southern hemisphere is much more zonal at both 700 mb and sea-level than in the northern hemisphere, due to the limited area and effect of landmasses. There is also little difference between summer and winter circulation intensity (see Figures 7.3, 7.4 and 7.10). It is important here to differentiate between mean pressure patterns and the highs and lows shown on synoptic weather maps. Thus, in the southern hemisphere, the zonality of the mean circulation conceals a high degree of day-to-day variability. The *synoptic map* is one that shows the principal pressure systems over a very large area at a given time, ignoring local circulations. The subpolar lows over Iceland and the Aleutians (see Figure 7.9) shown on

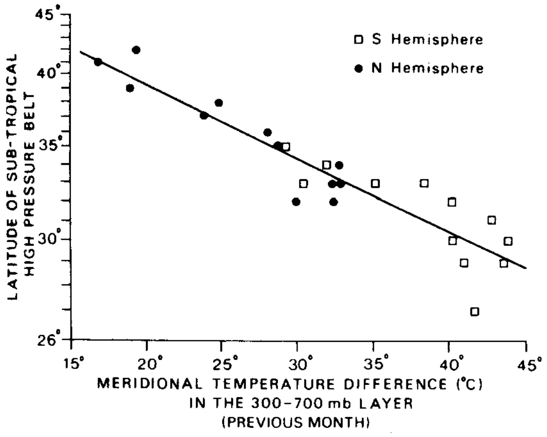


Figure 7.11 A plot of the meridional temperature difference at the 300 to 700-mb level in the previous month against the latitude of the centre of the subtropical high-pressure belt, assuming a constant vertical tropospheric lapse rate.

Source: After Flohn, in *Proceedings of the World Climate Conference*, WMO N0.537 (1979, p. 257, Fig. 2).

mean monthly pressure maps represent the passage of deep depressions across these areas downstream of the upper long-wave troughs. The mean high-pressure areas, however, represent more or less permanent highs. The intermediate zones located about 50 to 55°N and 40 to 60°S are affected by travelling depressions and ridges of high pressure; they appear on the mean maps as being of neither markedly high nor markedly low pressure. The movement of depressions is considered in Chapter 9F.

On comparing the surface and tropospheric pressure distributions for January (see Figures 7.3, 7.4 and 7.9, 7.10), it is apparent that only the subtropical high-pressure cells extend to high levels. The reasons for this are evident from Figures 7.1B and D. In summer, the equatorial low-pressure belt is also present aloft over South Asia. The subtropical cells are still discernible at 300 mb, showing them to be a fundamental feature of the global circulation and not merely a response to surface conditions.

B THE GLOBAL WIND BELTS

The importance of the subtropical high-pressure cells is evident from the above discussion. Dynamic, rather than immediately thermal, in origin, and situated between 20° and 30° latitude, they seem to provide the key to the world's major wind belts, shown by the maps in Figure 7.12. In the northern hemisphere, the pressure gradients surrounding these cells are strongest between October and April. In terms of actual pressure, however, oceanic cells experience their highest pressure in summer, the belt being counterbalanced at low levels by thermal low-pressure conditions over the continents. Their strength and persistence clearly mark them as the dominating factor controlling the position and activities both of the trades and the westerlies.

1 The trade winds

The trades (or tropical easterlies) are important because of their great extent, affecting almost half the globe (see Figure 7.13). They originate at low latitudes on the margins of the subtropical high-pressure cells, and their constancy of direction and speed (about 7 m s^{-1}) is remarkable. Trade winds, like the westerlies, are strongest during the winter half-year, which suggests they are both controlled by the same fundamental mechanism.

The two trade wind systems tend to converge in the *equatorial trough* (of low pressure). Over the oceans, particularly the central Pacific, the convergence of these airstreams is often pronounced and in this sector the term *intertropical convergence zone* (ITCZ) is applicable. Generally, however, the convergence is discontinuous in space and time (see Plate 24). Equatorward of the main belts of the trades over the eastern Pacific and eastern Atlantic are regions of light, variable winds, known traditionally as the *doldrums* and much feared in past centuries by the crews of sailing ships. Their seasonal extent varies considerably: from July to September they spread westward into the central Pacific while in the Atlantic they extend to the coast of Brazil. A third major doldrum zone is located in the Indian Ocean and western Pacific. In March to April it stretches 16,000 km from East Africa to 180° longitude and is again very extensive during October to December.

2 The equatorial westerlies

In the summer hemisphere, and over continental areas especially, there is a narrow zone of generally westerly winds intervening between the two trade wind belts (Figures 7.12 and 7.14). This westerly system is well marked over Africa and South Asia in the northern hemisphere summer, when thermal heating over the

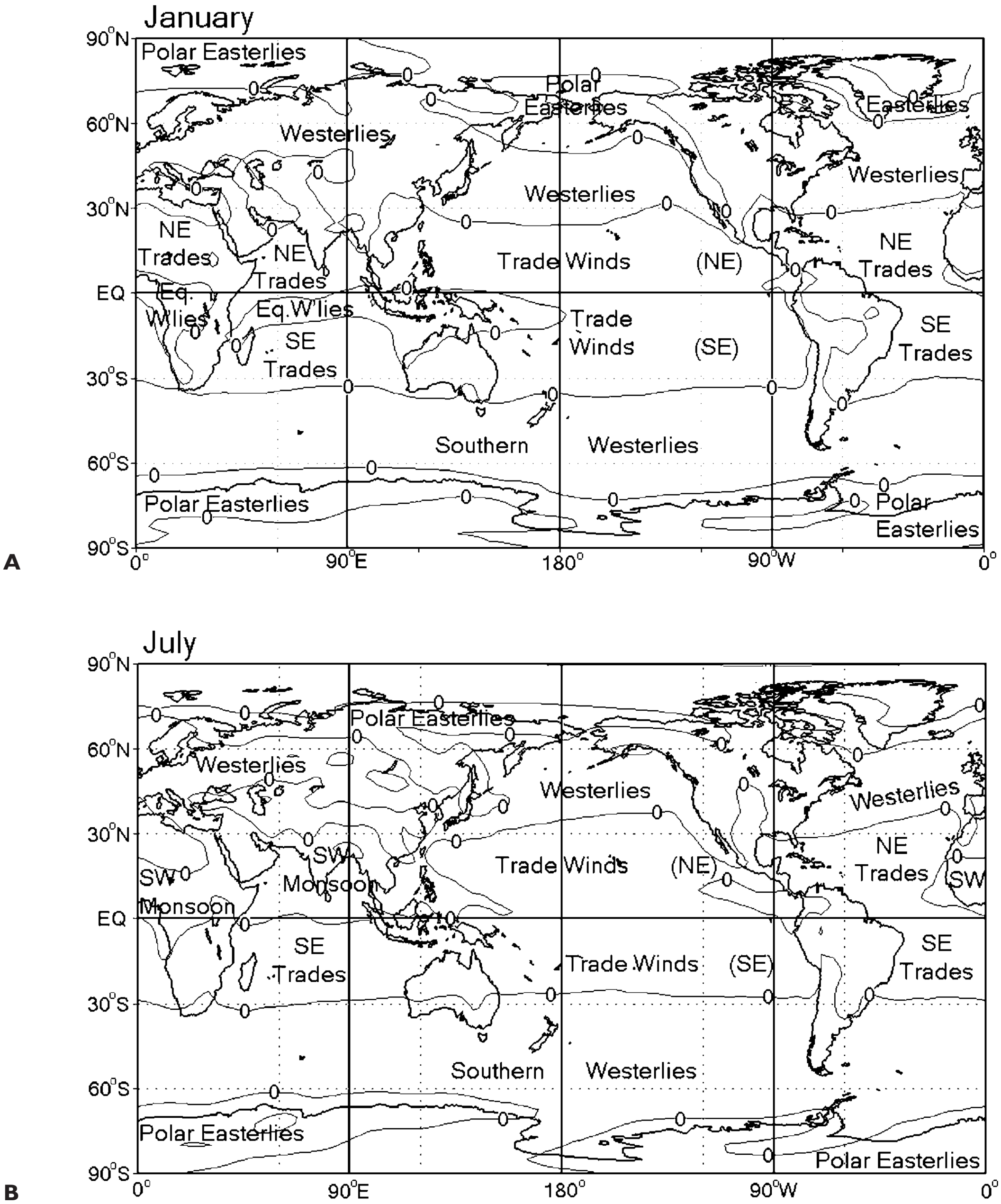

January
Polar Easterlies
Polar Easterlies
Easterlies
Westerlies
Westerlies
Westerlies
NE Trades
NE Trades
NE Trades
Trade Winds
(NE)
Eq. W'lies
Eq.W'lies
SE Trades
Trade Winds
(SE)
SE Trades
Southern
Westerlies
Polar Easterlies
Polar Easterlies
A
July
Polar Easterlies
Westerlies
Westerlies
Westerlies
SW Monsoon
SW Monsoon
Trade Winds
(NE)
NE Trades
SW
SE Trades
Trade Winds
(SE)
SE Trades
Southern
Westerlies
Polar Easterlies
Polar Easterlies
B
90°N
60°N
30°N
EQ
30°S
60°S
90°S
0°
90°E
180°
90°W
0°
0

Figure 7.12 Generalized global wind zones at 1000 mb in January (A) and July (B). The boundary of westerly and easterly zonal winds is the zero line. Across much of the central Pacific the trade winds are nearly zonal. Based on data for 1970 to 1999.

Source: NCEP/NCAR Reanalysis Data from the NOAA-CIRES Climate Diagnostics Center.

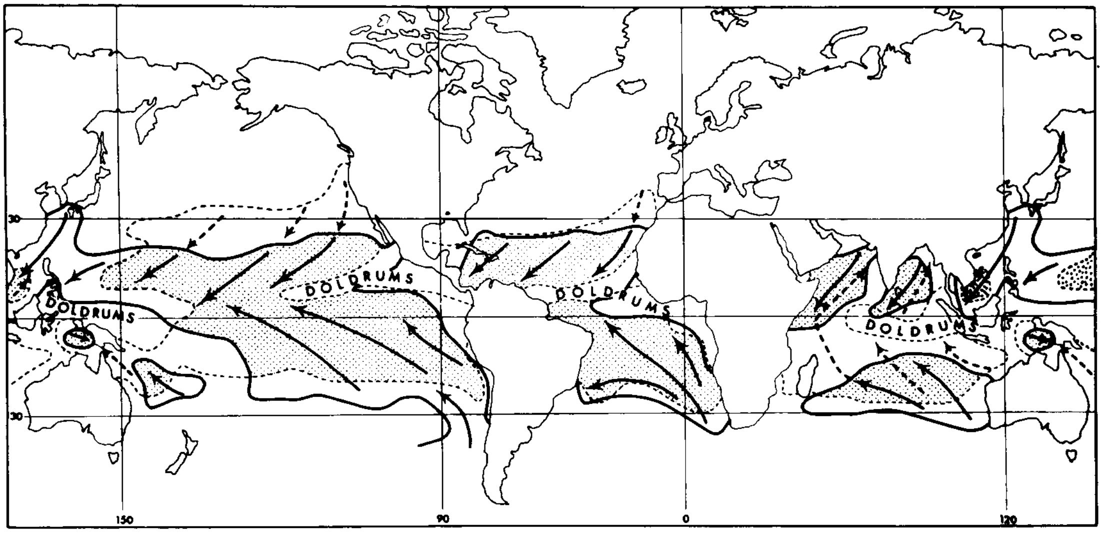


Figure 7.13 Map of the trade wind belts and the doldrums. The limits of the trades – enclosing the area within which 50 per cent of all winds are from the predominant quadrant – are shown by the solid (January) and the dashed (July) lines. The stippled area is affected by trade wind currents in both months. Schematic streamlines are indicated by the arrows – dashed (July) and solid (January, or both months).

Source: Based on Crowe (1949 and 1950).

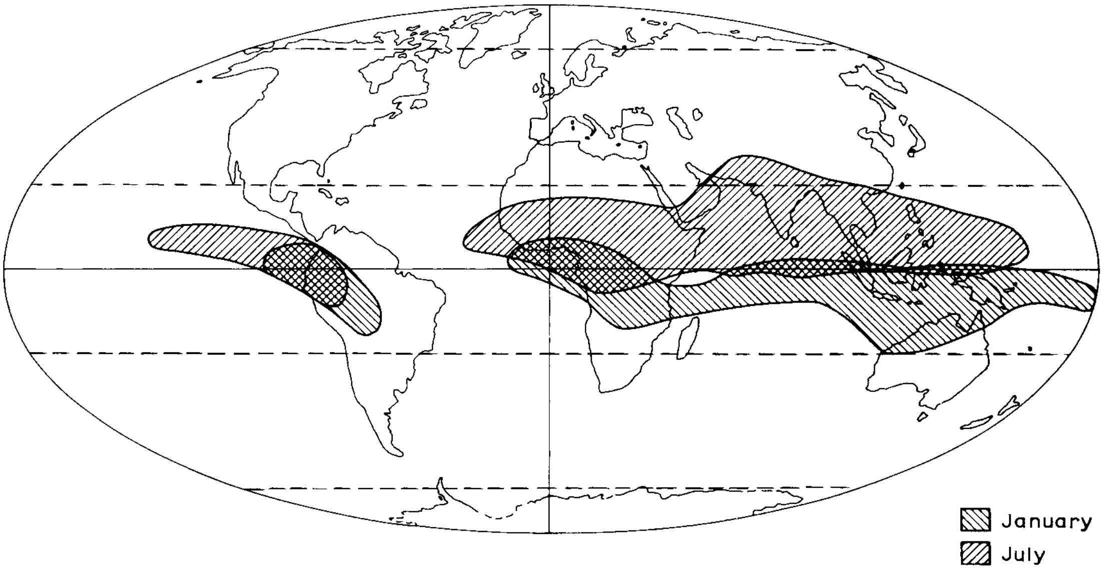


Figure 7.14 Distribution of the equatorial westerlies in any layer below 3 km (about 10,000 ft) for January and July.

Source: After Flohn in Indian Meteorological Department (1960).

continents assists the northward displacement of the equatorial trough (see Figure 11.1). Over Africa, the westerlies reach 2 to 3 km and over the Indian Ocean 5 to 6 km. In Asia, these winds are known as the 'Summer Monsoon', but this is now recognized to be a complex phenomenon, the cause of which is partly global and partly regional in origin (see Chapter 11C). The equatorial westerlies are not simply trades of the opposite hemisphere that recurve (due to the changed direction of the Coriolis deflection) on crossing the equator. There is *on average* a westerly component in the Indian Ocean at 2 to 3°S in June and July and at 2 to 3°N in December and January. Over the Pacific and Atlantic Oceans, the ITCZ does not shift sufficiently far from the equator to permit the development of this westerly wind belt.

3 The mid-latitude (Ferrel) westerlies

These are the winds of the mid-latitudes emanating from the poleward sides of the subtropical high-pressure cell (see Figure 7.12). They are far more variable than the trades in both direction and intensity, for in these regions the path of air movement is frequently affected by cells of low and high pressure, which travel generally eastward within the basic flow. In addition, in the northern hemisphere the preponderance of land areas with their irregular relief and changing seasonal pressure patterns tend to obscure the generally westerly airflow. The Isles of Scilly, off southwest England, lying in the south-westerlies, record 46 per cent of winds from between south-west and north-west, but fully 29 per cent from the opposite sector, between north-east and south-east.

The westerlies of the southern hemisphere are stronger and more constant in direction than those of the northern hemisphere because the broad expanses of ocean rule out the development of stationary pressure systems (Figure 7.15). Kerguelen Island (49°S, 70°E) has an annual frequency of 81 per cent of winds from between south-west and north-west, and the comparable figure of 75 per cent for Macquarie Island (54°S, 159°E) shows that this predominance is widespread over the southern oceans. However, the apparent zonality of the southern circumpolar vortex (see Figure 7.10) conceals considerable synoptic variability of wind velocity.

4 The polar easterlies

This term is applied to winds that occur between polar high pressure and subpolar low pressure. The polar high, as has already been pointed out, is by no means a quasi-permanent feature of the Arctic circulation. Easterly winds occur mainly on the poleward sides of depressions over the North Atlantic and North Pacific (Figure 7.12). If average wind directions are calculated for entire high-latitude belts there is found to be little sign of a coherent system of polar easterlies. The situation in high latitudes of the southern hemisphere is complicated by the presence of Antarctica, but anticyclones appear to be frequent over the high plateau of eastern Antarctica, and easterly winds prevail over the Indian Ocean sector of the Antarctic coastline. For example, in 1902 to 1903 the expedition ship *Gauss*, at 66°S, 90°E, observed winds between north-east and south-east for 70 per cent of the time, and at many coastal stations the constancy of easterlies may be compared with that of the trades. However, westerly components predominate over the seas off west Antarctica.

C THE GENERAL CIRCULATION

We next consider the mechanisms maintaining the *general circulation* of the atmosphere – the large-scale patterns of wind and pressure that persist throughout the year or recur seasonally. Reference has already been made to one of the primary driving forces, the imbalance of radiation between lower and higher latitudes (see Figure 3.25), but it is also important to appreciate the significance of energy transfers in the atmosphere. Energy is continually undergoing changes of form, as shown schematically in Figure 7.16. Unequal heating of the earth and its atmosphere by solar radiation generates potential energy, some of which is converted into kinetic energy by the rising of warm air and the sinking of cold air. Ultimately, the kinetic energy of atmospheric motion on all scales is dissipated by friction and small-scale turbulent eddies (i.e. internal viscosity). In order to maintain the general circulation, the rate of generation of kinetic energy must obviously balance its rate of dissipation. These rates are estimated to be about 2 W m^{-2}, which amounts to only 1 per cent of the average global solar radiation absorbed at the surface and in the atmosphere. In other words, the atmosphere is a highly inefficient heat engine (see Chapter 3E).

A second controlling factor is the angular momentum of the earth and its atmosphere. This is the

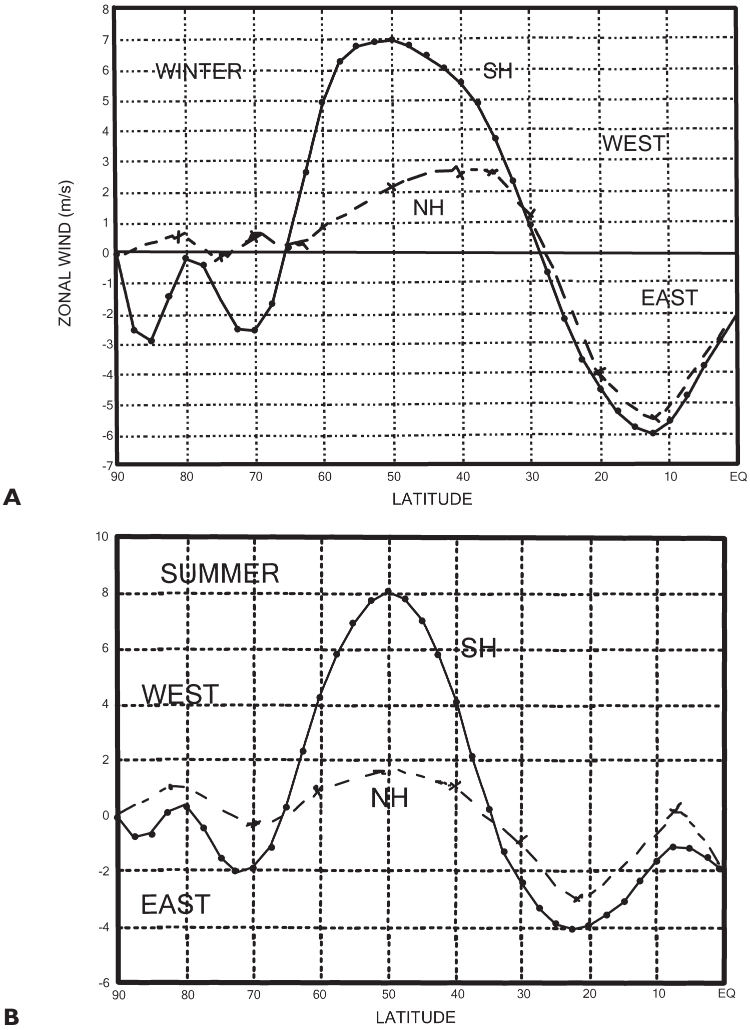


Figure 7.15 Profiles of the average west wind component (m s^{-1}) at sea-level in the northern and southern hemispheres during their respective winter (A) and summer (B) seasons, 1970 to 1999.

Source: NCEP/NCAR Reanalysis Data from the NOAA-CIRES Climate Diagnostics Center.

tendency for the earth's atmosphere to move, with the earth, around the axis of rotation. Angular momentum is proportional to the rate of spin (that is, the angular velocity) and the square of the distance of the air parcel from the axis of rotation. With a uniformly rotating earth and atmosphere, the total angular momentum must remain constant (in other words, there is a *conservation of angular momentum*). If, therefore, a large mass of air changes its position on the earth's surface such that its distance from the axis of rotation also changes, then its angular velocity must change in a manner so as to allow the angular momentum to remain constant. Naturally, absolute angular momentum is high at the equator (see Note 3) and decreases with latitude to become zero at the poles (that is, the axis of rotation), so air moving poleward tends to acquire progressively higher eastward velocities. For example, air travelling from 42° to 46° latitude and conserving its angular momentum would increase its speed relative to the earth's surface by 29 m s^{-1}. This is the same principle that causes an ice skater to spin faster when the arms are progressively drawn into the body. In practice, the increase of airmass velocity is countered or masked by the other forces affecting air movement (particularly friction), but there is no doubt that many of the important features of the general atmospheric circulation result from this poleward transfer of angular momentum.

The necessity for a poleward momentum transport is readily appreciated in terms of the maintenance of the mid-latitude westerlies (Figure 7.17). These winds

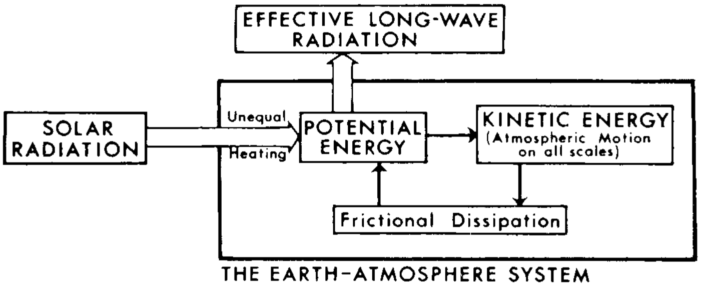

EFFECTIVE LONG-WAVE RADIATION
SOLAR RADIATION
Unequal Heating
POTENTIAL ENERGY
KINETIC ENERGY (Atmospheric Motion on all scales)
Frictional Dissipation
THE EARTH-ATMOSPHERE SYSTEM

Figure 7.16 Schematic changes of energy involving the earth–atmosphere system.

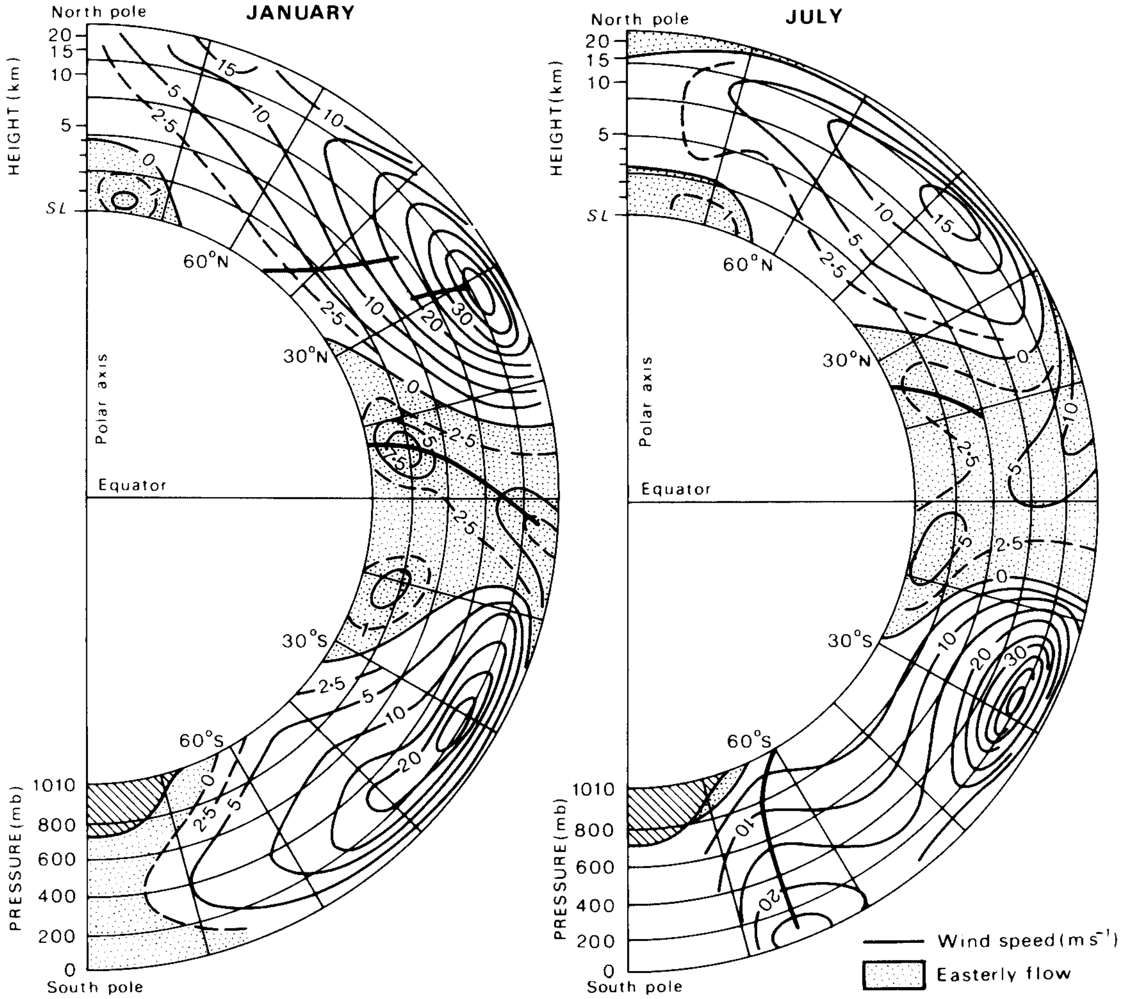


Figure 7.17 Mean zonal wind speeds (m s^{-1}) calculated for each latitude and for elevations up to more than 20 km. Note the weak mean easterly flow at all levels in low latitudes dominated by the Hadley cells, and the strong upper westerly flow in mid-latitudes, localized into the subtropical jet streams.

Source: After Mintz; from Henderson-Sellers and Robinson (1986).

continually impart westerly (eastward) relative momentum to the earth by friction, and it has been estimated that they would cease altogether due to this frictional dissipation of energy in little over a week if their momentum were not continually replenished from elsewhere. In low latitudes, the extensive tropical easterlies are gaining westerly relative momentum by friction as a result of the earth rotating in a direction opposite to their flow (see Note 4). This excess is transferred poleward with the maximum transport occurring, significantly, in the vicinity of the mean subtropical jet stream at about 250 mb at 30°N and 30°S.

1 Circulations in the vertical and horizontal planes

There are two possible ways in which the atmosphere can transport heat and momentum. One is by circulation in the vertical plane as indicated in Figure 7.18, which shows three meridional cells in each hemisphere. The low-latitude *Hadley cells* were considered to be analogous to the convective circulations set up when a pan of water is heated over a flame and are referred to as *thermally direct* cells. Warm air near the equator was thought to rise and generate a low-level flow towards the equator, the earth's rotation deflecting these currents, which thus form the northeast and southeast trades. This explanation was put forward by G. Hadley in 1735, although in 1856 W. Ferrel pointed out that the conservation of angular momentum would be a more effective factor in causing easterlies, because the Coriolis force is small in low latitudes. Poleward counter-currents aloft would complete the low-latitude cell, according to the above scheme, with the air sinking at about 30° latitude as it is cooled by radiation. However, this scheme is not entirely correct. The atmosphere does not have a simple heat source at the equator, the trades are not continuous around the globe (see Figure 7.13) and poleward upper flow occurs mainly at the western ends of the subtropical high-pressure cells aloft.

Figure 7.18 shows another thermally direct (polar) cell in high latitudes with cold dense air flowing out from a polar high pressure. The reality of this is doubtful, but in any case it is of limited importance to the general circulation in view of the small mass involved. It is worth noting that a single direct cell in each hemisphere is not possible, because the easterly winds near the surface would slow down the earth's rotation. On average the atmosphere must rotate with the earth, requiring a balance between easterly and westerly winds over the globe.

The mid-latitude *Ferrel cell* in Figure 7.18 is thermally indirect and would need to be driven by the other two. Momentum considerations indicate the necessity for upper easterlies in such a scheme, yet aircraft and balloon observations during the 1930s to 1940s demonstrated the existence of strong westerlies in the upper troposphere (see A.3, this chapter). Rossby modified the three-cell model to incorporate this fact, proposing that westerly momentum was transferred to middle latitudes from the upper branches of the cells in high and low latitudes. Troughs and ridges in the upper flow could, for example, accomplish such horizontal mixing.

These views underwent radical amendment from about 1948 onwards. The alternative means of

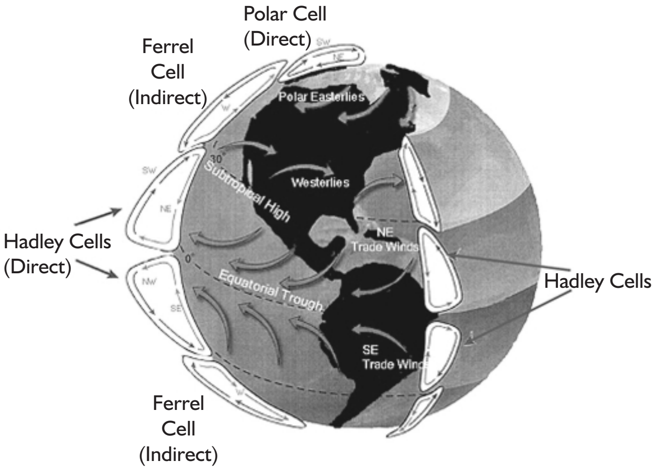


Figure 7.18 Schematic three-cell model of the meridional circulation and main wind belts in each hemisphere.

Source: Adapted from NASA.

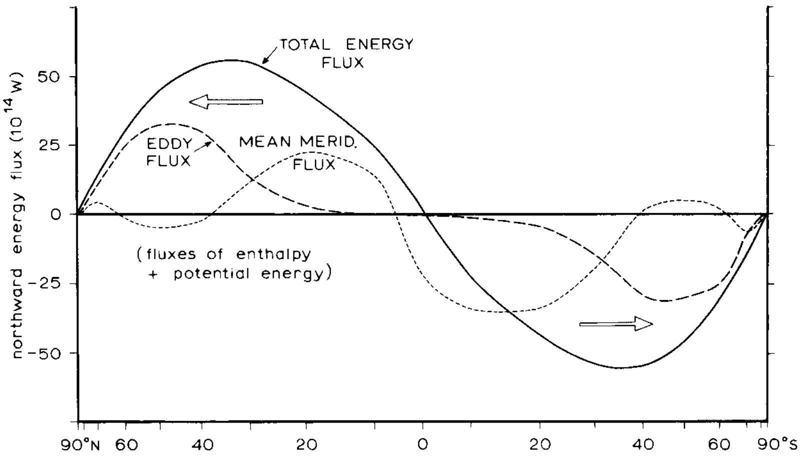


Figure 7.19 The poleward transport of energy, showing the importance of horizontal eddies in mid-latitudes.

transporting heat and momentum – by horizontal circulations – had been suggested in the 1920s by A. Defant and H. Jeffreys but could not be tested until adequate upper-air data became available. Calculations for the northern hemisphere by V. P. Starr and R. M. White at the Massachusetts Institute of Technology showed that in middle latitudes horizontal cells transport most of the required heat and momentum polewards. This operates through the mechanism of the quasi-stationary highs and the travelling highs and lows near the surface acting in conjunction with their related wave patterns aloft. The importance of such horizontal eddies for energy transport is shown in Figure 7.19 (see also Figure 3.27). The modern concept of the general circulation therefore views the energy of the zonal winds as being derived from travelling waves, not from meridional circulations. In lower latitudes, however, eddy transports are insufficient to account for the total energy transport required for energy balance. For this reason the mean Hadley cell is a feature of current representations of the general circulation, as shown in Figure 7.20. The low-latitude circulation is recognized as being complex. In particular, vertical heat transport in the Hadley cell is effected by giant cumulonimbus clouds in disturbance systems associated with the equatorial trough (of low pressure), which is located on average at 5°S in January and at 10°N in July (see Figure 11.1). The Hadley cell of the winter hemisphere is by far the most important, since it gives rise to low-level transequatorial flow into the summer hemisphere. The traditional model of global circulation with twin cells, symmetrical about the equator, is found only in spring/autumn.

Longitudinally, the Hadley cells are linked with the monsoon regimes of the summer hemisphere. Rising air over South Asia (and also South America and Indonesia) is associated with east–west (zonal) outflow, and these systems are known as *Walker circulations* (pp. 145–6). The poleward return transport of the meridional Hadley cells takes place in troughs that extend into low latitudes from the mid-latitude westerlies. This tends to occur at the western ends of the upper tropospheric subtropical high-pressure cells. Horizontal mixing predominates in middle and high latitudes, although it is also thought that there is a weak indirect mid-latitude cell in much reduced form (Figure 7.20). The relationship of the jet streams to regions of steep meridional temperature gradient has already been noted (see Figure 7.7). A complete explanation of the two wind maxima and their role in the general circulation is still

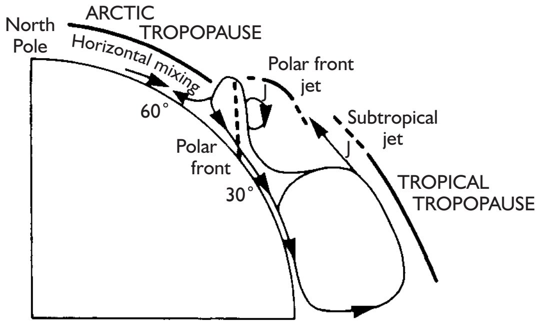


Figure 7.20 General meridional circulation model for the northern hemisphere in winter.

Source: After Palmén (1951); from Barry (1967).

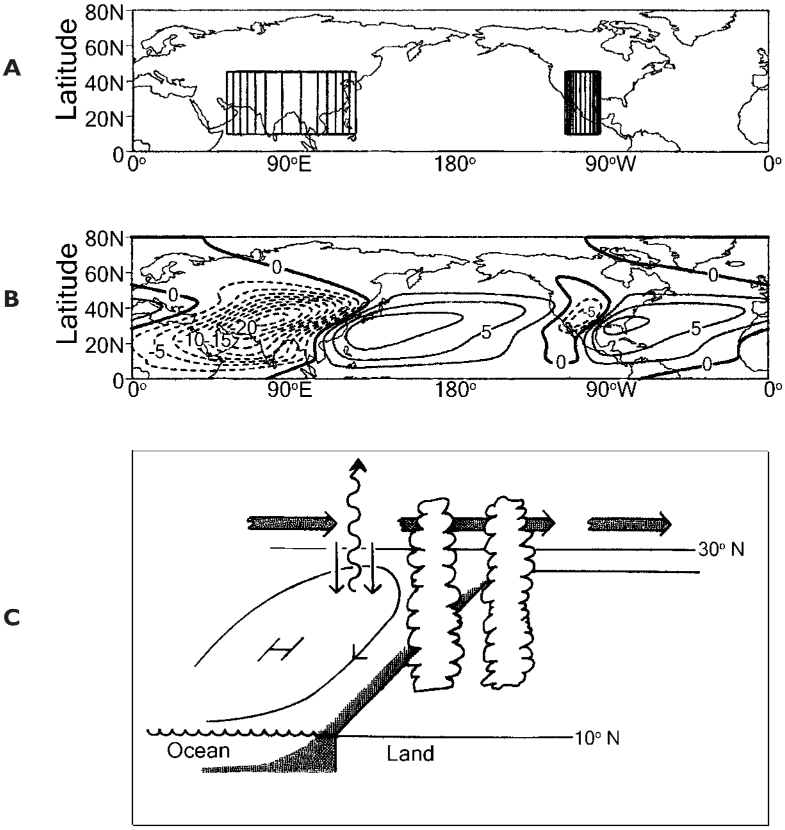


Figure 7.21 Schematic illustrations of suggested processes that form/maintain the northern subtropical anticyclones in summer. (A) Boxes where summer heat sources are imposed in the atmospheric model; (B) Pattern of resultant stationary planetary waves (solid/dashed lines denote positive/negative height anomalies) (Chen *et al.*, 2001); (C) Schematic of the circulation elements proposed by Hoskins (1996). Monsoon heating over the continents with descent west- and poleward where there is interaction with the westerlies. The descent leads to enhanced radiative cooling acting as a positive feedback and to equatorward motion; the latter drives Ekman ocean drift and upwelling.

Sources: From P. Chen *et al.* (2001) *J. Atmos. Sci.*, 58, p.1832, Fig. 8(a); and from B. J. Hoskins (1996) *Bull. Amer. Met. Soc.* 77, p. 1291, Fig. 5. Courtesy of the American Meteorological Society.

lacking, but they undoubtedly form an essential part of the story.

In the light of these theories, the origin of the subtropical anticyclones that play such an important role in the world's climates may be re-examined. Their existence has been variously ascribed to: (1) the piling up of poleward-moving air as it is increasingly deflected eastward through the earth's rotation and the conservation of angular momentum; (2) the sinking of poleward currents aloft by radiational cooling; (3) the general necessity for high pressure near 30° latitude separating approximately equal zones of east and west winds; or to combinations of such mechanisms. An adequate theory must account not only for their permanence but also for their cellular nature and the vertical inclination of the axes. The above discussion shows that ideas of a simplified Hadley cell and momentum conservation are only partially correct. Moreover, recent studies rather surprisingly show no relationship, on a seasonal basis, between the intensity of the Hadley cell and that of the subtropical highs. Descent occurs near 25°N in winter, whereas North Africa and the Mediterranean are generally driest in summer, when the vertical motion is weak.

Two new ideas have recently been proposed (Figure 7.21). One suggests that the low-level subtropical highs in the North Pacific and North Atlantic in summer are remote responses to stationary planetary waves generated by heat sources over Asia. In contrast to this view of eastward downstream wave propagation, another model proposes regional effects from the heating over the summer monsoon regions of India, West Africa and southwestern North America that act upstream on the western and northern margins of these heat sources. The Indian monsoon heating leads to a vertical cell with descent over the eastern Mediterranean, eastern Sahara Desert and the Kyzylkum–Karakum Desert. However, while the ascending air originates in the tropical easterlies, Rossby waves in the mid-latitude westerlies are thought to be the source of the descending air and this may provide a link with the first mechanism. Neither of these arguments addresses the winter subtropical anticyclones. Clearly, these features await a definitive and comprehensive explanation.

It is probable that the high-level anticyclonic cells that are evident on synoptic charts (these tend to merge on mean maps) are related to anticyclonic eddies that develop on the equatorward side of jet streams. Theoretical and observational studies show that, as a result of the latitudinal variation of the Coriolis parameter, cyclones in the westerlies tend to move poleward and anticyclonic cells equatorward. Hence the subtropical anticyclones are constantly regenerated. There is a statistical relationship between the latitude of the subtropical highs and the mean meridional temperature gradient (see Figure 7.11); a stronger gradient causes an equatorward shift of the high pressure, and vice versa. This shift is evident on a seasonal basis. The cellular pattern at the surface clearly reflects the influence of heat sources. The cells are stationary and elongated north–south over the northern hemisphere oceans in summer, when continental heating creates low pressure and also the meridional temperature gradient is weak. In winter, on the other hand, the zonal flow is stronger in response to a greater meridional temperature gradient, and continental cooling produces east–west elongation of the cells. Undoubtedly, surface and high-level factors reinforce one another in some sectors and tend to cancel each other out in others.

Just as Hadley circulations represent major meridional (i.e. north–south) components of the atmospheric circulation, so Walker circulations represent the large-

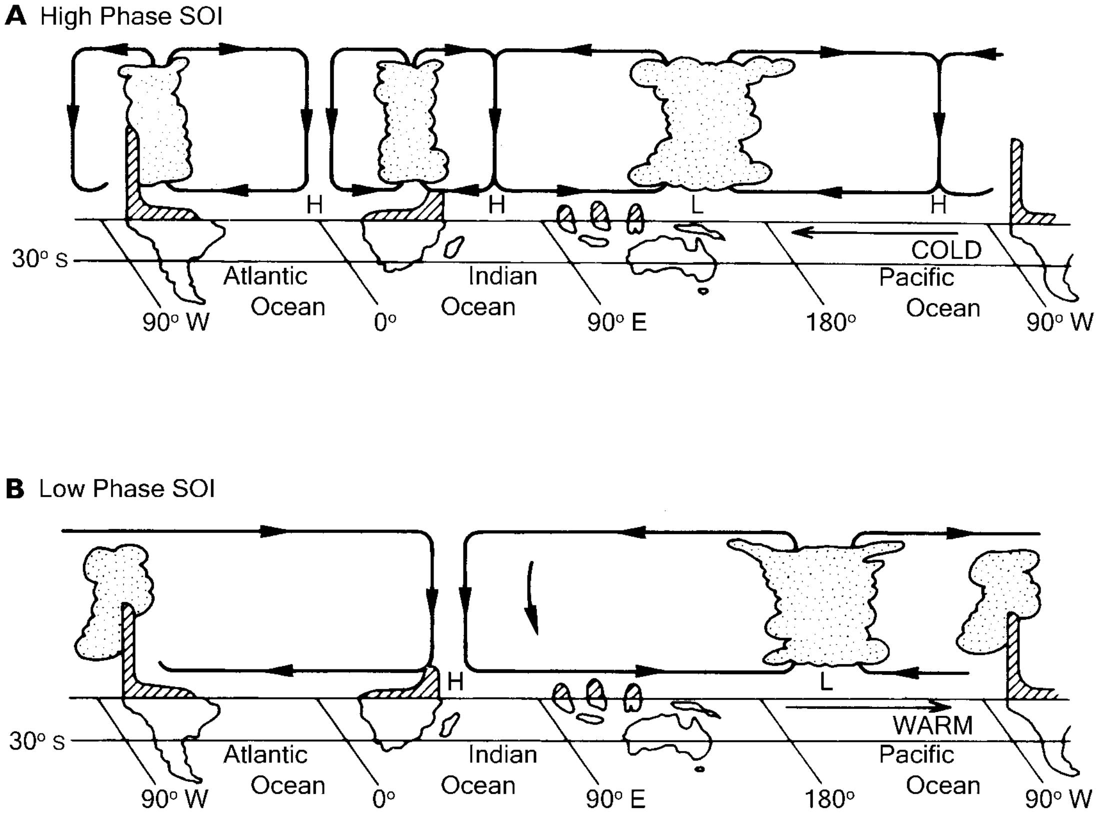


Figure 7.22 Schematic cross-sections of the Walker circulation along the equator (based on computations of Y. Tourre (1984)) during the high (A) and low (B) phases of the Southern Oscillation (SO). The high (low) phases correspond to non-ENSO (ENSO) patterns (see p. 146). In the high phase there is rising air and heavy rains over the Amazon basin, central Africa and Indonesia, western Pacific. In the low phase (ENSO 1982–83) pattern the ascending Pacific branch is shifted east of the date-line and elsewhere convection is suppressed due to subsidence. The shading indicates the topography in exaggerated vertical scale.

Source: Based on K. Wyrtki (by permission of the World Meteorological Organization 1985).

scale zonal (i.e. east–west) components of tropical airflow. These zonal circulations are driven by major east–west pressure gradients that are set up by differences in vertical motion. On one hand, air rises over heated continents and the warmer parts of the oceans and, on the other, air subsides over cooler parts of the oceans, over continental areas where deep high-pressure systems have become established, and in association with subtropical high-pressure cells. Sir Gilbert Walker first identified these circulations in 1922 to 1923 through his discovery of an inverse correlation between pressure over the eastern Pacific Ocean and Indonesia. The strength and phase of this so-called *Southern Oscillation* is commonly measured by the pressure difference between Tahiti (18°S, 150°W) and Darwin, Australia (12°S, 130°E). The Southern Oscillation Index (SOI) has two extreme phases (Figure 7.22):

- *positive* when there is a strong high pressure in the southeast Pacific and a low centred over Indonesia with ascending air and convective precipitation;
- *negative* (or low) when the area of low pressure and convection is displaced eastward towards the Date Line.

Positive (negative) SOI implies strong easterly trade winds (low-level equatorial westerlies) over the central–western Pacific. These Walker circulations are subject to fluctuations in which an oscillation (El Niño–Southern Oscillation: ENSO) between high phases (i.e. non-ENSO events) and low phases (i.e. ENSO events) is the most striking (see Chapter 11G.1):

1. *High phase* (Figure 7.22A). This features four major zonal cells involving rising low-pressure limbs and accentuated precipitation over Amazonia, central Africa and Indonesia/India; and subsiding high-pressure limbs and decreased precipitation over the eastern Pacific, South Atlantic and western Indian Ocean. During this phase, low-level easterlies strengthen over the Pacific and subtropical westerly jet streams in both hemispheres weaken, as does the Pacific Hadley cell.
2. *Low phase* (Figure 7.22B). This phase has five major zonal cells involving rising low-pressure limbs and accentuated precipitation over the South Atlantic, the western Indian Ocean, the western Pacific and the eastern Pacific; and subsiding high-pressure limbs and decreased precipitation over Amazonia, central Africa, Indonesia/India and the central Pacific. During this phase, low-level westerlies and high-level easterlies dominate over the Pacific, and subtropical westerly jet streams in both hemispheres intensify, as does the Pacific Hadley cell.

2 Variations in the circulation of the northern hemisphere

The pressure and contour patterns during certain periods of the year may be radically different from those indicated by the mean maps (see Figures 7.3 and 7.4). Two distinct kinds of variability are of especial importance. One involves the zonal westerly circulation on a scale of weeks and the other north–south oscillations in pressure over the North Atlantic creating interannual differences in climate.

a Zonal index variations

Variations of three to eight weeks' duration are observed in the strength of the zonal westerlies, averaged around the hemisphere. They are rather more noticeable in the winter months, when the general circulation is strongest. The nature of the changes is illustrated schematically in Figure 7.23. The mid-latitude westerlies develop waves, and the troughs and ridges become accentuated, ultimately splitting up into a cellular pattern with pronounced meridional flow at certain longitudes. The strength of the westerlies between 35° and 55°N is termed the *zonal index*; strong zonal westerlies are representative of a high index, and marked cellular patterns occur with a low index (see Plate 15). A relatively low index may also occur if the westerlies are well south of their usual latitudes and, paradoxically, such expansion of the zonal circulation pattern is associated with strong westerlies in lower latitudes than usual. Figures 7.24 and 7.25 illustrate the mean 700-mb contour patterns and zonal wind speed profiles for two contrasting months. In December 1957, the westerlies were stronger than normal north of 40°N, and the troughs and ridges were weakly developed, whereas in February 1958 there was a low zonal index and an expanded circumpolar vortex, giving rise to strong low-latitude westerlies. The 700-mb pattern shows very weak subtropical highs, deep meridional troughs and a blocking anticyclone off Alaska (see Figure 7.25A). The cause of these variations is still uncertain, although it would appear that fast zonal flow is unstable and tends

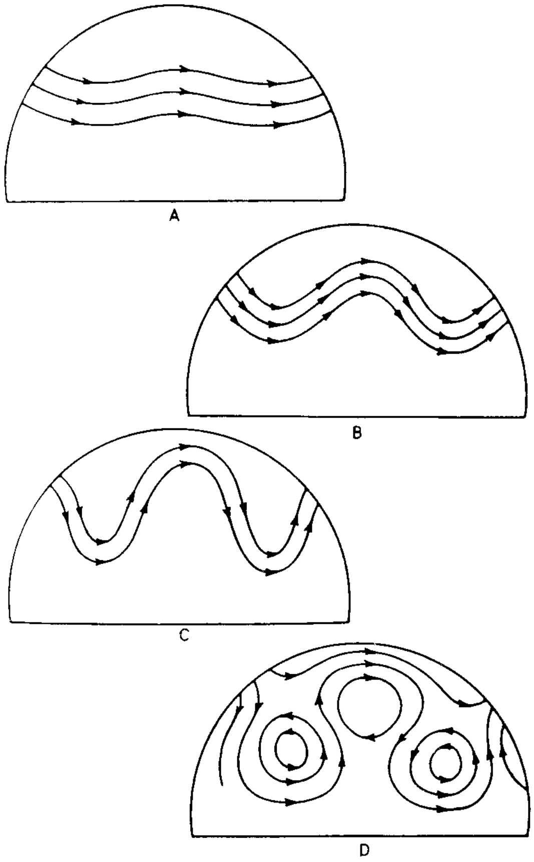


Figure 7.23 The index cycle. A schematic illustration of the development of cellular patterns in the upper westerlies, usually occupying three to eight weeks and being especially active in February and March in the northern hemisphere. Statistical studies indicate no regular periodicity in this sequence. (A) High zonal index. The jet stream and the westerlies lie north of their mean position. The westerlies are strong, pressure systems have a dominantly east–west orientation, and there is little north–south airmass exchange. (B) and (C) The jet expands and increases in velocity, undulating with increasingly larger oscillations. (D) Low zonal index. The latter is associated with a complete breakup and cellular fragmentation of the zonal westerlies, formation of stationary deep occluding cold depressions in lower mid-latitudes and deep warm blocking anticyclones at higher latitudes. This fragmentation commonly begins in the east and extends westward at a rate of about 60° of longitude per week.

Source: After Namias; from Haltiner and Martin (1957).

to break down. This tendency is certainly increased in the northern hemisphere by the arrangement of the continents and oceans.

Detailed studies are now beginning to show that the irregular index fluctuations, together with secondary circulation features, such as cells of low and high pressure at the surface or long waves aloft, play a major role in redistributing momentum and energy. Laboratory experiments with rotating 'dishpans' of water to simulate the atmosphere, and computer studies using numerical models of the atmosphere's behaviour, demonstrate that a Hadley circulation cannot provide an adequate mechanism for transporting heat polewards. In consequence, the meridional temperature gradient increases and eventually the flow becomes unstable in the Hadley mode, breaking down into a number of cyclonic and anticyclonic eddies. This phenomenon is referred to as *baroclinic instability*. In energy terms, the potential energy in the zonal flow is converted into potential and kinetic energy of eddies. It is also now known that the kinetic energy of the zonal flow is derived *from* the eddies, the reverse of the classical picture, which viewed the disturbances within the global wind belts as superimposed detail. The significance of atmospheric disturbances and the variations of the circulation are becoming increasingly evident. The mechanisms of the circulation are, however, greatly complicated by numerous interactions and *feedback processes*, particularly those involving the oceanic circulation discussed below.

b North Atlantic Oscillation

The relative strength of the Icelandic low and Azores high was first observed to fluctuate on annual to decadal scales by Sir Gilbert Walker in the 1920s. Fifty years later, van Loon and Rogers discussed the related west–east 'seesaw' in winter temperatures between western Europe and western Greenland associated with the north–south change in pressure gradient over the North Atlantic. The North Atlantic Oscillation (NAO) is a north–south oscillation in the pressure field between the Icelandic low (65°N) and the Azores high (40°N). The relationship between the positive and negative modes of the NAO noted by Walker, and the associated temperature and other anomaly patterns, are shown in Plate E. When the two pressure cells are well developed as in January 1984, the zonal westerlies are strong. Western Europe has a mild winter, while the intense Icelandic low gives strong northerly flow in Baffin Bay, low temperatures in western Greenland and extensive sea ice in the Labrador Sea. In the negative phase the cells are weak, as in January 1970, and opposite anomalies are formed. In extreme cases, pressure can be higher

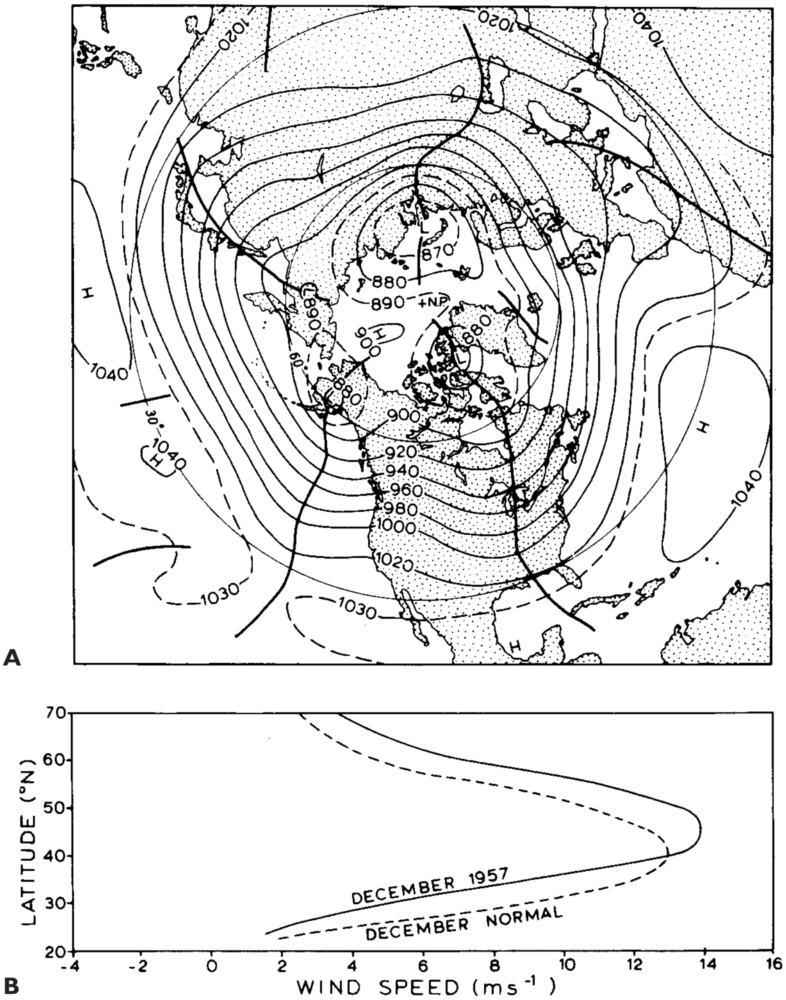


Figure 7.24 (A) Mean 700-mb contours (in tens of feet) for December 1957, showing a fast, westerly, small-amplitude flow typical of a high zonal index. (B) Mean 700-mb zonal wind speed profiles (m s^{-1}) in the western hemisphere for December 1957, compared with those of a normal December. The westerly winds were stronger than normal and displaced to the north.

Source: After Dunn (1957).

near Iceland than to the south giving easterlies across western Europe and the eastern North Atlantic.

The NAO appears to be the major component of a wider pressure oscillation between the north polar region and mid-latitudes – the Arctic Oscillation (AO). However, the mid-latitude zone responds with varying intensity both geographically and temporally. There is a much weaker mid-latitude signature of the Arctic Oscillation over the North Pacific Ocean than over the North Atlantic. Nevertheless, in the southern hemisphere there is a corresponding Antarctic Oscillation between the polar region and southern mid-latitudes. For this reason, some researchers consider the two zonally symmetric modes to be more fundamental features of the global circulation. They also extend upward throughout the troposphere. In the twentieth century, the NAO index (of south–north pressure difference) was generally low from 1925 to 1970. Air temperatures in the northern hemisphere were above normal and cyclones along the east coast of North America tended to be located over the ocean, thus causing longer, drier east coast summers. Prior to 1925, a regime of colder climatic conditions was associated with a higher NAO index. Since 1989, the NAO has been mostly positive, except for the winters of 1995 to 1996 and 1996 to 1997. This recent phase has given rise to winters that, compared to normal, are warmer over much of Europe, wetter (drier) over northern Europe–Scandinavia (southern Europe–Mediterranean), in association with a northward shift of storm tracks.

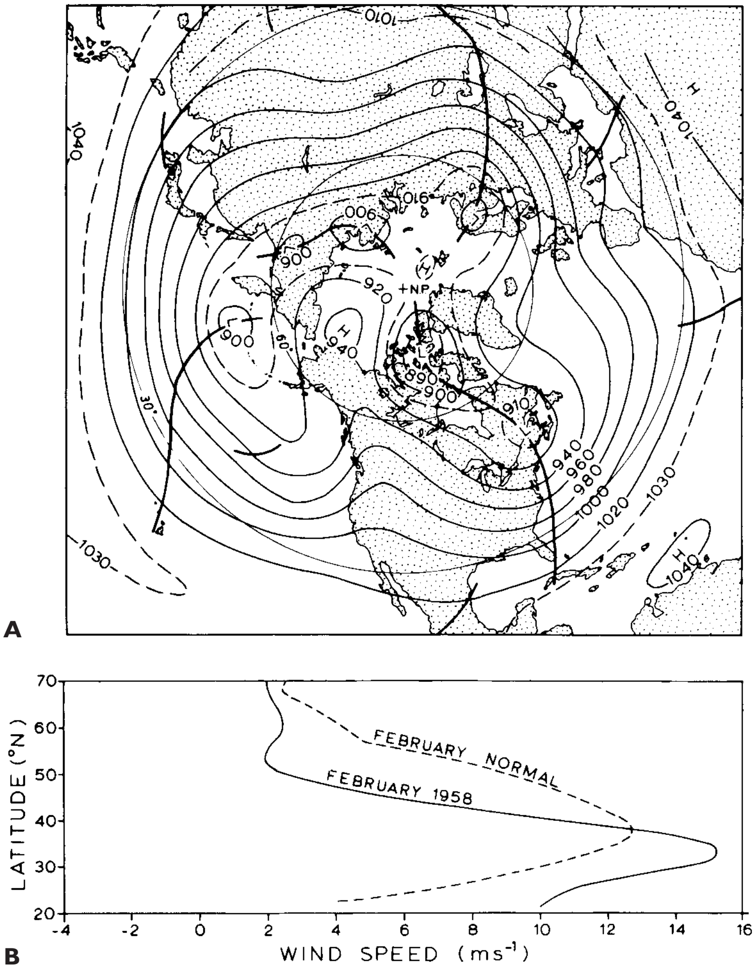

A
1010
1040
1040
H
900
920
+NP
H
940
L
900
60°
30°
890
900
910
940
960
980
1000
1020
1030
1030
H
1040
B
LATITUDE (°N)
70
60
50
40
30
20
-4
-2
0
2
4
6
8
10
12
14
16
WIND SPEED (ms⁻¹)
FEBRUARY NORMAL
FEBRUARY 1958

Figure 7.25 (A) Mean 700-mb contours (in tens of feet) for February 1958. (B) Mean 700-mb zonal wind speed profiles (m s^{-1}) in the western hemisphere for February 1958, compared with those of a normal February. The westerly winds were stronger than normal at low latitudes, with a peak at about 33°N.

Source: After Klein (1958), by permission of the American Meteorological Society.

D OCEAN STRUCTURE AND CIRCULATION

The oceans occupy 71 per cent of the earth's surface, with over 60 per cent of the global ocean area in the southern hemisphere. Three-quarters of the ocean area are between 3000 and 6000 m deep, whereas only 11 per cent of the land area exceeds 2000 m altitude.

1 Above the thermocline

a Vertical

The major atmosphere–ocean interactive processes (Figure 7.26) involve heat exchanges, evaporation, density changes and wind shear. The effect of these processes is to produce a vertical oceanic layering that is of great climatic significance:

1. At the ocean surface, winds produce a *thermally mixed surface layer* averaging a few tens of metres deep poleward of latitude 60°, 400 m at latitude 40° and 100 to 200 m at the equator.
2. Below the relatively warm mixed layer is the *thermocline*, a layer in which temperature decreases and density increases (the *pycnocline*) markedly with depth. The thermocline layer, within which stable stratification tends to inhibit vertical mixing, acts as a barrier between the warmer surface water and the colder deep-layer water. In the open ocean between latitudes 60° north and south the thermocline layer extends from depths of about 200 m to a maximum

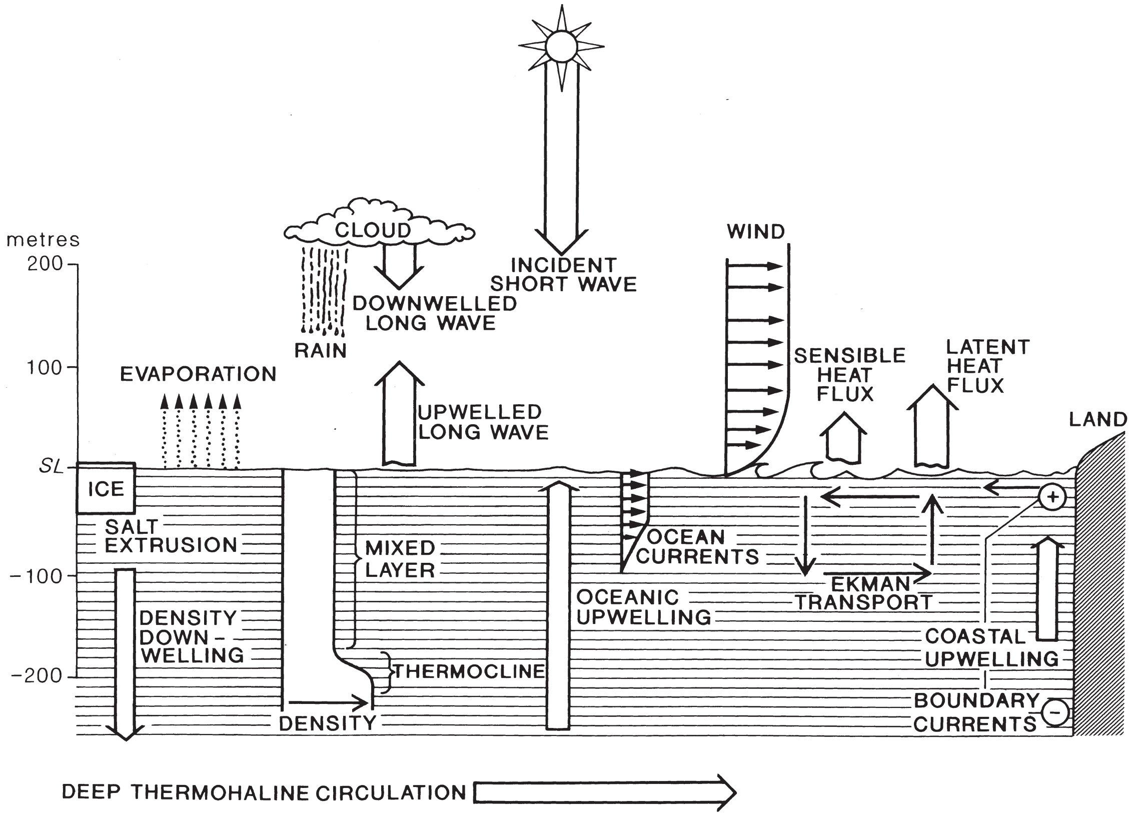

metres
200
100
SL
-100
-200
CLOUD
RAIN
DOWNWELLED LONG WAVE
INCIDENT SHORT WAVE
WIND
EVAPORATION
UPWELLED LONG WAVE
SENSIBLE HEAT FLUX
LATENT HEAT FLUX
LAND
ICE
SALT EXTRUSION
MIXED LAYER
OCEAN CURRENTS
DENSITY DOWN-WELLING
OCEANIC UPWELLING
EKMAN TRANSPORT
COASTAL UPWELLING
THERMOCLINE
DENSITY
BOUNDARY CURRENTS
+
−
DEEP THERMOHALINE CIRCULATION

Figure 7.26 Generalized depiction of the major atmosphere–ocean interaction processes. The sea ice thickness is not to scale.

Source: Modified from NASA (n.d.). Courtesy of NASA.

of 1000 m (at the equator from about 200 to 800 m; at 40° latitude from about 400 to about 1100 m). Poleward of 60° latitude, the colder deep-layer water approaches the surface. The location of the steepest temperature gradient is termed the *permanent thermocline*, which has a dynamically inhibiting effect in the ocean similar to that of a major inversion in the atmosphere. However, heat exchanges take place between the oceans and the atmosphere by turbulent mixing above the permanent thermocline, as well as by upwelling and downwelling.

During spring and summer in the mid-latitudes, accentuated surface heating leads to the development of a *seasonal thermocline* occurring at depths of 50 to 100 m. Surface cooling and wind mixing tend to destroy this layer in autumn and winter.

Below the thermocline layer is a *deep layer* of cold, dense water. Within this, water movements are mainly driven by density variations, commonly due to salinity differences (i.e. having a *thermohaline* mechanism).

In terms also of circulation the ocean may be viewed as consisting of a large number of layers: the topmost subject to wind stress, the next layer down to frictional drag by the layer above, and so on; all layers being acted on by the Coriolis force. The surface water tends to be deflected to the right (in the northern hemisphere) by an angle averaging some 45° from the surface wind direction and moving at about 3 per cent of its velocity. This deflection increases with depth as the friction-driven velocity of the current decreases exponentially (Figure 7.27). On the equator, where there is no Coriolis force, the surface water moves in the same direction as the surface wind. This theoretical Ekman spiral was developed under assumptions of idealized ocean depth, wind constancy, uniform water viscosity and constant water pressure at a given depth. This is seldom the case in reality, and under most oceanic conditions

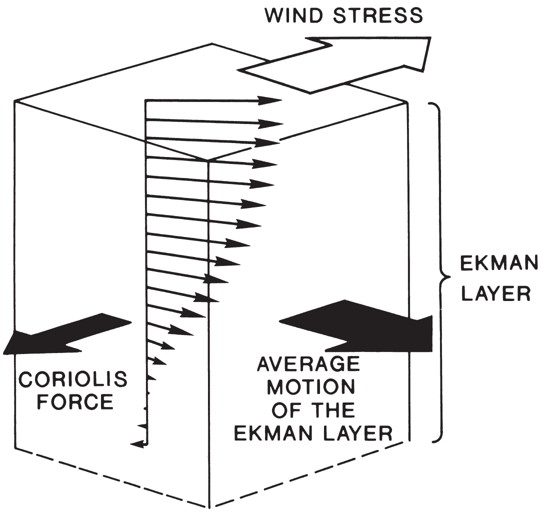


Figure 7.27 The Ekman ocean current pattern in the northern hemisphere. Compare Figure 6.5.

Source: Bearman (1989). Copyright © Butterworth-Heinemann, Oxford.

the thickness of the wind-driven Ekman layer is about 100 to 200 m. North (south) of 30°N, the westerly (easterly) winds create a southward (northward) transport of water in the Ekman layer giving rise to a convergence and sinking of water around 30°N, referred to as *Ekman pumping*.

b Horizontal

(1) General

Comparisons can be made between the structure and dynamics of the oceans and the atmosphere in respect of their behaviour above the permanent thermocline and below the tropopause – their two most significant stabilizing boundaries. Within these two zones, fluid-like circulations are maintained by meridional thermal energy gradients, dominantly directed poleward (Figure 7. 28), and acted upon by the Coriolis force. Prior to the 1970s oceanography was studied in a coarsely averaged spatial–temporal framework similar to that applied in classical climatology. Now, however, its similarities with modern meteorology are apparent. The major differences in behaviour between the oceans and the atmosphere derive from the greater density and viscosity of ocean waters and the much greater frictional constraints placed on their global movement.

Many large-scale characteristics of ocean dynamics resemble features of the atmosphere. These include: the general circulation, major oceanic gyres (similar to atmospheric subtropical high-pressure cells), major jet-like streams such as sections of the Gulf Stream (see Figure 7.29), large-scale areas of subsidence and uplift, the stabilizing layer of the permanent thermocline, boundary layer effects, frontal discontinuities created by temperature and density contrasts, and water mass ('mode water') regions.

Mesoscale characteristics that have atmospheric analogues are oceanic cyclonic and anticyclonic eddies, current meanders, cast-off ring vortices, jet filaments, and circulations produced by irregularities in the north equatorial current.

(2) Macroscale

The most obvious feature of the surface oceanic circulation is the control exercised over it by the low-level planetary wind circulation, especially by the subtropical oceanic high-pressure cells and the westerlies. The oceanic circulation also displays seasonal reversals of flow in the monsoonal regions of the northern Indian Ocean, off East Africa and off northern Australia (see Figure 7.29). As water moves meridionally, the conservation of angular momentum implies changes in relative vorticity (see pp. 119 and 140), with poleward-moving currents acquiring anticyclonic vorticity and equatorward-moving currents acquiring cyclonic vorticity.

The more or less symmetrical atmospheric subtropical high-pressure cells produce oceanic gyres with centres displaced towards the west sides of the oceans in the northern hemisphere. The gyres in the southern hemisphere are more symmetrically located than those in the northern, due possibly to their connection with the powerful west wind drift. This results, for example, in the Brazil current being not much stronger than the Benguela current. The most powerful southern hemisphere current, the Agulhas, possesses nothing like the jet-like character of its northern counterparts.

Equatorward of the subtropical high-pressure cells, the persistent trade winds generate the broad north and south equatorial currents (see Figure 7.29). On the western sides of the oceans, most of this water swings poleward with the airflow and thereafter comes increasingly under the influence of the Coriolis deflection and of the anticyclonic vorticity effect. However, some

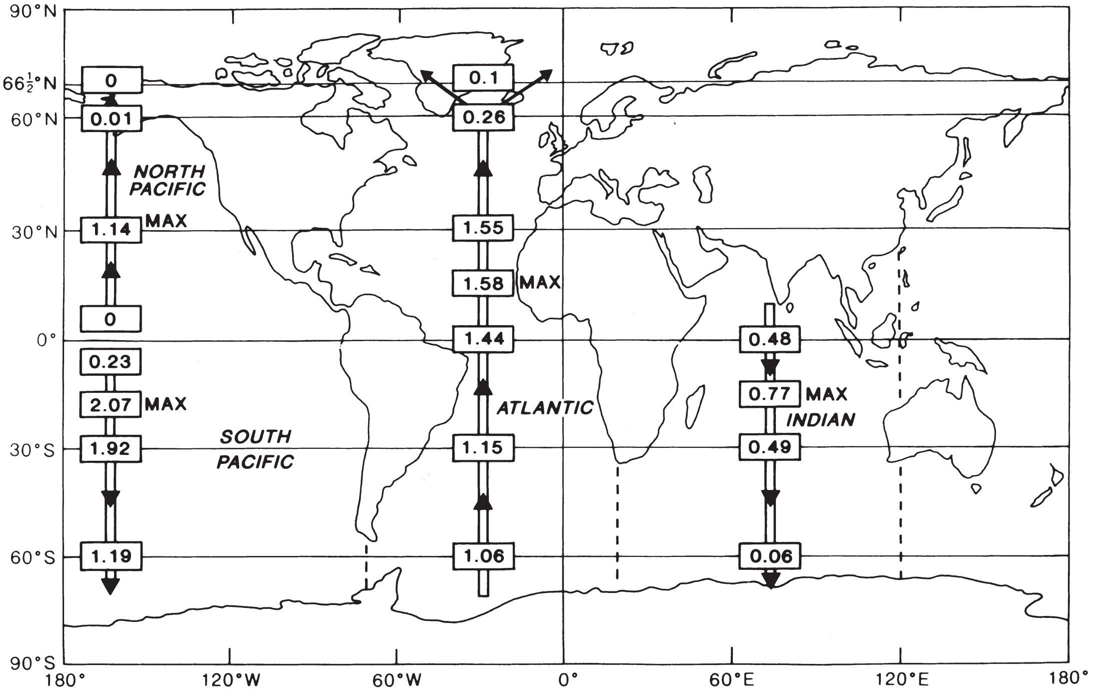
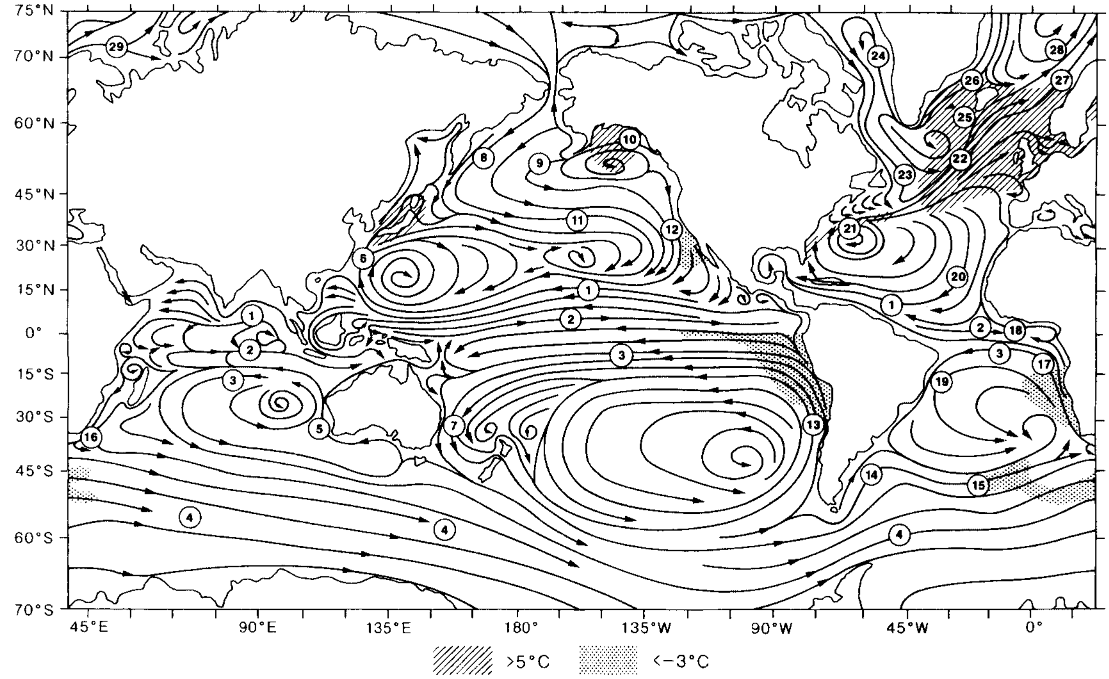


Figure 7.28 Mean annual meridional heat transport (10^{15}W) in the Pacific, Atlantic and Indian Oceans, respectively (delineated by the dashed lines). The latitudes of maximum transport are indicated.

Source: Hastenrath (1980), by permission of the American Meteorological Society.

water tends to pile up near the equator on the western sides of oceans, partly because here the Ekman effect is virtually absent, with little poleward deflection and no reverse current at depth. To this is added some of the water that is displaced northward into the equatorial zone by the especially active subtropical high-pressure circulations of the southern hemisphere. This accumulated water flows back eastward down the hydraulic gradient as compensating narrow-surface equatorial counter-currents, unimpeded by the weak surface winds. Near the equator in the Pacific Ocean, upwelling raises the thermocline to only 50 to 100 m depth, and within this layer there exist thin, jet-like equatorial undercurrents flowing eastwards (under hydraulic gradients) at a speed of 1 to 1.5 m s^{-1}.

As the circulations swing poleward around the western margins of the oceanic subtropical high-pressure cells, there is the tendency for water to pile up against the continents, giving, for example, an appreciably higher sea-level in the Gulf of Mexico than along the Atlantic coast of the United States. The accumulated water cannot escape by sinking because of its relatively high temperature and resulting vertical stability. Consequently, it continues poleward driven by the dominant surface airflow, augmented by the geostrophic force acting at right-angles to the ocean surface slope. Through this movement, the current gains anticyclonic vorticity, reinforcing the similar tendency imparted by the winds, leading to relatively narrow currents of high velocity (for example, the Kuroshio, Brazil, Mozambique–Agulhas and, to a lesser degree, the East Australian current). In the North Atlantic, the configuration of the Caribbean Sea and Gulf of Mexico especially favours this pile-up of water, which is released poleward through the Florida Straits as the narrow and fast Gulf Stream (Figure 7.30). These poleward currents are opposed both by their friction with the nearby continental margins and by energy losses due to turbulent diffusion, such as those accompanying the formation and cutting off of meanders in the Gulf Stream. These poleward western boundary currents (e.g. the Gulf Stream and the Kuroshio current) are



1	North Equatorial Current
2	Equatorial Counter-current
3	South Equatorial Current
4	West Wind Drift
5	West Australian Current
6	Kuroshio Current
7	East Australian Current
8	Oyashio Current
9	Aleutian Current
10	Alaska Current
11	North Pacific Current
12	California Current
13	Peru Current
14	Falkland Current
15	South Atlantic Current
16	Agulhas Current
17	Benguela Current
18	Guinea Current
19	Brazil Current
20	Canary Current
21	Gulf Stream
22	North Atlantic Current
23	Labrador Current
24	West Greenland Current
25	Irminger Current
26	East Greenland Current
27	Norway Current
28	Spitsbergen Current
29	North Cape Current

Figure 7.29 The general ocean current circulation in January. This holds broadly for the year, except that in the northern summer some of the circulation in the northern Indian Ocean is reversed by the monsoonal airflow. The shaded areas show mean annual anomalies of ocean surface temperatures (°C) of greater than +5°C and less than –3°C.

Sources: US Naval Oceanographic Office and Niiler (1992). Courtesy of US Naval Oceanographic Office.

approximately 100 km wide and reach surface velocities greater than 2 m s^{-1}. This contrasts with the slower, wider and more diffuse eastern boundary currents such as the Canary and California (approximately 1000 km wide with surface velocities generally less than 0.25 m s^{-1}). The northward-flowing Gulf Stream causes a heat flux of 1.2×10^{15} W, 75 per cent of which is lost to the atmosphere and 25 per cent in heating the Greenland–Norwegian seas area. On the poleward sides of the subtropical high-pressure cells westerly currents dominate, and where they are unimpeded by landmasses in the southern hemisphere they form the broad and swift west wind drift. This strong current, driven by unimpeded winds, occurs within the zone 50 to 65°S and is associated with a southward-sloping ocean surface generating a geostrophic force, which intensifies the flow. Within the west wind drift, the action of the Coriolis force produces a convergence zone at about 50°S marked by westerly submarine jet streams reaching velocities of 0.5 to 1 m s^{-1}. South of the west wind drift, the Antarctic divergence with rising water is formed between it and the east wind drift closer to Antarctica. In the northern hemisphere, a great deal of the eastward-moving current in the Atlantic swings northward, leading to anomalously very high sea temperatures, and is compensated for by a southward flow of cold Arctic water at depth. However, more than half of the water mass comprising the North Atlantic current, and almost all that of the North Pacific current, swings south around the east sides of the subtropical high-pressure cells, forming the Canary and California currents. Their southern-hemisphere equivalents are the

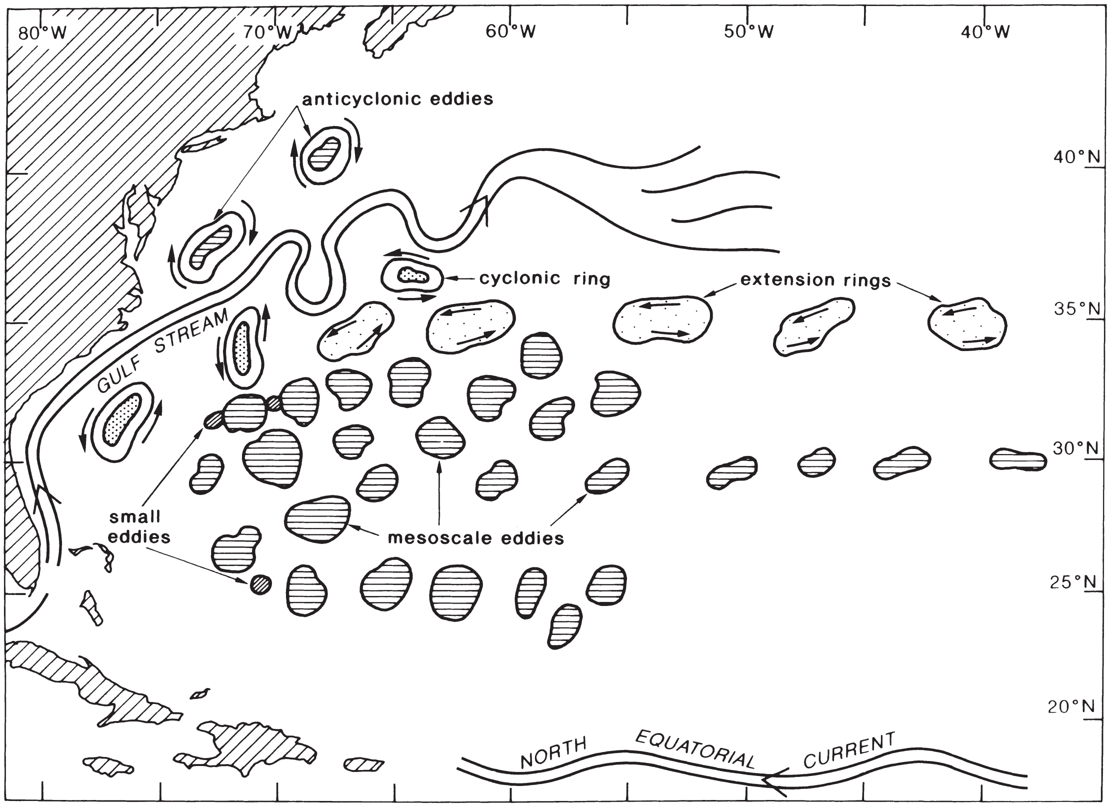


Figure 7.30 Schematic map of the western North Atlantic showing the major types of ocean surface circulation.

Source: From Tolmazin (1994) Copyright © Chapman and Hall.

Benguela, Humboldt (or Peru) and West Australian currents (Figure 7.29).

Ocean fronts are associated particularly with the poleward-margins of the western boundary currents. Temperature gradients can be 10°C over 50 km horizontally at the surface and weak gradients are distinguishable to several thousand metres' depth. Fronts also form between shelf water and deeper waters where there is convergence and downwelling.

Another large-scale feature of ocean circulation, analogous to the atmosphere, is the Rossby wave. These large oscillations have horizontal wavelengths of 100s–1000s km and periods of tens of days. They develop in the open ocean of mid-latitudes in eastward-flowing currents. In equatorial, westward-flowing currents, there are faster, very long wavelength Kelvin waves (analogous to those in the lower stratosphere)

(3) Mesoscale

Mesoscale eddies and rings in the upper ocean are generated by a number of mechanisms, sometimes by atmospheric convergence or divergence, or by the casting off of vortices by currents such as the Gulf Stream where it becomes unsteady at around 65°W (Figure 7.30). Oceanographic eddies occur on the scale of 50 to 400 km in diameter and are analogous to atmospheric low- and high-pressure systems. Ocean mesoscale systems are much smaller than atmospheric depressions (which average about 1000 km in diameter), travel much slower (a few kilometres per day, compared with about 1000 km per day for a depression) and persist from one to several months (compared with a depression life of about a week). Their maximum rotational velocities occur at a depth of about 150 m, but the vortex circulation is observed throughout the thermocline (*ca.* 1000 m depth). Some eddies move parallel to the main

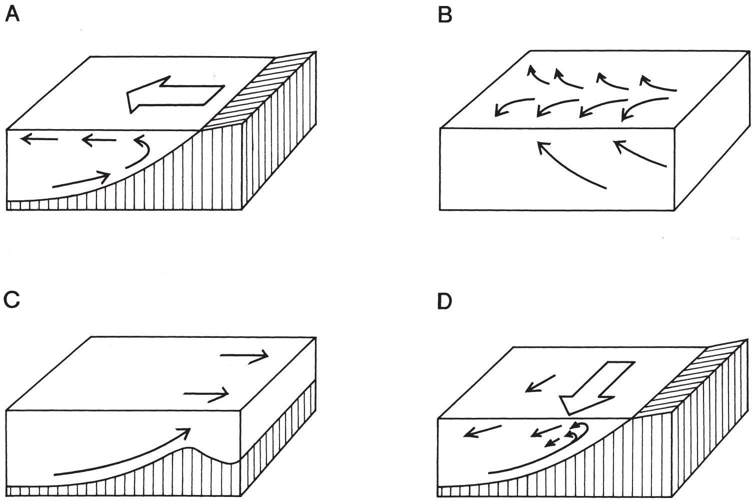


Figure 7.31 Schematic illustration of mechanisms that cause ocean upwelling. The large arrows indicate the dominant wind direction and the small arrows the currents. (A) The effects of a persistent offshore wind. (B) Divergent surface currents. (C) Deep-current shoaling. (D) Ekman motion with coastal blocking (northern hemisphere case).

Source: Partly modified after Stowe (1983) Copyright 1983 © John Wiley & Sons, Inc. Reproduced by permission.

flow direction, but many move irregularly equatorward or poleward. In the North Atlantic, this produces a 'synoptic-like' situation in which up to 50 per cent of the area may be occupied by mesoscale eddies (see Plate B). Cold-core cyclonic rings (100 to 300-km diameter) are about twice as numerous as warm-core anticyclonic eddies (100-km diameter), and have a maximum rotational velocity of about 1.5 m s^{-1}. About ten cold-core rings are formed annually by the Gulf Stream and may occupy 10 per cent of the Sargasso Sea.

2 Deep ocean water interactions

a Upwelling

In contrast with the currents on the west sides of the oceans, equatorward-flowing eastern currents acquire cyclonic vorticity, which is in opposition to the anticyclonic wind tendency, leading to relatively broad flows of low velocity. In addition, the deflection due to the Ekman effect causes the surface water to move westward away from the coasts, leading to replacement by the upwelling of cold water from depths of 100 to 300 m (Figure 7.31 A, D). Average rates of upwelling are low (1 to 2 m/day), being about the same as the offshore surface current velocities with which they are balanced. The rate of upwelling therefore varies with the surface wind stress. As the latter is proportional to the square of the wind speed, small changes in wind velocity can lead to marked variations in rates of upwelling. Although the band of upwelling is of limited width (about 200 km for the Benguela current), the Ekman effect spreads this cold water westward. On the poleward margins of these cold-water coasts, the meridional swing of the wind belts imparts a strong seasonality to the upwelling; the California current upwelling, for example (Plate 16), is particularly well marked during the period March to July.

A major region of deep-water upwelling is along the West Coast of South America (Figure 11.52) where there is a narrow 20-km-wide shelf and offshore easterly winds. Transport is offshore in the upper 20 m but onshore at 30 to 80 m depth. This pattern is forced by the offshore airflow normally associated with the large-scale convective Walker cell (see Chapters 7C.1 and 11G) linking Southeast Asia-Indonesia with the eastern South Pacific. Every two to ten years or so this pressure difference is reversed, producing an El Niño event with weakening trade winds and a pulse of warm surface water spreading eastward over the South Pacific, raising local sea surface temperatures by several degrees.

Coastal upwelling is also caused by less important mechanisms such as surface current divergence or the effect of the ocean bottom configuration (see Figure 7.31 B, C).

b Deep ocean circulation

Above the permanent thermocline the ocean circulation is mainly wind driven, while in the deep ocean it is driven by density gradients due to salinity and temperature differences – a *thermohaline* circulation. These

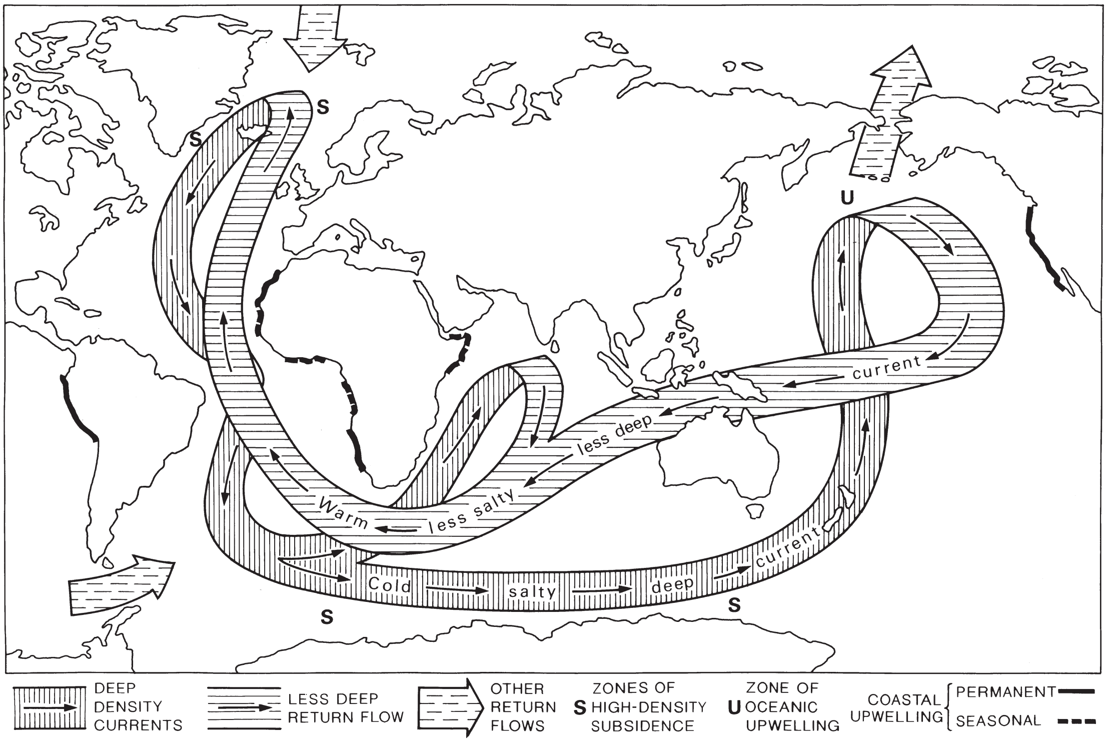


Figure 7.32 The deep ocean thermohaline circulation system leading to Broecker's concept of the oceanic conveyor belt.

Source: Kerr (1988). Reprinted with permission from *Science* 239, Fig. 259. Copyright © 1988 American Association for the Advancement of Science.

differences are mostly produced by surface processes, which feed cold, saline water to the deep ocean basins in compensation for the deep water delivered to the surface by upwelling. Although upwelling occurs chiefly in narrow coastal locations, subsidence takes place largely in two broad ocean regions – the northern North Atlantic and around parts of Antarctica (e.g. the Weddell Sea).

In the North Atlantic, particularly in winter, heating and evaporation produce warm, saline water which flows northward both in the near-surface Gulf Stream–North Atlantic current and at intermediate depths of around 800 m. In the Norwegian and Greenland seas, its density is enhanced by further evaporation due to high winds, by the formation of sea ice, which expels brine during ice growth, and by cooling. Exposed to evaporation and to the chill high-latitude airmasses, the surface water cools from about 10° to 2°C, releasing immense amounts of heat into the atmosphere, supplementing solar insolation there by some 25 to 30 per cent and heating western Europe.

The resulting dense high-latitude water, equivalent in volume to about twenty times the combined discharge of all the world's rivers, sinks to the bottom of the North Atlantic and fuels a southward-flowing density current, which forms part of a global deep-water conveyor belt (Figure 7.32). This broad, slow and diffuse flow, occurring at depths of greater than 1500 m, is augmented in the South Atlantic/circum-Antarctic/Weddell Sea region by more cold, saline, dense subsiding water. The conveyor belt then flows eastward under the Coriolis influence, turning north into the Indian and, especially, the Pacific Ocean. The time taken for the conveyor belt circulation to move from the North Atlantic to the North Pacific has been estimated at 500 to 1000 years. In the Pacific and Indian Oceans, a decrease of salinity due to water mixing causes the conveyor belt to rise and to form a less deep return flow to the Atlantic, the whole global circulation occupying some 1500 years or so. An important aspect of this conveyor belt flow is that the western Pacific Ocean contains a deep source of warm summer water (29°C) (Figure 7.33). This heat

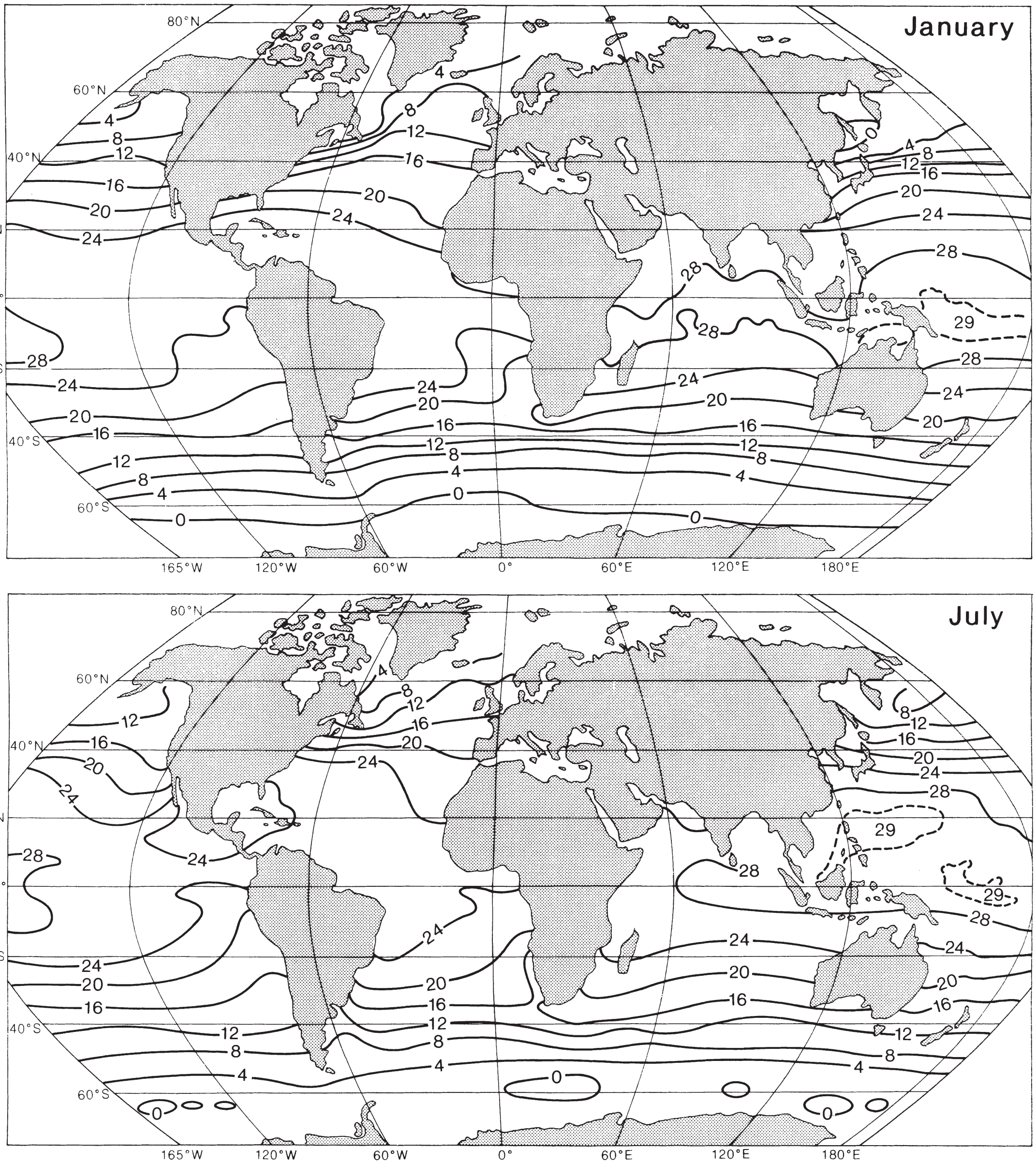

January
80°N
60°N
40°N
20°N
0°
20°S
40°S
60°S
165°W
120°W
60°W
0°
60°E
120°E
180°E
4
8
12
16
20
24
28
29
0
July
80°N
60°N
40°N
20°N
0°
20°S
40°S
60°S
165°W
120°W
60°W
0°
60°E
120°E
180°E
4
8
12
16
20
24
28
29
0

Figure 7.33 Mean ocean-surface temperatures (°C) for January and July. Comparison of these maps with those of mean sea-level air temperatures (Figure 3.11) shows similarities during the summer but a significant difference in the winter.

Source: Reprinted from Bottomley *et al*. (1990), by permission of the Meteorological Office. Crown copyright ©.

differential with the eastern Pacific assists the high-phase Walker circulation (see Figure 7.22A).

The thermal significance of the conveyor belt implies that any change in it may promote climatic changes operating on time scales of several hundred or thousand years. However, it has been argued that any impediment to the rise of deep conveyor belt water might cause ocean surface temperatures to drop by 6°C within thirty years at latitudes north of 60°N. Changes to the conveyor belt circulation could be initiated by lowering the salinity of the surface water of the North Atlantic; for example, through increased precipitation, ice melting, or fresh-water inflow. The complex mechanisms involved in the deep ocean conveyor belt are still poorly understood.

3 The oceans and atmospheric regulation

The atmosphere and the surface ocean waters are closely connected both in temperature and in CO_2 concentrations. The atmosphere contains less than 1.7 per cent of the CO_2 held by the oceans, and the amount absorbed by the ocean surface rapidly regulates the concentration in the atmosphere. The absorption of CO_2 by the oceans is greatest where the water is rich in organic matter, or where it is cold. Thus the oceans can regulate atmospheric CO_2, changing the greenhouse effect and contributing to climate change. The most important aspect of the carbon cycle linking atmosphere and ocean is the difference between the partial pressure of CO_2 in the lower atmosphere and that in the upper ocean (Figure 2.4). This results in atmospheric CO_2 being dissolved in the oceans. Some of this CO_2 is subsequently converted into particulate carbon, mainly through the agency of plankton, and ultimately sinks to form carbon-rich deposits in the deep ocean as part of a cycle lasting hundreds of years. Thus two of the major effects of ocean surface warming would be to increase its CO_2 equilibrium partial pressure and to decrease the abundance of plankton. Both of these effects would tend to decrease the oceanic uptake of CO_2. This would increase its atmospheric concentration, thereby producing a positive feedback (i.e. enhancing) effect on global warming. However, as will be seen in Chapter 13, the operation of the atmosphere–ocean system is complex. Thus, for example, global warming may so increase oceanic convective mixing that the resulting imports of cooler water and plankton into the surface layers might exert a brake (i.e. negative feedback) on the system warming.

Sea-surface temperature anomalies in the North Atlantic appear to have marked effects on climate in Europe, Africa and South America. For example, warmer sea surfaces off northwest Africa augment West African summer monsoon rainfall; and dry conditions in the Sahel have been linked to a cooler North Atlantic. There are similar links between tropical sea-surface temperatures and droughts in northeast Brazil. The North Atlantic Oscillation teleconnection pattern, discussed above, also shows strong air–sea interactions.

SUMMARY

The vertical change of pressure with height depends on the temperature structure. High- (low-) pressure systems intensify with altitude in a warm (cold) air column; thus warm lows and cold highs are shallow features. The upper-level subtropical anticyclones and polar vortex in both hemispheres illustrate this ‘thickness’ relationship. The intermediate mid-latitude westerly winds thus have a large ‘thermal wind’ component. They become concentrated into upper tropospheric jet streams above sharp thermal gradients, such as fronts.

The upper flow displays a large-scale long-wave pattern, especially in the northern hemisphere, related to the influence of mountain barriers and land–sea differences. The surface pressure field is dominated by semi-permanent subtropical highs, subpolar lows and, in winter, shallow cold continental highs in Siberia and northwest Canada. The equatorial zone is predominantly low pressure. The associated global wind belts are the easterly trade winds and the mid-latitude westerlies. There are more variable polar easterlies, and over land areas in summer a band of equatorial westerlies representing the monsoon systems. This mean zonal (west–east) circulation is intermittently interrupted by ‘blocking’ highs; an idealized sequence is known as the *index cycle*.

The atmospheric general circulation, which transfers heat and momentum poleward, is predominantly in a vertical meridional plane in low latitudes (the Hadley cell), but there are also important east–west circulations (Walker cells) between the major regions of subsidence and convective activity. Heat and momentum exchanges in middle and high latitudes are accomplished by horizontal waves and eddies (cyclones/anticyclones). Substantial energy is also carried poleward by ocean current systems. Surface currents are mostly wind driven, but the slow deep ocean circulation (global conveyor belt) is due to thermohaline forcing.

The circulation in the northern hemisphere mid-latitudes is subject to variations in the strength of the zonal westerlies lasting three to eight weeks (the index cycle) and interannual differences in the north–south pressure gradient in the North Atlantic (the NAO) that lead to a west–east 'seesaw' in temperature and other anomalies. This has major effects on the climate of Europe and eastern North America and west Greenland.

The ocean's vertical structure varies latitudinally and regionally. In general, the thermocline is deepest in mid-latitudes, thus permitting greater turbulent mixing and atmospheric heat exchanges. The oceans are important regulators of both atmospheric temperatures and CO_2 concentrations. Ocean dynamics and circulation features are analogous to those in the atmosphere on both the meso- and macroscale. The wind-driven Ekman layer extends to 100 to 200 m. Ekman transport and coastal upwelling maintain normally cold sea surfaces off western South America and southwest Africa in particular.

DISCUSSION TOPICS

- What features of the global wind belts at the surface and in the upper troposphere are in accord with (differ from) those implied by the three-cell model of meridional circulation?
- What are the consequences of the westerly jet streams for transoceanic air travel?
- Examine the variation of the vertical structure of the zonal wind by creating height cross-sections for different longitudes and months using the CDC website (http://www.cdc.noaa.gov).
- Consider the effects of ocean currents on the weather and climate of coastal regions in the western and eastern sides of the Atlantic/Pacific oceans and how these effects vary with latitude.

FURTHER READING

Books

Barry, R. G. and A. M. Carleton (2001) *Synoptic and Dynamic Climatology*, Routledge, London, 604pp. [Advanced level text; chapter 3 treats the global circulation.]

Bearman, G. (ed.) (1989) *Ocean Circulation*, The Open University, Pergamon Press, Oxford, 238pp.

Bottomley, M., Folland, C. K, Hsiung, J., Newell, R. E., and Parker, D.E. (1990) *Global Ocean Surface Temperature Atlas*, Meteorological Office, London, 20pp. + 313 plates.

Corby, G. A. (ed.) (1970) *The Global Circulation of the Atmosphere*, Roy. Met. Soc., London, 257pp. [Essays.]

Haltiner, G. J. and Martin, F. L. (1957) *Dynamical and Physical Meteorology*, McGraw-Hill, New York, 470pp.

Henderson-Sellers, A. and Robinson, P. J. (1986) *Contemporary Climatology*, Longman, London, 439pp.

Houghton, J. (ed.) (1984) *The Global Climate*, Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, 233pp.

Indian Meteorological Department (1960) *Monsoons of the World*, Delhi, 270pp. [Classic account.]

Levitus, S. (1982) *Climatological Atlas of the World Ocean*, NOAA Professional Paper No. 13, Rockville, MD, 173pp.

Lorenz, E. N. (1967) *The Nature and Theory of the General Circulation of the Atmosphere*, World Meteorological Organization, Geneva, 161pp. [Classic account of the mechanisms and maintenance of the global circulation, transports of momentum, energy and moisture.]

NASA (nd) *From Pattern to Process: The Strategy of the Earth Observing System* (Vol. II), EOS Science Steering Committee Report, NASA, Houston.

Riley, D. and Spolton, L. (1981) *World Weather and Climate* (2nd edn), Cambridge University Press, London, 128pp. [Elementary text.]

Stowe, K. (1983) *Stowe Ocean Science* (2nd edn), John Wiley & Sons, New York, 673pp.

Strahler, A. N. and Strahler, A. H. (1992) *Modern Physical Geography* (4th edn), John Wiley & Sons, New York, 638pp.

Tolmazin, D. (1994) *Elements of Dynamic Oceanography*, Chapman and Hall, London, 182pp. [Description of ocean circulation, classical instrumental observations, satellite altimetry and acoustic tomography.]

van Loon, H. (ed.) (1984) *Climates of the Oceans*. In Landsberg, H. E. (ed.) *World Survey of Climatology* 15, Elsevier, Amsterdam, 716pp. [Comprehensive survey.]

Wells, N. (1997) *The Atmosphere and Ocean. A Physical Introduction* (2nd edn), John Wiley & Sons, Chichester, UK, 394pp. [Undergraduate text describing the physical properties and observed characteristics, the influence of the earth's rotation on atmospheric and ocean circulation, energy transfers and climate variability.]

Articles

Barry, R. G. (1967) Models in meteorology and climatology. In Chorley, R. J. and Haggett, P. (eds) *Models in Geography*, Methuen, London, pp. 97–144.

Borchert, J. R. (1953) Regional differences in world atmospheric circulation. *Ann. Assn Amer. Geog*. 43, 14–26.

Boville, B. A. and Randel, W. J. (1986) Observations and simulation of the variability of the stratosphere and troposphere in January. *J. Atmos. Sci*. 43, 3015–34.

Bowditch, N. (1966) American practical navigator. US Navy Hydrographic Office, Pub. No. 9, US Naval Oceanographic Office, Washington, DC.

Broecker, W. S. and Denton, G. H. (1990) What drives glacial cycles? *Sci. American* 262(1), 43–50.

Broecker, W. S., Peteet, D. M. and Rind, D. (1985) Does the ocean–atmosphere system have more than one stable mode of operation? *Nature* 315, 21–6.

Chen, P., Hoerling, M. P. and Dole, R. M. (2001) The origin of the subtropical anticyclones. *J. Atmos. Sci*. 58, 1827–35.

Crowe, P. R. (1949) The trade wind circulation of the world. *Trans. Inst. Brit. Geog.* 15, 38–56.

Crowe, P. R. (1950) The seasonal variation in the strength of the trades. *Trans. Inst. Brit. Geog*. 16, 23–47.

Defant, F. and Taba, H. (1957) The threefold structure of the atmosphere and the characteristics of the tropopause. *Tellus* 9, 259–74.

Dunn, C. R. (1957) The weather and circulation of December 1957: high index and abnormal warmth. *Monthly Weather Review* 85, 490–516.

Flohn, H. (1979) A scenario for possible future climates – natural and manmade. In *Proceedings of the World Climate Conference*, WMO No. 537, UNIPUB, Geneva pp. 243–66.

Hare, F. K. (1965) Energy exchanges and the general circulation. *J. Geography* 50, 229–41.

Hastenrath, S. (1980) Heat budget of the tropical ocean and atmosphere. *J. Phys. Oceanography* 10, 159–70.

Hoskins, B. J. (1996) On the existence and strength of the summer subtropical anticyclones. *Bull. Amer. Met. Soc.* 77(6), 1287–91.

Kerr, R. A. (1988) Linking earth, ocean and air at the AGU. *Science* 239, 259–60.

Klein, W. H. (1958) The weather and circulation of February 1958: a month with an expanded circumpolar vortex of record intensity. *Monthly Weather Review* 86, 60–70.

Kuenen, Ph. H. (1955) *Realms of Water*, Cleaver-Hulme Press, London, 327pp.

Lamb, H. H. (1960) Representation of the general atmospheric circulation. *Met. Mag*. 89, 319–30.

LeMarshall, J. F., Kelly, G. A. M. and Karoly, D. J. (1985) An atmospheric climatology of the southern hemisphere based on 10 years of daily numerical analyses (1972–1982): I. Overview. *Austral. Met. Mag.* 33, 65–86.

Meehl, G. A. (1987a) The annual cycle and interannual variability in the tropical Pacific and Indian Ocean regions. *Monthly Weather Review* 115, 51–74.

Meehl, G. A. (1987b) The tropics and their role in the global climate system. *Geographical Journal* 153, 21–36.

Namias, J. (1972) Large-scale and long-term fluctuations in some atmospheric and ocean variables. In Dyrssen, D. and Jagner, D. (eds) *The Changing Chemistry of the Oceans*, Nobel Symposium 20, Wiley, New York, pp. 27–48.

Niiler, P.P. (1992) The ocean circulation. In Trenberth, K. E. (ed.) *Climate System Modelling*, Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, pp. 117–48.

O'Connor, J. F. (1961) Mean circulation patterns based on 12 years of recent northern hemispheric data. *Monthly Weather Review* 89, 211–28.

Palmén, E. (1951) The role of atmospheric disturbances in the general circulation. *Quart. J. Roy. Met. Soc*. 77, 337–54.

Persson, A. (2002) The Coriolis force and the subtropical jet stream. *Weather* 57(7), 53–9.

Riehl, H. (1962a) General atmospheric circulation of the tropics. *Science* 135, 13–22.

Riehl, H. (1962b) *Jet streams of the atmosphere*. Tech. Paper No. 32, Colorado State University, 117pp.

Riehl, H. (1969) On the role of the tropics in the general circulation of the atmosphere. *Weather* 24, 288–308.

Riehl, H. *et al*. (1954) The jet stream. *Met. Monogr*. 2(7), American Meteorological Society, Boston, MA, 100pp.

Rodwell, M. J. and Hoskins, B. J. (1996) Monsoons and the dynamics of deserts. *Quart. J. Roy. Met. Soc*. 122, 1385–404.

Rossby, C-G. (1941) The scientific basis of modern meteorology. US Dept of Agriculture Yearbook *Climate and Man*, pp. 599–655.

Rossby, C-G. (1949) On the nature of the general circulation of the lower atmosphere. In Kuiper, G. P. (ed.) *The Atmosphere of the Earth and Planets*, University of Chicago Press, Chicago, IL, pp. 16–48.

Saltzman, B. (1983) Climatic systems analysis. *Adv. Geophys*. 25, 173–233.

Sawyer, J. S. (1957) Jet stream features of the earth's atmosphere. *Weather* 12, 333–4.

Shapiro, M. A. *et al*. (1987) The Arctic tropopause fold. *Monthly Weather Review* 115, 444–54.

Shapiro, M. A. and Keyser, D. A. (1990) Fronts, jet streams, and the tropopause. In Newton, C. W. and Holopainen, E. D. (eds) *Extratropical Cyclones*, American Meteorological Society, Boston, pp. 167–91.

Starr, V. P. (1956) The general circulation of the atmosphere. *Sci. American* 195, 40–5.

Streten, N. A. (1980) Some synoptic indices of the southern hemisphere mean sea level circulation 1972–77. *Monthly Weather Review* 108, 18–36.

Troen, I. and Petersen, E. L. (1989) *European Wind Atlas*, Commission of the Economic Community, Risø National Laboratory, Roskilde, Denmark, 656pp.

Tucker, G. B. (1962) The general circulation of the atmosphere. *Weather* 17, 320–40.

van Loon, H. (1964) Mid-season average zonal winds at sea level and at 500 mb south of 25°S and a brief comparison with the northern hemisphere. *J. Appl. Met.* 3, 554–63.

Walker, J. M. (1972) Monsoons and the global circulation. *Met. Mag*. 101, 349–55.

Wallington, C. E. (1969) Depressions as moving vortices. *Weather* 24, 42–51.

Yang, S. and Webster, P.J. (1990) The effect of summer tropical heating on the location and intensity of the extratropical westerly jet streams. *J. Geophys. Res*., 95(D11), 19705–21.

8

Numerical models of the general circulation, climate and weather prediction

T. N. Chase and R. G. Barry

Learning objectives
When you have read this chapter you will:

- ☐ Know the basic features of atmospheric general circulation models (GCMs),
- ☐ Understand how simulations of the atmospheric circulation and its characteristics are performed,
- ☐ Be familiar with the basic approaches to weather forecasting on different time scales.

Fundamental changes in our understanding of the complex behaviour of the atmosphere and climate processes have been obtained over the past three decades through the development and application of numerical climate and weather models. Numerical models simply use mathematical relationships to describe physical processes. There are many forms of climate and weather models ranging from simple point energy balance approaches to three-dimensional general circulation models (GCMs) which attempt to model all the complexities of the earth climate system. We discuss in more detail the GCM in its various forms which is used to simulate both climate and weather for day-to-day forecasting.

A FUNDAMENTALS OF THE GCM

In the GCM, all dynamic and thermodynamic processes and the radiative and mass exchanges that have been treated in Chapters 2 to 7 are modelled using five basic sets of equations. The basic equations describing the atmosphere are:

1. The three dimensional equations of motion (i.e. conservation of momentum; see Chapter 6A,B).
2. The equation of continuity (i.e. conservation of mass or the hydrodynamic equation, p. 118).
3. The equation of continuity for atmospheric water vapour (i.e. conservation of water vapour; see Chapter 4).
4. The equation of energy conservation (i.e. the thermodynamic equation derived from the first law of thermodynamics, see Chapter 7C).

5 The equation of state for the atmosphere (p. 22).
6 In addition, conservation equations for other atmospheric constituents such as sulphur aerosols may be applied in more complex models.

Model simulations of present-day and future climate conditions involve iterating the model equations for perhaps tens to hundreds of years of simulated time depending on the question at hand. In order to solve these coupled equations, additional processes such as radiative transfer through the atmosphere with diurnal and seasonal cycles, surface friction and energy transfers and cloud formation and precipitation processes must be accounted for. These are coupled in the manner shown schematically in Figure 8.1. Beginning with a set of initial atmospheric conditions usually derived from observations, the equations are integrated forward in time repeatedly using time steps of several minutes to tens of minutes at a large number of grid points over the earth and at many levels vertically in the atmosphere; typically ten to twenty levels in the vertical is common. The horizontal grid is usually of the order of several degrees' latitude by several degrees' longitude near the equator. Another, computationally faster, approach is to represent the horizontal fields by a series of two-dimensional sine and cosine functions (a spectral model). A truncation level describes the number of two-dimensional waves that are included. The truncation procedure may be rhomboidal (*R*) or triangular (*T*); *R*15 (or *T*21) corresponds approximately to a 5° grid spacing, *R*30 (*T*42) to a 2.5° grid, and *T*102 to a 1° grid.

Realistic coastlines and mountains as well as essential elements of the surface vegetation (albedo, roughness) and soil (moisture content) are typically incorporated into the GCM. These are smoothed to be representative of the average state of an entire grid cell and therefore much regional detail is lost. Sea-ice extent and sea-surface temperatures have often been specified by a climatological average for each month in the past. However, in recognition that the climate system is quite interactive, the newest generation of models includes some representation of an ocean which can react to changes in the atmosphere above. Ocean models (Figure 8.2) include a so-called swamp ocean where sea-surface temperatures are calculated through an energy budget and no annual cycle is possible; a slab or mixed-layer ocean, where storage and release of energy can take place seasonally, and the most complex dynamic ocean models, which solve appropriate equations for the ocean circulation and thermodynamic state similar to 1–5 above and which are coupled to atmospheric models. Such coupled models are referred to as atmosphere–ocean general circulation models (AOGCMs). When the global ocean is considered, seasonal freezing/melting and the effects of sea ice on energy exchanges and salinity must also be modelled. Therefore, dynamic sea-ice models, which actively calculate the thickness and extent of ice, are now replacing the specification of climatological sea ice. Because of the century-long timescale of deep ocean circulations, the use of a dynamic ocean model requires large amounts of simulation time for the different model components to equilibrate which greatly increases the cost of running these models.

Because coupled AOGCMs are used in long-term (century or millennium scale) simulations, an important

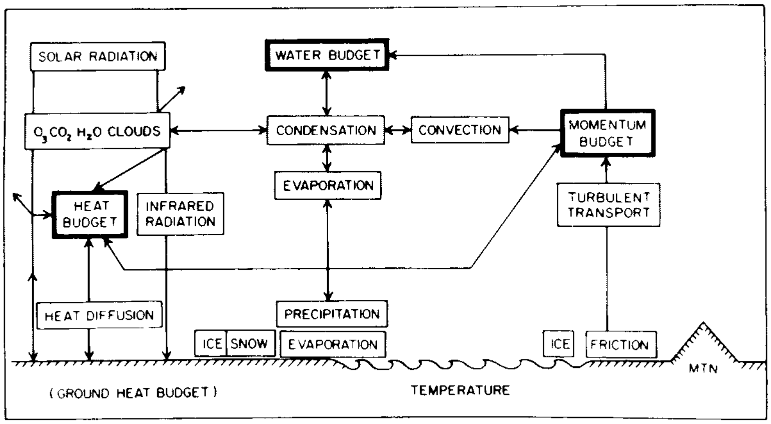


Figure 8.1 Schematic diagram of the interactions among physical processes in a general circulation model.

Source: From Druyan *et al*. (1975), by permission of the American Meteorological Society.

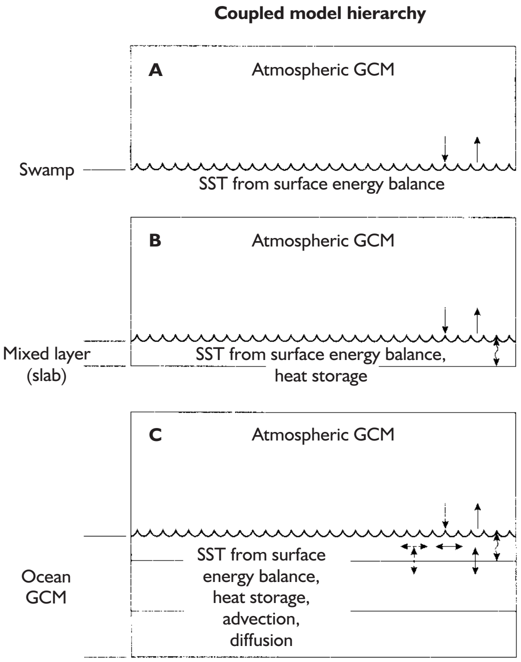

Coupled model hierarchy
A
Atmospheric GCM
Swamp
SST from surface energy balance
B
Atmospheric GCM
Mixed layer (slab)
SST from surface energy balance, heat storage
C
Atmospheric GCM
Ocean GCM
SST from surface energy balance, heat storage, advection, diffusion

Figure 8.2 Schematic illustration of the three types of coupling of an atmospheric GCM to the ocean: (A) swamp ocean (B) mixed layer, slab ocean (C) ocean GCM.

Source: From Meehl (1992). Copyright © Cambridge University Press.

concern is 'model drift' (a definite tendency for the model climate to warm or cool with time) due to accumulating errors from the various component models. These tendencies are often constrained by using observed climatology at certain high-latitude or deep ocean boundaries, or by adjusting the net fluxes of heat and fresh water at each grid point on an annual basis in order to maintain a stable climate, but such arbitrary procedures are the subject of controversy, especially for climate change studies.

Many important weather and climate processes occur on a scale which is too small for the typical GCM to simulate with a grid of several degrees on a side. Examples of this would be the radiative effects or latent heating due to cloud formation or the transfer of water vapour to the atmosphere by a single tree. Both processes greatly affect our climate and must be represented for a realistic climate simulation. *Parameterizations* are methods designed to take into account the average effect of cloud or vegetation process on an entire grid cell. Parameterizations generally make use of a statistical relationship between the large-scale values calculated for the grid cell in order to determine the effect of the parameterized process.

In order to gain confidence in the performance of models in predicting future atmospheric states, it is important to evaluate how well such models perform in representing present-day climate statistics. The Atmospheric Model Intercomparison Programme (AMIP) is designed to do this by comparing models from various centres around the world using common procedures and standardized data (on sea-surface temperatures, for example), as well as by providing extensive documentation on the model design and the details of model parameterizations. In this way common deficiencies can be detected and perhaps attributed to a single process and then addressed in future model versions. Figure 8.3 compares simulated zonally averaged surface temperature for January and July for all AMIP participants with the observed climatological mean. The general features are well represented qualitatively, although there can be large deviation between individual models. The evaluation of models requires analysis of their ability to reproduce interannual variability and synoptic-scale variability as well as mean conditions. A comparison project for AOGCMs similar to AMIP is now underway called the Coupled Model Intercomparison Project (CMIP). Plate G illustrates the 500-mb heights for northern winter and summer, as observed (top) and as simulated by the National Center for Atmospheric Research (NCAR) Community Climate Model (CCM) 3, and the considerable differences between them in high latitudes.

Recent models incorporate improved spatial resolution and fuller treatment of some previously neglected physical processes. However, both changes may create additional problems as a result of the need to treat accurately complex interactions such as those between the land surface (soil moisture, canopy structure, etc.) and the atmospheric boundary layer, or interactions between clouds, radiative exchanges and precipitation mechanisms. For example, fine-scale spatial resolution is necessary in the explicit treatment of cloud and rain bands associated with frontal zones in mid-latitude cyclones. Such processes require detailed and accurate representation of moisture exchanges (evaporation, condensation), cloud microphysics and radiation (and the interactions between these processes) which are all represented as averaged processes when simulated at larger spatial scales.

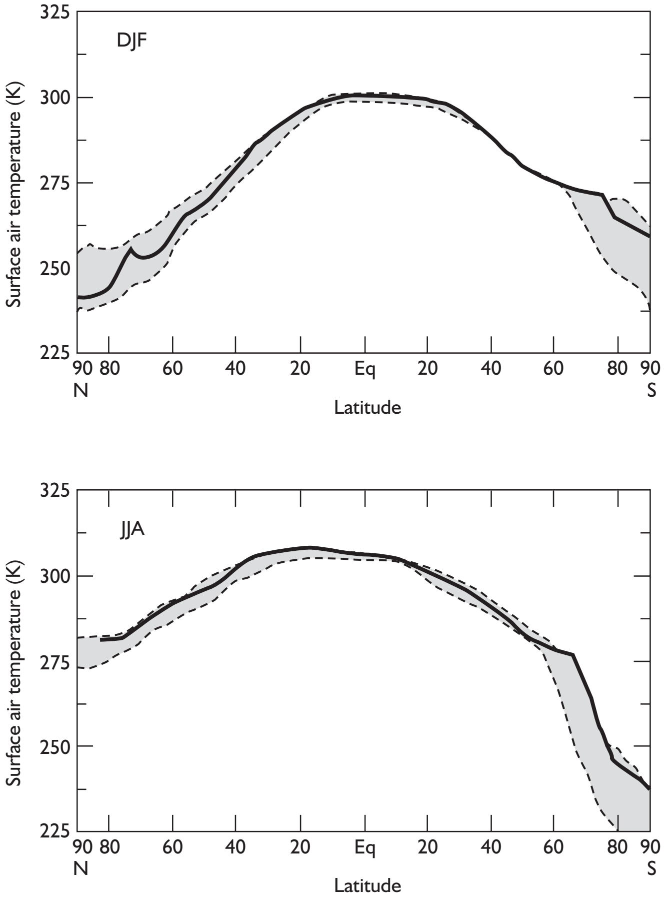


Figure 8.3 Comparison of zonally averaged surface temperatures for December to February (above) and June to August (below) as simulated by the AMIP models compared with observations (bold line). The shaded band shows the range of results for 17 AMIP models.

Source: AMIP website.

B MODEL SIMULATIONS

1 GCMs

Climate model simulations are used to examine possible future climates by simulating plausible scenarios (e.g. increasing atmospheric CO_2, tropical deforestation) into the future using representations of inputs (i.e. forcings), storage between components of the climate system and and transfers between components (see Figure 8.4 and Chapter 11). The periods of time shown in Figure 8.4 refer to:

1 *Forcing times*. The characteristic timespans over which natural and anthropogenic changes of input occur. In the case of the former, these can be periods of solar radiation cycles or the effect of volcanism and in the case of the latter the average time interval over which significant changes of such anthropogenic effects as increased atmospheric CO_2 occur.
2 *Storage times*. For each compartment of the atmosphere and ocean subsystems these are the average times taken for an input of thermal energy to diffuse and mix within the compartment. For the earth subsystem, the average times are those required for inputs of water to move through each compartment.

Model simulations can be performed in several different ways. A common procedure is to analyse the model's sensitivity to a specified change in a single variable. This may involve changes in external forcing (increased/decreased solar radiation, atmospheric CO_2 concentrations, or a volcanic dust layer), surface boundary conditions (orography, land surface albedo, continental ice sheets) or in the model physics (modifying the convective scheme or the treatment of biosphere exchanges). In these simulations, the model

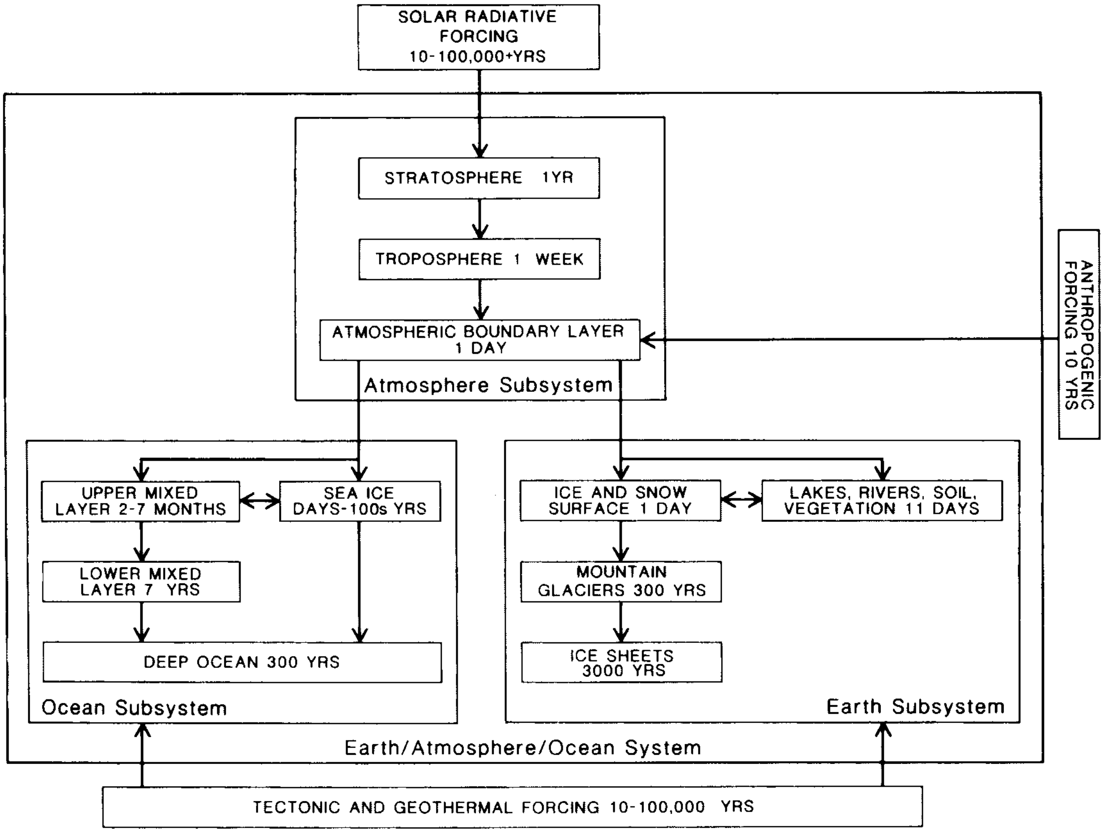

SOLAR RADIATIVE FORCING 10-100,000+YRS
STRATOSPHERE 1YR
TROPOSPHERE 1 WEEK
ATMOSPHERIC BOUNDARY LAYER 1 DAY
Atmosphere Subsystem
ANTHROPOGENIC FORCING 10 YRS
UPPER MIXED LAYER 2-7 MONTHS
SEA ICE DAYS-100s YRS
LOWER MIXED LAYER 7 YRS
DEEP OCEAN 300 YRS
Ocean Subsystem
ICE AND SNOW SURFACE 1 DAY
LAKES, RIVERS, SOIL, VEGETATION 11 DAYS
MOUNTAIN GLACIERS 300 YRS
ICE SHEETS 3000 YRS
Earth Subsystem
Earth/Atmosphere/Ocean System
TECTONIC AND GEOTHERMAL FORCING 10-100,000 YRS

Figure 8.4 The earth–atmosphere–ocean system showing estimated equilibrium times, together with the wide time variations involving the external solar, tectonic, geothermal and anthropogenic forcing mechanisms.

Source: After Saltzman (1983).

is allowed to reach a new equilibrium and the result is compared with a control experiment. A second approach is to conduct a genuine climate change experiment where, for example, the climate is allowed to evolve as atmospheric trace gas concentrations are increased at a specified annual rate (a transient experiment).

A key issue in assessments of greenhouse gas-induced warming is the sensitivity of global climate to CO_2 doubling which is projected to occur in the mid-twenty-first century extrapolating current trends. Atmospheric GCM simulations for equilibrium condition changes, with a simple ocean treatment, indicate an increase in global mean surface air temperature of 2.5 to 5°C, comparing $1 \times CO_2$ and $2 \times CO_2$ concentrations in the models. The range is in part the result of a dependence of the temperature change on the temperature level simulated for the base-state $1 \times CO_2$, and in part arises from the variations in the strength of feedback mechanisms incorporated in the models, particularly atmospheric water vapour, clouds, snow cover and sea ice. Use of coupled atmosphere–ocean models, however, suggest only a 1–2°C surface warming for century-long transient or doubled CO_2 experiments (see Chapter 13).

2 Simpler models

Because GCMs require massive computer resources, other approaches to modelling climate have developed. A variant of the GCM is the statistical–dynamical model (SDM), in which only zonally averaged features are analysed, and north–south energy and momentum exchanges are not treated explicitly but are represented statistically through parameterization. Simpler still are the energy balance model (EBM) and the radiative convective model (RCM). The EBM assumes a global radiation balance and describes the integrated north–south transports of energy in terms of the poleward temperature gradients; EBMs can be one-dimensional (latitude variations only), two-dimensional (latitude–longitude, with simple land–ocean weightings or simplified geography) and even zero-dimensional (averaged for the globe). They are used particularly in climate change studies. The RCMs can represent a single, globally averaged vertical column. The vertical temperature structure is analysed in terms of radiative and convective exchanges. These less complete models complement the GCMs because, for example, the RCM allows study of complex cloud–radiation interactions or the effect of atmospheric composition on lapse rates in the absence of many complicating circulation effects. Simpler models are also important for simulating palaeoclimate as these models can represent thousands or even millions of years of climate history.

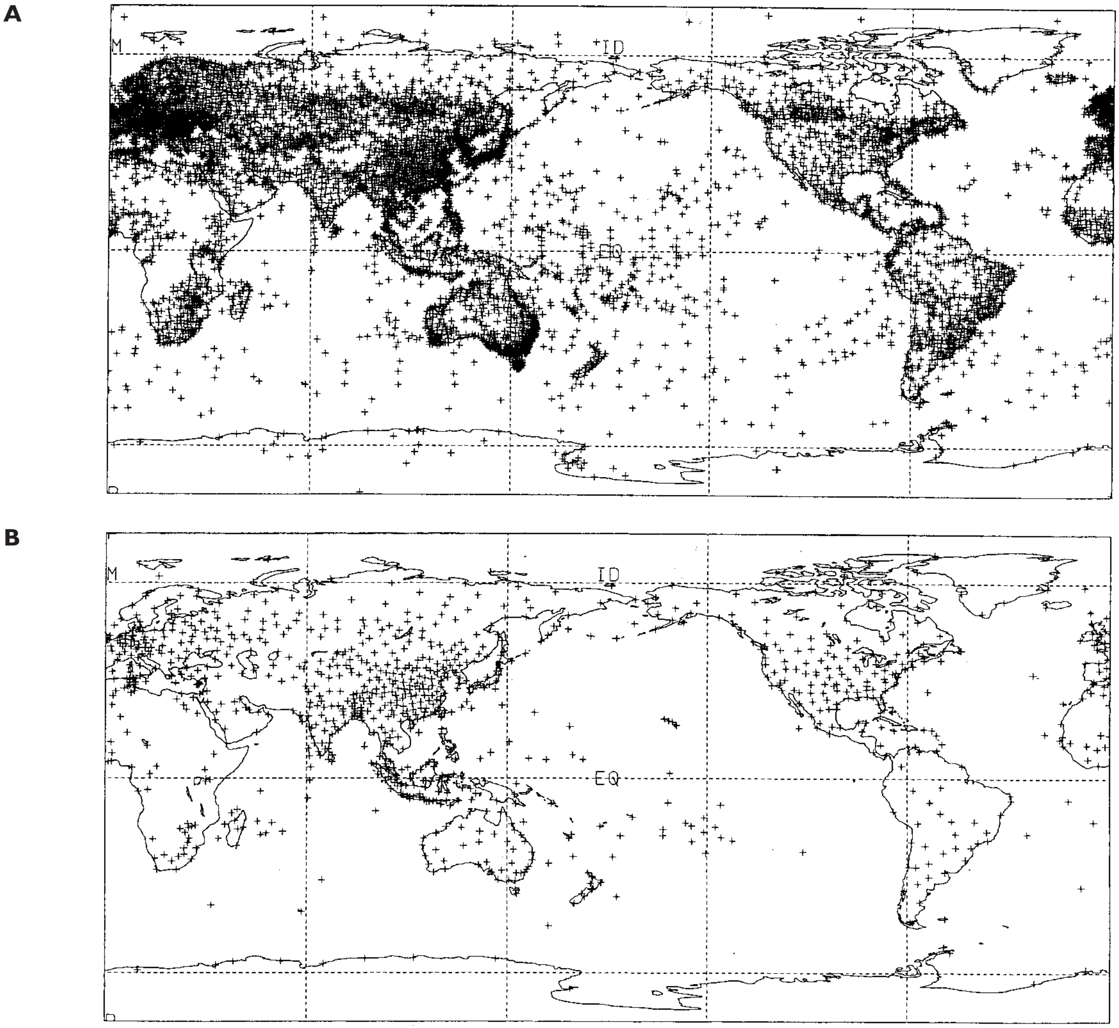


Figure 8.5 Synoptic reports from (A) Surface land stations and ships available; and (B) Upper-air sounding stations over the Global Telecommunications System at the National Meteorological Center, Washington, DC.

Source: From Barry and Carleton (2001).

3 Regional models

Because of the necessity of transferring climate and weather information representing averages over grid cells which are hundreds of kilometres on a side to point scales where information can actually be applied, a variety of downscaling techniques have been developed and applied in recent years. One methodology is to embed a regional climate model into a GCM or AOGCM in a certain region of interest and use the global model information as a boundary condition for the regional model. The typical regional climate model has grid cells of approximately 50 km on a side providing a higher resolution climate simulation over a limited area. In this way, small-scale effects such as local topography, water bodies or regionally important circulations can be represented in a climate or weather simulation. These local effects, however, are generally not transmitted back to the larger scale model at present. In addition, regional models often have a more realistic treatment of smaller scale processes (convective adjustment, for example), which can lead to more accurate simulations.

C DATA SOURCES FOR FORECASTING

The data required for forecasting and other services are provided by worldwide standard three-hourly synoptic reports (see Appendix 3); similar observations are made hourly in support of aviation requirements. Upper-air soundings (at 00 and 12 UTM), satellites and other specialized networks such as radar provide additional data. Under the World Weather Watch programme, synoptic reports are made at some 4000 land stations and by 7000 ships (Figure 8.5A). There are about 700 stations making upper-air soundings (temperature, pressure, humidity and wind) (Figure 8.5B). These data are transmitted in code via teletype and radio links to regional or national centres and into the high-speed Global Telecommunications System (GTS) connecting world weather centres in Melbourne, Moscow and Washington and eleven regional meteorological centres for redistribution. Some 184 member nations co-operate in this activity under the aegis of the World Meteorological Organization.

Meteorological information has been collected operationally by satellites of the United States and Russia since 1965 and, more recently, by the European Space Agency, India and Japan (see Box 8.1). There are two general categories of weather satellite: polar orbiters providing global coverage twice every twenty-four hours in orbital strips over the poles (such as the United States' NOAA and TIROS series (see Plates 2 and 3) and the former USSR's Meteor); and geosynchronous satellites (such as the geostationary operational environmental satellites (GOES) and Meteosat), giving repetitive (thirty-minute) coverage of almost one-third of the earth's surface in low middle latitudes (Figure 8.6). Information on the atmosphere is collected as digital data or direct readout visible and infra-red images of cloud cover and sea-surface temperature, but it also includes global temperature and moisture profiles through the atmosphere obtained from multi-channel infra-red and microwave sensors, which receive radiation emitted from particular levels in the atmosphere. In

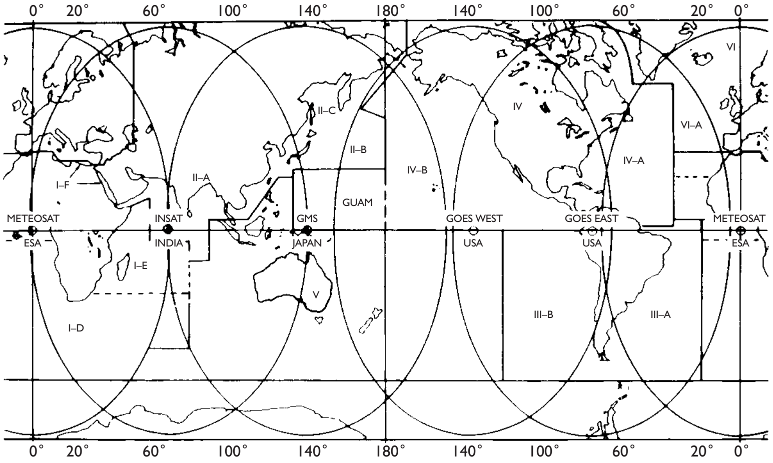


Figure 8.6 Coverage of geostationary satellites and WMO data-collection areas (rectangular areas and numbers).

Source: Reproduced courtesy of NOAA.

SATELLITE METEOROLOGY

box 8.1
significant 20th-c. advance

The launching of meteorological satellites revolutionized meteorology, in terms of the near-global view they provided of synoptic weather systems (see Plate H). The first meteorological satellite transmitted pictures on 1 April 1960. The early television and infra-red observing satellites (TIROS) carried photographic camera systems and, due to their spin about an axis parallel to the earth's surface, they photographed the surface only part of the time. The types of images that were collected had been anticipated by some meteorologists, but the wealth of information exceeded expectations. New procedures for interpreting cloud features, synoptic and mesoscale weather systems were developed. Satellite pictures revealed cloud vortices, jet-stream bands and other mesoscale systems that were too large to be seen by ground observers and too small to be detected by the network of synoptic stations. Automatic picture transmission (APT) to ground stations began in 1963 and was soon in worldwide use for weather forecasting. In 1972 the system was upgraded to provide high-resolution (HRPT) images.

The operational polar-orbiting weather satellites in the United States were followed in 1966 by geostationary, sun-synchronous satellites positioned at fixed positions in the tropics. These give images of a wide disc of the earth at twenty-minute intervals, providing valuable information on the diurnal development of cloud and weather systems. The US geostationary operational environmental satellites (GOES) were positioned at 75°W and 135°W from 1974, and in 1977 the Japanese geostationary meteorological satellite (GMS) and European meteosat were added at 135°E and 0° longitude, respectively.

The early photographic systems were replaced in the mid-1960s by radiometric sensors in the visible and infra-red wavelengths. Initially, these were broad-band sensors of moderate spatial resolution. Subsequently, narrow-band sensors with improved spatial resolution replaced these; the Advanced Very High Resolution Radiometer (AVHRR) with 1.1-km resolution and four channels was initiated in 1978. A further major advance took place in 1970 with the first retrieval of atmospheric temperature profiles from a Nimbus satellite. An operational system for temperature and moisture profiles (the High-resolution Infra-red Radiation Sounder (HIRS) became operational in 1978, followed by a system on GOES in 1980).

Satellite data are now routinely collected and exchanged between NOAA in the USA, the European Meteorological Satellite Agency (Eumetsat) and the Japanese Meteorological Agency (JMA). There are also ground-receiving stations in more than 170 countries collecting picture transmission by NOAA satellites. Satellite data collected by Russia, China and India are mostly used in those countries.

A vast suite of operational products is now available from NOAA and Department of Defense (DoD) Defense Meteorological Satellite Program (DMSP) satellites. The DMSP series are polar orbiting. They provide imagery from 1970 and digital products from 1992. NASA's Nimbus and Earth Observing System (EOS) satellites provide numerous additional research products including sea ice, vegetation indices, energy balance components, tropical rainfall amounts and surface winds.

Descriptions of available satellite data may be found at:

http:// lwf.ncdc.noaa.gov/oa/satellite/satelliteresources.html
http://eospso.gsfc.nasa.gov/
http://www.eumetsat.de/

Source

Purdom, J. F. W. and Menzel, P. (1996) Evolution of satellite observations in the United States and their use in meteorology. In J. R. Fleming (ed.), *Historical Essays on Meteorology 1919–1995*. Amer. Met. Soc., Boston, MA, pp. 99–155.

addition, satellites have a data-collection system (DCS) that relays data on numerous environmental variables from ground platforms or ocean buoys to processing centres; GOES can also transmit processed satellite images in facsimile, and the NOAA polar orbiters have an automatic picture transmission (APT) system that is used at about 1000 stations worldwide.

D NUMERICAL WEATHER PREDICTION

General circulation models of all kinds are also applied operationally to the day-to-day prediction of weather at centres around the world. Modern weather forecasting did not become possible until weather information could be collected, assembled and processed rapidly. The first development came in the mid-nineteenth century with the invention of telegraphy, which permitted immediate analysis of weather data by the drawing of synoptic charts. These were first displayed in Britain at the Great Exhibition of 1851. Severe storm events and loss of life and property prompted the development of weather forecasting in Britain and North America in the 1860s to 1870s. Sequences of weather change were correlated with barometric pressure patterns in both space and time by such workers as Fitzroy and Abercromby, but it was not until later that theoretical models of weather systems were devised, notably the Bjerknes' depression model (see Figure 9.7).

Forecasts are usually referred to as short-range (up to approximately three days), medium-range (up to approximately fourteen days) and long-range (monthly or seasonal) outlooks. For present purposes, the first two can be considered together as their methodology is similar, and because of increasing computing power they are becoming less distinguishable as separate types of forecast.

1 Short- and medium-range forecasting

During the first half of the twentieth century, short-range forecasts were based on synoptic principles, empirical rules and extrapolation of pressure changes. The Bjerknes' model of cyclone development for middle latitudes and simple concepts of tropical weather (see Chapter 11) served as the basic tools of the forecaster. The relationship between the development of surface lows and highs and the upper-air circulation was worked out during the 1940s and 1950s by C-G. Rossby, R.C. Sutcliffe and others, providing the theoretical basis of synoptic forecasting. In this way, the position and intensities of low- and high-pressure cells and frontal systems were predicted.

Since 1955 in the United States – and 1965 in the United Kingdom – routine forecasts have been based on numerical models. These predict the evolution of physical processes in the atmosphere by determinations of the conservation of mass, energy and momentum. The basic principle is that the rise or fall of surface pressure is related to mass convergence or divergence, respectively, in the overlying air column. This prediction method was first proposed by L. F. Richardson, who, in 1922, made a laborious test calculation that gave very unsatisfactory results. The major reason for this lack of success was that the net convergence or divergence in an air column is a small residual term compared with the large values of convergence and divergence at different levels in the atmosphere (see Figure 6.7). Small errors arising from observational limitations may therefore have a considerable effect on the correctness of the analysis.

Numerical weather prediction (NWP) methods developed in the 1950s use a less direct approach. The first developments assumed a one-level barotropic atmosphere with geostrophic winds and hence no convergence or divergence. The movement of systems could be predicted, but not changes in intensity. Despite the great simplifications involved in the barotropic model, it has been used for forecasting 500-mb contour patterns. The latest techniques employ multi-level baroclinic models and include frictional and other effects; hence the basic mechanisms of cyclogenesis are provided for. It is noteworthy that *fields* of continuous variables, such as pressure, wind and temperature, are handled and that fronts are regarded as secondary, derived features. The vast increase in the number of calculations that these models perform necessitated a new generation of supercomputers to allow the preparation of forecast maps to keep sufficiently ahead of the weather changes!

Forecast practices in the major national weather prediction centres around the globe are basically similar. As an example of the operational use of weather forecasting models we discuss the methods and procedures of the National Centers for Environmental Prediction (NCEP) in Washington, DC, established in 1995. NCEP currently runs a global spectral model operationally. The Global Forecast System (GFS) model (formerly known as the AVN/MRF for aviation/medium range forecast) has a spectral truncation of T170 (approximately 0.7/0.7 degree grid), forty-two unequally spaced vertical levels, and is integrated out to seven days. The truncation is increased to T62 with twenty-eight levels out to fifteen days. It should be noted that typically the computer time required decreases several-fold when the grid spacing is doubled. In order to produce a forecast, an analysis of currently observed weather conditions must first be generated as an initial condition for the model. Very sophisticated data-assimilation algorithms take a large amount of observational data from a variety of platforms (surface stations, rawinsondes, ship, aircraft, satellite) which are often measured at irregular intervals in both space and time and merge them into a single coherent picture of current atmospheric conditions on standard pressure levels and at regular grid intervals. The model equations are then integrated into the future from this starting point.

The GFS currently runs out seventeen simulations which are identical except for very small differences in initial conditions four times a day. The repetition of numerical forecasts incorporating minor differences in the initial conditions allows the effects of uncertainties in the observations, inaccuracies in the model formulations, and 'the chaotic' nature of atmospheric behaviour to be accounted for in terms of probabilities. Errors in numerical forecasts arise from several sources. One of the most serious is the limited accuracy of the initial analyses due to data deficiencies. Coverage over the oceans is sparse, and only a quarter of the possible ship reports may be received within twelve hours; even over land more than one-third of the synoptic reports may be delayed beyond six hours. However, satellite-derived information and instrumentation on commercial aircraft fill gaps in the upper-air observations. Another limitation is imposed by the horizontal and vertical resolution of the models and the need to parameterize subgrid processes such as cumulus convection. The small-scale nature of the turbulent motion of the atmosphere means that some weather phenomena are basically unpredictable; for example, the specific locations of shower cells in an unstable airmass. Greater precision than the 'showers and bright periods' or 'scattered showers' is impossible for next-day forecasts. The procedure for preparing a forecast is becoming much less subjective, although in complex weather situations the skill of the experienced forecaster still makes the technique almost as much an art as a science. Detailed regional or local predictions can only be made within the framework of the general forecast situation for the country, and demand thorough knowledge of possible topographic or other local effects by the forecaster. The average of these ensembles is used for the short-term forecast. The primary analysis products issued every six hours are MSL pressure, temperature and relative humidity at 850 mb and 700 mb, respectively, wind velocity at 300 mb, 1000 to 500-mb thickness, and 500-mb vorticity.

NCEP also computes medium-range ensemble forecasts from the seventeen ensemble runs performed at each interval. For example, the probability that the twenty-four hour precipitation amount some days in the future will exceed a certain threshold can be computed by counting the number of model runs where the value is exceeded in a certain grid box. This is a rough estimate of the probability because seventeen simulations cannot span all possible weather scenarios given the uncertainty in initial conditions and model formulation. Current forecasts are given as six-to-ten-day outlook and eight-to-fourteen day outlook of the departure of temperature and precipitation from normal.

In order to calculate forecasts with more regional detail, NCEP uses a limited area 'eta' model which makes up to eighty-four-hour forecasts over North America only. Like all operational weather models the eta is in a continual cycle of improvement and redesign. At present, however, the eta model has a 12 km grid spacing and sixty vertical layers. A specialized vertical co-ordinate is employed in order to handle the sharp changes in topography a high resolution model encounters. Eta has a similar suite of output variables as the GFS.

Because a typical weather forecast, even in the highest resolution regional models, is meant to depict an average over a large grid box, the actual conditions at any single point within that grid box will not generally be accurately predicted. Forecasters have always subjectively applied model information to forecasts at a single point using their own experience as to how accurate model information has been in the past under certain circumstances (i.e. a subjective assessment of model bias). An effort to make such localized use of information more objective is called model output statistics (MOS) and actual weather conditions at specific weather stations are now commonly predicted using this technique. MOS may be applied to any model and aims to interpolate objectively gridded model output to a single station based on its climate and weather history. Multiple regression equations are developed which relate the actual weather observed at a station over the course of time with the conditions predicted by the model. With a long enough history, MOS can make a correction for local effects not simulated in the model and for certain model biases. MOS variables include daily maximum/minimum temperature, twelve-hour probability of precipitation occurrences and precipitation amount, probability of frozen precipitation, thunderstorm occurrence, cloud cover and surface winds.

Various types of specialty forecasts are also regularly made. In the United States, the National Hurricane Center in Miami is responsible for issuing forecasts as to hurricane intensity changes and the track the storm will follow in the Atlantic and eastern Pacific areas. Forecasts are issued for seventy-two hours in advance four times daily. The central Pacific Hurricane Center performs similar forecasts for storms west of 140°W and east of the dateline. The US weather service also uses numerical models to predict the evolution of El Niño–Southern Oscillation which is important for long-range forecasts (discussed below). Special events, such as the Olympic Games, are beginning regularly to employ numerical weather forecasting into their preparations and to use regional models designed to be most accurate at the single point of interest. MOS techniques are also used to improve these very specialized forecasts.

2 ‘Nowcasting’

Severe weather is typically short-lived (<2 hours) and, due to its mesoscale character (<100 km), it affects local/regional areas, necessitating site-specific forecasts. Included in this category are thunderstorms, flash floods, gust fronts, tornadoes, high winds (especially along coasts, over lakes and mountains), heavy snow and freezing precipitation. Mesoscale models with grid cells which can be less than 10 km on a side are used regularly to study such phenomena in detail. The development of radar networks (Box 4.1), new instruments and high-speed communication links has provided a means of issuing warnings of severe weather within the next hour. Several countries have recently developed integrated satellite and radar systems to provide information on the horizontal and vertical extent of thunderstorms, for example. Networks of automatic weather stations (including buoys) that measure wind, temperature and humidity supplement such data. In addition, for detailed boundary layer and lower troposphere data, there is now an array of vertical sounders. These include: acoustic sounders (measuring wind speed and direction from echoes created by thermal eddies), and specialized (Doppler) radar measuring winds in clear air by returns either from insects (3.5 cm wavelength radar) or from variations in the air’s refractive index (10 cm wavelength radar). *Nowcasting* techniques use highly automated computers and image-analysis systems to integrate data rapidly from a variety of sources. Interpretation of the data displays requires skilled personnel and/or extensive software to provide appropriate information. The prompt warning of wind shear and downburst hazards at airports is one example of the importance of nowcasting procedures.

Overall, the greatest benefits from improved forecasting may be expected in aviation and the electric power industry for forecasts less than six hours ahead, in transportation, construction and manufacturing for twelve to twenty-four-hour forecasts and in agriculture for two- to five-day forecasts. In terms of economic losses, the latter category could benefit the most from more reliable and more precise forecasts.

3 Long-range outlooks

The atmosphere–ocean system is a non-linear (chaotic) system making exact long-term prediction of individual weather events impossible. Small errors in the initial conditions used to start a model simulation invariably to grow in magnitude and spatial scale and the entire globe will generally be affected by a small observational error at a single point before long. Therefore, long-term weather prediction and climate prediction do not try to predict individual weather events for these would certainly be in error. Instead they generally try to represent the statistics of the climate rather than the weather itself and are often associated with probabilities based on statistical relationships.

Like numerical forecasting at shorter timescales, long-range (monthly and seasonal) outlooks use a combination of dynamical and statistical approaches in order to assess the probability of certain weather situations. Long-range forecasts rely on the idea that some types of weather, despite being unpredictable in their details, may, under certain circumstances, be more likely than in others. One major recent advance in long-range forecasts is the realization that El Niño–Southern Oscillation has documented statistical effects in many parts of the globe. For any particular El Niño or La Niña it is generally not realistic to forecast increased/decreased precipitation at most points in the globe but many regions show a statistical tendency towards more or less precipitation or higher/lower temperatures depending on the phase of ENSO. Long-range forecasts make use of these statistical relationships. ENSO has a fairly regular periodicity allowing for some skill in predicting changes in phase just from climatology. Several dynamical models also try to predict the future phase of ENSO, though these have not been dramatically more sucessful than a knowledge of the climatology. The phase of ENSO is the single most important factor going into long range forecasts today.

The United States NCEP is again typical of the methodology used globally. It currently issues thirty-day and three-month seasonal forecasts up to one year into the future. The primary information used in these outlooks is the phase of ENSO, recent and extended climate history, the pattern of soil moisture which can affect temperature and precipitation far into the future, and an ensemble of twenty GCM model runs driven with predicted SSTs from an AOGCM simulation over the period. This information is used to produce a variety of indices which predict the probability of three equally likely categories of temperature (near normal, above/below normal) and precipitation (near average,

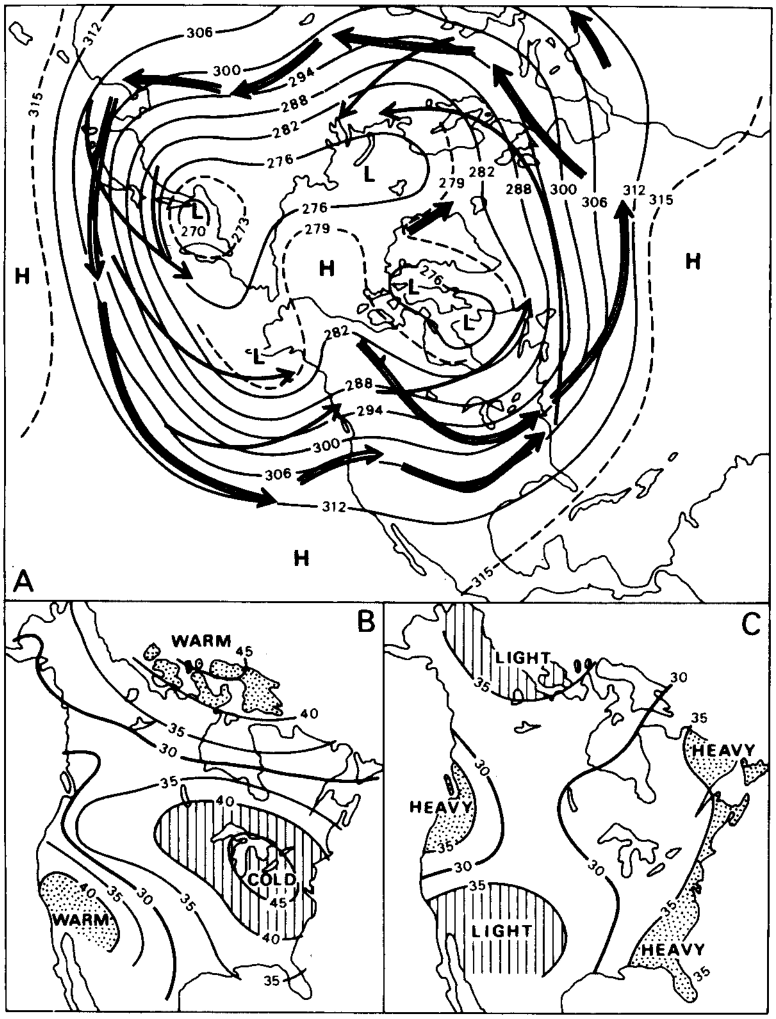


Figure 8.7 Forecast of North American weather for December 1985 made one month ahead (A) Predicted 700-mb contours (gp dam). Solid arrows indicate main tracks of cyclones, open arrows of anti-cyclones, at sea-level. The forecasting of such tracks has recently been discontinued. (B) and (C) Forecast average temperature (B) and average precipitation (C) probabilities. There are three classes of temperature, above normal, normal and below normal, and similarly heavy, near normal and light for precipitation. Each of these classes is defined to occur 30 per cent of the time in the long run; near-normal temperature or moderate precipitation occur 30 per cent of the time in the long run; near-normal temperature or moderate precipitation occur 40 per cent of the time. The 30 per cent heavy lines indicate indifference (for any departure from average), but near-normal values are most likely in unshaded areas.

Source: From *Monthly and Seasonal Weather Outlook*, 39(23) (28 November 1985), Climate Analysis Center, NOAA, Washington, DC.

above/below the median) (see Figures 8.7 and 8.8), together with tables for many cities. Figure 8.8A illustrates the observed height field corresponding to Figure 8.7A for December 1985, showing that the pattern is well represented on the forecast chart. Figure 8.8B and C show that in this case, as is usual, the temperature forecasts are more reliable than those for precipitation.

A statistical techniqe called a *canonical correlation analysis* uses all the above information to produce long-range outlooks. Simulated 700-mb heights, global SST patterns, US surface temperature and precipitation for the past year are all used to infer possible preferred patterns. Temperature and precipitation history give information about persistence and trends over the year. ENSO is emphasized in this analysis but other natural modes of variability such as the North Atlantic Oscillation are also accounted for.

Secondary analyses which use single predictor variables are also available and become more or less useful than the correlation analysis under differing circumstances. The composite analysis estimates ENSO effects by defining whether a La Niña, El Niño, or neutral conditions are forecast for the period of interest and then taking into account whether there is confidence that this one phase of ENSO will exist. Another index predicts future temperature and precipitation based on persistence in the past ten or fifteen years. This measure emphasizes trends and long-term regimes. A third secondary index is a constructed analogue forecast from soil moisture patterns.

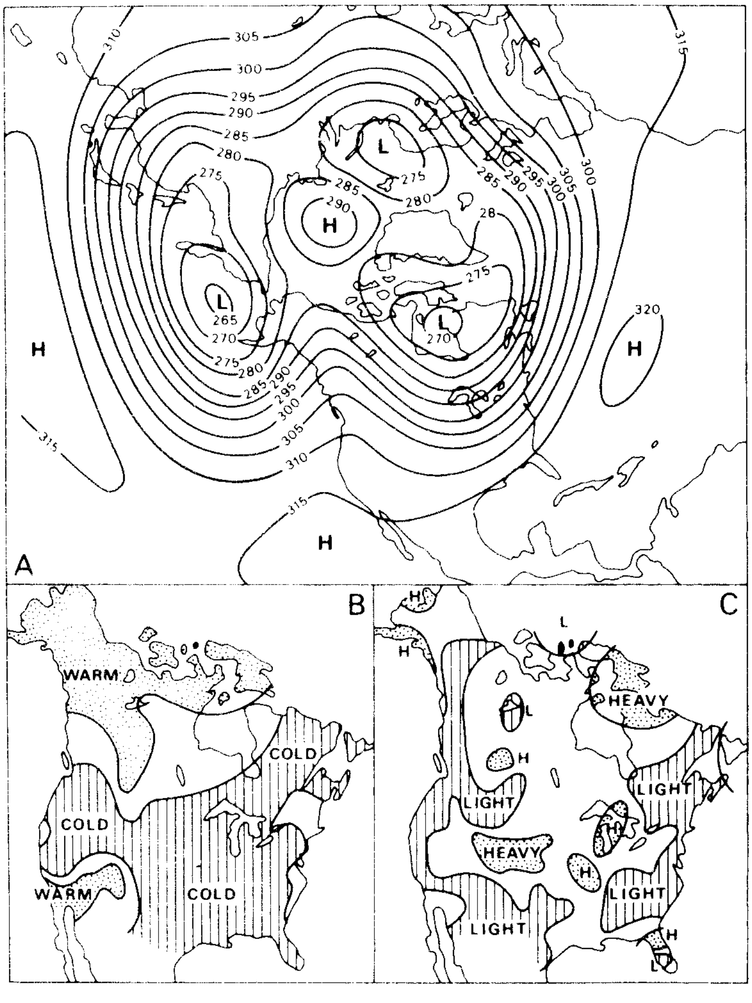


Figure 8.8 Actual North American weather for December 1985 (cf. Figure 8.7). Observed 700-mb contours (5 gp dam) corresponding to Figure 8.7A, B and C. Observed temperature (B) and precipitation (C), corresponding to Figure 8.7B and C.

Source: From *Monthly and Seasonal Weather Outlook*, 40(1) (1986), Climate Analysis Center, NOAA, Washington, DC.

Forecast skill for long-range outlooks is mixed. For all measures skill in temperature is higher than for precipitation. Precipitation forecasts generally show little skill unless there is a strong El Niño or La Niña. Temperature outlooks show the highest skill in late winter and late summer.

SUMMARY

Various types of numerical model are used to study the mechanisms of the atmospheric circulation, climate processes and weather forecasting. These include vertical column models of radiative and convective processes, one- and two-dimensional energy balance models and complete three-dimensional general circulation models (GCMs) which can be coupled with ocean and sea-ice models or with regional climate models. While initially developed for weather forecasting such models are now used widely to study climatic anomalies and past and future changes of global climate. These uses require coupling of atmospheric and oceanic GCMs and the representation of ice and land surface processes.

Forecasts are issued for different timescales and the techniques involved differ considerably. Immediate 'nowcasts' rely heavily on current radar and satellite data. Short- and intermediate-range forecasts are now derived from numerical models with some statistical guidance while long-range forecasts use numerical models in an almost completely probabilistic manner.

DISCUSSION TOPICS

- What types of experiment can be performed with a global climate model that cannot be observed in nature?
- What are some of the problems encountered in evaluating the results of GCM experiments?
- Consider the different concepts and methodologies used in forecasting weather on timescales of a few hours, the next day, and the next week.

FURTHER READING

Books

Bader, M. J. *et al*. (1995) *Images in Weather Forecasting*, Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, 499pp. [Extensive collection of imagery illustrating all types of synoptic phenomena.]

Barry, R. G. and Carleton, A. M. (2001) *Synoptic and Dynamic Climatology*, Routledge, London, 620pp.

Browning, K. A. (ed.) (1983) *Nowcasting*, Academic Press, New York, 256pp. [Treats the design of forecast systems, new remote sensing tools, and simple and numerical forecasts.]

Conway, E. D. and the Maryland Space grant Consortium (1997) *Introduction to Satellite Imagery Interpretation*, Johns Hopkins University Press, Baltimore, MD, 242pp. [Useful, well-illustrated introduction to basics of remote sensing, satellite systems and atmospheric applications – clouds, winds, jet streams, synoptic and mesoscale systems, air quality; oceanographic applications including sea ice.]

Henderson-Sellers, A. (ed.) (1995) *Future Climates of the World: A Modelling Perspective*, Elsevier, Amsterdam, 636pp. [Provides geological perspective of past climate, observed climate variability and future projections, anthropogenic effects.]

McGuffie, K. and Henderson-Sellers, A. (1997) *A Climate Modelling Primer* (2nd edn), John Wiley & Sons, Chichester, 268pp. [Explains the basis and mechanisms of climate models; includes CD with additional resources.]

Monmonier, M. (1999) *Air Apparent. How Meteorologists Learned to Map, Predict and Dramatize the Weather*, University of Chicago Press, Chicago, 309pp. [A readable history of the development of the weather map and forecasting, including the tools and technologies on which they are based.]

Trenberth, K. E. (ed.) (1992) *Climate System Modeling*, Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, 788pp. [Essays by specialists covering all aspects of modelling the climate system and its components – oceans, sea ice, biosphere, gas exchanges.]

Washington, W. M. and Parkinson, C. L. (1986) *An Introduction to Three-dimensional Climate Modeling*, University Science Books, Mill Valley, CA, 422pp. [Comprehensive account of the basis of atmospheric general circulation models.]

Websites

http://www.meto.gov.uk/research/hadleycentre/pubs/brochures/B2001/precis.pdf

http://www.emc.ncep.noaa.gov/modelinginfo/index.html

Articles

Barry, R. G. (1979) Recent advances in climate theory based on simple climate models. *Prog. Phys. Geog*. 3, 259–86.

Bosart, L. (1985) Weather forecasting. In Houghton, D. D. (ed.) *Handbook of Applied Meteorology*, Wiley, New York, pp. 205–79.

Browning, K. A. (1980) Local weather forecasting. *Proc. Roy. Soc. Lond. Sect. A* 371, 179–211.

Carson, D. J. (1999) Climate modelling: achievements and prospects. *Quart. J. Roy. Met. Soc*., 125, 1–27.

Cullen, M. J. P. (1993) The Unified Forecast/Climate model. *Met. Mag*. 122, 81–94.

Druyan, L. M., Somerville, R. J. C. and Quirk, W. J. (1975) Extended-range forecasts with the GISS model of the global atmosphere. *Monthly Weather Review* 103, 779–95.

Foreman, S. J. (1992) The role of ocean models in FOAM. *Met. Mag*. 121, 113–22.

Gates, W. L. (1992) The Atmospheric Model Intercomparison Project. *Bull. Amer. Met. Soc*. 73(120), 1962–70.

Harrison, M. J. S. (1995) Long-range forecasting since 1980 – empirical and numerical prediction out to one month for the United Kingdom. *Weather* 50(12), 440–9.

Hunt, J. C. R. (1994) Developments in forecasting the atmospheric environment. *Weather* 49(9), 312–18.

Kalnay, E., Kanamitsu, M. and Baker, W. E. (1990) Global numerical weather prediction at the National Meteorological Center. *Bull. Amer. Met. Soc*. 71, 1410–28.

Kiehl, J. T. (1992) Atmospheric general circulation modelling. In Trenberth, K. E. (ed.) *Climate System Modelling*, Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, pp. 319–69.

Klein, W. H. (1982) Statistical weather forecasting on different time scales. *Bull. Amer. Met. Soc*. 63, 170–7.

McCallum, E. and Mansfield, D. (1996) Weather forecasts in 1996. *Weather* 51(5), 181–8.

Meehl, G. A. (1984) Modelling the earth's climate. *Climatic Change* 6, 259–86.

Meehl, G. A. (1992) Global coupled models: atmosphere, ocean, sea ice. In Trenberth, K. E. (ed.) *Climate System Modelling*, Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, pp. 555–81.

Monin, A. S. (1975) Role of oceans in climate models. In *Physical Basis of Climate: Climate Modelling*, GARP Publications Series, Rept. no. 16, WMO, Geneva, pp. 201–5.

National Weather Service (1991) *Experimental Long-Lead Forecast Bulletin*, NOAA, Climate Prediction Center, Washington, DC.

Palmer, T. N. and Anderson, D. L. T. (1994) The prospects for seasonal forecasting – a review paper. *Quart. J. Roy. Met. Soc*. 120, 755–93.

Phillips, T. J. (1996) Documentation of the AMIP models on the World Wide Web. *Bull. Amer. Met. Soc*. 77(6), 1191–6.

Reed, D. N. (1995) Developments in weather forecasting for the medium range. *Weather* 50(12), 431–40.

Saltzman, B. (1983) Climatic systems analysis. *Adv. Geophysics* 25, 173–233.

Smagorinsky, J. (1974) Global atmospheric modeling and the numerical simulation of climate. In Hess, W. N. (ed.) *Weather and Climate Modification*, Wiley, New York, pp. 633–86.

Wagner, A. J. (1989) Medium- and long-range weather forecasting. *Weather and Forecasting* 4, 413–26.

Washington, W. M. (1992) Climate-model responses to increased CO_2 and other greenhouse gases. In Trenberth, K. E. (ed.) *Climate System Modelling*, Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, pp. 643–68.

9

Mid-latitude synoptic and mesoscale systems

Learning objectives
When you have read this chapter you will:

☐ Understand the airmass concept, the characteristics of the major airmasses and their geographical occurrence,
☐ Know the mechanisms of frontogenesis and the various frontal types,
☐ Understand the relationships between upper air and surface processes in forming frontal cyclones,
☐ Know the major types of non-frontal cyclone and how they form,
☐ Be familiar with the role of mesoscale convective systems in severe weather.

This chapter examines the classical ideas about airmasses and their role in the formation of frontal boundaries and in the development of extratropical cyclones. It also discusses the limitations of those ideas and more recent models of mid-latitude weather systems. Mesoscale systems in mid-latitudes are also treated. The chapter concludes with a brief overview of weather forecasting.

A THE AIRMASS CONCEPT

An airmass is defined as a large body of air whose physical properties (temperature, moisture content and lapse rate) are more or less uniform horizontally for hundreds of kilometres. The theoretical ideal is a *barotropic* atmosphere where surfaces of constant pressure are not intersected by isosteric (constant-density) surfaces, so that in any vertical cross-section, as shown in Figure 9.1, isobars and isotherms are parallel.

Three factors determine the nature and degree of uniformity of airmass characteristics: (1) the nature of the source area where the airmass obtains its original qualities; (2) the direction of movement and changes that occur as an airmass moves over long distances; and (3) the age of the airmass. Airmasses are classified on the basis of two primary factors. The first is temperature, giving arctic, polar and tropical air, and the second is the surface type in their region of origin, giving maritime and continental categories.

B NATURE OF THE SOURCE AREA

The basic idea of airmass formation is that radiative and turbulent transfers of energy and moisture, between the land or ocean surface and the atmosphere, give rise to

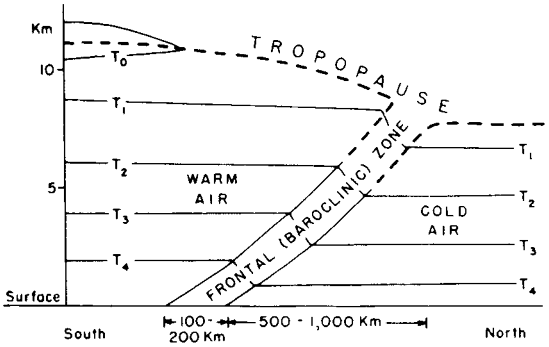

Km
10
5
Surface
TROPOPAUSE
T_0
T_1
T_2
T_3
T_4
WARM AIR
COLD AIR
FRONTAL (BAROCLINIC) ZONE
South
100-200 Km
500 - 1,000 Km
North

Figure 9.1 A schematic height cross-section for the northern hemisphere showing barotropic airmasses and a baroclinic frontal zone (assuming that density decreases with height only).

distinctive physical properties of the overlying air through vertical mixing. A degree of equilibrium between the surface conditions and the properties of the overlying airmass will be achieved if the air remains over a given geographical region for a period of about three to seven days. The chief source regions of airmasses are necessarily areas of extensive, uniform surface type that are overlaid by quasi-stationary pressure systems. These requirements are fulfilled where there is slow divergent flow from the major thermal and dynamic high-pressure cells. In contrast, low-pressure regions are zones of convergence into which airmasses move (see F, this chapter).

The major cold and warm airmasses will now be discussed.

1 Cold airmasses

The principal sources of cold air in the northern hemisphere are (1) the continental anticyclones of Siberia and northern Canada where continental polar (cP) airmasses form, and (2) the Arctic Basin, when it is dominated by high pressure in winter and spring (Figure 9.2A). Sometimes Arctic Basin air is designated as continental Arctic (cA), but the differences between cP and cA airmasses are limited mainly to the middle and upper troposphere, where temperatures are lower in the cA air.

The snow-covered source regions of these two airmasses lead to marked cooling of the lower layers (Figure 9.3). Since the vapour content of cold air is very limited, the airmasses generally have a mixing ratio of only 0.1–0.5 g/kg near the surface. The stability produced by the effect of surface cooling prevents vertical mixing, so further cooling occurs more slowly by radiation losses only. The effect of this radiative cooling and the tendency for airmass subsidence in high-pressure regions combine to produce a strong

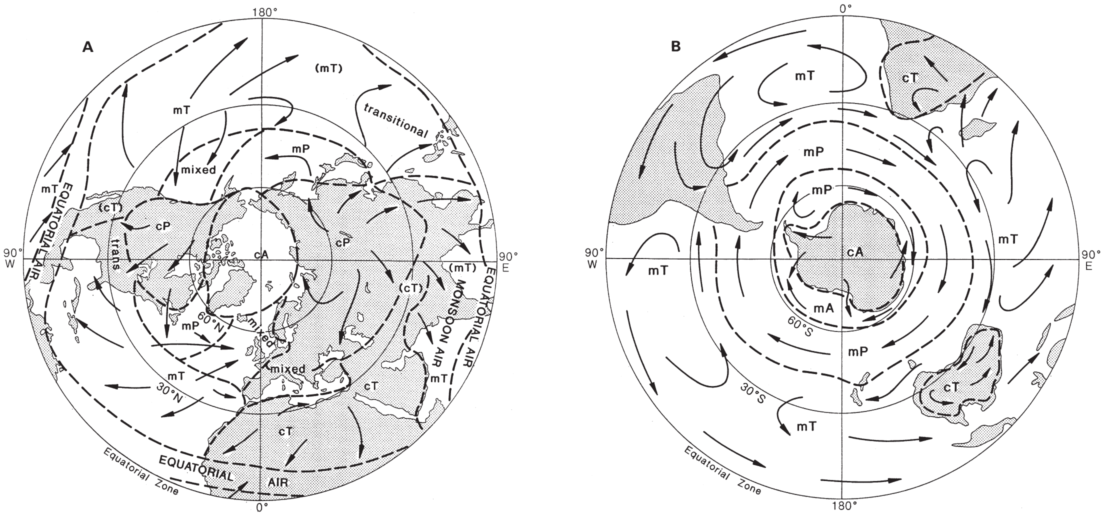

A
180°
(mT)
transitional
mT
mP
mixed
mT
(cT)
cP
trans
EQUATORIAL AIR
cA
cP
(mT)
(cT)
MONSOON AIR
EQUATORIAL AIR
mP
60°N
mixed
mixed
mT
30°N
mT
cT
cT
EQUATORIAL AIR
Equatorial Zone
0°
90° W
90° E
B
0°
mT
cT
mP
mP
cA
mA
60°S
mT
mT
mP
cT
30°S
mT
Equatorial Zone
180°
90° W
90° E

Figure 9.2 Airmasses in winter. (A) Northern hemisphere. (B) Southern hemisphere.

Sources: (A) After Petterssen (1950) and Crowe (1965). (B) After Taljaard *et al*. (1969) and Newton (1972), by permission of the American Meteorological Society.

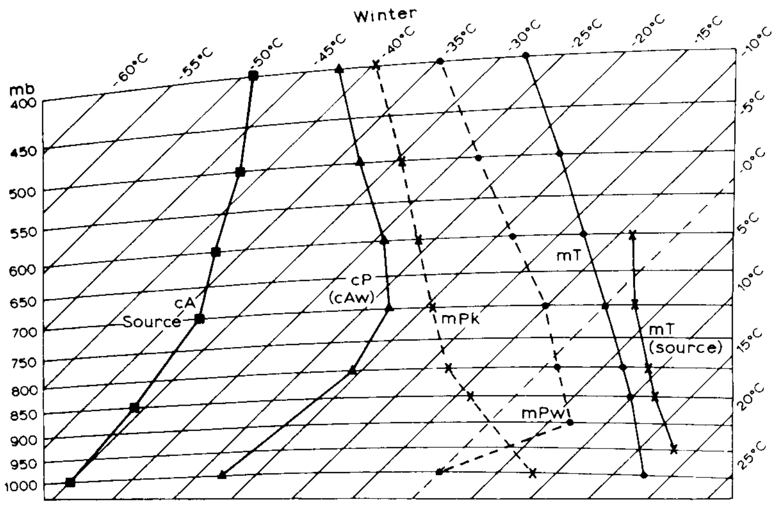


Figure 9.3 The average vertical temperature structure for selected airmasses affecting North America at about 45 to 50°N, recorded over their source areas or over North America in winter.

Sources: After Godson (1950), Showalter (1939), and Willett.

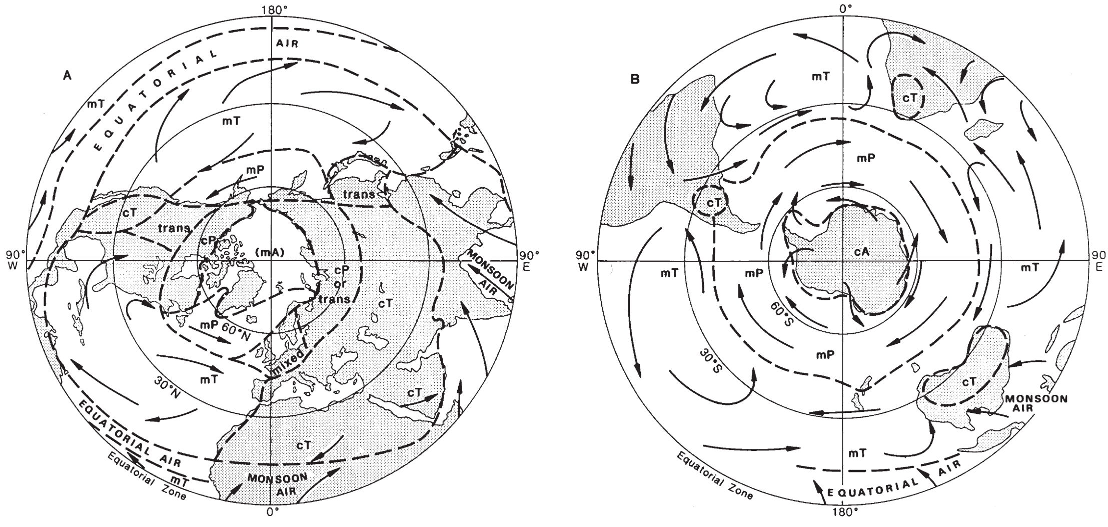

A
180°
AIR
EQUATORIAL
mT
mT
mP
trans
cT
trans
cP
(mA)
cP
or
trans
cT
90° W
90° E
MONSOON AIR
mP 60°N
mixed
30°N
mT
cT
cT
EQUATORIAL AIR
mT
Equatorial Zone
MONSOON AIR
0°
B
0°
mT
cT
mP
cT
cA
90° W
mT
mP
60°S
mT
90° E
30°S
mP
cT
MONSOON AIR
mT
Equatorial Zone
EQUATORIAL AIR
180°

Figure 9.4 Airmasses in summer. (A) Northern hemisphere. (B) Southern hemisphere.

Sources: (A) After Petterssen (1950) and Crowe (1965). (B) After Taljaard *et al*. (1969) and Newton (1972), by permission of the American Meteorological Society.

temperature inversion from the surface up to about 850 mb in typical cA or cP air. Because of their extreme dryness, small cloud amounts and low temperatures characterize these airmasses. In summer, continental heating over northern Canada and Siberia causes the virtual disappearance of their sources of cold air. The Arctic Basin source remains (Figure 9.4A), but the cold air here is very limited in depth at this time of year. In the southern hemisphere, the Antarctic continent and the ice shelves are a source of cA air in all seasons (see Figures 9.2B and 9.4B). There are no sources of cP air, however, due to the dominance of ocean areas in middle latitudes. At all seasons, cA or cP air is greatly modified by a passage over the ocean. Secondary types of airmass are produced by such means and these will be considered below.

2 Warm airmasses

These have their origins in the subtropical high-pressure cells and, during the summer season, in the bodies of warm surface air that characterize the heart of large land areas.

The tropical (T) sources are: (1) maritime (mT), originating in the oceanic subtropical high-pressure cells; (2) continental (cT), either originating from the continental parts of these subtropical cells (e.g. as does the North African *Harmattan*); or (3) associated with regions of generally light variable winds, assisted by upper tropospheric subsidence, over the major continents in summer (e.g. Central Asia). In the southern hemisphere, the source area of mT air covers about half of the hemisphere. There is no significant temperature gradient between the equator and the oceanic subtropical convergence at about 40°S.

The mT type is characterized by high temperatures (accentuated by the warming due to subsidence), high humidity of the lower layers over the oceans, and stable stratification. Since the air is warm and moist near the surface, stratiform cloud commonly develops as the air moves poleward from its source. The continental type in winter is restricted mainly to North Africa (see Figure 9.2), where it is a warm, dry and stable airmass. In summer, warming of the lower layers by the heated land generates a steep lapse rate, but despite its instability the low moisture content prevents the development of cloud and precipitation. In the southern hemisphere, cT air is rather more prevalent in winter over the subtropical continents, except for South America. In summer, much of southern Africa and northern Australia is affected by mT air, while there is a small source of cT air over Argentina (see Figure 9.4B).

The characteristics of the primary airmasses are illustrated in Figures 9.3 and 9.5. In some cases, movement away from the source region has considerably affected their properties, and this question is discussed below (see p. 181).

Source regions can also be defined from analysis of airstreams. Streamlines of the mean resultant winds (see Note 1) in individual months may be used to analyse areas of divergence representing airmass source regions, downstream airflow and the confluence zones between different airstreams. Figure 9.6A shows airmass dominance in the northern hemisphere in terms of annual duration. Four sources are indicated: the subtropical North Pacific and North Atlantic anticyclones, and their southern hemisphere counterparts. For the entire year, air from these sources covers at least 25 per cent of the northern hemisphere; for six months of each year they affect almost three-fifths of the hemisphere. In the ocean-dominated southern hemisphere,

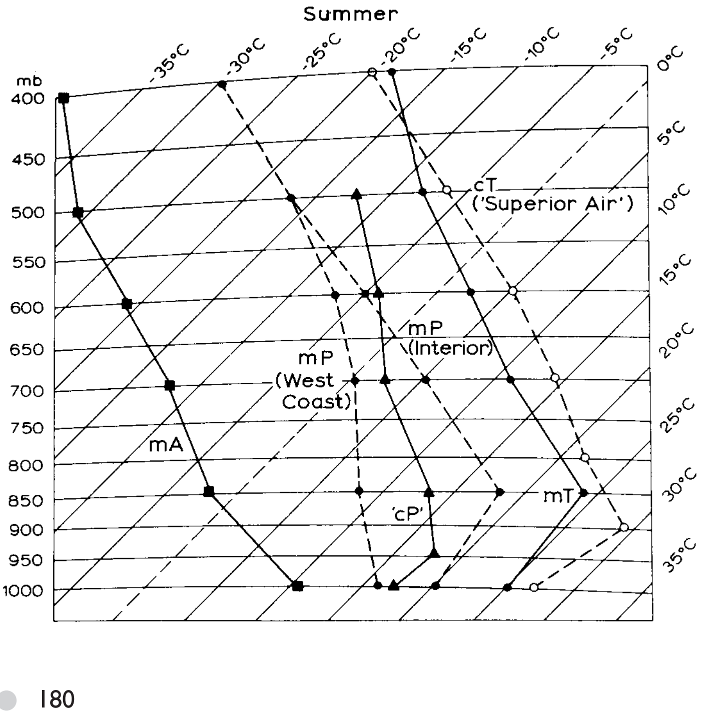


Figure 9.5 The average vertical temperature structure for selected airmasses affecting North America in summer.

Sources: After Godson (1950), Showalter (1939), and Willett.

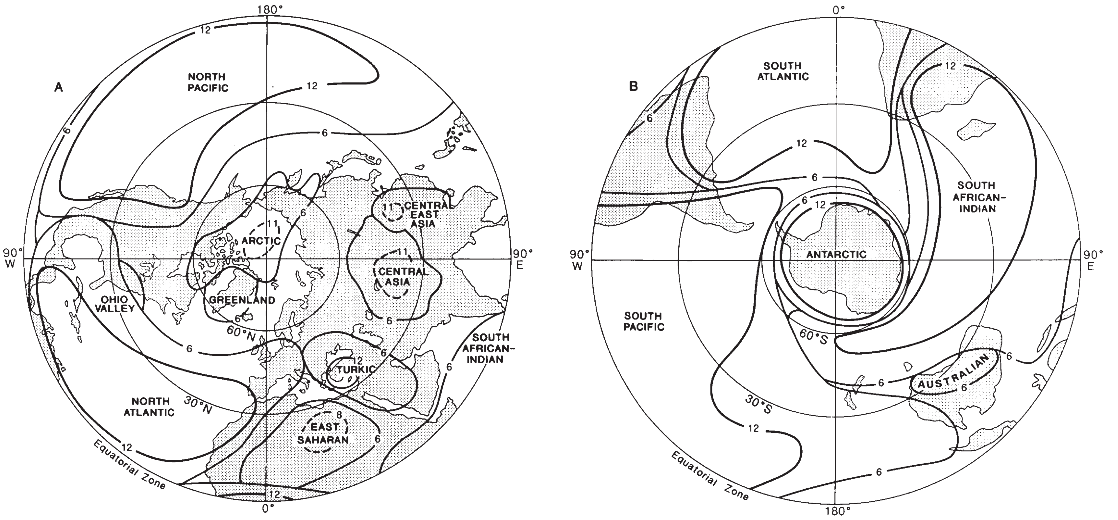


Figure 9.6 Airmass source regions. (A) Northern hemisphere. (B) Southern hemisphere. Numbers show the areas affected by each airmass in months per year.

Sources: After Wendland and Bryson (1981), and Wendland and McDonald (1986), by permission of the American Meteorological Society.

the airstream climatology is much simpler (Figure 9.6B). Source areas are the oceanic subtropical anticyclones. Antarctica is the major continental source, with another mainly in winter over Australia.

C AIRMASS MODIFICATION

As an airmass moves away from its source region it is affected by different heat and moisture exchanges with the ground surface and by dynamic processes in the atmosphere. Thus a barotropic airmass is gradually changed into a moderately *baroclinic* airstream in which isosteric and isobaric surfaces intersect one another. The presence of horizontal temperature gradients means that air cannot travel as a solid block maintaining an unchanging internal structure. The trajectory (i.e. actual path) followed by an air parcel in the middle or upper troposphere will normally be quite different from that of a parcel near the surface, due to the increase of westerly wind velocity with height in the troposphere. The structure of an airstream at a given instant is largely determined by the past history of airmass modification processes. In spite of these qualifications, the airmass concept retains practical value and is now used in air chemistry research.

1 Mechanisms of modification

The mechanisms by which airmasses are modified are, for convenience, treated separately, although in practice they may operate together.

a Thermodynamic changes

An airmass may be heated from below either by passing from a cold to a warm surface or by solar heating of the ground over which the air is located. Similarly, but in reverse, air can be cooled from below. Heating from below acts to increase airmass instability, so the effect may be spread rapidly through a considerable thickness of air, whereas surface cooling produces a temperature inversion, which limits the vertical extent of the cooling. Thus, cooling tends to occur gradually through radiative heat loss by the air.

Changes may also occur through increased evaporation, the moisture being supplied either from the underlying surface or by precipitation from an overlying airmass layer. In reverse, the abstraction of moisture by condensation or precipitation can also cause changes. An associated, and most important, change is the respective addition or loss of latent heat accompanying this condensation or evaporation. Annual values of latent and sensible heat transfers to the atmosphere, illustrated in Figures 3.29 and 3.30, show where these effects are important.

b Dynamic changes

Dynamic (or mechanical) changes are superficially different from thermodynamic changes because they involve mixing or pressure changes associated with the actual movement of the airmass. The physical properties of airmasses are considerably modified, for example, by a prolonged period of turbulent mixing (see Figure 5.7). This process is particularly important at low levels, where surface friction intensifies natural turbulence, providing a ready mechanism for the upward transfer of heat and moisture.

The radiative and advective exchanges discussed earlier are *diabatic*, but the ascent or descent of air causes adiabatic changes of temperature. Large-scale lifting may result from forced ascent by a mountain barrier or from airstream convergence. Conversely, sinking may occur when high-level convergence sets up subsidence or when stable air, that has been forced up over high ground by the pressure gradient, descends in its lee. Dynamic processes in the middle and upper troposphere are in fact a major cause of airmass modification. The decrease in stability aloft, as air moves away from areas of subsidence, is a common example of this type of mechanism.

2 The results of modification: secondary airmasses

Study of the ways in which airmasses change in character tells us a great deal about many common meteorological phenomena.

a Cold air

Continental polar air frequently streams out from Canada over the western Atlantic in winter, where it undergoes rapid transformation. Heating over the Gulf Stream drift makes the lower layers unstable, and evaporation into the air leads to sharp increases of moisture content (see Figure 4.6) and cloud formation (see Plate 9). The turbulence associated with the convective instability is marked by gusty conditions. When the air reaches the central Atlantic, it becomes a cool, moist, maritime polar (mP) airmass. Analogous processes occur with outflow from Asia over the north Pacific (see Figure 7.9). Over middle latitudes of the southern hemisphere, the circumpolar ocean gives rise to a continuous zone of mP air that, in summer, extends to the margin of Antarctica. In this season, however, a considerable gradient of ocean temperatures associated with the Antarctic convergence makes the zone far from uniform in its physical properties. Bright periods and squally showers, with a variable cloud cover of cumulus and cumulonimbus, typify the weather in cP airstreams. As mP air moves eastward towards Europe, the cooler sea surface may produce a neutral or even stable stratification near the surface, especially in summer, but subsequent heating over land will again regenerate unstable conditions. Similar conditions, but with lower temperatures, arise when cA air crosses high-latitude oceans, producing maritime Arctic (mA) air.

When cP air moves southward in winter, over central North America, for example, it becomes more unstable, but there is little gain in moisture content. The cloud type is scattered shallow cumulus, which gives showers only rarely. Exceptions occur in early winter around the eastern and southern shores of Hudson Bay and the Great Lakes. Until these water bodies freeze over, cold airstreams that cross them are warmed rapidly and supplied with moisture, leading to locally heavy snowfall (p. 233). Over Eurasia and North America, cP air may move southward and later recurve northward. Some schemes of airmass classification cater for such possibilities by specifying whether the air is colder (k), or warmer (w), than the surface over which it is passing.

In some parts of the world, the surface conditions and air circulation produce airmasses with intermediate characteristics. Northern Asia and northern Canada fall into this category in summer. In a general sense, the air has affinities with continental polar airmasses but these land areas have extensive bog and water surfaces, so the air is moist and cloud amounts quite high. In a similar manner, melt-water pools and openings in the Arctic pack-ice make the area a source of maritime Arctic (mA) air in summer (see Figure 9.4A). This designation is also applied to air over the Antarctic pack-ice in winter that is much less cold in its lower levels than the air over the continent itself.

b Warm air

The modification of warm airmasses is usually a gradual process. Air moving poleward over progressively cooler surfaces becomes increasingly stable in the lower layers.

In the case of mT air with high moisture content, surface cooling may produce advection fog, which is particularly common, for example, in the southwestern approaches to the English Channel during spring and early summer, when the sea is still cool. Similar development of advection fog in mT air occurs along the South China coast in February to April, and also off Newfoundland and over the coast of northern California in spring and summer. If the wind velocity is sufficient for vertical mixing, low-stratus cloud forms in the place of fog, and drizzle may result. In addition, forced ascent of the air by high ground, or by overriding of an adjacent airmass, can produce heavy rainfall.

The cT air originating in those parts of the subtropical anticyclones situated over the arid subtropics in summer is extremely hot and dry. It is typically unstable at low levels and dust storms may occur, but the dryness and the subsidence of the upper air limit cloud development. In the case of North Africa, cT air may move out over the Mediterranean, rapidly acquiring moisture, with the consequent release of potential instability triggering off showers and thunderstorm activity.

Airmasses in low latitudes present considerable problems of interpretation. The temperature contrasts found in middle and high latitudes are virtually absent, and what differences do exist are due principally to moisture content and to the presence or absence of subsidence. *Equatorial air* is usually cooler than that subsiding in the subtropical anticyclones, for example. On the equatorward sides of the subtropical anticyclones in summer, the air moves westward from areas with cool sea surfaces (e.g. off northwest Africa and California) towards higher sea-surface temperatures. Moreover, the southwestern parts of the high-pressure cells are affected only by weak subsidence due to the vertical structure of the cells. As a result, the mT air moving westward on the equatorward sides of the subtropical highs becomes much less stable than that on their northeastern margin. Eventually, such air forms the very warm, moist, unstable 'equatorial air' of the Intertropical Convergence Zone (see Figures 9.2 and 9.4). *Monsoon air* is indicated separately in these figures, although there is no basic difference between it and mT air. Modern approaches to tropical climatology are discussed in Chapter 11.

3 The age of the airmass

Eventually, the mixing and modification that accompanies the movement of an airmass away from its source causes the rate of energy exchange with its surroundings to diminish, and the various associated weather phenomena tend to dissipate. This process leads to the loss of its original identity until, finally, its features merge with those of surrounding airstreams and the air may come under the influence of a new source region.

Northwest Europe is shown as an area of 'mixed' airmasses in Figures 9.2 and 9.4. This is intended to refer to the variety of sources and directions from which air may invade the region. The same is also true of the Mediterranean Sea in winter, although the area does impart its own particular characteristics to polar and other airmasses that stagnate over it. Such air is termed *mediterranean*. In winter, it is convectively unstable (see Figure 5.6) as a result of the moisture picked up over the Mediterranean Sea.

The length of time during which an airmass retains its original characteristics depends very much on the extent of the source area and the type of pressure pattern affecting the area. In general, the lower air is changed much more rapidly than that at higher levels, although dynamic modifications aloft are no less significant in terms of weather processes. Modern airmass concepts must therefore be flexible from the point of view of both synoptic and climatological studies.

D FRONTOGENESIS

The first real advance in our understanding of mid-latitude weather variations was made with the discovery that many of the day-to-day changes are associated with the formation and movement of boundaries, or *fronts*, between different airmasses. Observations of the temperature, wind direction, humidity and other physical phenomena during unsettled periods showed that discontinuities often persist between impinging airmasses of differing characteristics. The term 'front' for these surfaces of airmass conflict was a logical one, proposed during the First World War by a group of meteorologists led by Vilhelm Bjerknes working in Norway (see Box 9.1). Their ideas are still an integral part of weather analysis and forecasting in middle and high latitudes.

THE POLAR FRONT THEORY OF CYCLONES

box 9.1
significant
20th-c. advance

The most significant and lasting contribution to synoptic meteorology in the twentieth century was made by the 'Bergen school of meteorologists' led by Vilhelm Bjerknes working in Norway during the First World War. Isolated by the war from other sources of information, they focused on careful, systematic analysis of synoptic weather maps and time cross-sections of weather systems.

There were three components to the theory published between 1919 and 1922: a cyclone model (Jacob Bjerknes), the idea of a cyclone life-cycle and frontal occlusion (Tor Bergeron) and the concept of cyclone families developing along the polar front (Halvor Solberg). It was proposed that mid-latitude cyclones develop in conjunction with frontogenesis as airstream convergence leads to boundaries developing between adjacent airmasses. The term *front* and the concept of frontal occlusion were introduced into the meteorological vocabulary. They also outlined a cross-sectional model of the distribution of clouds and precipitation in relation to frontal zones that is still widely used. In the 1930s, Bergeron distinguished between ana- and kata-types of fronts, but these ideas were not used widely until the 1960s. Although recent work has modified many aspects of the work of the Bergen school, several essential attributes have been clarified and reinforced. For example, in the occlusion process, the warm front may become bent back in the form of a T-bone, as noted originally by Bergeron. Theoretical and observational studies indicate that major cyclone elements are conveyor belts that transport heat and moisture within the system and lead to cellular precipitation structures.

It is well recognized that not all mid-latitude cyclones develop in frontal wave families like those forming over the oceans. Petterssen and Smeybe (1971) drew attention to the differences between waves that form in a frontal zone over the North Atlantic (type A) and those forming over North America (type B). Continental development usually involves cold air, possibly with an Arctic cold front, in an upper-level trough moving eastward over a zone of low-level warm advection. Cyclogenesis can develop from a dry trough in the lee of the Rocky Mountains.

References

Petterssen, S. and Smeybe, S. J. (1971) On the development of extratropical cyclones. *Quart. J. Roy. Met. Soc.*, 97: 457–82.

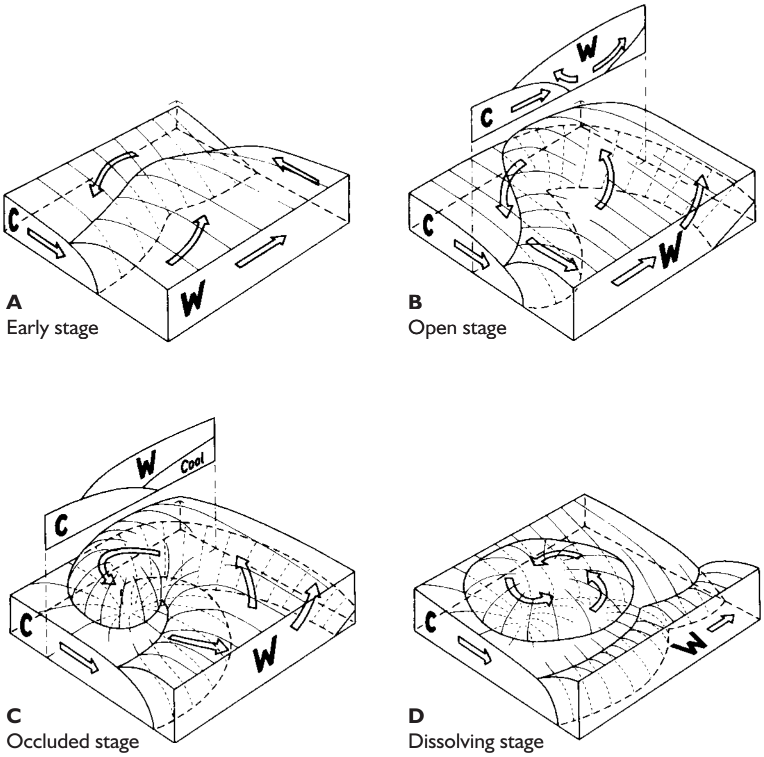
Friedman, R. M. (1989) *Appropriating the Weather. Vilhelm Bjerknes and the Construction of a Modern Meterology*. Cornell University Press, Ithaca, NY

1 Frontal waves

The typical geometry of an airmass interface, or front, resembles a wave form (Figure 9.7). Similar wave patterns are, in fact, found to occur on the interfaces between many different media; for example, waves on the sea surface, ripples on beach sand, eolian sand-dunes, etc. Unlike these wave forms, however, the frontal waves in the atmosphere are usually unstable; that is, they suddenly originate, increase in size, and then gradually dissipate. Numerical model calculations show that in middle latitudes waves in a baroclinic atmosphere are unstable if their wavelength exceeds a few thousand kilometres. Frontal wave cyclones are typically 1500 to 3000 km in wavelength. The circulation of the upper troposphere plays a key role in providing appropriate conditions for their development and growth, as shown below.

2 The frontal-wave depression

A depression (also termed a low or cyclone) (see Note 2) is an area of relatively low pressure, with a more or less circular isobaric pattern. It covers an area 1500 to 3000 km in diameter and usually has a life span of four to seven days. Systems with these characteristics, which are prominent on daily weather maps, are referred to as *synoptic-scale* features. The mid-latitude depression is usually associated with the convergence of contrasting



A
Early stage

B
Open stage

C
Occluded stage

D
Dissolving stage

Figure 9.7 Four stages in the typical development of a mid-latitude depression. Satellite views of the cloud systems corresponding to these stages are shown in Figure 9.8.

Notes: C = cold air; W = warm air.
Source: Mostly after Strahler (1965), modified after Beckinsale.

airmasses. According to the 'Norwegian cyclone model' (see Figure 9.7), the interface between these airmasses develops into a wave form with its apex located at the centre of the low-pressure area. The wave encloses a mass of warm air between modified cold air in front and fresh cold air in the rear. The formation of the wave also creates a distinction between the two sections of the original airmass discontinuity for, although each section still marks the boundary between cold and warm air, the weather characteristics found within each section are very different. The two sections of the frontal surface are distinguished by the names *warm front* for the leading edge of the wave and the warm air and *cold front* for that of the cold air to the rear (see Figure 9.7B).

The boundary between two adjacent airmasses is marked by a strongly baroclinic zone of large temperature gradient, 100 to 200 km wide (see C, this chapter, and Figure 9.1). Sharp discontinuities of temperature, moisture and wind properties at fronts, especially the warm front, are rather uncommon. Such discontinuities are usually the result of a pronounced surge of fresh, cold air in the rear sector of a depression, but in the middle and upper troposphere they are often caused by subsidence and may not coincide with the location of the baroclinic zone. In meteorological analysis centres, numerous criteria are used to locate frontal boundaries: 1000 to 500-mb thickness gradients, 850-mb wet-bulb potential temperature, cloud and precipitation bands, and wind shifts. However, a forecaster may have to use judgement when some of these criteria disagree.

On satellite imagery, active cold fronts in a strong baroclinic zone commonly show marked spiral cloud bands, formed as a result of the thermal advection (Figure 9.8B, C). A cirrus shield, however, typically covers warm fronts. As Figure 9.23 shows, an upper tropospheric jet stream is closely associated with the baroclinic zone, blowing roughly parallel to the line of the upper front (see Plate 17). This relationship is examined below.

Air behind the cold front, away from the low centre, commonly has an anticyclonic trajectory and hence moves at a greater than geostrophic speed (see Chapter 6A.4), impelling the cold front to acquire a super-geostrophic speed also. The wedge of warm air is pinched out at the surface and lifted bodily off the ground. This stage of *occlusion* eliminates the wave form at the surface (see Figure 9.7). The depression usually achieves its maximum intensity twelve to

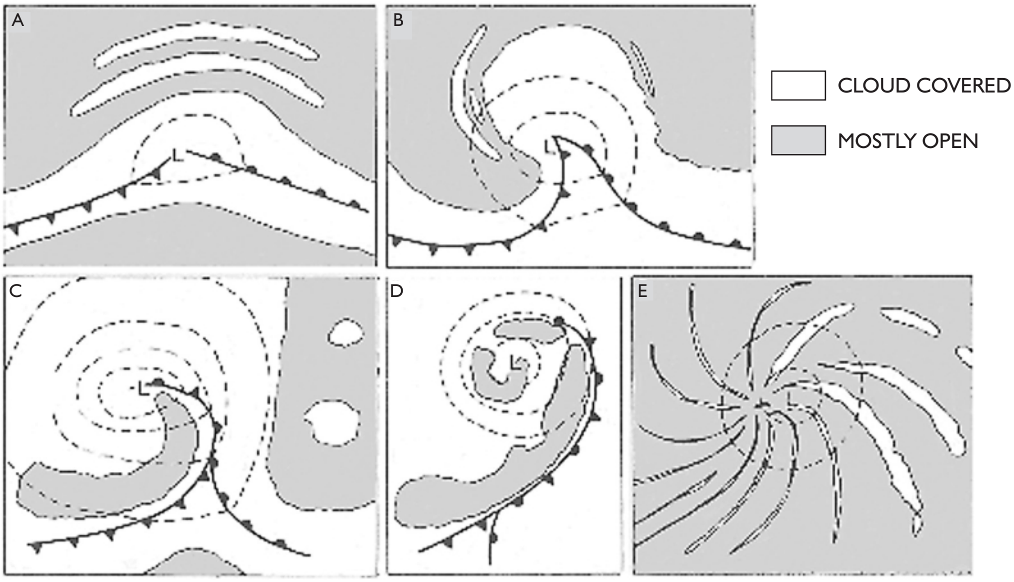


Figure 9.8 Schematic patterns of cloud cover (white) observed from satellites, in relation to surface fronts and generalized isobars. A, B, C and D correspond to the four stages in Figure 9.7.

Source: After Boucher and Newcomb (1962), by permission of the American Meteorological Society.

twenty-four hours after the beginning of occlusion. The occlusion gradually works outward from the centre of the depression along the warm front. Sometimes, the cold air wedge advances so rapidly that, in the friction layer close to the surface, cold air overruns the warm air and generates a *squall line* (see Chapter 9I).

By no means all frontal lows follow the idealized life cycle discussed above (cf. the caption for Plate 18). It is generally characteristic of oceanic cyclogenesis, although the evolution of those systems has been re-examined using aircraft observations collected during North Atlantic meteorological field programmes in the 1980s. These suggest a different evolution of maritime frontal cyclones (Figure 9.9). Four stages are identified: (I) cyclone inception features a broad (400 km) continuous frontal zone; (II) frontal fracture occurs near the centre of the low with tighter frontal gradients; (III) a T-bone structure and bent-back warm front develop, and (IV) the mature cyclone shows seclusion of the warm core within the polar airstream behind the cold front.

Over central North America, cyclones forming in winter and spring depart considerably from the Norwegian model. They often feature an outflow of cold Arctic air east of the Rocky Mountains forming an Arctic front, a lee trough with dry air descending from the mountains, and a warm, moist, southerly flow from the Gulf of Mexico (Figure 9.10). The trough superposes dry air over warm, moist air, generating instability and a rain band analogous to a warm front. The Arctic air moves southward west of the low centre, causing lifting of warmer, dry air but giving little precipitation. There may also be an upper cold front advancing over the trough that forms a rain band along its leading edge. Such a system is thought to have caused a record rainstorm at Holt, Missouri, on 22 June 1947, when 305 mm fell in just forty-two minutes!

E FRONTAL CHARACTERISTICS

The character of frontal weather depends upon the vertical motion in the airmasses. If the air in the warm sector is rising relative to the frontal zone the fronts are usually very active and are termed *ana-fronts*, whereas sinking of the warm air relative to the cold airmasses gives rise to less intense *kata-fronts* (Figure 9.11).

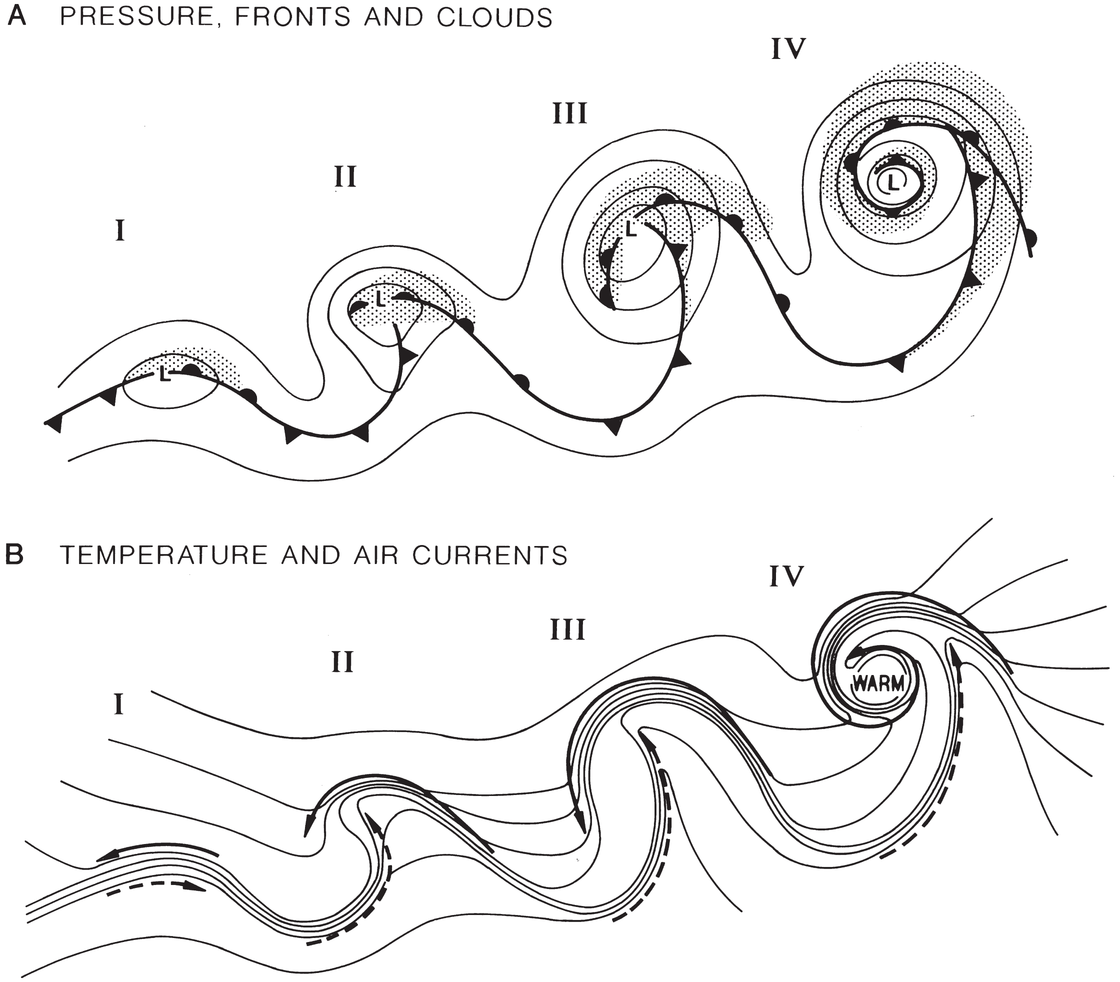


Figure 9.9 Stages in the life cycle of a marine extratropical depression showing: (I) Incipient frontal depression; (II) Frontal fracture; (III) Bent-back warm front and frontal T-bone; (IV) Warm-core seclusion. (A) Schematic isobars of sea-level pressure, fronts and cloud cover (stippled). (B) Isotherms and flows of cold air (solid arrows) and warm air (dashed arrows).

Source: After Shapiro and Keyser (1990), by permission of the American Meteorological Society.

1 The warm front

The warm front represents the leading edge of the warm sector in the wave. The frontal boundary has a very gentle slope of the order of 0.5–1°, so the cloud systems associated with the upper portion of the front herald its approach some twelve hours or more before the arrival of the surface front (see Plate 17). The ana-warm front, with rising warm air, has multi-layered cloud that steadily thickens and lowers towards the surface position of the front. The first clouds are thin, wispy cirrus, followed by sheets of cirrus and cirrostratus, and altostratus (Figure 9.11A). The sun is obscured as the altostratus layer thickens and drizzle or rain begins to fall. The cloud often extends through most of the troposphere and, with continuous precipitation occurring, is generally designated as nimbostratus. Patches of fracto-stratus may also form in the cold air as rain falling through this air undergoes evaporation and quickly saturates it.

The descending warm air of the kata-warm front greatly restricts the development of medium- and high-level clouds. The frontal cloud is mainly stratocumulus,

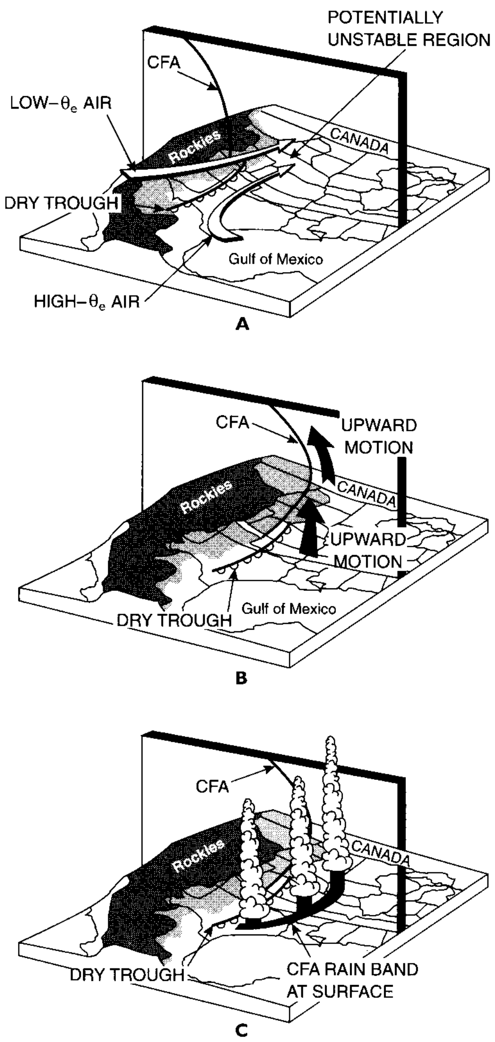


Figure 9.10 Schematic model of a dry trough and frontogenesis east of the Rocky Mountains. (A) Warm, dry air with low equivalent potential temperature (θ_e) from the Rockies overrides warm, moist, high θ_e air from the Gulf of Mexico, forming a potentially unstable zone east of the dry trough. (B) Upward motion associated with the cold front aloft (CFA). (C) Location of the CFA rain band at the surface. (Equivalent potential temperature is the potential temperature of an air parcel that is expanded adiabatically until all water vapour is condensed and the latent heat released then compressed adiabatically to 1000 mb pressure.)

Source: After Locatelli *et al*. (1995), by permission of the American Meteorological Society.

with a limited depth as a result of the subsidence inversions in both airmasses (see Figure 9.11B). Precipitation is usually light rain or drizzle formed by coalescence.

At the passage of the warm front the wind veers, the temperature rises and the fall of pressure is checked. The rain becomes intermittent or ceases in the warm air and the thin stratocumulus cloud sheet may break up.

Forecasting the extent of rain belts associated with the warm front is complicated by the fact that most fronts are not ana- or kata-fronts throughout their length or even at all levels in the troposphere. For this reason, radar is being used increasingly to map the precise extent of rain belts and to detect differences in rainfall intensity. Such studies show that most of the production and distribution of precipitation is controlled by a broad airflow a few hundred kilometres across and several kilometres deep, which flows parallel to and ahead of the surface cold front (see Figure 9.12). Just ahead of the cold front, the flow occurs as a low-level jet with winds of up to 25–30 m s^{-1} at about 1 km above the surface. The air, which is warm and moist, rises over the warm front and turns southeastward ahead of the front, merging with the mid-tropospheric flow (Figure 9.12). This flow is termed a '*conveyor belt*' (for large-scale heat and momentum transfer in mid-latitudes). Broad-scale convective (potential) instability is generated by the overrunning of this low-level flow by potentially colder, drier air in the middle troposphere. Instability is released mainly in small-scale convection cells that are organized into clusters, known as mesoscale precipitation areas (MPAs). These MPAs are further arranged in bands 50 to 100 km wide (Figure 9.13). Ahead of the warm front, the bands are broadly parallel to the airflow in the rising section of the conveyor belt, whereas in the warm sector they parallel the cold front and the low-level jet. In some cases, cells and clusters are further arranged in bands within the warm sector and ahead of the warm front (see Figures 9.13 and 9.14). Precipitation from warm front rain bands often involves 'seeding' by ice particles falling from the upper cloud layers. It has been estimated that 20 to 35 per cent of the precipitation originates in the 'seeder' zone and the remainder in the lower clouds (see also Figure 5.14). Orographic effects set up some of the cells and clusters, and these may travel downwind when the atmosphere is unstable.

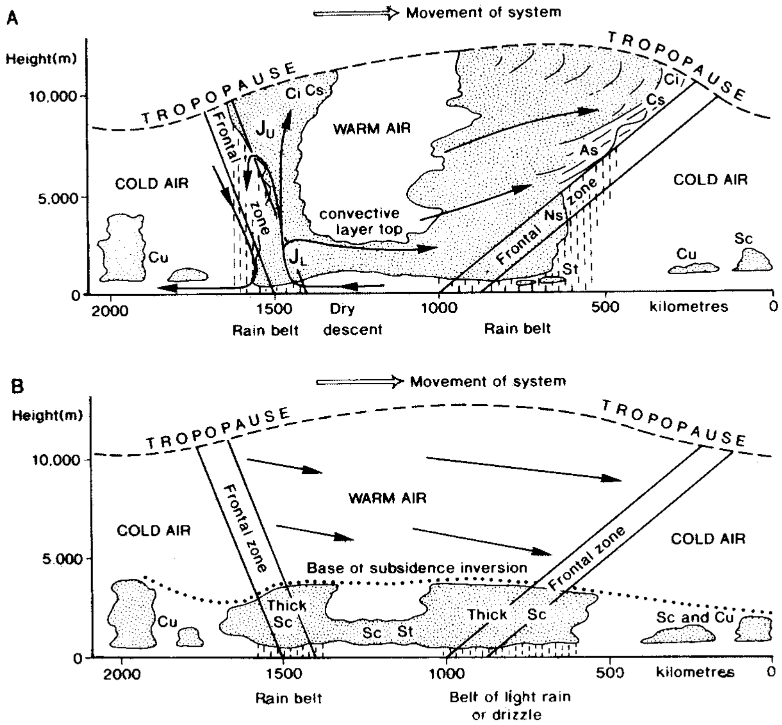

A
Movement of system
Height(m)
10,000
5,000
0
TROPOPAUSE
TROPOPAUSE
Ci Cs
J_U
WARM AIR
Frontal zone
COLD AIR
convective layer top
Cu
J_L
Ci
Cs
As
Ns
St
Frontal zone
COLD AIR
Cu
Sc
2000
1500
Dry
1000
500
kilometres
0
Rain belt
descent
Rain belt
B
Movement of system
Height(m)
10,000
5,000
0
TROPOPAUSE
TROPOPAUSE
WARM AIR
Frontal zone
COLD AIR
Base of subsidence inversion
Frontal zone
COLD AIR
Thick Sc
Cu
Sc St
Thick Sc
Sc and Cu
2000
1500
1000
500
kilometres
0
Rain belt
Belt of light rain or drizzle

Figure 9.11 (A) Cross-sectional model of a depression with ana-fronts, where the air is rising relative to each frontal surface. Note that an ana-warm front may occur with a kata-cold front and vice versa. J_U and J_L show the locations of the upper and lower jet streams, respectively. (B) Model of a depression with kata-fronts, where the air is sinking relative to each frontal surface.

Sources: After Pedgley (1962), and Bennetts *et al*. (1988). Crown copyright ©, reproduced by permission of the Controller of Her Majesty's Stationery Office.

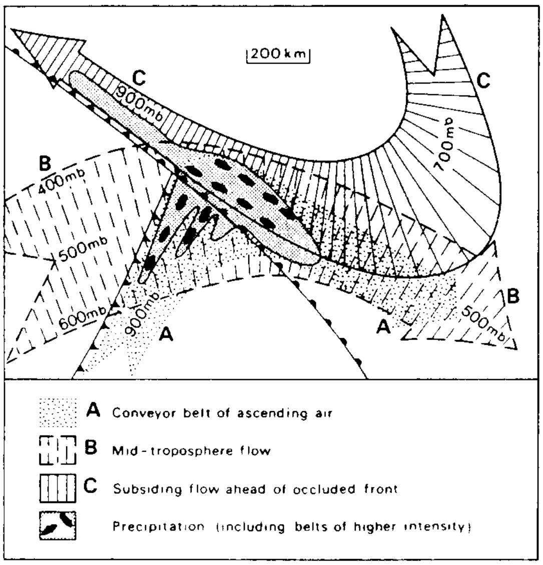

200 km
C
900mb
C
700mb
B
400mb
500mb
600mb
900mb
A
A
500mb
B
A Conveyor belt of ascending air
B Mid-troposphere flow
C Subsiding flow ahead of occluded front
Precipitation (including belts of higher intensity)

Figure 9.12 Model of the large-scale flow and mesoscale precipitation structure of a partially occluded depression typical of those affecting the British Isles. It shows the 'conveyor belt' (A) rising from 900 mb ahead of the cold front over the warm front. This is overlaid by a mid-tropospheric flow (B) of potentially colder air from behind the cold front. (C) indicates air subsiding ahead of the occluded front. Most of the precipitation occurs in the well-defined region shown, within which it exhibits a cellular and banded structure.

Source: After Harrold (1973), by permission of the Royal Meteorological Society.

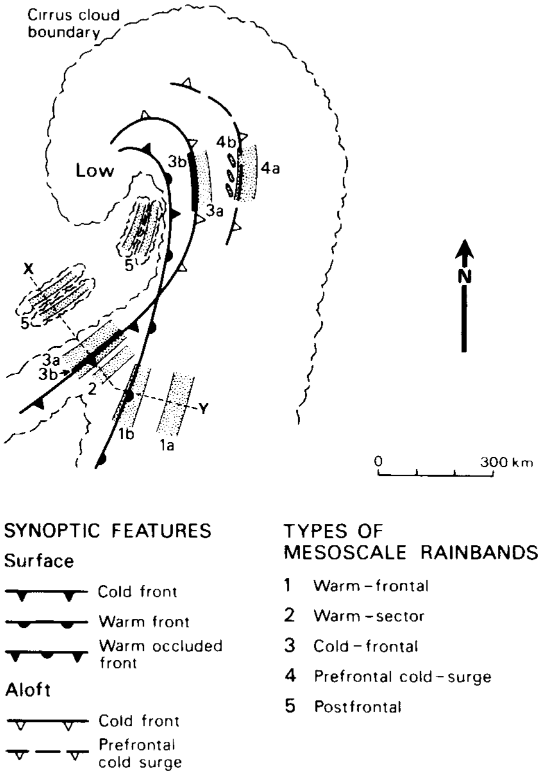

Cirrus cloud boundary
Low
3b
4b
4a
3a
X
5
5
3a
3b
2
Y
1b
1a
N
0
300 km
SYNOPTIC FEATURES
Surface
Cold front
Warm front
Warm occluded front
Aloft
Cold front
Prefrontal cold surge
TYPES OF MESOSCALE RAINBANDS
1 Warm-frontal
2 Warm-sector
3 Cold-frontal
4 Prefrontal cold-surge
5 Postfrontal

Figure 9.13 Fronts and associated rain bands typical of a mature depression. The broken line X–Y shows the location of the cross-section given in Figure 9.14.

Source: After Hobbs; from Houze and Hobbs (1982), copyright © Academic Press. Reproduced by permission.

2 The cold front

The weather conditions observed at cold fronts are equally variable, depending upon the stability of the warm sector air and the vertical motion relative to the frontal zone. The classical cold front model is of the ana-type, and the cloud is usually cumulonimbus. Figure 9.15 illustrates the warm conveyor belt associated with such a frontal zone and the line convection. Over the British Isles, air in the warm sector is rarely unstable, so that nimbostratus occurs more frequently at the cold front (see Figure 9.11A). With the kata-cold front the cloud is generally stratocumulus (see Figure 9.11B) and precipitation is light. With ana-cold fronts there are usually brief, heavy downpours, sometimes accompanied by thunder. The steep slope of the cold front (approximately 2°) means that the bad weather is of shorter duration than at the warm front. With the passage of the cold front, the wind veers sharply, pressure begins to rise and temperature falls. The sky may clear abruptly, even before the passage of the surface cold front in some cases, although with kata-cold fronts the changes are more gradual. Forward-tilting cold fronts are sometimes observed, either due to surface friction slowing the low-level motion of the front, or as a result of a cold front aloft (see Figure 9.10).

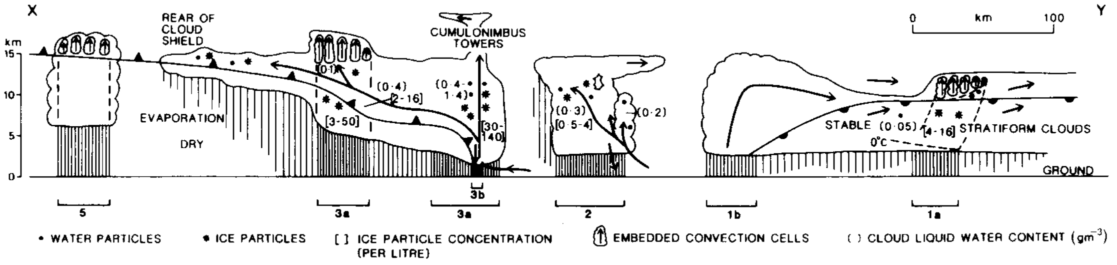

X
Y
km
15
10
5
0
REAR OF CLOUD SHIELD
EVAPORATION
DRY
CUMULONIMBUS TOWERS
(0·1)
(0·4)
[2-16]
(0·4-1·4)
[3-50]
[30-140]
(0·3)
[0·5-4]
(0·2)
0 km 100
STABLE (0·05)
[4-16]
STRATIFORM CLOUDS
0°C
GROUND
5
3a
3b
3a
2
1b
1a
• WATER PARTICLES
✱ ICE PARTICLES
[ ] ICE PARTICLE CONCENTRATION (PER LITRE)
EMBEDDED CONVECTION CELLS
( ) CLOUD LIQUID WATER CONTENT (gm⁻³)

Figure 9.14 Cross-section along the line X–Y in Figure 9.13 showing cloud structures and rain bands. The vertical hatching represents rainfall location and intensity. Raindrop and ice particle regions are shown, as are ice particle concentrations and cloud liquid water content. Numbered belts refer to those shown in Figure 9.13. Scales are approximate.

Source: After Hobbs and Matejka *et al.*; from Houze and Hobbs (1982), copyright © Academic Press. Reproduced by permission.

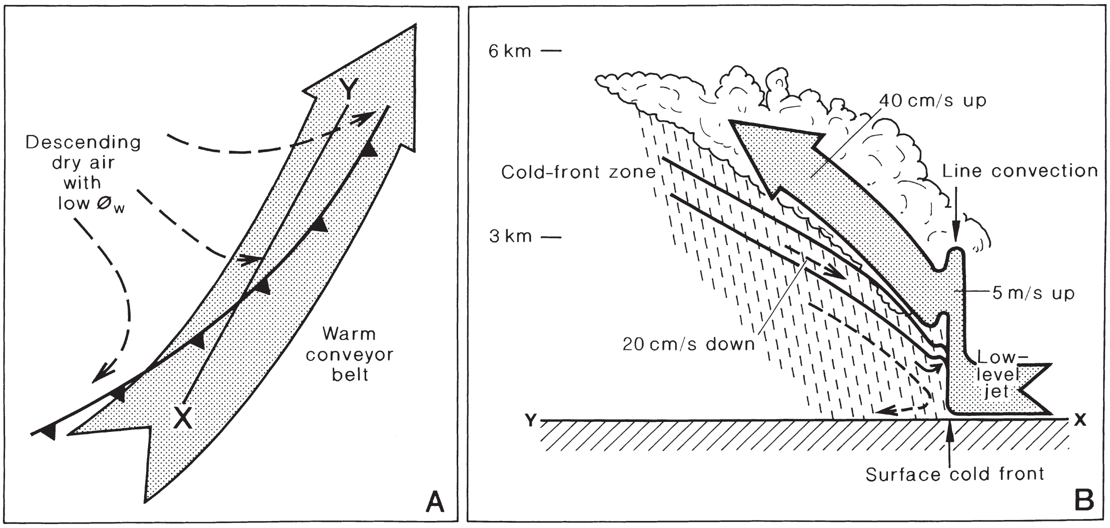


Figure 9.15 Schematic diagrams showing airflows, relative to the moving frontal system, at an ana-cold front. A warm conveyor belt (stippled) ascends above the front with cold air (dashed arrows) descending beneath it. (A) Plan view. (B) Vertical section along the line X–Y, showing rates of vertical motion.

Source: Browning (1990), by permission of the American Meteorological Society.

3 The occlusion

The cold front moves faster relative to the warm front, eventually catching up with it, leading to *occlusion*, where the warm sector air is lifted off the ground. Occlusions are classified as either *cold* or *warm*, depending on the relative states of the airmasses lying in front and to the rear of the warm sector (Figure 9.16). If airmass 2 is colder than airmass 1, then the occlusion is warm, but if the reverse is so it is termed a *cold occlusion*. The air in advance of the depression is likely to be coldest when depressions occlude over Europe in winter and very cold cP air is affecting the continent. Recent work suggests that most occlusions are warm and that the thermal definition is often misleading. A new definition is proposed: a cold (warm) occlusion forms when the air that is more statically stable lies behind the cold front (ahead of the warm front) (Figure 9.16).

The line of the warm air wedge aloft is associated with a zone of layered cloud (similar to that found with a warm front) and often of precipitation. Hence its position is indicated separately on some weather maps and it is referred to by Canadian meteorologists as a *trowal* (trough of warm air aloft). The passage of an occluded front and trowal brings a change back to polar airmass weather.

A different process occurs when there is interaction between the cloud bands within a polar trough and the main polar front, giving rise to an *instant occlusion*. A warm conveyor belt on the polar front ascends as an upper tropospheric jet, forming a stratiform cloud band (Figure 9.17), while a low-level polar trough conveyor belt at right angles to it produces a convective cloud band and precipitation area poleward of the main polar front on the leading edge of the cold pool.

Frontolysis (frontal decay) represents the final phase of a front's existence although it is not necessarily linked with occlusion. Decay occurs when differences no longer exist between adjacent airmasses. This may arise in four ways: (1) through their mutual stagnation over a similar surface; (2) as a result of both airmasses moving on parallel tracks at the same speed; (3) through their movement in succession along the same track at the same speed, or (4) by the system entraining air of the same temperature.

4 Frontal-wave families

Observations show that frontal waves over the oceans, at least, do not generally occur as separate units but in *families* of three or four (see Figure 9.9; Plate 18). The depressions that succeed the original one form as

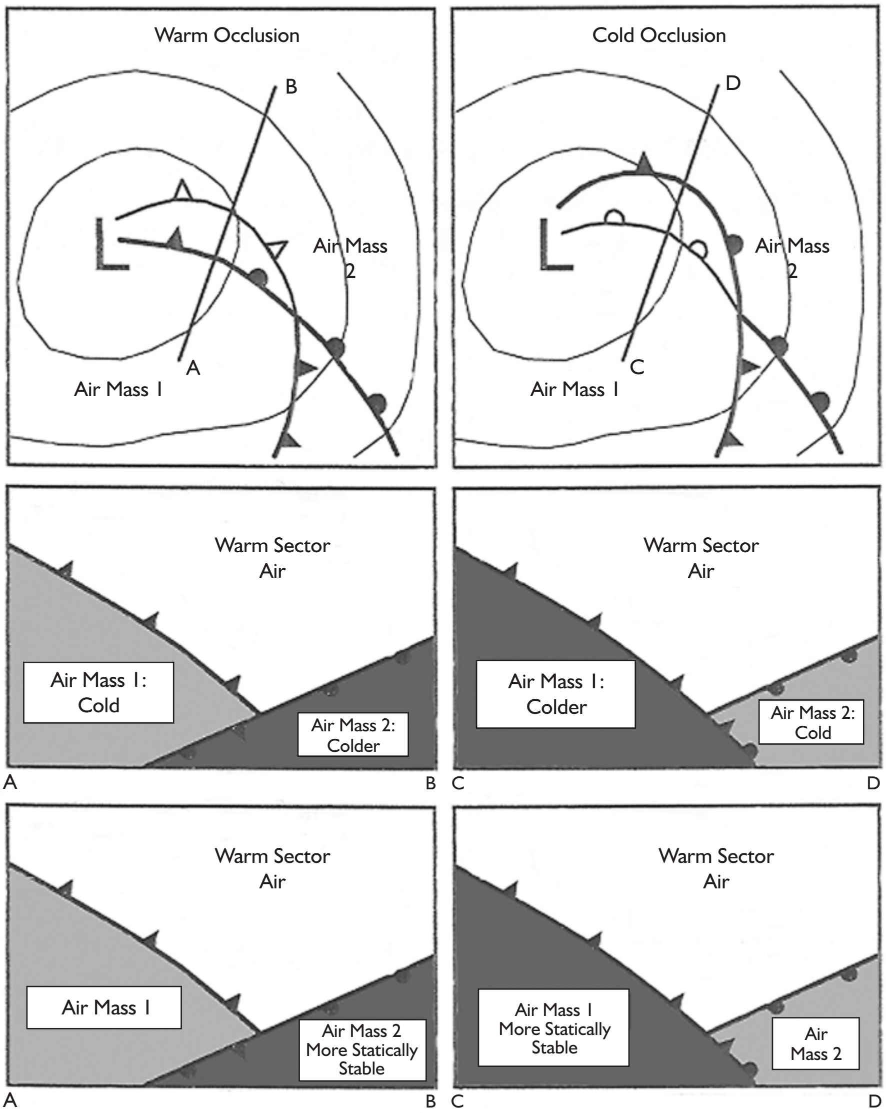

Warm Occlusion
Cold Occlusion
B
D
L
L
Air Mass 2
Air Mass 2
A
C
Air Mass 1
Air Mass 1
Warm Sector Air
Air Mass 1: Cold
Air Mass 2: Colder
A
B
Warm Sector Air
Air Mass 1: Colder
Air Mass 2: Cold
C
D
Warm Sector Air
Air Mass 1
Air Mass 2 More Statically Stable
A
B
Warm Sector Air
Air Mass 1 More Statically Stable
Air Mass 2
C
D

Figure 9.16 Schematic illustration of a warm and a cold occlusion in the classical model. Plan view of synoptic pattern (above) and cross-sections along lines A–B and C–D. Colder air is shaded darker. The bottom panel illustrates proposed criteria for identifying warm and cold occlusions based on static stability.

Source: Above and centre from Stoelinga *et al*. (2002, p. 710, fig. 1), by permission of the American Meteorological Society. The bottom panel is based on their new definition.

secondary lows along the trailing edge of an extended cold front. Each new member follows a course that is south of its progenitor as the polar air pushes further south to the rear of each depression in the series. Eventually, the front trails far to the south and the cold polar air forms an extensive meridional wedge of high pressure, terminating the sequence.

Another pattern of development may take place on the warm front, particularly at the point of occlusion, as a separate wave forms and runs ahead of the parent depression. This type of secondary is more likely with very cold (cA, mA or cP) air ahead of the warm front, and it tends to form when mountains bar the eastward movement of the occlusion. This situation often occurs

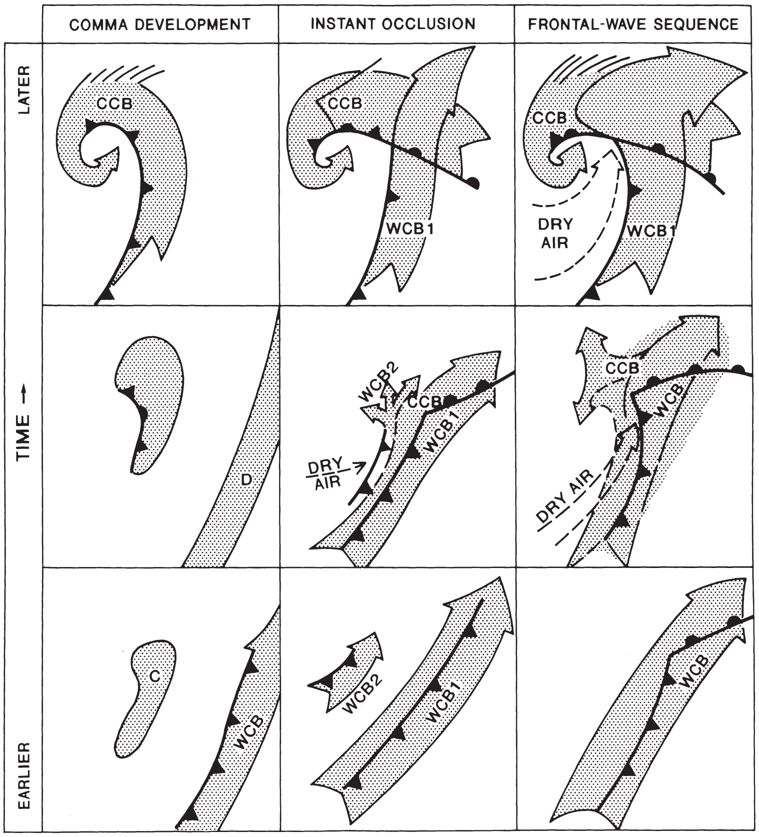


Figure 9.17 Schematic illustrations of vortex developments in satellite imagery. The sequences run from bottom to top. Left. Comma cloud (c) developing in a polar airstream. Centre. Instant occlusion from the interaction of a polar trough with a wave on the polar front. Right. The classical frontal wave with cold and warm conveyor belts (CCB, WCB). C = enhanced convection; D = decaying cloud band; cloud cover stippled.

Source: After Browning (1990) by permission of the American Meteorological Society.

when a primary depression is situated in the Davis Strait and a breakaway wave forms south of Cape Farewell (the southern tip of Greenland), moving away eastward. Analogous developments take place in the Skagerrak–Kattegat area when the occlusion is held up by the Scandinavian mountains.

F ZONES OF WAVE DEVELOPMENT AND FRONTOGENESIS

Fronts and associated depressions tend to develop in well-defined areas. The major zones of frontal-wave development are areas that are most frequently baroclinic as a result of airstream confluence (Figure 9.18). This is the case off East Asia and eastern North America, especially in winter, when there is a sharp temperature gradient between the snow-covered land and warm offshore currents. These zones are referred to as the Pacific polar and Atlantic polar fronts, respectively (Figure 9.19). Their position is quite variable, but they are displaced equatorward in winter, when the Atlantic frontal zone may extend into the Gulf of Mexico. Here there is convergence of airmasses of different stability between adjacent subtropical high-pressure cells. Depressions developing here commonly move northeastward, sometimes following or amalgamating with others of the northern part of the polar front proper or of the Canadian Arctic front. Frontal frequency remains high across the North Atlantic, but it decreases eastward in the North Pacific, perhaps owing to a less pronounced gradient of sea-surface temperature. Frontal activity is most common in the central North Pacific when the subtropical high is split into two cells with converging airflows between them.

Another section of the polar front, often referred to as the *Mediterranean front*, is located over the Mediterranean–Caspian Sea areas in winter. At intervals, fresh Atlantic mP air, or cool cP air from southeast Europe, converges with warmer airmasses of North African origin over the Mediterranean Basin and

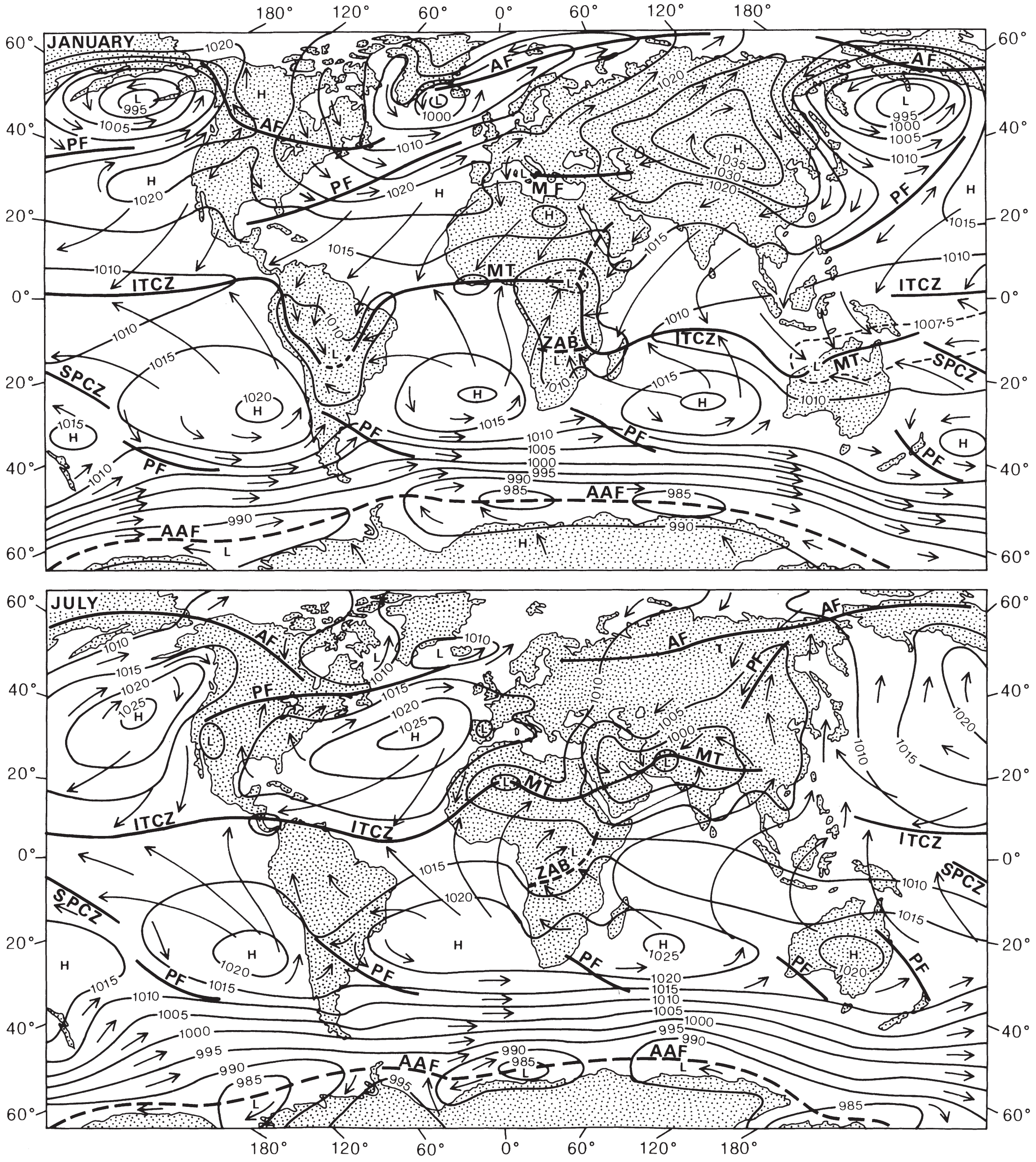

JANUARY
JULY
180°
120°
60°
0°
60°
120°
180°
60°
40°
20°
0°
20°
40°
60°
AF
PF
MF
MT
ITCZ
SPCZ
ZAB
AAF
H
L
995
1000
1005
1007·5
1010
1015
1020
1025
1030
1035
985
990

Figure 9.18 Mean pressure (mb) and surface winds for the world in January and July. The major frontal and convergence zones are shown as follows: intertropical convergence zone (ITCZ), South Pacific convergence zone (SPCZ), monsoon trough (MT), Zaire air boundary (ZAB), Mediterranean front (MF), northern and southern hemisphere polar fronts (PF), Arctic fronts (AF) and Antarctic fronts (AAF).

Source: Partly from Liljequist (1970).

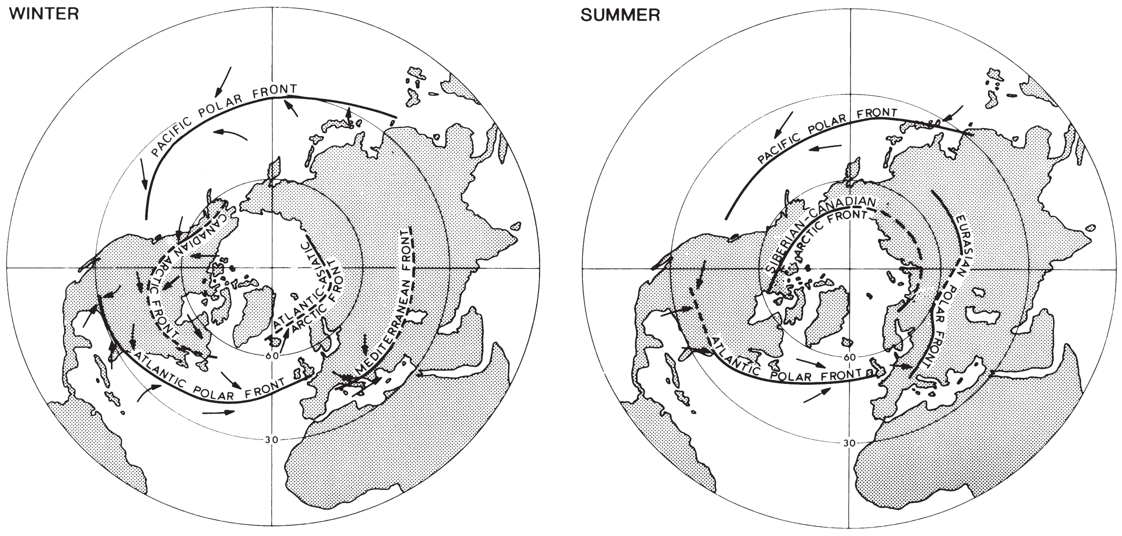


Figure 9.19 The major northern hemisphere frontal zones in winter and summer.

initiates frontogenesis. In summer, the Azores subtropical anticyclone influences the area, and the frontal zone is absent.

The summer locations of the polar front over the western Atlantic and Pacific are some 10° further north than in winter (see Figure 9.19), although the summer frontal zone is rather weak. There is a frontal zone over Eurasia and a corresponding one over middle North America. These reflect the general meridional temperature gradient and also the large-scale influence of orography on the general circulation (see G, this chapter).

In the southern hemisphere, the polar front is on average about 45°S in January (summer), with branches spiralling poleward towards it from about 32°S off eastern South America and from 30°S, 150°W in the South Pacific (Figure 9.20). In July (winter), there are two polar frontal zones spiralling towards Antarctica from about 20°S; one starts over South America and the other at 170°W. They terminate some 4 to 5° latitude further poleward than in summer. It is noteworthy that the southern hemisphere has more cyclonic activity in summer than does the northern hemisphere in its summer. This appears to be related to the seasonal strengthening of the meridional temperature gradient (see p. 133).

The second major frontal zone is the Arctic front, associated with the snow and ice margins of high latitudes (see Figure 9.19). In summer, this zone is developed at the land–sea boundary in Siberia and North America. In winter over North America, it is formed between cA (or cP) air and Pacific maritime air modified by crossing the coast ranges and the Rocky Mountains (see Plate 18). There is also a less pronounced Arctic frontal zone in the North Atlantic–Norwegian Sea area, extending along the Siberian coast. A similar weak frontal zone is found in winter in the southern hemisphere. It is located at 65 to 70°S near the edge of the Antarctic pack-ice in the Pacific sector (see Figure 9.20), although few cyclones form there. Zones of airstream confluence in the southern hemisphere (cf. Figures 9.2B and 9.4B) are fewer and more persistent, particularly in coastal regions, than in the northern hemisphere.

The principal tracks of depressions in the northern hemisphere in January are shown in Figure 9.21. The major tracks reflect the primary frontal zones discussed above. In summer, the Mediterranean route is absent and lows move across Siberia; the other tracks are similar, although more zonal and located in higher latitudes (around 60°N).

Between the two hemispherical belts of subtropical high pressure there is a further major convergence zone, the intertropical convergence zone (ITCZ). This was formerly designated as the intertropical front (ITF), but airmass contrasts are not typical. The ITCZ moves seasonally away from the equator, as the subtropical high-pressure cell activity alternates in opposite hemispheres. The contrast between the converging airmasses

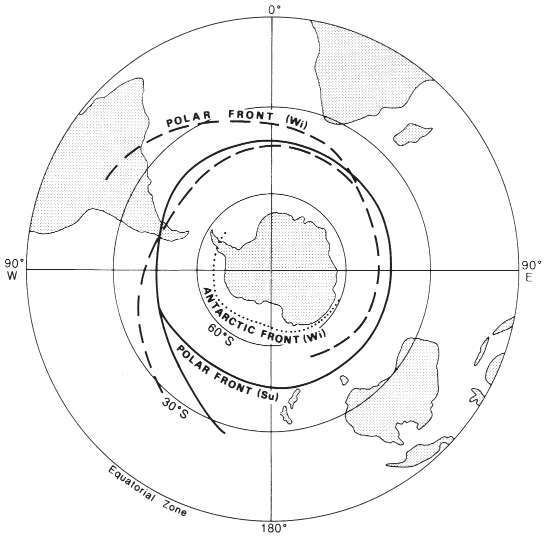


Figure 9.20 The major southern hemisphere frontal zones in winter (Wi) and summer (Su).

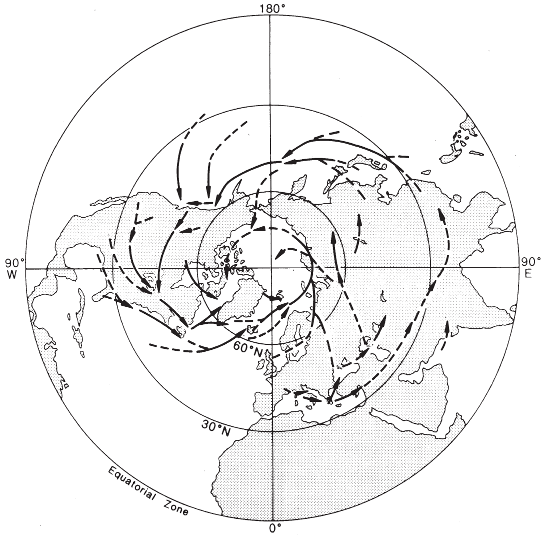


Figure 9.21 The principal northern hemisphere depression tracks in January. The full lines show major tracks, the dashed lines secondary tracks that are less frequent and less well defined. The frequency of lows is a local maximum where arrowheads end. An area of frequent cyclogenesis is indicated where a secondary track changes to a primary track or where two secondary tracks merge to form a primary.

Source: After Klein (1957).

obviously increases with the distance of the ITCZ from the equator, and the degree of difference in their characteristics is associated with considerable variation in weather activity along the convergence zone. Activity is most intense in June to July over South Asia and West Africa, when the contrast between the humid maritime and dry continental airmasses is at a maximum. In these sectors, the term *intertropical front* is applicable, although this does not imply that it behaves like a mid-latitude frontal zone. The nature and significance of the ITCZ are discussed in Chapter 11.

G SURFACE/UPPER-AIR RELATIONSHIPS AND THE FORMATION OF FRONTAL CYCLONES

We have noted that a wave depression is associated with airmass convergence, yet the barometric pressure at the centre of the low may decrease by 10 to 20 mb in twelve to twenty-four hours as the system intensifies. This is possible because upper-air divergence removes rising air more quickly than convergence at lower levels replaces it (see Figure 6.7). The superimposition of a region of upper divergence over a frontal zone is the prime motivating force of *cyclogenesis* (i.e. depression formation).

The long (or Rossby) waves in the middle and upper troposphere, discussed in Chapter 7A.2, are particularly important in this respect. The latitudinal circumference limits the circumpolar westerly flow to between three and six major Rossby waves, and these affect the formation and movement of surface depressions. Two primary stationary waves tend to be located about 70°W and 150°E in response to the influence on the atmospheric circulation of orographic barriers, such as the Rocky Mountains and the Tibetan plateau, and of heat sources. On the eastern limb of troughs in the upper westerlies of the northern hemisphere the flow is normally divergent, since the gradient wind is subgeostrophic in the trough but supergeostrophic in the ridge (see Chapter 6A.4). Thus, the sector ahead of an upper trough is a very favourable location for a surface depression to form or deepen (see Figure 9.22). It will be noted that the mean upper troughs are significantly positioned just west of the Atlantic and Pacific polar front zones in winter.

With these ideas in mind, we can examine the three-dimensional nature of depression development and the links existing between upper and lower tropospheric

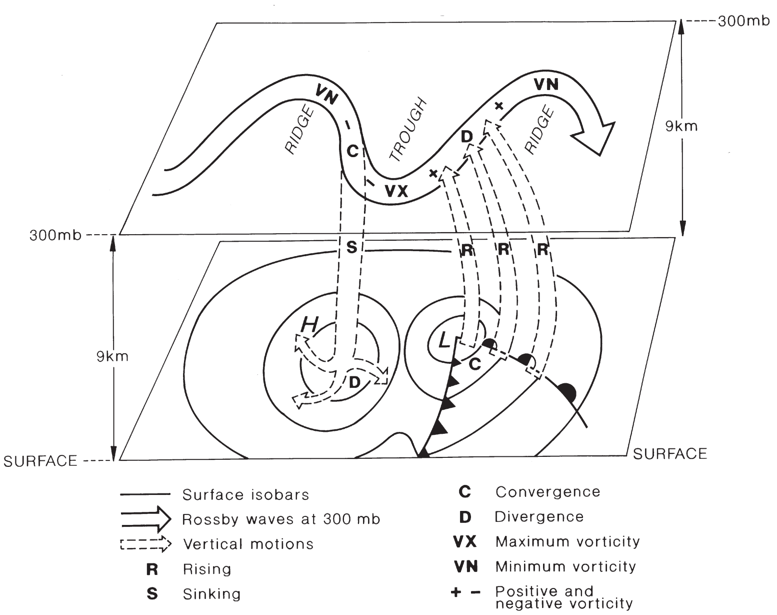

300mb
9km
300mb
9km
SURFACE
SURFACE
RIDGE
VN
C
TROUGH
VX
D
VN
RIDGE
S
R
R
R
H
D
L
C
Surface isobars
Rossby waves at 300 mb
Vertical motions
R Rising
S Sinking
C Convergence
D Divergence
VX Maximum vorticity
VN Minimum vorticity
+ – Positive and negative vorticity

Figure 9.22 Schematic representation of the relationship between surface pressure (H and L), airflow and frontal systems, on the one hand, and the location of troughs and ridges in the Rossby waves at the 300-mb level. The locations of maximum (cyclonic) and minimum (anticyclonic) relative vorticity are shown, as are those of negative (anticyclonic) and positive (cyclonic) vorticity advection.

Sources: Mostly after Musk (1988), with additions from Uccellini (1990).

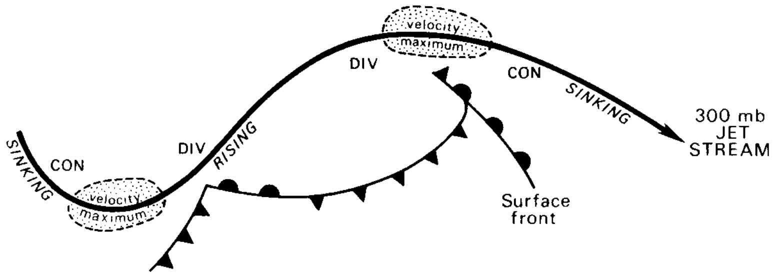

velocity maximum
DIV
CON
SINKING
300 mb JET STREAM
SINKING
CON
DIV
RISING
velocity maximum
Surface front

Figure 9.23 Model of the jet stream and surface fronts, showing zones of upper tropospheric divergence and convergence and the jet stream cores.

flow. The basic theory relates to the vorticity equation, which states that, for frictionless horizontal motion, the rate of change of the vertical component of absolute vorticity (dQ/dt or $d(f + \zeta)/dt$) is proportional to airmass convergence ($-D$, i.e. negative divergence):

$$\frac{dQ}{dt} = DQ \text{ or } D = \frac{1}{Q} - \frac{dQ}{dt}$$

The relationship implies that a converging (diverging) air column has increasing (decreasing) absolute vorticity. The conservation of vorticity equation, discussed above, is in fact a special case of this relationship.

In the sector ahead of an upper trough, the decreasing cyclonic vorticity causes divergence (i.e. D positive), since the change in ζ outweighs that in f, thereby favouring surface convergence and low-level cyclonic vorticity (see Figure 9.23). Once the surface cyclonic circulation has become established, vorticity production is increased through the effects of thermal advection. Poleward transport of warm air in the warm sector and the eastward advance of the cold upper trough act to sharpen the baroclinic zone, strengthening the upper jet stream through the thermal wind mechanism (see p. 131). The vertical relationship between jet stream and front has already been shown (see Figure 7.8); a model depression sequence is demonstrated in Figure 9.23. The actual relationship may depart from this idealized case, although the jet is commonly located in the cold air (Plate 18). Velocity maxima (core zones) occur along the jet stream and the distribution of vertical motion upstream and downstream of these cores is known to be quite different. In the area of the jet entrance (i.e.

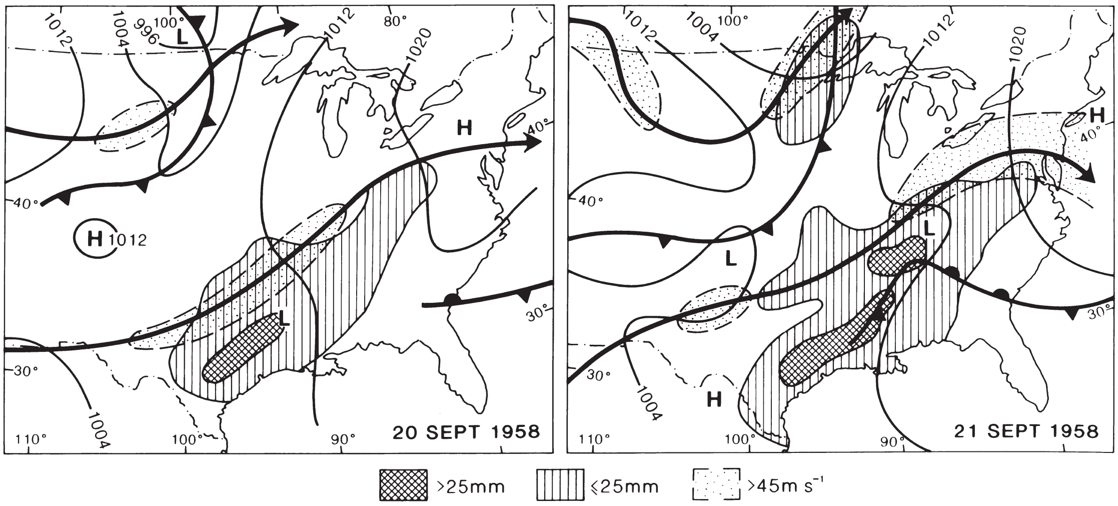


Figure 9.24 The relations between surface fronts and isobars, surface precipitation (≤ 25 mm vertical hatching; >25 mm cross-hatching), and jet streams (wind speeds in excess of about 45 m s^{-1} shown by stipple) over the United States on 20 September 1958 and 21 September 1958. This illustrates how the surface precipitation area is related more to the position of the jets than to that of the surface fronts. The air over the south-central United States was close to saturation, whereas that associated with the northern jet and the maritime front was much less moist.

Source: After Richter and Dahl (1958), by permission of the American Meteorological Society.

upstream of the core), divergence causes lower-level air to rise on the equatorward (i.e. right) side of the jet, whereas in the exit zone (downstream of the core) ascent is on the poleward side. Figure 9.24 shows how precipitation is related more often to the position of the jet stream than to that of surface fronts; maximum precipitation areas are in the right entrance sector of the jet core. This vertical motion pattern is also of basic importance in the initial deepening stage of the depression. If the upper-air pattern is unfavourable (e.g. beneath left entrance and right exit zones, where there is convergence) the depression will fill.

The development of a depression can also be considered in terms of energy transfers. A cyclone requires the conversion of potential into kinetic energy. The upward (and poleward) motion of warm air achieves this. The vertical wind shear and the superimposition of upper tropospheric divergence drive the rising warm air over a baroclinic zone. Intensification of this zone further strengthens the upper winds. The upper divergence allows surface convergence and pressure fall to occur simultaneously. Modern theory relegates the fronts to a subordinate role. They develop within depressions as narrow zones of intensified ascent, probably through the effects of cloud formation.

Recent research has identified a category of mid-latitude cyclones that develop and intensify rapidly, acquiring characteristics that resemble tropical hurricanes. These have been termed 'bombs' in view of their explosive rate of deepening; pressure falls of at least 24 mb/24 hr are observed. For example, the '*QE II* storm', which battered the ocean liner *Queen Elizabeth II* off New York on 10 September 1978, developed a central pressure below 950 mb with hurricane-force winds and an eye-like storm centre within twenty-four hours (see Chapter 11C.2). These systems are observed mainly during the cold season off the east coast of the United States, off Japan, and over parts of the central and northeastern North Pacific, in association with major baroclinic zones and close to strong gradients of sea-surface temperature. Explosive cyclogenesis is favoured by an unstable lower troposphere and is often located downstream of a travelling 500-mb-level trough. Bombs are characterized by strong vertical motion, associated with a sharply defined level of non-divergence near 500 mb, and large-scale release of latent heat. Wind maxim a in the upper troposphere, organized as jet streaks, serve to amplify the lower-level instability and upward motion. Studies reveal that *average* cyclonic deepening rates over the North Atlantic and North Pacific are about

10 mb/24 hr, or three times greater than over the continental United States (3 mb/24 hr). Hence, it is suggested that explosive cyclogenesis represents a more intense version of typical maritime cyclone development.

The movement of depressions is determined essentially by the upper westerlies and, as a rule of thumb, a depression centre travels at about 70 per cent of the surface geostrophic wind speed in the warm sector. Records for the United States indicate that the average speed of depressions is 32 km hr^{-1} in summer and 48 km hr^{-1} in winter. The higher speed in winter reflects the stronger westerly circulation. Shallow depressions are mainly steered by the direction of the thermal wind in the warm sector and hence their path closely follows that of the upper jet stream (see Chapter 7A.3). Deep depressions may greatly distort the thermal pattern, however, as a result of the northward transport of warm air and the southward transport of cold air. In such cases, the depression usually becomes slow moving. The movement of a depression may in addition be guided by energy sources such as a warm sea surface that generates cyclonic vorticity, or by mountain barriers. The depression may cross obstacles such as the Rocky Mountains or the Greenland ice sheet as an upper low or trough, and subsequently redevelop, aided by the lee effects of the barrier or by fresh injections of contrasting airmasses.

Ocean-surface temperatures can crucially influence the location and intensity of storm tracks. Figure 9.25B indicates that an extensive relatively warm surface in the north-central Pacific in the winter of 1971 to 1972 caused a northward displacement of the westerly jet stream together with a compensating southward displacement over the western United States, bringing in cold air there. This pattern contrasts with that observed during the 1960s (see Figure 9.25A), when a persistent cold anomaly in the central Pacific, with warmer water to the east, led to frequent storm development in the intervening zone of strong temperature gradient. The associated upper airflow produced a ridge over western North America with warm winters in California and Oregon. Models of the global atmospheric circulation support the view that persistent anomalies of sea-surface temperature exert an important control on local and large-scale weather conditions.

H NON-FRONTAL DEPRESSIONS

Not all depressions originate as frontal waves. Tropical depressions are indeed mainly non-frontal and these are considered in Chapter 11. In middle and high latitudes, four types that develop in distinctly different situations are of particular importance and interest: the lee cyclone, the thermal low, polar air depressions and the cold low.

1 The lee cyclone

Westerly airflow that is forced over a north–south mountain barrier undergoes vertical contraction over the ridge and expansion on the lee side. This vertical movement creates compensating lateral expansion and contraction, respectively. Hence there is a tendency for divergence and anticyclonic curvature over the crest, and convergence and cyclonic curvature in the lee of the barrier. Wave troughs may be set up in this way on the lee side of low hills (see Figure 6.13) as well as major mountain chains such as the Rocky Mountains. The airflow characteristics and the size of the barrier determine whether or not a closed low-pressure system actually develops. Such depressions, which at least initially tend to remain ‘anchored’ by the barrier, are frequent in winter to the south of the Alps, when the mountains block the low-level flow of northwesterly airstreams. Fronts often develop in these depressions, but the low does not form as a wave along a frontal zone. Lee cyclogenesis is common in Alberta and Colorado, in the lee of the Rocky Mountains, and in northern Argentina in the lee of the Andes.

2 The thermal low

These lows occur almost exclusively in summer, resulting from intense daytime heating of continental areas. Figure 7.1C illustrates their vertical structure. The most impressive examples are the summer low-pressure cells over Arabia, the northern part of the Indian subcontinent and Arizona. The Iberian Peninsula is another region commonly affected by such lows. They occur over southwestern Spain on 40 to 60 per cent of days in July and August. Typically, their intensity is only 2 to 4 mb and they extend to about 750 mb, less than in other subtropical areas. The weather accompanying them is usually hot and dry, but if sufficient moisture is present the instability caused by heating may lead to showers

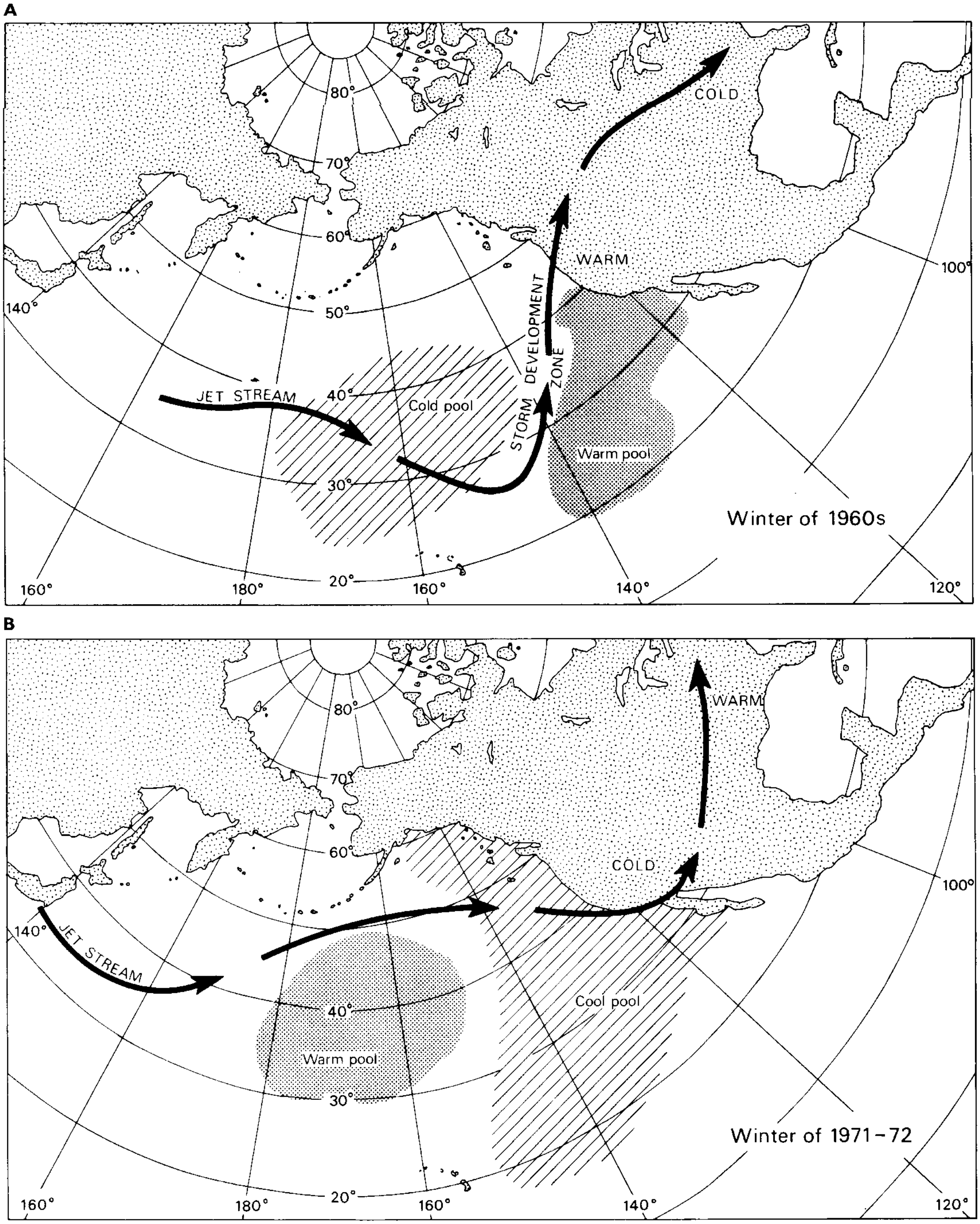

A
80°
70°
60°
50°
40°
30°
20°
COLD
WARM
STORM DEVELOPMENT ZONE
JET STREAM
Cold pool
Warm pool
Winter of 1960s
140°
100°
160°
180°
160°
140°
120°
B
80°
70°
60°
50°
40°
30°
20°
WARM
COLD
JET STREAM
Cool pool
Warm pool
Winter of 1971–72
140°
100°
160°
180°
160°
140°
120°

Figure 9.25 Generalized relationships between ocean-surface temperatures, jet-stream tracks, storm-development zones and land temperatures over the North Pacific and North America during (A) average winter conditions in the 1960s, and (B) the winter of 1971 to 1972, as determined by J. Namias.

Source: After Wick (1973).

and thunderstorms. Thermal lows normally disappear at night when the heat source is cut off, but in fact those of India and Arizona persist.

3 Polar air depressions

Polar air depressions are a loosely defined class of mesoscale to subsynoptic-scale systems (a few hundred kilometres across) with a lifetime of one to two days. On satellite imagery, they appear as a cloud spiral with one or several cloud bands, as a comma cloud (see Figure 9.17 and Plate 19), or as a swirl in cumulus cloud streets. They develop mainly in the winter months, when unstable mP or mA air currents stream equatorward along the eastern side of a north–south ridge of high pressure, commonly in the rear of an occluding primary depression (Figure 9.17). They usually form within a baroclinic zone (e.g. near sea-ice margins where there are strong sea-surface temperature gradients), and their development may be stimulated by an initial upper-level disturbance.

In the northern hemisphere, the comma cloud type (which is mainly a cold core disturbance of the middle troposphere) is more common over the North Pacific, while the spiral-form polar low occurs more often in the Norwegian Sea. The latter is a low-level warm core disturbance that may have a closed cyclonic circulation up to about 800 mb or may consist simply of one or more troughs embedded in the polar airflow. A key feature is the presence of an ascending, moist southwesterly flow *relative* to the low centre. This organization accentuates the general instability of the cold airstream to give considerable precipitation, often as snow. Heat input to the cold air from the sea continues by night and day, so in exposed coastal districts showers may occur at any time.

In the southern hemisphere, polar low mesocyclones appear to be most frequent in the transition seasons, as these are the times of strongest meridional temperature and pressure gradients. In addition, over the Southern Ocean the patterns of occurrence and movement are more zonally distributed than in the northern hemisphere.

4 The cold low

The cold low (or *cold pool*) is usually most evident in the circulation and temperature fields of the middle troposphere. Characteristically, it displays symmetrical isotherms about the low centre. Surface charts may show little or no sign of these persistent systems, which are frequent over northeastern North America and northeastern Siberia. They probably form as the result of strong vertical motion and adiabatic cooling in occluding baroclinic lows along the Arctic coastal margins. Such lows are especially important during the Arctic winter in that they bring large amounts of medium and high cloud, which offsets radiational cooling of the surface. Otherwise, they usually cause no 'weather' in the Arctic during this season. It is important to emphasize that tropospheric cold lows may be linked with either low- or high-pressure cells at the surface.

In middle latitudes, cold lows may form during periods of low-index circulation pattern (see Figure 7.23) by the cutting off of polar air from the main body of cold air to the north (these are sometimes referred to as *cut-off lows*). This gives rise to weather of polar airmass type, although rather weak fronts may also be present. Such lows are commonly slow moving and give persistent unsettled weather with thunder in summer. Heavy precipitation over Colorado in spring and autumn is often associated with cold lows.

I MESOSCALE CONVECTIVE SYSTEMS

Mesoscale convective systems (MCSs) are intermediate in size and life span between synoptic disturbances and individual cumulonimbus cells (see Figure 9.26). Figure 9.27 shows the movement of clusters of convective cells, each cell about 1 km in diameter, as they crossed southern Britain with a cold front. Each individual cell may be short-lived, but cell clusters may persist for hours, strengthening or weakening due to orographic and other factors.

MCSs occur seasonally in middle latitudes (particularly the central United States, eastern China and South Africa) and the tropics (India, West and Central Africa and northern Australia) as either nearly circular clusters of convective cells or linear squall lines. The *squall line* consists of a narrow line of thunderstorm cells, which may extend for hundreds of kilometres. It is marked by a sharp veer of wind direction and very gusty conditions. The squall line often occurs ahead of a cold front, maintained either as a self-propagating disturbance or by thunderstorm downdrafts. It may form a pseudo-cold front between rain-cooled air and a rainless zone within the same airmass. Mid-latitude squall lines appear to

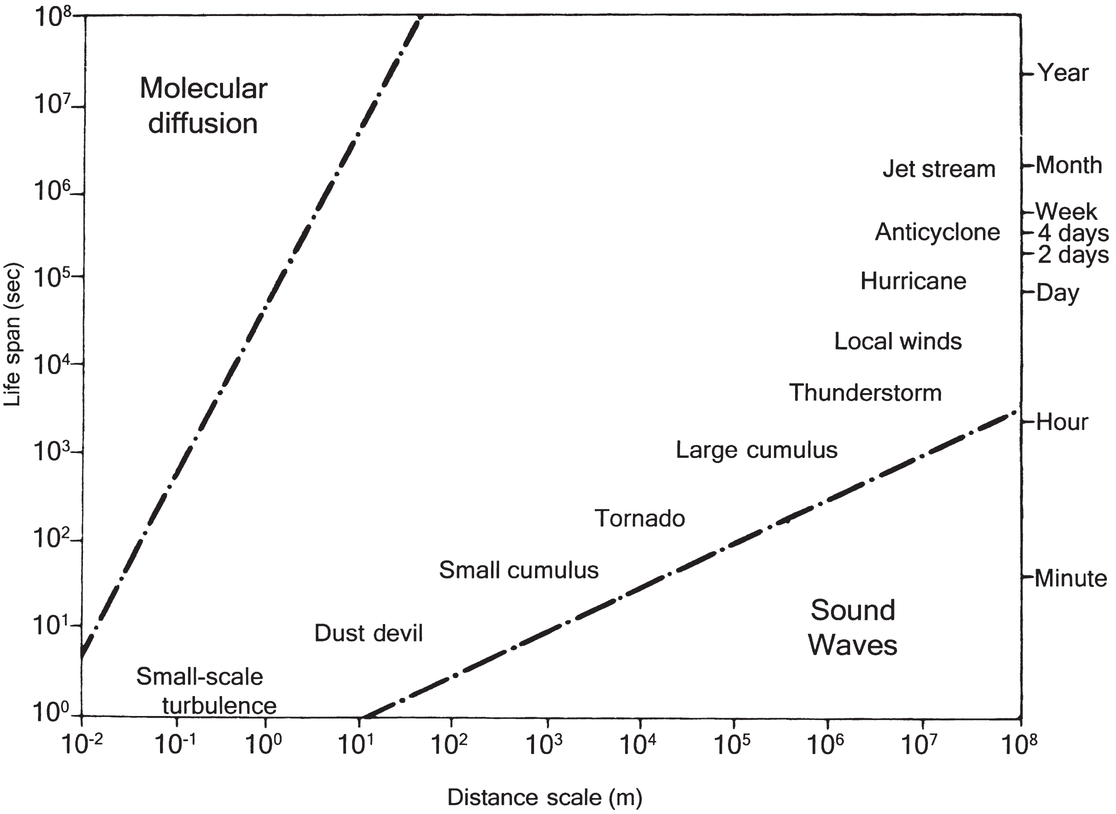


Figure 9.26 The spatial scale and life spans of mesoscale and other meteorological systems.

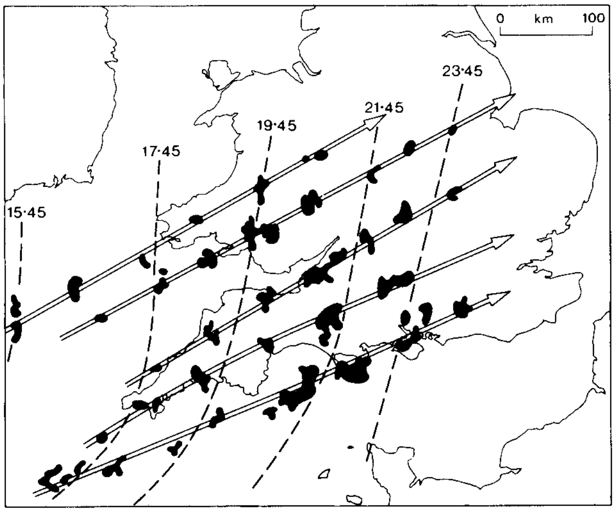


Figure 9.27 Successive positions of individual clusters of middle-tropospheric convective cells moving across southern Britain at about 50 km hr $^{-1}$ with a cold front. Cell location and intensity were determined by radar.

Source: After Browning (1980).

form through one of two mechanisms: (1) a pressure jump that propagates as a bore; (2) the leading edge of a cold front aloft (CFA) acting on instability present to the east of an orographic lee trough. In frontal cyclones, cold air in the rear of the depression may overrun air in the warm sector. The intrusion of this nose of cold air sets up great instability, and the subsiding cold wedge tends to act as a scoop forcing up the slower-moving warm air (see Plate 11).

Figure 9.28 demonstrates that the *relative* motion of the warm air is towards the squall line. Such conditions generate severe frontal thunderstorms such as that which struck Wokingham, England, in September 1959. This moved from the southwest at about 20 m s^{-1}, steered by strong southwesterly flow aloft. The cold air subsided from high levels as a violent squall, and the updraft ahead of this produced an intense hailstorm. Hailstones grow by accretion in the upper part of the updraft, where speeds in excess of 50 m s^{-1} are not uncommon, are blown ahead of the storm by strong upper winds, and begin to fall. This causes surface melting, but the stone is caught up again by the advancing squall line and re-ascends. The melted surface freezes, giving glazed ice as the stone is carried above the freezing level, and further growth occurs by the collection of supercooled droplets (see also Chapter 5, pp. 100 and 107).

Various types of MCS occur over the central United States in spring and summer (see Figure 9.29), bringing widespread severe weather. They may be small convective cells organized linearly, or as a large amorphous cell known as a *mesoscale convective complex* (MCC). This develops from initially isolated cumulonimbus cells. As rain falls from the thunderstorm clouds, evaporative cooling of the air beneath the cloud bases sets up cold downdrafts, and when these become sufficiently extensive they create a local high pressure of a few millibars' intensity. The downdrafts trigger the ascent of displaced warm air, and a general warming of the middle troposphere results from latent heat release. Inflow develops towards this warm region, above the cold outflow, causing additional convergence of moist, unstable air. In some cases a low-level jet provides this inflow. As individual cells become organized in a cluster along the leading edge of the surface high, new cells tend to form on the right flank (in the northern hemisphere) through interaction of cold downdrafts with the surrounding air. Through this process and the decay of older cells on the left flank, the storm system tends to move 10 to 20° to the right of the mid-tropospheric wind direction. As the thunderstorm high intensifies, a 'wake low', associated with clearing weather forms to the rear of it. The system is now producing violent winds, and intense downpours of rain and hail accompanied by thunder. During the triggering of new cells, tornadoes may form (discussed below). As the MCC reaches maturity, during the evening and night hours over the Great Plains, the mesoscale circulation is capped by an extensive (>100,000 km^2) cold upper-cloud shield, readily identified on infra-red satellite images. Statistics for forty-three systems over the Great Plains in 1978 showed that the systems lasted on average twelve hours, with initial mesoscale organization occurring in the early evening (18:00 to 19:00 LST) and maximum extent seven hours later.

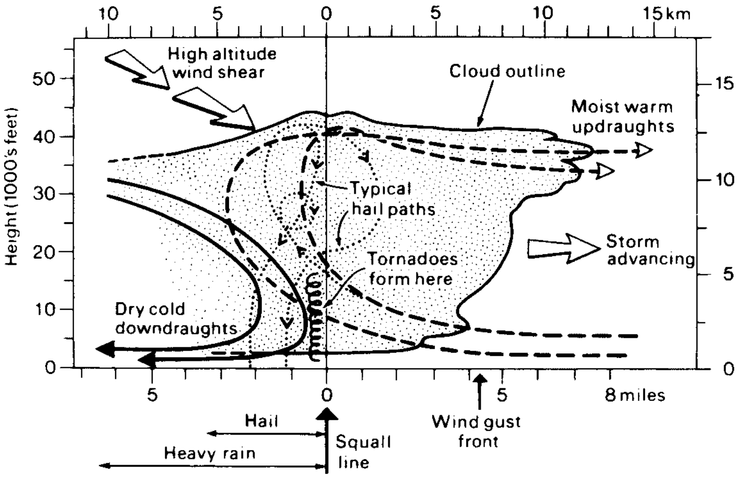


Figure 9.28 Thunder cell structure with hail and tornado formation.

Source: After Hindley (1977)

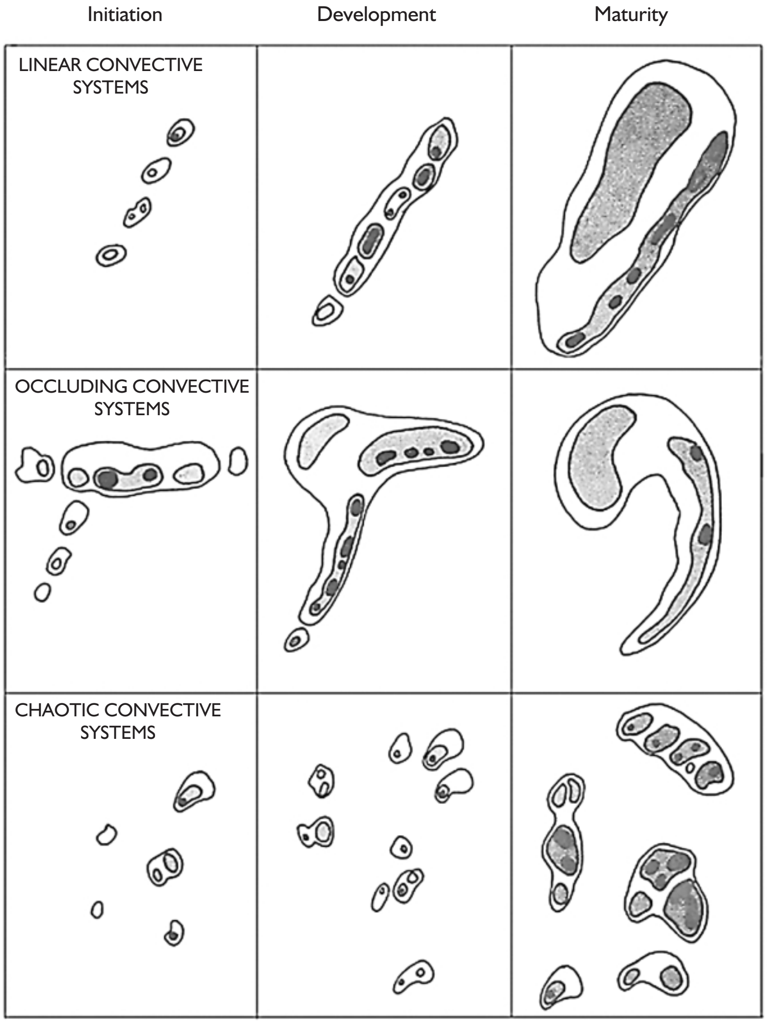

Initiation
Development
Maturity
LINEAR CONVECTIVE SYSTEMS
OCCLUDING CONVECTIVE SYSTEMS
CHAOTIC CONVECTIVE SYSTEMS

Figure 9.29 Schematic evolution of three convective modes on the US Great Plains showing several scales of cloud development (shading).

Source: Blanchard (1990, p. 996, fig. 2), by permission of the American Meteorological Society.

During their life cycle, systems may travel from the Colorado–Kansas border to the Mississippi River or the Great Lakes, or from the Missouri–Mississippi river valley to the east coast. A MCC usually decays when synoptic-scale features inhibit its self-propagation. The production of cold air is shut off when new convection ceases, weakening the meso-high and -low, and the rainfall becomes light and sporadic, eventually stopping altogether.

Particularly severe thunderstorms are associated with great potential vertical instability (e.g. hot, moist air underlying dryer air, with colder air aloft). This was the case with a severe storm in the vicinity of Sydney, Australia, on 21 January 1991 (Figure 9.30). The storm formed in a hot, moist, low-level airstream flowing northeast on the eastern side of the Blue Mountains escarpment. This flow was overlain by a hot, dry northerly airstream at an elevation of 1500 to 6000 metres, which, in turn, was capped by cold air associated with a nearby cold front. Five to seven such severe thunderstorms occurred annually in the vicinity of Sydney during 1950 to 1989.

On occasion, so-called *super-cell thunderstorms* may develop as new cells forming downstream are swept up by the movement of an older cell (Figure 9.31). These are about the same size as thunder cell clusters but are dominated by one giant updraft and localized strong downdrafts (Figure 9.32). They may give rise to large hailstones and tornadoes, although some give only moderate rainfall amounts. A useful measure of

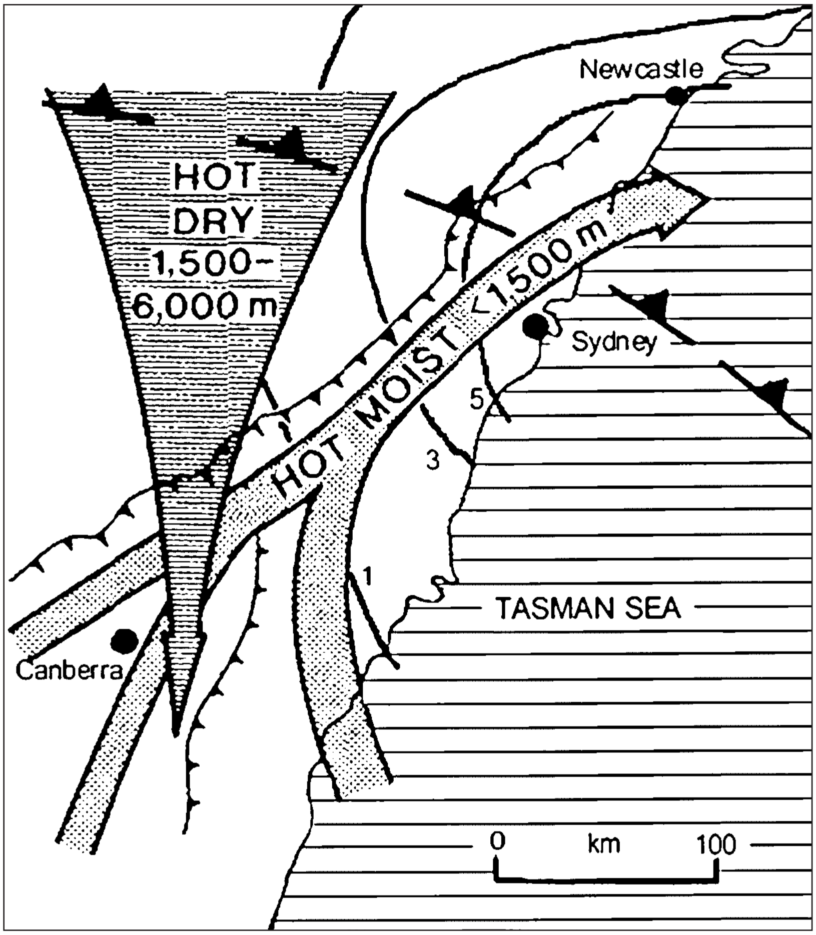


Figure 9.30 Conditions associated with the severe thunderstorm near Sydney, Australia, on 21 January 1991. The contours indicate the mean annual number of severe thunderstorms (per 25,000 km^2) over eastern New South Wales for the period 1950 to 1989 based on Griffiths *et al*. (1993).

Source: After Eyre (1992). Reproduced by kind permission of the NSW Bureau of Meteorology, from *Weather*, by permission of the Royal Meteorological Society. Crown copyright ©.

instability in mesoscale storms is the bulk Richardson Number (Ri) which is the (dimensionless) ratio of the suppression of turbulence by buoyancy to the generation of turbulence by vertical wind shear in the lower troposphere. A high value of Ri means weak shear compared to buoyancy; Ri > 45 favours independent cell formation away from the parent updraft. For Ri < 30, strong shear supports a super-cell by keeping the updraft close to its downdraft. Intermediate values favour multi-cell development.

Tornadoes, which often develop within MCSs, are common over the Great Plains of the United States, especially in spring and early summer (see Figure 9.32). During this period, cold, dry air from the high plateaux may override maritime tropical air (see Note 1). Subsidence beneath the upper tropospheric westerly jet (Figure 9.33) forms an inversion at about 1500 to 2000 m, capping the low-level moist air. The moist air is extended northward by a low-level southerly jet (cf. p. 208) and, through continuing advection the air beneath the inversion becomes progressively more warm and moist. Eventually, the general convergence and ascent in the depression trigger the potential instability of the air, generating large cumulus clouds which penetrate

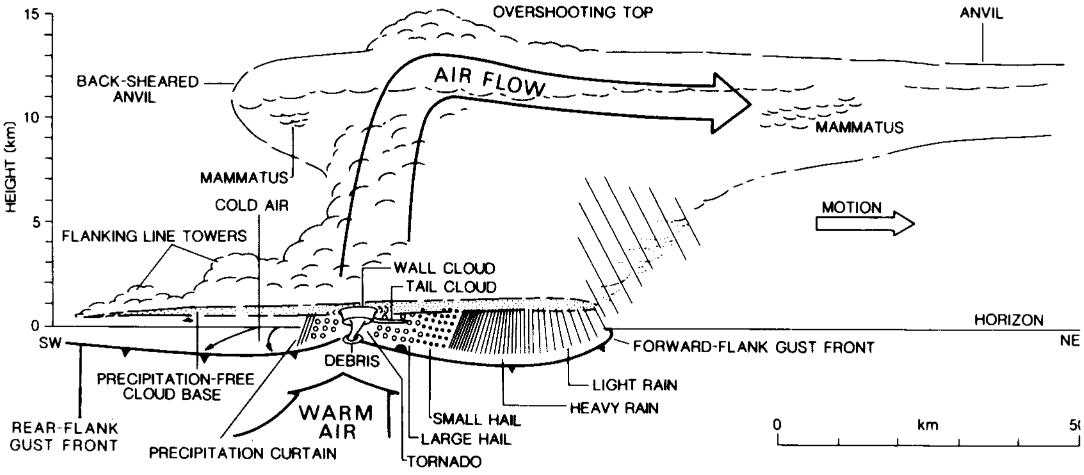


Figure 9.31 A super-cell thunderstorm.

Source: After the National Severe Storms Laboratory, USA and H. Bluestein; from Houze and Hobbs (1982), copyright © Academic Press, reproduced by permission.

the inversion. The convective trigger is sometimes provided by the approach of a cold front towards the western edge of the moist tongue. Tornadoes may also occur in association with tropical cyclones (see p. 272) and in other synoptic situations if the necessary vertical contrast is present in the temperature, moisture and wind fields.

The exact tornado mechanism is still not fully understood because of the observational difficulties. Tornadoes tend to develop in the right-rear quadrant of a severe thunderstorm. Super-cell thunderstorms are often identifiable in plan view on a radar reflectivity display by a hook echo pattern on the right-rear flank. The echo represents a (cyclonic or anticyclonic) spiral cloud band about a small central eye and its appearance may signal tornado development. The origin of the hook echo appears to involve the horizontal advection of precipitation from the rear of the mesocyclone. Rotation develops where a thunderstorm updraft interacts with the horizontal airflow. Provided that the wind speed increases with height, the vertical wind shear generates vorticity (Chapter 6B.3) about an axis normal to the airflow, which is then tilted vertically by the updraft. Directional shear also generates vorticity that the updraft translates vertically. These two elements lead to rotation in the updraft in the lower-middle troposphere forming a meso-low, 10 to 20 km across. Pressure in the meso-low is 2 to 5 mb lower than in the surrounding environment. At low levels, horizontal convergence increases the vorticity and rising air is replenished by moist air from progressively lower levels as the vortex descends and intensifies. The meso-low shrinks in diameter and the conservation of momentum increases the wind speed. At some point, a tornado, sometimes with secondary vortices (Figure 9.34), forms within the meso-low. The tornado funnel has been observed to originate in the cloud base and extend towards the surface (Plate 20). One idea is that convergence beneath the base of cumulonimbus clouds, aided by the interaction between cold precipitation downdrafts and neighbouring updrafts, may initiate the funnel. Other observations suggest that the funnel forms simultaneously throughout a considerable depth of cloud, usually a towering cumulus. The upper portion of the tornado spire in this cloud may become linked to the main updraft of a neighbouring cumulonimbus, causing rapid removal of air from the spire and allowing a sharp pressure decrease at the surface. The pressure drop is estimated to exceed 200 to 250 mb in some cases, and it is this that makes the funnel visible by causing air entering the vortex to reach saturation. Over water, tornadoes are termed waterspouts; the majority rarely attain extreme intensities. The tornado vortex is usually only a few hundred metres in diameter and in an even more restricted band around the core the winds can attain speeds of 50 to 100 ms^{-1}. Intense tornadoes may have multiple vortices rotating anticlockwise with respect to the main tornado axis, each following a

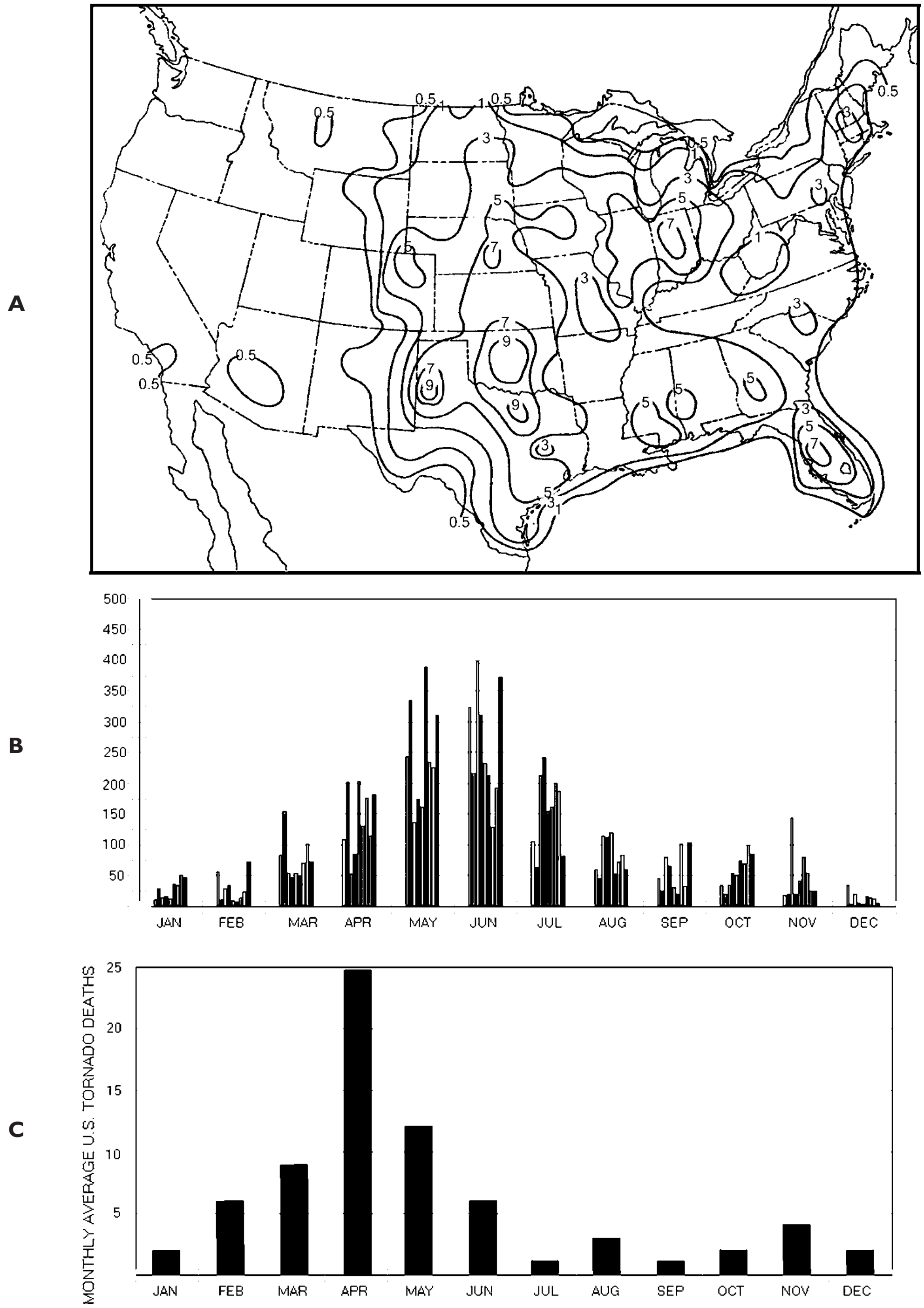


Figure 9.32 Tornado characteristics in the United States. (A) Frequency of tornadoes (per 26,000 km²) in the United States, 1953 to 1980. (B) Monthly average number of tornadoes (1990 to 1998). (C) Monthly averages of resulting deaths (1966 to 1995).

Sources: (A) From NOAA (1982). (B) and (C) After NOAA – Storm Prediction Center.

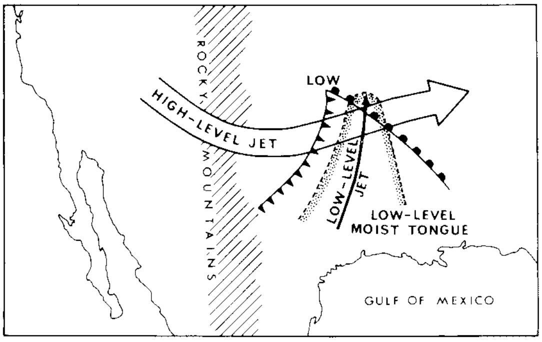

ROCKY MOUNTAINS
HIGH-LEVEL JET
LOW
LOW-LEVEL JET
LOW-LEVEL MOIST TONGUE
GULF OF MEXICO

Figure 9.33 The synoptic conditions favouring severe storms and tornadoes over the Great Plains.

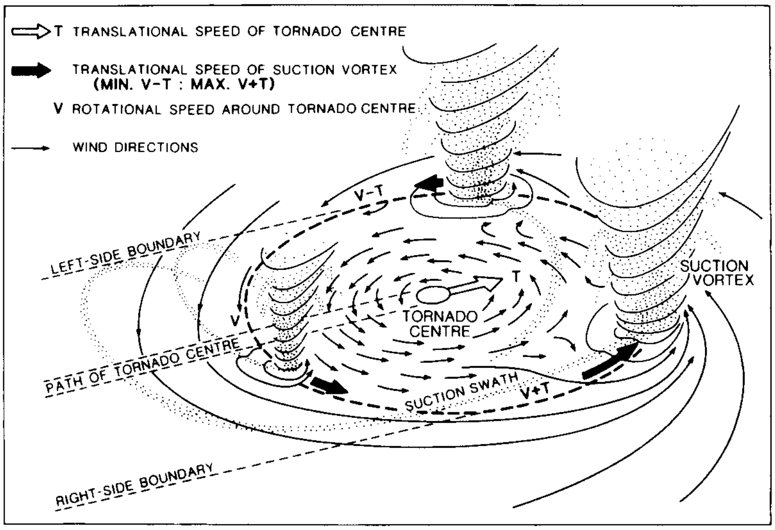

T TRANSLATIONAL SPEED OF TORNADO CENTRE
TRANSLATIONAL SPEED OF SUCTION VORTEX (MIN. V-T : MAX. V+T)
V ROTATIONAL SPEED AROUND TORNADO CENTRE
WIND DIRECTIONS
V-T
LEFT-SIDE BOUNDARY
SUCTION VORTEX
T
V
TORNADO CENTRE
PATH OF TORNADO CENTRE
SUCTION SWATH
V+T
RIGHT-SIDE BOUNDARY

Figure 9.34 Schematic diagram of a complex tornado with multiple suction vortices.

Source: After Fujita (pp. 1, 251, fig. 15), by permission of the American Meteorological Society.

cycloidal path. The whole tornado system gives a complex pattern of destruction, with maximum wind speeds on the right-side boundary (in the northern hemisphere), where the translational and rotational speeds are combined. Destruction results not only from the high winds, because buildings near the path of the vortex may explode outwards owing to the pressure reduction outside. Intense tornadoes present problems as to their energy supply, and it has been suggested recently that the release of heat energy by lightning and other electrical discharges may be an additional energy source.

Tornadoes commonly occur in families and move along rather straight paths (typically between 10 and 100 km long and 100 m to 2 km wide) at velocities dictated by the low-level jet. Thirty-year averages indicate some 750 tornadoes per year in the United States, with 60 per cent of these during April to June (see Figure 9.32B). The largest outbreak in the United States occurred on 3 to 4 April 1974, extending from Alabama and Georgia in the south to Michigan in the north and from Illinois in the west to Virginia in the east. This 'Super Outbreak' spawned 148 tornadoes in twenty hours with a total path length of over 3200 km.

Tornadoes in the United States cause about 100 fatalities and 1800 injuries each year on average, although most of the deaths and destruction result from a few long-lived tornadoes, making up only 1.5 per cent of the total reported. For example, the most severe recorded tornado travelled 200 km in three hours across Missouri, Illinois and Indiana on 18 March 1925, killing 689 people.

Tornadoes also occur in Canada, Europe, Australia, South Africa, India and East Asia. They are not unknown in the British Isles. During 1960–1982 there were fourteen days per year with tornado occurrences.

Most are minor outbreaks, but on 23 November 1981, 102 were reported during southwesterly flow ahead of a cold front. They are most common in autumn, when cold air moves over relatively warm seas.

SUMMARY

Ideal airmasses are defined in terms of barotropic conditions, where isobars and isotherms are assumed to be parallel to each other and to the surface. The character of an airmass is determined by the nature of the source area, changes due to airmass movement, and its age. On a regional scale, energy exchanges and vertical mixing lead to a measure of equilibrium between surface conditions and those of the overlying air, particularly in quasi-stationary high-pressure systems. Airmasses are conventionally identified in terms of temperature characteristics (Arctic, polar, tropical) and source region (maritime, continental). Primary airmasses originate in regions of semi-permanent anticyclonic subsidence over extensive surfaces of like properties. Cold airmasses originate either in winter continental anticyclones (Siberia and Canada), where snow cover promotes low temperatures and stable stratification, or over high-latitude sea ice. Some sources are seasonal, such as Siberia; others are permanent, such as Antarctica. Warm airmasses originate either in shallow tropical continental sources in summer or as deep, moist layers over tropical oceans. Airmass movement causes stability changes by thermodynamic processes (heating/cooling from below and moisture exchanges) and by dynamic processes (mixing, lifting/subsidence), producing secondary airmasses (e.g. mP air). The age of an airmass determines the degree to which it has lost its identity as the result of mixing with other airmasses and vertical exchanges with the underlying surface.

Airmass boundaries give rise to baroclinic frontal zones a few hundred kilometres wide. The classical (Norwegian) theory of mid-latitude cyclones considers that fronts are a key feature of their formation and life cycle. Newer models show that instead of the frontal occlusion process, the warm front may become bent back with warm air seclusion within the polar airstream. Cyclones tend to form along major frontal zones – the polar fronts of the North Atlantic and North Pacific regions and of the southern oceans. An Arctic front lies poleward and there is a winter frontal zone over the Mediterranean. Airmasses and frontal zones move poleward (equatorward) in summer (winter).

Newer cyclone theories regard fronts as rather incidental. Cloud bands and precipitation areas are associated primarily with conveyor belts of warm air. Divergence of air in the upper troposphere is essential for large-scale uplift and low-level convergence. Surface cyclogenesis is therefore favoured on the eastern limb of an upper wave trough. 'Explosive' cyclogenesis appears to be associated with strong wintertime gradients of sea-surface temperature. Cyclones are basically steered by the quasi-stationary long (Rossby) waves in the hemispheric westerlies, the positions of which are strongly influenced by surface features (major mountain barriers and land/sea-surface temperature contrasts). Upper baroclinic zones are associated with jet streams at 300 to 200 mb, which also follow the long-wave pattern.

The idealized weather sequence in an eastward-moving frontal depression involves increasing cloudiness and precipitation with an approaching warm front; the degree of activity depends on whether or not the warm-sector air is rising (ana- or kata-fronts, respectively). The following cold front is often marked by a narrow band of convective precipitation, but rain both ahead of the warm front and in the warm sector may also be organized into locally intense mesoscale cells and bands due to the 'conveyor belt' of air in the warm sector.

Some low-pressure systems form through non-frontal mechanisms. These include the lee cyclones formed in the lee of mountain ranges; thermal lows due to summer heating; polar air depressions commonly formed in an outbreak of maritime Arctic air over oceans; and the upper cold low, which is often a cut-off system in upper wave development or an occluded mid-latitude cyclone in the Arctic.

Mesoscale convective systems (MCSs) have a spatial scale of tens of kilometres and a timescale of a few hours. They may give rise to severe weather, including thunderstorms and tornadoes. Thunderstorms are generated by convective uplift, which may result from daytime heating, orographic ascent or squall lines. Several cells may be organized in a mesoscale convective complex and move with the large-scale flow. Thunderstorms associated with a moving convective system provide an environment for hailstone growth and for the generation of tornadoes.

DISCUSSION TOPICS

- What are the essential differences between mesoscale and synoptic scale systems?
- Using an appropriate website with synoptic weather maps (see Appendix 4D), trace the movement of frontal and non-frontal lows/troughs and high-pressure cells over a five-day period, determining rates of displacement and changes of intensity of the systems.
- In the same manner, examine the relationship of surface lows and highs to features at the 500-mb level.
- Consider the geographical distribution and seasonal occurrence of different types of non-frontal low-pressure systems.

FURTHER READING

Books

Church, C. R. Burgess, D., Doswell, C. and Davies-Jones, R.P. (eds) (1993) *The Tornado: Its Structure, Dynamics, Prediction, and Hazards. Geophys. Monogr*. 79, Amer, Geophys. Union, Washington, DC, 637pp. [Comprehensive accounts of vortex theory and modelling, observations of tornadic thunderstorms and tornadoes, tornado climatology, forecasting, hazards and damage surveys.]

Karoly, D. I. and Vincent, D. G. (1998) *Meteorology of the Southern Hemisphere. Met. Monogr*. 27(49), American Meteorological Society, Boston, MA, 410pp. [Comprehensive modern account of the circulation, meteorology of the landmasses and Pacific Ocean, mesoscale processes, climate variability and change and modelling.]

Kessler, E. (ed.) (1986) *Thunderstorm Morphology and Dynamics*, University of Oklahoma Press, Norman, OK, 411pp. [Comprehensive accounts by leading experts on convection and its modelling, all aspects of thunderstorm processes and occurrence in different environments, hail, lightning and tornadoes.]

Musk, L. F. (1988) *Weather Systems*, Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, 160pp. [Introductory account.]

Newton, C. W. (ed.) (1972) *Meteorology of the Southern Hemisphere, Met. Monogr*. No. 13 (35), American Meteorological Society, Boston, MA, 263pp. [Original comprehensive account now largely replaced by Karoly and Vincent (2000).]

Newton, C. W. and Holopainen, E. D. (eds) (1990) *Extratropical Cyclones: Palmén Memorial Symposium*, American Meteorological Society, Boston, 262pp. [Invited and contributed conference papers and review articles by leading specialists.]

NOAA (1982) *Tornado Safety: Surviving Nature's Most Violent Storms (with Tornado Statistics for 1953–1980)*, Washington, DC.

Pedgley, D. E. (1962) *A Course of Elementary Meteorology*, HMSO, London, 189pp.

Preston-Whyte, R. A. and Tyson, P. D. (1988) *The Atmosphere and Weather of Southern Africa*, Oxford University Press, Capetown, 375pp. [An introductory meteorology text from a southern hemisphere viewpoint, with chapters on circulation and weather in Southern Africa as well as climate variability.]

Riley, D. and Spolton, L. (1974) *World Weather and Climate*, Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, 120pp. [Introductory overview.]

Strahler, A. N. (1965) *Introduction to Physical Geography*, Wiley, New York, 455pp.

Taljaard, J. J., van Loon, H., Crutcher, H. L. and Jenne, R. L. (1969) *Climate of the Upper Air, Part 1. Southern Hemisphere 1*, Naval Weather Service Command, Washington, DC, NAVAIR 50-1C-55.

Taylor, J. A. and Yates, R. A. (1967) *British Weather in Maps* (2nd edn), Macmillan, London, 315pp. [Illustrates how to interpret synoptic maps and weather reports, including the lapse rate structure.]

Articles

Belasco, J. E. (1952) Characteristics of air masses over the British Isles. Meteorological Office, *Geophysical Memoirs* 11(87), 34pp.

Bennetts, D. A., Grant, J. R. and McCallum, E. (1988) An introductory review of fronts: Part I Theory and observations. *Met. Mag*. 117, 357–70.

Blanchard, D. O. (1990) Mesoscale convective patterns of the southern High Plains. *Bull. Amer. Met. Soc*., 71(7), 994–1005.

Boucher, R. J. and Newcomb, R. J. (1962) Synoptic interpretation of some TIROS vortex patterns: a preliminary cyclone model. *J. Appl. Met*. 1, 122–36.

Boyden, C. J. (1963) Development of the jet stream and cut-off circulations. *Met. Mag*. 92, 287–99.

Browning, K. A. (1968) The organization of severe local storms. *Weather* 23, 429–34.

Browning, K. A. (1985) Conceptual models of precipitation systems. *Met. Mag*. 114, 293–319.

Browning, K. A. (1986) Weather radar and FRONTIERS. *Weather* 41, 9–16.

Browning, K. A. (1990) Organization of clouds and precipitation in extratropical cyclones. In Newton, C.

W. and Holopainen, E. D. (eds) *Extratropical Cyclones. The Erik Palmén Memorial Volume*, American Meteorological Society, Boston, pp. 129–53.

Browning, K. A. and Hill, F. F. (1981) Orographic rain. *Weather* 36, 326–9.

Browning, K. A. and Roberts, N. M. (1994) Structure of a frontal cyclone. *Quart. J. Roy. Met. Soc*. 120, 1535–57.

Browning, K. A., Bader, M. J., Waters, A. J., Young, M. V. and Monk, G. A. (1987) Application of satellite imagery to nowcasting and very short range forecasting. *Met. Mag*. 116, 161–79.

Businger, S. (1985) The synoptic climatology of polar low outbreaks. *Tellus* 37A, 419–32.

Carleton, A. M. (1985) Satellite climatological aspects of the 'polar low' and 'instant occlusion'. *Tellus* 37A, 433–50.

Carleton, A. M. (1996) Satellite climatological aspects of cold air mesocyclones in the Arctic and Antarctic. *Global Atmos. Ocean System* 5, 1–42.

Crowe, P. R. (1949) The trade wind circulation of the world. *Trans. Inst. Brit. Geog*. 15, 38–56.

Crowe, P. R. (1965) The geographer and the atmosphere. *Trans. Inst. Brit. Geog*. 36, 1–19.

Dudhia, J. (1997) Back to basics: Thunderstorms. Part 2 – storm types and associated weather. *Weather* 52, 2–7.

Eyre, L.A. (1992) How severe can a 'severe thunderstorm' be? Weather 47, 374–83.

Godson, W. L. (1950) The structure of North American weather systems. *Cent. Proc. Roy. Met. Soc*. London, 89–106.

Griffiths, D.J., Colquhoun, J.R., Batt, K.L. and Casinader, T.R. (1993) Severe thunderstorms in New South Wales: Climatology and means of assessing the impact of climate change. *Climatic Change* 25, 369–88.

Gyakum, J. R. (1983) On the evolution of the *QE II* storm, I: Synoptic aspects. *Monthly Weather Review* 111, 1137–55.

Hare, F. K. (1960) The westerlies. *Geog. Rev*. 50, 345–67.

Harman, J. R. (1971) Tropical waves, jet streams, and the United States weather patterns. Association of American Geographers, Commission on College Geography, Resource Paper No. 11, 37pp.

Harrold, T. W. (1973) Mechanisms influencing the distribution of precipitation within baroclinic disturbances. *Quart. J. Roy. Met. Soc*. 99, 232–51.

Hindley, K. (1977) Learning to live with twisters. *New Scientist* 70, 280–2.

Hobbs, P. V. (1978) Organization and structure of clouds and precipitation on the meso-scale and micro-scale of cyclonic storms. *Rev. Geophys. and Space Phys*. 16, 741–55.

Hobbs, P. W., Locatelli, J. D. and Martin, J. E. (1996) A new conceptual model for cyclones generated in the lee of the Rocky Mountains. *Bull. Amer. Met. Soc*. 77(6), 1169–78.

Houze, R. A. and Hobbs, P. V. (1982) Organization and structure of precipitating cloud systems. *Adv. Geophys*. 24, 225–315.

Hughes, P. and Gedzelman, S. D. (1995) Superstorm success. *Weatherwise* 48(3), 18–24.

Jackson, M. C. (1977) Meso-scale and small-scale motions as revealed by hourly rainfall maps of an outstanding rainfull event: 14–16 September 1968. *Weather* 32, 2–16.

Kalnay, E. *et al*. (1996) The NCEP/NCAR 40-year reanalysis project. *Bull. Amer. Met. Soc*. 77(3), 437–71.

Kelly, D.L. *et al*. (1978) An augmented tornado climatology. *Monthly Weather Review* 106, 1172–83.

Klein, W. H. (1948) Winter precipitation as related to the 700 mb circulation. *Bull. Amer. Met. Soc*. 29, 439–53.

Klein, W. H. (1957) *Principal tracks and mean frequencies of cyclones and anticyclones in the Northern Hemisphere*. Research Paper No. 40, Weather Bureau, Washington, DC, 60pp.

Kocin, P. J., Schumacher, P. N., Morales, R. F. Jr. and Uccellini, L. W. (1995) Overview of the 12–14 March 1993 Superstorm. *Bull. Amer. Met. Soc*. 76(2), 165–82.

Liljequist, G. H. (1970) *Klimatologi*. Generalstabens Litografiska Anstalt, Stockholm.

Locatelli, J. D., Martin, J. E., Castle, J. A. and Hobbs, P. V. (1995) Structure and evolution of winter cyclones in the central United States and their effects on the distribution of precipitation: Part III. The development of a squall line associated with weak cold frontogenesis aloft. *Monthly Weather Review* 123, 2641–62.

Ludlam, F. H. (1961) The hailstorm. *Weather* 16, 152–62.

Lyall, I. T. (1972) The polar low over Britain. *Weather* 27, 378–90.

McPherson, R. D. (1994) The National Centers for Environmental Prediction: Operational climate, ocean and weather prediction for the 21st century, *Bull. Amer. Met. Soc*. 75(3), 363–73.

Maddox, R. A. (1980) Mesoscale convective complexes. *Bull. Amer. Met. Soc*. 61, 1374–87.

Miles, M. K. (1962) Wind, temperature and humidity distribution at some cold front over SE England. *Quart. J. Roy. Met. Soc*. 88, 286–300.

Miller, R. C. (1959) Tornado-producing synoptic patterns. *Bull. Amer. Met. Soc*. 40, 465–72.

Miller, R. C. and Starrett, L. G. (1962) Thunderstorms in Great Britain. *Met. Mag*. 91, 247–55.

Monk, G. A. (1992) Synoptic and mesoscale analysis of intense mid-latitude cyclones. *Met. Mag*. 121, 269–83.

Newton, C. W. (1966) Severe convective storms. *Adv. Geophys*. 12, 257–308.

Parker, D. J. (2000) Frontal theory. *Weather* 55 (4), 120–1.

Pedgley, D. E. (1962) A meso-synoptic analysis of the thunderstorms on 28 August 1958. *Geophys. Memo. Meteorolog. Office* 14(1), 30pp.

Penner, C. M. (1955) A three-front model for synoptic analyses. *Quart. J. Roy. Met. Soc*. 81, 89–91.

Petterssen, S. (1950) Some aspects of the general circulation of the atmosphere. *Cent. Proc. Roy. Met. Soc*., London, 120–55.

Portelo, A. and Castro, M. (1996) Summer thermal lows in the Iberian Peninsula: a three-dimensional simulation. *Quart. J. Roy. Met. Soc*. 122, 1–22.

Reed, R. J. (1960) Principal frontal zones of the northern hemisphere in winter and summer. *Bull. Amer. Met. Soc*. 41, 591–8.

Richter, D. A. and Dahl, R. A. (1958) Relationship of heavy precipitation to the jet maximum in the eastern United States. *Monthly Weather Review* 86, 368–76.

Roebber, P. J. (1989) On the statistical analysis of cyclone deepening rates. *Monthly Weather Review* 117(2), 293–8.

Sanders, F. and Gyakum, J. R. (1980) Synoptic-dynamic climatology of the 'bomb'. *Monthly Weather Review* 108, 1589–606.

Shapiro, M. A. and Keyser, D. A. (1990) Fronts, jet streams and the tropopause. In Newton, C. W. and Holopainen, E. O. (eds) *Extratropical Cyclones. The Erik Palmén Memorial Volume*, Amer. Met. Soc., Boston, MA, pp. 167–91.

Showalter, A. K. (1939) Further studies of American air mass properties. *Monthly Weather Review* 67, 204–18.

Slater, P. M. and Richards, C. J. (1974) A memorable rainfall event over southern England. *Met. Mag*. 103, 255–68 and 288–300.

Smith, W. L. (1985) Satellites. In Houghton, D. D. (ed.) *Handbook of Applied Meteorology*, Wiley, New York, pp. 380–472.

Snow, J. T. (1984) The tornado. *Sci. American* 250(4), 56–66.

Snow, J.T. and Wyatt, A.L. 1997. Back to basics: the tornado, Nature's most violent wind. Part 1 – Worldwide occurrence and chaacterization. *Weather* 52(10), 298–304.

Stoelinga, M.T., Locatelli, J.D. and Hobbs, P.V. (2002) Warm occlusions, cold occlusions and forward-tilting cold fronts. *Bull. Amer. Met. Soc*., 83(5), 709–21.

Sumner, G. (1996) Precipitation weather. *Geography* 81, 327–45.

Sutcliffe, R. C. and Forsdyke, A. G. (1950) The theory and use of upper air thickness patterns in forecasting. *Quart. J. Roy. Met. Soc*. 76, 189–217.

Uccellini, L.W. (1990) Processes contributing to the rapid development of extratropical cyclones. In Newton, C.W. and Holopainen, E.O. (eds) *Extratropical Cyclones. The Erik Palmer Memorial Volume*, American Meteorological Society, Boston, MA, pp. 81–105.

Vederman, J. (1954) The life cycles of jet streams and extratropical cyclones. *Bull. Amer. Met. Soc*. 35, 239–44.

Wallington, C. E. (1963) Meso-scale patterns of frontal rainfall and cloud. *Weather* 18, 171–81.

Wendland, W. M. and Bryson, R. A. (1981) Northern hemisphere airstream regions. *Monthly Weather Review* 109, 255–70.

Wendland, W. M. and McDonald, N. S. (1986) Southern hemisphere airstream climatology. *Monthly Weather Review* 114, 88–94.

Wick, G. (1973) Where Poseidon courts Aeolus. *New Scientist*, 18 January, 123–6.

Yoshino, M. M. (1967) Maps of the occurrence frequencies of fronts in the rainy season in early summer over east Asia. *Science Reports of the Tokyo University of Education* 89, 211–45.

Young, M.V. (1994a) Back to basics, Depressions and anticyclones: Part 1. Introduction. *Weather* 49, 306–12.

Young, M.V. (1994b) Back to basics, Depressions and anticyclones: Part 2. Life cycles and weather characteristics. *Weather* 49, 362–70.

10

Weather and climate in middle and high latitudes

Learning objectives
When you have read this chapter you will:

- ☐ Be familiar with the major factors determining climate in many regions of middle and high latitudes, and the subtropical margins,
- ☐ Appreciate the role of major topographic barriers in determining regional climate,
- ☐ Be aware of the contrasts between climatic conditions in the Arctic and Antarctic.

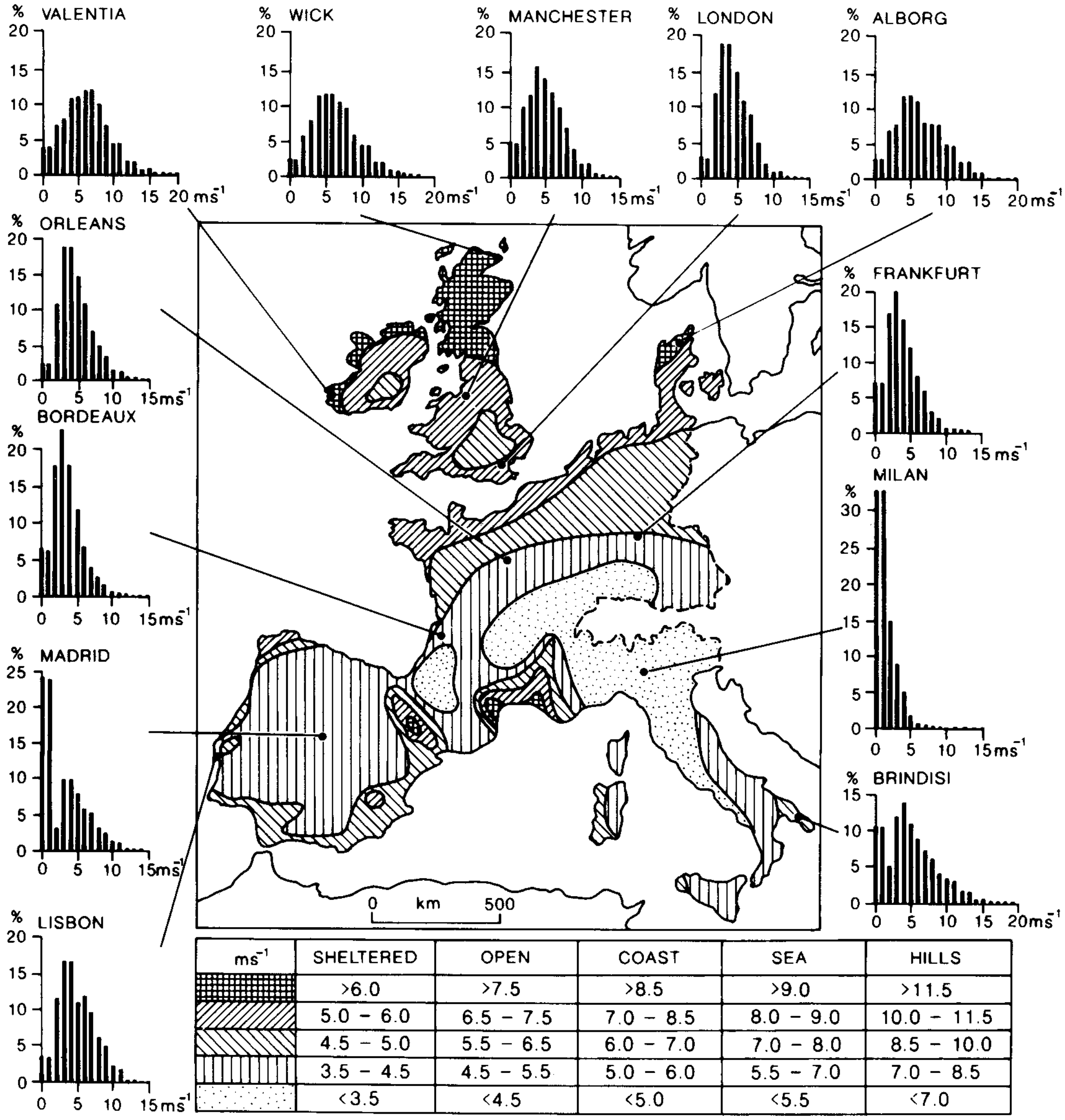
In Chapters 7 and 8, the general structure of the atmospheric circulation has been outlined and the behaviour and origin of extratropical cyclones examined. The direct contribution of pressure systems to the daily and seasonal variability of weather in the westerly wind belt is quite apparent to inhabitants of the temperate lands. Nevertheless, there are equally prominent contrasts of regional climate in mid-latitudes that reflect the interaction of geographical and meteorological factors. This chapter gives a selective synthesis of weather and climate in several extratropical regions, drawing mainly on the principles already presented. The climatic conditions of the subtropical and polar margins of the westerly wind belt, and the polar regions themselves, are examined in the final sections of the chapter. As far as possible, different themes are used to illustrate some of the more significant aspects of the climate in each area.

A EUROPE

1 Pressure and wind conditions

The dominant features of the mean North Atlantic pressure pattern are the Icelandic Low and the Azores High. These are present at all seasons (see Figure 7.9), although their location and relative intensity change considerably. The upper flow in this sector undergoes little seasonal change in pattern, but the westerlies decrease in strength by over half from winter to summer. The other major pressure system influencing European climates is the Siberian winter anticyclone, the occurrence of which is intensified by the extensive winter snow cover and the marked continentality of Eurasia. Atlantic depressions frequently move towards the Norwegian or Mediterranean seas in winter, but if they travel due east they occlude and fill long before they can penetrate into the heart of Siberia. Thus the Siberian high pressure is quasi-permanent at this season, and when it extends westward severe conditions affect much of Europe. In summer, pressure is low over all of Asia and depressions from the Atlantic tend to follow a more zonal path. Although the storm tracks over Europe do not shift poleward in summer, the depressions at this season are less intense and reduced airmass contrasts produce weaker fronts.

Wind velocities over western Europe bear a strong relationship to the occurrence and movement of depressions. The strongest winds occur on coasts exposed to the northwest airflow that follows the passage of frontal systems, or at constricted topographic locations that guide the movement of depressions or funnel airflow into them (Figure 10.1). For example, the Carcassonne Gap in southwest France provides a preferred southern route for depressions moving eastward from the


% VALENTIA
% WICK
% MANCHESTER
% LONDON
% ALBORG
% ORLEANS
BORDEAUX
% MADRID
% LISBON
% FRANKFURT
MILAN
% BRINDISI
0 5 10 15 20 ms⁻¹
0 5 10 15ms⁻¹
0 km 500

ms⁻¹	SHELTERED	OPEN	COAST	SEA	HILLS
▦	>6.0	>7.5	>8.5	>9.0	>11.5
▨	5.0 – 6.0	6.5 – 7.5	7.0 – 8.5	8.0 – 9.0	10.0 – 11.5
▧	4.5 – 5.0	5.5 – 6.5	6.0 – 7.0	7.0 – 8.0	8.5 – 10.0
▥	3.5 – 4.5	4.5 – 5.5	5.0 – 6.0	5.5 – 7.0	7.0 – 8.5
⠿	<3.5	<4.5	<5.0	<5.5	<7.0

Figure 10.1 Average wind velocities (m s^{-1}) over western Europe, measured 50 m above ground level for sheltered terrain, open plains, sea coast, open sea and hilltops. Frequencies (per cent) of wind velocities for twelve locations are shown.

Source: From Troen and Petersen (1989).

Atlantic. The Rhône and Ebro valleys are funnels for strong airflow in the rear of depressions located in the western Mediterranean, generating the mistral and cierzo winds, respectively, in winter (see C.3, this chapter). Throughout western Europe, the mean velocity of winds on hilltops is at least 100 per cent greater than that in more sheltered locations. Winds in open terrain are on average 25 to 30 per cent stronger than in sheltered locations; and coastal wind velocities are at least 10 to 20 per cent less than those over adjacent seas (see Figure 10.1).

2 Oceanicity and continentality

Winter temperatures in northwest Europe are some 11°C or more above the latitudinal average (see Figure 3.18), a fact usually attributed to the presence of the North Atlantic current. There is, however, a complex interaction between the ocean and the atmosphere. The current, which originates from the Gulf Stream off Florida strengthened by the Antilles current, is primarily a wind-driven current initiated by the prevailing southwesterlies. It flows at a velocity of 16 to 32 km per day and thus, from Florida, the water takes about eight or nine months to reach Ireland and about a year to reach Norway (see Chapter 7D.2). The southwesterly winds transport both sensible and latent heat acquired over the western Atlantic towards Europe, and although they continue to gain heat supplies over the northeastern Atlantic, this local warming arises in the first place through the drag effect of the winds on the warm surface waters. Warming of airmasses over the northeastern Atlantic is mainly of significance when polar or arctic airflows southeastward from Iceland. The temperature in such airstreams in winter may rise by 9°C between Iceland and northern Scotland. By contrast, maritime tropical air cools on average by about 4°C between the Azores and southwest England in winter and summer. One very evident effect of the North Atlantic Current is the absence of ice around the Norwegian coastline. However, the primary factor affecting the climate of northwestern Europe is the prevailing *onshore* winds transferring heat into the area.

The influence of maritime airmasses can extend deep into Europe because there are few major topographic barriers to airflow and because of the presence of the Mediterranean Sea. Hence the change to a more continental climatic regime is relatively gradual except in Scandinavia, where the mountain spine produces a sharp contrast between western Norway and Sweden. There are numerous indices expressing this continentality, but most are based on the annual range of temperature. Gorczynski's continentality index (K) (Note 1) is:

$$K = 1.7\frac{A}{\sin\varphi} - 20.4$$

where A is the annual temperature range (°C) and φ is the latitude angle (the index assumes that the annual range in solar radiation increases with latitude, but in fact the range is a maximum around 55°N). K is scaled from 0 at extreme oceanic stations to 100 at extreme continental stations, but values occasionally fall outside these limits. Some values in Europe are London 10, Berlin 21 and Moscow 42. Figure 10.2 shows the variation of this index over Europe.

An independent approach relates the frequency of continental airmasses (C) to that of all airmasses (N) as an index of continentality, i.e. $K = C/N$ (per cent). Figure 10.2 shows that non-continental air occurs at least half the time over Europe west of 15°E as well as over Sweden and most of Finland.

A further illustration of maritime and continental regimes is provided by a comparison of Valentia (Eire), Bergen and Berlin (Figure 10.3). Valentia has a winter rainfall maximum and equable temperatures as a result of its oceanic situation, whereas Berlin has a considerable temperature range and a summer maximum of rainfall. A theoretically ideal 'equable' climate has been defined as one with a mean temperature of 14°C in all months of the year. Bergen receives large rainfall totals due to orographic intensification and has a maximum in autumn and winter, its temperature range being intermediate between the other two. Such averages convey only a very general impression of climatic characteristics, and therefore British weather patterns are examined in more detail below.

3 British airflow patterns and their climatic characteristics

The daily weather maps for the British Isles sector (50 to 60°N, 2°E to 10°W) from 1873 to the present day have been classified by H. H. Lamb according to the airflow direction or isobaric pattern. He identified seven major categories: westerly (W), northwesterly (NW), northerly (N), easterly (E) and southerly (S) types

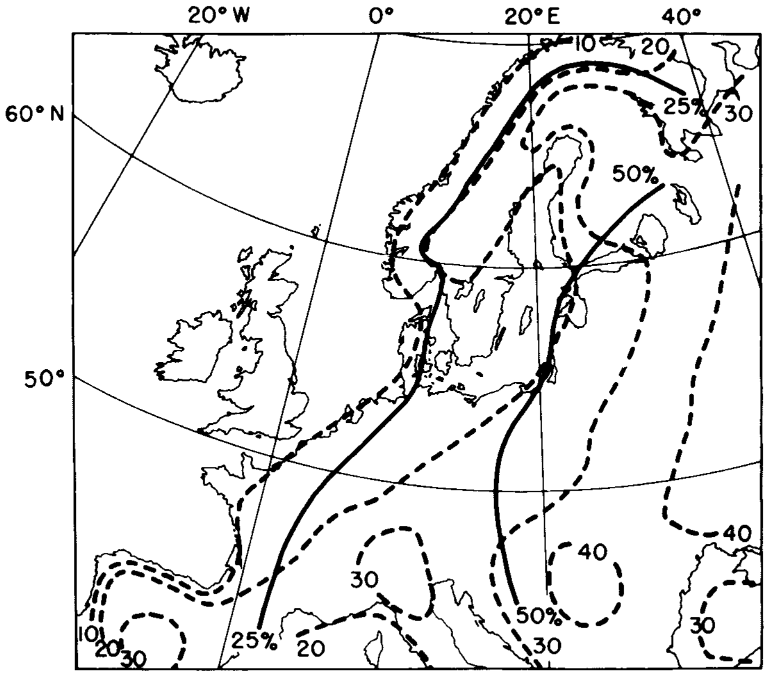


Figure 10.2 Continentality in Europe. The indices of Gorczynski (dashes) and Berg (solid lines) are explained in the text.

Source: Partly after Blüthgen (1966).

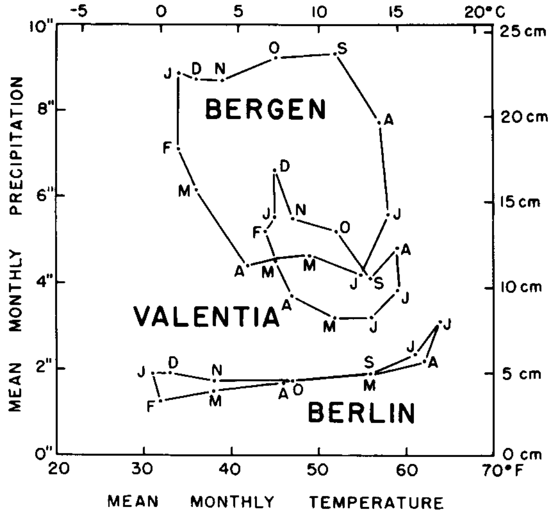


Figure 10.3 Hythergraphs for Valentia (Eire), Bergen and Berlin. Mean temperature and precipitation totals for each month are plotted.

– referring to the compass directions from which the airflow and weather systems are moving. Cyclonic (C) and anticyclonic (A) types denote when a low-pressure or high-pressure cell, respectively, dominates the weather map (Figure 10.4).

In principle, each category should produce a characteristic type of weather, depending on the season, and the term *weather type* is sometimes used to convey this idea. Statistical studies have been made of the actual weather conditions occurring in different localities with specific isobaric patterns – a field of study known as *synoptic climatology*. The general weather conditions and airmasses that are to be associated with the airflow types identified by Lamb over the British Isles are summarized in Table 10.1.

On an annual basis, the most frequent airflow type is westerly; including cyclonic and anticyclonic subtypes, it has a 35 per cent frequency in December to January and is almost as frequent in July to September (Figure 10.5). The minimum occurs in May (15 per cent), when northerly and easterly types reach their maxima (about 10 per cent each). Pure cyclonic patterns are most frequent (13 to 17 per cent) in July to August and anticyclonic patterns in June and September (20 per cent); cyclonic patterns have ≥10 per cent frequency in all months and anticyclonic patterns ≥13 per cent.

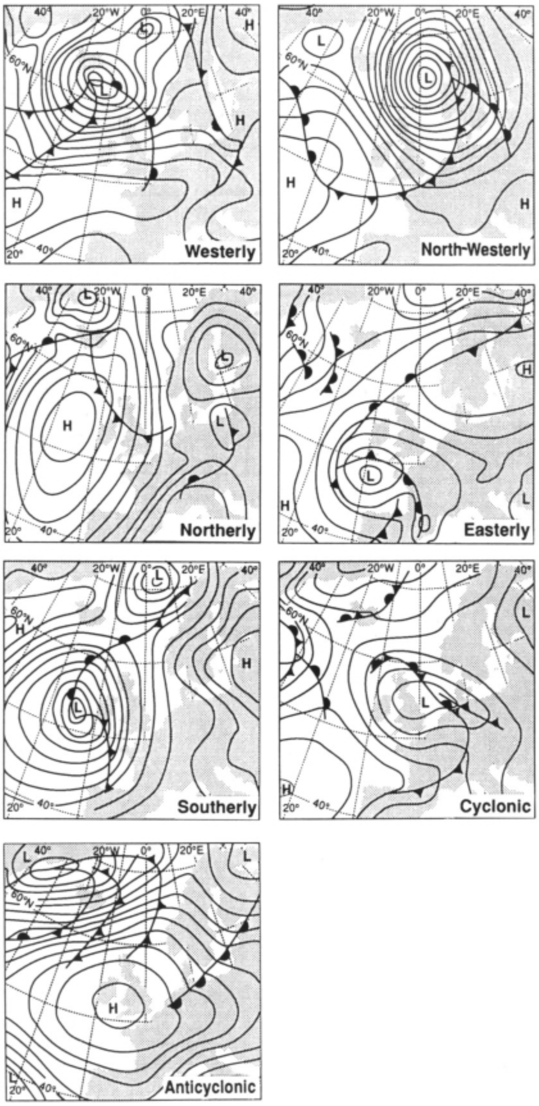


Figure 10.4 Synoptic situations over the British Isles classified according to the primary airflow types of H.H. Lamb.

Source: Lamb; O'Hare and Sweeney (1993). From *Geography* 78(1). Copyright © The Geographical Association and G. O'Hare.

Figure 10.5 illustrates the mean daily temperature in central England and the mean daily precipitation over England and Wales for each type in the mid-season months for 1861 to 1979.

The monthly frequency of different airmass types over Great Britain was analysed by J. Belasco for 1938 to 1949. There is a clear predominance of northwesterly to westerly polar maritime (mP and mPw) air, which has a frequency of 30 per cent or more over southeast England in all months except March. The maximum frequency of mP air at Kew (London) is 33 per cent (with a further 10 per cent mPw) in July. The proportion is even greater in western coastal districts, with mP and mPw occurring in the Hebrides, for example, on at least 38 per cent of days throughout the year.

Airmass types can also be used to describe typical weather conditions. Northwesterly mP airstreams produce cool, showery weather at all seasons. The air is unstable, forming cumulus clouds, although inland in winter and at night the clouds disperse, giving low night temperatures. Over the sea, heating of the lower air continues by day and night in winter months, so showers and squalls can occur at any time, and these affect windward coastal areas. The average daily mean temperatures with mP air are within about ±1°C of the seasonal means in winter and summer, depending on the precise track of the air. More extreme conditions occur with mA air, the temperature departures at Kew being approximately –4°C in summer and winter. The visibility in mA air is usually very good. The contribution of mP and mA air masses to the mean annual rainfall over a five-year period at three stations in northern England and North Wales is given in Table 10.2, although it should be noted that both airmasses may also be involved in non-frontal polar lows. Over much of southern England, and in areas to the lee of high ground, northerly and northwesterly airstreams usually give clear sunny weather with few showers. This is illustrated in Table 10.2. At Rotherham, in the lee of the Pennines, the percentage of the rainfall occurring with mP air is much lower than on the West Coast (Squires Gate).

Maritime tropical air commonly forms the warm sector of depressions moving from between west and south towards Britain. The weather is unseasonably mild and damp with mT air in winter. There is usually a complete cover of stratus or stratocumulus cloud, and drizzle or light rain may occur, especially over high ground, where low cloud produces hill fog. The clearance of cloud on nights with light winds readily cools the moist air to its dew-point, forming mist and fog. Table 10.2 shows that a high proportion of the annual rainfall is associated with warm-front and warm-sector situations and therefore is largely attributable to convergence and frontal uplift within mT air. In summer the cloud cover with this airmass keeps temperatures closer to average than in winter; night temperatures tend to be high, but daytime maxima remain rather low.

Table 10.1 General weather characteristics and airmasses associated with Lamb's 'Airflow Types' over the British Isles.

Type	*Weather conditions*
Westerly	Unsettled weather with variable wind directions as depressions cross the country. Mild and stormy in winter, generally cool and cloudy in summer (mP, mPw, mT).
Northwesterly	Cool, changeable conditions. Strong winds and showers affect windward coasts especially, but the southern part of Britain may have dry, bright weather (mP, mA).
Northerly	Cold weather at all seasons, often associated with polar lows. Snow and sleet showers in winter, especially in the north and east (mA).
Easterly	Cold in the winter half-year, sometimes very severe weather in the south and east with snow or sleet. Warm in summer with dry weather in the west. Occasionally thundery (cA, cP).
Southerly	Warm and thundery in summer. In winter it may be associated with a low in the Atlantic, giving mild damp weather especially in the southwest, or with a high over central Europe, in which case it is cold and dry (mT, or cT, summer; mT or cP, winter).
Cyclonic	Rainy, unsettled conditions, often accompanied by gales and thunderstorms. This type may refer either to the rapid passage of depressions across the country or to the persistence of a deep depression (mP, mPw, mT).
Anticyclonic	Warm and dry in summer, occasional thunderstorms (mT, cT). Cold and frosty in winter with fog, especially in autumn (cP).

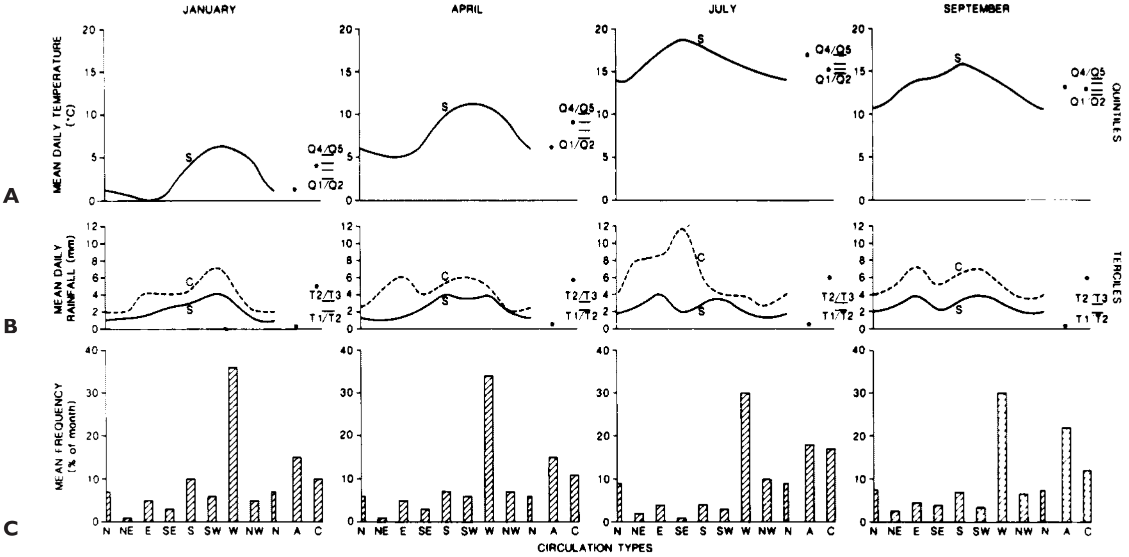


Figure 10.5 Average climatic conditions associated with Lamb's circulation types for January, April, July and September, 1861 to 1979. (A) Mean daily temperature (°C) in central England for the straight (S) airflow types; at the right side are the quintiles of mean monthly temperature (i.e. Q1/Q2 = 20 per cent, Q4/Q5 = 80 per cent). (B) Mean daily rainfall (in millimetres) over England and Wales for the straight (S) and cyclonic (C) subdivisions of each type and terciles of the mean values (i.e. T1/T2 = 33 per cent, T2/T3 = 67 per cent). (C) Mean frequency (per cent) for each circulation type, including anticyclonic (A) and cyclonic (C).

Source: After Storey (1982), reprinted from *Weather*, by permission of the Royal Meteorological Society. Crown copyright ©.

Table 10.2 Percentage of the annual rainfall (1956 to 1960) occurring with different synoptic situations.

Station	*Synoptic categories*								
	Warm front	*Warm sector*	*Cold front*	*Occlusion*	*Polar low*	*mP*	*cP*	*Arctic*	*Thunderstorm*
Cwm Dyli (99 m)*	18	30	13	10	5	22	0.1	0.8	0.8
Squires Gate (10 m)†	23	16	14	15	7	22	0.2	0.7	3
Rotherham (21 m)‡	26	9	11	20	14	15	1.5	1.1	3

Notes: *Snowdonia.
†On the Lancashire coast (Blackpool).
‡In the Don Valley, Yorkshire.
Source: After Shaw (1962), and R. P. Mathews (unpublished).

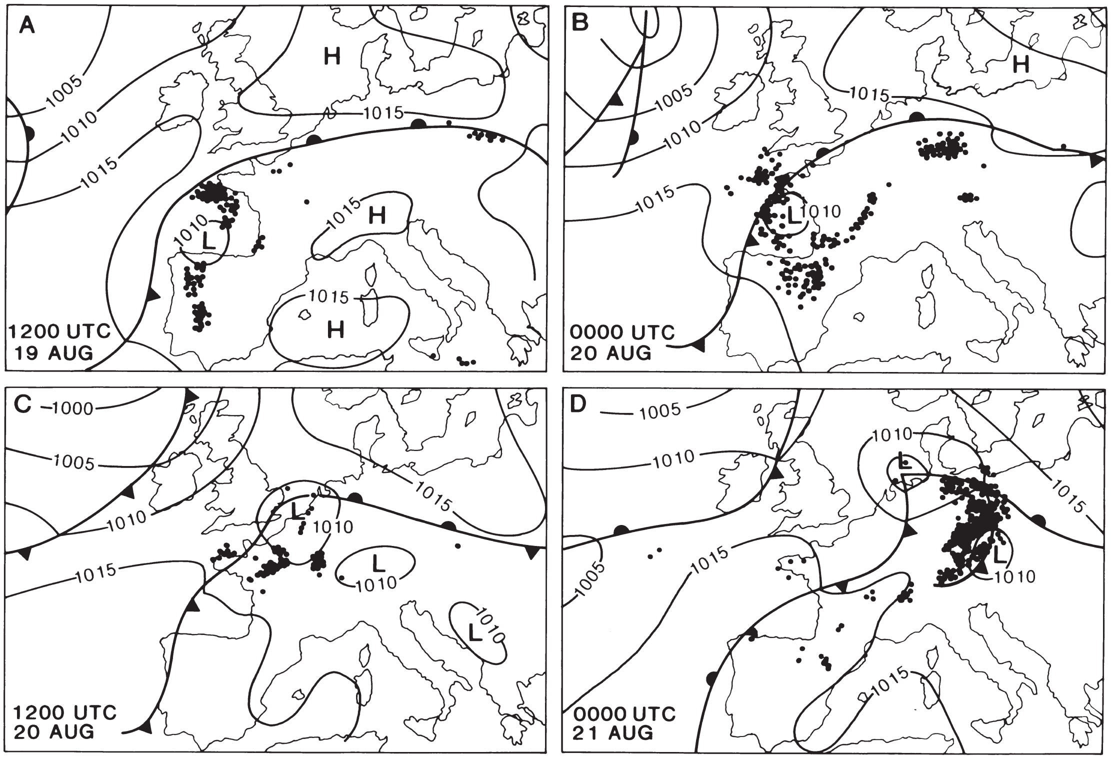

A
1005
1010
1015
H
1015
1010
L
1015
H
1015
H
1200 UTC
19 AUG
B
1005
1010
1015
H
1015
L
1010
0000 UTC
20 AUG
C
1000
1005
1010
1015
L
1010
1015
L
1010
L
1010
1200 UTC
20 AUG
D
1005
1010
1010
L
1015
1005
1015
L
1010
1015
0000 UTC
21 AUG

Figure 10.6 Distribution of thunderstorms over western Europe during the period 19 to 21 August 1992 (storms shown for the four-hour period preceding the times given). A small depression formed over the Bay of Biscay and moved eastward along the boundary of warm air, developing a strong squall line.

Source: Blackall and Taylor (1993). Reprinted from the *Meteorological Magazine* (Crown copyright ©) by permission of the Controller of Her Majesty's Stationery Office.

In summer, 'plumes' of warm, moist mT air may spread northward from the vicinity of Spain into western Europe. This air is very unstable, with a significant vertical wind shear and a wet-bulb potential temperature that may exceed 18°C. Instability may be increased if cooler Atlantic air is advected under the plume from the west. Thunderstorms tend to develop along the leading northern edge of the moist plume over Britain and northwest Europe. Occasionally, depressions develop on the front and move eastward, bringing widespread storms to the region (Figure 10.6). On average, two mesoscale convective systems affect southern Britain each summer, moving northward from France (see p. 201).

Continental polar air occasionally affects the British Isles between December and February. Mean daily temperatures are well below average and maxima rise to only a degree or so above freezing point. The air is basically very dry and stable (see easterly type in January, Figure 10.4) but a track over the central part of the North Sea supplies sufficient heat and moisture to cause showers, often in the form of snow, over eastern England and Scotland. In total this provides only a very small contribution to the annual precipitation, as Table 10.2 shows, and on the West Coast the weather is generally clear. A transitional cP–cT type of airmass reaches Britain from southeastern Europe in all seasons, although less frequently in summer. Such airstreams are dry and stable.

Continental tropical air occurs on average about one day per month in summer, which accounts for the rarity of summer heatwaves, since these south or southeast winds bring hot, settled weather. The lower layers are stable and the air is commonly hazy, but the upper layers tend to be unstable and occasionally surface heating may trigger off a thunderstorm (see southerly cyclonic type in July, Figure 10.4).

4 Singularities and natural seasons

Popular weather lore expresses the belief that each season has its own weather (for example, in England, 'February fill-dyke' and 'April showers'). Ancient adages suggest that even the sequence of weather may be determined by the conditions established on a given date. For example, forty days of wet or fine weather are said to follow St Swithin's Day (15 July) in England; sunny conditions on 'Groundhog Day' (2 February) are claimed to portend six more weeks of winter in the United States. Some of these ideas are fallacious, but others contain more than a grain of truth if properly interpreted.

The tendency for a certain type of weather to recur with reasonable regularity around the same date is termed a *singularity*. Many calendars of singularities have been compiled, particularly in Europe. Early ones, which concentrated upon anomalies of temperature or rainfall, did not prove very reliable. Greater success has been achieved by studying singularities of circulation pattern; Flohn, and Hess and Brezowsky, have prepared catalogues for central Europe and Lamb for the British Isles. Lamb's results are based on calculations of the daily frequency of the airflow categories between 1898 and 1947, some examples of which are shown in Figure 10.7. A noticeable feature is the infrequency of the westerly type in spring, the driest season of the year in the British Isles and also in northern France, northern Germany and in the countries bordering the North Sea. The European catalogue is based on a classification of large-scale patterns of airflow in the lower troposphere (*Grosswetterlage*) over Central Europe. Some of the European singularities that occur most regularly are as follows:

1 A sharp increase in the frequency of westerly and northwesterly type over Britain takes place in about mid-June. These invasions of maritime air also affect central Europe, and this period marks the beginning of the European 'summer monsoon'.

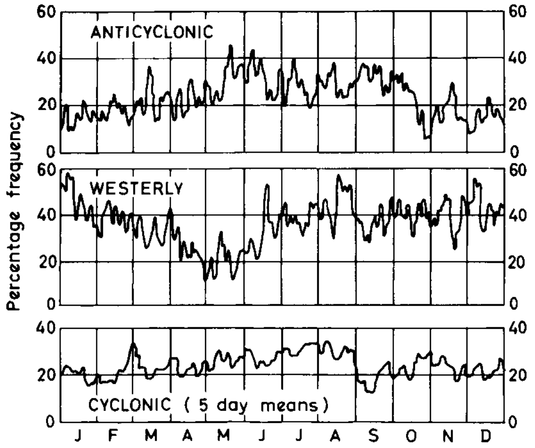


Figure 10.7 The percentage frequency of anticyclonic, westerly and cyclonic conditions over Britain, 1898 to 1947.

Source: After Lamb (1950), by permission of the Royal Meteorological Society.

2 Around the second week in September, Europe and Britain are affected by a spell of anticyclonic weather. This may be interrupted by Atlantic depressions, giving stormy weather over Britain in late September, although anticyclonic conditions again affect central Europe at the end of the month and Britain during early October.
3 A marked period of wet weather often affects western Europe and also the western half of the Mediterranean at the end of October, whereas the weather in eastern Europe generally remains fine.
4 Anticyclonic conditions return to Britain and affect much of Europe in about mid-November, giving rise to fog and frost.
5 In early December, Atlantic depressions push eastward to give mild, wet weather over most of Europe.

In addition to these singularities, major seasonal trends are recognizable. For the British Isles, Lamb identified five *natural seasons* on the basis of spells of a particular type lasting for twenty-five days or more during the period 1898 to 1947 (Figure 10.8). These seasons are as follows:

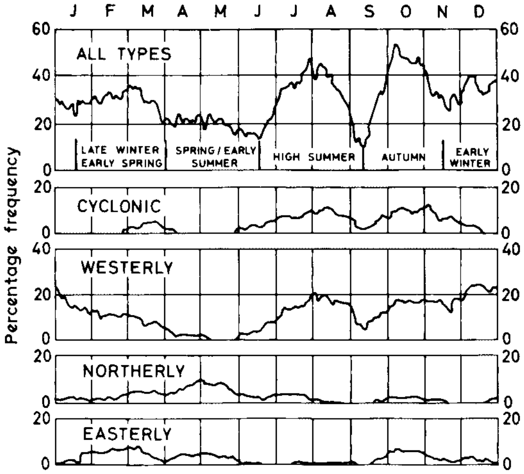


Figure 10.8 The frequency of long spells (twenty-five days or more) of a given airflow type over Britain, 1898 to 1947. The diagram showing all long spells also indicates a division of the year into 'natural seasons'.

Source: After Lamb (1950), by permission of the Royal Meteorological Society.

1 *Spring to early summer* (the beginning of April to mid-June). This is a period of variable weather conditions during which long spells are least likely. Northerly spells in the first half of May are the most significant feature, although there is a marked tendency for anticyclones to occur in late May to early June.
2 *High summer* (mid-June to early September). Long spells of various types may occur in different years. Westerly and northwesterly types are the most common and they may be combined with either cyclonic or anticyclonic types. Persistent sequences of cyclonic type occur more frequently than anticyclonic ones.
3 *Autumn* (the second week in September to mid-November). Long spells are again present in most years. Anticyclonic types are mainly in the first half, cyclonic and other stormy ones generally in October to November.
4 *Early winter* (from about the third week in November to mid-January). Long spells are less frequent than in summer and autumn. They are usually of westerly type, giving mild, stormy weather.
5 *Late winter and early spring* (from about the third week in January to the end of March). The long spells at this time of year can be of very different types, so that in some years it is midwinter weather, while in other years there is an early spring from about late February.

5 Synoptic anomalies

The mean climatic features of pressure, wind and seasonal airflow regime provide only a partial picture of climatic conditions. Some patterns of circulation occur irregularly and yet, because of their tendency to persist for weeks or even months, form an essential element of the climate.

Blocking patterns are an important example. It was noted in Chapter 7 that the zonal circulation in mid-latitudes sometimes breaks down into a cellular pattern. This is commonly associated with a split of the jet stream into two branches over higher and lower mid-latitudes and the formation of a cut-off low (see Chapter 9H.4) south of a high-pressure cell. The latter is referred to as a *blocking anticyclone* since it prevents the normal eastward motion of depressions in the zonal flow. Figure 10.9 illustrates the frequency of blocking for part of the northern hemisphere with five major blocking centres shown (H). A major area of blocking is Scandinavia, particularly in spring. Cyclones are

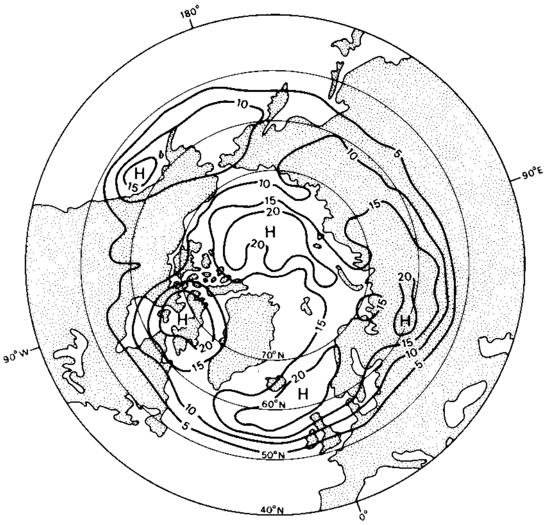


Figure 10.9 Frequency of occurrence of blocking conditions for the 500-mb level for all seasons. Values were calculated as five-day means for 381 × 381-km squares for the period 1946 to 1978.

Source: From Knox and Hay (1985), by permission of the Royal Meteorological Society.

diverted northeastward towards the Norwegian Sea or southeastward into southern Europe. This pattern, with easterly flow around the southern margins of the anticyclone, produces severe winter weather over much of northern Europe. In January to February 1947, for example, easterly flow across Britain as a result of blocking over Scandinavia led to extreme cold and frequent snowfall. Winds were almost continuously from the east between 22 January and 22 February and even daytime temperatures rose little above freezing point. Snow fell in some part of Britain every day from 22 January to 17 March 1947, and major snowstorms occurred as occluded Atlantic depressions moved slowly across the country. Other notably severe winter months – January 1881, February 1895, January 1940 and February 1986 – were the result of similar pressure anomalies with pressure well above average to the north of the British Isles and below average to the south, giving persistent easterly winds.

The effects of winter blocking situations over northwest Europe are shown in Figures 10.10 and 10.11. Precipitation amounts are above normal, mainly over Iceland and the western Mediterranean, as depressions are steered around the blocking high following the path of the upper jet streams. Over most of Europe, precipitation remains below average and this pattern is repeated with summer blocking. Winter temperatures are above average over the northeastern Atlantic and adjoining land areas, but below average over central and eastern Europe and the Mediterranean due to outbreaks of cP air (Figure 10.11). The negative temperature anomalies associated with cool northerly airflow in summer cover most of Europe; only northern Scandinavia has above-average values.

The exact location of the block is of the utmost importance. For instance, in the summer of 1954 a blocking anticyclone across eastern Europe and Scandinavia allowed depressions to stagnate over the British Isles, giving a dull, wet August, whereas in 1955 the blocking was located over the North Sea and a fine, warm summer resulted. Persistent blocking over northwestern Europe caused drought in Britain and the continent during 1975 to 1976. Another, less common location of blocking is Iceland. A notable example was the 1962 to 1963 winter, when persistent high pressure southeast of Iceland led to northerly and northeasterly airflow over Britain. Temperatures in central England were the lowest since 1740, with a mean of 0°C for December 1962 to February 1963. Central Europe was affected by easterly airstreams with mean January temperatures 6°C below average.

6 Topographic effects

In various parts of Europe, topography has a marked effect on the climate, not only of the uplands themselves but also of adjacent areas. Apart from the more obvious effects on temperatures, precipitation amounts and winds, the major mountain masses also affect the movement of frontal systems. Frictional drag over mountain barriers increases the slope of cold fronts and decreases the slope of warm fronts, so that the latter are slowed down and the former accelerated.

The Scandinavian mountains form one of the most significant climatic barriers in Europe as a result of their orientation with regard to westerly airflow. Maritime airmasses are forced to rise over the highland zone, giving annual precipitation totals of over 2500 mm on the mountains of western Norway, whereas descent in their lee produces a sharp decrease in the amounts. The upper Gudbrandsdalen and Osterdalen in the lee of the Jotunheim and Dovre Mountains receive an average of less than 500 mm, and similar low values are recorded in central Sweden around Östersund.

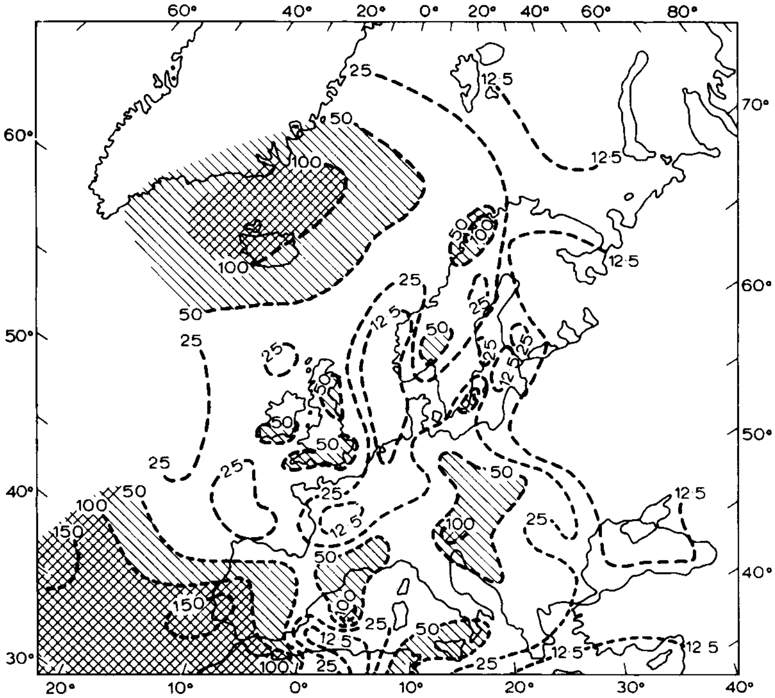

60°
40°
20°
0°
20°
40°
60°
80°
70°
60°
50°
40°
60°
50°
40°
30°
20°
10°
0°
10°
20°
30°
40°
25
50
100
12.5
150

Figure 10.10 The mean precipitation anomaly, as a percentage of the average, during anticyclonic blocking in winter over Scandinavia. Areas above normal are cross-hatched, areas recording precipitation between 50 and 100 per cent of normal have oblique hatching.

Source: After Rex (1950).

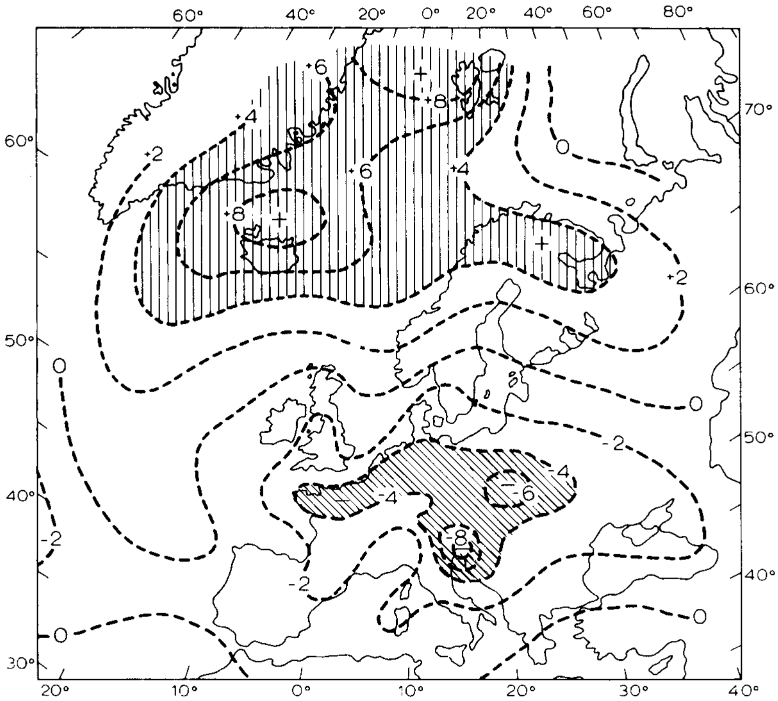

60°
40°
20°
0°
20°
40°
60°
80°
70°
60°
50°
40°
60°
50°
40°
30°
20°
10°
0°
10°
20°
30°
40°
+6
+4
+2
+8
+
0
-2
-4
-6
-8

Figure 10.11 The mean surface temperature anomaly (°C) during anticyclonic blocking in winter over Scandinavia. Areas more than 4°C above normal have vertical hatching, those more than 4°C below normal have oblique hatching.

Source: After Rex (1950).

Mountains can function equally in the opposite sense. For example, Arctic air from the Barents Sea may move southward in winter over the Gulf of Bothnia, usually when there is a depression over northern Russia, giving very low temperatures in Sweden and Finland. Western Norway is rarely affected, since the cold wave is contained to the east of the mountains. In consequence, there is a sharp climatic gradient across the Scandinavian highlands in the winter months.

The Alps illustrates other topographic effects. Together with the Pyrenees and the mountains of the Balkans, the Alps effectively separates the Mediterranean climatic region from that of Europe. The penetration of warm airmasses north of these barriers is comparatively rare and short-lived. However, with certain pressure patterns, air from the Mediterranean and northern Italy is forced to cross the Alps, losing its moisture through precipitation on the southern slopes. Dry adiabatic warming on the northern side of the mountains can readily raise temperatures by 5 to 6°C in the upper valleys of the Aar, Rhine and Inn. At Innsbruck, there are approximately fifty days per year with föhn winds, with a maximum in spring. Such occurrences can lead to rapid melting of the snow, creating a risk of avalanches. With northerly airflow across the Alps, föhn may occur in northern Italy, but its effects are less pronounced.

Features of upland climate in Britain illustrate some of the diverse effects of altitude. The mean annual rainfall on the west coasts near sea-level is about 1140 mm, but on the western mountains of Scotland, the Lake District and Wales averages exceed 3800 mm per year. The annual record is 6530 mm in 1954 at Sprinkling Tarn, Cumbria, and 1450 mm fell in a single month (October 1909) just east of the summit of Snowdon in north Wales. The annual number of rain-days (days with at least 0.25 mm of precipitation) increases from about 165 in southeastern England and the south coast to over 230 days in northwest Britain. There is little additional increase in the frequency of rainfall with height on the mountains of the northwest. Hence, the mean rainfall per rain-day rises sharply from 5 mm near sea-level in the west and northwest to over 13 mm in the western Highlands, the Lake District and Snowdonia. This demonstrates that 'orographic rainfall' here is due primarily to an intensification of the normal precipitation processes associated with frontal depressions and unstable airstreams (see Chapter 4F.3).

Even quite low hills such as the Chilterns and South Downs cause a rise in rainfall, receiving about 120 to 130 mm per year more than the surrounding lowlands. In south Wales, mean annual precipitation increases from 1200 mm at the coast to 2500 mm on the 500-m high Glamorgan Hills, 20 km inland. Studies using radar and a dense network of rain gauges indicate that orographic intensification is pronounced during strong low-level southwesterly airflow in frontal situations. Most of the enhancement of precipitation rate occurs in the lowest 1500 m. Figure 10.12 shows the mean enhancement according to wind direction over England and Wales, averaged for several days with fairly constant wind velocities of about 20 m s^{-1} and nearly saturated low-level flow, attributable to a single frontal system on each day. Differences are apparent in Wales and southern England between winds from the SSW and from the WSW, whereas for SSE airflow the mountains of north Wales and the Pennines have little effect. There are also areas of negative enhancement on the lee side of mountains. The sheltering effects of the uplands produce low annual totals on the lee side (with respect to the prevailing winds). Thus, the lower Dee valley in the lee of the mountains of north Wales receives less than 750 mm, compared with over 2500 mm in Snowdonia.

The complexity of the various factors affecting rainfall in Britain is shown by the fact that a close correlation exists between annual totals in northwest Scotland, the Lake District and western Norway, which are directly affected by Atlantic depressions. At the same time, there is an inverse relationship between annual amounts in the western Highlands and lowland Aberdeenshire, less than 240 km to the east. Annual precipitation in the latter area is more closely correlated with that in lowland eastern England. Essentially, the British Isles comprise two major climatic units for rainfall – first, an 'Atlantic' one with a winter season maximum, and, second, those central and eastern districts with 'continental' affinities in the form of a weak summer maximum in most years. Other areas (eastern Ireland, eastern Scotland, northeast England and most of the English Midlands and the Welsh border counties) have a wet second half of the year.

The occurrence of snow is another measure of altitude effects. Near sea-level, there are on average about five days per year with snow falling in southwest England, fifteen days in the southeast and thirty-five days in northern Scotland. Between 60 and 300 m, the frequency increases by about one day per 15 m of elevation and even more rapidly on higher ground.

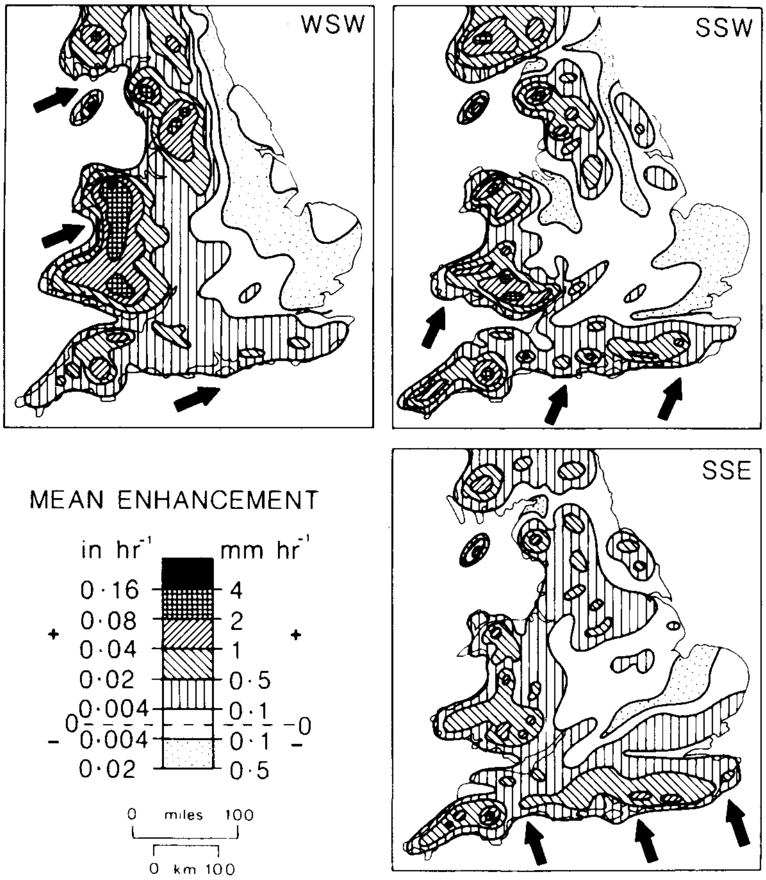


Figure 10.12 Mean orographic enhancement of precipitation over England and Wales, averaged for several days of fairly constant wind direction of about 20 m s^{-1} and nearly saturated low-level airflow.

Source: After Browning and Hill (1981), reprinted from *Weather*, by permission of the Royal Meteorological Society. Crown copyright ©.

Approximate figures for northern Britain are sixty days at 600 m and ninety days at 900 m. The number of mornings with snow lying on the ground (more than half the ground covered) is closely related to mean temperature and hence altitude. Average figures range from about five days per year or less in much of southern England and Ireland, to between thirty and fifty days on the Pennines and over 100 days on the Grampian Mountains. In the last area (on the Cairngorms) and on Ben Nevis there are several semi-permanent snow beds at about 1160 m. It is estimated that the theoretical climatic snowline – above which there would be *net* snow accumulation – is at 1620 m over Scotland.

Marked geographical variations in lapse rate also exist within the British Isles. One measure of these variations is the length of the 'growing season'. We can determine an index of growth opportunity by counting the number of days on which the mean daily temperature exceeds a threshold value of 6°C. Along southwestern coasts of England the 'growing season' calculated on this basis is nearly 365 days per year. Here it decreases by about nine days per 30 m of elevation, but in northern England and Scotland the decrease is only about five days per 30 m from between 250 to 270 days near sea-level. In continental climates, the altitudinal decrease may be even more gradual; in central Europe and New England, for example, it is about two days per 30 m.

B NORTH AMERICA

The North American continent spans nearly 60° of latitude and, not surprisingly, exhibits a wide range of climatic conditions. Unlike Europe, the West Coast is backed by the Pacific Coast Ranges rising to over 2750 m, which lie across the path of the mid-latitude westerlies and prevent the extension of maritime influences inland. In the interior of the continent, there are no significant obstructions to air movement and the absence of any east–west barrier allows airmasses from the Arctic or the Gulf of Mexico to sweep across the interior lowlands, causing wide extremes of weather and climate. Maritime influences in eastern North America are greatly limited by the fact that the prevailing winds are westerly, so that the temperature regime is continental. Nevertheless, the Gulf of Mexico is a major source of moisture supply for precipitation over the eastern half of the United States and, as a result, the precipitation regimes differ from those in East Asia.

We look first at the characteristics of the atmospheric circulation over the continent.

1 Pressure systems

The mean pressure pattern for the middle troposphere displays a prominent trough over eastern North America in both summer and winter (see Figures 7.3A and 7.4A). In part, this is a lee trough caused by the effect of the western mountain ranges on the upper westerlies, but at least in winter the strong baroclinic zone along the East Coast of the continent is a major contributory factor. As a result of this mean wave pattern, cyclones tend to move southeastward over the Midwest, carrying continental polar air southward, while the cyclones travel northeastward along the Atlantic coast. The planetary wave structure over the eastern North Pacific and North America is referred to as the Pacific–North America (PNA) pattern. It refers to the relative amplitude of the troughs over the central North Pacific and eastern North America, on the one hand, and the ridge over western North America on the other. In the positive (negative) mode of the PNA, there is a well-developed storm track from East Asia into the central Pacific and then into the Gulf of Alaska (cylones over East Asia move northeastward to the Bering Sea, with another area of lows off the west coast of Canada). The positive (negative) phases of PNA tend to be associated with El Niño (La Niña) events in the equatorial Pacific.

The PNA mode has important consequences for the weather in different parts of the continent. In fact, this relationship provides the basis for the monthly forecasts of the US National Weather Service. For example, if the eastern trough is more pronounced than usual, temperatures are below average in the central, southern and eastern United States, whereas if the trough is weak the westerly flow is stronger with correspondingly less opportunity for cold outbreaks of polar air. Sometimes, the trough is displaced to the western half of the continent, causing a reversal of the usual weather pattern, since upper northwesterly airflow can bring cold, dry weather to the west while in the east there are very mild conditions associated with upper southwesterly flow. Precipitation amounts also depend on the depression tracks. If the upper trough is far to the west, depressions form ahead of it (see Chapter 9G) over the south central United States and move northeastward towards the lower St Lawrence, giving more precipitation than usual in these areas and less along the Atlantic coast.

The major features of the surface pressure map in January (see Figure 7.9) are the extension of the subtropical high over the southwestern United States (called the Great Basin high) and the separate polar anticyclone of the Mackenzie district of Canada. Mean pressure is low off both the east and west coasts of higher mid-latitudes, where oceanic heat sources indirectly give rise to the (mean) Icelandic and Aleutian lows. It is interesting to note that, on average, in December, of any region in the northern hemisphere for any month of the year, the Great Basin region has the most frequent occurrence of highs, whereas the Gulf of Alaska has the maximum frequency of lows. The Pacific coast as a whole has its most frequent cyclonic activity in winter, as does the Great Lakes area, whereas over the Great Plains the maximum is in spring and early summer. Remarkably, the Great Basin in June has the most frequent cyclogenesis of any part of the northern hemisphere in any month of the year. Heating over this area in summer helps to maintain a shallow, quasi-permanent low-pressure cell, in marked contrast with the almost continuous subtropical high-pressure belt in the middle troposphere (see Figure 7.4). Continental heating also indirectly assists in the splitting of the Icelandic low to create a secondary centre over northeastern Canada. The west coast summer circulation is dominated by the Pacific anticyclone, while the southeastern United States is affected by the Atlantic subtropical anticyclone cell (see Figure 7.9B).

Broadly, there are three prominent cyclone tracks across the continent in winter (see Figure 9.21). One group moves from the west along a more or less zonal path about 45 to 50°N, whereas a second loops southwards over the central United States and then turns northeastward towards New England and the Gulf of St Lawrence. Some of these depressions originate over the Pacific, cross the western ranges as an upper trough and redevelop in the lee of the mountains. Alberta is a noted area for this process and also for primary cyclogenesis,

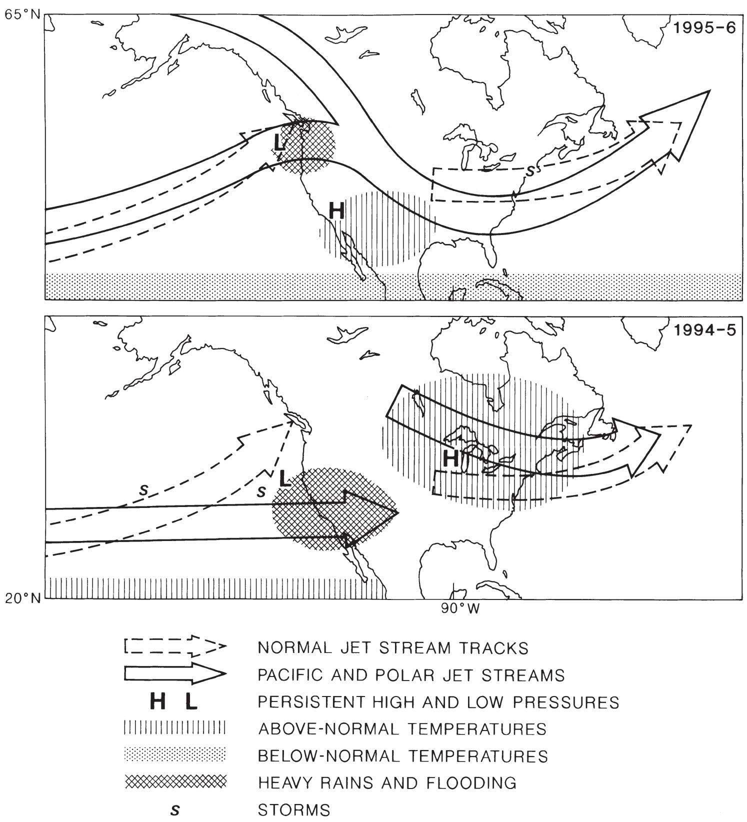

65°N
1995-6
L
H
s
1994-5
s
s
L
H
20°N
90°W
NORMAL JET STREAM TRACKS
PACIFIC AND POLAR JET STREAMS
H L PERSISTENT HIGH AND LOW PRESSURES
ABOVE-NORMAL TEMPERATURES
BELOW-NORMAL TEMPERATURES
HEAVY RAINS AND FLOODING
s STORMS

Figure 10.13 Jet streams, pressure distribution and climate for North America during the winters of 1995 to 1996 and 1994 to 1995.

Source: US Department of Commerce, Climate Prediction Center. Courtesy of US Department of Commerce.

since the Arctic frontal zone is over northwest Canada in winter. This frontal zone involves much-modified mA air from the Gulf of Alaska and cold dry cA (or cP) air. Cyclones of the third group form along the main polar frontal zone, which in winter is off the east coast of the United States, and move northeastward towards Newfoundland. Sometimes, this frontal zone is present over the continent at about 35°N with mT air from the Gulf and cP air from the north or modified mP air from the Pacific. Polar front depressions forming over Colorado move northeastward towards the Great Lakes; others developing over Texas follow a roughly parallel path, further to the south and east, towards New England. Anomalies in winter climate over North America are influenced strongly by the position of the jet streams and the movement of associated storm systems. Figure 10.13 illustrates their role in locating areas of heavy rain, flooding and positive/negative temperature departures in the winters of 1994 to 1995 and 1995 to 1996.

Between the Arctic and polar fronts, Canadian meteorologists distinguish a third frontal zone. This maritime (Arctic) frontal zone is present when mA and mP airmasses interact along their common boundary. The three-front (i.e. four airmass) model allows a detailed analysis to be made of the baroclinic structure of depressions over the North American continent using synoptic weather maps and cross-sections of the atmosphere. Figure 10.14 illustrates the three frontal zones and associated depressions on 29 May 1963. Along 95°W, from 60° to 40°N, the dew-point temperatures reported in the four airmasses were –8°C, 1°C, 4°C and 13°C, respectively.

In summer, east coast depressions are less frequent and the tracks across the continent are displaced northward, with the main ones moving over Hudson Bay and Labrador–Ungava, or along the line of the St Lawrence. These are associated mainly with a poorly defined maritime frontal zone. The Arctic front is usually located along the north coast of Alaska, where there is a strong temperature gradient between the bare land and the cold Arctic Ocean and pack-ice. East from here, the front is very variable in location from day to day and year to year. It occurs most often in the vicinity

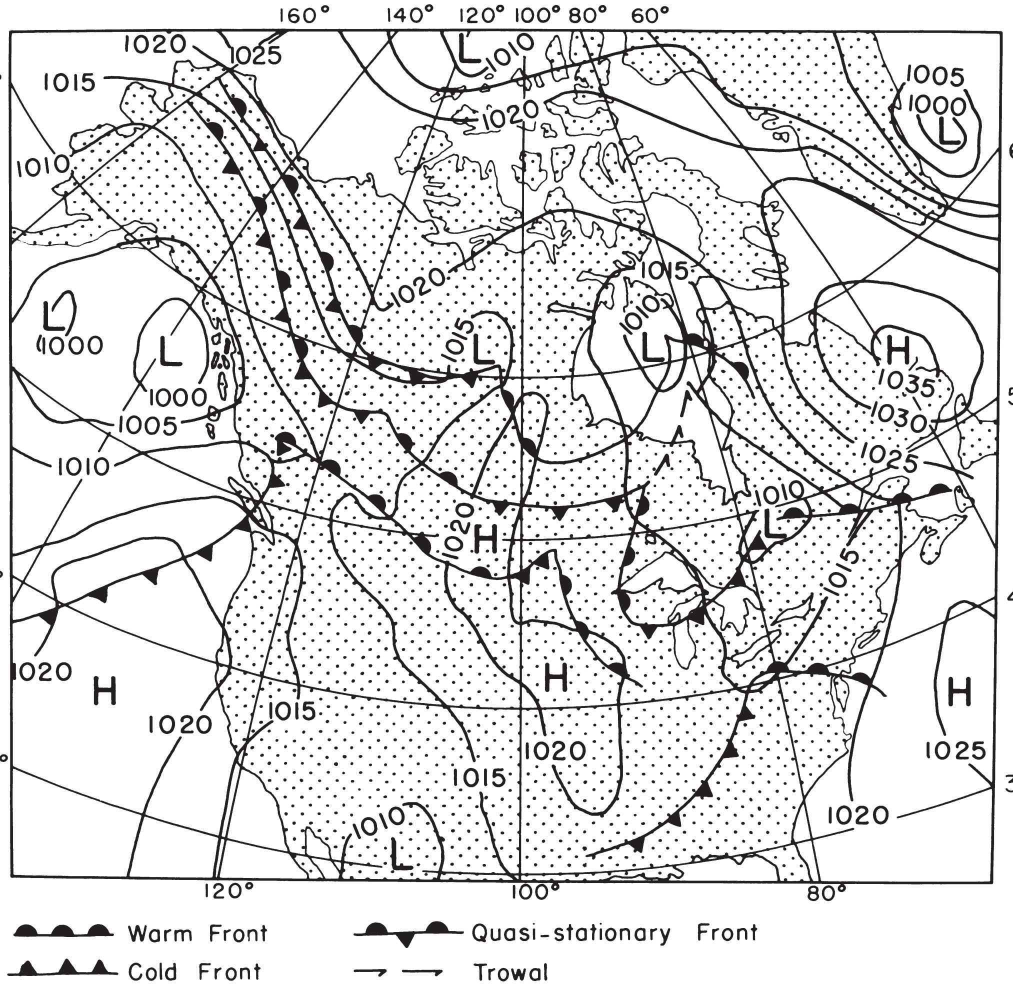


Figure 10.14 A synoptic example of depressions associated with three frontal zones on 29 May 1963 over North America.

Source: Based on charts of the Edmonton Analysis Office and the Daily Weather Report.

of northern Keewatin and Hudson Strait. One study of airmass temperatures and airstream confluence regions suggests that an Arctic frontal zone occurs further south over Keewatin in July and that its mean position (Figure 10.15) is related closely to the boreal forest–tundra boundary. This relationship reflects the importance of Arctic airmass dominance for summer temperatures and consequently for tree growth, yet energy budget differences due to land cover type appear insufficient to determine the frontal location.

Several circulation singularities have been recognized in North America, as in Europe (see A.4, this chapter). Three that have received attention in view of their prominence are (1) the advent of spring in late March; (2) the midsummer high-pressure jump at the end of June; and (3) the Indian summer in late September (and late October).

The arrival of spring is marked by different climatic responses in different parts of the continent. For example, there is a sharp decrease in March to April precipitation in California, due to the extension of the Pacific high. In the Midwest, precipitation intensity increases as a result of more frequent cyclogenesis in Alberta and Colorado, and northward extension of maritime tropical air from the Gulf of Mexico. These changes are part of a hemispheric readjustment of the circulation; in early April, the Aleutian low-pressure cell, which from September to March is located about

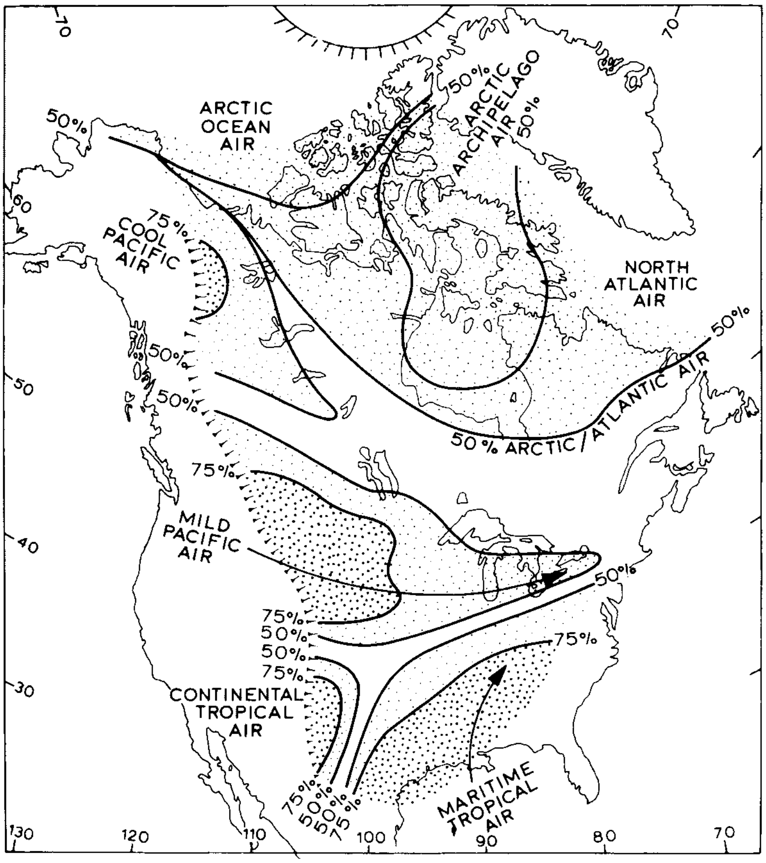


Figure 10.15 Regions in North America east of the Rocky Mountains dominated by the various airmass types in July for more than 50 per cent and 75 per cent of the time. The 50 per cent frequency lines correspond to mean frontal positions.

Source: After Bryson (1966).

55°N, 165°W, splits into two, with one centre in the Gulf of Alaska and the other over northern Manchuria.

In late June, there is a rapid northward displacement of the Bermuda and North Pacific subtropical high-pressure cells. In North America, this also pushes the depression tracks northward with the result that precipitation decreases from June to July over the northern Great Plains, part of Idaho and eastern Oregon. Conversely, the southwesterly anticyclonic flow that affects Arizona in June is replaced by air from the Gulf of California, and this causes the onset of the summer rains (see B.3, this chapter). Bryson and Lahey suggest that these circulation changes at the end of June may be connected with the disappearance of snow cover from the Arctic tundra. This leads to a sudden decrease of surface albedo from about 75 to 15 per cent, with consequent changes in the heat budget components and hence in the atmospheric circulation.

Frontal wave activity makes the first half of September a rainy period in the northern Midwest states of Iowa, Minnesota and Wisconsin, but after about the 20 September, anticyclonic conditions return with warm airflow from the dry southwest, giving fine weather – the so-called Indian summer. Significantly, the hemispheric zonal index value rises in late September. This anticyclonic weather type has a second phase in the latter half of October, but at this time there are polar outbreaks. The weather is generally cold and dry, although if precipitation does occur there is a high probability of snowfall.

2 The temperate west coast and Cordillera

The oceanic circulation of the North Pacific closely resembles that of the North Atlantic. The drift from the Kuroshio current off Japan is propelled by the westerlies towards the west coast of North America and it acts as a warm current between 40° and 60°N. Sea-surface temperatures are several degrees lower than in comparable latitudes off western Europe, however, due to the smaller volume of warm water involved. In addition, in contrast to the Norwegian Sea, the shape of the Alaskan coastline prevents the extension of the drift to high latitudes (see Figure 7.29).

The Pacific coast ranges greatly restrict the inland extent of oceanic influences, and hence there is no extensive maritime temperate climate as in western Europe. The major climatic features duplicate those of the coastal mountains of Norway and those of New Zealand and southern Chile in the belt of southern westerlies. Topographic factors make the weather and climate of such areas very variable over short distances, both vertically and horizontally. A few salient characteristics are selected for consideration here.

There is a regular pattern of rainy windward and drier lee slopes across the successive northwest to southeast ranges, with a more general decrease towards the interior. The Coast Range in British Columbia has mean annual totals of precipitation exceeding 2500 mm, with 5000 mm in the wettest places, compared with 1250 mm or less on the summits of the Rockies. Yet even on the leeward side of Vancouver Island, the average figure at Victoria is only 700 mm. Analogous to the 'westerlies–oceanic' regime of northwest Europe, there is a winter precipitation maximum along the littoral (Estevan Point in Figure 10.16), which also extends beyond the Cascades (in Washington) and the Coast Range (in British Columbia), but summers are drier due to the strong North Pacific anticyclone. The regime in the interior of British Columbia is transitional between that of the coastal region and the distinct summer maximum of central North America (Calgary), although at Kamloops in the Thompson valley (annual average 250 mm) there is a slight summer maximum associated with thunderstorm-type rainfall. In general, the sheltered interior valleys receive less than 500 mm per year. In the driest years certain localities have recorded only 150 mm. Above 1000 m, much of the precipitation falls

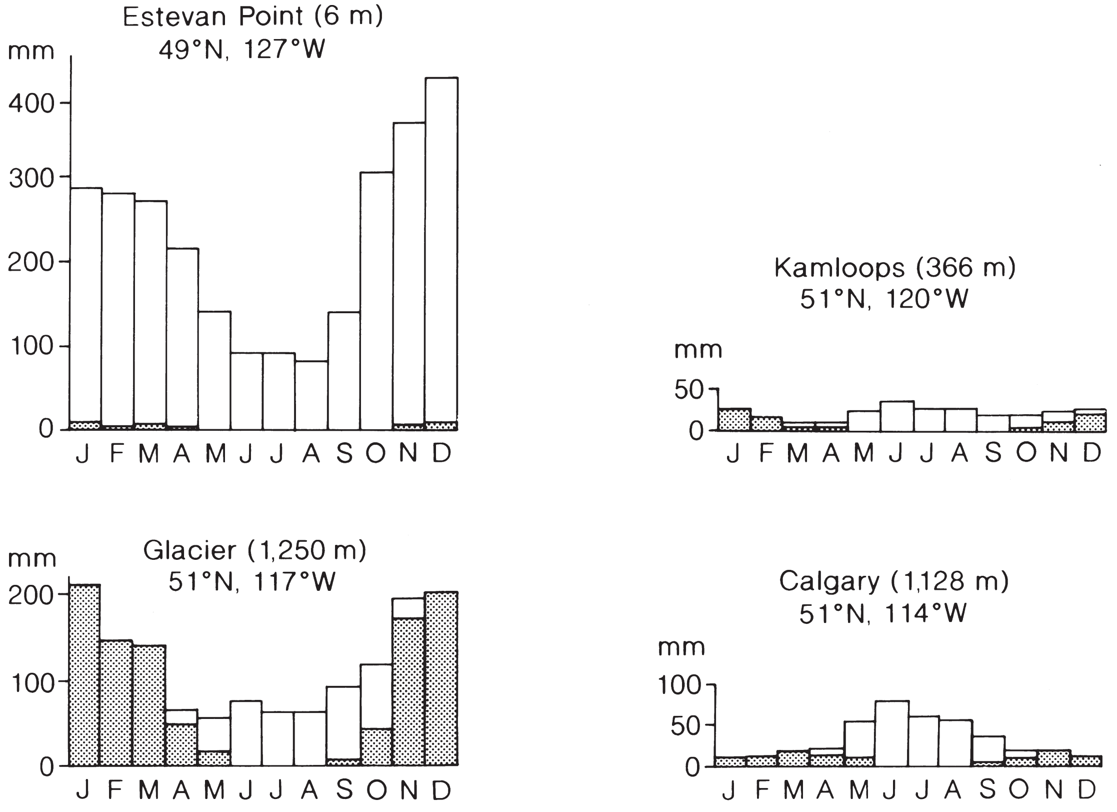


Figure 10.16 Precipitation graphs for stations in western Canada. The shaded portions represent snowfall, expressed as water equivalent.

as snow (see Figure 10.16) and some of the greatest snow depths in the world are reported from British Columbia, Washington and Oregon. A US national record seasonal total of 28.96m was observed at the Mt Baker ski area (1280 m) in 1998 to 1999. Generally, 10 to 15 m of snow falls annually on the Cascade Range at heights of about 1500 m, and even as far inland as the Selkirk Mountains snowfall totals are considerable. The mean snowfall is 9.9 m at Glacier, British Columbia (elevation 1250 m), and this accounts for almost 70 per cent of the annual precipitation (see Figure 10.16). Near sea-level on the outer coast, in contrast, very little precipitation falls as snow (for example, Estevan Point). It is estimated that the climatic snowline rises from about 1600 m on the west side of Vancouver Island to 2900 m in the eastern Coast Range. Inland, its elevation increases from 2300 m on the west slopes of the Columbia Mountains to 3100 m on the east side of the Rockies. This trend reflects the precipitation pattern referred to above.

Large diurnal variations affect the Cordilleran valleys. Strong diurnal rhythms of temperature (especially in summer) and wind direction are a feature of mountain climates and their effect is superimposed upon the general climatic characteristics of the area. Cold air drainage can produce remarkably low minima in the mountain valleys and basins. At Princeton, British Columbia (elevation 695 m), where the mean daily minimum in January is –14°C, there is on record an absolute low of –45°C, for example. This leads in some cases to reversal of the normal lapse rate. Golden in the Rocky Mountain Trench has a January mean of –12°C, whereas 460 m higher at Glacier (1250 m) it is –10°C.

3 Interior and eastern North America

Central North America has the typical climate of a continental interior in mid-latitudes, with hot summers and cold winters (Figure 10.17), yet the weather in winter is subject to marked variability. This is determined by the steep temperature gradient between the Gulf of Mexico and the snow-covered northern plains; also by shifts of the upper wave patterns and jet stream. Cyclonic activity in winter is much more pronounced over central and eastern North America than in Asia, which is dominated by the Siberian anticyclone (see Figure 7.9A). Consequently there is no climatic type with a winter minimum of precipitation in eastern North America.

The general temperature conditions in winter and summer are illustrated in Figure 10.18, showing the frequency with which hourly temperature readings exceed or fall below certain limits. The two chief features of all four maps are (1) the dominance of the meridional temperature gradient, away from coasts, and (2) the continentality of the interior and east compared with the 'maritime' nature of the west coast. On the July maps, additional influences are evident and these are referred to below.

a Continental and oceanic influences

The large annual temperature range in the interior of the continent shown in Figure 3.24 demonstrates the pattern of continentality of North America. The figure illustrates the key role of the distance from the ocean in the direction of the prevailing (westerly) winds. The topographic barriers of the western Cordilleras limit the inland penetration of maritime airstreams. On a more local scale, inland water bodies such as Hudson Bay and the Great Lakes have a small moderating influence – cooling in summer and warming in the early winter before they freeze over.

The Labrador coast is fringed by the waters of a cold current, analogous to the Oyashio off East Asia, but in both cases the prevailing westerlies greatly limit their climatic significance. The Labrador current maintains drift ice off Labrador and Newfoundland until June and gives very low summer temperatures along the Labrador coast (see Figure 10.17C). The lower incidence of freezing temperatures in this area in January is related to the movement of some depressions into the Davis Strait, carrying Atlantic air northward. A major role of the Labrador current is in the formation of fog. Advection fog is very frequent between May and August off Newfoundland, where the Gulf Stream and Labrador current meet. Warm, moist southerly airstreams are cooled rapidly over the cold waters of the Labrador current and with steady, light winds such fogs may persist for several days, creating hazardous conditions for shipping. Southward-facing coasts are particularly affected and at Cape Race (Newfoundland), for example, there are on average 158 days per year with fog (visibility less than 1 km) at some time of the day. The summer concentration is shown by the figures for Cape Race: May – 18 (days), June – 18, July – 24, August – 21 and September – 18.

Oceanic influence along the Atlantic coasts of the United States is very limited, and although there is some

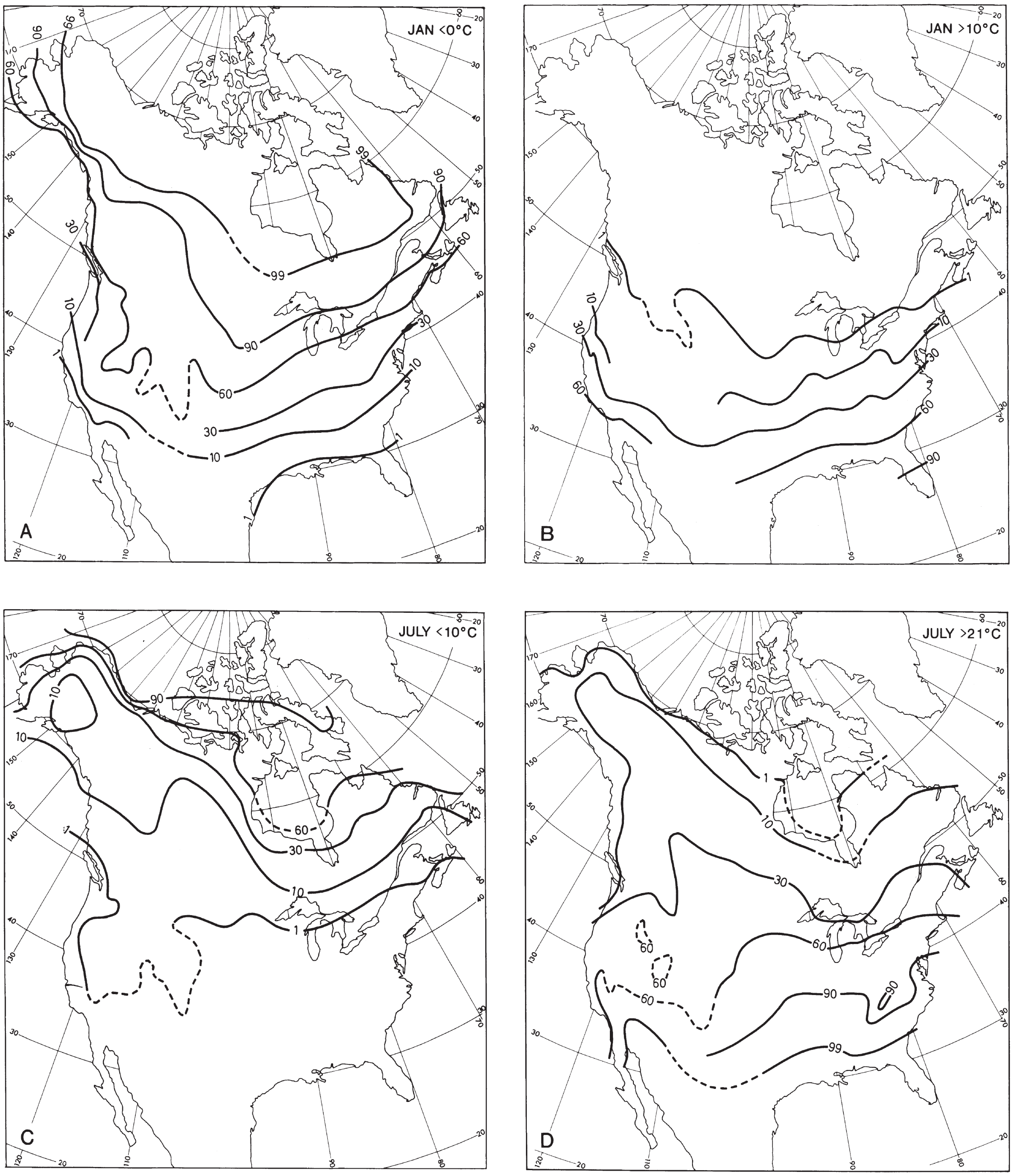

JAN <0°C
A
99
90
60
30
10
1
JAN >10°C
B
1
10
30
60
90
JULY <10°C
C
90
60
30
10
1
JULY >21°C
D
1
10
30
60
90
99

Figure 10.17 The percentage frequency of hourly temperatures above or below certain limits for North America. (A) January temperatures <0°C. (B) January temperatures >10°C. (C) July temperatures <10°C. (D) July temperatures >21°C.

Source: After Rayner (1961).

moderating effect of minimum temperatures at coastal stations this is scarcely evident on generalized maps such as shown in Figure 10.17. More significant climatic effects are in fact found in the neighbourhood of Hudson Bay and the Great Lakes. Hudson Bay remains very cool in summer, with water temperatures of about 7 to 9°C, and this depresses temperatures along its shore, especially in the east (see Figure 10.17C and D). Mean July temperatures are 12°C at Churchill (59°N) and 8°C at Inukjuak (58°N), on the west and east shores respectively. This compares, for instance, with 13°C at Aklavik (68°N) on the Mackenzie delta. The influence of Hudson Bay is even more striking in early winter, when the land is snow-covered. Westerly airstreams crossing the open water are warmed by 11°C on average in November, and moisture added to the air leads to considerable snowfall in western Ungava (see the graph for Inukjuak, Figure 10.20). By early January, Hudson Bay is frozen over almost entirely and no effects are evident. The Great Lakes influence their surroundings in much the same way. Heavy winter snowfalls are a notable feature of the southern and eastern shores of the Great Lakes. In addition to contributing moisture to northwesterly streams of cold cA and cP air, the heat source of the open water in early winter produces a low-pressure trough, which increases the snowfall as a result of convergence. Yet a further factor is frictional convergence and orographic uplift at the shoreline. Mean annual snowfall exceeds 2.5 m along much of the eastern shore of Lake Huron and Georgian Bay, the southeastern shore of Lake Ontario, the northeastern shore of Lake Superior and its southern shore east of about 90.5°W. Extremes include 1.14 m in one day at Watertown, New York, and 8.94 m during the winter of 1946 to 1947 at nearby Bennetts Bridge, both of which are close to the eastern end of Lake Ontario.

Transport in cities in these snow belts is disrupted quite frequently during winter snowstorms. The Great Lakes also provide an important tempering influence during winter months by raising average daily minimum temperatures at lakeshore stations by some 2 to 4°C above those at inland locations. In mid-December, the upper 60 m of Lake Erie has a uniform temperature of 5°C.

b Warm and cold spells

Two types of synoptic condition are of particular significance for temperatures in the interior of North America. One is the cold wave caused by a northerly outbreak of cP air, which in winter regularly penetrates deep into the central and eastern United States and occasionally affects even Florida and the Gulf Coast, injuring frost-sensitive crops. Cold waves are arbitrarily defined as a temperature drop of at least 11°C in twenty-four hours over most of the United States, and at least 9°C in California, Florida and the Gulf Coast, to below a specified minimum depending on location and season. The winter criterion decreases from 0°C in California, Florida and the Gulf Coast to 18°C over the northern Great Plains and the northeastern states. Cold spells commonly occur with the buildup of a north–south anticyclone in the rear of a cold front. Polar air gives clear, dry weather with strong, cold winds, although if they follow snowfall, fine, powdery snow may be whipped up by the wind, creating blizzard conditions over the northern plains. These occur with winds >10 ms^{-1} with falling or blowing snow reducing visibility below 400 m. On average, a blizzard event affects an area of 150,000 km and over two million people.

Another type of temperature fluctuation is associated with the *chinook* winds in the lee of the Rockies (see Chapter 6C.3). The chinook is particularly warm and dry as air descends the eastern slopes and warms at the dry adiabatic lapse rate. The onset of the chinook produces temperatures well above the seasonal average so that snow is often thawed rapidly; in fact the Indian word ‘chinook’ means snow-eater. Temperature rises of up to 22°C have been observed in five minutes. The occurrence of such warm events is reflected in the high extreme maxima in winter months at Medicine Hat (Figure 10.18). In Canada, the chinook effect may be observed a considerable distance from the Rockies into southwestern Saskatchewan, but in Colorado its influence is rarely felt more than about 50 km from the foothills. In southeastern Alberta, the belt of strong westerly chinook winds and elevated temperatures extends 150 to 200 km east of the Rocky Mountains. Temperature anomalies average 5 to 9°C above winter normals, and a triangular sector southeast of Calgary, towards Medicine Hat, experiences maximum anomalies of up to 15 to 25°C, relative to mean daily maximum temperature values. Chinook events with westerly winds >35m s^{-1} occur on forty-five to fifty days between November and February in this area as a result of the relatively low and narrow ridge line of the Rocky Mountains between 49 and 50°N, compared with the mountains around Banff and further north.

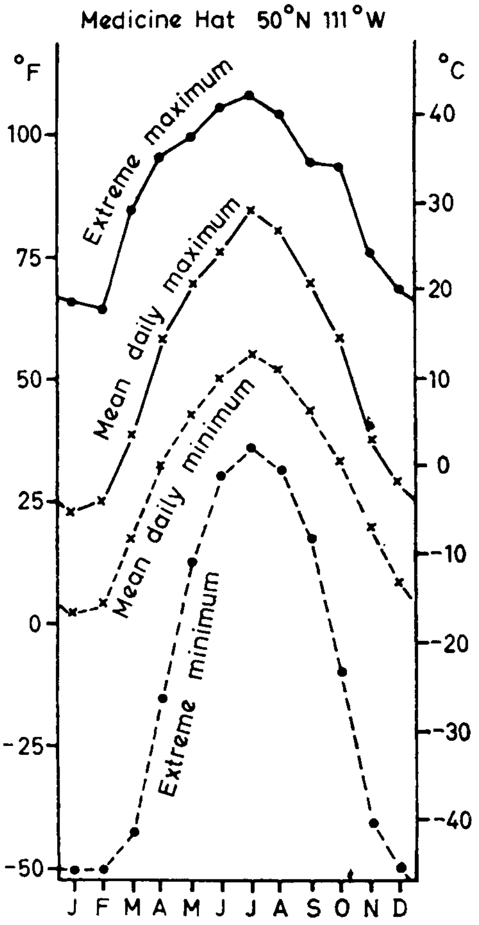


Figure 10.18 Mean and extreme temperatures at Medicine Hat, Alberta.

Chinook conditions commonly develop in a Pacific airstream that is replacing a winter high-pressure cell over the western high plains. Sometimes the descending chinook does not dislodge the cold, stagnant cP air of the anticyclone and a marked inversion is formed. On other occasions the boundary between the two airmasses may reach ground level locally. Thus, for example, the western suburbs of Calgary may record temperatures above 0°C while those to the east of the city remain below –15°C.

The weather impact of very cold and very hot spells in the United States is costly, especially in terms of loss of life. In the 1990s, there were 292 and 282 deaths per year, respectively, attributed to extreme cold/hot conditions, more than for any other severe weather.

c *Precipitation and the moisture balance*

Longitudinal influences are apparent in the distribution of annual precipitation, although this is in large measure a reflection of the topography. The 600-mm annual isohyet in the United States approximately follows the 100°W meridian (Figure 10.19), and westward to the Rockies is an extensive dry belt in the rain shadow of the western mountain ranges. In the southeast, totals exceed 1250 mm, and 1000 mm or more is received along the Atlantic coast as far north as New Brunswick and Newfoundland.

The major sources of moisture for precipitation over North America are the Pacific Ocean and the Gulf of Mexico. The former need not concern us here, since comparatively little of the precipitation falling over the interior appears to be derived from that source. The Gulf source is extremely important in providing moisture for precipitation over central and eastern North America, but the predominance of southwesterly airflow means that little precipitation falls over the western Great Plains (see Figure 10.19). Over the southern United States, there is considerable evapotranspiration and this helps to maintain moderate annual totals northward and eastward from the Gulf by providing additional water vapour for the atmosphere. Along the east coast, the Atlantic Ocean is an additional significant source of moisture for winter precipitation.

There are at least eight major types of seasonal precipitation regime in North America (Figure 10.20); the winter maximum of the west coast and the transition type of the intermontane region in mid-latitudes have already been mentioned; the subtropical types are discussed in the next section. Four primarily mid-latitude regimes are distinguished east of the Rocky Mountains:

1 A warm season maximum is found over much of the continental interior (e.g. Rapid City). In an extensive belt from New Mexico to the prairie provinces more than 40 per cent of the annual precipitation falls in summer. In New Mexico, the rain occurs mainly with late summer thunderstorms, but May to June is the wettest time over the central and northern Great Plains due to more frequent cyclonic activity. Winters are quite dry over the plains, but the mechanism of the occasional heavy snowfalls is of interest. They occur over the northwestern plains during easterly upslope flow, usually in a ridge of high pressure. Further north in Canada, the maximum is commonly

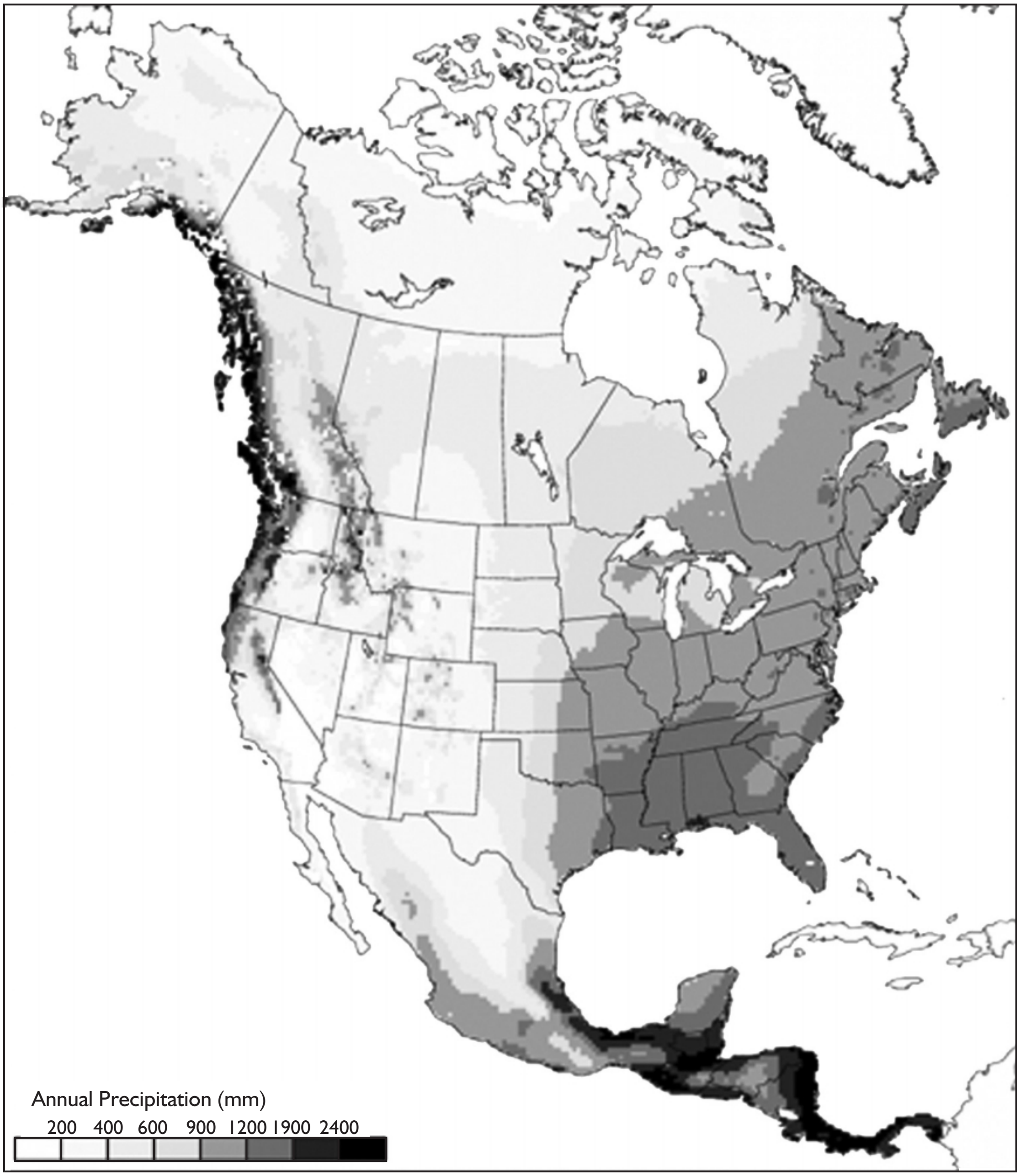

Annual Precipitation (mm)
200 400 600 900 1200 1900 2400

Figure 10.19 Mean annual precipitation (mm) over North America determined on a 25-km grid as a function of location and elevation. Based on data from 8000 weather stations for 1951 to 1980. Values in the Arctic underestimate the true totals by 30 to 50 per cent due to problems in recording snowfall accurately with precipitation gauges.

Source: From Thompson *et al*. (1999). Courtesy of the US Geological Survey.

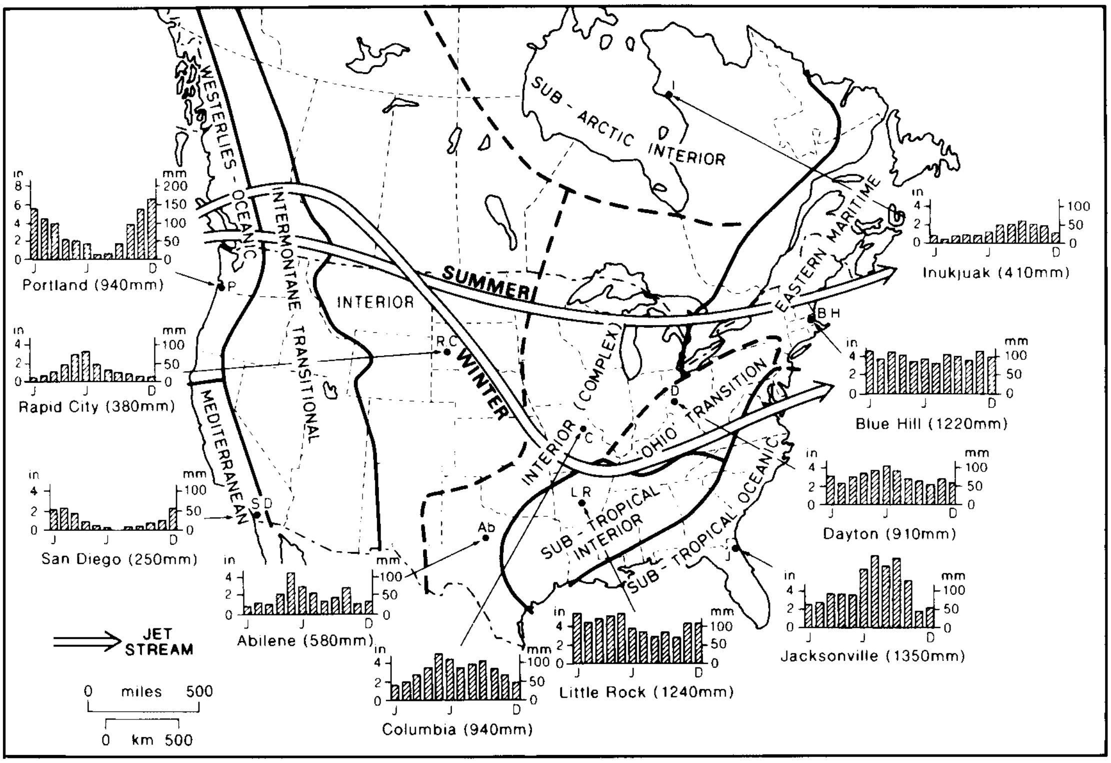

WESTERLIES - OCEANIC
INTERMONTANE TRANSITIONAL
INTERIOR
SUMMER
WINTER
SUB - ARCTIC INTERIOR
EASTERN MARITIME
INTERIOR (COMPLEX)
OHIO TRANSITION
SUB - TROPICAL INTERIOR
SUB - TROPICAL OCEANIC
MEDITERRANEAN
P
R C
S D
Ab
C
D
L R
B H
I
J
Portland (940mm)
Rapid City (380mm)
San Diego (250mm)
Abilene (580mm)
Columbia (940mm)
Little Rock (1240mm)
Jacksonville (1350mm)
Dayton (910mm)
Blue Hill (1220mm)
Inukjuak (410mm)
in
mm
J J D
JET STREAM
0 miles 500
0 km 500

Figure 10.20 North American rainfall regime regions and histograms showing mean monthly precipitations for each region (January, June and December are indicated). Note that the jet stream is anchored by the Rockies in more or less the same position at all seasons.

Source: Mostly after Trewartha (1981); additions by Henderson-Sellers and Robinson (1986). Copyright © 1961. Reproduced by permission of The Wisconsin Press.

in late summer or autumn, when depression tracks are in higher mid-latitudes. There is a local maximum in autumn on the eastern shores of Hudson Bay (e.g. Inukjuak) due to the effect of open water.

2 Eastward and southward of the first zone there is a double maximum in May and September. In the upper Mississippi region (e.g. Columbia), there is a secondary minimum, paradoxically in July to August when the air is especially warm and moist, and a similar profile occurs in northern Texas (e.g. Abilene). An upper-level ridge of high pressure over the Mississippi valley seems to be responsible for reduced thunderstorm rainfall in midsummer, and a tongue of subsiding dry air extends southward from this ridge towards Texas. However, during the period June to August 1993 massive flooding occurred in the Midwestern parts of the Mississippi and Missouri rivers as the result of up to twice the January to July average precipitation being received, with many point rainfall totals exceeding amounts appropriate for recurrence intervals over 100 years (Figure 10.21). The three summer months saw excesses of 500 mm above the average rainfall with totals of 90 cm or more. Strong, moist southwesterly airflow recurred throughout the summer with a quasi-stationary cold front oriented from southwest to northeast across the region. The flooding resulted in forty-eight deaths, destroyed 50,000 homes and caused damage losses of $10 billion. In September, renewed cyclonic activity associated with the seasonal southward shift of the polar front, at a time when mT air from the Gulf is still warm and moist, typically causes a resumption of rainfall. Later in the year drier westerly airstreams affect the continental interior as the general airflow becomes more zonal.

The diurnal occurrence of precipitation in the central United States is rather unusual for a continental interior. Sixty per cent or more of the summer

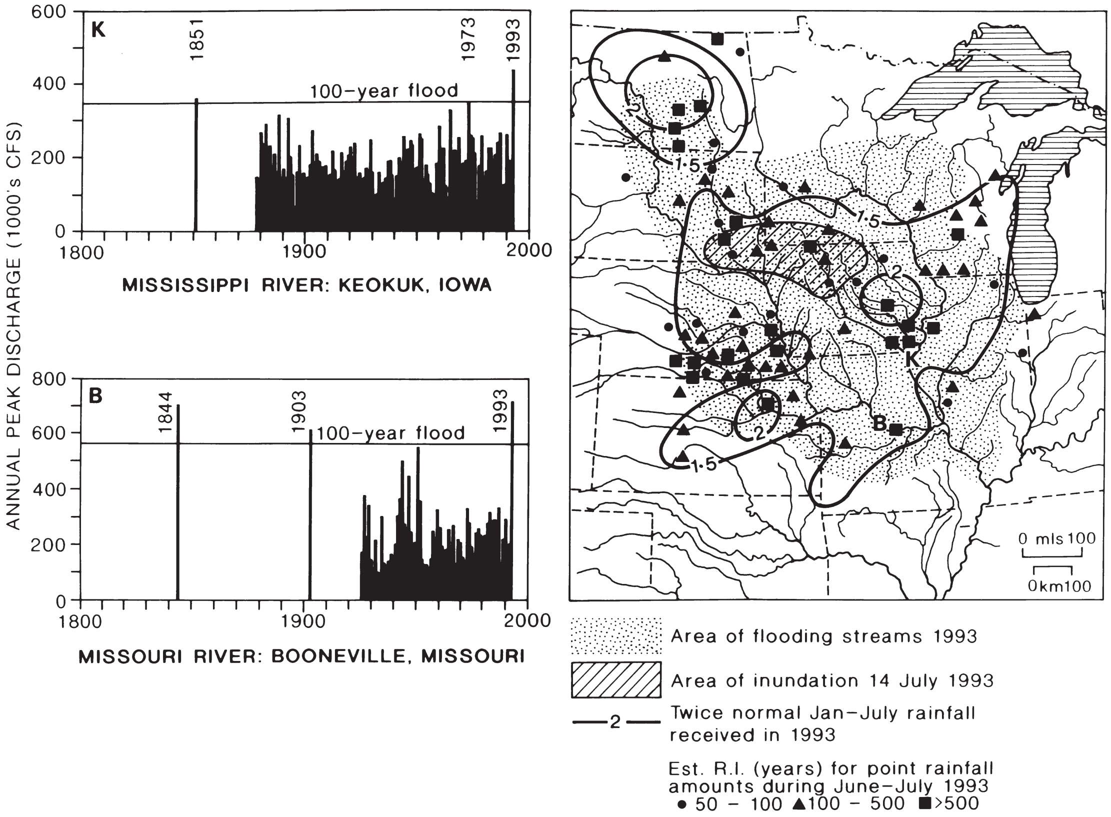


Figure 10.21 Distribution of flooding streams and inundation in the US Midwest during the period June to August 1993. Peak discharges for the Mississippi River at Keokuk, Iowa (K) and the Missouri River at Booneville, Missouri (B) are shown, together with the historic annual peak discharge record. The isopleths indicate the multiples of the thirty-year average January to July precipitation that fell in the first seven months of 1993, and the symbols the estimated recurrence intervals (R.I. years) for point rainfall amounts received during June to July 1993.

Sources: Parrett *et al*. (1993) and Lott (1994). Courtesy of the US Geological Survey.

precipitation falls during nocturnal thunderstorms (20:00 to 08:00 True Solar Time) in central Kansas, parts of Nebraska, Oklahoma and Texas. Hypotheses suggest that the nocturnal thunderstorm rainfall that occurs, especially with extensive mesoscale convective systems (see p. 203), may be linked to a tendency for nocturnal convergence and rising air over the plains east of the Rocky Mountains. The terrain profile appears to play a role here, as a large-scale inversion layer forms at night over the mountains, setting up a low-level jet east of the mountains just above the boundary layer. This southerly flow, at 500 to 1000 m above the surface, can supply the necessary low-level moisture influx and convergence for the storms (cf. Figure 9.33). MCSs account for 30 to 70 per cent of the May to September rainfall over much of the area east of the Rocky Mountains to the Missouri River.

3. East of the upper Mississippi, in the Ohio valley and south of the lower Great Lakes, there is a transitional regime between that of the interior and the east coast type. Precipitation is reasonably abundant in all seasons, but the summer maximum is still in evidence (e.g. Dayton).
4. In eastern North America (New England, the Maritimes, Quebec and southeast Ontario), precipitation is distributed fairly evenly throughout the year (e.g. Blue Hill). In Nova Scotia and locally around Georgian Bay there is a winter maximum, due in the latter case to the influence of open water.

In the Maritimes it is related to winter (and also autumn) storm tracks.

It is worth comparing the eastern regime with the summer maximum that is found over East Asia, where the Siberian anticyclone excludes cyclonic precipitation in winter and monsoonal influences are felt in the summer months.

The seasonal distribution of precipitation is of vital interest for agricultural purposes. Rain falling in summer, for instance, when evaporation losses are high, is less effective than an equal amount in the cool season. Figure 10.22 illustrates the effect of different regimes in terms of the moisture balance, calculated according to Thornthwaite's method (see Appendix 1B). At Halifax (Nova Scotia), sufficient moisture is stored in the soil to maintain evaporation at its maximum rate (i.e. actual evaporation = potential evaporation), whereas at Berkeley (California) there is a computed moisture deficit of nearly 50 mm in August. This is a guide to the amount of irrigation water that may be required by crops, although in dry regimes the Thornthwaite method generally underestimates the real moisture deficit.

Figure 10.23 shows the ratio of actual to potential evaporation (AE/PE) for North America calculated by the methods of Thornthwaite and Mather from an equation relating PE to air temperature. It is drawn to highlight varaition in the dry regions of the country. The boundary separating the moist climates of the east, where the ratio AE/PE exceeds about 8 per cent or more, from the dry climates of the west (excluding the west coast), follows the 95th meridian. The major humid areas are along the Appalachians, in the northeast and along the Pacific coast, while the most extensive arid areas are in the intermontane basins, the High Plains, the southwest and parts of northern Mexico. In the west and southwest the ratio is small due to lack of precipitation, whereas in northwest Canada actual evaporation is limited by available energy.

C THE SUBTROPICAL MARGINS

1 The semi-arid southwestern United States

Both the mechanisms and patterns of the climate in areas dominated by the subtropical high-pressure cells are not well documented. The inhospitable nature of these arid regions inhibits data collection, and yet the study of infrequent meteorological events requires a close network of stations maintaining continuous records over long periods. This difficulty is especially apparent in the interpretation of desert precipitation data, because much of the rain falls in local storms irregularly scattered in both space and time. The climatic conditions in the southwestern United States serve to exemplify this

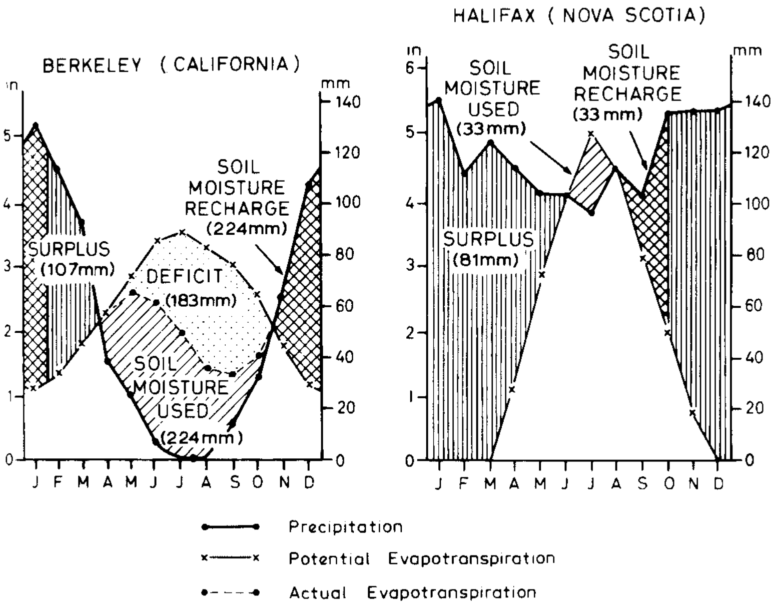


Figure 10.22 The moisture balances at Berkeley, California, and Halifax, Nova Scotia.

Source: After Thornthwaite and Mather (1955).

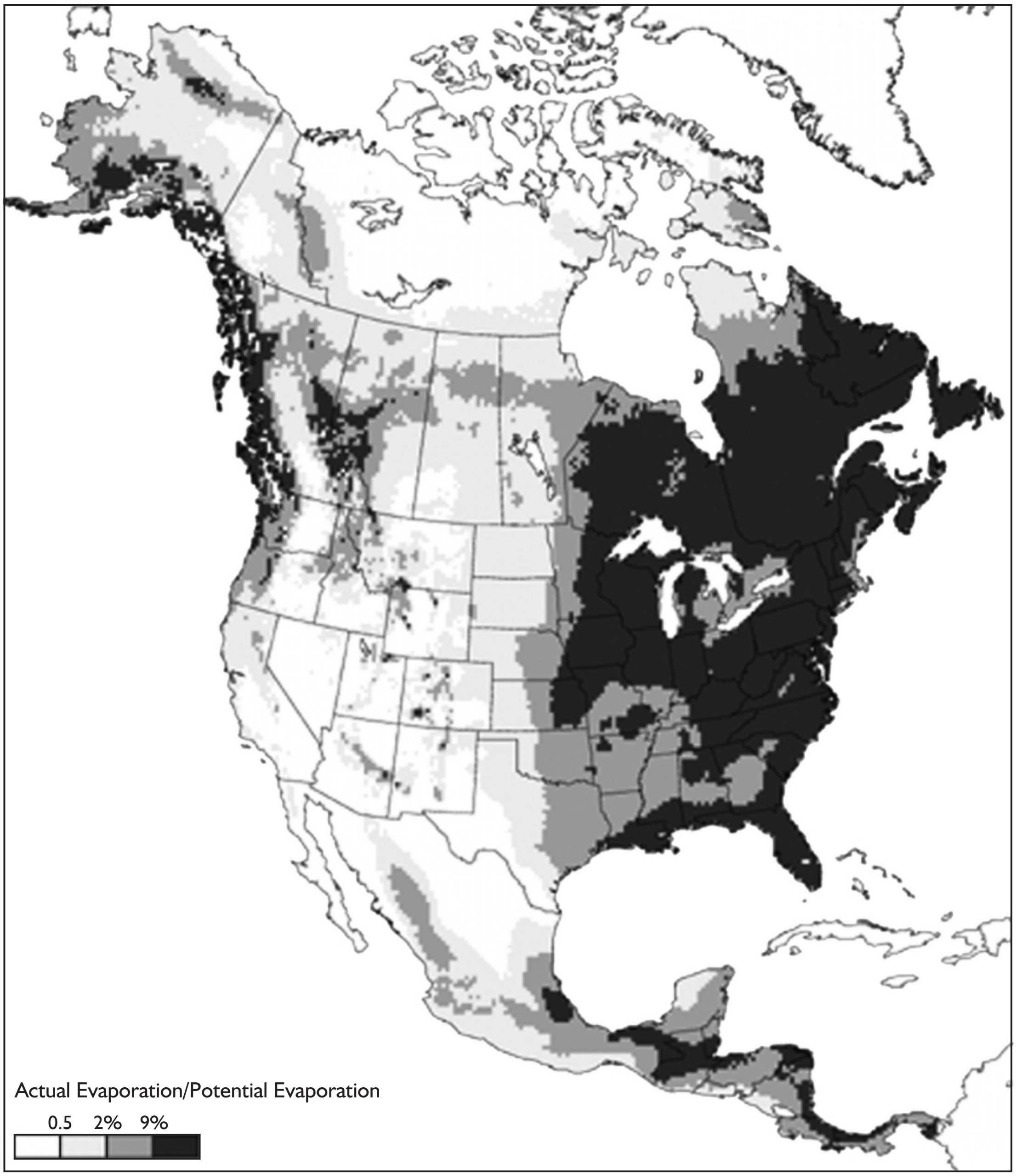

Actual Evaporation/Potential Evaporation
0.5
2%
9%

Figure 10.23 The ratio of actual/potential evaporation for North America determined using the Thornthwaite/Mather (1955) methods.

Source: From Thompson *et al*. (1999). Courtesy of the US Geological Survey.

climatic type, based on the more reliable data for the semi-arid margins of the subtropical cells.

Observations at Tucson (730 m), Arizona, between 1895 and 1957 showed a mean annual precipitation of 277 mm falling on an average of about forty-five days per year, with extreme annual figures of 614 mm and 145 mm. Two moister periods in late November to March (receiving 30 per cent of the mean annual precipitation) and late June to September (50 per cent) are separated by more arid seasons from April to June (8 per cent) and October to November (12 per cent). The winter rains are generally prolonged and of low intensity (more than half the falls have an intensity of less than 5 mm per hour), falling from altostratus clouds associated with the cold fronts of depressions that are forced to take southerly routes by strong blocking to the north. This occurs during phases of equatorial displacement of the Pacific subtropical high-pressure cell. The re-establishment of the cell in spring, before the main period of intense surface heating and convectional showers, is associated with the most persistent drought episodes. Dry westerly to southwesterly flow from the eastern edge of the Pacific subtropical anticyclone is responsible for the low rainfall in this season. During one twenty-nine-year period in Tucson, there were eight spells of more than 100 consecutive days of complete drought and twenty-four periods of more than seventy days. The dry conditions occasionally lead to dust storms. Yuma records nine per year, on average, associated with winds averaging 10–15 m s^{-1}. They occur both with cyclonic systems in the cool season and with summer convective activity. Phoenix experiences six to seven per year, mainly in summer, with visibility reduced below 1 km in nearly half of these events.

The period of summer precipitation (known in Arizona as the summer 'monsoon') is quite sharply defined. The southerly airflow regime at the surface and 700 mb (see Figures 7.4 and 7.9) often sets in abruptly around 1 July and is therefore recognized as a singularity. Figure 10.24 shows that southeastern Arizona and southwestern New Mexico receive over 50 per cent of their annual rainfall during July to September. Further south over the Sierra Madre Occidentale and the southern coast of the Gulf of California, this figure exceeds 70 per cent. The American southwest forms only the northern part of the area of the Mexican or North American monsoon.

Precipitation occurs mainly from convective cells initiated by surface heating, convergence or, less commonly, orographic lifting when the atmosphere is destabilized by upper-level troughs in the westerlies. These summer convective storms form in mesoscale clusters, the individual storm cells together covering less than 3 per cent of the surface area at any one time, and persisting for less than an hour on average. The storm clusters move across the country in the direction of the upper-air motion. Often their motion seems to be controlled by low-level jet streams. The airflow associated with these storms is generally southerly along the southern and western margins of the Atlantic (or Bermudan) subtropical high. The moisture at low levels in southern Arizona is derived mainly from the Gulf of California during 'surges' associated with the south-southwesterly low-level Sonoran jet (850 to 700 mb). Moisture from the Gulf of Mexico reaches higher elevations in Arizona-New Mexico with southeasterly flows at 700 mb.

Precipitation from these convective cells is extremely local (see Plate 11), and is commonly concentrated in the mid-afternoon and evening. Intensities are much higher than in winter, half the summer rain falling at more than 10 mm per hour. During a twenty-nine-year period, about a quarter of the mean annual precipitation fell in storms giving 25 mm rain or more per day. These intensities are much less than those

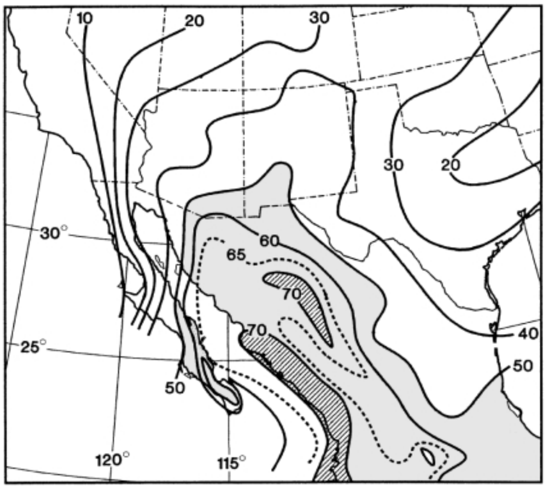


Figure 10.24 The contribution (per cent) of JAS precipitation to the annual total in the southwestern United States and northern Mexico. Area greater than 50 per cent tinted and greater than 70 per cent hatched.

Source: After M.W. Douglas *et al*. (1993, p.1667, fig. 3). Courtesy of the American Meteorological Society.

associated with rainstorms in the humid tropics, but the sparsity of vegetation in the drier regions allows the rain to produce flash-floods and considerable surface erosion.

2 The interior southeastern United States

The climate of the subtropical southeastern United States has no exact counterpart in Asia, which is affected by the summer and winter monsoon systems (discussed in Chapter 11). Seasonal wind changes are experienced in Florida, which is within the westerlies in winter and lies on the northern margin of the tropical easterlies in summer. The summer season rainfall maximum (see Figure 10.20 for Jacksonville) is a result of this changeover. In June, the upper flow over the Florida peninsula changes from northwesterly to southerly as a trough moves westward and becomes established in the Gulf of Mexico. This deep, moist southerly airflow provides appropriate conditions for convection. Indeed, Florida probably ranks as the area with the highest annual number of days with thunderstorms – ninety or more, on average, in the vicinity of Tampa. These often occur in late afternoon, although two factors apart from diurnal heating are thought to be important. One is the effect of sea breezes converging from both sides of the peninsula, and the other is the northward penetration of disturbances in the easterlies (see Chapter 11). The latter may of course affect the area at any time of day. The westerlies resume control in September to October, although Florida remains under the easterlies during September, when Atlantic tropical cyclones are most frequent (Plate 21).

Tropical cyclones contribute 10 to 15 per cent of the average annual rainfall near the Gulf Coast and in Florida. According to *Storm Data* reports for 1975 to 1994, hurricanes striking the southern and eastern USA account for over 40 per cent of the total property damage and 20 per cent of the crop damage attributed to extreme weather events in the country. Annually, losses from hurricanes in the United States averaged $5.5 billion in the 1990s, with comparable national losses due to floods ($5.3 billion annually). The single, most costly natural disaster up to 1989 was Hurricane Hugo ($9 billion) (Plate F), but this was far surpassed by the $27 billion losses caused by Hurricane Andrew over Florida and Louisiana in August 1992. Winds in excess of 69 ms^{-1} (155 mph) led to the destruction of 130,000 homes (Plate 22). Injuries (deaths) during hurricanes average only 250 (21) per year, as a result of storm warnings and the evacuation of endangered communities.

Winter precipitation along much of the eastern seaboard of the United States is dominated by an apparent oscillation between depression tracks following the Ohio valley (continental lows) and the southeast Atlantic coast (Gulf lows), only one of which is normally dominant during a single winter. The former track brings below-average winter rainfall and snowfall, but above-average temperatures, to the mid-Atlantic region, whereas the reverse conditions are associated with systems following the southeast coast track (Figure 10.13).

The region of the Mississippi lowlands and the southern Appalachians to the west and north is not simply transitional to the 'interior type', at least in terms of rainfall regime (see Figure 10.20). The profile shows a winter to spring maximum and a secondary summer maximum. The cool season peak is related to westerly depressions moving northeastward from the Gulf Coast area, and it is significant that the wettest month is commonly March, when the mean jet stream is farthest south. The summer rains are associated with convection in humid air from the Gulf, although this convection becomes less effective inland as a result of the subsidence created by the anticyclonic circulation in the middle troposphere referred to previously (see B.3c, this chapter).

3 The Mediterranean

The characteristic west coast climate of the subtropics is the Mediterranean type with hot, dry summers and mild, relatively wet winters. It is interposed between the temperate maritime type and the arid subtropical desert climate. The boundary between the temperate maritime climate of western Europe and that of the Mediterranean can be delimited on the basis of the seasonality of rainfall. However, another diagnostic feature is the relatively sharp increase in solar radiation across a zone running along northern Spain, southeast France, northern Italy and to the east of the Adriatic (Figure 10.25). The Mediterranean regime is transitional in a special way, because it is controlled by the westerlies in winter and by the subtropical anticyclone in summer. The seasonal change in position of the subtropical high and the associated subtropical westerly jet stream in the upper troposphere are evident in Figure 10.25. The type region is peculiarly distinctive, extending more than 3000 km into the Eurasian continent. In addition, the

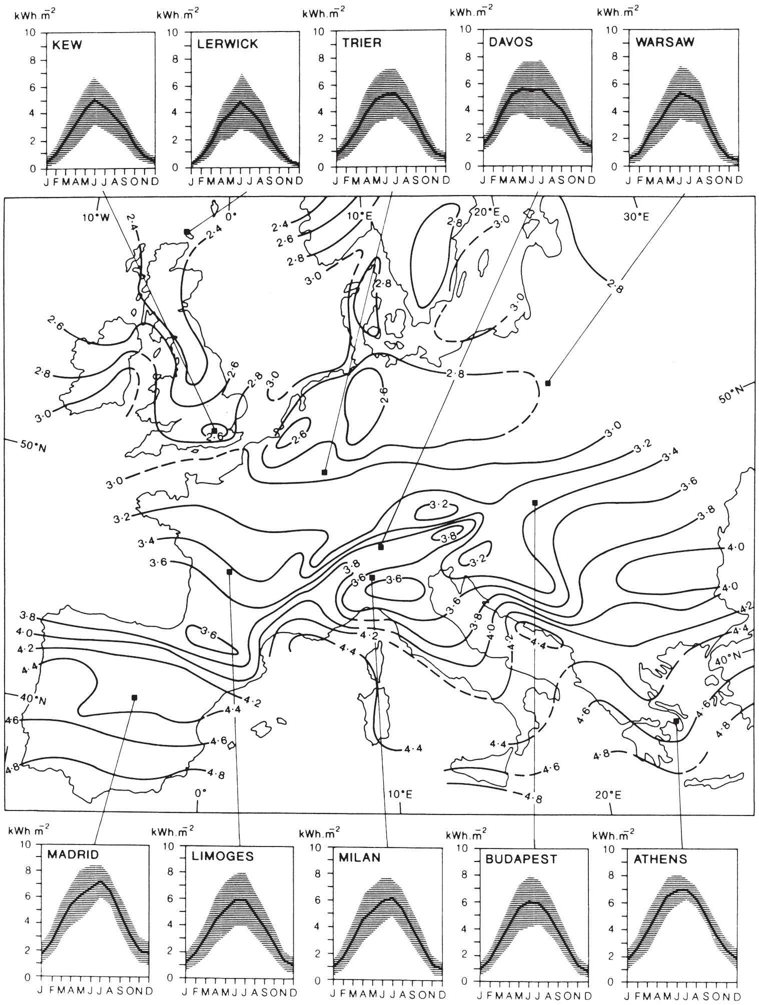


Figure 10.25 Average annual means of daily global irradiation on a horizontal surface (kWh/m^{-2}) for western and central Europe calculated for the period 1966 to 1975. 10-year means of monthly means of daily sums, together with standard deviations (shaded band), are also shown for selected stations.

Source: Palz (1984). Reproduced by permission of the Directorate-General, Science, Research and Development, European Commission, Brussels, and W. Palz.

configuration of seas and peninsulas produces great regional variety of weather and climate. The Californian region, with similar conditions (see Figure 10.20), is of very limited extent, and attention is therefore concentrated on the Mediterranean basin itself.

The winter season sets in quite suddenly in the Mediterranean as the summer eastward extension of the Azores high-pressure cell collapses. This phenomenon may be observed on barographs throughout the region, but particularly in the western Mediterranean, where a sudden drop in pressure occurs on about 20 October and is accompanied by a marked increase in the probability of precipitation. The probability of receiving rain in any five-day period increases dramatically from 50 to 70 per cent in early October to 90 per cent in late October. This change is associated with the first invasions by cold fronts, although thundershower rain has been common since August. The pronounced winter precipitation over the Mediterranean results largely from the relatively high sea-surface temperatures at that season, the sea temperature in January being about 2°C higher than the mean air temperature. Incursions of colder air into the region lead to convective instability along the cold front, producing frontal and orographic rain. Incursions of Arctic air are relatively infrequent (there being, on average, six to nine invasions by cA and mA air each year), but penetration by unstable mP air is much more common. It typically gives rise to deep cumulus development and is crucial in the formation of Mediterranean depressions. The initiation and movement of these depressions (Figure 10.26) is associated with a branch of the polar front jet stream located at about 35°N.

This jet develops during low index phases, when the westerlies over the eastern Atlantic are distorted by a blocking anticyclone at about 20°W. This leads to a deep stream of Arctic air flowing southward over the British Isles and France.

Low-pressure systems in the Mediterranean have three main sources. Atlantic depressions entering the western Mediterranean as surface lows make up 9 per cent and 17 per cent form as baroclinic waves south of the Atlas Mountains (the so-called Saharan depressions; see Figure 10.27). The latter are important sources of rainfall in late winter and spring). Fully 74 per cent develop in the western Mediterranean in the lee of the Alps and Pyrenees (see Chapter 9H.1). The combination of the lee effect and that of unstable surface air over the western Mediterranean explains the frequent

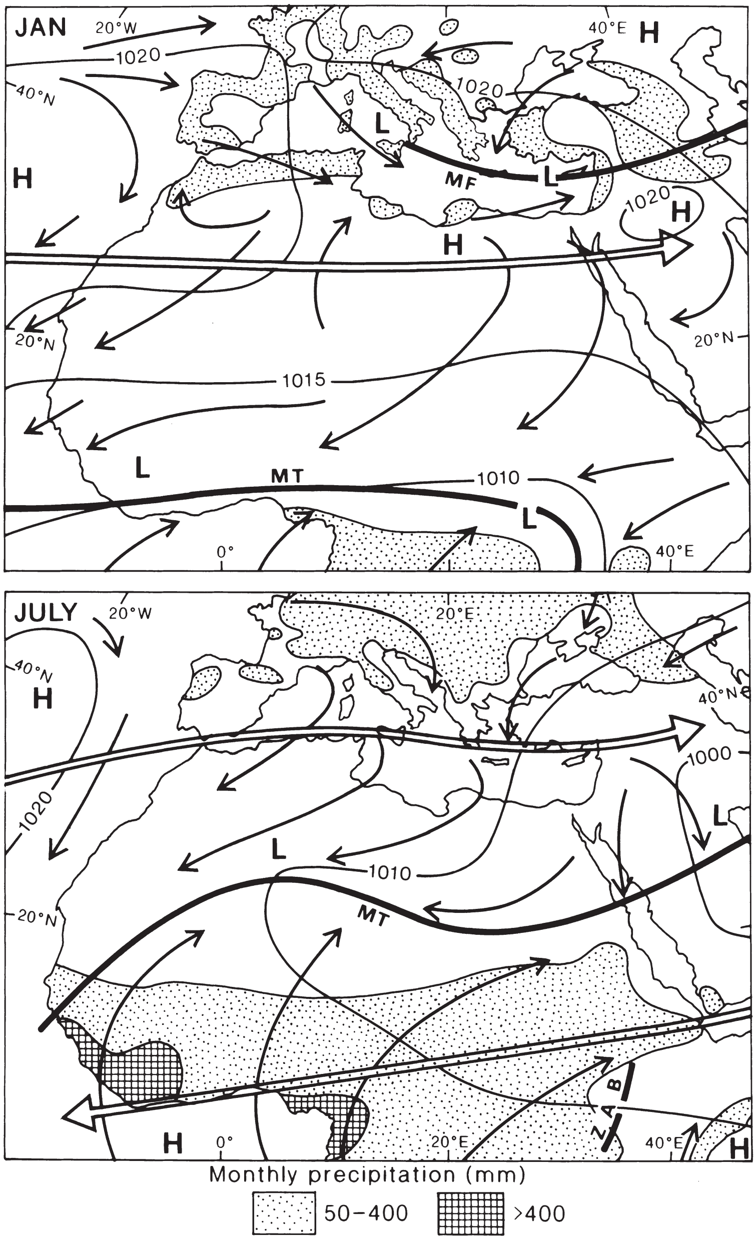

JAN
20°W
40°E
H
1020
40°N
1020
L
H
MF
L
1020
H
H
20°N
20°N
1015
L
MT
1010
L
0°
40°E
JULY
20°W
20°E
40°N
H
40°N
1000
1020
L
L
1010
MT
20°N
H
0°
20°E
ZAB
40°E
H
Monthly precipitation (mm)
50–400
>400

Figure 10.26 The distribution of surface pressure, winds and precipitation for the Mediterranean and North Africa during January and July. The average positions of the subtropical westerly and tropical easterly jet streams, together with the monsoon trough (MT), the Mediterranean front (MF) and the Zaire air boundary (ZAB), are also shown.

Source: Partly after *Weather in the Mediterranean* (HMSO, 1962) (Crown Copyright Reserved).

formation of these *Genoa-type depressions* whenever conditionally unstable mP air invades the region. These depressions are exceptional in that the instability of the air in the warm sector gives unusually intense precipitation along the warm front. The unstable mP air produces heavy showers and thunderstorm rainfall to the rear of the cold front, especially between 5 and 25°E. This warming of mP air produces air designated as *Mediterranean*. The mean boundary between this Mediterranean airmass and cT air flowing northeastward from the Sahara is referred to as the Mediterranean front (see Figure 10.26). There may be a temperature discontinuity as great as 12 to 16°C across it in late winter. Saharan depressions and those from the western Mediterranean move eastward, forming a belt of low pressure associated with this frontal zone and frequently drawing cT northward ahead of the cold front as the warm, dust-laden *scirocco* (especially in spring and autumn when Saharan air may spread into Europe). The movement of Mediterranean depressions is modified both by relief effects and by their regeneration in the eastern Mediterranean through fresh cP air from Russia or southeast Europe. Although many lows pass eastward into Asia, there is a strong tendency for others to move northeastward over the Black Sea and Balkans, especially as spring advances. Winter weather in the Mediterranean is quite variable as the subtropical westerly jet stream is highly mobile and may occasionally coalesce with the southward-displaced polar front jet stream.

With high index zonal circulation over the Atlantic and Europe, depressions may pass far enough to the north that their cold-sector air does not reach the Mediterranean, and then the weather there is generally settled and fine. Between October and April, anticyclones are the dominant circulation type for at least 25 per cent of the time over the whole Mediterranean area and in the western basin for 48 per cent of the time. This

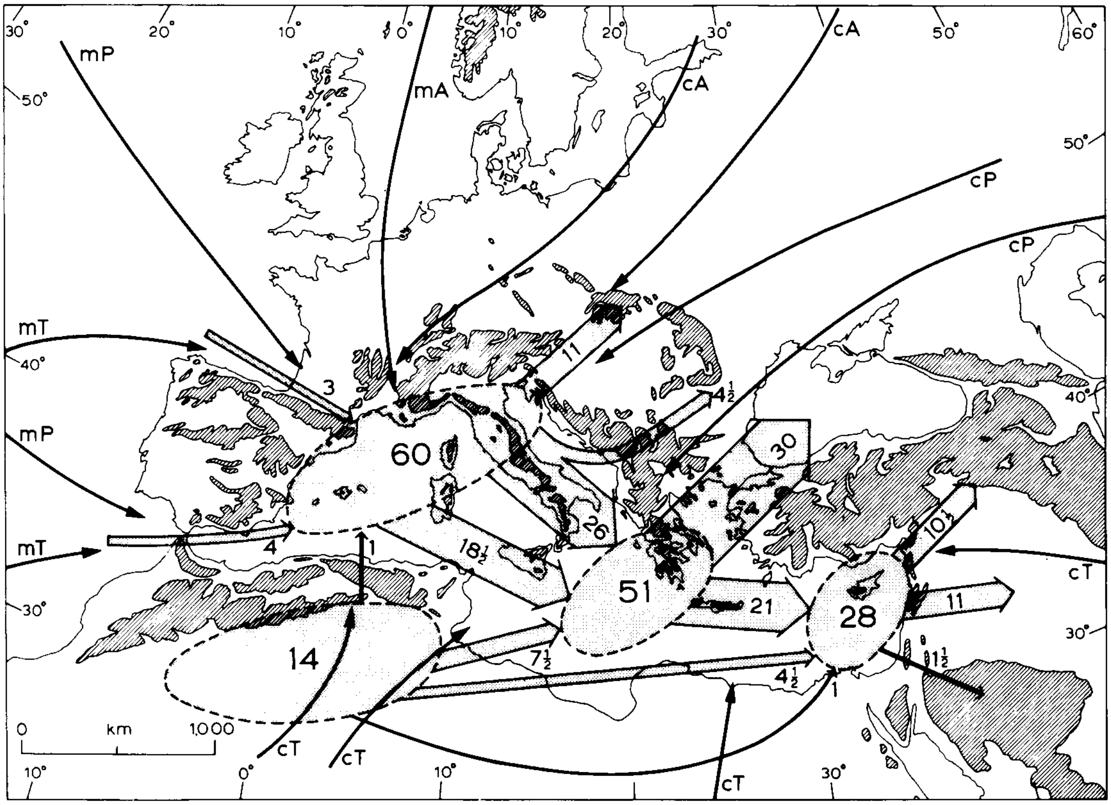


Figure 10.27 Tracks of Mediterranean depressions, showing average annual frequencies, together with airmass sources.

Source: After *Weather in the Mediterranean* (HMSO, 1962) (Crown Copyright Reserved).

is reflected in the high mean pressure over the latter area in January (see Figure 10.26). Consequently, although the winter half-year is the rainy period, there are rather few rain-days. On average, rain falls on only six days per month during winter in northern Libya and southeast Spain; there are twelve rain-days per month in western Italy, the western Balkan Peninsula and the Cyprus area. The higher frequencies (and totals) are related to the areas of cyclogenesis and to the windward sides of peninsulas.

Regional winds are also related to the meteorological and topographic factors. The familiar cold, northerly winds of the Gulf of Lions (the *mistral*), which are associated with northerly mP airflow, are best developed when a depression is forming in the Gulf of Genoa east of a high-pressure ridge from the Azores anticyclone. Katabatic and funnelling effects strengthen the flow in the Rhône valley and similar localities, so that violent winds are sometimes recorded. The mistral may last for several days until the outbreak of polar or continental air ceases. The frequency of these winds depends on their definition. The average frequency of strong mistrals in the south of France is shown in Table 10.3 (based on occurrence at one or more stations from Perpignan to the Rhône in 1924 to 1927). Similar winds may occur along the Catalan coast of Spain (the *tramontana*, see Figure 10.28) and also in the northern Adriatic (the *bora*) and northern Aegean Seas when polar air flows southward in the rear of an eastward-moving depression and is forced over the mountains (cf. Chapter 6C.1). In Spain, cold, dry northerly winds occur in several different regions. Figure 10.28 shows the *galerna* of the north coast and the *cierzo* of the Ebro valley.

The generally wet, windy and mild winter season in the Mediterranean is succeeded by a long indecisive spring lasting from March to May, with many false starts of summer weather. The spring period, like that of early autumn, is especially unpredictable. In March 1966, a trough moving across the eastern Mediterranean, preceded by a warm southerly *khamsin* and followed by a northerly airstream, brought up to 70 mm of rain in only four hours to an area of the southern Negev Desert. Although April is normally a dry month in the eastern Mediterranean, Cyprus having an average of only three days with 1 mm of rainfall or more, high rainfalls can occur, as in April 1971 when four depressions affected the region. Two of these were Saharan depressions moving eastward beneath the zone of diffluence on the cold side of a westerly jet and the other two were intensified in the lee of Cyprus. The rather rapid collapse of the Eurasian high-pressure cell in April, together with the discontinuous northward and eastward extension of the Azores anticyclone, encourages the northward displacement of depressions. Even if higher latitude air does penetrate south to the Mediterranean, the sea surface there is relatively cool and the air is more stable than during the winter.

By mid-June, the Mediterranean basin is dominated by the expanded Azores anticyclone to the west, while to the south the mean pressure field shows a low-pressure trough extending across the Sahara from southern Asia (see Figure 10.26). The winds are predominantly northerly (e.g. the *etesians* of the Aegean) and represent an eastward continuation of the northeasterly trades. Locally, sea breezes reinforce these winds, but on the Levant Coast they cause surface southwesterlies. Land and sea breezes, involving air up to 1500-m deep, largely condition the day-to-day weather of many parts of the North African coast. Depressions are by no means absent in the summer months, but they are usually weak. The anticyclonic character of the large-scale circulation encourages subsidence, and airmass contrasts are much reduced compared with winter. Thermal lows form from time to time over Iberia and Anatolia, although thundery outbreaks are infrequent due to the low relative humidity.

The most important regional winds in summer are of continental tropical origin. There are a variety of local names for these usually hot, dry and dusty airstreams – *scirocco* (Algeria and the Levant), *lebeche* (southeast

Table 10.3 Number of days with a strong mistral in the south of France.

Speed	*J*	*F*	*M*	*A*	*M*	*J*	*J*	*A*	*S*	*O*	*N*	*D*	*Year*
≥ 11 m s^{-1} (21 kt)	10	9	13	11	8	9	9	7	5	5	7	10	103
≥ 17 m s^{-1} (33 kt)	4	4	6	5	3	2	0.6	1	0.6	0	0	4	30

Source: After *Weather in the Mediterranean* (HMSO, 1962).

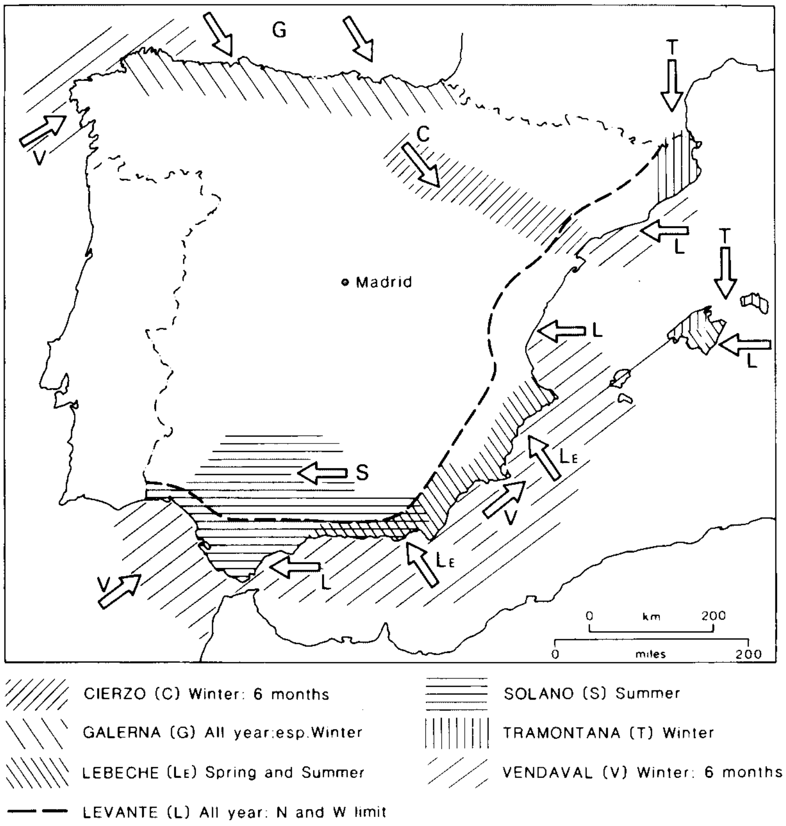

G
T
V
C
L
T
Madrid
L
L
Le
S
V
Le
V
L
0 km 200
0 miles 200
CIERZO (C) Winter: 6 months
GALERNA (G) All year: esp. Winter
LEBECHE (Le) Spring and Summer
LEVANTE (L) All year: N and W limit
SOLANO (S) Summer
TRAMONTANA (T) Winter
VENDAVAL (V) Winter: 6 months

Figure 10.28 Areas affected by the major regional winds in Spain as a function of season.

Source: From Tout and Kemp (1985), by permission of the Royal Meteorological Society.

Spain) and *khamsin* (Egypt) – which move northward ahead of eastward-moving depressions. In the Negev, the onset of an easterly *khamsin* may cause the relative humidity to drop to less than 10 per cent and temperatures to rise to as much as 48°C. In southern Spain, the easterly *solano* brings hot, humid weather to Andalucia in the summer half-year, whereas the coastal *levante* – which has a long fetch over the Mediterranean – is moist and somewhat cooler (see Figure 10.28). Such regional winds occur when the Azores high extends over western Europe with a low-pressure system to the south.

Many stations in the Mediterranean receive only a few millimetres of rainfall in at least one summer month, yet the seasonal distribution does not conform to the pattern of simple winter maximum over the whole of the Mediterranean basin. Figure 10.29 shows that this is found in the eastern and central Mediterranean, whereas Spain, southern France, northern Italy and the northern Balkans have more complicated profiles with a maximum in autumn or peaks in both spring and autumn. This double maximum may be interpreted as a transition between the continental interior type with summer maximum and the Mediterranean type with winter maximum. A similar transition region occurs in the southwestern United States (see Figure 10.20), but local topography in this intermontane zone introduces irregularities into the regimes.

4 North Africa

The dominance of high-pressure conditions in the Sahara is marked by the low average precipitation in this region. Over most of the central Sahara, the mean annual precipitation is less than 25 mm, although the high plateaux of the Ahaggar and Tibesti receive over 100 mm. Parts of western Algeria have gone at least two years without more than 0.1 mm of rain in any twenty-four-hour period, and most of southwest Egypt as much as five years. However, twenty-four-hour storm rainfalls approaching 50 mm (more than 75 mm over the high plateaux) may be expected in scattered localities. During a thirty-five-year period, excessive short-period

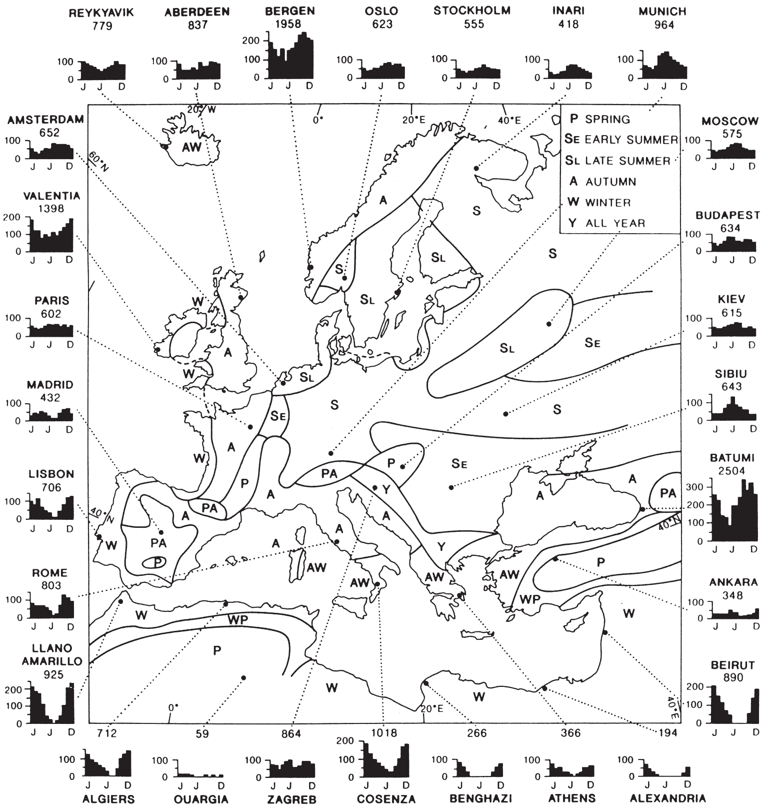

REYKYAVIK 779
ABERDEEN 837
BERGEN 1958
OSLO 623
STOCKHOLM 555
INARI 418
MUNICH 964
AMSTERDAM 652
VALENTIA 1398
PARIS 602
MADRID 432
LISBON 706
ROME 803
LLANO AMARILLO 925
MOSCOW 575
BUDAPEST 634
KIEV 615
SIBIU 643
BATUMI 2504
ANKARA 348
BEIRUT 890
ALGIERS 712
OUARGIA 59
ZAGREB 864
COSENZA 1018
BENGHAZI 266
ATHENS 366
ALEXANDRIA 194
P SPRING
SE EARLY SUMMER
SL LATE SUMMER
A AUTUMN
W WINTER
Y ALL YEAR
J J D
20°W
0°
20°E
40°E
60°N
40°N

Figure 10.29 Seasons of maximum precipitation for Europe and North Africa, together with average monthly and annual figures (mm) for twenty-eight stations.

Sources: Thorn (1965) and Huttary (1950). Reprinted from D. Martyn (1992) *Climates of the World*, with kind permission from Elsevier Science NL, Sara Burgerhartstraat 25, 1055 KV Amsterdam, The Netherlands.

rainfall intensities occurred in the vicinity of west-facing slopes in Algeria, such as at Tamanrasset (46 mm in sixty-three minutes) (Figure 10.30), El Golea (8.7 mm in three minutes) and Beni Abes (38.5 mm in twenty-five minutes). During the summer, rainfall variability is introduced into the southern Sahara by the variable northward penetration of the monsoon trough (see Figure 11.2B), which on occasion allows tongues of moist southwesterly air to penetrate far north and produce short-lived low-pressure centres. Study of these Saharan depressions has permitted a clearer picture to emerge of the region. In the upper troposphere at about 200 mb (12 km), the westerlies overlie the poleward flanks of the subtropical high-pressure belt. Occasionally, the individual high-pressure cells contract away from one another as meanders develop in the westerlies between them. These may extend equatorward to interact with the low-level tropical easterlies (Figure 10.31). This interaction may lead to the development of lows, which then move northeast along the meander trough associated with rain and thunder. By the time they reach the central Sahara, they are frequently 'rained out' and give rise to dust storms, but they can be reactivated further north by the entrainment of moist Mediterranean air. The interaction of westerly and easterly circulation is most likely to occur around the equinoxes or sometimes in winter if the otherwise dominant Azores high-pressure cell contracts westward. The westerlies may also affect the region through the penetration of cold fronts south from the Mediterranean, bringing heavy rain to localized desert areas. In December 1976, such a depression produced up to 40 mm of rain during two days in southern Mauretania.

5 Australasia

The subtropical anticyclones of the South Atlantic and Indian Ocean tend to generate high-pressure cells which move eastward, intensifying southeast of South Africa and west of Australia. These are warm-core systems formed by descending air and extending through the troposphere. The continental intensification of the constant eastward progression of such cells causes pressure maps to give the impression of the existence of

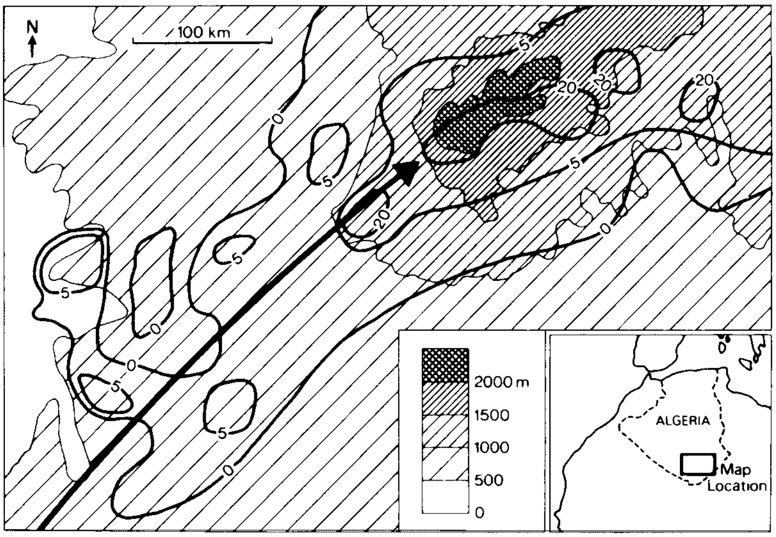

N
100 km
0
5
20
2000 m
1500
1000
500
0
ALGERIA
Map Location

Figure 10.30 Track of a storm and the associated three-hour rainfall (mm) during September 1950 around Tamanrasset in the vicinity of the Ahaggar Mountains, southern Algeria.

Source: Partly after Goudie and Wilkinson (1977).

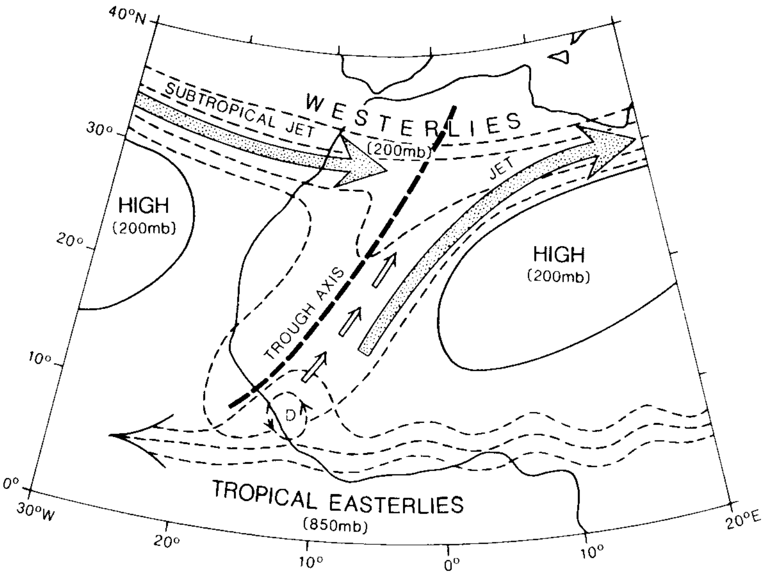

40°N
30°
20°
10°
0°
30°W
20°
10°
0°
10°
20°E
SUBTROPICAL JET
WESTERLIES
(200mb)
JET
HIGH
(200mb)
HIGH
(200mb)
TROUGH AXIS
D
TROPICAL EASTERLIES
(850mb)

Figure 10.31 Interaction between the westerlies and the tropical easterlies leading to the production of Saharan depressions (D), which move northeastward along a trough axis.

Source: After Nicholson and Flohn (1980), copyright © 1980/1982 D. Reidel Publishing Company. Reprinted by permission.

a stable anticyclone over Australia (Figure 10.32). About forty anticyclones traverse Australia annually, being somewhat more numerous in spring and summer than in autumn and winter. Over both oceans, the frequency of anticyclonic centres is greatest in a belt around 30°S in winter and 35–40°S in summer; they rarely occur south of 45°S.

Between successive anticyclones are low-pressure troughs containing inter-anticyclonic fronts (sometimes termed 'polar') (Figure 10.33). Within these troughs, the subtropical jet stream meanders equatorward, accelerates (particularly in winter, when it reaches an average velocity of 60 ms^{-1} compared with a mean annual value of 39 ms^{-1}) and generates upper-air depressions, which move southeastward along the front (analogous to the systems in North Africa). The variation in strength of the continental anticyclones and the passage of inter-anticyclonic fronts cause periodic inflows of surrounding maritime tropical airmasses from the Pacific (mTp) and the Indian (mTi) oceans. In

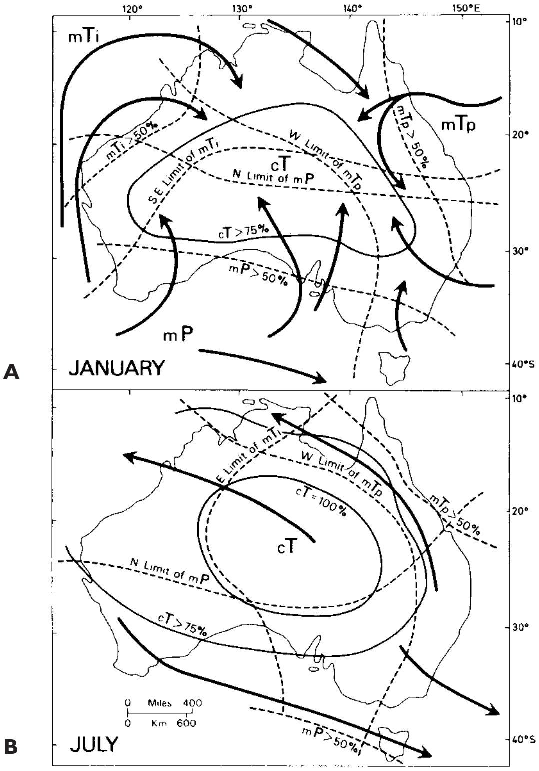


Figure 10.32 Airmass frequencies, source areas, wind directions and dominance of the cT high-pressure cell over Australia in summer (A) and winter (B).

Source: After Gentilli (1971).

addition, there are incursions of maritime polar air (mP) from the south, and variations in strength of the local source of continental tropical (cT) airmasses (see Figure 10.32).

The high-pressure conditions over Australia promote especially high temperatures over central and western parts of the continent, towards which there is a major heat transport in summer. These pressures keep average rainfall amounts low; these normally total less than 250 mm annually over 37 per cent of Australia. In winter, upper-air depressions along the inter-anticyclonic fronts bring rain to southeastern regions and also, in conjunction with mTi incursions, to southwest Australia. In summer, the southward movement of the intertropical convergence zone and its transformation into a monsoon trough brings on the wetter season in northern Australia (see Chapter 11D), and the onshore southeast trades bring rain along the eastern seaboard.

New Zealand is subject to climatic controls similar to those of southern Australia (Figure 10.33). Anticyclones, separated by troughs associated with cold fronts often deformed into wave depressions, cross the region on average once a week. Their most southerly track (38.5°S) is taken in February. The eastward rate of anticyclonic movement averages about 570 km/day in May to July and 780 km/day in October to December. Anticyclones occur some 7 per cent of the time and are associated with settled weather, light winds, sea breezes and some fog. On the eastern (leading) edge of the high-pressure cell the airflow is usually cool, maritime and southwesterly, interspersed with south or southeasterly flow producing drizzle. On the western side of the cell, the airflow is commonly north or northwesterly, bringing mild and humid conditions. In autumn, high-pressure conditions increase in frequency up to 22 per cent, giving a drier season.

Simple troughs with undeformed cold fronts and relatively simple interactions between the trailing and leading edge conditions of the anticyclones persist in about 44 per cent of the time during winter, spring and summer, compared with only 34 per cent in autumn. Wave depressions occur with about the same frequency. If a wave depression forms on the cold front to the west of New Zealand, it usually moves southeastward along the front, passing to the south of the country. In contrast, a depression forming over New Zealand may take thirty-six to forty-eight hours to clear the country, bringing prolonged rainy conditions (e.g. Figure 10.34). Relief, especially the Southern Alps, predominantly controls rainfall amounts. West- or northwest-facing mountains receive an average annual precipitation in excess of 2500 mm, with some parts of South Island exceeding 10 000 mm (see Figure 5.15). The eastern lee areas have much lower amounts, with less than 500 mm in some parts. North Island has a winter precipitation maximum, but South Island, under the influence of depressions in the southern westerlies, has a more variable seasonal maximum.

D HIGH LATITUDES

1 The southern westerlies

The strong zonal airflow in the belt of the southern westerlies, which is apparent only on mean monthly maps, is associated with a major frontal zone characterized

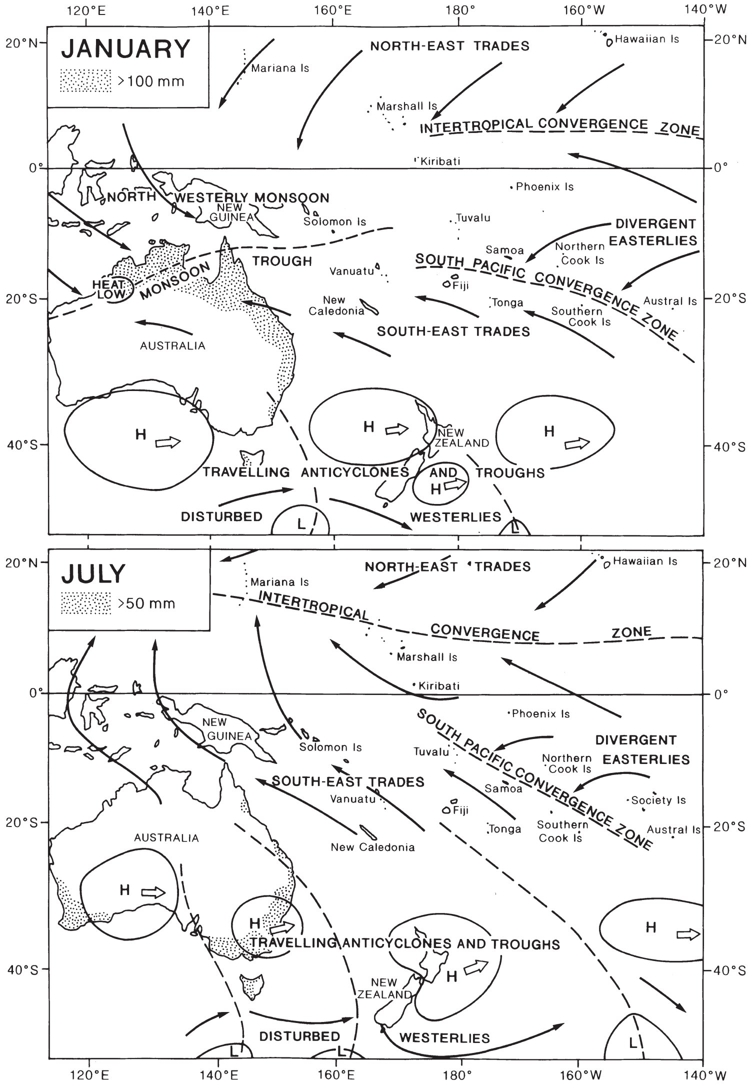

120°E
140°E
160°E
180°
160°W
140°W
20°N
0°
20°S
40°S
JANUARY
>100 mm
Mariana Is
NORTH-EAST TRADES
Hawaiian Is
Marshall Is
INTERTROPICAL CONVERGENCE ZONE
Kiribati
Phoenix Is
NORTH WESTERLY MONSOON
NEW GUINEA
Solomon Is
Tuvalu
DIVERGENT EASTERLIES
Samoa
Northern Cook Is
TROUGH
Vanuatu
SOUTH PACIFIC CONVERGENCE ZONE
Fiji
HEAT LOW
MONSOON
New Caledonia
Tonga
Southern Cook Is
Austral Is
SOUTH-EAST TRADES
AUSTRALIA
H
NEW ZEALAND
TRAVELLING ANTICYCLONES AND TROUGHS
DISTURBED
L
WESTERLIES
JULY
>50 mm
Society Is

Figure 10.33 Main climatological features of Australasia and the southwest Pacific. Areas with >100 mm (January) and >50 mm (July) mean monthly precipitation for Australia are also shown.

Source: After Steiner, from Salinger *et al*. (1995), copyright © John Wiley & Sons Ltd. Reproduced with permission.

by the continual passage of depressions and ridges of higher pressure. Throughout the Southern Ocean, this belt extends southward from about 30°S in July and 40°S in January (see Figures 9.18 and 10.35B) to the Antarctic trough which fluctuates between 60° and 72°S. The Antarctic trough is a region of cyclonic stagnation and decay that tends to be located furthest south at the equinoxes. Around New Zealand, the westerly airflow at an elevation of 3 to 15 km in the belt 20 to 50°S persists throughout the year. It becomes a jet stream at 150 mb (13.5 km), over 25 to 30°S, with a velocity of 60 ms^{-1} in May to August, decreasing to 26 ms^{-1} in February. In the Pacific, the strength of the westerlies depends on the meridional pressure difference between 40 and 60°S, being on average greatest all the year south of western Australia and west of southern Chile.

Many depressions form as waves on the inter-anticyclonic fronts, which move southeastward into the belt of the westerlies. Others form in the westerlies at preferred locations such as south of Cape Horn, and at around 45°S in the Indian Ocean in summer and in the South Atlantic off the South American coast and around 50°S in the Indian Ocean in winter. The polar front (see Figure 9.20) is associated most closely with the sea-surface temperature gradient across the Antarctic

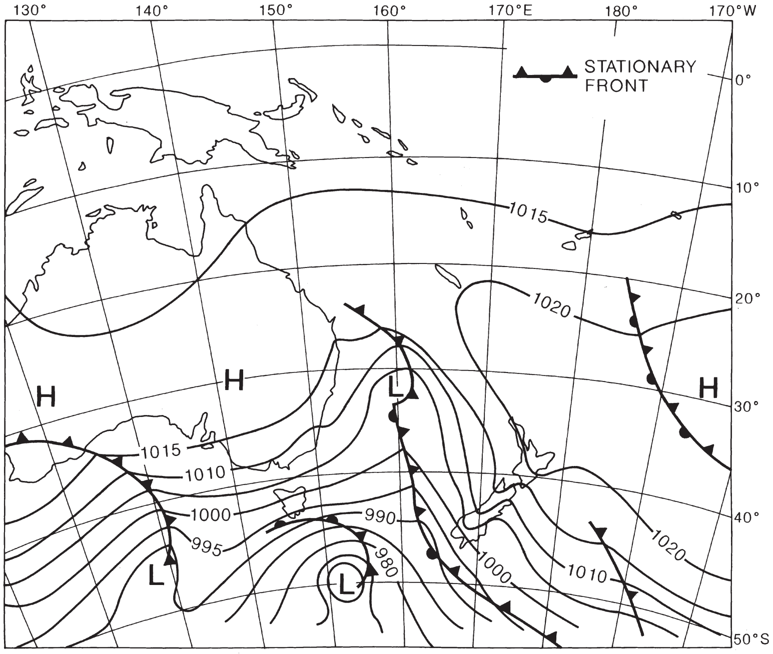

130°
140°
150°
160°
170°E
180°
170°W
STATIONARY FRONT
0°
10°
20°
30°
40°
50°S
1015
1020
1015
1010
1000
995
990
980
1000
1010
1020
H
H
H
L
L
L

Figure 10.34 The synoptic situation at 00:00 hours on 1 September 1982, resulting in heavy rainfall in the Southern Alps of New Zealand.

Sources: After Hessell; from Wratt *et al*. (1996). From *Bulletin of the American Meteorological Society*, by permission of the American Meteorological Society.

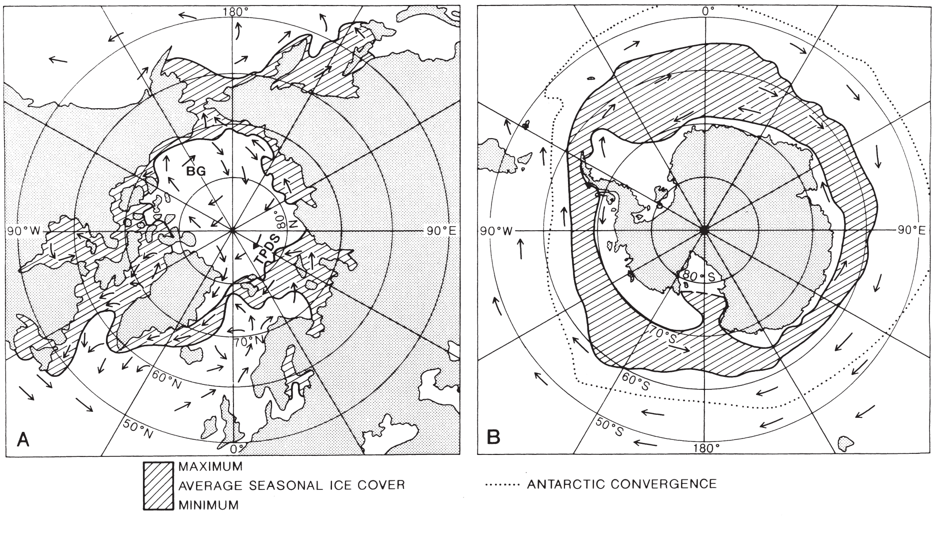

180°
90°W
90°E
BG
TPDS
80°N
70°N
60°N
50°N
0°
A
0°
90°W
90°E
80°S
70°S
60°S
50°S
180°
B
MAXIMUM
AVERAGE SEASONAL ICE COVER
MINIMUM
ANTARCTIC CONVERGENCE

Figure 10.35 (A) Surface currents in the Arctic, together with average autumn minimum and spring maximum sea ice extent. (B) Southern Ocean surface circulation, convergence zones and seasonal ice limits in March and September.

Sources: (A) Maytham (1993), Barry (1983). (B) After Barry (1986), copyright © Plenum Publishing Corporation, New York. Published by permission.

convergence, whereas the sea ice boundaries further south are surrounded by equally cold surface water (Figure 10.35B).

In the South Atlantic, depressions travel at about 1300 km/day near the northern edge of the belt, slowing to 450 to 850 km/day within 5 to 10° latitude of the Antarctic trough. In the Indian Ocean, eastward velocities range from 1000 to 1300 km/day in the belt 40 to 60°S, reaching a maximum in a core at 45 to 50°S. Pacific depressions tend to be similarly located and generally form, travel and decay within a period of about a week. As in the northern hemisphere, high zonal index results from a strong meridional pressure gradient and is associated with wave disturbances propagated eastward at high speed with irregular and often violent winds and zonally oriented fronts. Low zonal index results in high-pressure ridges extending further south and low-pressure centres located further north. However, breakup of the flow, leading to blocking, is less common and less persistent in the southern than in the northern hemisphere.

The southern westerlies are linked to the belt of travelling anticyclones and troughs by cold fronts, which connect the inter-anticyclonic troughs of the latter with the wave depressions of the former. Although storm tracks of the westerlies are usually well to the south of Australia (Figure 10.33), fronts may extend north into the continent, particularly from May, when the first rains occur in the southwest. On average, in midwinter (July), three depression centres skirt the southwest coast. When a deep depression moves to the south of New Zealand, the passage of the cold front causes that country to be covered first by a warm, moist westerly or northerly airflow and then by cooler southerly air. A series of such depressions may follow at intervals of twelve to thirty-six hours, each cold front being followed by progressively colder air. Further east over the South Pacific, the northern fringe of the southern westerlies is influenced by northwesterly winds, changing to west or southwest as depressions move to the south. This weather pattern is interrupted by periods of easterly winds if depression systems track along lower latitudes than usual.

2 The sub-Arctic

The longitudinal differences in mid-latitude climates persist into the northern polar margins, giving rise to maritime and continental subtypes, modified by the extreme radiation conditions in winter and summer. For example, radiation receipts in summer along the Arctic coast of Siberia compare favourably, by virtue of the long daylight, with those in lower mid-latitudes.

The maritime type is found in coastal Alaska, Iceland, northern Norway and adjoining parts of Russia. Winters are cold and stormy, with very short days. Summers are cloudy but mild with mean temperatures of about 10°C. For example, Vardø in northern Norway (70°N, 31°E) has monthly mean temperatures of –6°C in January and 9°C in July, while Anchorage in Alaska (61°N, 150°W) records –11°C and 14°C, respectively. Annual precipitation is generally between 60 and 125 cm, with a cool season maximum and about six months of snow cover.

The weather is controlled mainly by depressions, which are weakly developed in summer. In winter, the Alaskan area is north of the main depression tracks and occluded fronts and upper troughs are prominent, whereas northern Norway is affected by frontal depressions moving into the Barents Sea. Iceland is similar to Alaska, although depressions often move slowly over the area and occlude, whereas others moving northeastward along the Denmark Strait bring mild, rainy weather.

The interior, cold-continental climates have much more severe winters, although precipitation amounts are smaller. At Yellowknife (62°N, 114°W), for instance, the mean January temperature is only –28°C. In these regions, *permafrost* (permanently frozen ground) is widespread and often of great depth. In summer, only the top 1 to 2 m of ground thaw and, as the water cannot drain away readily this 'active layer' often remains waterlogged. Although frost may occur in any month, the long summer days usually give three months with mean temperatures above 10°C, and at many stations extreme maxima reach 32°C or more (see Figure 10.17). The Barren Grounds of Keewatin, however, are much cooler in summer due to the extensive areas of lake and muskeg; only July has a mean daily temperature of 10°C. Labrador–Ungava to the east, between 52° and 62°N, is rather similar with very high cloud amounts and maximum precipitation in June to September (Figure 10.36). In winter, conditions fluctuate between periods of very cold, dry, high-pressure weather and spells of dull, bleak, snowy weather as depressions move eastward or occasionally northward over the area. In spite of the very low mean temperatures in winter, there have been occasions when maxima

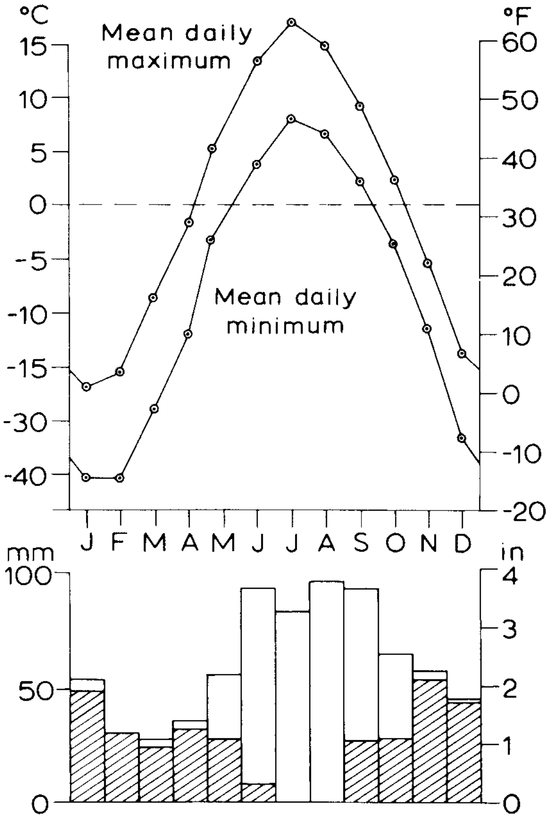


Figure 10.36 Selected climatological data for McGill Sub-Arctic Research Laboratory, Schefferville, PQ, 1955 to 1962. The shaded portions of the precipitation represent snowfall, expressed as water equivalent.

Source: Data from J. B. Shaw and D. G. Tout.

have exceeded 4°C during incursions of maritime Atlantic air. Such variability is not found in eastern Siberia, which is intensely continental, apart from the Kamchatka Peninsula, with the northern hemisphere's *cold pole* located in the remote northeast (see Figure 3.11A). Verkhoyansk and Oimyakon have a January mean of –50°C, and both have recorded an absolute minimum of –67.7°C. Stations located in the valleys of northern Siberia record, on average, strong to extreme frosts 50 per cent of the time during six months of the year, but very warm summers (Figure 10.37).

3 The polar regions

Common to both polar regions is the semi-annual alternation between polar night and polar day, and the prevalence of snow and ice surfaces. These factors control the surface energy budget regimes and low annual temperatures (see Chapter 10B). The polar regions are also energy sinks for the global atmospheric circulation (see Chapter 7C.1), and in both cases they are overlain by large-scale circulation vortices in the middle troposphere and above (see Figures 7.3 and 7.4). In many other respects, the two polar regions differ markedly because of geographical factors. The north polar region comprises the Arctic Ocean, with its almost year-round sea ice cover (see Plate A), surrounding tundra land areas, the Greenland Ice Sheet and numerous smaller ice-caps in Arctic Canada, Svalbard and the Siberian Arctic Islands. In contrast, the south polar region is occupied by the Antarctic continent, with an ice plateau 3 to 4 km high, floating ice shelves in the Ross Sea and Weddell Sea embayments, and surrounded by a seasonally ice-covered ocean. Accordingly, the Arctic and Antarctic are treated separately.

a The Arctic

At 75°N, the sun is below the horizon for about ninety days, from early November until early February. Winter air temperatures over the Arctic Ocean average about –32°C, but they are usually 10–12°C higher some 1000 m above the surface as a result of the strong radiative temperature inversion. The winter season is generally stormy in the Eurasian sector, where low-pressure systems enter the Arctic Basin from the North Atlantic, whereas anticyclonic conditions predominate north of Alaska over the Beaufort and Chukchi seas. In spring, high pressure prevails, centred over the Canadian Arctic Archipelago–Beaufort Sea.

The average 3 to 4 m thickness of sea ice in the Arctic Ocean permits little heat loss to the atmosphere and largely decouples the ocean and atmosphere systems in winter and spring. The winter snow accumulation on the ice averages 0.25 to 0.30 m depth. Only when the ice fractures, forming a *lead*, or where persistent offshore winds and/or upwelling warm ocean water form an area of open water and new ice (called a *polynya*), is the insulating effect of sea ice disrupted. The ice in the western Arctic circulates clockwise in a gyre driven by the mean anticyclonic pressure field. Ice from the northern margin of this gyre, and ice from the Eurasian sector, moves across the North Pole in the Transpolar Drift Stream and exits the Arctic via Fram Strait and the East Greenland current (see Figure 10.35A). This export

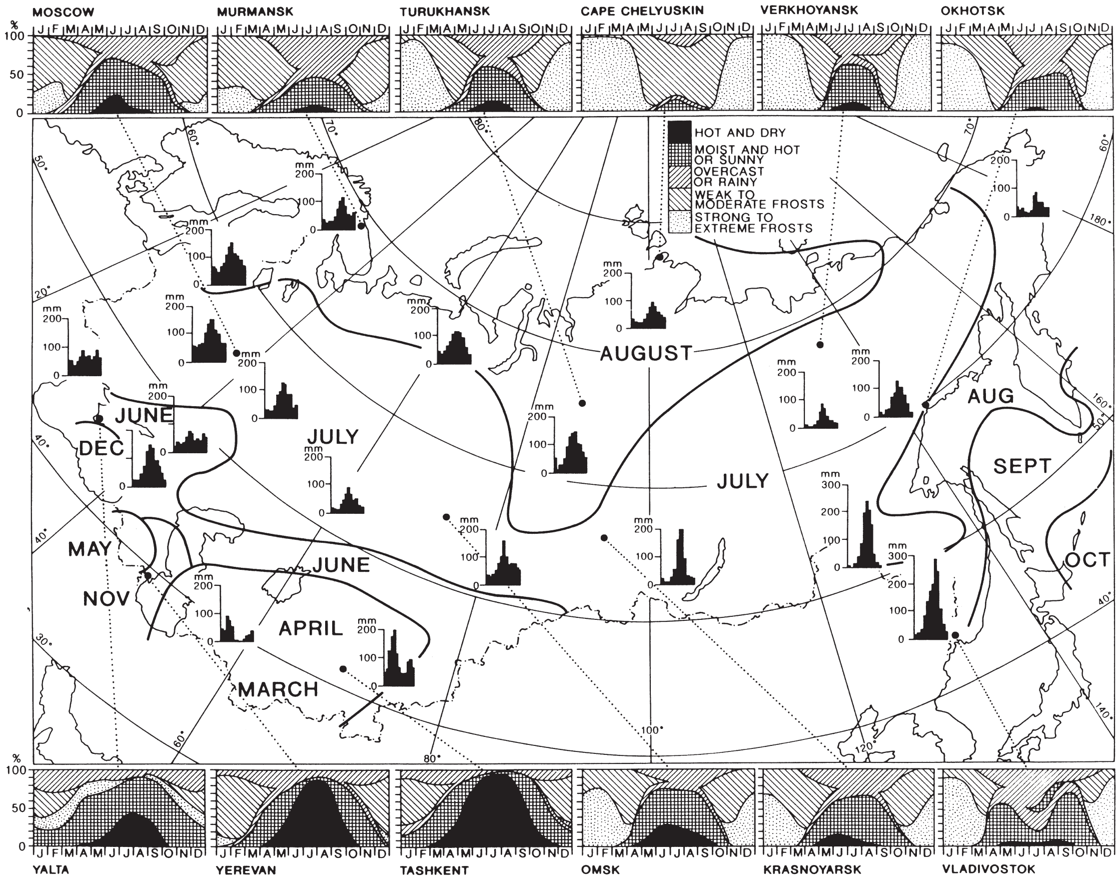

MOSCOW
MURMANSK
TURUKHANSK
CAPE CHELYUSKIN
VERKHOYANSK
OKHOTSK
YALTA
YEREVAN
TASHKENT
OMSK
KRASNOYARSK
VLADIVOSTOK
%
100
50
0
J F M A M J J A S O N D
HOT AND DRY
MOIST AND HOT OR SUNNY
OVERCAST OR RAINY
WEAK TO MODERATE FROSTS
STRONG TO EXTREME FROSTS
mm
300
200
100
0
JUNE
DEC
MAY
NOV
JULY
JUNE
APRIL
MARCH
AUGUST
JULY
AUG
SEPT
OCT
20°
30°
40°
50°
60°
70°
80°
100°
120°
140°
160°
180°

Figure 10.37 Months of maximum precipitation, annual regimes of mean monthly precipitation and annual regimes of mean monthly frequencies of five main weather types in the former USSR showing the climate severity of the Arctic coast.

Source: Reprinted from P. E. Lydolph (1977), with kind permission from Elsevier Science NL, Sara Burgerhartstraat 25, 1055 KV Amsterdam, The Netherlands.

largely balances the annual thermodynamic ice growth in the Arctic Basin. In late summer, the Eurasian shelf seas and the coastal section of the Beaufort Sea are mostly ice-free.

In summer, the Arctic Ocean has mostly overcast conditions with low stratus and fog. Snowmelt and extensive meltwater puddles on the ice keep air temperatures at around freezing. Low-pressure systems tend to predominate, entering the basin from either the North Atlantic or Eurasia. Precipitation may fall as rain or snow, with the largest monthly totals in late summer to early autumn. However, the mean annual net precipitation minus evaporation over the Arctic, based on atmospheric moisture transport calculations, is only about 180 mm.

On Arctic land areas there is a stable snow cover from mid-September until early June, when melt occurs within ten to fifteen days. As a result of the large decrease in surface albedo, the surface energy budget undergoes a dramatic change to large positive values (Figure 10.38). The tundra is generally wet and boggy as a result of the *permafrost table* only 0.5 to 1.0 m below the surface, which prevents drainage. Thus the net radiation is expended primarily for evapotranspiration. Permanently frozen ground is over 500-m thick in parts of Arctic North America and Siberia and extends under the adjacent Arctic coastal shelf areas. Much of the Queen Elizabeth Islands, the Northwest Territories of Canada and the Siberian Arctic Islands is cold, dry polar desert, with gravel or rock surfaces, or

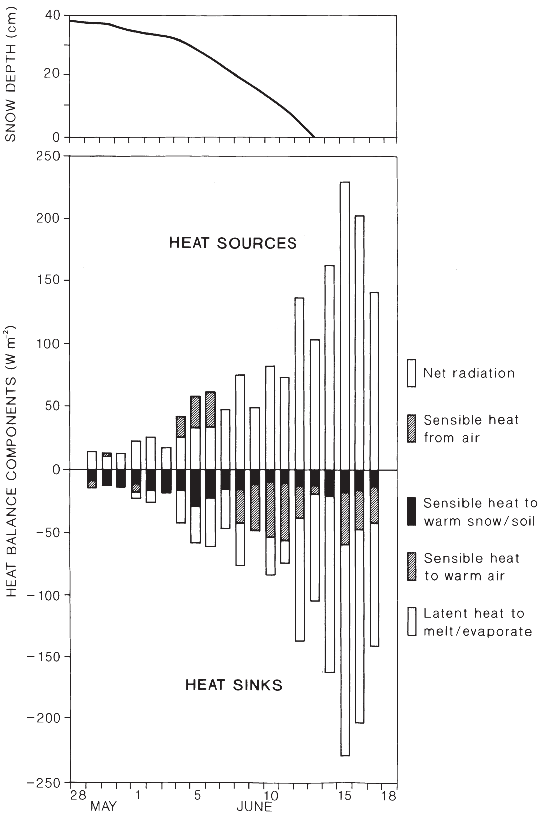


Figure 10.38 The effect of tundra snow cover on the surface energy budget at Barrow, Alaska, during the spring melt. The lower graph shows the daily net radiation and energy terms.

Source: Weller and Holmgren (1974) From *Journal of Applied Meteorology*, by permission of the American Meteorological Society.

ice-caps and glaciers. Nevertheless, 10 to 20 km inland from the Arctic coasts in summer, daytime heating disperses the stratiform cloud and afternoon temperatures may rise to 15 to 20°C.

The Greenland ice sheet, 3 km thick and covering an area of 1.7 million km^2, contains enough water to raise global sea-level by over 7 m if it were all melted. However, there is no melting above the equilibrium line altitude (where accumulation balances ablation), which is at about 2000 m (1000 m) elevation in the south (north) of Greenland. The ice sheet largely creates its own climate. It deflects cyclones moving from Newfoundland, either northward into Baffin Bay or northeastward towards Iceland. These storms give heavy snowfall in the south and on the western slope of the ice sheet. A persistent shallow inversion overlays the ice sheet with down-slope katabatic winds averaging 10 m s^{-1}, except when storm systems cross the area.

b Antarctica

Except for protruding peaks in the Transantarctic Mountains and Antarctic Peninsula, and the dry valleys of Victoria Land (77°S, 160°E), over 97 per cent of Antarctica is covered by a vast continental ice sheet. The ice plateau averages 1800 m elevation in West Antarctica and 2600 m in East Antarctica, where it rises above 4000 m (82°S, 75°E). In September, sea ice averaging 0.5 to 1.0 m in thickness covers twenty million km^2 of the Southern Ocean, but 80 per cent of this melts each summer (Figure 10.35B).

Over the ice sheet, temperatures are almost always well below freezing. The South Pole (2800-m elevation) has a mean summer temperature of –28°C and a winter temperature of –58°C. Vostok (3500 m) recorded –89°C in July 1983, a world record minimum. Mean monthly temperatures are consistently close to their winter value for the six months between equinoxes, creating a so-called ‘coreless winter’ (Figure 10.39). Atmospheric poleward energy transfer balances the radiative loss of energy. Nevertheless, there are considerable day-to-day temperature changes associated with cloud cover increasing downward long-wave radiation, or winds mixing warmer air from above the inversion down to the surface. Over the plateau, the inversion strength is about 20 to 25°C. Precipitation is almost impossible to measure, as a result of blowing and drifting snow. Snow pit studies indicate an annual accumulation varying from less than 50 mm over the high plateaux above 3000 m elevation to 500 to 800 mm in some coastal areas of the Bellingshausen Sea and parts of East Antarctica.

Lows in the southern westerlies have a tendency to spiral clockwise towards Antarctica, especially from south of Australia towards the Ross Sea, from the South Pacific towards the Weddell Sea, and from the western South Atlantic towards Kerguelen Island and East Antarctica (Figure 10.40). Over the adjacent Southern Ocean, cloudiness exceeds 80 per cent year-round at 60 to 65°S (see Figures 3.8 and 5.11) due to the frequent cyclones, but coastal Antarctica has more synoptic variability, associated with alternating lows and highs. Over the interior, cloud cover is generally less than 40 to 50 per cent and half of this amount in winter.

The poleward air circulation in the tropospheric polar vortex (see Figure 7.3) leads to subsiding air over the

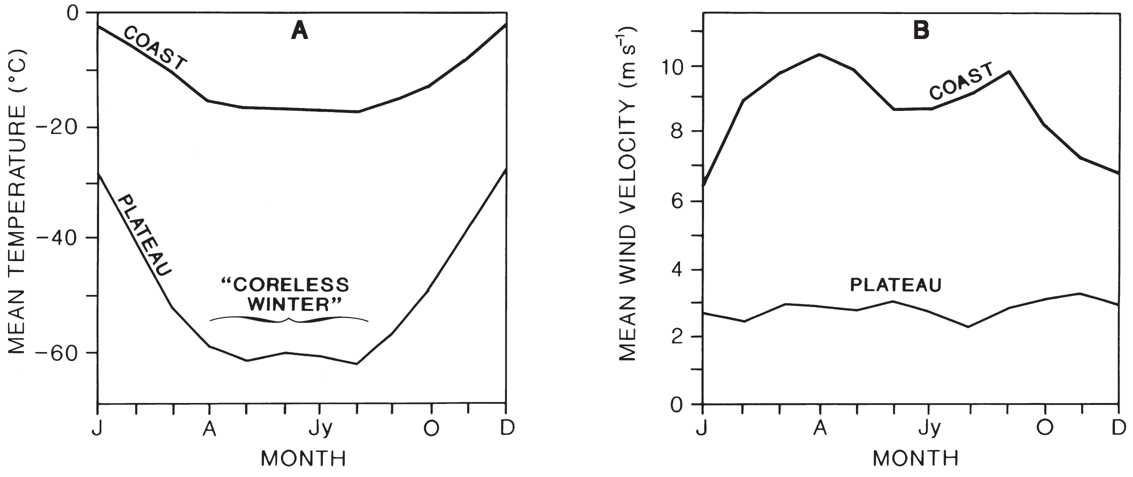


Figure 10.39 Annual course of (A) mean monthly air temperature (°C) and (B) wind speed (m s^{-1}) for 1980 to 1989 at Dome C (3280 m), 74.5°S, 123.0°E (plateau) and D–10, an automatic weather station at 240 m, 66.7°S, 139.8°E (coast).

Source: Stearns *et al*. (1993), by permission of the American Meteorological Society.

Antarctic Plateau and outward flow over the ice sheet surface. The winds represent a balance between gravitational acceleration, Coriolis force (acting to the left), friction and inversion strength. On the slopes of the ice sheet, there are stronger downslope katabatic flows, and extreme speeds are observed in some coastal locations. Cape Denison (67°S, 143°E), Adelie Land, recorded average daily wind speeds of >18 m s^{-1} on over 60 per cent of days in 1912 to 1913.

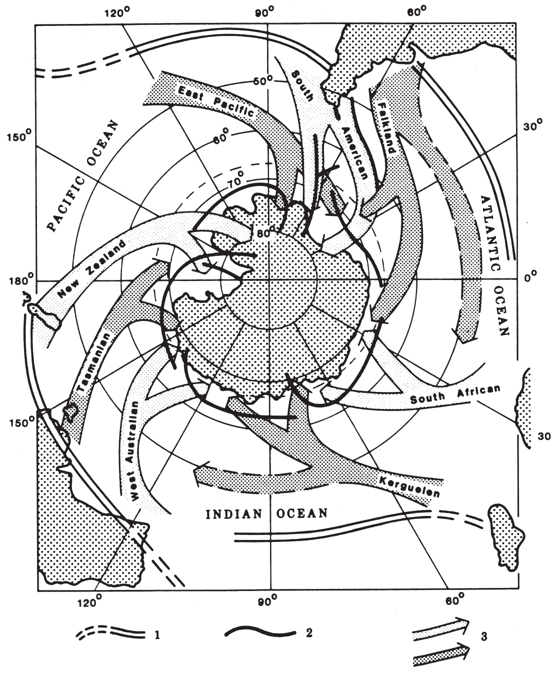


Figure 10.40 Southern hemisphere cyclone paths affecting Antarctica and major frontal zones in winter. 1 Polar front; 2 Antarctic front; 3 Cyclone trajectories.

Source: Carleton (1987), copyright © Chapman and Hall, New York. Reproduced by permission.

SUMMARY

Seasonal changes in the Icelandic low and the Azores high, together with variations in cyclone activity, control the climate of western Europe. The eastward penetration of maritime influences related to these atmospheric processes, and to the warm waters of the North Atlantic current, is illustrated by mild winters, the seasonality of precipitation regimes and indices of continentality. Topographic effects on precipitation, snowfall, length of growing seasons and local winds are particularly marked over the Scandinavian mountains, the Scottish Highlands and the Alps. Weather types in the British Isles may be described in terms of seven basic airflow patterns, the frequency and effects of which vary considerably with season. Recurrent weather spells about a particular date (singularities), such as the tendency for anticyclonic weather in mid-September, have been recognized in Britain, and major seasonal trends in occurrence of airflow regimes can be used to define five natural seasons. Abnormal weather conditions (synoptic anomalies) are associated particularly with blocking anticyclones, which are especially prevalent over Scandinavia and may give rise to cold, dry winters and warm, dry summers.

The climate of North America is similarly affected by pressure systems that generate airmasses of varying seasonal frequency. In winter, the subtropical high-pressure cell extends north over the Great Basin with anticyclonic cP air to the north over Hudson Bay. Major depression belts occur at about 45 to 50°N, from the central USA to the St Lawrence, and along the east coast of Newfoundland. The Arctic front is located over northwest Canada, the polar front lies along the northeast coast of the United States, and between the two a maritime (Arctic) front may occur over Canada. In summer, the frontal zones move north, the Arctic front lying along the north coast of Alaska, Hudson Bay and the St Lawrence being the main locations of depression tracks. Three major North American singularities concern the advent of spring in early March, the midsummer northward displacement of the subtropical high-pressure cell, and the Indian summer of September to October. In western North America, the coast ranges inhibit the eastward spread of precipitation, which may vary greatly locally (e.g. in British Columbia), especially as regards snowfall. The strongly continental interior and east of the continent experiences some moderating effects of Hudson Bay and the Great Lakes in early winter, but with locally significant snow belts. The climate of the east coast is dominated by continental pressure influences. Cold spells are produced by winter outbreaks of high-latitude cA/cP air in the rear of cold fronts. Westerly airflow gives rise to chinook winds in the lee of the Rockies. The major moisture sources of the Gulf of Mexico and the North Pacific produce regions of differing seasonal regime: the winter maximum of the west coast is separated by a transitional intermontane region from the interior, with a general warm season maximum; the northeast has a relatively even seasonal distribution. Moisture gradients, which strongly influence vegetation and soil types, are predominantly east–west in central North America, in contrast to the north–south isotherm pattern.

The semi-arid southwestern United States comes under the complex influence of the Pacific and Bermudas high-pressure cells, having extreme rainfall variations, with winter and summer maxima due mainly to depression and local thunderstorms, respectively. The interior and east coast of the United States is dominated by westerlies in winter and southerly thundery airflows in summer.

The subtropical margin of Europe consists of the Mediterranean region, lying between the belts dominated by the westerlies and the Saharan–Azores high-pressure cells. The collapse of the Azores high-pressure cell in October allows depressions to move and form over the relatively warm Mediterranean Sea, giving well-marked orographic winds (e.g. mistral) and stormy, rainy winters. Spring is an unpredictable season marked by the collapse of the Eurasian high-pressure cell to the north and the strengthening of the Saharan–Azores anticyclone. In summer, the latter gives dry, hot conditions with strong local southerly airstreams (e.g. scirocco). The simple winter rainfall maximum is most characteristic of the eastern and southern Mediterranean, whereas in the north and west, autumn and spring rains become more important. North Africa is dominated by high-pressure conditions. Infrequent rainfall may occur in the north with extratropical systems and to the south with Saharan depressions.

Australian weather is determined largely by travelling anticyclone cells from the southern Indian Ocean and intervening low-pressure troughs and fronts. In the winter months, such frontal troughs give rains in the southeast. The climatic controls in New Zealand are similar to those in southern Australia, but South Island is greatly influenced by depressions in the southern westerlies. Rainfall amounts vary strongly with the relief.

The southern westerlies (30 to 40° to 60 to 70°S) dominate the weather of the Southern Ocean. The strong, mean zonal flow conceals great day-to-day synoptic variability and frequent frontal passages. The persistent low-pressure systems in the Antarctic trough produce the highest year-round zonally averaged global cloudiness.

The Arctic margins have six to nine months of snow cover and extensive areas of permanently frozen ground (permafrost) in the continental interiors, whereas the maritime regions of northern Europe and northern Canada–Alaska have cold, stormy winters and cloudy, milder summers influenced by the passage of depressions. Northeast Siberia has an extreme continental climate.

The Arctic and Antarctic differ markedly because of the types of surface – a perennially ice-covered Arctic Ocean surrounded by land areas and a high Antarctic ice plateau surrounded by the Southern Ocean and thin seasonal sea ice. The Arctic is affected by mid-latitude cyclones from the North Atlantic and in summer from northern Asia. A surface inversion dominates Arctic conditions in winter and year-round over Antarctica. In summer, stratiform cloud blankets the Arctic and temperatures are near 0°C. Subzero temperatures persist year-round on the Antarctic continent and katabatic winds dominate the surface climate. Precipitation amounts are low, except in a few coastal areas, in both polar regions.

DISCUSSION TOPICS

- Compare the climatic conditions in maritime and continental locations in the major continents, and in your own region of the world, using available station data from reference works or the web.
- Consider how major topographic barriers in the Americas, western Europe, New Zealand and so on, modify the patterns of temperature and precipitation in those regions.
- Examine the seasonal distribution of precipitation in different parts of the Mediterranean Basin and consider the reasons for departures from the classical view of a wet winter/dry summer regime.
- Examine the spatial extent of 'Mediterranean-type' climates in other continents and the reasons for these conditions.
- Compare the climatic characteristics and controls of the two polar regions.
- What are the primary causes of the world's major deserts?

FURTHER READING

Books

Blüthgen, J. (1966) *Allgemeine Klimageographie* (2nd edn), W. de Gouyter, Berlin, 720pp.

Bryson, R. A. and Hare, F. K. (eds) (1974) *Climates of North America*, World Survey of Climatology 11, Elsevier, Amsterdam, 420pp. [Thorough account of the circulation systems and climatic processes; climates of Canada, the USA and Mexico are treated individually; numerous statistical data tables.]

Chagnon, S. A. (ed.) (1996) *The Great Flood of 1993*, Westview Press, Boulder, CO, 321pp. [Account of the Mississippi floods of 1993.]

Chandler, T. J. and Gregory, S. (eds) (1976) *The Climate of the British Isles*, Longman, London, 390pp. [Detailed treatment by element as well as synoptic climatology, climate change, coastal, upland and urban climates; many tables and references.]

Evenari, M., Shanan, L. and Tadmor, N. (1971) *The Negev*, Harvard University Press, Cambridge, MA, 345pp. [Climate and environment of the Negev desert.]

Flohn, H. (1954) *Witterung und Klima in Mitteleuropa*, Zurich, 218pp. [Synoptic climatological approach to European climatic conditions.]

Gentilli, J. (ed.) (1971) *Climates of Australia and New Zealand, World Survey of Climatology* 13, Elsevier, Amsterdam, 405pp. [Standard climatology including airmasses and synoptic systems.]

Goudie, A. and Wilkinson, J. (1977) *The Warm Desert Environment*, Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, 88pp.

Green, C. R. and Sellers, W. D. (1964) *Arizona Climate*, University of Arizona Press, Tucson, 503pp. [Details on the climatic variability in the State of Arizona.]

Hare, F. K. and Thomas, M. K. (1979) *Climate Canada* (2nd edn), Wiley, Canada, 230pp.

Hulme, M. and Barrow, E. (eds) (1997) *Climates of the British Isles. Present, Past and Future*, Routledge, London, 454pp. [Treats overall modern climatic conditions in terms of synoptic climatology, based on H.H. Lamb; reconstruction of historical conditions and future projections; many useful data tables.]

Linacre, W. and Hobbs, J. (1977) *The Australian Climatic Environment*, Wiley, Brisbane, 354pp. [Much broader than its title; presents weather and climate from a southern hemisphere perspective, including chapters on the climates of the southern hemisphere as well as of Australia; a chapter on climatic change and four chapters on applied climatology.]

Lydolph, P. E. (1977) *Climates of the Soviet Union, World Survey of Climatology* 7, Elsevier, Amsterdam, 435pp. [The most comprehensive survey of climate for this region in English; numerous tables of climate statistics.]

Manley, G. (1952) *Climate and the British Scene*, Collins, London, 314pp. [Classic description of British climate and its human context.]

Schwerdtfeger, W. (1984) *Weather and Climate of the Antarctic*, Elsevier, Amsterdam, 261pp. [A specialized work covering radiation balance and temperature, surface winds, circulation and disturbances, moisture budget components and ice mass budget.]

Sturman, A. P. and Tapper, N. J. (1996) *The Weather and Climate of Australia and New Zealand*, Oxford University Press, Oxford, 496pp. [Undergraduate text on basic processes of weather and climate in the regional context of Australia-New Zealand; covers the global setting, synoptic and sub-synoptic systems and climate change.]

Trewartha, G. T. and Horne, L. H. (1980) *An Introduction to Climate* (5th edn), McGraw-Hill, New York, 416pp.

Wallén, C. C. (ed.) (1970) *Climates of Northern and Western Europe, World Survey of Climatology* **5**, Elsevier, Amsterdam, 253pp. [Standard climatological handbook.]

Articles

Adam, D. K. and Comrie, A. C. (1997) The North American monsoon. *Bull. Amer. Met. Soc*. 78, 2197–213.

Axelrod, D. I. (1992) What is an equable climate? *Palaeogeogr., Palaeoclim., Palaeoecol*. 91, 1–12.

Balling, R. C. Jr. (1985) Warm seasonal nocturnal precipitation in the Great Plains of the United States. *J. Climate Appl. Met*. 24, 1383–7.

Barry, R. G. (1963) Aspects of the synoptic climatology of central south England. *Met. Mag*. 92, 300–8.

Barry, R. G. (1967) The prospects for synoptic climatology: a case study. In Steel, R. W. and Lawton, R. (eds) *Liverpool Essays in Geography*, Longman, London, pp. 85–106.

Barry, R. G. (1973) A climatological transect on the east slope of the Front Range, Colorado. *Arct. Alp. Res*. 5, 89–110.

Barry, R. G. (1983) Arctic Ocean ice and climate: perspectives on a century of polar research. *Ann. Assn Amer. Geog*. 73(4), 485–501.

Barry, R. G. (1986) Aspects of the meteorology of the seasonal sea ice zone. In Untersteiner, N. (ed.) *The Geophysics of Sea Ice*, Plenum Press, New York, pp. 993–1020.

Barry, R. G. (1996) Arctic. In Schneider, S. H. (ed.) *Encyclopedia of Climate and Weather*, Oxford University Press, New York, pp. 43–7.

Barry, R. G. (2002) Dynamic and synoptic climatology. In Orme, A. R. (ed.) *The Physical Geography of North America*, Oxford University Press, Oxford, pp. 98–111.

Barry, R. G. and Hare, F. K. (1974) Arctic climate. In Ives, J. D. and Barry, R. G. (eds) *Arctic and Alpine Environments*, Methuen, London, pp. 17–54.

Belasco, J. E. (1952) Characteristics of air masses over the British Isles, Meteorological Office. *Geophysical Memoirs* 11(87), 34pp.

Blackall, R. M. and Taylor, P. L. (1993) The thunderstorms of 19/20 August 1992 – a view from the United Kingdom. *Met. Mag*. 122, 189.

Boast, R. and McQuingle, J. B. (1972) Extreme weather conditions over Cyprus during April 1971. *Met. Mag*. 101, 137–53.

Borchert, J. (1950) The climate of the central North American grassland. *Ann. Assn Amer. Geog*. 40, 1–39.

Browning, K. A. and Hill, F. F. (1981) Orographic rain. *Weather* 36, 326–9.

Bryson, R. A. (1966) Air masses, streamlines and the boreal forest. *Geog. Bull*. 8, 228–69.

Bryson, R. A. and Lahey, J. F. (1958) *The March of the Seasons*, Meteorological Department, University of Wisconsin, 41pp.

Burbridge, F. E. (1951) The modification of continental polar air over Hudson Bay. *Quart. J. Met. Soc*. 77, 365–74.

Butzer, K. W. (1960) Dynamic climatology of large-scale circulation patterns in the Mediterranean area. *Meteorologische Rundschau* 13, 97–105.

Carleton, A. M. (1986) Synoptic-dynamic character of 'bursts' and 'breaks' in the southwest US summer precipitation singularity. *J. Climatol*. 6, 605–23.

Carleton, A. M. (1987) Antarctic climates. In Oliver, J. E. and Fairbridge, R. W. (eds) *The Encyclopedia of Climatology*, Van Nostrand Reinhold, New York, pp. 44–64.

Chinn, T. J. (1979) How wet is the wettest of the West Coast? *New Zealand Alp. J*. 32, 84–7.

Climate Prediction Center (1996) Jet streams, pressure distribution and climate for the USA during the winters of 1995–6 and 1994–5. *The Climate Bull*. 96(3), US Dept of Commerce.

Cooter, E. J. and Leduc, S. K. (1995) Recent frost date trends in the north-eastern USA. *Int. J. Climatol.* 15, 65–75.

Derecki, J. A. (1976) Heat storage and advection in Lake Erie. *Water Resources Research* 12(6), 1144–50.

Douglas, M.W. *et al*. (1993) The Mexican monsoon. *J. Climate* 6(8), 1665–77.

Driscoll, D. M. and Yee Fong, J. M. (1992) Continentality: a basic climatic parameter re-examined. *Int. J. Climatol*. 12, 185–92.

Durrenberger, R. W. and Ingram, R. S. (1978) Major storms and floods in Arizona 1862–1977. State of Arizona, Office of the State Climatologist, Climatological Publications, Precipitation Series No. 4, 44pp.

Easterling, D. R. and Robinson, P. J. (1985) The diurnal variation of thunderstorm activity in the United States. *J. Climate Appl. Met*. 24, 1048–58.

Elsom, D. M. and Meaden, G. T. (1984) Spatial and temporal distribution of tornadoes in the United Kingdom 1960–1982. *Weather* 39, 317–23.

Environmental Science Services Administration (1968) *Climatic Atlas of the United States*. US Department of Commerce, Washington, DC, 80pp.

Ferguson, E. W., Ostby, F. P., Leftwich, P. W. Jr. and Hales, J. E. Jr. (1986) The tornado season of 1984. *Monthly Weather Review* 114, 624–35.

Forrest, B. and Nishenko, S. (1996) Losses due to natural hazards. *Natural Hazards Observer* 21(1), University of Colorado, Boulder, 16–17.

Galloway, J. L. (1958a) The three-front model: its philosophy, nature, construction and use. *Weather* 13, 3–10.

Galloway, J. L. (1958b) The three-front model, the tropopause and the jet stream. *Weather* 13, 395–403.

Galloway, J. L. (1960) The three-front model, the developing depression and the occluding process. *Weather* 15, 293–309.

Gorcynski, W. (1920) Sur le calcul du degré du continentalisme et son application dans la climatologie. *Geografiska Annaler* 2, 324–31.

Hales, J. E. Jr. (1974) South-western United States summer monsoon source – Gulf of Mexico or Pacific Ocean. *J. Appl. Met*. 13, 331–42.

Hare, F. K. (1968) The Arctic. *Quart. J. Roy. Met. Soc*. 74, 439–59.

Hill, F. F., Browning, K. A. and Bader, M. J. (1981) Radar and rain gauge observations of orographic rain over South Wales. *Quart. J. Roy. Met. Soc*. 107, 643–70.

Horn, L. H. and Bryson, R. A. (1960) Harmonic analysis of the annual march of precipitation over the United States. *Ann. Assn Amer. Geog*. 50, 157–71.

Hulme, M. *et al*. (1995) Construction of a 1961–1990 European climatology for climate change modelling and impact applications. *Int. J. Climatol*. 15, 1333–63.

Huttary, J. (1950) Die Verteilung der Niederschläge auf die Jahreszeiten im Mittelmeergebeit. *Meteorologische Rundschau* 3, 111–19.

Klein, W. H. (1963) Specification of precipitation from the 700 mb circulation. *Monthly Weather Review* 91, 527–36.

Knappenberger, P. C. and Michaels, P. J. (1993) Cyclone tracks and wintertime climate in the mid-Atlantic region of the USA. *Int. J. Climatol*. 13, 509–31.

Knox, J. L. and Hay, J. E. (1985) Blocking signatures in the northern hemisphere: frequency distribution and interpretation. *J. Climatology* 5, 1–16.

Lamb, H. H. (1950) Types and spells of weather around the year in the British Isles: annual trends, seasonal structure of the year, singularities. *Quart. J. Roy. Met. Soc*. 76, 393–438.

Leffler, R. J. *et al*. (2002) Evaluation of a national seasonal snowfall record at the Mount Baker, Washington, ski area. *Nat. Wea. Digest* **25**, 15–20.

Longley, R. W. (1967) The frequency of Chinooks in Alberta. *The Albertan Geographer* 3, 20–2.

Lott, J. N. (1994) The US summer of 1993: a sharp contrast in weather extremes. *Weather* 49, 370–83.

Lumb, F. E. (1961) Seasonal variations of the sea surface temperature in coastal waters of the British Isles. Met. Office Sci. Paper No. 6, MO 685, 21pp.

McGinnigle, J. B. (2002) The 1952 Lynmouth floods revisited. *Weather* 57(7), 235–41.

Manley, G. (1944) Topographical features and the climate of Britain. *Geog. J*. 103, 241–58.

Manley, G. (1945) The effective rate of altitude change in temperate Atlantic climates. *Geog. Rev*. 35, 408–17.

Mather, J. R. (1985) The water budget and the distribution of climates, vegetation and soils. *Publications in Climatology* 38(2), Center for Climatic Research, University of Delaware, Newark, 36pp.

Maytham, A. P. (1993) Sea ice – a view from the Ice Bench. *Met. Mag*. 122, 190–5.

Meteorological Office (1952) *Climatological Atlas of the British Isles*. MO 488, HMSO, London, 139pp.

Meteorological Office (1962) *Weather in the Mediterranean I, General Meteorology* (2nd edn). MO 391, HMSO, London, 362pp.

Meteorological Office (1964a) *Weather in the Mediterranean II* (2nd edn). MO 391b, HMSO, London, 372pp.

Meteorological Office (1964b) *Weather in Home Fleet Waters I, The Northern Seas*, Part 1, MO 732a. HMSO, London, 265pp.

Namias, J. (1964) Seasonal persistence and recurrence of European blocking during 1958–60. *Tellus* 16, 394–407.

Nicholson, S. E. and Flohn, H. (1980) African environmental and climatic changes and the general atmospheric circulation in late Pleistocene and Holocene. *Climatic Change* 2, 313–48.

Nickling, W. G. and Brazel, A.J. (1984) Temporal and spatial characteristics of Arizona dust storms (1965–1980). *Int. J. Climatol.* 4, 645–60.

Nkemdirim, L. C. (1996) Canada's chinook belt. *Int. J. Climatol*. 16(4), 427–39.

O'Hare, G. and Sweeney, J. (1993) Lamb's circulation types and British weather: an evaluation. *Geography* 78, 43–60.

Palz, W. (ed.) (1984) *European Solar Radiation Atlas*, 2 vols (2nd edn), Verlag Tüv Rheinland, Cologne, 297 and 327pp.

Parrett, C., Melcher, N. B. and James, R. W. Jr. (1993) Flood discharges in the upper Mississippi River basin. *U.S. Geol. Sur. Circular* 112–A, 14pp.

Peilke, R. Jr. and Carbone, R. E. (2002) Weather impacts, forecasts and policy: an integrated perspective. *Bull. Amer. Met. Soc*. 83(3), 383–403.

Poltaraus, B. V. and Staviskiy, D. B. (1986) The changing continentality of climate in central Russia. *Soviet Geography* 27, 51–8.

Rayner, J. N. (1961) *Atlas of Surface Temperature Frequencies for North America and Greenland*, Arctic Meteorological Research Group, McGill University, Montreal.

Rex, D. F. (1950–1) The effect of Atlantic blocking action upon European climate. *Tellus* 2, 196–211 and 275–301; 3, 100–11.

Salinger, M. J., Basher, R. E., Fitzharris, B. B., Hay, J. E., Jones, P. D., McVeigh, J. P. and Schmidely-Leleu, I. (1995) Climate trends in the southwest Pacific. *Int. J. Climatol*. 15, 285–302.

Schick, A. P. (1971) A desert flood. *Jerusalem Studies in Geography* 2, 91–155.

Schwartz, M. D. (1995) Detecting structural climate change: an air mass-based approach in the north-central United States, 1958–92. *Ann. Assn Amer. Geog*. 76, 553–68.

Schwartz, R. M. and Schmidlin, T. W. (2002) Climatology of blizzards in the conterminous United States, 1959–2000. *J. Climate* 15(13), 1765–72.

Sellers, P. *et al*. (1995) The boreal ecosystem–atmosphere study (BOREAS): an overview and early results from the 1994 field year. *Bull. Am. Met. Soc*. 76, 1549–77.

Serreze, M. C. *et al*. (1993) Characteristics of arctic synoptic activity, 1952–1989. *Met. Atmos. Phys*. 51, 147–64.

Shaw, E. M. (1962) An analysis of the origins of precipitation in Northern England, 1956–60. *Quart. J. Roy. Met. Soc*. 88, 539–47.

Sheppard, P. R. *et al*. (2002) The climate of the US Southwest. *Clim. Res*., 21(3), 219–38.

Sivall, T. (1957) Sirocco in the Levant. *Geografiska Annaler* 39, 114–42.

Stearns, C. R. *et al*. (1993) Mean cluster data for Antarctic weather studies. In Bromwich, D. H. and Stearns, C. R. (eds) *Antarctic Meteorology and Climatology: Studies Based on Automatic Weather Stations* Antarctic Research Series, Am. Geophys. Union 61, 1–21.

Stone, J. (1983) Circulation type and the spatial distribution of precipitation over central, eastern and southern England. *Weather* 38, 173–7, 200–5.

Storey, A. M. (1982) A study of the relationship between isobaric patterns over the UK and central England temperature and England–Wales rainfall. *Weather* 37, 2–11, 46, 88–9, 122, 151, 170, 208, 244, 260, 294, 327, 360.

Sumner, E. J. (1959) Blocking anticyclones in the Atlantic–European sector of the northern hemisphere. *Met. Mag*. 88, 300–11.

Sweeney, J. C. and O'Hare, G. P. (1992) Geographical variations in precipitation yields and circulation types in Britain and Ireland. *Trans. Inst. Brit. Geog*. (n.s.) 17, 448–63.

Thomas, M. K. (1964) *A Survey of Great Lakes Snowfall*, Great Lakes Research Division, University of Michigan, Publication No. 11, pp. 294–310.

Thompson, R. S., Anderson, K. H. and Bartlein, P. J. (1999) Climate – Vegetation atlas of North America. US Geological Survey Professional Paper 1650 A and B.

Thorn, P. (1965) *The Agro-Climatic Atlas of Europe*. Elsevier, Amsterdam.

Thornthwaite, C. W. and Mather, J. R. (1955) The moisture balance. *Publications in Climatology* 8(1), Laboratory of Climatology, Centerton, NJ, 104pp.

Tout, D. G. and Kemp, V. (1985) The named winds of Spain. *Weather* 40, 322–9.

Trenberth, K. E. and Guillemot, C. J. (1996) Physical processes involved in the 1988 drought and 1993 floods in North America. *J. Climate* 9(6), 1288–98.

Troen, I. and Petersen, E. L. (1989) *European Wind Atlas*, Commission of the Economic Community, Risø National Laboratory, Roskilde, Denmark, 656pp.

United States Weather Bureau (1947) *Thunderstorm Rainfall*, Vicksburg, MI, 331pp.

Villmow, J. R. (1956) The nature and origin of the Canadian dry belt. *Ann. Assn Amer. Geog*. 46, 221–32.

Visher, S. S. (1954) *Climatic Atlas of the United States*, Harvard University Press, Cambridge, MA, 403pp.

Wallace, J. M. (1975) Diurnal variations in precipitation and thunderstorm frequency over the coterminous United States. *Monthly Weather Review* 103, 406–19.

Wallén, C. C. (1960) Climate. In Somme, A. (ed.) *The Geography of Norden*, Cappelens Forlag, Oslo, pp. 41–53.

Weller, G. and Holmgren, B. (1974) The microclimates of the arctic tundra. *J. App. Met*. 13(8), 854–62.

Woodroffe, A. (1988) Summary of the weather pattern developments of the storm of 15/16 October 1987. *Met. Mag*. 117, 99–103.

Wratt, D. S. *et al*. (1996) The New Zealand Southern Alps Experiment. *Bull. Amer. Met. Soc*. 77(4), 683–92.

11

Tropical weather and climate

Learning objectives
When you have read this chapter you will:

- ☐ Understand the characteristics and significance of the intertropical convergence zone,
- ☐ Be familiar with the principal weather systems that occur in low latitudes and their distribution,
- ☐ Know some of the diurnal and local effects that influence tropical weather,
- ☐ Know where and how tropical cyclones tend to occur,
- ☐ Understand the basic mechanisms and characteristics of El Niño and La Niña events.

Tropical climates are of especial geographical interest because 50 per cent of the surface of the globe lies between latitudes 30°N and 30°S, and over 75 per cent of the world's population inhabit climatically tropical lands. This chapter first describes the trade wind systems, the intertropical convergence zone and tropical weather systems. The major monsoon regimes are then examined and the climate of Amazonia. The effects of the alternating phases of the El Niño – Southern Oscillation in the equatorial Pacific Ocean are discussed as well as other causes of climatic variation in the tropics. Finally, the problems of forecasting tropical weather are briefly considered.

The latitudinal limits of tropical climates vary greatly with longitude and season, and tropical weather conditions may reach well beyond the Tropics of Cancer and Capricorn. For example, the summer monsoon extends to 30°N in South Asia, but to only 20°N in West Africa, while in late summer and autumn tropical hurricanes may affect 'extra-tropical' areas of East Asia and eastern North America. Not only do the tropical margins extend seasonally poleward, but also in the zone between the major subtropical high-pressure cells there is frequent interaction between temperate and tropical disturbances. Elsewhere and on other occasions, as illustrated in Plate 23 over the western North Pacific, distinct tropical and mid-latitude storms are observed. In general, however, the tropical atmosphere is far from being a discrete entity and any meteorological or climatological boundaries must be arbitrary. There are nevertheless a number of distinctive features of tropical weather, as discussed below.

Several basic factors help to shape tropical weather processes and also affect their analysis and interpretation. First, the Coriolis parameter approaches zero at the equator, so that winds may depart considerably from geostrophic balance. Pressure gradients are also generally weak, except for tropical storm systems. For these reasons, tropical weather maps usually depict streamlines, not isobars or geopotential heights. Second, temperature gradients are characteristically weak. Spatial and temporal variations in moisture content are much more significant diagnostic characteristics of climate. Third, diurnal land/sea breeze regimes play a major role in coastal climates, in part as a result of the almost constant day length and strong solar heating. There are also semi-diurnal pressure oscillations of 2 to 3 mb, with minima around 04:00 and 16:00 hours and maxima around 10:00 and 22:00 hours. Fourth, the annual regime of incoming solar radiation, with the sun overhead at the equator in March and September and over the Tropics at the respective summer solstices, is reflected in the seasonal variations of rainfall at some stations. However, dynamic factors greatly modify this conventional explanation.

A THE INTERTROPICAL CONVERGENCE

The tendency for the trade wind systems of the two hemispheres to converge in the equatorial (low-pressure) trough has already been noted (see Chapter 7B). Views on the exact nature of this feature have been subject to continual revision. From the 1920s to the 1940s, the frontal concepts developed in mid-latitudes were applied in the tropics, and the streamline confluence of the northeast and southeast trades was identified as the intertropical front (ITF). Over continental areas such as West Africa and South Asia, where in summer hot, dry continental tropical air meets cooler, humid equatorial air, this term has some limited applicability (Figure 11.1). Sharp temperature and moisture gradients may occur, but the front is seldom a weather-producing mechanism of the mid-latitude type. Elsewhere in low latitudes, true fronts (with a marked density contrast) are rare.

Recognition of the significance of wind field convergence in tropical weather production in the 1940s and 1950s led to the designation of the trade wind convergence as the intertropical convergence zone (ITCZ). This feature is apparent on a mean streamline map, but areas of convergence grow and decay, either in situ or within disturbances moving westward (see Plates 1 and 24), over periods of a few days. Moreover, convergence is infrequent even as a climatic feature in the doldrum zones (see Figure 7.13). Satellite data show that over the oceans the position and intensity of the ITCZ varies greatly from day to day.

The ITCZ is predominantly an oceanic feature where it tends to be located over the warmest surface waters. Hence, small differences of sea-surface temperature may cause considerable changes in the location of the ITCZ. A sea-surface temperature of at least 27.5°C seems to provide a threshold for organized convective activity; above this temperature organized convection is essentially competitive between different regions potentially available to form part of a continuous ITCZ. The convective rainfall belt of the ITCZ has very sharply defined latitudinal limits. For example, along the West African coast the following mean annual rainfalls are recorded:

12°N	1939 mm
15°N	542 mm
18°N	123 mm

In other words, moving southwards into the ITCZ, precipitation increases by 440 per cent in a meridional distance of only 330 km.

As climatic features, the equatorial trough and the ITCZ are asymmetric about the equator, lying on average to the north. They also move seasonally away from the equator (see Figure 9.1) in association with the

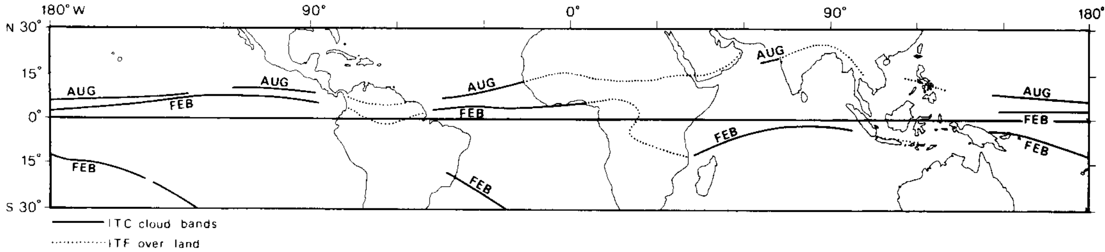


Figure 11.1 The position of the equatorial trough (intertropical convergence zone or intertropical front in some sectors) in February and August. The cloud band in the southwest Pacific in February is known as the South Pacific convergence zone; over South Asia and West Africa the term monsoon trough is used.

Sources: After Saha (1973), Riehl (1954) and Yoshino (1969).

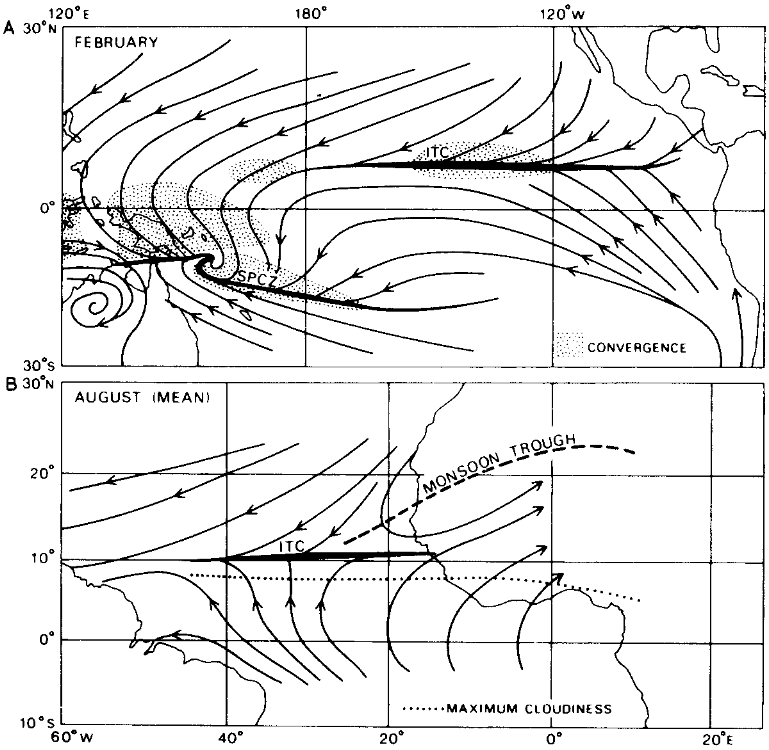


Figure 11.2 Illustrations of (A) streamline convergence forming an intertropical convergence (ITC) and South Pacific convergence zone (SPCZ) in February, and (B) the contrasting patterns of monsoon trough over West Africa, streamline convergence over the central tropical North Atlantic, and axis of maximum cloudiness to the south for August.

Sources: (A) C. S. Ramage, personal communication (1986). (B) From Sadler (1975a).

thermal equator (zone of seasonal maximum temperature). The location of the thermal equator is related directly to solar heating (see Figures 11.2 and 3.11), and there is an obvious link between this and the equatorial trough in terms of thermal lows. However, if the ITC were to coincide with the equatorial trough then this zone of cloudiness would decrease incoming solar radiation, reducing the surface heating needed to maintain the low-pressure trough. In fact, this does not happen. Solar energy is available to heat the surface because the maximum surface wind convergence, uplift and cloud cover is commonly located several degrees equatorward of the trough. In the Atlantic (Figure 11.2B), for example, the cloudiness maximum is distinct from the equatorial trough in August. Figure 11.2 illustrates regional differences in the equatorial trough and ITCZ. Convergence of two trade wind systems occurs over the central North Atlantic in August and the eastern North Pacific in February. In contrast, the equatorial trough is defined by easterlies on its poleward side and westerlies on its equatorward side over West Africa in August and over New Guinea in February.

The dynamics of low-latitude atmosphere–ocean circulations are also involved. The convergence zone in the central equatorial Pacific moves seasonally between about 4°N in March to April and 8°N in September, giving a single pronounced rainfall maximum in March to April. This appears to be a response to the relative strengths of the northeast and southeast trades. The ratio of South Pacific/North Pacific trade wind strength exceeds 2 in September but falls to 0.6 in April. Interestingly, the ratio varies in phase with the ratio of Antarctic–Arctic sea ice areas; Antarctic ice is at a maximum in September when Arctic ice is at its minimum. The convergence axis is often aligned close to the zone of maximum sea-surface temperatures, but is not anchored to it. Indeed, the SST maximum located within the equatorial counter-current (see Figure 7.29) is a result of the interactions between the trade winds and horizontal and vertical motions in the ocean-surface layer.

Aircraft studies show the complex structure of the central Pacific ITCZ. When moderately strong trades provide horizontal moisture convergence, convective cloud bands form, but the convergent lifting may be insufficient for rainfall in the absence of upper-level divergence. Moreover, although the southeast trades cross the equator, the mean monthly resultant winds between 115° and 180°W have, throughout the year, a more southerly component north of the equator and a more northerly one south of it, giving a zone of divergence (due to the sign change in the Coriolis parameter) along the equator.

In the southwestern sectors of the Pacific and Atlantic Oceans, satellite cloudiness studies indicate the presence of two semi-permanent confluence zones (see Figure 11.1). These do not occur in the eastern South Atlantic and South Pacific, where there are cold ocean currents. The South Pacific convergence zone (SPCZ) shown in the western South Pacific in February (summer) is now recognized as an important discontinuity and zone of maximum cloudiness (see Plate 24). It extends from the eastern tip of Papua New Guinea to about 30°S, 120°W. At sea-level, moist northeasterlies, west of the South Pacific subtropical anticyclone, converge with southeasterlies ahead of high-pressure systems moving eastward from Australia/New Zealand. The low-latitude section west of 180° longitude is part of the ITCZ system, related to warm surface waters. However, the maximum precipitation is south of the axis of maximum sea-surface temperature, and the surface convergence is south of the precipitation maximum in the central South Pacific. The southeastward orientation of the SPCZ is caused by interactions with the mid-latitude westerlies. Its southeastern end is associated with wave disturbances and jet stream clouds on the South Pacific polar front. The link across the subtropics appears to reflect upper-level tropical mid-latitude transfers of moisture and energy, especially during subtropical storm situations. Hence the SPCZ shows substantial short-term and interannual variability in its location and development. The interannual variability is strongly associated with the phase of the Southern Oscillation (see p. 145). During the northern summer the SPCZ is poorly developed, whereas the ITCZ is strong all across the Pacific. During the southern summer the SPCZ is well developed, with a weak ITCZ over the western tropical Pacific. After April the ITCZ strengthens over the western Pacific, and the SPCZ weakens as it moves westward and equatorward. In the Atlantic, the ITCZ normally begins its northward movement in April to May, when South Atlantic sea-surface temperatures start to fall and both the subtropical high-pressure cell and the southeast trades intensify. In cold, dry years this movement can begin as early as February and in warm, wet years as late as June.

B TROPICAL DISTURBANCES

It was not until the 1940s that detailed accounts were given of types of tropical disturbances other than the long-recognized tropical cyclone. Our view of tropical weather systems was revised radically following the advent of operational meteorological satellites in the 1960s. Special programmes of meteorological measurements at the surface and in the upper air, together with aircraft and ship observations, have been carried out in the Pacific and Indian Oceans, the Caribbean Sea and the tropical eastern Atlantic.

Five categories of weather system may be distinguished according to their space and timescales (see Figure 11.3). The smallest, with a life span of a few hours, is the individual cumulus, 1 to 10 km in diameter, which is generated by dynamically induced convergence in the trade wind boundary layer. In fair weather, cumulus clouds are generally aligned in ‘cloud streets’, more or less parallel to the wind direction (see Plate 25), or form polygonal honeycomb-pattern cells, rather than scattered at random. This seems to be related to the boundary-layer structure and wind speed (see p. 97). There is little interaction between the air layers above and below the cloud base under these conditions, but in disturbed weather conditions updrafts and downdrafts cause interaction between the two layers, which intensifies the convection. Individual cumulus towers, associated with violent thunderstorms, develop particularly in the intertropical convergence zone, sometimes reaching above 20 km in height and having updrafts of 10 to 14 m s^{-1}. In this way, the smallest scale of system can aid the development of larger disturbances. Convection is most active over sea surfaces with temperatures exceeding 27°C, but above 32°C convection ceases to increase, due to feedbacks that are not yet fully understood.

The second category of system develops through cumulus clouds becoming grouped into mesoscale convective areas (MCAs) up to 100 km across (see Figure 11.3). In turn, several MCAs may comprise a *cloud cluster* 100 to 1000 km in diameter. These sub-synoptic-scale systems were initially identified from satellite images as amorphous cloud areas; they have been studied primarily from satellite data over the tropical oceans (Plate 1 and Plate 24). Their definition is rather arbitrary, but they may extend over an area 2° square up to 12° square. It is important to note that the peak convective activity has passed when cloud cover

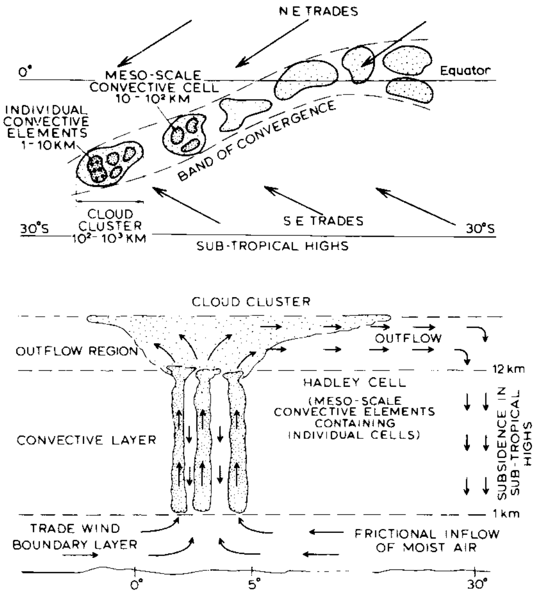

N E TRADES
0°
MESO-SCALE CONVECTIVE CELL 10 - 10² KM
Equator
INDIVIDUAL CONVECTIVE ELEMENTS 1 - 10KM
BAND OF CONVERGENCE
CLOUD CLUSTER 10² - 10³ KM
30°S
S E TRADES
30°S
SUB-TROPICAL HIGHS
CLOUD CLUSTER
OUTFLOW REGION
OUTFLOW
12 km
HADLEY CELL
(MESO-SCALE CONVECTIVE ELEMENTS CONTAINING INDIVIDUAL CELLS)
CONVECTIVE LAYER
SUBSIDENCE IN SUB-TROPICAL HIGHS
1 km
TRADE WIND BOUNDARY LAYER
FRICTIONAL INFLOW OF MOIST AIR
0°
5°
30°

Figure 11.3 The mesoscale and synoptic structure of the equatorial trough zone (ITCZ), showing a model of the spatial distribution (above) and of the vertical structure (below) of convective elements which form the cloud clusters.

Source: From Mason (1970), by permission of the Royal Meteorological Society.

is most extensive through the spreading of cirrus canopies. Clusters in the Atlantic, defined as more than 50 per cent cloud cover extending over an area of 3° square, show maximum frequencies of ten to fifteen clusters per month near the ITC and also at 15 to 20°N in the western Atlantic over zones of high sea-surface temperature. They consist of a cluster of mesoscale convective cells with the system having a deep layer of convergent airflow (see Figure 11.3). Some persist for only one to two days, but others develop within synoptic-scale waves. Many aspects of their development and role remain to be determined. While convection has been stressed, studies in the western equatorial Pacific 'warm pool' region indicate that large rain areas in cloud clusters consist mainly of stratiform precipitation. This accounts for over 75 per cent of the total rain area and for more than half of the rain amount. Moreover, the cloud systems are not 'warm clouds' (p. 102) but are made up of ice particles.

The fourth category of tropical weather system includes the synoptic-scale waves and cyclonic vortices (discussed more fully below) and the fifth group is represented by the planetary-scale waves. The planetary waves (with a wavelength from 10,000 to 40,000 km) need not concern us in detail here. Two types occur in the equatorial stratosphere and another in the equatorial upper troposphere. While they may interact with lower tropospheric systems, they do not appear to be direct weather mechanisms. The synoptic-scale systems that determine much of the 'disturbed weather' of the tropics are sufficiently important and varied to be discussed under the headings of wave disturbances and cyclonic storms.

1 Wave disturbances

Several types of wave travel westward in the equatorial and tropical tropospheric easterlies; the differences between them probably result from regional and seasonal variations in the structure of the tropical atmosphere. Their wavelength is about 2000 to 4000 km, and they have a life span of one to two weeks, travelling some 6 to 7° longitude per day.

The first wave type to be described in the tropics was the easterly wave of the Caribbean area. This system is quite unlike a mid-latitude depression. There is a weak pressure trough, which usually slopes eastward with height (Figure 11.4). Typically the main development of cumulonimbus cloud and thundery showers is behind the trough line. This pattern is associated with horizontal and vertical motion in the easterlies. Behind the trough, low-level air undergoes convergence, while ahead of it there is divergence (see Chapter 6B.1). This follows from the equation for the conservation of potential vorticity (cf. Chapter 9G), which assumes that the air travelling at a given level does not change its potential temperature (i.e. dry adiabatic motion; see Chapter 5A):

$$\frac{f + \zeta}{\Delta p} = k$$

where f = the Coriolis parameter, ζ = relative vorticity (cyclonic positive) and Δp = the depth of the tropospheric air column. Air overtaking the trough line is moving both poleward (f increasing) and towards a zone of cyclonic curvature (ζ increasing), so that if the left-hand side of the equation is to remain constant Δp must increase. This vertical expansion of the air column necessitates horizontal contraction (convergence).

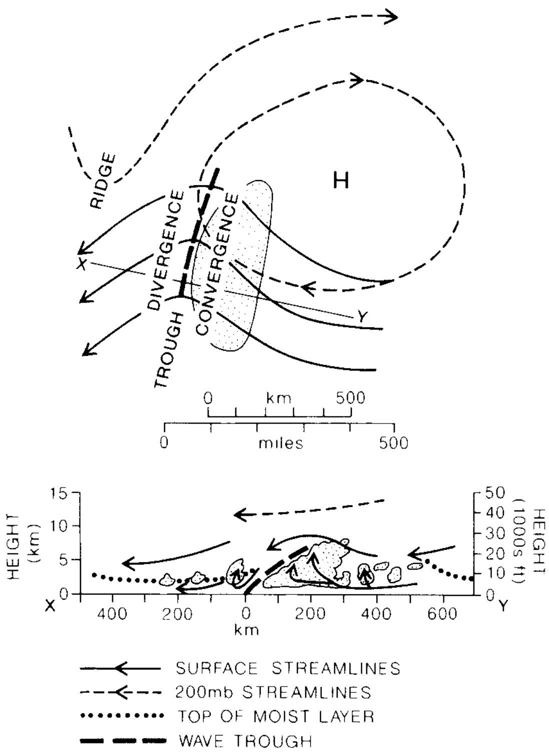


Figure 11.4 A model of the areal (above) and vertical (below) structure of an easterly wave. Cloud is stippled and the precipitation area is shown in the vertical section. The streamline symbols refer to the areal structure, and the arrows on the vertical section indicate the horizontal and vertical motions.

Source: Partly after Malkus and Riehl (1964).

Conversely, there is divergence in the air moving southward ahead of the trough and curving anticyclonically. The true divergent zone is characterized by descending, drying air with only a shallow moist layer near the surface, while in the vicinity of the trough and behind it the moist layer may be 4500 m or more deep. When the easterly airflow is slower than the speed of the wave, the reverse pattern of low-level convergence ahead of the trough and divergence behind it is observed as a consequence of the potential vorticity equation. This is often the case in the middle troposphere, so that the pattern of vertical motion shown in Figure 11.4 is augmented.

The passage of such a transverse wave in the trades commonly produces the following weather sequence:

1. *In the ridge ahead of the trough*: fine weather, scattered cumulus cloud, some haze.
2. *Close to the trough line*: well-developed cumulus, occasional showers, improving visibility.
3. *Behind the trough*: veer of wind direction, heavy cumulus and cumulonimbus, moderate or heavy thundery showers and a decrease of temperature.

Satellite photography indicates that the classical easterly wave is less common than was once supposed. Many Atlantic disturbances show an 'inverted V' wave form in the low-level wind field and associated cloud, or a 'comma' cloud related to a vortex. They are often apparently linked with a wave pattern on the ITC further south. West African disturbances that move out over the eastern tropical Atlantic usually exhibit low-level confluence and upper-level diffluence ahead of the trough, giving maximum precipitation rates in this same sector. Many disturbances in the easterlies have a closed cyclonic wind circulation at about the 600 mb level.

It is difficult to trace the growth processes in wave disturbances over the oceans and in continental areas with sparse data coverage, but some generalizations may be made. At least eight out of ten disturbances develop some 2 to 4° latitude poleward of the equatorial trough. Convection is set off by convergence of moisture in the airflow, enhanced by friction, and maintained by entrainment into the thermal convective plumes (see Figure 11.3). Some ninety tropical disturbances develop during the June to November hurricane season in the tropical Atlantic, about one system every three to five days. More than half of these originate over Africa. According to N. Frank, a high ratio of African depressions in the storm total in a given season indicates tropical characteristics, whereas a low ratio suggests storms originating from cold lows and the baroclinic zone between Saharan air and cooler, moist monsoon air. Many of them can be traced westward into the eastern North Pacific. Out of an annual total of sixty Atlantic waves, 23 per cent intensify into tropical depressions and 16 per cent become hurricanes.

Developments in the Atlantic are closely related to the structure of the trades. In the eastern sectors of subtropical anticyclones, active subsidence maintains a pronounced inversion at 450 to 600 m (Figure 11.5). Thus the cool eastern tropical oceans are characterized by extensive, but shallow, marine stratocumulus, which gives little rainfall. Downstream the inversion weakens and its base rises (Figure 11.6) because the subsidence decreases away from the eastern part of the anticyclone and cumulus towers penetrate the inversion from time

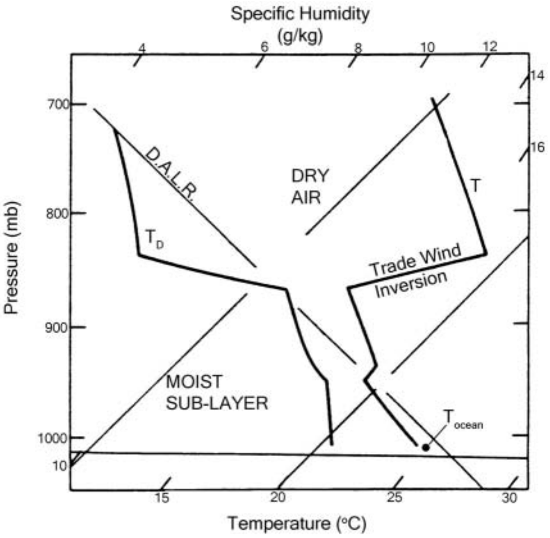


Figure 11.5 The vertical structure of trade wind air between the surface and 700 mb in the central equatorial Atlantic, 6 to 12 February 1969, showing air temperature (T), dew-point temperature (T_D). The specific humidity can be read off the upper scale.

Source: After Augstein *et al*. (1973, p. 104), by permission of the American Meteorological Society.

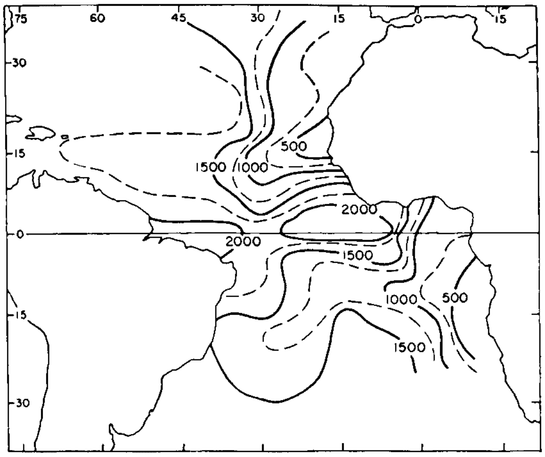


Figure 11.6 The height (in metres) of the base of the trade wind inversion over the tropical Atlantic.

Source: From Riehl (1954).

to time, spreading moisture into the dry air above. Easterly waves tend to develop in the Caribbean when the trade wind inversion is weak or even absent during summer and autumn, whereas in winter and spring subsidence aloft inhibits their growth, although disturbances may move westward above the inversion. Waves in the easterlies also originate from the penetration of cold fronts into low latitudes. In the sector between two subtropical high-pressure cells, the equatorward part of the front tends to fracture generating a westward-moving wave.

The influence of these features on regional climate is illustrated by the rainfall regime. For example, there is a late summer maximum at Martinique in the Windward Islands (15°N) when subsidence is weak, although some of the autumn rainfall is associated with tropical storms. In many trade wind areas, the rainfall occurs in a few rainstorms associated with some form of disturbance. Over a ten-year period, Oahu (Hawaii) had an average of twenty-four rainstorms per year, ten of which accounted for more than two-thirds of the annual precipitation. There is quite high variability of rainfall from year to year in such areas, since a small reduction in the frequency of disturbances can have a large effect on rainfall totals.

In the central equatorial Pacific, the trade wind systems of the two hemispheres converge in the equatorial trough. Wave disturbances may be generated if the trough is sufficiently far from the equator (usually to the north) to provide a small Coriolis force to begin cyclone motion. These disturbances quite often become unstable, forming a cyclonic vortex as they travel westward towards the Philippines, but the winds do not necessarily attain hurricane strength. The synoptic chart for part of the northwest Pacific on 17 August 1957 (Figure 11.7) shows three developmental stages of tropical low-pressure systems. An incipient easterly wave has formed west of Hawaii, which, however, filled and dissipated over the next twenty-four hours. A well-developed wave is evident near Wake Island, having spectacular cumulus towers extending above 9 km along the convergence zone some 480 km east of it (see Plate 26). This wave developed within forty-eight hours into a circular tropical storm with winds up to 20 m s^{-1}, but not into a full hurricane. A strong, closed circulation situated east of the Philippines is moving northwestward. Equatorial waves may form on both sides of the equator in an easterly current located between about 5°N and S°. In such cases, divergence ahead of a trough in the northern

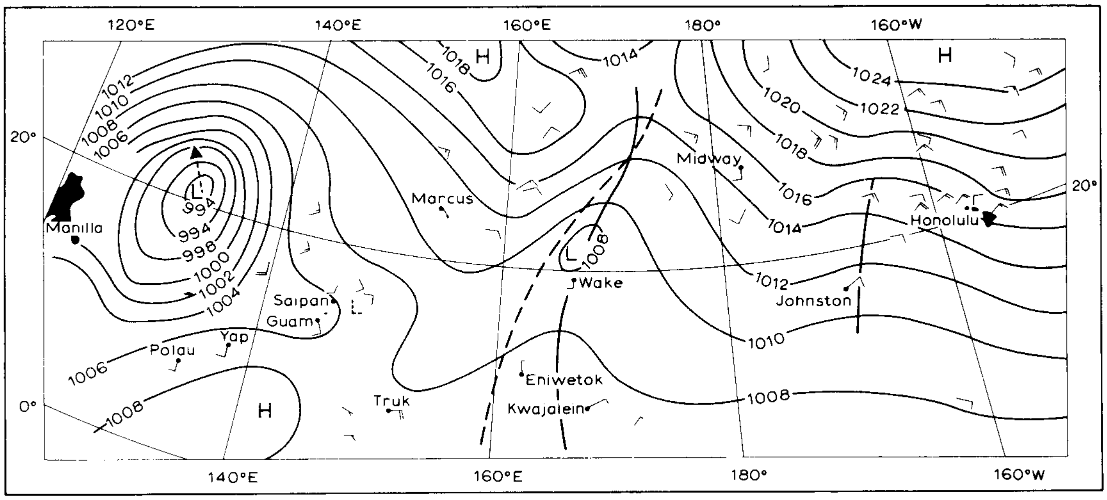


Figure 11.7 The surface synoptic chart for part of the northwest Pacific on 17 August 1957. The movements of the central wave trough and of the closed circulation during the following twenty-four hours are shown by the dashed line and arrow, respectively. The dashed L just east of Saipan indicates the location in which another low-pressure system subsequently developed. Plate 26 shows the cloud formation along the convergence zone just east of Wake Island.

Source: From Malkus and Riehl (1964).

hemisphere is paired with convergence behind a trough line located further to the west in the southern hemisphere. The reader may confirm that this should be so by applying the equation for the conservation of potential vorticity, remembering that both f and ζ operate in the reverse sense in the southern hemisphere.

2 Cyclones

a Hurricanes and typhoons

The most notorious type of cyclone is the hurricane (or typhoon). Some eighty or so cyclones each year are responsible, on average, for 20,000 fatalities, as well as causing immense damage to property and a serious shipping hazard, due to the combined effects of high winds, high seas, flooding from the heavy rainfall and coastal storm surges. Considerable attention has been given to forecasting their development and movement, so their origin and structure are beginning to be understood. Naturally, the catastrophic force of a hurricane makes it a very difficult phenomenon to investigate, but information is obtained from aircraft reconnaissance flights sent out during the ‘hurricane season’, from radar observations of cloud and precipitation structure (Plate F), and from satellite data (see Plate 27).

The typical hurricane system has a diameter of about 650 km, less than half that of a mid-latitude depression (Plate 23), although typhoons in the western Pacific are often much larger. The central pressure is commonly 950 mb and exceptionally falls below 900 mb. Named tropical storms are those defined as having one-minute average wind velocities of at least 18 m s^{-1} at the surface. If these winds intensify to at least 33 m s^{-1}, the named storm becomes a tropical cyclone. Five hurricane intensity classes are distinguished: category (1) weak (winds of 33 to 42 m s^{-1}); (2) moderate (43 to 49 m s^{-1}); (3) strong (50 to 58 m s^{-1}); (4) very strong (59 to 69 m s^{-1}) and (5) devastating (70 m s^{-1} or more). Hurricane Camille, which struck coastal Mississippi in August 1969, was a category (5) storm, while Hurricane Andrew, which devastated southern Florida in August 1992, has been reclassified also as a category (5) storm. In 1997 there were eleven super-typhoons in the northwest Pacific with winds >66 ms^{-1}. The great vertical development of cumulonimbus clouds, with tops at over 12,000 m, reflects the immense convective activity concentrated in such systems. Radar and satellite studies show that the convective cells are normally organized in bands that spiral inward towards the centre.

Although the largest cyclones are characteristic of the Pacific, the record is held by the Caribbean hurricane

'Gilbert'. This hurricane was generated 320 km east of Barbados on 9 September 1988 and moved westward at an average speed of 24 to 27 km hr^{-1}, dissipating off the east coast of Mexico. Aided by an upper tropospheric high-pressure cell north of Cuba, Hurricane Gilbert intensified very rapidly, the pressure at its centre dropped to 888 mb (the lowest ever recorded in the western hemisphere), and maximum wind speeds near the core were in excess of 55 m s^{-1}. More than 500 mm of rain fell on the highest parts of Jamaica in only nine hours. However, the most striking feature of this record storm was its size, being some three times that of average Caribbean hurricanes. At its maximum extent, the hurricane had a diameter of 3500 km, disrupting the ITCZ along more than one-sixth of the earth's equatorial circumference and drawing in air from as far away as Florida and the Galapagos Islands.

The main tropical cyclone activity in both hemispheres is in late summer to autumn during times of maximum northward and southward shifts of the equatorial trough (Table 11.1). A few storms affect both the western North Atlantic and North Pacific areas as early as May and as late as December, and have occurred in every month in the latter area. In the Bay of Bengal, there is also a secondary early summer maximum. Floods from a tropical cyclone that struck coastal Bangladesh on 24 to 30 April 1991 caused over 130,000 deaths from drowning and left over ten million people homeless. The annual frequency of cyclones shown in Table 11.1 is only approximate, since in some cases it is uncertain whether the winds actually exceeded hurricane force. In addition, storms in the more remote parts of the South Pacific and Indian Oceans frequently escaped detection prior to the use of weather satellites.

A number of conditions are necessary, even if not always sufficient, for cyclone formation. One requirement as shown by Figure 11.8 is an extensive ocean area with a surface temperature greater than 27°C. Cyclones rarely form near the equator, where the Coriolis parameter is close to zero, or in zones of strong vertical wind shear (i.e. beneath a jet stream), since both factors inhibit the development of an organized vortex. There is also a definite connection between the seasonal position of the equatorial trough and zones of cyclone formation. This is borne out by the fact that no cyclones occur in the South Atlantic (where the trough never lies south of 5°S) or in the southeast Pacific (where the trough remains north of the equator). However, the northeast Pacific has an unexpected number of cyclonic vortices in summer. Many of these move westward near the trough line at about 10 to 15°N. About 60 per cent of tropical cyclones seem to originate 5 to 10° latitude poleward of the equatorial trough in the doldrum sectors, where the trough is at least 5° latitude from the equator. The development regions of cyclones lie mainly over the western sections of the Atlantic, Pacific

Table 11.1 Annual frequencies and usual seasonal occurrence of tropical cyclones (maximum sustained winds exceeding 25 m s^{-1}), 1958 to 1977.

Location	*Annual frequency*	*Main occurrence*
Western North Pacific	26.3	July–October
Eastern North Pacific	13.4	August–September
Western North Atlantic	8.8	August–October
Northern Indian Ocean	6.4	May–June; October–November
Northern hemisphere total	54.6	
Southwest Indian Ocean	8.4	January–March
Southeast Indian Ocean	10.3	January–March
Western South Pacific	5.9	January–March
Southern hemisphere total	24.5	
Global total	79.1	

Note: Area totals are rounded.
Source: After Gray (1979).

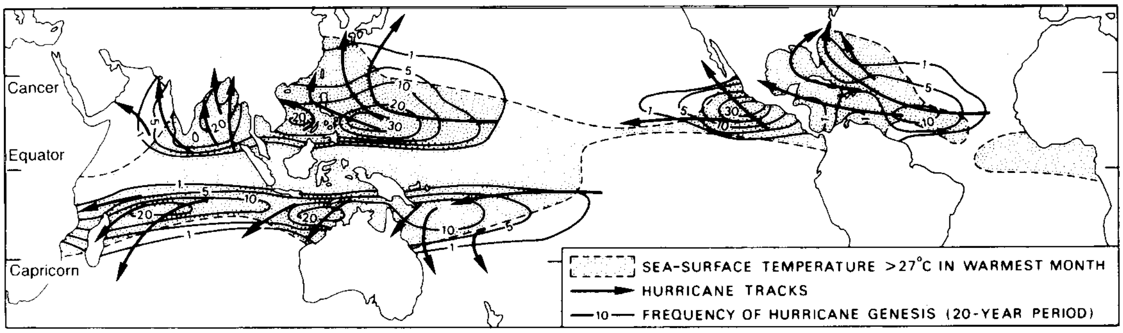

Cancer
Equator
Capricorn
SEA-SURFACE TEMPERATURE >27°C IN WARMEST MONTH
HURRICANE TRACKS
10 FREQUENCY OF HURRICANE GENESIS (20-YEAR PERIOD)
1
5
10
20
30

Figure 11.8 Frequency of hurricane genesis (numbered isopleths) for a twenty-year period. The principal hurricane tracks and the areas of sea surface having water temperatures greater than 27°C in the warmest month are also shown.

Source: After Palmén (1948) and Gray (1979).

and Indian Oceans, where the subtropical high-pressure cells do not cause subsidence and stability and the upper flow is divergent. About twice per season in the western equatorial Pacific, tropical cyclones form almost simultaneously in each hemisphere near 5° latitude and along the same longitude. The cloud and wind patterns in these cyclone 'twins' are roughly symmetrical with respect to the equator.

The role of convection cells in generating a massive release of latent heat to provide energy for the storm was proposed in early theories of hurricane development. However, their scale was thought to be too small for them to account for the growth of a storm hundreds of kilometres in diameter. Research indicates that energy can be transferred from the cumulus-scale to the large-scale storm circulation through the organization of the clouds into spiral bands (see Figure 11.9 and Plate F), although the nature of the process is still being investigated. There is ample evidence to show that hurricanes form from pre-existing disturbances, but while many of these disturbances develop as closed low-pressure cells, few attain full hurricane intensity. The key to this problem is high-level outflow (Figure 11.10). This does not require an upper tropospheric anticyclone but can occur on the eastern limb of an upper trough in the westerlies. This outflow in turn allows the development of very low pressure and high wind speeds near the surface. A distinctive feature of the hurricane is the warm vortex, since other tropical depressions and incipient storms have a cold core area of shower activity. The warm core develops through the action of 100 to 200 cumulonimbus towers releasing latent heat of condensation; about 15 per cent of the area of cloud bands is giving rain at any one time. Observations show that although these 'hot towers' form less than 1 per cent of the storm area within a radius of about 400 km, their effect is sufficient to change the environment. The warm core is vital to hurricane growth because it intensifies the upper anticyclone, leading to a 'feedback' effect by stimulating the low-level influx of heat and moisture, which further intensifies convective activity, latent heat release and therefore the upper-level high pressure. This enhancement of a storm system by cumulus convection is termed conditional instability of the second kind (CISK) (cf. the basic parcel instability described on p. 94). The thermally direct circulation converts the heat increment into potential energy and a small fraction of this – about 3 per cent – is transformed into kinetic energy. The remainder is exported by the anticyclonic circulation around the 12-km (200 mb) level.

In the eye, or innermost region of the storm (see Figure 11.9 and Plate 28), adiabatic warming of descending air accentuates the high temperatures, although since high temperatures are also observed in the eye-wall cloud masses, subsiding air can be only one contributory factor. Without this sinking air in the eye, the central pressure could not fall below about 1000 mb. The eye has a diameter of some 30 to 50 km, within which the air is virtually calm and the cloud cover may be broken. The mechanics of the eye's inception are still largely unknown. If the rotating air conserved absolute angular momentum, wind speeds would become infinite at the centre, and clearly this is not the case. The strong winds surrounding the eye are more or less in cyclostrophic balance, with the small radial distance providing a large centripetal acceleration (see

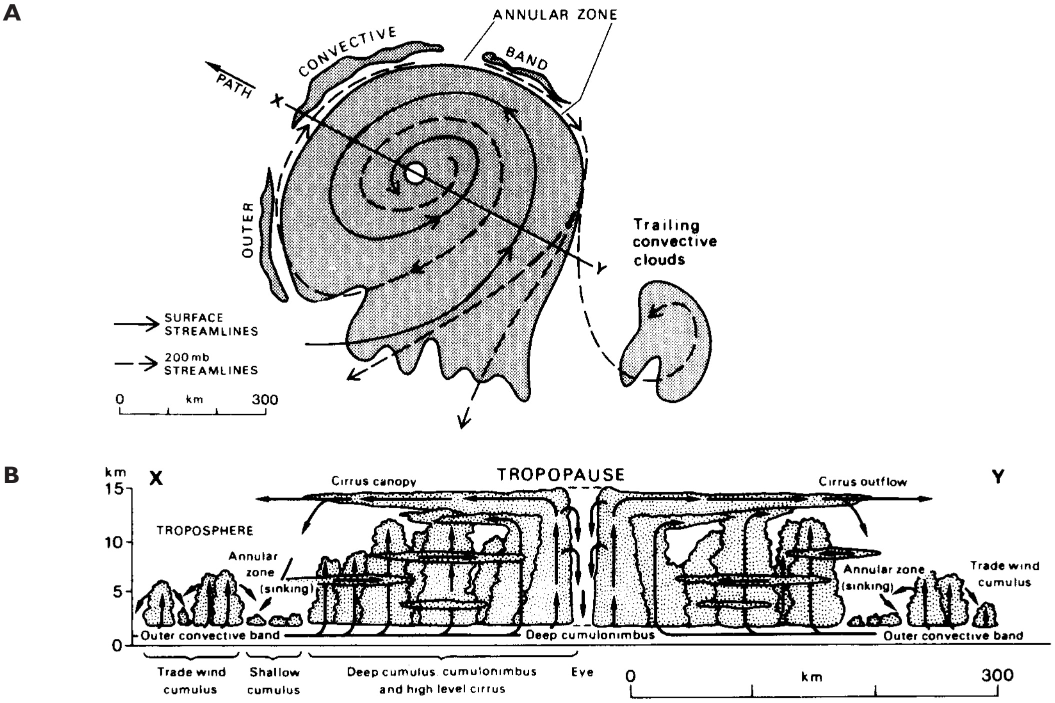

A
ANNULAR ZONE
CONVECTIVE
BAND
PATH
X
OUTER
Trailing convective clouds
Y
SURFACE STREAMLINES
200 mb STREAMLINES
0 km 300
B
km
15
10
5
0
X
Cirrus canopy
TROPOPAUSE
Cirrus outflow
Y
TROPOSPHERE
Annular zone (sinking)
Annular zone (sinking)
Trade wind cumulus
Outer convective band
Deep cumulonimbus
Outer convective band
Trade wind cumulus
Shallow cumulus
Deep cumulus, cumulonimbus and high level cirrus
Eye
0 km 300

Figure 11.9 A model of the areal (A) and vertical (B) structure of a hurricane. Cloud (stippled), streamlines, convective features and path are shown.

Source: From Musk (1988).

p. 114). The air rises when the pressure gradient can no longer force it further inward. It is possible that the cumulonimbus anvils play a vital role in the complex link between the horizontal and vertical circulations around the eye by redistributing angular momentum in such a way as to set up a concentration of rotation near the centre.

The supply of heat and moisture combined with low frictional drag at the sea surface, the release of latent heat through condensation and the removal of the air aloft are essential conditions for the maintenance of cyclone intensity. As soon as one of these ingredients diminishes the storm decays. This can occur quite rapidly if the track (determined by the general upper tropospheric flow) takes the vortex over a cool sea surface or over land. In the latter case, the increased friction causes greater cross-isobar air motion, temporarily increasing the convergence and ascent. At this stage, increased vertical wind shear in thunderstorm cells may generate tornadoes, especially in the northeast quadrant of the storm (in the northern hemisphere). However, the most important effect of a land track is that cutting off of the moisture supply removes one of the major sources of heat. Rapid decay also occurs when cold air is drawn into the circulation or when the upper-level divergence pattern moves away from the storm.

Hurricanes usually move at 16 to 24 km hr^{-1}, controlled primarily by the rate of movement of the upper warm core. Commonly, they recurve poleward around the western margins of the subtropical high-pressure cells, entering the circulation of the westerlies, where they die out or regenerate into extra-tropical disturbances (see Figure 11.37).

Some of these systems retain an intense circulation and the high winds and waves can still wreak havoc. This is not uncommon along the Atlantic coast of the United States and occasionally eastern Canada. Similarly, in the western North Pacific, recurved typhoons are a major element in the climate of Japan (see D, this chapter) and may occur in any month. There is an average frequency of twelve typhoons per year over southern Japan and neighbouring sea areas.

To sum up: a tropical cyclone develops from an initial disturbance, which, under favourable environmental

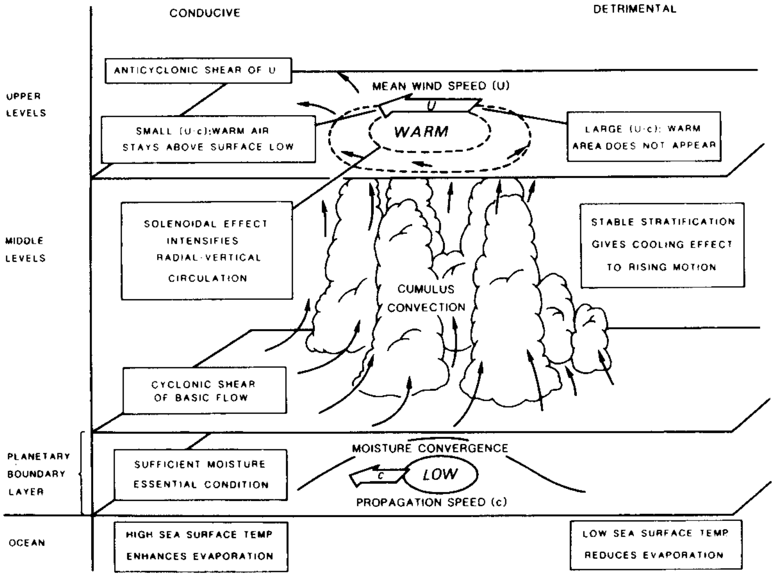

CONDUCIVE
DETRIMENTAL
UPPER LEVELS
ANTICYCLONIC SHEAR OF U
MEAN WIND SPEED (U)
U
SMALL (U-c):WARM AIR STAYS ABOVE SURFACE LOW
WARM
LARGE (U-c): WARM AREA DOES NOT APPEAR
MIDDLE LEVELS
SOLENOIDAL EFFECT INTENSIFIES RADIAL-VERTICAL CIRCULATION
STABLE STRATIFICATION GIVES COOLING EFFECT TO RISING MOTION
CUMULUS CONVECTION
CYCLONIC SHEAR OF BASIC FLOW
PLANETARY BOUNDARY LAYER
SUFFICIENT MOISTURE ESSENTIAL CONDITION
MOISTURE CONVERGENCE
c
LOW
PROPAGATION SPEED (c)
OCEAN
HIGH SEA SURFACE TEMP ENHANCES EVAPORATION
LOW SEA SURFACE TEMP REDUCES EVAPORATION

Figure 11.10 A schematic model of the conditions conducive (left) or detrimental (right) to the growth of a tropical storm in an easterly wave; *U* is the mean upper-level wind speed and c is the rate of propagation of the system. The warm vortex creates a thermal gradient that intensifies both the radial motion around it and the ascending air currents, termed *the solenoidal effect*.

Source: From Kurihara (1985), copyright © Academic Press. Reproduced by permission.

conditions, grows first into a tropical depression and then into a tropical storm. The tropical storm stage may persist for four to five days, whereas the cyclone stage usually lasts for only two to three days (four to five days in the western Pacific). The main energy source is latent heat derived from condensed water vapour, and for this reason hurricanes are generated and continue to gather strength only within the confines of warm oceans. The cold-cored tropical storm is transformed into a warm-cored hurricane in association with the release of latent heat in cumulonimbus towers, and this establishes or intensifies an upper tropospheric anticyclonic cell. Thus high-level outflow maintains the ascent and low-level inflow in order to provide a continuous generation of potential energy (from latent heat) and the transformation of this into kinetic energy. The inner eye that forms by sinking air is an essential element in the life cycle.

Hurricane forecasting is a complex science. Recent studies of annual North Atlantic/Caribbean hurricane frequencies suggest that three major factors are involved:

1 The west phase of the Atlantic Quasi-Biennial Oscillation (QBO). The QBO involves periodic changes in the velocities of, and vertical shear between, the zonal upper tropospheric (50 mb) winds and the lower stratospheric (30 mb) winds. The onset of such an oscillation can be predicted with some confidence almost a year in advance. The east phase of the QBO is associated with strong easterly winds in the lower stratosphere between latitudes 10°N and 15°N, producing a large vertical wind shear. This phase usually persists for twelve to fifteen months and inhibits hurricane formation. The west QBO phase exhibits weak easterly winds in the lower stratosphere and small vertical wind shear. This phase, typically lasting thirteen to sixteen months, is associated with 50 per cent more named storms, 60 per cent more hurricanes and 200 per cent more major hurricanes than is the east phase.
2 West African precipitation during the previous year along the Gulf of Guinea (August to November) and in the western Sahel (August to September). The former moisture source appears to account for some 40 per cent of major hurricane activity, the latter for only 5 per cent. Between the late 1960s and 1980s the Sahel drought was associated with a marked decrease in Atlantic tropical cyclones and hurricanes, mainly through strong upper-level shearing winds over the tropical North Atlantic and a decrease in the propagation of easterly waves over Africa in August and September.
3 ENSO predictions for the following year (see G, this chapter). There is an inverse correlation between the frequency of El Niños and that of Atlantic hurricanes.

b Other tropical disturbances

Not all low-pressure systems in the tropics are of the intense tropical cyclone variety. There are two other major types of cyclonic vortex. One is the monsoon depression that affects South Asia during the summer. This disturbance is somewhat unusual in that the flow is westerly at low levels and easterly in the upper troposphere (see Figure 11.27). It is described more fully in C.4, this chapter.

The second type is usually relatively weak near the surface, but well developed in the middle troposphere. In the eastern North Pacific and northern Indian Ocean, such lows are referred to as subtropical cyclones. Some develop from the cutting off in low latitudes of a cold upper-level wave in the westerlies (cf. Chapter 9H.4). They possess a broad eye, 150 km in radius with little cloud, surrounded by a belt of cloud and precipitation about 300 km wide. In late winter and spring, a few such storms make a major contribution to the rainfall of the Hawaiian Islands. These cyclones are very persistent and tend eventually to be reabsorbed by a trough in the upper westerlies. Other subtropical cyclones occur over the Arabian Sea making a major contribution to summer (‘monsoon’) rains in northwest India. These systems show upward motion mainly in the upper troposphere. Their development may be linked to export at upper levels of cyclonic vorticity from the persistent heat low over Arabia.

An infrequent and distinctly different weather system, known as a *temporal*, occurs along the Pacific coasts of Central America in autumn and early summer. Its main feature is an extensive layer of altostratus fed by individual convective cells, producing sustained moderate rainfall. These systems originate in the ITCZ over the eastern tropical North Pacific Ocean and are maintained by large-scale lower tropospheric convergence, localized convection and orographic uplift.

3 Tropical cloud clusters

Mesoscale convective systems (MCSs) are widespread in tropical and subtropical latitudes. The mid-latitude mesoscale convective complexes discussed in Chapter 9.I are an especially severe category of MCS. Satellite studies of cold (high) cloud-top signatures show that tropical systems typically extend over a 3000 to 6000 km^2 area. They are common over tropical South America and the maritime continent of Indonesia–Malaysia and adjacent western equatorial Pacific Ocean warm pool. Other land areas include Australia, India and Central America, in their respective summer seasons. As a result of the diurnal regimes of convective activity, MCSs are more frequent at sunset compared with sunrise by 60 per cent over the continents and 35 per cent more frequent at sunrise than sunset over the oceans. Most of the intense systems (MCCs) occur over land, particularly where there is abundant moisture and usually downwind of orographic features that favour the formation of low-level jets.

Mesoscale convective systems fall into two categories: non-squall and squall line. The former contain one or more mesoscale precipitation areas. They occur diurnally, for example, off the north coast of Borneo in winter, where they are initiated by convergence of a nocturnal land breeze and the northeast monsoon flow (Figure 11.11). By morning (08:00 LST), cumulonimbus cells give precipitation. The cells are linked by an upper-level cloud shield, which persists when the convection dies at around noon as a sea breeze system replaces the nocturnal convergent flow. Recent studies over the western equatorial Pacific warm pool indicate that convective cloud systems account for <50 per cent of the total in large precipitation areas (boxes 240 × 240 km), while stratiform precipitation is more widespread and yields over half of the total precipitation.

Tropical squall line systems (Figure 11.12) form the leading edge of a line of cumulonimbus cells (Plate 29). The squall line and gust front advance within the low-level flow and by forming new cells. These mature and eventually dissipate to the rear of the main line. The process is analogous to that of mid-latitude squall lines (see Figure 9.28) but the tropical cells are weaker. Squall line systems, known as sumatras, cross Malaya from the west during the southwest monsoon season giving heavy rain and often thunder. They appear to be initiated by the convergent effects of land breezes in the Malacca Straits.

In West Africa, systems known as disturbance lines (DLs) are an important feature of the climate in the summer half-year, when low-level southwesterly monsoon air is overrun by dry, warm Saharan air. The meridional airmass contrast helps to set up the lower-tropospheric African Easterly Jet (AEJ) (see Figure 11.40). The convective DLs are transported across West Africa by African easterly waves that are steered by the AEJ at around 600 mb. The waves recur with a four to eight-day period during the wet season (May to

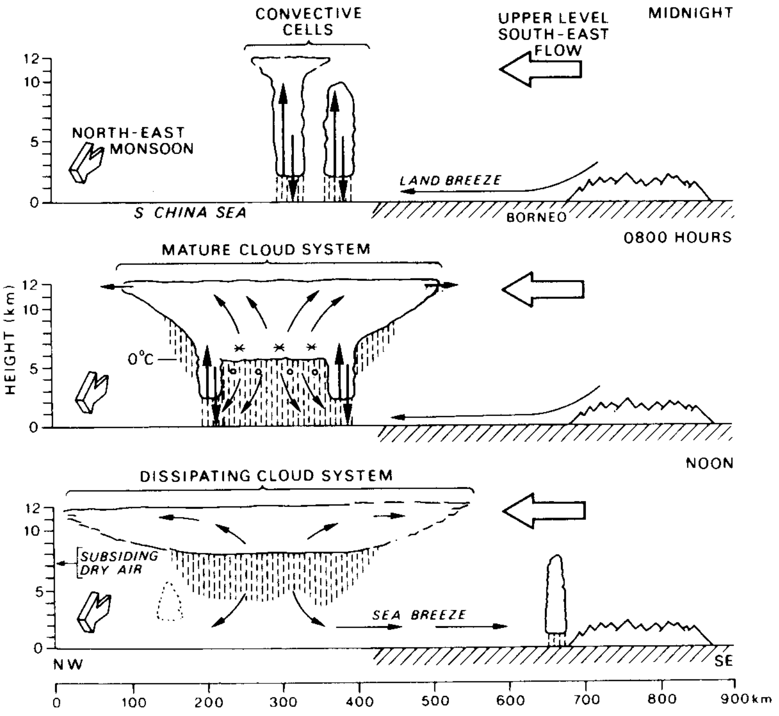

CONVECTIVE CELLS
UPPER LEVEL SOUTH-EAST FLOW
MIDNIGHT
NORTH-EAST MONSOON
LAND BREEZE
S CHINA SEA
BORNEO
0800 HOURS
MATURE CLOUD SYSTEM
HEIGHT (km)
0°C
NOON
DISSIPATING CLOUD SYSTEM
SUBSIDING DRY AIR
SEA BREEZE
NW
SE
0
5
10
12
0
100
200
300
400
500
600
700
800
900km

Figure 11.11 Schematic development of a non-squall cloud cluster off the north coast of Borneo: large arrows indicate the major circulation; small arrows, the local circulation; vertical shading, the zones of rain; stars, ice crystals; and circles, melted raindrops.

Source: After Houze *et al*. (1981), by permission of the American Meteorological Society.

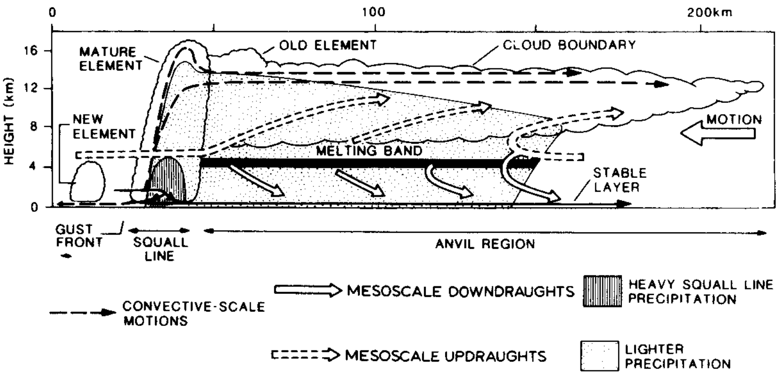

0
100
200km
HEIGHT (km)
16
12
8
4
0
MATURE ELEMENT
OLD ELEMENT
CLOUD BOUNDARY
NEW ELEMENT
MOTION
MELTING BAND
STABLE LAYER
GUST FRONT
SQUALL LINE
ANVIL REGION
CONVECTIVE-SCALE MOTIONS
MESOSCALE DOWNDRAUGHTS
MESOSCALE UPDRAUGHTS
HEAVY SQUALL LINE PRECIPITATION
LIGHTER PRECIPITATION

Figure 11.12 Cross-section of a tropical squall line cloud cluster showing locations of precipitation and ice particle melting. Dashed arrows show the air motion generated by the squall line convection and the broad arrows the mesoscale circulation.

Source: After Houze; from Houze and Hobbs (1982)

October). Disturbance lines tend to form when there is divergence in the upper troposphere north of the Tropical Easterly Jet (see also Figure 11.40A). They are several hundred kilometres long and travel westward at about 50 km hr^{-1} giving squalls and thunder showers before dissipating over cold-water areas of the North Atlantic. Spring and autumn rainfall in West Africa is derived in large part from these disturbances. In wet years, when the AEJ is further north, the wave season is prolonged and the waves are stronger. Figure 11.13 for Kortright (Freetown), Sierra Leone illustrates the daily rainfall amounts in 1960 to 1961 associated with disturbance lines at 8°N. Here the summer monsoon rains make up the greater part of the total, but their contribution diminishes northward.

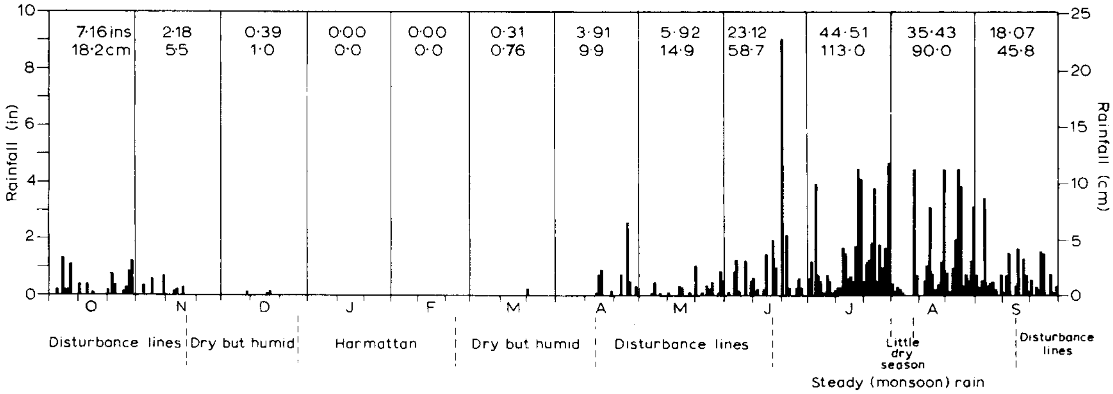


Figure 11.13 Daily rainfall at Kortwright, Freetown, Sierra Leone, October 1960 to September 1961.

Source: After Gregory (1965).

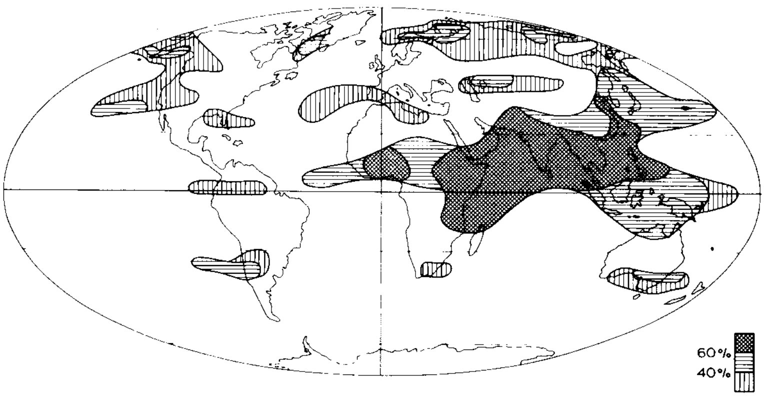


Figure 11.14 Regions experiencing a seasonal surface wind shift of at least 120°, showing the frequency of the prevailing octant.

Source: After Khromov.

C THE ASIAN MONSOON

The name *monsoon* is derived from the Arabic word *mausim*, which means season, referring to large-scale seasonal reversals of the wind regime. The Asiatic seasonal wind reversal is notable for its vast extent and the penetration of its influence beyond tropical latitudes (Figure 11.14). However, such seasonal shifts of the surface winds occur in many regions that are not traditionally considered as monsoonal. Although there is an overlap between these traditional regions and those experiencing over 60 per cent frequency of winds from the prevailing octant, it is obvious that a variety of unconnected mechanisms can lead to seasonal wind shifts. Nor is it possible to establish a simple relationship between seasonality of rainfall (Figure 11.15) and seasonal wind shift. Areas traditionally designated as 'monsoonal' include some of the tropical and near-tropical regions experiencing a summer rainfall maximum and most of those having a double rainfall maximum. It is clear that a combination of criteria is necessary for an adequate definition of monsoon areas.

In summer, the equatorial trough and the subtropical anticyclones are everywhere displaced northward in response to the distribution of solar heating of the earth, and in South Asia this movement is magnified by the effects of the landmass. However, the attractive simplicity of the traditional explanation, which envisages a monsoonal 'sea breeze' directed towards a summer thermal low pressure over the continent, provides an inadequate basis for understanding the workings of the system. The Asiatic monsoon regime is a consequence

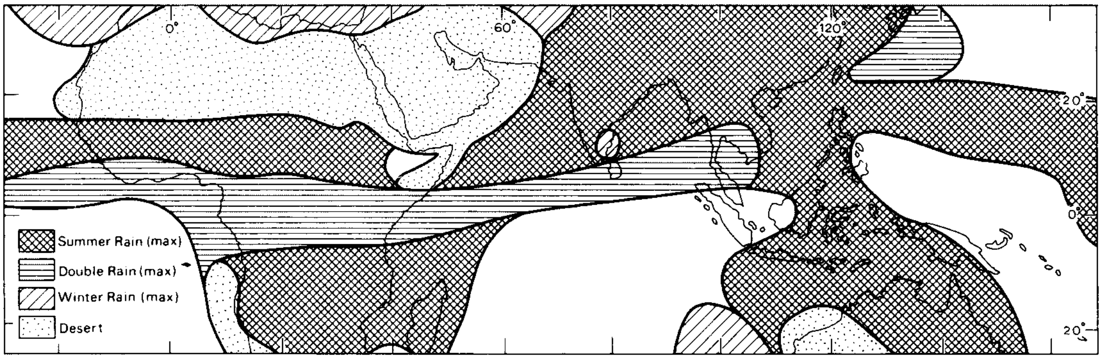


Figure 11.15 The annual distribution of tropical rainfall. The shaded areas refer to periods during which more than 75 per cent of the mean annual rainfall occurs. Areas with less than 250 mm y^{-1} (10 in y^{-1}) are classed as deserts, and the unshaded areas are those needing at least seven months to accumulate 75 per cent of the annual rainfall and are thus considered to exhibit no seasonal maximum.

Source: After Ramage (1971), copyright © Academic Press. Reproduced by permission.

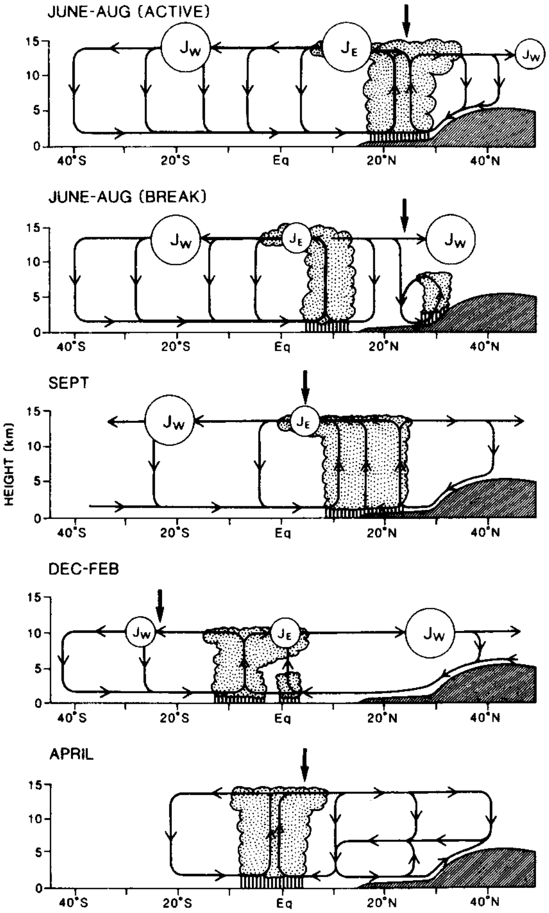


Figure 11.16 Schematic representation of the meridional circulation over India at 90°E at five characteristic periods of the year: winter monsoon (December to February); approach of the monsoon season (April); the active summer monsoon (June to August); a break in the summer monsoon (June to August); and the retreat of the summer monsoon (September). Easterly (J_E) and westerly (J_W) jet streams are shown at sizes depending on their strength; the arrows mark the positions of the overhead sun; and zones of maximum precipitation are indicated.

Source: After Webster (1987a). Copyright © 1987. Reproduced by permission of John Wiley & Sons, Inc.

of the interaction of planetary and regional factors, both at the surface and in the upper troposphere. It is convenient to look at each season in turn; Figure 11.16 shows the generalized meridional circulation at 90°E over India and the Indian Ocean in winter (December to February), spring (April) and autumn (September), and those associated with active and break periods during the June to August summer monsoon (p. 287).

1 Winter

Near the surface, this is the season of the out-blowing ‘winter monsoon’, but aloft westerly airflow dominates. This reflects the hemispheric pressure distribution. A shallow layer of cold high-pressure air is centred over the continental interior, but this has disappeared even at 700 mb (see Figure 7.4) where there is a trough over East Asia and zonal circulation over the continent. The upper westerlies split into two currents to the north and south of the high Tibetan (Qinghai–Xizang) Plateau

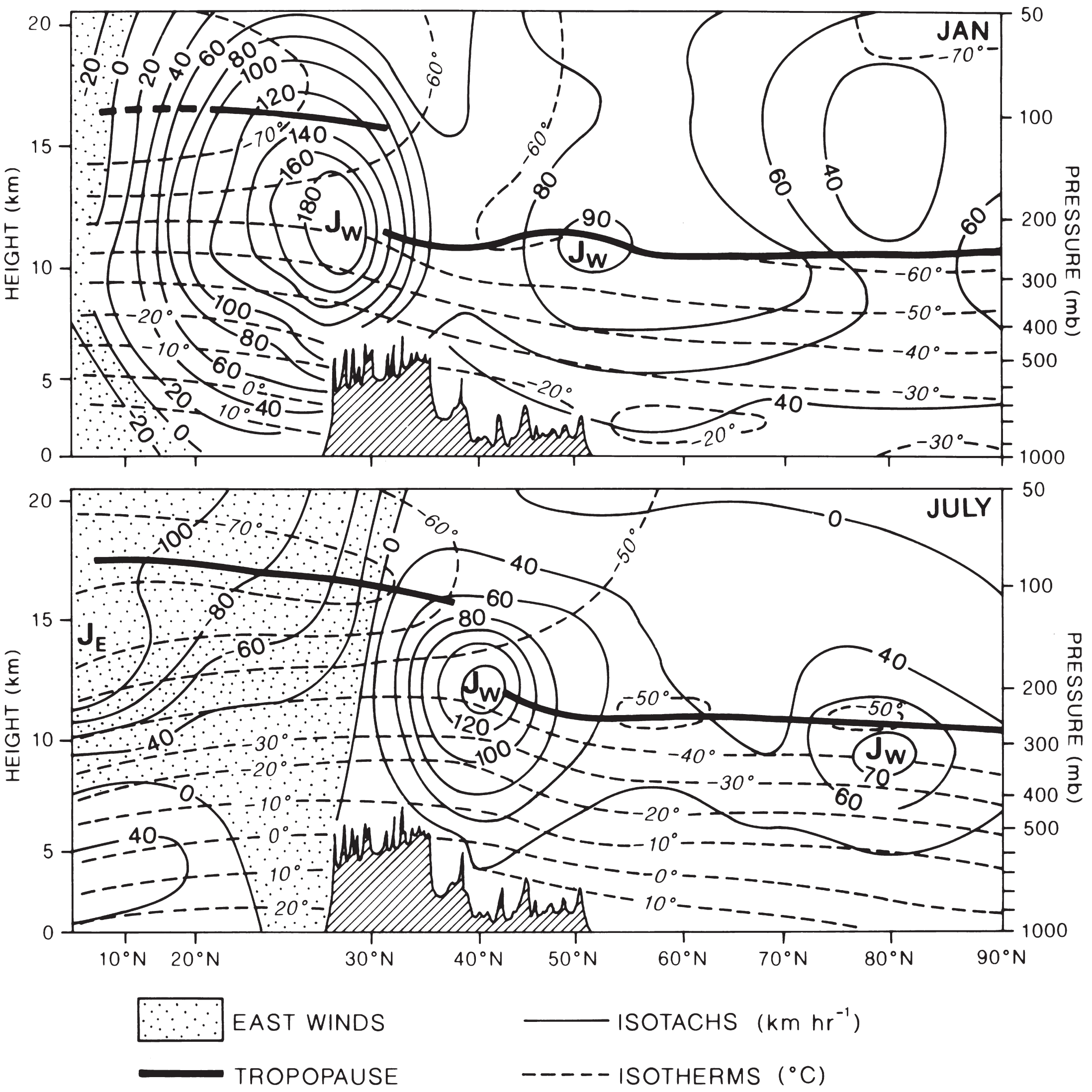


Figure 11.17 Distribution of wind velocity (km/hr) and temperature (°C) along the 90°E meridian for January and July, showing the westerly jet streams (J_W) and the tropopause. Note the variable intervals in the height and latitudinal scales.

Source: After Pogosyan and Ugarova (1959), courtesy of *Meteorologiya Gidrologiya* (Moscow).

(Figure 11.17), to reunite again off the east coast of China (Figure 11.18). The plateau, which exceeds 4000 m over a vast area, is a tropospheric cold source in winter, particularly over its western part, although the strength of this source depends on the extent and duration of snow cover (snow-free ground acts as a heat source for the atmosphere in all months). Below 600 mb, the tropospheric heat sink gives rise to a shallow, cold plateau anticyclone, which is best developed in December and January. The two jet stream branches have been attributed to the disruptive effect of the topographic barrier on the airflow, but this is limited to altitudes below about 4 km. In fact, the northern jet is highly mobile and may be located far from the Tibetan Plateau. Two currents are also observed further west, where there is no obstacle to the flow. The branch over northern India corresponds to a strong latitudinal thermal gradient (from November to April) and it is

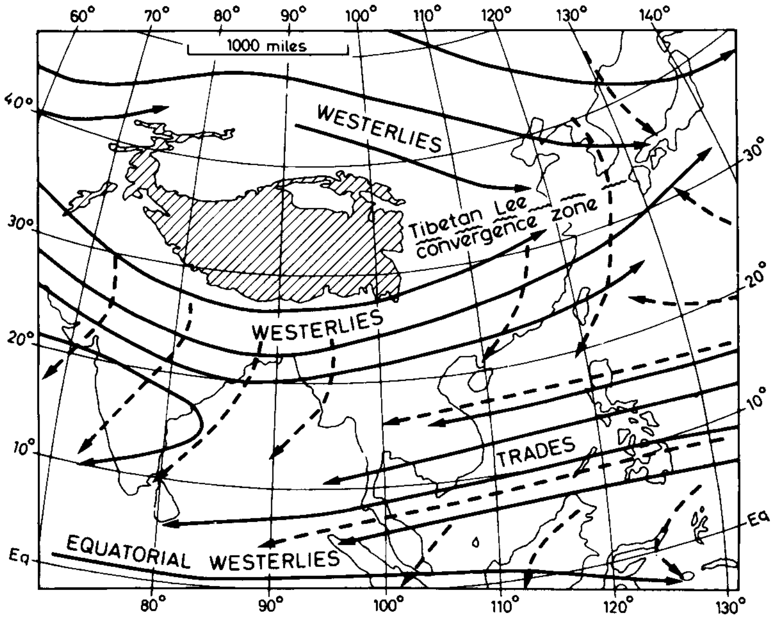


Figure 11.18 The characteristic air circulation over South and East Asia in winter. Solid lines indicate airflow at about 3000 m, and dashed lines at about 600 m. The names refer to the wind systems aloft.

Sources: After Thompson (1951), Flohn (1968), Frost and Stephenson (1965), and others.

probable that this factor, combined with the thermal effect of the barrier to the north, is responsible for the anchoring of the southern jet. This branch is the stronger, with an average speed of more than 40 ms^{-1} at 200 mb, compared with about 20 to 25 m s^{-1} in the northern jet. Where the two unite over north China and south Japan the average speed exceeds 66 m s^{-1} (Figure 11.19).

Air subsiding beneath this upper westerly current gives dry out-blowing northerly winds from the subtropical anticyclone over northwest India and Pakistan. The surface wind direction is northwesterly over most of northern India, becoming northeasterly over Burma and Bangladesh and easterly over peninsular India. Equally important is the steering of winter depressions over northern India by the upper jet. The lows, which are not usually frontal, appear to penetrate across the Middle East from the Mediterranean and are important sources of rainfall for northern India and Pakistan (e.g. Kalat, Figure 11.20), especially as it falls when evaporation is at a minimum. The equatorial trough of convergence and precipitation lies between the equator and about latitude 15°S (see Figure 11.16).

Some of these westerly depressions continue eastward, redeveloping in the zone of jet stream confluence about 30°N, 105°E over China, beyond the area of subsidence in the immediate lee of Tibet (see Figure 11.18). It is significant that the mean axis of the winter jet stream over China shows a close correlation with the distribution of winter rainfall (Figure 11.21). Other depressions affecting central and north China travel within the westerlies north of Tibet or are initiated by outbreaks of fresh cP air. In the rear of these depressions are invasions of very cold air (e.g. the buran blizzards of Mongolia and Manchuria). The effect of such cold waves, comparable with the northers in the central and southern United States, is to greatly reduce mean temperatures (Figure 11.22). Winter mean temperatures in less-protected southern China are considerably below those at equivalent latitudes in India; for example, temperatures in Calcutta and Hong Kong (both at approximately 22.5 (N) are 19°C and 16°C in January and 22 °C and 15°C in February, respectively.

2 Spring

The key to change during this transition season is again found in the pattern of the upper airflow. In March, the upper westerlies begin their seasonal migration northward, but whereas the northerly jet strengthens and begins to extend across central China and into Japan, the southerly branch remains positioned south of Tibet, although weakening in intensity.

In April there is weak convection over India, where the circulation is dominated by subsiding air originating

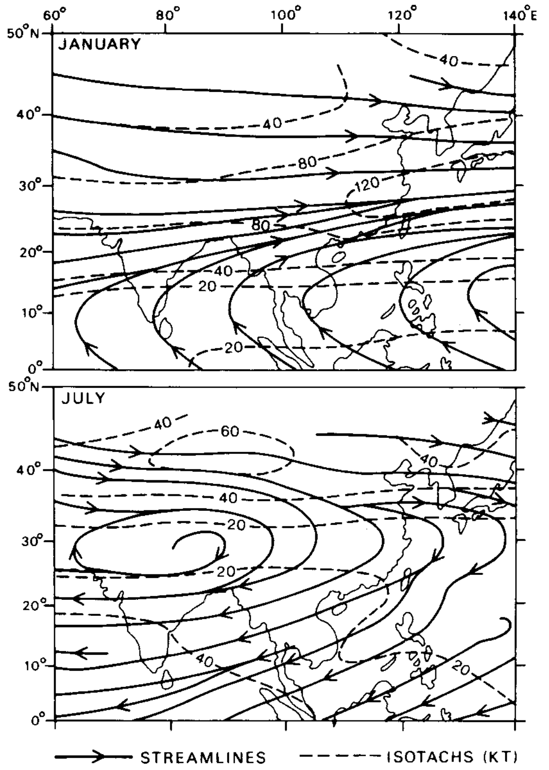


Figure 11.19 Mean 200-mb streamlines and isotachs in knots over Southeast Asia for January and July, based on aircraft reports and sounding data.

Source: From Sadler (1975b) courtesy Dr J. C. Sadler, University of Hawaii.

along the convective ITCZ trough centred over the equator and following the overhead sun northward over the warm Indian Ocean (see Figure 11.16). The weather over northern India becomes hot, dry and squally in response to the greater solar radiation heating. Mean temperatures in Delhi rise from 23°C in March to 33°C in May. The thermal low-pressure cell (see Chapter 9H.2) now reaches its maximum intensity, but although onshore coastal winds develop, the onset of the monsoon is still a month away and other mechanisms cause only limited precipitation. Some precipitation occurs in the north with 'westerly disturbances', particularly towards the Ganges Delta, where the low-level inflow of warm, humid air is overrun by dry, potentially cold air, triggering squall lines known as nor'westers. In the northwest, where less moisture is available, the convection generates violent squalls and dust storms termed *andhis*. The mechanism of these storms is not fully known, although high-level divergence in the waves of the subtropical westerly jet stream appears to be essential. The early onset of summer rains in Bengal, Bangladesh, Assam and Burma (e.g. Chittagong, Figure 11.20) is favoured by an orographically produced trough in the upper westerlies, which is located at about 85 to 90°E in May. Low-level convergence of maritime air from the Bay of Bengal, combined with the upper-level divergence ahead of the 300 mb trough, generates thunder squalls. Tropical disturbances in the Bay of Bengal are another source of these early rains. Rain also falls during this season over Sri Lanka and southern India (e.g. Minicoy, Figure 11.20) in response to the northward movement of the equatorial trough.

3 Early summer

Generally, during the last week in May the southern branch of the high-level jet begins to break down, becoming intermittent and then gradually shifting northward over the Tibetan Plateau. At 500 mb and below, however, the plateau exerts a blocking effect on the flow and the jet axis there jumps from the south to the north side of the plateau from May to June. Over India, the equatorial trough pushes northward with each weakening of the upper westerlies south of Tibet, but the final burst of the monsoon, with the arrival of the humid, low-level southwesterlies, is not accomplished until the upper-air circulation has switched to its summer pattern (see Figures 11.19 and 11.23). Increased continental convection overcomes the spring subsidence and the return upper-level flow to the south is deflected by the Coriolis force to produce a strengthening easterly jet located at about 10 to 15 °N and a westerly jet to the south of the equator (see Figure 11.16). One theory suggests that this takes place in June as the col between the subtropical anticyclone cells of the western Pacific and the Arabian Sea at the 300-mb level is displaced northwestward from a position about 15 °N, 95 °E in May towards central India. The northwestward movement of the monsoon (see Figure 11.24) is apparently related to the extension over India of the upper tropospheric easterlies.

The recognition of the upper airflow has widespread effects in southern Asia. It is directly linked with the Maiyu rains of China (which reach a peak about 10 to 15 June), the onset of the southwest Indian monsoon and the northerly retreat of the upper westerlies over the whole of the Middle East.

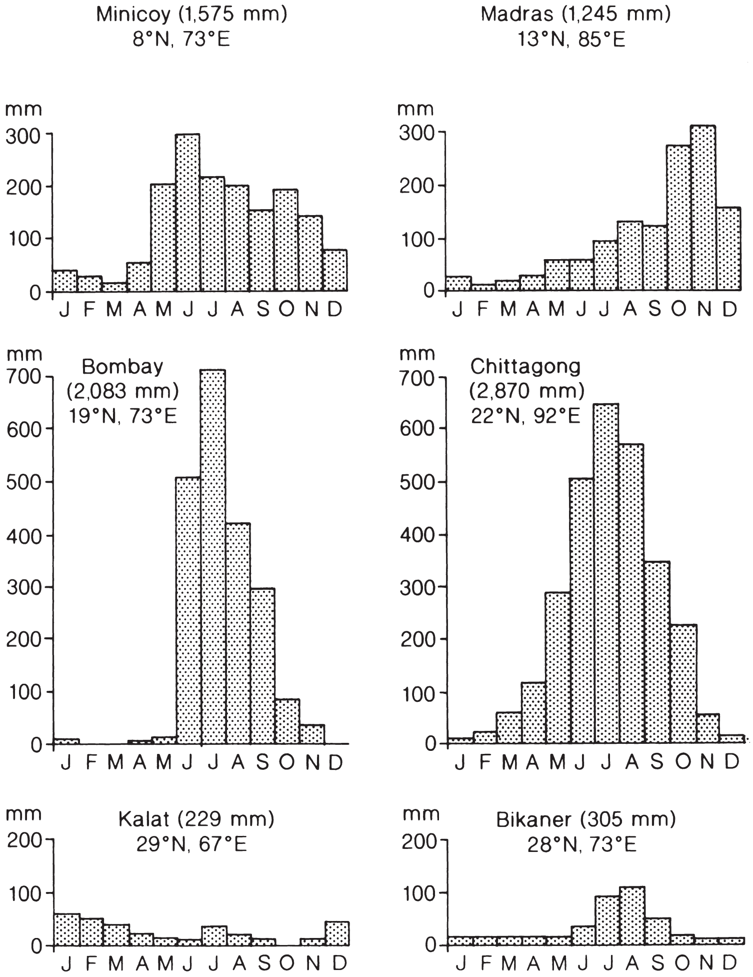


Figure 11.20 Average monthly rainfall (mm) at six stations in the Indian region. The annual total is given after the station name.

Source: Based on 'CLIMAT' normals of the World Meteorological Organization for 1931 to 1960.

It must nevertheless be emphasized that it is still uncertain how far these changes are caused by events in the upper air or indeed whether the onset of the monsoon initiates a readjustment in the upper-air circulation. The presence of the Tibetan Plateau is certainly of importance even if there is no significant barrier effect on the upper airflow. The plateau surface is strongly heated in spring and early summer (R_n is about 180 W m^{-2} in May) and nearly all of this is transferred via sensible heat to the atmosphere. This results in the formation of a shallow heat low on the plateau, overlain, at about 450 mb, by a warm anticyclone (see Figure 7.1C). The plateau atmospheric boundary layer now extends over an area about twice the size of the plateau surface itself. Easterly airflow on the southern side of the upper anticyclone undoubtedly assists in the northward shift of the subtropical westerly jet stream. At the same time, the pre-monsoonal convective activity over the southeastern rim of the plateau provides a further heat source, by latent heat release, for the upper anticyclone. The seasonal wind reversals over and around the Tibetan Plateau have led Chinese meteorologists to distinguish a 'Plateau Monsoon' system, distinct from that over India.

4 Summer

By mid-July, monsoon air covers most of South and Southeast Asia (see Figure 11.23), and in India the equatorial trough is located at about 25 °N. North of the Tibetan Plateau there is a rather weak upper westerly current with a (subtropical) high-pressure cell over the

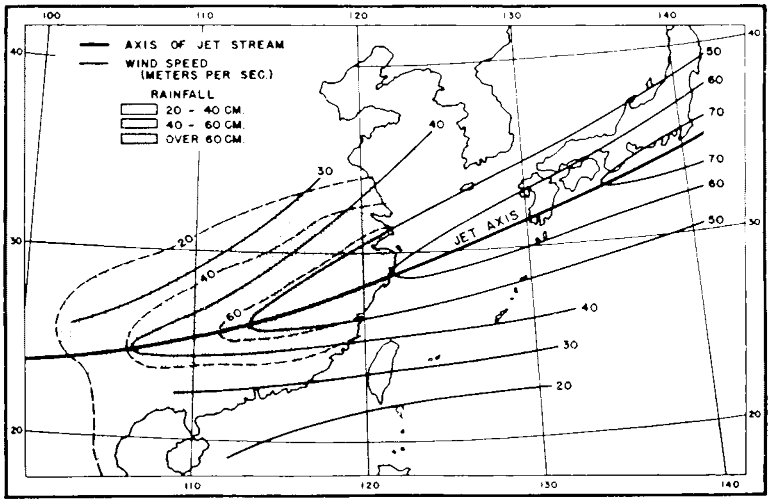

100
110
120
130
140
40
30
20
AXIS OF JET STREAM
WIND SPEED (METERS PER SEC.)
RAINFALL
20 - 40 CM.
40 - 60 CM.
OVER 60 CM.
JET AXIS
50
60
70
70
60
50
40
30
20
40
30
20
40
60

Figure 11.21 The mean winter jet stream axis at 12 km over the Far East and the mean winter precipitation over China in cm.

Source: After Mohri and Yeh; from Trewartha (1958). Copyright © *Erdkunde*. Published by permission.

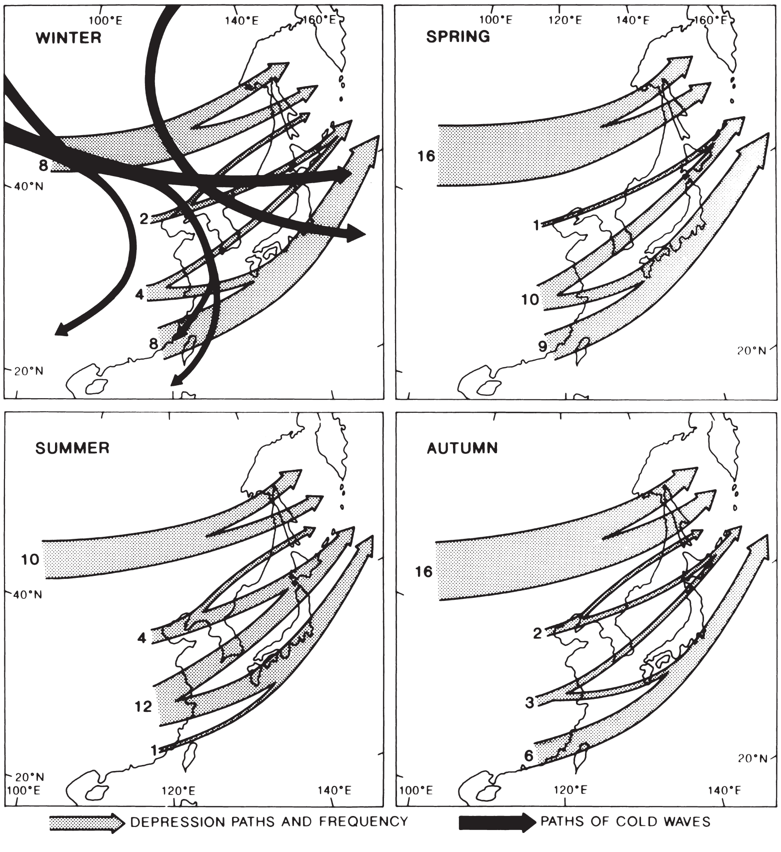

WINTER
100°E
140°E
160°E
40°N
20°N
8
2
4
8
SPRING
100°E
120°E
140°E
160°E
16
1
10
9
20°N
SUMMER
10
40°N
4
12
1
20°N
100°E
120°E
140°E
AUTUMN
16
2
3
6
20°N
100°E
120°E
140°E
DEPRESSION PATHS AND FREQUENCY
PATHS OF COLD WAVES

Figure 11.22 Seasonal depression paths and frequencies over China and Japan, together with typical paths of winter cold waves.

Sources: Compiled from various sources, including Tao (1984), Zhang and Lin (1984), Sheng *et al*. (1986) and Domrös and Peng (1988). Reproduced by permission of Springer-Verlag, Berlin.

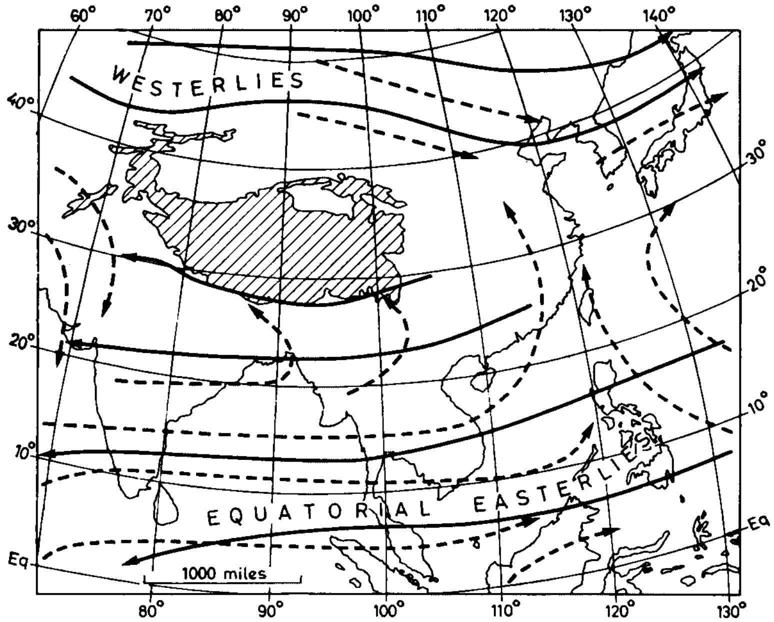

60°
70°
80°
90°
100°
110°
120°
130°
140°
WESTERLIES
40°
30°
20°
10°
Eq
EQUATORIAL EASTERLIES
1000 miles
80°
90°
100°
110°
120°
130°
30°
20°
10°
Eq

Figure 11.23 The characteristic air circulation over South and East Asia in summer. Solid lines indicate airflow at about 6000 m and dashed lines at about 600 m. Note that the low-level flow is very uniform between about 600 and 3000 m.

Sources: After Thompson (1951), Flohn (1968), Frost and Stephenson (1965), and others.

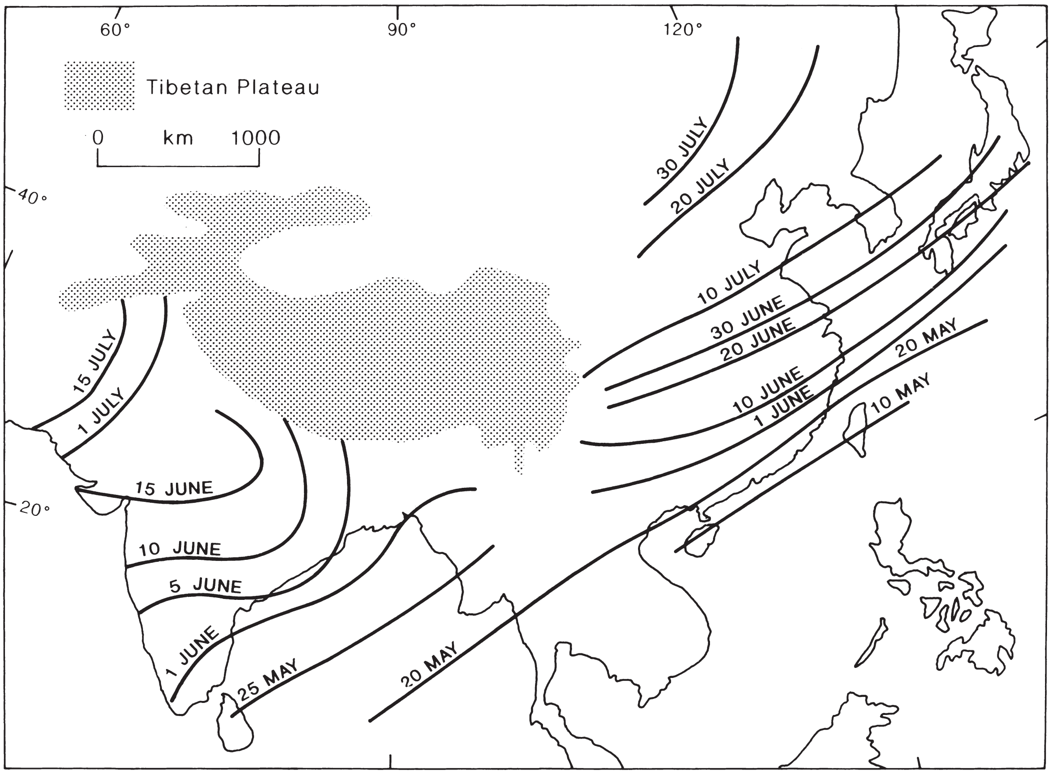

60°
90°
120°
Tibetan Plateau
0 km 1000
40°
20°
30 JULY
20 JULY
10 JULY
30 JUNE
20 JUNE
20 MAY
10 JUNE
1 JUNE
10 MAY
15 JULY
1 JULY
15 JUNE
10 JUNE
5 JUNE
1 JUNE
25 MAY
20 MAY

Figure 11.24 Mean onset date of the summer monsoon over South and East Asia.

Source: After Tao Shi-yan and Chen Longxun. From Domrös and Peng (1988). Reproduced by permission of Professor Tao Shi-yan and the Chinese Geographical Society, and Springer-Verlag.

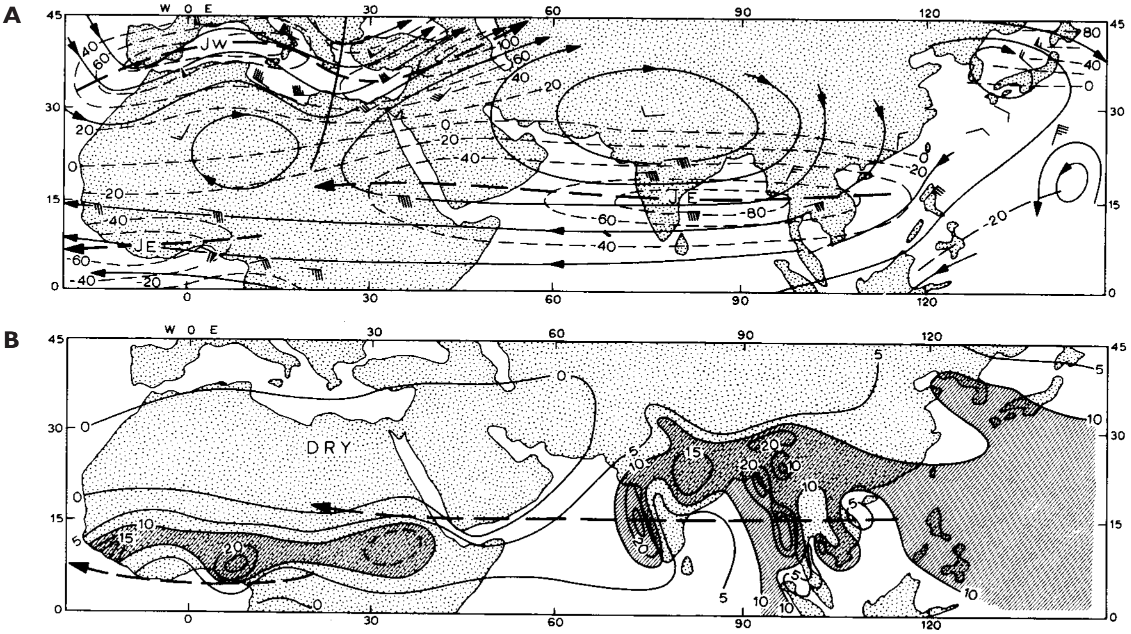


Figure 11.25 The easterly tropical jet stream. (A) The location of the easterly jet streams at 200 mb on 25 July 1955. Streamlines are shown in solid lines and isotachs (wind speed) dashed. Wind speeds are given in knots (westerly components positive, easterly negative). (B) The average July rainfall (shaded areas receive more than 25 cm) in relation to the location of the easterly jet streams.

Source: From Koteswaram (1958).

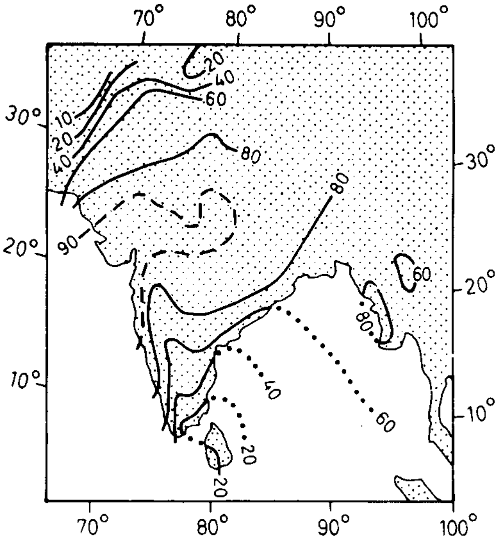


Figure 11.26 The percentage contribution of the monsoon rainfall (June to September) to the annual total.

Sources: After Rao and Ramamoorthy, in Indian Meteorological Department (1960); and Ananthakrishnan and Rajagopalachari, in Hutchings (1964).

plateau. The southwest monsoon in South Asia is overlain by strong upper easterlies (see Figure 11.19) with a pronounced jet at 150 mb (about 15 km), which extends westward across South Arabia and Africa (Figure 11.25). No easterly jets have been observed so far over the tropical Atlantic or Pacific. The jet is related to a steep lateral temperature gradient, with the upper air getting progressively colder to the south.

An important characteristic of the tropical easterly jet is the location of the main belt of summer rainfall on the right (i.e. north) side of the axis upstream of the wind maximum and on the left side downstream, except for areas where the orographic effect is predominant (see Figure 11.25). The mean jet maximum is located at about 15 °N, 50 to 80 °E.

The monsoon current does not give rise to a simple pattern of weather over India, despite the fact that much of the country receives 80 per cent or more of its annual precipitation during the monsoon season (Figure 11.26). In the northwest, a thin wedge of monsoon air is overlain by subsiding continental air. The inversion prevents convection and consequently little or no rain falls in the summer months in the arid northwest of the

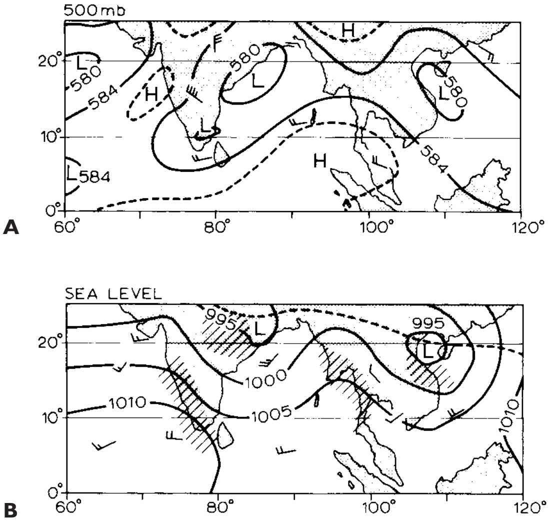


Figure 11.27 Monsoon depressions of 12:00 GMT, 4 July 1957. (A) shows the height (in tens of metres) of the 500 mb surface; (B), the sea-level isobars. The broken line in (B) represents the equatorial trough, and precipitation areas are shown by the oblique shading.

Source: Based on the IGY charts of the Deutscher Wetterdienst.

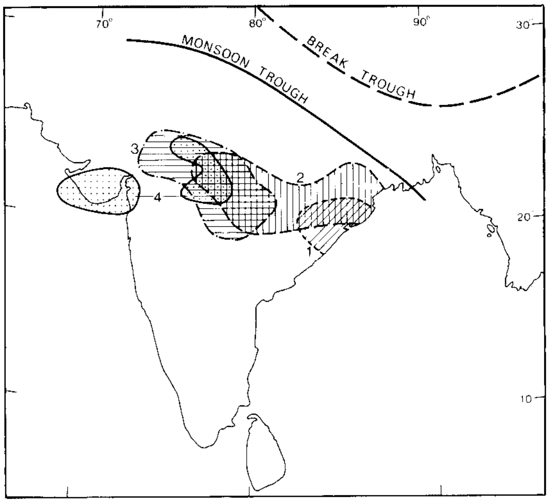


Figure 11.29 The location of the monsoon trough in its normal position during an active summer monsoon phase (solid) and during breaks in the monsoon (dashed).* Areas 1 to 4 indicate four successive daily areas of heavy rain ([more] 50 mm/day) during the period 7 to 10 July 1973 as a monsoon depression moved west along the Ganges valley. Areas of lighter rainfall were much more extensive.

Source: *After Das (1987). Copyright © 1987. Reproduced by permission of John Wiley & Sons, Inc.

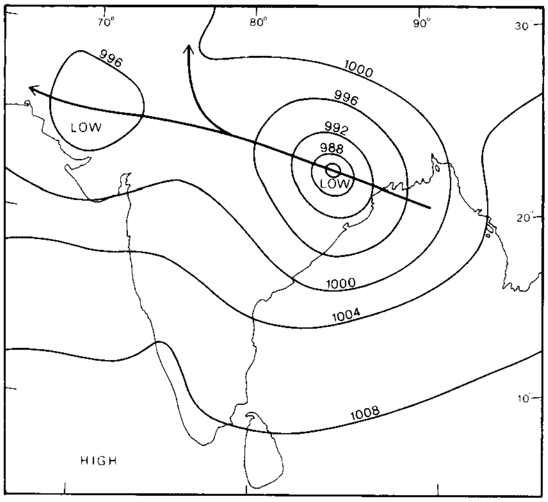


Figure 11.28 The normal track of monsoon depressions, together with a typical depression pressure distribution (mb).

Source: After Das (1987). Copyright © 1987. Reproduced by permission of John Wiley & Sons, Inc.

subcontinent (e.g. Bikaner and Kalat, Figure 11.20). This is similar to the Sahel zone in West Africa, discussed below.

Around the head of the Bay of Bengal and along the Ganges valley the main weather mechanisms in summer are the 'monsoon depressions' (Figure 11.27), which usually move westward or northwestward across India, steered by the upper easterlies (Figure 11.28), mainly in July and August. On average, they occur about twice a month, apparently when an upper trough becomes superimposed over a surface disturbance in the Bay of Bengal. Monsoon depressions have cold cores, are generally without fronts and are some 1000 to 1250 km across, with a cyclonic circulation up to about 8 km, and a typical lifetime of two to five days. They produce average daily rainfalls of 1200 to 2000 mm, occurring mainly as convective rains in the southwest quadrant of the depression. The main rain areas typically lie south of the equatorial or monsoon trough (Figure 11.29) (in the southwest quadrant of the monsoon depressions, resembling an inverted mid-latitude depression). Figure 11.30 shows the extent and magnitude of a particularly severe monsoon depression. Such storms occur mainly in two zones: (1) the Ganges valley east of 76 °E; (2) a belt across central India at around 21°N, at its widest covering 6° of latitude. Monsoon depressions also tend

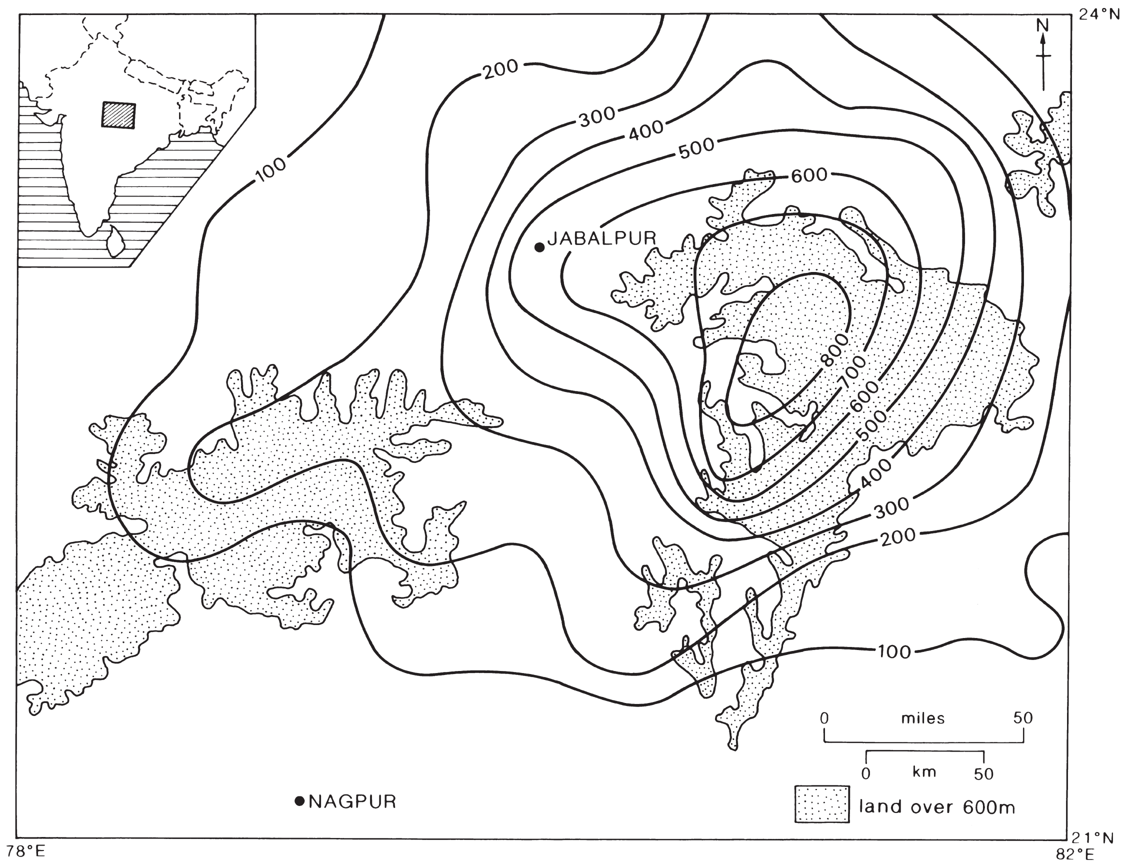


Figure 11.30 Rainfall (mm) produced in three days over a 50,000-km^2 area of central India northeast of Nagpur by a severe, westward-moving monsoon depression, during September 1926.

Source: Dhar and Nandargi (1993). Copyright © John Wiley & Sons Ltd. Reproduced with permission.

to occur on the windward coasts and mountains of India, Burma and Malaya. Without such disturbances, the distribution of monsoon rains would be controlled to a much larger degree by orography.

A key part of the southwest monsoonal flow occurs in the form of a 15 to 45 m s^{-1} jet stream at a level of only 1000 to 1500 m. This jet, strongest during active periods of the Indian monsoon, flows northwestward from Madagascar (Figure 11.31) and crosses the equator from the south over East Africa, where its core is often marked by a streak of cloud (similar to that shown in Plate 14) and where it may bring excessive local rainfall. The jet is displaced northward and strengthens from February to July; by May it has become constricted against the Abyssinian Highlands, it accelerates still more and is deflected eastward across the Arabian Sea towards the west coast of the Indian peninsula. This low-level jet, unique in the trade wind belt, flows offshore from the Horn of Africa, bringing in cool waters and contributing to a temperature inversion that is also produced by dry upper air originating over Arabia or East Africa and by subsidence due to the convergent upper easterlies. The flow from the southwest over the Indian Ocean is relatively dry near the equator and near shore, apart from a shallow, moist layer near the base. Downwind towards India, however, there is a strong temperature and moisture interaction between the ocean surface and the low-level jet flow. Hence, deep convection builds up and convective instability is released, especially as the airflow slows down and converges near the west coast of India and as it is forced up over the Western Ghats. A portion of this southwest monsoon airflow is deflected by the Western Ghats to form 100-km diameter offshore vortices lasting two to three days

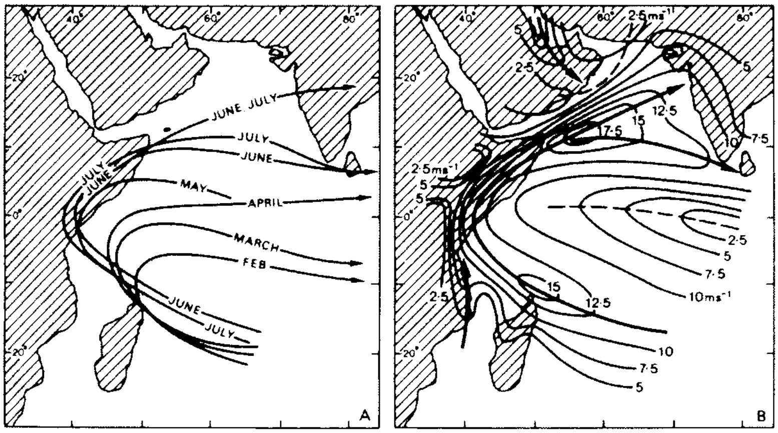


Figure 11.31 The mean monthly positions (A) and the mean July velocity (m s^{-1}) (B) of the low-level (1 km) Somali jet stream over the Indian Ocean.

Source: After Findlater (1971), reproduced by permission of the Controller of Her Majesty's Stationery Office.

and capable of bringing 100 mm of rain in twenty-four hours along the western coastal belt of the peninsula. At Mangalore (13°N), there are on average twenty-five rain-days per month in June, twenty-eight in July and twenty-five in August. The monthly rainfall averages are 980, 1060 and 580 mm, respectively, accounting for 75 per cent of the annual total. In the lee of the Ghats, amounts are much reduced and there are semi-arid areas receiving less than 64 cm per year.

In southern India, excluding the southeast, there is a marked tendency for less rainfall when the equatorial trough is furthest north. Figure 11.20 shows a maximum at Minicoy in June, with a secondary peak in October as the equatorial trough and its associated disturbances withdraw southwards. This double peak occurs in much of interior peninsular India south of about 20°N and in western Sri Lanka, although autumn is the wettest period.

There is a variable pulse alternating between active and break periods in the May to September summer monsoon flow (see Figure 11.16) which, particularly at times of its strongest expression (e.g. 1971), produces periodic rainfall (Figure 11.32). During active periods the convective monsoon trough is located in a southerly position, giving heavy rain over north and central India and the west coast (see Figure 11.16). Consequently, there is a strong upper-level outflow to the south, which strengthens both the easterly jet north of the equator and the westerly jet to the south over the Indian Ocean. The other upper-air outflow to the north fuels the weaker westerly jet there. Convective activity moves east from the Indian Ocean to the cooler eastern Pacific with an irregular periodicity (on average forty to fifty days for the most marked waves), finding maximum expression at the 850-mb level and clearly being connected with the Walker circulation. After the passage of an active convective wave there is a more stable break in the summer monsoon when the ITCZ shifts to the south. The easterly jet now weakens and subsiding air is forced to rise by the Himalayas along a break trough located above the foothills (see Figure 11.16), which replaces the monsoon trough during break periods. This circulation brings rain to the foothills of the Himalayas and the Brahmaputra valley at a time of generally low rainfall elsewhere. The shift of the ITCZ to the south of the subcontinent is associated with a similar movement and strengthening of the westerly jet to the north, weakening the Tibetan anticyclone or displacing it northeastward. The lack of rain over much of the subcontinent during break periods may be due in part to the eastward extension across India of the subtropical high-pressure cell centred over Arabia at this time.

It is important to realize that the monsoon rains are highly variable from year to year, emphasizing the role played by disturbances in generating rainfall within the generally moist southwesterly airflow. Droughts occur with some regularity in the Indian subcontinent: between 1890 and 1975 there were nine years of extreme drought (Figure 11.33) and at least five others of significant drought. These droughts are brought about by a combination of a late burst of the summer monsoon and an increase in the number and length of the break periods. Breaks are most common in August to September, lasting on average for five days, but they may occur at any time during the summer and can last up to three weeks.

The strong surface heat source over the Tibetan Plateau, which is most effective during the day, gives rise to a 50 to 85 per cent frequency of deep cumulonimbus

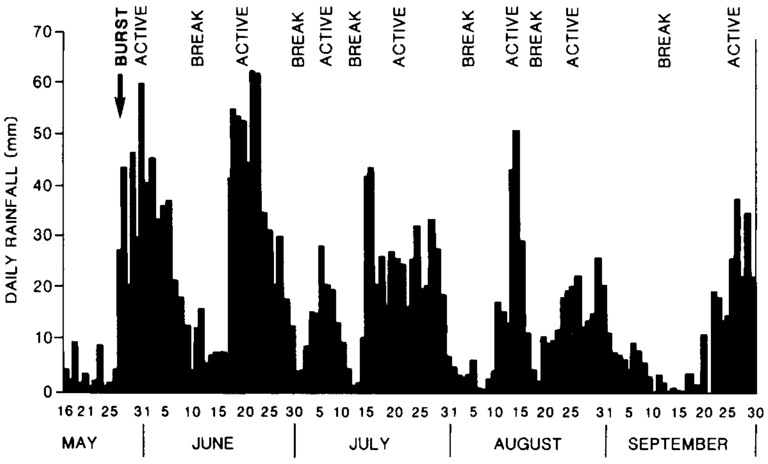


Figure 11.32 Mean daily rainfall (mm) along the west coast of India during the period 16 May to 30 September 1971, showing a pronounced burst of the monsoon followed by active periods and breaks of a periodic nature. All years do not exhibit these features as clearly.

Source: After Webster (1987b). Copyright © 1987. Reproduced by permission of John Wiley & Sons, Inc.

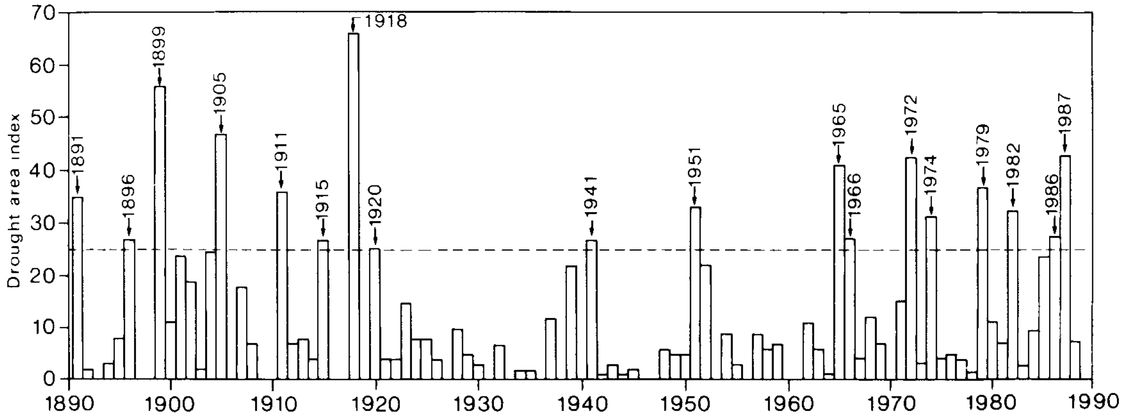


Figure 11.33 The yearly drought area index for the Indian subcontinent for the period 1891 to 1988, based upon the percentage of the total area experiencing moderate, extreme or severe drought. Years of extreme drought are dated. The dashed line indicates the lower limit of major droughts.

Source: After Bhalme and Mooley (1980). Updated by courtesy of H. M. Bhalme, reproduced by permission of the American Meteorological Society.

clouds over central and eastern Tibet in July. Late afternoon rain or hail showers are generally accompanied by thunder, but half or more of the precipitation falls at night, accounting for 70 to 80 per cent of the total in south-central and southeastern Tibet. This may be related to large-scale plateau-induced local wind systems. However, the central and eastern plateau also has a frequency maximum of shear lines and associated weak lows at 500 mb during May to September. These plateau systems are shallow (2 to 2.5 km) and only 400 to 1000 km in diameter, but they are associated with cloud clusters on satellite imagery in summer.

5 Autumn

Autumn sees the southward swing of the equatorial trough and the zone of maximum convection, which lies immediately to the north of the weakening easterly jet (see Figure 11.16). The breakup of the summer circulation systems is associated with the withdrawal of the monsoon rains, which is much less clearly defined than their onset (Figure 11.34). By October, the easterly trades of the Pacific affect the Bay of Bengal at the 500-mb level and generate disturbances at their confluence with the equatorial westerlies. This is the major season

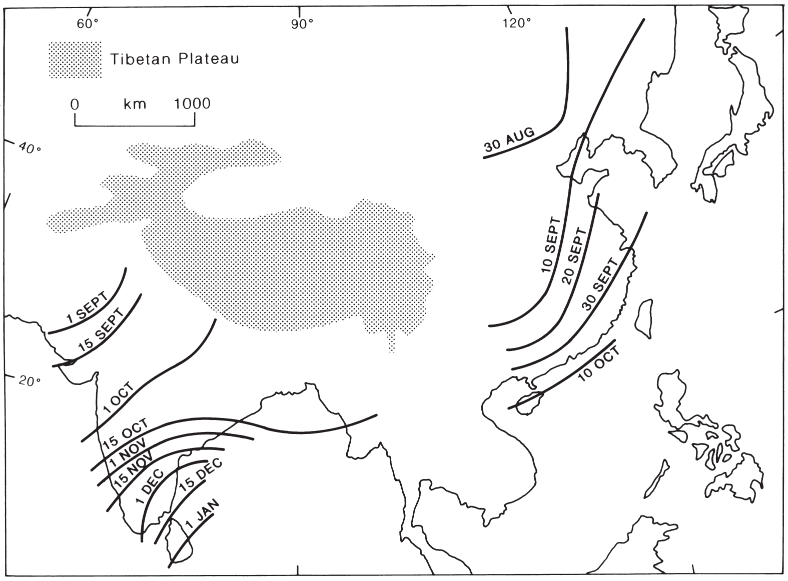


Figure 11.34 Mean onset date of the winter monsoon (i.e. retreat of the summer monsoon) over South and East Asia.

Sources: After Tao Shi-yan and Chen Longxun. Reproduced by permission of Professor Tao Shi-yan and the Chinese Geographical Society, and John Wiley & Sons, Inc.

for Bay of Bengal cyclones and it is these disturbances, rather than the onshore northeasterly monsoon, that cause the October/November maximum of rainfall in southeast India (e.g. Madras, Figure 11.20).

During October, the westerly jet re-establishes itself south of the Tibetan Plateau, often within a few days, and cool season conditions are restored over most of South and East Asia.

D EAST ASIAN AND AUSTRALIAN SUMMER MONSOONS

China has no equivalent to India's hot, pre-monsoon season. The low-level, northeasterly winter monsoon (reinforced by subsiding air from the upper westerlies) persists in north China, and even in the south it begins to be replaced by maritime tropical air only in April to May. Thus at Guangzhou (Canton), mean temperatures rise from only 17°C in March to 27°C in May, some 6°C lower than the mean values over northern India.

Westerly depressions are most frequent over China in spring (see Figure 11.22). They form more readily over Central Asia in this season as the continental anticyclone begins to weaken; also, many develop in the jet stream confluence zone in the lee of the plateau. The average number crossing China per month during 1921 to 1931 was as follows:

J	F	M	A	M	J	J	A	S	O	N	D	Year
7	8	9	11	10	8	5	3	3	6	7	7	86

The zonal westerlies retreat northward over China in May to June and the westerly flow becomes concentrated north of the Tibetan Plateau. The equatorial westerlies spread across Southeast Asia from the Indian Ocean, giving a warm, humid airmass at least 3000 m deep. However, the summer monsoon over southern China is apparently influenced less by the westerly flow over India than by southerly airflow over Indonesia near 100°E. In addition, contrary to earlier views, the Pacific is only a moisture source when tropical southeasterlies extend westward to affect the east coast.

The Maiyu 'front' involves both the monsoon trough and the East Asian–West Pacific polar front, with weak disturbances moving eastward along the Yangtze valley and occasional cold fronts from the northwest. Its location shifts northward in three stages, from south of the Yangtze River in early May to north of the river by the end of the month and into northern China in mid-July (see Figure 11.24), where it remains until late September.

The surface airflow over China in summer is southerly (Table 11.2) and the upper winds are weak, with only a diffuse easterly current over southern China. According to traditional views, the monsoon current reaches northern China by July. The annual rainfall regime shows a distinct summer maximum with,

Table 11.2 Surface circulation over China.

	January	*July*
North China	60% of winds from W, NW and N	57% of winds from SE, S and SW
Southeast China	88% of winds from N, NE and E	56% of winds from SE, S and SW

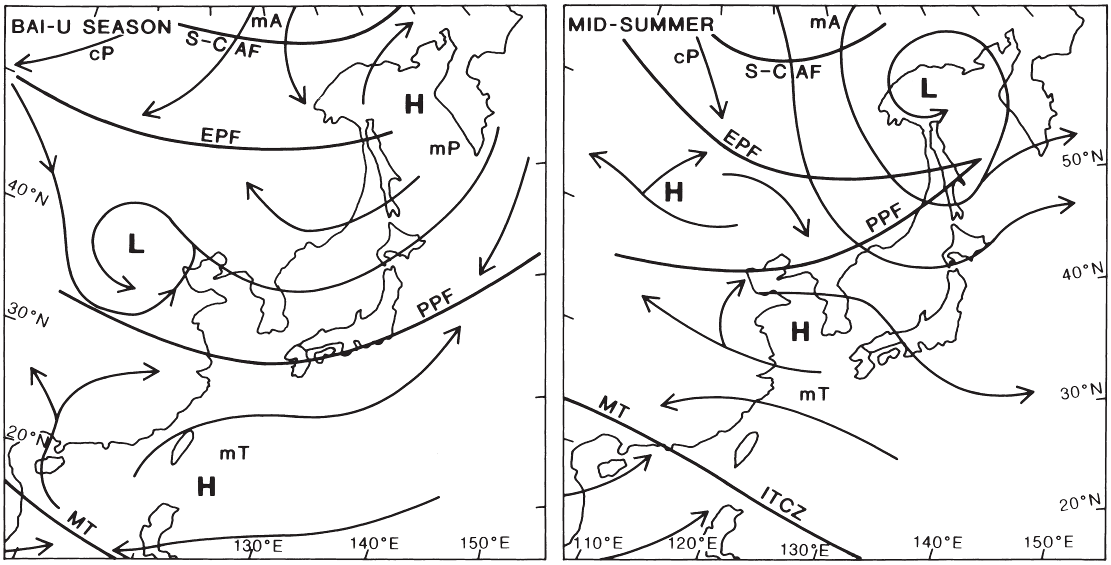


Figure 11.35 Schematic surface circulation pattern and frontal locations (Siberian–Canadian Arctic S–C AF, Eurasian polar EPF, Pacific polar PPF and monsoon trough MT/intertropical convergence zone MT/ITCZ) over East Asia during the Bai-u (i.e. July to August) season.

Source: Matsumoto (1985). Reproduced by permission, University of Tokyo.

for example, 64 per cent of the annual total occurring at Tianjin (Tientsin) (39°N) in July and August. Nevertheless, much of the rain falls during thunderstorms associated with shallow lows, and the existence of the ITCZ in this region is doubtful (see Figure 11.1). The southerly winds, which predominate over northern China in summer, are not necessarily linked to the monsoon current further south. Indeed, this idea is the result of incorrect interpretation of streamline maps (of instantaneous airflow direction) as ones showing air trajectories (or the actual paths followed by air parcels). The depiction of the monsoon over China in Figure 11.24 is, in fact, based on a wet-bulb temperature value of 24°C. Cyclonic activity in northern China is attributable to the West Pacific polar front, forming between cP air and much-modified mT air (Figure 11.35).

In central and southern China, the three summer months account for about 40 to 50 per cent of the annual average precipitation, with another 30 per cent or so being received in spring. In southeast China there is a rainfall singularity in the first half of July; a secondary minimum in the profile seems to result from the westward extension of the Pacific subtropical anticyclone over the coast of China.

A similar pattern of rainfall maxima occurs over southern and central Japan (Figure 11.36), comprising two of the six natural seasons that have been recognized there. The main rains occur during the *Bai-u* season of the southeast monsoon resulting from waves, convergence zones and closed circulations moving mainly in the tropical airstream around the Pacific subtropical anticyclone, but originating partly in a southwesterly stream that is the extension of the monsoon circulation of South Asia (Figure 11.23). The southeast circulation is displaced westward from Japan by a zonal expansion of the subtropical anticyclone

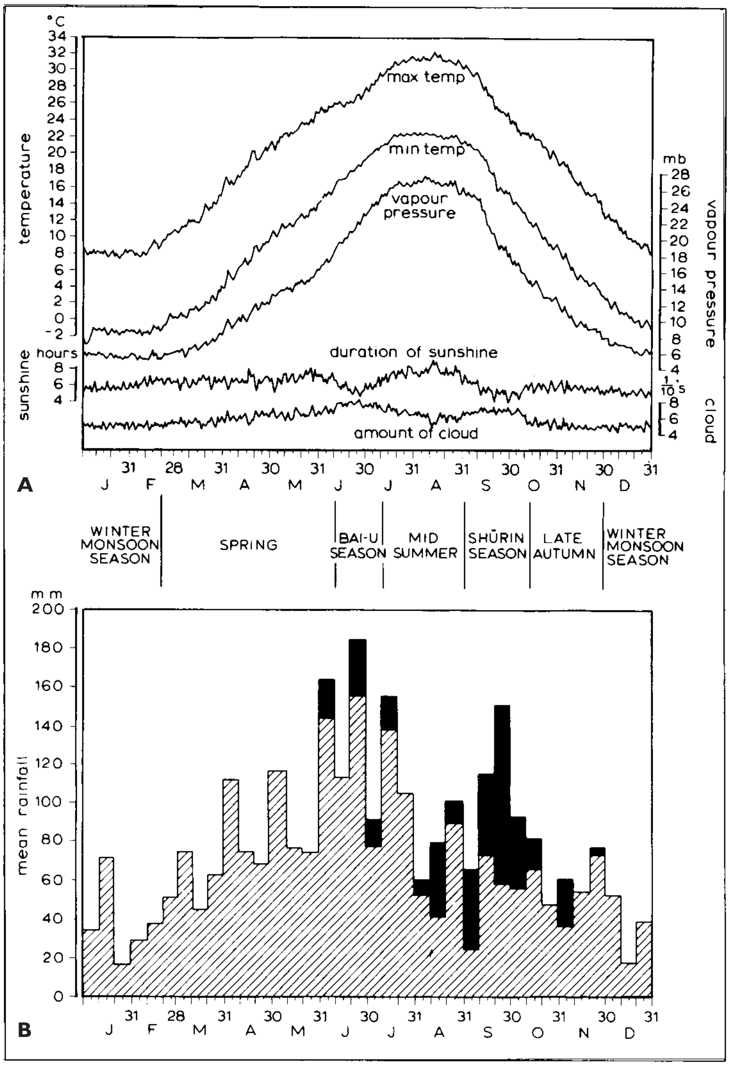


Figure 11.36 (A) Seasonal variation of daily normals at Nagoya, southern Japan, suggesting six natural seasons. (B) Average ten-day precipitation amounts for a station in southern Japan, indicating in black the proportion of rainfall produced by typhoon circulations. The latter reaches a maximum during the Shurin season.

Sources: (A) From Maejima (1967); (B) after Saito (1959), from Trewartha (1981).

during late July and August, giving a period of more settled sunny weather. The secondary precipitation maximum of the Shurin season during September and early October coincides with an eastward contraction of the Pacific subtropical anticyclone, allowing low-pressure systems and typhoons from the Pacific to swing north towards Japan. Although much of the Shurin rainfall is believed to be of typhoon origin (see Figure 11.36), some is undoubtedly associated with the southern sides of depressions moving along the southward-migrating Pacific polar front to the north (see Figures 11.22 and 11.35), because there is a marked tendency for the autumn rains to begin first in the north of Japan and to spread southwards. The manner in which the location of the western margin of the North Pacific subtropical high-pressure cell affects the climates of China and Japan is well illustrated by the changing seasonal trajectories of typhoon paths over East Asia (Figure 11.37). The northward and southward migrations of the cell zonal axis through 15° of latitude, the northwestern high-pressure cell extensions over eastern China and the Sea of Japan in August, and its south-eastern contraction in October, are especially marked.

Northern Australia experiences a monsoon regime during the austral summer. Low-level westerlies develop in late December associated with a thermal low over northern Australia. Analogous to the vertical wind structure over Asia in July, there are easterlies in the

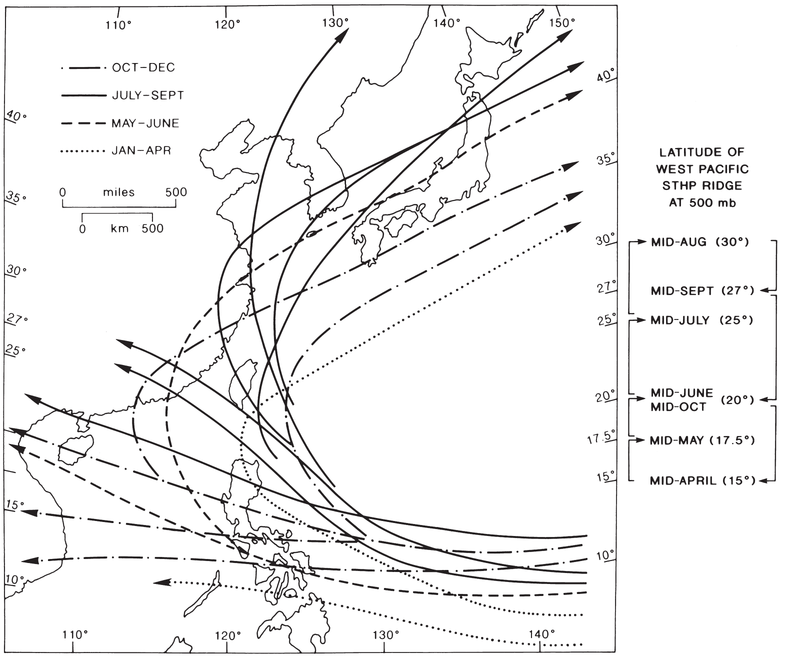


Figure 11.37 Typhoon paths over East Asia during January to April, May to June, July to September and October to December related to the mean latitude of the central ridge axis line of the subtropical high-pressure cell at 500 mb over the western Pacific.

Sources: Compiled from various sources, including Lin (1982) and Tao (1984). Reproduced by permission of the Geographical Society of China.

upper troposphere. Various wind and rainfall criteria have been used to define monsoon onset. Based on the occurrence of (weighted) surface to 500-mb westerly winds, overlain by 300 to 100 mb easterlies at Darwin (12.5°S, 131°E), the main onset date is 28 December and retreat date 13 March. Despite an average duration of seventy-five days, monsoon conditions lasted only ten days in January 1961 and 1986 but 123 to 125 days in 1985 and 1974. Active phases with deep westerlies and rainfall each occur on just over half the days in a season, although there is little overlap between them. However, summer rainfall may also occur during deep easterlies associated with tropical squall lines and tropical cyclones. Active monsoon conditions typically persist for four to fourteen days, with breaks lasting about twenty to forty days.

E CENTRAL AND SOUTHERN AFRICA

1 The African monsoon

The annual climatic regime over West Africa has many similarities to that over South Asia, the surface airflow being determined by the position of the leading edge of a monsoon trough (see Figure 11.2). This airflow is southwesterly to the south of the trough and easterly to northeasterly to its north (Figure 11.38). The major difference between the circulations of the two regions is due largely to the differing geography of the land to sea distribution and to the lack of a large mountain range to the north of West Africa. This allows the monsoon trough to migrate regularly with the seasons. In general, the West African monsoon trough oscillates between annual extreme locations of about 2°N and 25°N (Figure 11.39). In 1956, for example, these extreme positions were 5°N on 1 January and 23°N in August. The leading edge of the monsoon trough is complex in structure (see Figure 11.40B) and its position may oscillate greatly from day to day through several degrees of latitude. The classical model of a steady northward advance of the monsoon has recently been called into question. The rainy season onset in February at the coast does propagate northward to 13°N in May, but then in mid-June there is a sudden synchronous onset of rains between about 9°N and 13°N. The mechanism is not yet firmly established, but it involves a shift of the lower tropospheric African Easterly Jet (AEJ) (see Figure 11.40B).

In winter, the southwesterly monsoon airflow over the coasts of West Africa is very shallow (i.e. 1000 m) with 3000 m of overriding easterly winds, which are themselves overlain by strong (>20 m s^{-1}) winds (see Figure 11.41). North of the monsoon trough, the surface

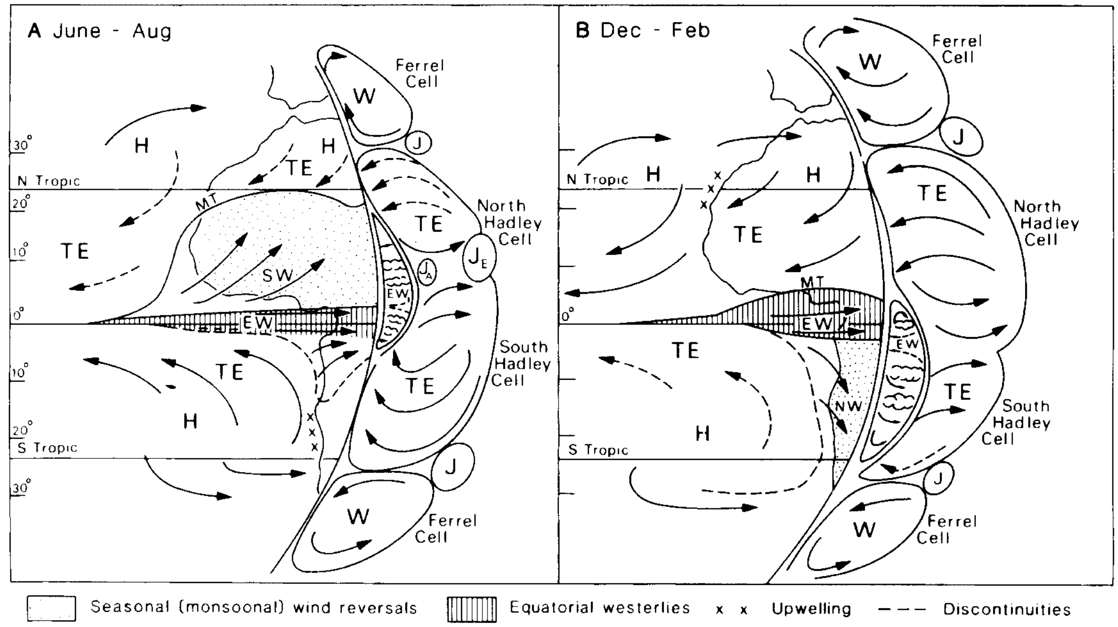


Figure 11.38 The major circulation in Africa in (A) June to August and (B) December to February. H: subtropical high-pressure cells; EW: equatorial westerlies (moist, unstable but containing the Congo high-pressure ridge); NW: the northwesterlies (summer extension of EW in the southern hemisphere); TE: tropical easterlies (trades); SW: southwesterly monsoonal flow in the northern hemisphere; W: extratropical westerlies; J: subtropical westerly jet stream; J_A and J_E: the African easterly and tropical easterly jet streams; and MT: monsoon trough.

Source: From Rossignol-Strick (1985), by permission Elsevier Science Publishers BV, Amsterdam.

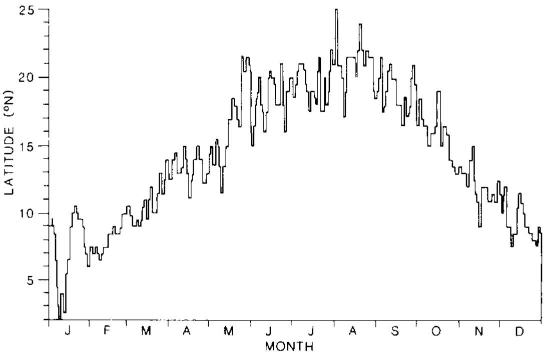


Figure 11.39 The daily position of the monsoon trough at longitude 3°E during 1956. This year experienced an exceptionally wide swing over West Africa, with the trough reaching 2°N in January and 25°N on 1 August. Within a few days after the latter date, the strongly oscillating trough had swung southward through 8° of latitude.

Source: After Clackson (1957), from Hayward and Oguntoyinbo (1987).

northeasterlies (i.e. the 2000-m deep *Harmattan* flow) blow clockwise outward from the subtropical high-pressure centre. They are compensated above 5000 m by an anticlockwise westerly airflow that, at about 12,000 m and 20 to 30°N, is concentrated into a subtropical westerly jet stream of average speed 45 m s^{-1}. Mean January surface temperatures decrease from about 26°C along the southern coast to 14°C in southern Algeria.

With the approach of the northern summer, the strengthening of the South Atlantic subtropical high-pressure cell, combined with the increased continental temperatures, establishes a strong southwesterly airflow at the surface that spreads northward behind the monsoon trough, lagging about six weeks behind the progress of the overhead sun. The northward migration of the trough oscillates diurnally with a northward progress of up to 200 km in the afternoons following a smaller southward retreat in the mornings. The northward spread of moist, unstable and relatively cool southwesterly airflow from the Gulf of Guinea brings rain in differing amounts to extensive areas of West Africa. Aloft, easterly winds spiral clockwise outward

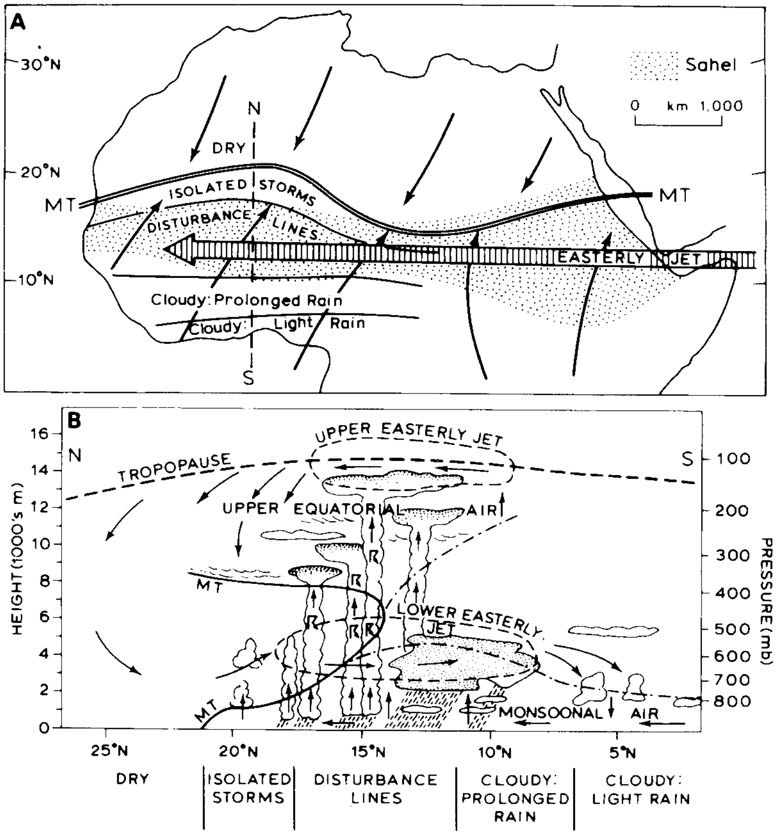

A
30°N
20°N
10°N
Sahel
0 km 1,000
N
DRY
MT
ISOLATED STORMS
DISTURBANCE LINES
EASTERLY JET
MT
Cloudy: Prolonged Rain
Cloudy: Light Rain
S
B
N
S
UPPER EASTERLY JET
TROPOPAUSE
UPPER EQUATORIAL AIR
MT
LOWER EASTERLY JET
MONSOONAL AIR
MT
HEIGHT (1000's m)
16
14
12
10
8
6
4
2
0
PRESSURE (mb)
100
200
300
400
500
600
700
800
25°N
20°N
15°N
10°N
5°N
DRY
ISOLATED STORMS
DISTURBANCE LINES
CLOUDY: PROLONGED RAIN
CLOUDY: LIGHT RAIN

Figure 11.40 The structure of the circulation over North Africa in August. (A) Surface airflow and easterly tropical jet. (B) Vertical structure and resulting precipitation zones over West Africa. Note the high-level tropospheric easterly jet and the lower African easterly jet.

Notes: R = thunderstorm activity; MT = monsoon trough.
Sources: (A) Reproduction from the *Geographical Magazine*, London; (B) From Maley (1982), copyright © Elsevier Science; reproduced by permission; and Musk (1983).

from the subtropical high-pressure centre (see Figure 11.41) and are concentrated between June and August into two tropical easterly jet streams; the stronger TEJ (>20 m –1) at about 15,000 to 20,000 m and the weaker AEJ(>10 m s^{-1}) at about 4000 to 5000 m (see Figure 11.40B). The lower jet occupies a broad band from 13°N to 20°N, on the underside of which oscillations produce easterly waves which may develop into squall lines. By July, the southwesterly monsoon airflow has spread far to the north and westward-moving convective systems now determine much of the rainfall. The leading trough reaches its extreme northern location, about 20°N, in August. At this time, four major climatic belts can be identified over West Africa (see Figure 11.40A):

1 A coastal belt of cloud and light rain related to frictional convergence within the monsoon flow, overlain by subsiding easterlies.
2 A quasi-stationary zone of disturbances associated with deep stratiform cloud yielding prolonged light rains. Low-level convergence south of the easterly jet axes, apparently associated with easterly wave disturbances from east central Africa, causes instability in the monsoon air.
3 A broad zone underlying the easterly jet streams, which help to activate disturbance lines and thunderstorms. North–south lines of deep cumulonimbus cells may move westward steered by the jets. The southern, wetter part of this zone is termed *the Soudan*, the northern part *the Sahel*, but popular usage assigns the name *Sahel* to the whole belt.
4 Just south of the monsoon trough, the shallow tongue of humid air is overlain by drier subsiding air. Here there are only isolated storms, scattered showers and occasional thunderstorms.

In contrast to winter conditions, August temperatures are lowest (i.e. 24 to 25°C) along the cloudy southern coasts and increase towards the north, where they average 30°C in southern Algeria.

Both the summer airflows, the southwesterlies below and the easterlies aloft, are subject to perturbations,

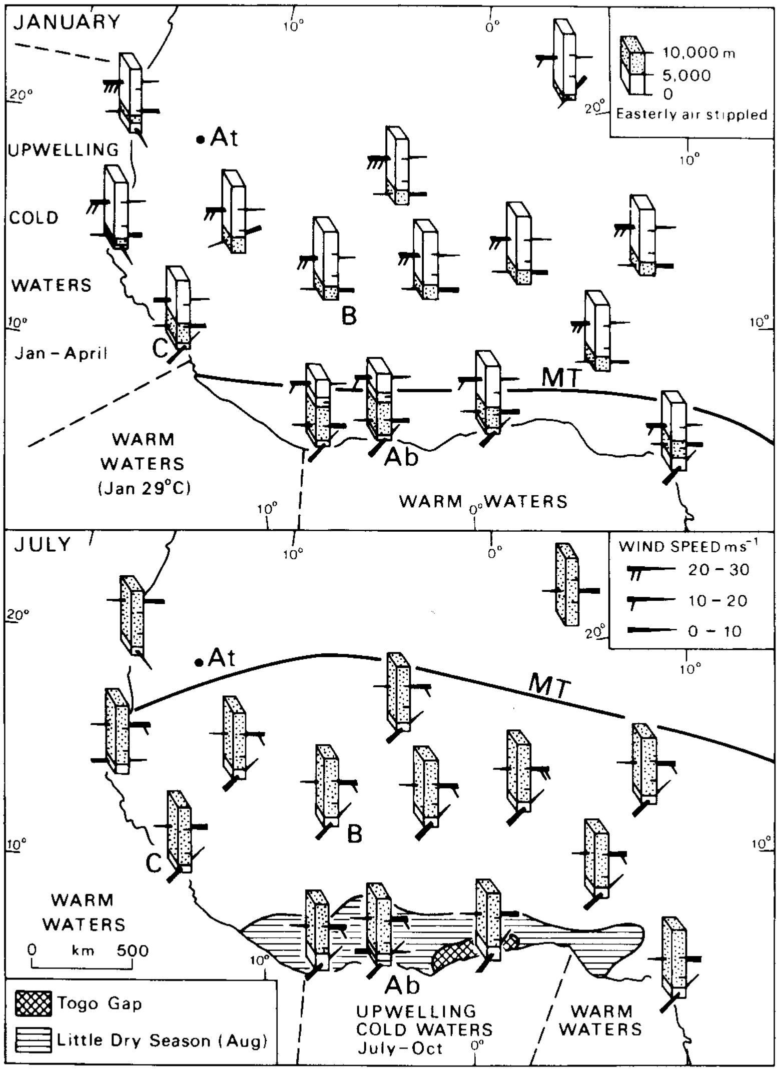

JANUARY
20°
UPWELLING
COLD
WATERS
10°
Jan - April
C
•At
B
MT
Ab
WARM
WATERS
(Jan 29°C)
WARM WATERS
10°
0°
10,000 m
5,000
0
Easterly air stippled
JULY
•At
MT
B
C
Ab
WARM
WATERS
0 km 500
UPWELLING
COLD WATERS
July - Oct
WARM
WATERS
WIND SPEED ms⁻¹
20 - 30
10 - 20
0 - 10
Togo Gap
Little Dry Season (Aug)

Figure 11.41 Mean wind speeds (m s^{-1}) and directions in January and July over West Africa up to about 15,000 m. Ocean water temperatures and the positions of the monsoon trough are also shown, as are the area affected by the August little dry season and the location of the anomalous Togo Gap. The locations of Abidjan (Ab), Atar (At), Bamako (B) and Conakry (C) are given (see precipitation graphs in Figure 11.42).

Source: From Hayward and Oguntoyinbo (1987).

which contribute significantly to the rainfall during this season. Three types of perturbation are particularly prevalent:

1 *Waves in the southwesterlies*. These are northward surges of the humid airflow with periodicities of four to six days. They produce bands of summer monsoon rain some 160 km broad and 50 to 80 km in north–south extent, which have the most marked effect 1100 to 1400 km south of the surface monsoon trough, the position of which oscillates with the surges.
2 *Waves in the easterlies*. These develop on the interface between the lower southwesterly and the upper easterly airflows. These waves are from 1500 to 4000 km long from north to south. They move westward across West Africa between mid-June and October with a periodicity of three to five days and sometimes developing closed cyclonic circulations. Their speed is about 5 to 10° of longitude per day (i.e. 18 to 35 km hr^{-1}). At the height of the summer monsoon, they produce most rainfall at around latitude 14°N, between 300 and 1100 km south of the monsoon trough. On average, some fifty easterly waves per year cross Dakar. Some of these carry on in the general circulation across the Atlantic, and it has been estimated that 60 per cent of West Indian hurricanes originate in West Africa as easterly waves.

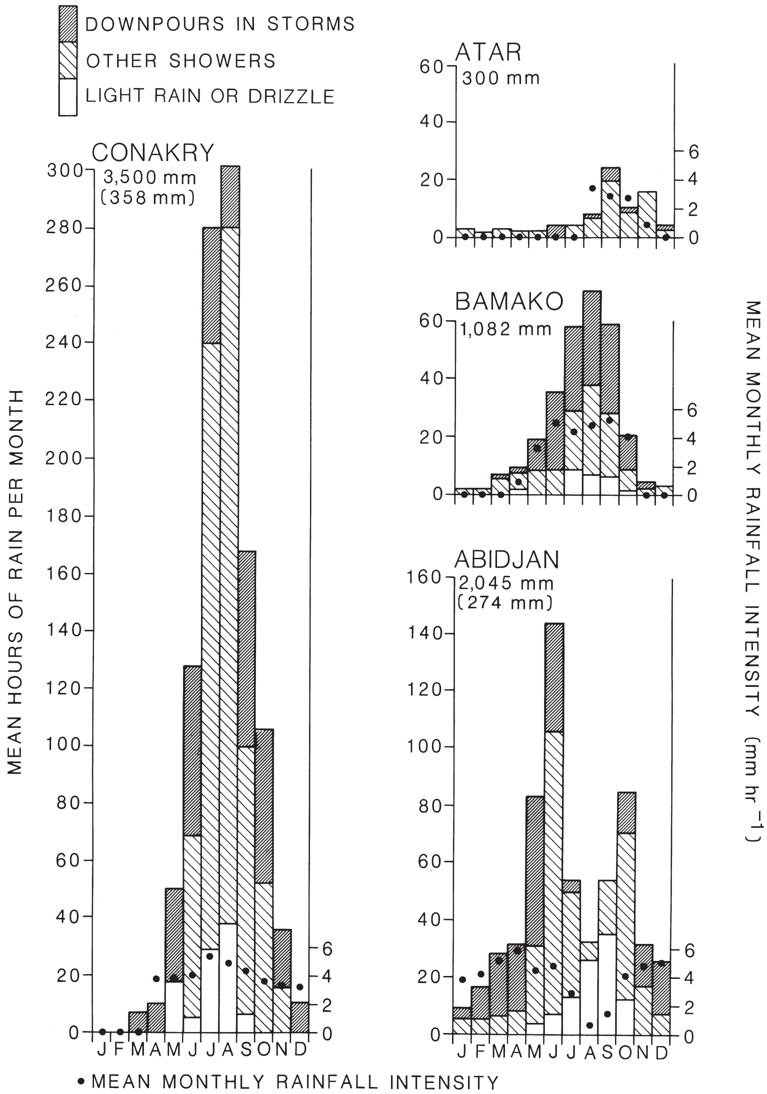


Figure 11.42 Mean number of hours of rain per month for four West African stations. Also shown are types of rainfall, mean annual totals (mm) and, in parentheses, maximum recorded daily rainfalls (m) for Conakry (August) and Abidjan (June). Dots show the mean monthly rainfall intensities (mm hr^{-1}). Note the pronounced little dry season at Abidjan. Station locations are marked on Figure 11.41.

Source: From Hayward and Oguntoyinbo (1987).

3 *Squall lines*. Easterly waves vary greatly in intensity. Some give rise to little cloud and rain, whereas others have embedded squall lines when the wave extends down to the surface, producing updrafts, heavy rain and thunder. Squall line formation is assisted where surface topographic convergence of the easterly flow occurs (e.g. the Air Mountains, the Fouta-Jallon Plateau). These disturbance lines travel at up to 60 km hr^{-1} from east to west across southern West Africa for distances of up to 3000 km (but averaging 600 km) between June and September, yielding 40 to 90 mm of rain per day. Some coastal locations suffer about forty squall lines per year, which account for more than 50 per cent of the annual rainfall (see Plate 29).

Annual rainfall decreases from 2000 to 3000 mm in the coastal belt (e.g. Conakry, Guinea) to about 1000 mm at latitude 20°N (Figure 11.42). Near the coast, more than 300 mm per day of rain may fall during the rainy season but further north the variability increases due to the irregular extension and movement of the monsoon trough. Squall lines and other disturbances give a zone of maximum rainfall located 800 to 1000 km south of the surface position of the monsoon trough (see Figure 11.40B). Monsoon rains in the coastal zone of

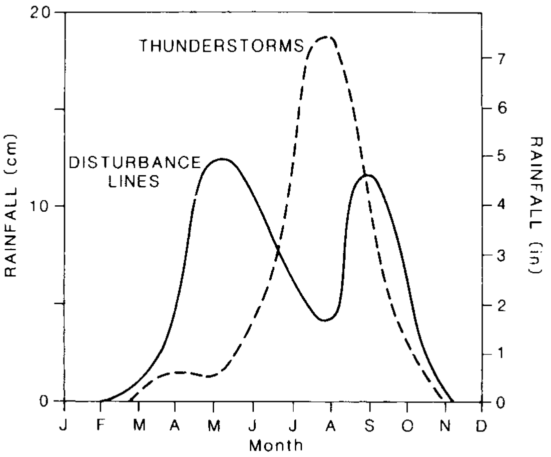


Figure 11.43 The contributions of disturbance lines and thunderstorms to the average monthly precipitation at Minna, Nigeria (9.5°N).

Source: After Omotosho (1985), by permission of the Royal Meteorological Society.

Nigeria (4°N) contribute 28 per cent of the annual total (about 2000 mm), thunderstorms 51 per cent and disturbance lines 21 per cent. At 10°N, 52 per cent of the total (about 1000 mm) is due to disturbance lines, 40 per cent to thunderstorms and only 9 per cent to the monsoon. Over most of the country, rainfall from disturbance lines has a double frequency maximum, thunderstorms a single one in summer (see Figure 11.43 for Minna, 9.5°N). In the northern parts of Nigeria and Ghana, rain falls in the summer months, mostly from isolated storms or disturbance lines. The high variability of these rains from year to year characterizes the drought-prone Sahel environment.

The summer rainfall in the northern Soudana to Sahelian belts is determined partly by the northward penetration of the monsoon trough, which may range up to 500 to 800 km beyond its average position (Figure 11.44), and by the strength of the easterly jet streams. The latter affects the frequency of disturbance lines.

Anomalous climatic effects occur in a number of distinct West African localities at different times of the year. Although the temperatures of coastal waters always exceed 26°C and may reach 29°C in January, there are two areas of locally upwelling cold waters (see Figure 11.41). One lies north of Conakry along the coasts of Senegal and Mauretania, where dominant offshore northeasterly winds in January to April skim off the surface waters, causing cooler (20°C) water to rise, dramatically lowering the temperature of the afternoon onshore breezes. The second area of cool ocean (19 to 22°C) is located along the central southern coast west of Lagos during the period July to October, for a reason that is as yet unclear. From July to September, an anomalously dry land area is located along the southern coastal belt (see Figure 11.41) during what is termed the little dry season. The reason is that at this time of year the monsoon trough is in its most northerly position. The coastal zone, lying 1200 to 1500 km to the south of it and, more important, 400 to 500 km to the south of its major rain belt, has relatively stable air (see Figure 11.40B), a condition assisted by the relatively cool offshore coastal waters. Embedded within this relatively cloudy but dry belt is the smaller Togo Gap, between 0° and 3°E and having during the summer above-average sunshine, subdued convection, relatively low rainfall (i.e. less than 1000 mm) and low thunderstorm activity. The trend of the coast here parallels the dominant low-level southwesterly winds, so limiting surface frictionally induced convergence in an area where temperatures and convection are in any case inhibited by low coastal water temperatures.

2 Southern Africa

Southern Africa lies between the South Atlantic and Indian Ocean subtropical high-pressure cells in a region subject to the interaction of tropical easterly and extratropical westerly airflows. Both of these high-pressure cells shift west and intensify (see Figure 7.10) in the southern winter. Because the South Atlantic cell always extends 3° latitude further north than the Indian Ocean cell, it brings low-level westerlies to Angola and Zaire at all seasons and high-level westerlies to central Angola in the southern summer. The seasonal longitudinal shifts of the subtropical high-pressure cells are especially significant to the climate of southern Africa in respect of the Indian Ocean cell. Whereas the 7 to 13° longitudinal shift of the South Atlantic cell has relatively little effect, the westward movement of 24 to 30° during the southern winter by the Indian Ocean cell brings an easterly flow at all levels to most of southern Africa. The seasonal airflows and convergence zones are shown in Figure 11.45.

In summer (i.e. January), low-level westerlies over Angola and Zaire meet the northeast monsoon of East Africa along the intertropical convergence zone (ITCZ), which extends east as the boundary between the

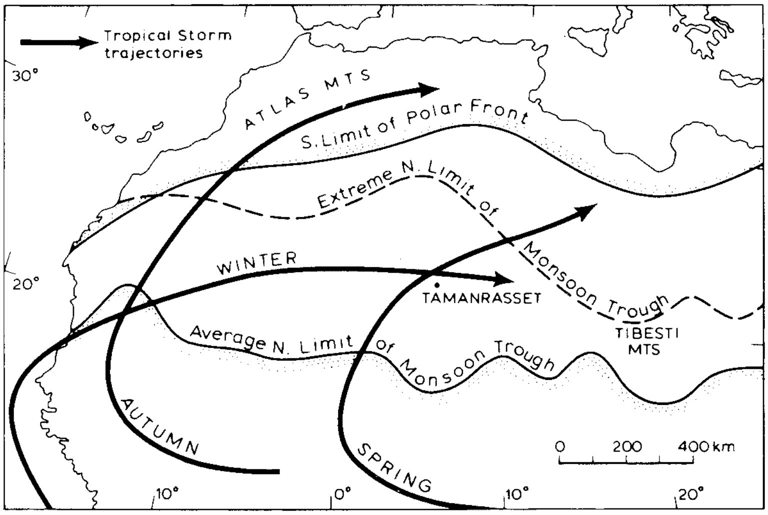


Figure 11.44 Extent of precipitation systems affecting western and central North Africa and typical tracks of Soudano–Sahelian depressions.

Source: After Dubief and Yacono; from Barry (1991).

recurved (westerly) winds from the Indian Ocean and the deep tropical easterlies further south. To the west, these easterlies impinge on the Atlantic westerlies along the Zaire air boundary (ZAB). The ZAB is subject to daily fluctuations and low-pressure systems form along it, either being stationary or moving slowly westward. When these are deep and associated with southward-extending troughs they may produce significant rainfall. It should be noted that the complex structure of the ITCZ and ZAB means that the major surface troughs and centres of low pressure do not coincide with them but are situated some distance upwind in the low-level airflow, particularly in the easterlies. This low-level summer circulation is dominated by a combination of these frontal lows and convectional heat lows. By March, a unified high-pressure system has been established, giving a northerly flow of moist air, which produces autumn rains in western regions. In winter (i.e. July), the ZAB separates the low-level westerly and easterly airflows from the Atlantic and Indian Oceans, although both are overlain by a high-level easterly flow. At this time, the northerly displacement of the general circulation brings low- and high-level westerlies with rain to the southern Cape.

Thus tropical easterly airflows affect much of southern Africa throughout the year. A deep easterly flow dominates south of about 10°S in winter and south of 15 to 18°S in summer. Over East Africa, a northeasterly monsoonal flow occurs in summer, replaced by a southeasterly flow in winter. Easterly waves form in these airflows, similar to, but less mobile than, those in other tropical easterlies. These waves form at the 850 to 700-mb level (i.e. 200 to 3000 m) in flows associated with easterly jets, often producing squall lines, belts of summer thunder cells and heavy rainfall. These waves are most common between December and February, when they may produce at least 40 mm of rain per day, but are rare between April and October. Tropical cyclones in the South Indian Ocean occur particularly around February (see Figure 11.8 and Table 11.1), when the ITCZ lies at its extreme southerly position. These storms recurve south along the east coast of Tanzania and Mozambique, but their influence is limited mainly to the coastal belt.

With few exceptions, deep westerly airflows are limited to the most southerly locations of southern Africa, especially in winter. As in northern mid-latitudes, disturbances in the westerlies involve:

1 Quasi-stationary Rossby waves.
2 Travelling waves, particularly marked at and above the 500-mb level, with axes tilted westward with height, divergence ahead and convergence in the rear, moving eastward at a speed of some 550 km/day, having a periodicity of two to eight days and with associated cold fronts.
3 Cut-off low-pressure centres. These are intense, cold-cored depressions, most frequent during March to May and September to November, and rare during December to February.

A feature of the climate of southern Africa is the prevalence of wet and dry spells, associated with

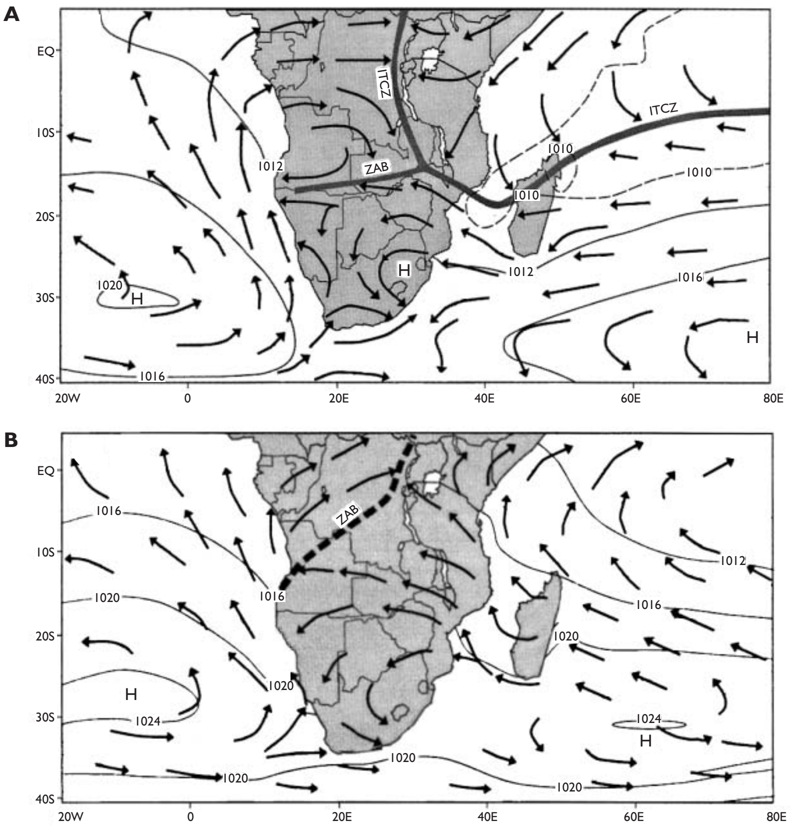


Figure 11.45 Mean SLP (mb) over the sea, based on daily ECWMF analysis for 1985 to 1992 (A) summer (JJA) and (B) winter (DJF) mean flow lines on sea and land. Thick solid lines in summer represent the ITCZ and Zambian air boundary (ZAB). Broken thick line in winter is the mean ZAB between the dry continental southeast trade winds and the moist southwest monsoon air.

Source: Van Heerden and Taljaard (1998).

broader features of the global circulation. Above-normal rainfall, occurring as a north–south belt over the region, is associated with a high-phase Walker circulation (see p. 302). This has an ascending limb over southern Africa; a strengthening of the ITCZ; an intensification of tropical lows and easterly waves, often in conjunction with a westerly wave aloft to the south; and a strengthening of the South Atlantic subtropical high-pressure cell. Such a wet spell may occur particularly during the spring to autumn period. Below-normal rainfall is associated with a low-phase Walker circulation having a descending limb over southern Africa; a weakening of the ITCZ; a tendency to high pressure with a diminished occurrence of tropical lows and easterly waves; and weakening of the South Atlantic subtropical high-pressure cell. At the same time, there is a belt of cloud and rain lying to the east in the western Indian Ocean associated with a rising Walker limb and enhanced easterly disturbances in conjunction with a westerly wave aloft south of Madagascar.

F AMAZONIA

Amazonia lies athwart the equator (Figure 11.46) and contains some 30 per cent of the total global biomass. The continuously high temperatures (24 to 28°C) combine with the high transpiration to cause the region to behave at times as if it were a source of maritime equatorial air.

Important influences over the climate of Amazonia are the North and South Atlantic subtropical high-pressure cells. From these, stable easterly mT air invades Amazonia in a shallow (1000 to 2000 m), relatively cool and humid layer, overlain by warmer and drier air from which it is separated by a strong temperature inversion and humidity discontinuity. This shallow airflow gives some precipitation in coastal locations but produces drier conditions inland unless it is subjected to strong convection when a heat low is established over the continental interior. At such times, the inversion rises to 3000 to 4000 m and may break

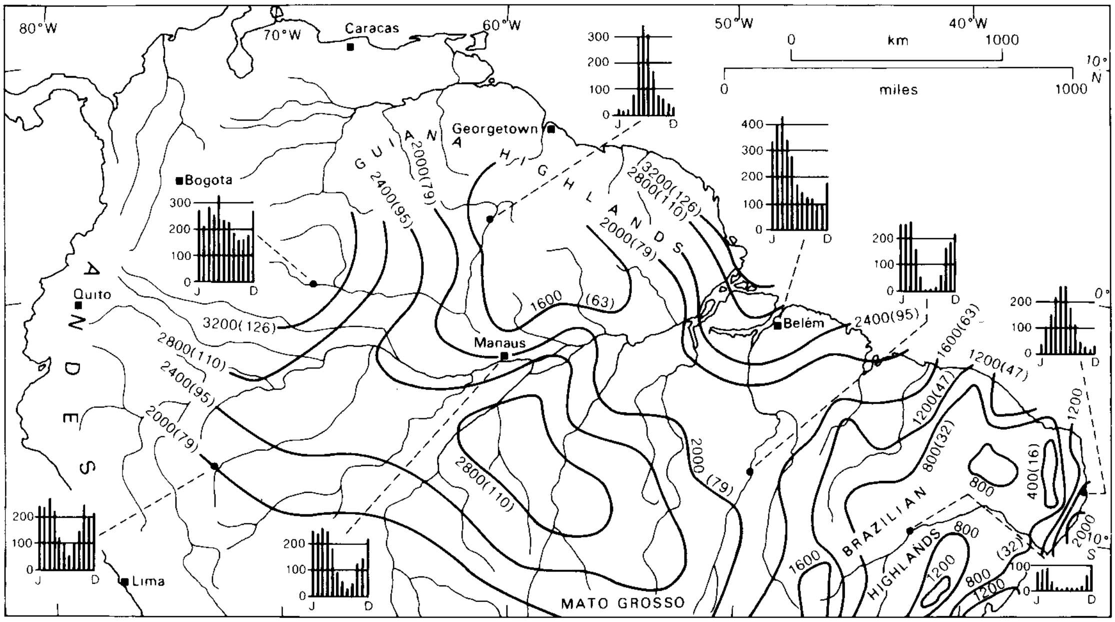


Figure 11.46 Mean annual precipitation (mm) over the Amazon basin, together with mean monthly precipitation amounts for eight stations.

Source: From Ratisbona (1976), with kind permission from Elsevier Science NL, The Netherlands.

down altogether associated with heavy precipitation, particularly in late afternoon or evening. The South Atlantic subtropical high-pressure cell expands westward over Amazonia in July, producing drier conditions as shown by the rainfall at inland stations such as Manaus (see Figure 11.48), but in September it begins to contract and the buildup of the continental heat low ushers in the October to April rainy season in central and southern Amazonia. The North Atlantic subtropical high-pressure cell is less mobile than its southern counterpart but varies in a more complex manner, having maximum westward extensions in July and February and minima in November and April. In northern Amazonia, the rainy season is May to September. Rainfall over the region as a whole is due mainly to a low-level convergence associated with convective activity, a poorly defined equatorial trough, instability lines, occasional incursions of cold fronts from the southern hemisphere, and relief effects.

Strong thermal convection over Amazonia can commonly produce more than 40 mm/day of rainfall over a period of a week and much higher average intensities over shorter periods. When it is recognized that 40 mm of rainfall in one day releases sufficient latent heat to warm the troposphere by 10°C, it is clear that sustained convection at this intensity is capable of fuelling the Walker circulation (see Figure 11.50). During high phases of ENSO, air rises over Amazonia, whereas during low phases the drought over northeast Brazil is intensified. In addition, convective air moving poleward may strengthen the Hadley circulation. This air tends to accelerate due to the conservation of angular momentum, and to strengthen the westerly jet streams such that correlations have been found between Amazonian convective activity and North American jet stream intensity and location.

The intertropical convergence zone (ITCZ) does not exist in its characteristic form over the interior of South America, and its passage affects rainfall only near the east coast. The intensity of this zone varies, being least when both the North and South Atlantic subtropical high-pressure cells are strongest (i.e. in July), giving a pressure increase that causes the equatorial trough to fill. The ITCZ swings to its most northerly position during July to October, when invasions of more stable South Atlantic air are associated with drier conditions over central Amazonia, and to its most southerly in March to April (Figure 11.47). At Manaus, surface

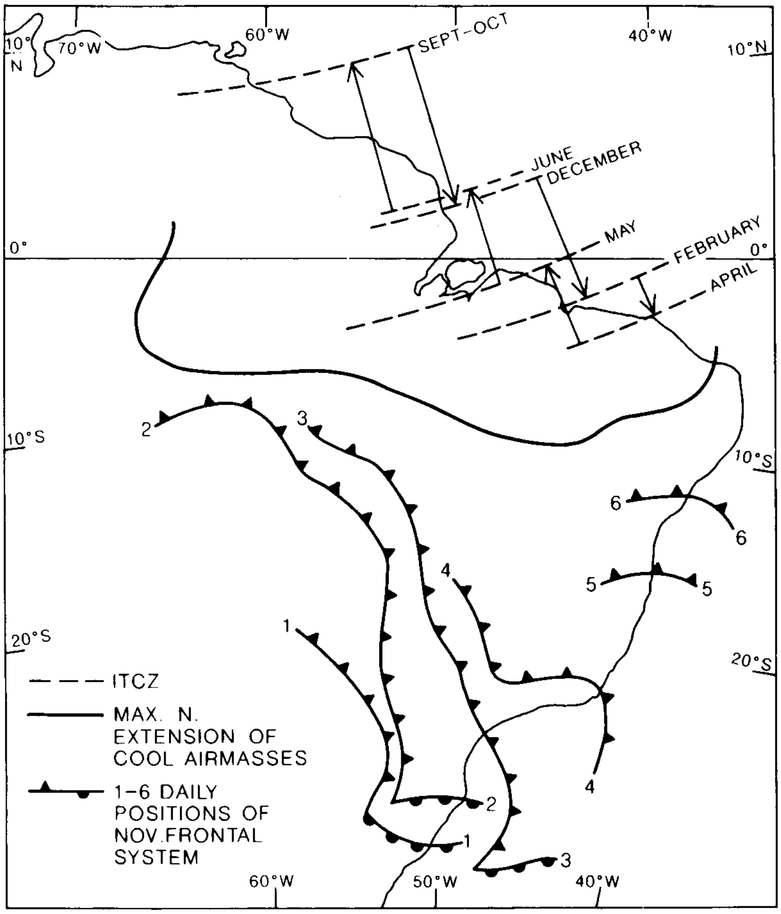


Figure 11.47 The synoptic elements of Brazil. The seasonal positions of the coastal intertropical convergence zone; the maximum northerly extension of cool southerly mP airmasses; and the positions of a typical frontal system during six successive days in November as the centre of the low pressure moves southeastward into the South Atlantic.

Source: From Ratisbona (1976), with kind permission from Elsevier Science NL, The Netherlands.

winds are predominantly southeasterly from May to August and northeasterly from September to April, whereas the upper tropospheric winds are northwesterly or westerly from May to September and southerly or southeasterly from December to April. This reflects the development in the austral summer of an upper tropospheric anticyclone that is located over the Peru–Bolivia Altiplano. This upper high is a result of sensible heating of the elevated plateau and the release of latent heat in frequent thunderstorms over the Altiplano, analogous to the situation over Tibet. Outflow from this high subsides in a broad area extending from eastern Brazil to West Africa. The drought-prone region of eastern Brazil is particularly moisture-deficient during periods when the ITCZ remains in a northerly position and relatively stable mT air from a cool South Atlantic surface is dominant (see Chapter 9B). Dry conditions may occur between January and May during strong ENSO events (see p. 306), when the descending branch of the Walker circulation covers most of Amazonia.

Significant Amazonian rainfall, particularly in the east, originates along mesoscale lines of instability, which form near the coast due to converging trade winds and afternoon sea breezes, or to the interaction of nocturnal land breezes with onshore trade winds. These lines of instability move westward in the general airflow at speeds of about 50 km hr^{-1}, moving faster in January than in July and exhibiting a complex process of convective cell growth, decay, migration and regeneration. Many of these instability lines reach only 100 km or so inland, decaying after sunset (Figure 11.48). However, the more persistent instabilities may produce a rainfall maximum about 500 km inland, and some remain active for up to forty-eight hours such that their precipitation effects reach as far west as the Andes. Other meso- to synoptic-scale disturbances form within Amazonia, especially between April and September.

Precipitation also occurs with the penetration of cool mP airmasses from the south, especially between September and November, which are heated from below and become unstable (see Figure 11.47).

Surges of cold polar air (friagens) during the winter months can cause freezing temperatures in southern Brazil, with cooling to 11°C even in Amazonia. In June to July 1994, such events caused devastation to Brazil's coffee production. Typically, an upper-level trough crosses the Andes of central Chile from the eastern South Pacific and an associated southerly airflow transports cold air northeastward over southern Brazil. Concurrently, a surface high-pressure cell may move northward from Argentina, with the associated clear skies producing additional radiative cooling.

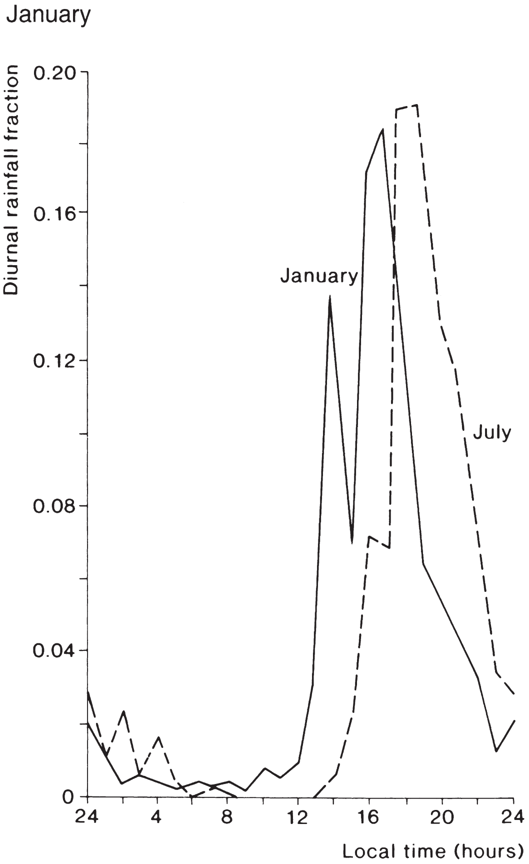


Figure 11.48 Hourly rainfall fractions for Belém, Brazil, for January and July. The rain mostly results from convective cloud clusters developing offshore and moving inland, more rapidly in January.

Source: After Kousky (1980).

The tropical easterlies over the northern and eastern margins of Amazonia are susceptible to the formation of easterly waves and closed vortices, which move westward generating rain bands. Relief effects are naturally most noteworthy as airflow approaches the eastern slopes of the Andes, where large-scale orographic convergence in a region of significant evapotranspiration contributes to the high precipitation all through the year.

G EL NIÑO–SOUTHERN OSCILLATION (ENSO) EVENTS

1 The Pacific Ocean

The Southern Oscillation is an irregular variation, see-saw or standing wave in atmospheric mass and pressure involving exchanges of air between the subtropical high-pressure cell over the eastern South Pacific and a low-pressure region centred on the western Pacific and Indonesia (Figure 11.49). It has an irregular period of between two and ten years. Its mechanism is held by some experts to centre on the control over the strength of the Pacific trade winds exercised by the activity of the subtropical high-pressure cells, particularly the one over the South Pacific. Others, recognizing the ocean as an enormous heat energy source, believe that near-surface temperature variations in the tropical Pacific may act somewhat similar to a flywheel to drive the whole ENSO system (see Box 11.1). It is important to note that a deep (i.e. 100 m+) pool of the world's warmest surface water builds up in the western equatorial Pacific between the surface and the therm ocline. This is set up by the intense insolation, low heat loss from evaporation in this region of light winds, and the piling up of surface water driven westward by the easterly trade winds. The warm pool is dissipated periodically during El Niño by the changing ocean currents and by release into the atmosphere – directly and through evaporation.

The Southern Oscillation is associated with the phases of the Walker circulation that have already been introduced in Chapter 7C.1. The high phases of the Walker circulation (usually associated with non-ENSO or La Niña events), which occur on average three years out of four, alternate with low phases (i.e. ENSO or El Niño events). Sometimes, however, the Southern Oscillation is not in evidence and neither phase is

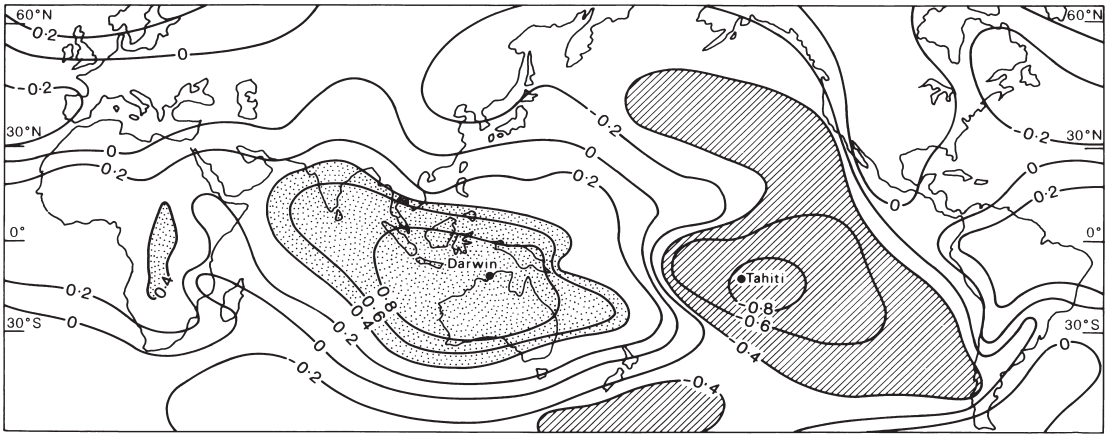


Figure 11.49 The correlation of mean annual sea-level pressures with that at Darwin, Australia, illustrating the two major cells of the Southern Oscillation.

Source: Rasmusson (1985). Copyright © *American Scientist* (1985).

EL NIÑO AND THE SOUTHERN OSCILLATION

box 11.1 **topical issue**

El Niño episodes of warm coastal currents with accompanying disastrous consequences for marine life and birds recur about every four to seven years and consequently were long known along the west coast of South America.

The related Southern Oscillation (SO) of sea-level pressure between Tahiti (normally high pressure) and Jakarta (or Darwin) (normally low pressure) was identified by Sir Gilbert Walker in 1910 and reinvestigated in the mid-1950s by I. Schell and H. Berlage and in the 1960s by A. J. Troup and J. Bjerknes. A. J. Troup linked the occurrence of El Niño conditions to an oscillation in the atmosphere over the equatorial Pacific in the 1960s. Their wider implications for air–sea interaction and global teleconnections were first proposed by Professor Jacob Bjerknes (of polar front fame) in 1966 who noted the linkages of El Niño or non-El Niño conditions with the SO. The worldwide significance of ENSO events only became fully appreciated in the 1970s to 1980s with the strong El Niño events of 1972 to 1973 and 1982 to 1983. The availability of global analyses showed clear patterns of seasonal anomalies of temperature and precipitation in widely separated regions during and after the onset of warming in the eastern and central equatorial Pacific Ocean. These include droughts in northeast Brazil and in Australasia, and cool, wet winters following El Niño in the southern and southeastern United States.

The occurrence of ENSO events in the past has been studied from historical documents, inferred from tree ring data, and from coral, ice core and high-resolution sediment records. The net effect of major El Niño events on global temperature trends is estimated to be about +0.06°C between 1950 and 1998.

Reference

Diaz, H. F. and Markgraf, V. (eds) (1992) *El Niño. Historical and Paleoclimatic Aspects of the Southern Oscillation*. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, 476 pp.

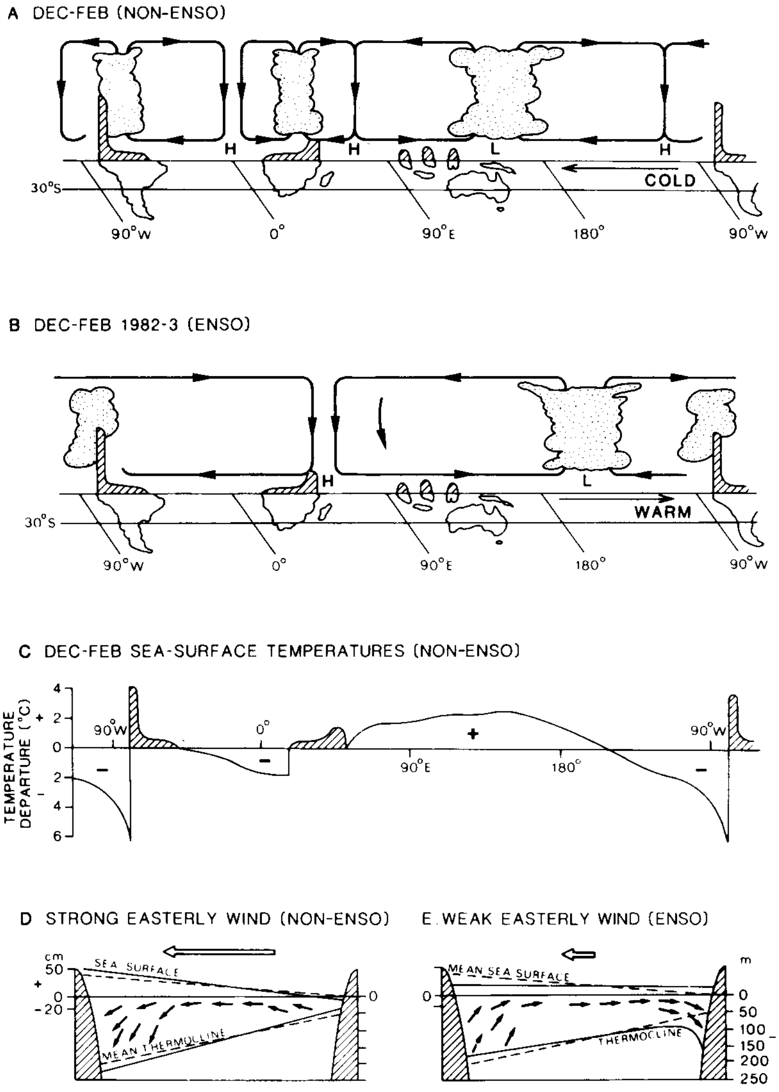

A DEC-FEB (NON-ENSO)
H
H
L
H
COLD
30°S
90°W
0°
90°E
180°
90°W
B DEC-FEB 1982-3 (ENSO)
H
L
WARM
30°S
90°W
0°
90°E
180°
90°W
C DEC-FEB SEA-SURFACE TEMPERATURES (NON-ENSO)
TEMPERATURE DEPARTURE (°C)
4
+ 2
0
− 2
4
6
90°W
0°
+
90°E
180°
90°W
−
−
−
D STRONG EASTERLY WIND (NON-ENSO)
cm
50
+
0
−20
SEA SURFACE
MEAN THERMOCLINE
0
E WEAK EASTERLY WIND (ENSO)
MEAN SEA SURFACE
THERMOCLINE
0
m
0
50
100
150
200
250

Figure 11.50 Schematic cross-sections of the Walker circulation along the equator based on computations of Tourre. (A) Mean December to February regime (non-ENSO); rising air and heavy rains occur over the Amazon basin, central Africa and Indonesia–western Pacific. (B) December to February 1982–3 ENSO pattern; the ascending Pacific branch is shifted east of the date line and suppressed convection occurs elsewhere due to subsidence. (C) Departure of sea-surface temperature from its equatorial zonal mean, corresponding to non-ENSO case (A). (D) Strong trades cause sea-level to rise and the thermocline to deepen in the western Pacific for case (A). E. Winds relax, sea-level rises in the eastern Pacific as watermass moves back eastward and the thermocline deepens off South America during ENSO events.

Source: Based on van Heerden and Taljaard (1998), by permission of the World Meteorological Organization (1985).

dominant. The level of activity of the Southern Oscillation in the Pacific is expressed by the Southern Oscillation index (SOI), which is a complex measure involving sea-surface and air temperatures, pressures at sea-level and aloft, and rainfall at selected locations.

During non-ENSO, high phases (Figure 11.50A) strong easterly trade winds in the eastern tropical Pacific produce upwelling along the west coast of South America, resulting in a north-flowing cold current (the Peru or Humboldt), locally termed La Niña – the girl – on account of its richness in plankton and fish. The low sea temperatures produce a shallow inversion, thereby strengthening further the trade winds (i.e. effecting positive feedback), which skim water off the surface of the Pacific, where warm surface water accumulates (Figure 11.50D). This action also causes the thermocline to lie at shallow depths (about 40 m) in the east, as distinct from 100 to 200 m in the western Pacific. The strengthening of the easterly trades causes cold water upwelling to spread westward, and the cold tongue of surface water extends in that direction sustained by the south equatorial current. This westward-flowing current is wind-driven and is compensated by a deeper surface slope. The westward contraction of warm Pacific water into the central and western tropical Pacific (Figure 11.50C) produces an area of instability and convection

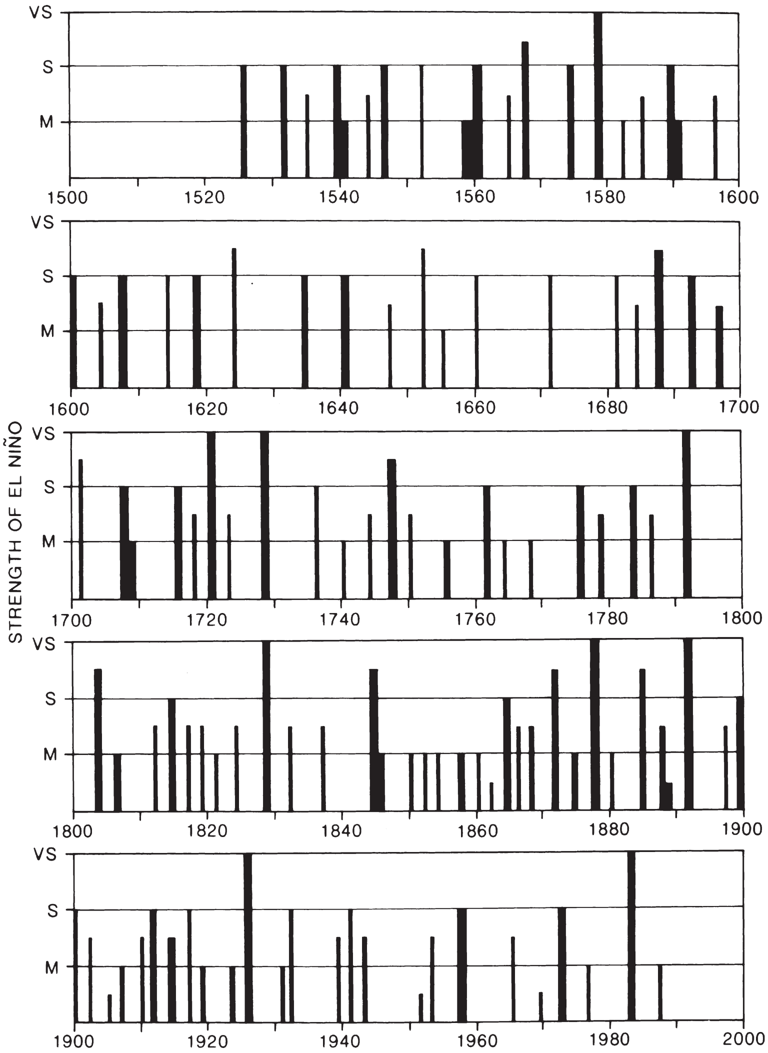


Figure 11.51 El Niño events 1525 to 1987 classified according to very strong, strong and medium. Subsequent strong events occurred in 1991 and 1997.

Source: Quinn and Neal (1992). Copyright © Routledge, London.

fed by moisture in a convergence zone under the dual influence of both the intertropical convergence zone and the South Pacific convergence zone. The rising air over the western Pacific feeds the return airflow in the upper troposphere (i.e. at 200 mb), closing and strengthening the Walker circulation. However, this airflow also strengthens the Hadley circulation, particularly its meridional component northward in the northern winter and southward in the southern winter.

Each year, usually starting in December, a weak southward flow of warm water replaces the northward-flowing Peru current and its associated cold upwelling southward to about 6°S along the coast of Ecuador. This phenomenon, known as El Niño (the child, after the Christ child), strengthens at irregular intervals of two to ten years (its average interval is four years) when warm surface water becomes much more extensive and the coastal upwelling ceases entirely. This has catastrophic ecological and economic consequences for fish and bird life, and for the fishing and guano industries of Ecuador, Peru and northern Chile. Figure 11.51 shows the occurrence of El Niño events between 1525 and 1987 classified according to their intensity. These offshore events, however, are part of a Pacific-wide change in sea-surface temperatures. Moreover, the spatial pattern of these changes is not the same for all El Niños. Recently, K. E. Trenberth and colleagues showed that during 1950 to 1977, warming during an El Niño spread westward from Peru, whereas after a major shift in Pacific basin climate took place between 1976 and 1977, the warming spread eastward from the western equatorial Pacific. The atmosphere–ocean coupling during ENSO events clearly varies on multidecadal time scales.

ENSO events result from a radical reorganization of the Walker circulation in two main respects:

1 Pressure declines and the trades weaken over the eastern tropical Pacific (Figure 11.50B), wind-driven upwelling slackens, allowing the ITCZ to extend southward to Peru. This increase of sea-surface temperatures by 1 to 4°C reduces the west–east sea-surface temperature gradient across the Pacific and also tends to decrease pressure over the eastern Pacific. The latter causes a further decrease of trade wind activity, a decrease in upwelling of cold water, an advection of warm water and a further increase in sea-surface temperatures – in other words, the onset of El Niño activates a positive feedback loop in the eastern Pacific atmosphere–ocean system.
2 Over the western tropical Pacific, the area of maximum sea temperatures and convection responds to the above weakening of the Walker circulation by moving eastward into the central Pacific (Figure 11.50B). This is due partly to an increase of pressure in the west but also to a combined movement of the ITCZ southward and the SPCZ northeastward. Under these conditions, bursts of equatorial westerly winds spread a huge tongue of warm water (i.e. warmer than 27.5°C) eastward over the central Pacific as large-scale, internal oceanic (Kelvin) waves. It has been suggested that this eastward flow may sometimes be triggered off or strengthened by the occurrence of cyclone pairs north and south of the equator. This eastward flow of warm water depresses the thermocline off South America (Figure 11.50E), preventing cold water from reaching the surface and terminating the El Niño effect.

Thus, whether La Niña or El Niño develops, bringing westward-flowing cold surface water or eastward-flowing warm surface water, respectively, to the central Pacific, depends on the competing processes of upwelling versus advection. The most intense phase of an El Niño event commonly lasts for about one year, and the change to El Niño usually occurs in about March to April, when the trade winds and the cold tongue are at their weakest. The changes to the Pacific atmosphere–ocean circulation during El Niño are facilitated by the fact that the time taken for ocean-surface currents to adjust to major wind changes decreases markedly with decreasing latitude. This is demonstrated by the seasonal reversal of the southwest and northeast monsoon drift off the Somali coast in the Indian Ocean. Large-scale atmospheric circulation is subject to a negative-feedback constraint involving a negative correlation between the strengths of the Walker and Hadley circulations. Thus the weakening of the Walker circulation during an ENSO event leads to a relative strengthening of the associated Hadley circulation.

2 Teleconnections

Teleconnections are defined as linkages over great distances of atmospheric and oceanic variables; clearly the linkages between climatic conditions in the eastern and western tropical Pacific Ocean represent a 'canonical' teleconnection. Figure 11.52 illustrates the coincidence of ENSO events with regional climates that are wetter or drier than normal.

In Chapter 7C.1, we have referred to Walker's observed teleconnection between ENSO events and the lower than normal monsoon rainfall over South and Southeast Asia (Figure 11.53). This is due to the eastward movement of the zone of maximum convection over the western Pacific. However, it is important to recognize that ENSO mechanisms form only part of the South Asian monsoon phenomenon. For example, parts of India may experience droughts in the absence of El Niño and the onset of the monsoon can also depend on the control exercised by the amount of Eurasian snow cover on the persistence of the continental high-pressure cell.

The eastward movement of the western Pacific zone of maximum convection in the ENSO phase also decreases summer monsoon rainfall over northern Australia, as well as extra-tropical rainfall over eastern Australia in the winter to spring season. During the latter, a high-pressure cell over Australia brings widespread drought, but this is compensated for by enhanced rainfall over western Australia associated with northerly winds there.

Over the Indian Ocean, the dominant seasonal weather control is exercised by the monsoon seasonal reversals, but there is still a minor El Niño-like mechanism over southeast Africa and Madagascar, which results in a decrease of rainfall during ENSO events.

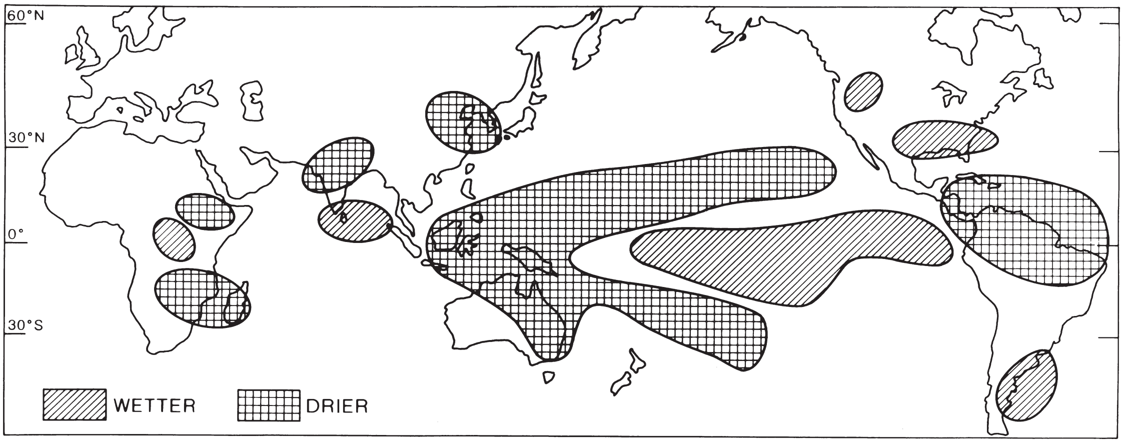

60°N
30°N
0°
30°S
WETTER
DRIER

Figure 11.52 The coincidence of ENSO events with regional climates that are wetter or drier than normal. The seasonal occurrences of these anomolies varies geographically.

Sources: After Rasmusson and Ropelowski, also Halpert. From Glantz *et al*. (1990). Composite reproduced by permission of Cambridge University Press.

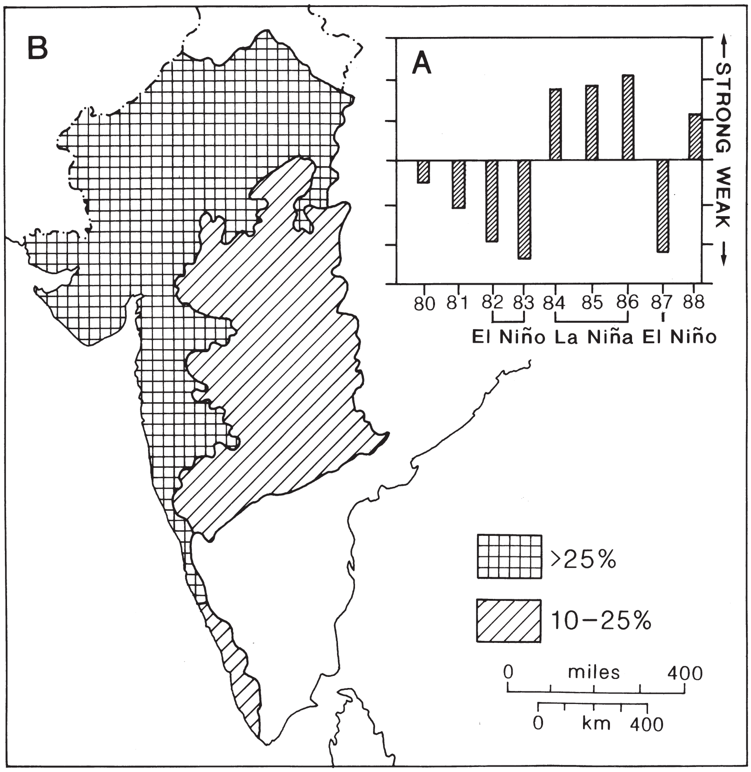

B
A
STRONG
WEAK
80 81 82 83 84 85 86 87 88
El Niño La Niña El Niño
>25%
10–25%
0 miles 400
0 km 400

Figure 11.53 The proposed connection between the Indian summer monsoon and El Niño. (A) The observed strength of the Asian summer monsoon (1980 to 1988) showing its weakness during the three strong El Niño years 1982, 1983 and 1987. (B) Areas of India where the summer monsoonal rainfall deficits (as a percentage less than the 1901 to 1970 average) were significantly more frequent in the El Niño years.

Sources: (A) Browning (1996). (B) Gregory (1988). IGU Study Group on Recent Climate Change.

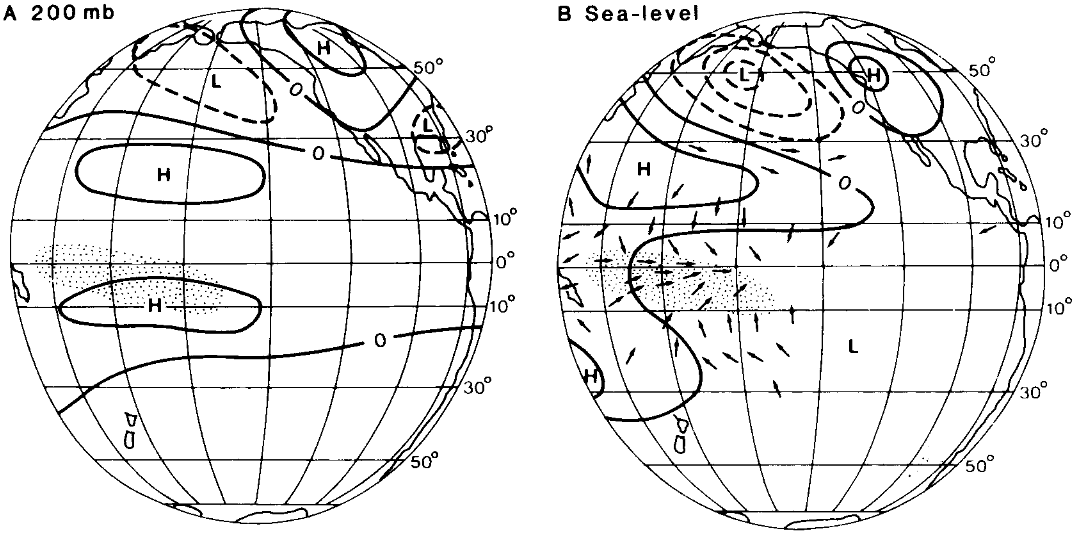


Figure 11.54 Schematic Pacific–North America (PNA) circulation pattern in the upper troposphere during an ENSO event in December to February. The shading indicates a region of enhanced rainfall associated with anomalous westerly surface wind convergence in the equatorial western Pacific.

Source: After Shukla and Wallace (1983), by permission of the American Meteorological Society.

It is apparent that ENSO teleconnections affect extra-tropical regions as well as tropical ones. During the most intense phase of El Niño, two high-pressure cells, centred at 20°N and 20°S, develop over the Pacific in the upper troposphere, where anomalous heating of the atmosphere is at a maximum. These cells strengthen the Hadley circulation, cause upper-level tropical easterlies to develop near the equator, as well as subtropical jet streams to be intensified and displaced equatorwards, especially in the winter hemisphere. During the intense ENSO event of the northern winter of 1982 to 1983, such changes caused floods and high winds in parts of California and the US Gulf states, together with heavy snowfalls in the mountains of the western USA. In the northern hemisphere winter, ENSO events with equatorial heating anomalies are associated with a strong trough and ridge teleconnection pattern, known as the Pacific–North American (PNA) pattern (Figure 11.54), which may bring cloud and rain to the southwest United States and northwest Mexico.

The Atlantic Ocean shows some tendency towards a modest effect resembling El Niño, but the western pool of warm water is much smaller, and the east–west tropical differences much less, than in the Pacific. Nevertheless, ENSO events in the Pacific have some bearing on the behaviour of the Atlantic atmosphere–ocean system (e.g. the establishment of the convective low-pressure centre over the central and eastern Atlantic subtropical high-pressure cell and of the general trade wind flow in the Atlantic). This results in the development of a stronger subsidence inversion layer, as well as subjecting the western tropical Atlantic to greater ocean mixing, giving lower sea-surface temperatures, less evaporation and less convection. This tends to:

1 Increase drought over northeast Brazil. However, ENSO events account for only some 10 per cent of precipitation variations in northeast Brazil.
2 Increase wind shear over the North Atlantic/Caribbean region such that moderate to strong ENSO events are correlated with the occurrence of some 44 per cent fewer Atlantic hurricanes than occur with non-ENSO events.

A further Pacific influence involves the manner in which the ENSO strengthening of the southern subtropical jet stream may partly explain the heavy rainfall experienced over southern Brazil, Paraguay and northern Argentina during an intense El Niño. Another Atlantic teleconnection may reside in the North Atlantic Oscillation (NAO), a large-scale alternation of atmospheric mass between the Azores high-pressure and the

Icelandic low-pressure cells (see Chapter 7C.2B). The relative strength of these two pressure systems appears to affect the rainfall of both northwest Africa and the sub-Saharan zone.

H OTHER SOURCES OF CLIMATIC VARIATIONS IN THE TROPICS

The major systems of tropical weather and climate have now been discussed, yet various other elements help to create contrasts in tropical weather in both space and time.

1 Cool ocean currents

Between the western coasts of the continents and the eastern rims of the subtropical high-pressure cells the ocean surface is relatively cold (see Figure 7.33). This is the result of: the importation of water from higher latitudes by the dominant currents; the slow upwelling (sometimes at the rate of about 1 m in twenty-four hours) of water from intermediate depths due to the Ekman effect (see Chapter 7D.1); and the coastal divergence (see Figure 7.31). This concentration of cold water gently cools the local air to dew-point. As a result, dry, warm air degenerates into a relatively cool, clammy, foggy atmosphere with a comparatively low temperature and little range along the west coast of North America off California, off South America between latitudes 4 and 3°S, and off southwest Africa (8 and 32°S). Thus Callao, on the Peruvian coast, has a mean annual temperature of 19.4°C, whereas Bahia (at the same latitude on the Brazilian coast) has a corresponding figure of 25°C.

The cooling effect of offshore cold currents is not limited to coastal stations, as it is carried inland during the day at all times of the year by a pronounced sea breeze effect (see Chapter 6C.2). Along the west coasts of South America and southwest Africa the sheltering effect from the dynamically stable easterly trades aloft provided by the nearby Andes and Namib Escarpment, respectively, allows incursions of shallow tongues of cold air to roll in from the southwest. These tongues of air are capped by strong inversions at between 600 and 1500 m, reinforcing the regionally low trade wind inversions (see Figure 11.6) and thereby precluding the development of strong convective cells, except where there is orographically forced ascent. Thus, although the cool maritime air perpetually bathes the lower western slopes of the Andes in mist and low stratus cloud, and Swakopmund (southwest Africa) has an average of 150 foggy days a year, little rain falls on the coastal lowlands. Lima (Peru) has a total mean annual precipitation of only 46 mm, although it receives frequent drizzle during the winter months (June to September), and Swakopmund in Namibia has a mean annual rainfall of 16 mm. Heavier rain occurs on the rare instances when large-scale pressure changes cause a cessation of the diurnal sea breeze or when modified air from the South Atlantic or South Indian Ocean is able to cross the continents at a time when the normal dynamic stability of the trade winds is disturbed. In southwest Africa, the inversion is most likely to break down during either October or April, allowing convectional storms to form, and Swakopmund recorded 51 mm of rain on a single day in 1934. Under normal conditions, however, the occurrence of precipitation is limited mainly to the higher seaward mountain slopes. Further north, tropical west coast locations in Angola and Gabon show that cold upwelling is a more variable phenomenon in both space and time; coastal rainfall varies strikingly with changing sea-surface temperatures (Figure 11.55). In South America, from Colombia to northern Peru, the diurnal tide of cold air rolls inland for some 60 km, rising up the seaward slopes of the western Cordillera and overflowing into the longitudinal Andean valleys like water over a weir (Figure 11.56). On the west-facing slopes of the Andes of Colombia, air ascending or banked up against the mountains may under suitable conditions trigger off convectional instability in the overlying trades and produce thunderstorms. In southwest Africa, however, the 'tide' flows inland for some 130 km and rises up the 1800-m Namib Escarpment without producing much rain because convectional instability is not generated and the adiabatic cooling of the air is more than offset by radiational heating from the warm ground.

2 Topographic effects

Relief and surface configuration have a marked effect on rainfall amounts in tropical regions, where hot, humid airmasses are frequent. At the southwestern foot of Mount Cameroon, Debundscha (9-m elevation) receives 11,160 mm yr^{-1} on average (1960 to 1980) from the southwesterly monsoon. In the Hawaiian Islands, the mean annual total exceeds 7600 mm on the mountains,

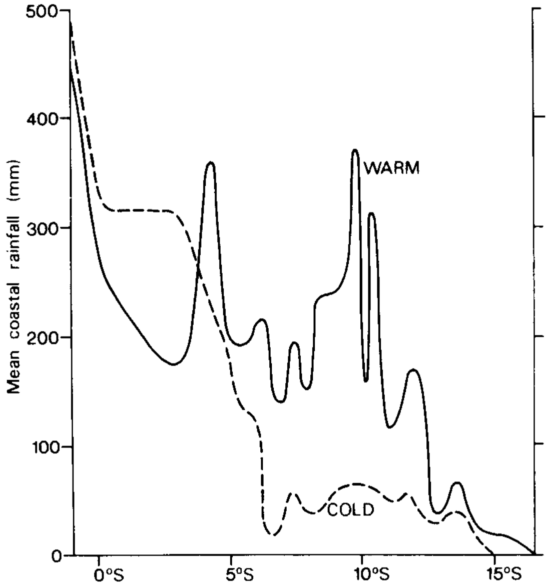


Figure 11.55 March rainfall along the southwestern coast of Africa (Gabon and Angola) associated with warm and cold sea-surface conditions.

Source: After Nicholson and Entekhabi; from Nicholson (1989), reprinted from *Weather*, by permission of the Royal Meteorological Society (redrawn).

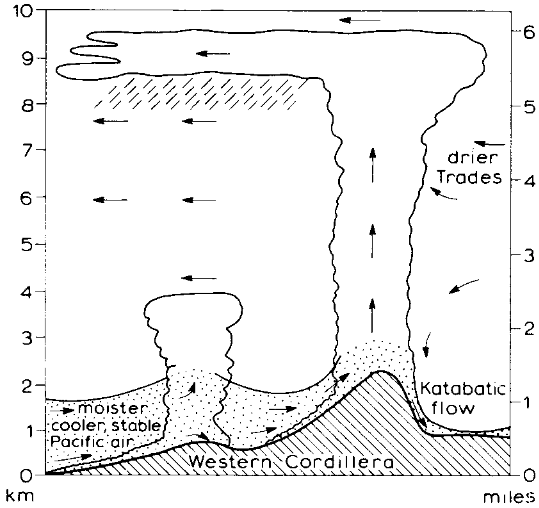


Figure 11.56 The structure of the sea breeze in western Colombia.

Source: After Howell and Lopez (1967); from Fairbridge (1967).

with one of the world's largest mean annual totals of 11,990 mm at 1569-m elevation on Mount Waialeale (Kauai), but land on the lee side suffers correspondingly accentuated sheltering effects with less than 500 mm over wide areas. On Hawaii itself, the maximum falls on the eastern slopes at about 900 m, whereas the 4200-m summits of Mauna Loa and Mauna Kea, which rise above the trade wind inversion, receive only 250 to 500 mm. On the Hawaiian island of Oahu, the maximum precipitation occurs on the western slopes just leeward of the 850-m summit with respect to the easterly trade winds. Measurements in the Koolau Mountains, Oahu, show that the orographic factor is pronounced during summer, when precipitation is associated with the easterlies, but in winter, when precipitation is from cyclonic disturbances, it is more evenly distributed (Table 11.3).

The Khasi Hills in Assam are an exceptional instance of the combined effect of relief and surface configuration. Part of the monsoon current from the head of the Bay of Bengal (see Figure 11.23) is channelled by the topography towards the high ground, and the sharp ascent, which follows the convergence of the airstream in the funnel-shaped lowland to the south, results in some of the heaviest annual rainfall totals recorded anywhere. Mawsyuran (1400-m elevation), 16 km west of the more famous station of Cherrapunji, has a mean annual total (1941 to 1969) of 12,210 mm and can claim to be the wettest spot in the world. Cherrapunji (1340 m) averaged 11,020 mm during the same period; extremes recorded there include 5690 mm in July and 24,400 mm in 1974 (see Figure 4.11). However, throughout the monsoon area, topography plays a secondary role in determining rainfall distribution to the synoptic activity and large-scale dynamics.

Really high relief produces major changes in the main weather characteristics and is best treated as a special climatic type. In equatorial East Africa, the three volcanic peaks of Mount Kilimanjaro (5800 m), Mount Kenya (5200 m) and Ruwenzori (5200 m) nourish permanent glaciers above 4700 to 5100 m. Annual precipitation on the summit of Mount Kenya is about 1140 mm, similar to amounts on the plateau to the south, but on the southern slopes between 2100 and 3000 m, and on the eastern slopes between about 1400 and 2400 m, totals exceed 2500 mm. Kabete (at an elevation of 1800 m near Nairobi) exhibits many of the features of tropical highland climates, having a small annual temperature range (mean monthly temperatures are

Table 11.3 Precipitation in the Koolau Mountains, Oahu, Hawaii (mm).

Location	*Elevation*	*Source of rainfall* *Trade winds* *28 May to 3 Sept 1957*	*Cyclonic disturbances* *2 to 29 Jan 1957*	 *5 to 6 March 1957*
Summit	850 m	713	499	329
760 m west of summit	625 m	1210	544	370
7,600 m west of summit	350 m	329	467	334

Source: After Mink (1960).

19°C for February and 16°C for July), a high diurnal temperature range (averaging 9.5°C in July and 13°C in February) and a large average cloud cover (mean 7 to 8/10ths).

3 Diurnal variations

Diurnal weather variations are particularly evident at coastal locations in the trade wind belt and in the Indonesia–Malaysian Archipelago. Land and sea breeze regimes (see Chapter 6C.2) are well developed, as the heating of tropical air over land can be up to five times that over adjacent water surfaces. The sea breeze normally sets in between 08:00 and 11:00 hours, reaching a maximum velocity of 6 to 15 m s^{-1} about 13:00 to 16:00 and subsiding around 20:00. It may be up to 1000 to 2000 m in height, with a maximum velocity at an elevation of 200 to 400 m, and it normally penetrates some 20 to 60 km inland.

On large islands under calm conditions the sea breezes converge towards the centre so that an afternoon maximum of rainfall is observed. Under steady trade winds, the pattern is displaced downwind so that descending air may be located over the centre of the island. A typical case of an afternoon maximum is illustrated in Figure 11.57B for Nandi (Viti Levu, Fiji) in the southwest Pacific. The station has a lee exposure in both wet and dry seasons. This rainfall pattern is commonly believed to be widespread in the tropics, but over the open sea and on small islands a night-time maximum (often with a peak near dawn) seems to occur, and even large islands can display this nocturnal regime when there is little synoptic activity. Figure 11.57A illustrates this nocturnal pattern at four small island locations in the western Pacific. Even large islands may show this effect, as well as the afternoon maximum associated with sea breeze convergence and convection. There are several theories concerning the nocturnal rainfall peak. Recent studies point to a radiative effect, involving more effective nocturnal cooling of cloud-free areas around the mesoscale cloud systems. This favours subsidence, which, in turn, enhances low-level convergence into the cloud systems and strengthens the ascending air currents. Strong cooling of cloud tops, relative to their surroundings, may also produce localized destabilization and encourage droplet growth by mixing of droplets at different temperatures (see Chapter 5.D). This effect would be at a maximum near dawn. Another factor is that the sea–air temperature difference, and consequently the oceanic heat supply to the atmosphere, is largest at about 03:00 to 06:00 hours. Yet a further hypothesis suggests that the semi-diurnal pressure oscillation encourages convergence and therefore convective activity in the early morning and evening, but divergence and suppression of convection around midday.

Measurements by the Tropical Rainfall Measurement Mission (TRMM) satellite programme indicate that during 1998 to 1999, rainfall at night or in the early morning over the ocean area 30°N to 30°S, 80°E to 10°W and passive microwave estimates indicate a rainfall peak at 04:00 to 07:00 LST. Over land areas there is an afternoon convective maximum. In Amazonia, the diurnal maximum is at 16:00 to 18:00 LST and over monsoon India at 12:00 to 15:00 LST, compared with a broad maximum between 01:00 and 14:00 LST over the northern Bay of Bengal.

The Malayan peninsula displays very varied diurnal rainfall regimes in summer. The effects of land and sea breezes, anabatic and katabatic winds and topography greatly complicate the rainfall pattern by their interactions with the low-level southwesterly monsoon current. For example, there is a nocturnal maximum in the Malacca Straits region associated with the

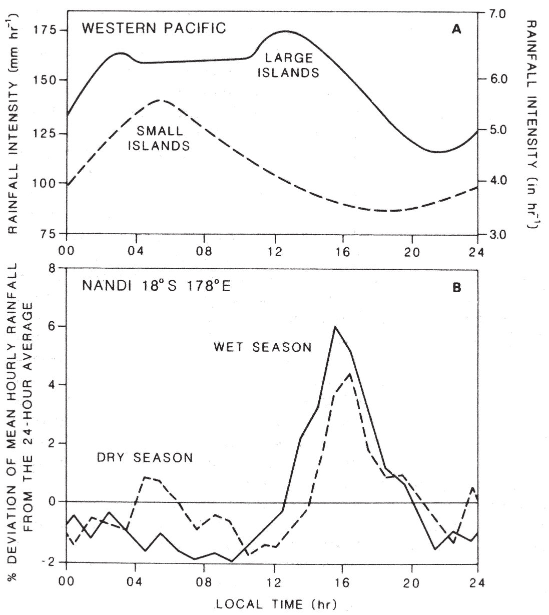


Figure 11.57 Diurnal variation of rainfall intensity for tropical islands in the Pacific. (A) Large and small islands in the western Pacific. (B) Wet and dry seasons for Nandi (Fiji) in the southwest Pacific (percentage deviation from the daily average).

Sources: (A) After Gray and Jacobson (1977). (B) After Finkelstein, in Hutchings (1964).

convection set off by the convergence of land breezes from Malaya and Sumatra (cf. p. 274). However, on the east coast of Malaya the maximum occurs in the late afternoon to early evening, when sea breezes extend about 30 km inland against the monsoon southwesterlies, and convective cloud develops in the deeper sea breeze current over the coastal strip. On the interior mountains the summer rains have an afternoon maximum due to the unhindered convection process. In northern Australia, sea breeze phenomenon apparently extends up to 200 km inland from the Gulf of Carpentaria by late evening. During the August to November dry season, this may create suitable conditions for the bore-like ‘Morning Glory’ – a linear cloud roll and squall line that propagates, usually from the northeast, on the inversion created by the maritime air and nocturnal cooling. Sea breezes are usually associated with a heavy buildup of cumulus cloud and afternoon downpours. On large islands under calm conditions the sea breezes converge towards the centre so that an afternoon maximum of rainfall is observed. Under steady trade winds, the pattern is displaced downwind so that descending air may be located over the centre of the island.

I FORECASTING TROPICAL WEATHER

In the past two decades, significant progress has been achieved in tropical weather forecasting. This has resulted from many of the advances in observing technology and in global numerical modelling discussed in Chapter 8. Of particular importance in the tropics has been the availability of geostationary satellite data on global cloud conditions, wind vectors, sea-surface temperatures, and vertical profiles of temperature and moisture. Weather radar installations are also available at major centres in India, Central America and the Far East, and at some locations in Africa and the southwest Pacific; but up to now there are few in South America.

I Short- and extended-range forecasts

The evolution and motion of tropical weather systems are connected primarily with areas of wind speed convergence and horizontal wind shear as identified on low-level kinematic analyses depicting streamlines and isotachs and associated cloud systems, and their changes can be identified from half-hourly geostationary satellite images and weather radars; these are useful for ‘nowcasting’ and warnings. However, cloud clusters are known to be highly irregular in their persistence beyond twenty-four hours. They are also subject to strong diurnal variations and orographic influences, which need to be evaluated. Analysis of diurnal variations in temperature with differing cloud states for wet and dry seasons can be a useful aid to local forecasting. Giving equal weight to persistence and climatology produces good results for low-level winds, for example. The forecasting of tropical storm movement also relies mainly on satellite imagery and radar data. For six to twelve-hour forecasts, extrapolations can be made from the smoothed track over the preceding twelve to twenty-four hours. The accuracy of landfall location forecasts for the storm centre is typically within about 150 km. There are specialized centres for such regional forecasts and warnings in Miami, Guam, Darwin, Hong Kong, New Delhi and Tokyo. Forecasts for periods of two to five days have received limited attention. In the winter months, the tropical margins, especially of the northern hemisphere, may be affected by mid-latitude circulation features. Examples include cold fronts moving southward into Central America and the Caribbean, or northward from Argentina into Brazil. The motion of such systems can be anticipated from numerical model forecasts prepared at major centres such as NCEP and ECMWF.

2 Long-range forecasts

Three areas of advance deserve attention. Predictions of the number of Atlantic tropical storms and hurricanes and of the number of days on which these occur have been developed from statistical relations with the El Niño state, mean April to May sea-level pressure over the Caribbean and the easterly or westerly phase of the stratospheric tropical winds at 30 mb (see pp. 27 and 273). Cyclones in the following summer season are more numerous when during the spring season 30- and 50-mb zonal winds are westerly and increasing, ENSO is in the La Niña (cold) mode and there is below-normal pressure in the Caribbean. Wet conditions in the Sahel appear to favour the development of disturbances in the eastern and central Atlantic. An initial forecast is made in November for the following season (based on stratospheric wind phase and August to November rainfall in the western Sahel) and a second forecast using information on nine predictors through July of the current year.

At least five forecast models have been developed to predict ENSO fluctuations with a lead time of up to twelve months; three involve coupled atmosphere–ocean GCMs, one is statistical and one uses analogue matching. Each of the methods shows a comparable level of moderate skill over three seasons ahead, with a noticeable decrease in skill in the northern spring. The ENSO phase strongly affects seasonal rainfall in northeast Brazil, for example, and other tropical continental areas, as well as modifying the winter climate of parts of North America through the interaction of tropical sea-surface temperature anomalies and convection on mid-latitude planetary waves.

Summer monsoon rainfall in India is related to the ENSO, but the linkages are mostly simultaneous, or the monsoon events even lead the ENSO changes. El Niño (La Niña) years are associated with droughts (floods) over India. Numerous predictors of monsoon rainfall over all India have been proposed, including spring temperatures and pressure indicative of the heat low, cross-equatorial airflow in the Indian Ocean, 500 and 200 mb circulation features, ENSO phase, and Eurasian winter snow cover. A key predictor of Indian rainfall is the latitude of the 500-mb ridge along 75°E in April, but the most useful operational approach seems to be a statistical combination of such parameters, with a forecast issued in May for the June to September period. The important question of the spatial pattern of monsoon onset, duration and retreat and this variability has not yet been addressed.

Rainfall over sub-Saharan West Africa is predicted by the UK Meteorological Office using statistical methods. For the Sahel, drier conditions are associated with a decreased inter-hemispheric gradient of sea-surface temperatures in the tropical Atlantic and with an anomalously warm equatorial Pacific. Rainfall over the Guinea coast is increased when the South Atlantic is warmer than normal.

SUMMARY

The tropical atmosphere differs significantly from that in middle latitudes. Temperature gradients are generally weak and weather systems are produced mainly by airstream convergence triggering convection in the moist surface layer. Strong longitudinal differences in climate exist as a result of the zones of subsidence (ascent) on the eastern (western) margins of the subtropical high-pressure cells. In the eastern oceans, there is typically a strong trade wind inversion at about 1 km with dry subsiding air above, giving fine weather. Downstream, this stable lid is raised gradually by the penetration of convective clouds as the trades flow westward. Cloud masses are frequently organized into amorphous 'clusters' on a subsynoptic scale; some of these have linear squall lines, which are an important source of precipitation in West Africa. The trade wind systems of the two hemispheres converge, but not in a spatially or temporally continuous manner. This intertropical convergence zone also shifts poleward over the land sectors in summer, associated with the monsoon regimes of South Asia, West Africa and northern Australia. There is a further South Pacific convergence zone in the southern summer.

Wave disturbances in the tropical easterlies vary regionally in character. The 'classical' easterly wave has maximum cloud buildup and precipitation behind (east of) the trough line. This distribution follows from

the conservation of potential vorticity by the air. About 10 per cent of wave disturbances later intensify to become tropical storms or cyclones. This development requires a warm sea surface and low-level convergence to maintain the sensible and latent heat supply and upper-level divergence to maintain ascent. Cumulonimbus 'hot towers' nevertheless account for a small fraction of the spiral cloud bands. Tropical cyclones are most numerous in the western oceans of the northern hemisphere in the summer to autumn seasons.

The monsoon seasonal wind reversal of South Asia is the product of global and regional influences. The orographic barrier of the Himalayas and Tibetan Plateau plays an important role. In winter, the subtropical westerly jet stream is anchored south of the mountains. Subsidence occurs over northern India, giving northeasterly surface (trade) winds. Occasional depressions from the Mediterranean penetrate to northwestern India–Pakistan. The circulation reversal in summer is triggered by the development of an upper-level anticyclone over the elevated Tibetan Plateau with upper-level easterly flow over India. This change is accompanied by the northward extension of low-level southwesterlies in the Indian Ocean, which appear first in southern India and along the Burma coast and then extend northwestward. The summer 'monsoon' over East Asia also progresses from southeast to northwest, but the Mai-yu rains are mainly a result of depressions moving northeastward and thunderstorms. Rainfall is concentrated in spells associated with 'monsoon depressions', which travel westward steered by the upper easterlies. Monsoon rains fluctuate in intensity, giving rise to 'active' and 'break' periods in response to southward and northward displacements of the monsoon trough, respectively. There is also considerable year-to-year variability.

The West African monsoon has many similarities to that of India, but its northward advance is unhindered by a mountain barrier to the north. Four zonal climatic belts, related to the location of overlying easterly jet streams and east–west-moving disturbances, are identified. The Sahel zone is reached by the monsoon trough, but overlaying subsiding air greatly limits rainfall.

The climate of equatorial Africa is influenced strongly by low-level westerlies from the South Atlantic high (year-round) and easterlies in winter from the South Indian Ocean anticyclone. These flows converge along the Zaire air boundary (ZAB) with easterlies aloft. In summer, the ZAB is displaced southwards and northeasterlies over the eastern Pacific meet the westerlies along the ITCZ, oriented north–south from 0° to 12°S. The characteristics of African disturbances are complex and barely known. Deep easterly flow affects most of Africa south of 10°S (winter) or 15 to 18°S (summer), although the southern westerlies affect South Africa in winter.

In Amazonia, where there are broad tropical easterlies but no well-defined ITCZ, the subtropical highs of the North and South Atlantic both influence the region. Precipitation is associated with convective activity triggering low-level convergence, with meso- to synoptic-scale disturbances forming in situ, and with instability lines generated by coastal winds that move inland.

The equatorial Pacific Ocean sector plays a major role in climate anomalies throughout much of the tropics. At irregular, three- to five-year intervals, the tropical easterly winds over the eastern–central Pacific weaken, upwelling ceases off South America and the usual convection over Indonesia shifts eastward towards the central Pacific. Such warm ENSO events, which replace the normal La Niña mode, have global repercussions since teleconnection links extend to some extratropical areas, particularly East Asia and North America.

Variability in tropical climates also occurs through diurnal effects, such as land–sea breezes, local topographic and coastal effects on airflow, and the penetration of extra-tropical weather systems and airflow into lower latitudes.

Short-range tropical weather prediction is commonly limited by sparse observations and the poorly understood disturbances involved. Seasonal predictions show some success for the evolution of the ENSO regime, Atlantic hurricane activity and West African rainfall.

DISCUSSION TOPICS

- Consider the various factors that influence the damage caused by a tropical cyclone upon landfall in different parts of the world (e.g. the southeastern USA, islands in the Caribbean, Bangladesh, northern Australia and Hong Kong).
- Use the indices of ENSO, NAO, PNA and so on available on the web (see Appendix 4D) to compare anomalies of temperature and precipitation in a region of interest to you during positive and negative phases of the oscillations.
- Examine the similarities and differences of the major monsoon climates of the world.
- What are the similarities and differences of cyclonic systems in middle latitudes and the tropics?
- By what mechanisms do ENSO events affect weather anomalies in the tropics and in other parts of the world?

FURTHER READING

Books

Arakawa, H. (ed.) (1969) *Climates of Northern and Eastern Asia*, World Survey of Climatology 8, Elsevier, Amsterdam, 248pp. [Comprehensive account, as of the 1960s; tables of climatic statistics.]

Barry, R. G. (1992) *Mountain Weather and Climate* (2nd edn), Routledge, London and New York, 420pp.

Dickinson, R. E. (ed.) (1987) *The Geophysiology of Amazonia: Vegetation and Climate Interactions*, John Wiley & Sons, New York, 526pp. [Overviews of climate–vegetation–human interactions in the Amazon, forest micrometeorology and hydrology, precipitation mechanisms, general circulation modelling and the effects of land use changes.]

Domrös, M. and Peng, G-B. (1988) *The Climate of China*, Springer-Verlag, Berlin, 361pp. [Good description of climatic characteristics; climatic data tables.]

Dunn, G. E. and Miller, B. I. (1960) *Atlantic Hurricanes*, Louisiana State University Press, Baton Rouge, LA, 326pp. [Classic account.]

Fairbridge, R. W. (1967) *The Encyclopedia of Atmospheric Sciences and Astrology*, Reinhold, New York, 1200pp.

Fein, J. S. and Webster, P. J. (eds) (1987) *Monsoons*, J.Wiley & Sons, New York, 632 pp. [Theory and modelling of monsoon mechanisms, considered globally and regionally; many seminal contributions by leading experts.]

Gentilli, J. (ed.) (1971) *Climates of Australia and New Zealand, World Survey of Climatology* 13, Elsevier, Amsterdam, 405pp. [Detailed survey of climatic characteristics; tables of climatic statistics.]

Glantz, M. H., Katz, R. W. and Nicholls, N. (eds) (1990) *Teleconnections Linking Worldwide Climate Anomalies*, Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, 535pp. [Valuable essays on ENSO characteristics, causes and worldwide effects.]

Goudie, A. and Wilkinson, J. (1977) *The Warm Desert Environment*, Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, 88 pp.

Griffiths, J. F. (ed.) (1972) *Climates of Africa, World Survey of Climatology* 10, Elsevier, Amsterdam, 604pp. [Detailed account of the climate of major regions of Africa; tables of climatic statistics.]

Hamilton, M. G. (1979) *The South Asian Summer Monsoon*, Arnold, Australia, 72pp. [Brief account of major characteristics.]

Hastenrath, S. (1985) *Climate and Circulation of the Tropics*, D. Reidel, Dordrecht, 455pp. [Comprehensive survey of weather systems, climate processes, regional phenomena and climatic change in the tropics, by a meteorologist with extensive tropical experience.]

Hayward, D. F. and Oguntoyinbo, J. S. (1987) *The Climatology of West Africa*, Hutchinson, London, 271 pp.

Hutchings, J. W. (ed.) (1964) *Proceedings of the Symposium on Tropical Meteorology*, New Zealand and Meteorological Service, Wellington, 737 pp.

Indian Meteorological Department (1960) *Monsoons of the World*, Delhi, 270pp. [Classic account with much valuable information.]

Jackson, I. J. (1977) *Climate, Water and Agriculture in the Tropics*, Longman, London, 248pp. [Material on precipitation and the hydrological cycle in the tropics.]

Lighthill, J. and Pearce, R. P. (eds) (1981) *Monsoon Dynamics*, Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, 735pp. [Conference proceedings; specialist papers on observations and modelling of the Asian monsoon.]

Philander, S. G. (1990) *El Niño, La Niña, and the Southern Oscillation*, Academic Press, New York, 289pp.

Pielke, R. A. (1990) *The Hurricane*, Routledge, London and New York, 228pp. [Brief descriptive presentation of hurricane formation, distribution and movement; annual track maps for all Atlantic hurricanes, 1871 to 1989.]

Ramage, C. S. (1971) *Monsoon Meteorology*, Academic Press, New York and London, 296pp. [Excellent overview of the Asian monsoon and its component weather systems by a tropical specialist.]

Ramage, C. S. (1995) *Forecaster's Guide to Tropical Meteorology*, AWS/TR–95/001, Air Weather Service, Scott Air Force Base, IL. 392pp. [Useful overview of tropical weather processes and valuable local information.]

Riehl, H. (1954) *Tropical Meteorology*, McGraw-Hill, New York, 392pp. [Classic account of weather systems in the tropics by the discoverer of the easterly wave.]

Riehl, H. (1979) *Climate and Weather in the Tropics*, Academic Press, New York, 611pp. [Extends his earlier work with a more climatological view; extensive material on synoptic scale weather systems.]

Schwerdtfeger, W. (ed.) (1976) *Climates of Central and South America*, World Survey of Climatology 12, Elsevier, Amsterdam, 532pp. [Chapters on the climate of six regions/countries and one on Atlantic tropical storms provide the most comprehensive view of the climates of this continent; many useful diagrams and data tables.]

Shaw, D. B. (ed.) (1978) *Meteorology over the Tropical Oceans*, Royal Meteorological Society, Bracknell, 278pp. [Symposium papers covering a range of important topics.]

Sheng, C. *et al*. (1986) *General Comments on the Climate of China*, Science Press, Beijing, 533pp. (in Chinese).

Tyson, P. D. (1986) *Climatic Change and Variability in Southern Africa*, Oxford University Press, Cape Town, 220pp. [Includes subtropical and tropical circulation systems affecting Africa south of the Equator.]

Yoshino, M. M. (ed.) (1971) *Water Balance of Monsoon Asia*, University of Tokyo Press, 308pp. [Essays by Japanese climatologists focusing on moisture transport and precipitation.]

Young, J. A. (co-ordinator) (1972) *Dynamics of the Tropical Atmosphere* (Notes from a Colloquium), National Center for Atmospheric Research, Boulder, CO, 587pp. [Summer school proceedings with presentations and discussion by leading specialists.]

Zhang, J. and Lin, Z. (1985) *Climate of China*, Science and Technology Press, Shanghai, 603pp. (in Chinese). [Source of some useful diagrams.]

Articles

Academica Sinica (1957–8) On the general circulation over eastern Asia. *Tellus* 9, 432–46; 10, 58–75 and 299–312.

Anthes, R. A. (1982) Tropical cyclones: their evolution, structure, and effects. *Met. Monogr*. 19(41), Amer. Met. Soc., Boston, MA, 208pp.

Augstein, E. *et al*. (1973) Mass and energy transport in an undisturbed trade wind flow. *Monthly Weather Review* 101, 101–11.

Avila, L. A. (1990) Atlantic tropical systems of 1989. *Monthly Weather Review* 118, 1178–85.

Barnston, A. G. (1995) Our improving capability in ENSO forecasting. *Weather* 50(12), 419–30.

Barry, R. G. (1978) Aspects of the precipitation characteristics of the New Guinea mountains. *J. Trop. Geog*. 47, 13–30.

Beckinsale, R. P. (1957) The nature of tropical rainfall. *Tropical Agriculture* 34, 76–98.

Bhalme, H. N. and Mooley, D. A. (1980) Large-scale droughts/floods and monsoon circulation. *Monthly Weather Review* 108, 1197–211.

Blumenstock, D. I. (1958) Distribution and characteristics of tropical climates. *Proc. 9th Pacific Sci. Congr*. 20, 3–23.

Breed, C. S. *et al*. (1979) Regional studies of sand seas, using Landsat (ERTS) imagery. US Geological Survey Professional Paper No. 1052, 305–97.

Browning, K. A. (1996) Current research in atmospheric science. *Weather* 51(5), 167–72.

Chang, J-H. (1962) Comparative climatology of the tropical western margins of the northern oceans. *Ann. Assn Amer. Geog*. 52, 221–7.

Chang, J-H. (1967) The Indian summer monsoon. *Geog. Rev*. 57, 373–96.

Chang, J-H. (1971) The Chinese monsoon. *Geog. Rev*. 61, 370–95.

Chopra, K. P. (1973) Atmospheric and oceanic flow problems introduced by islands. *Adv. Geophys*. 16, 297–421.

Clackson, J. R. (1957) The seasonal movement of the boundary of northern air. Nigerian Meteorological Service, Technical Note 5 (see Addendum 1958).

Crowe, P. R. (1949) The trade wind circulation of the world. *Trans. Inst. Brit. Geog*. 15, 37–56.

Crowe, P. R. (1951) Wind and weather in the equatorial zone. *Trans. Inst. Brit. Geog*. 17, 23–76.

Cry, G. W. (1965) Tropical cyclones of the North Atlantic Ocean. Tech. Paper No. 55, Weather Bureau, Washington, DC, 148 pp.

Curry, L. and Armstrong, R. W. (1959) Atmospheric circulation of the tropical Pacific Ocean. *Geografiska Annaler* 41, 245–55.

Das, P. K. (1987) Short- and long-range monsoon prediction in India. In Fein, J. S. and Stephens, P. L. (eds) *Monsoons*, John Wiley and Sons, New York, pp. 549–78.

Dhar, O. N. and Nandargi, S. (1993) Zones of extreme rainstorm activity over India. *Int. J. Climatology* 13, 301–11.

Dubief, J. (1963) Le climat du Sahara. Memoire de l'Institut de Recherches Sahariennes, Université d'Alger, Algiers, 275 pp.

Eldridge, R. H. (1957) A synoptic study of West African disturbance lines. *Quart. J. Roy. Met. Soc*. 83, 303–14.

Fett, R. W. (1964) Aspects of hurricane structure: new model considerations suggested by TIROS and Project Mercury observations. *Monthly Weather Review* 92, 43–59.

Findlater, J. (1971) Mean monthly airflow at low levels over the Western Indian Ocean. *Geophysical Memoirs* 115, Meteorological Office, 53 pp.

Findlater, J. (1974) An extreme wind speed in the low-level jet-stream system of the western Indian Ocean. *Met. Mag*. 103, 201–5.

Flohn, H. (1968) *Contributions to a Meteorology of the Tibetan Highlands*. Atmos. Sci. Paper No. 130, Colorado State University, Fort Collins, 120 pp.

Flohn, H. (1971) Tropical circulation patterns. *Bonn. Geogr. Abhandl*. 15, 55 pp.

Fosberg, F. R., Garnier, B. J. and Küchler, A. W. (1961) Delimitation of the humid tropics. *Geog. Rev*. 51, 333–47.

Fraedrich, K. (1990) European Grosswetter during the warm and cold extremes of the El Niño/Southern Oscillation. *Int. J. Climatology* 10, 21–31.

Frank, N. L. and Hubert, P. J. (1974) Atlantic tropical systems of 1973. *Monthly Weather Review* 102, 290–5.

Frost, R. and Stephenson, P. H. (1965) Mean streamlines and isotachs at standard pressure levels over the Indian and west Pacific oceans and adjacent land areas. *Geophys. Mem*. 14(109), HMSO, London, 24 pp.

Gao, Y-X. and Li, C. (1981) Influence of Qinghai-Xizang plateau on seasonal variation of general atmospheric circulation. In *Geoecological and Ecological Studies of Qinghai-Xizang Plateau*, Vol. 2, Science Press, Beijing, pp. 1477–84.

Garnier, B. J. (1967) *Weather conditions in Nigeria*, Climatological Research Series No. 2, McGill University Press, Montreal, 163 pp.

Gray, W. M. (1968) Global view of the origin of tropical disturbances and hurricanes. *Monthly Weather Review* 96, 669–700.

Gray, W. M. (1979) Hurricanes: their formation, structure and likely role in the tropical circulation. In Shaw, D. B. (ed.) *Meteorology over the Tropical Oceans*, Royal Meteorological Society, Bracknell, pp. 155–218.

Gray, W. M. (1984) Atlantic seasonal hurricane frequency. *Monthly Weather Review* 112, 1649–68; 1669–83.

Gray, W. M. and Jacobson, R. W. (1977) Diurnal variation of deep cumulus convection. *Monthly Weather Review* 105, 1171–88.

Gray, W. M., Mielke, P. W. and Berry, K. J. (1992) Predicting Atlantic season hurricane activity 6–11 months in advance. *Wea. Forecasting* 7, 440–55.

Gregory, S. (1965) *Rainfall over Sierra Leone*, Geography Department, University of Liverpool, Research Paper No. 2, 58 pp.

Gregory, S. (1988) El Niño years and the spatial pattern of drought over India, 1901–70. In Gregory, S. (ed.) *Recent Climatic Change*, Belhaven Press, London, pp. 226–36.

Halpert, M. S. and Ropelewski, C. F. (1992) Surface temperature patterns associated with the Southern Oscillation. *J. Climate* 5, 577–93.

Harrison, D. E. and Larkin, N. K. (1998) El Niño – Southern Oscillation sea surface temperature and wind anomalies. *Rev. Geophys*. 36, 353–99.

Hastenrath, S. (1995) Recent advances in tropical climate prediction. *J. Climate* 8(6), 1519–32.

Houze, R. A. and Hobbs, P. V. (1982) Organizational and structure of precipitating cloud systems. *Adv. Geophys*. 24, 225–315.

Houze, R. A., Goetis, S. G., Marks, F. D. and West, A. K. (1981) Winter monsoon convection in the vicinity of North Borneo. *Monthly Weather Review* 109, 591–614.

Howell, W. E. and Lopez, M. E. (1967) Katabatic winds in the equatorial Andes. In Fairbridge, R. W. (ed.) *The Encyclopedia of Atmospheric Sciences and Astrogeology*, Reinhold, New York, pp. 518–22.

Jalu, R. (1960) Etude de la situation météorologique au Sahara en Janvier 1958. *Ann. de Géog*. 69(371), 288–96.

Jordan, C. L. (1955) Some features of the rainfall at Guam. *Bull. Amer. Met. Soc*. 36, 446–55.

Kamara, S. I. (1986) The origins and types of rainfall in West Africa. *Weather* 41, 48–56.

Kiladis, G. N. and Diaz, H. F. (1989) Global climatic anomalies associated with extremes of the Southern Oscillation. *J. Climate* 2, 1069–90.

Knox, R. A. (1987) The Indian Ocean: interaction with the monsoon. In Fein, J. S. and Stephens, P. L. (eds) *Monsoons*, John Wiley & Sons, New York, pp. 365–97.

Koteswaram, P. (1958) The easterly jet stream in the tropics. *Tellus* 10, 45–57.

Kousky, V. E. (1980) Diurnal rainfall variation in northeast Brazil. *Monthly Weather Review* 108, 488–98.

Kreuels, R., Fraedrich, K. and Ruprecht, E. (1975) An aerological climatology of South America. *Met. Rundsch*. 28, 17–24.

Krishna Kumar, K., Soman, M. K. and Rupa Kumar, K. (1996) Seasonal forecasting of Indian summer monsoon rainfall: a review. *Weather* 50(12), 449–67.

Krishnamurti, T. N. (ed.) (1977) Monsoon meteorology. *Pure Appl. Geophys*. 115, 1087–529.

Kurashima, A. (1968) Studies on the winter and summer monsoons in east Asia based on dynamic concept. *Geophys. Mag*. (Tokyo), 34, 145–236.

Kurihara, Y. (1985) Numerical modeling of tropical cyclones. In Manabe, S. (ed.) *Issues in Atmospheric and Oceanic Modeling. Part B, Weather Dynamics, Advances in Geophysics*, Academic Press, New York, pp. 255–87.

Lander, M. A. (1990) Evolution of the cloud pattern during the formation of tropical cyclone twins symmetrical with respect to the Equator. *Monthly Weather Review* 118, 1194–202.

Landsea, C. W., Gray, W. M., Mielke, P. W. Jr. and Berry, K. J. (1994) Seasonal forecasting of Atlantic hurricane activity. *Weather* 49, 273–84.

Lau, K-M. and Li, M-T. (1984) The monsoon of East Asia and its global associations – a survey. *Bull. Amer. Met. Soc*. 65, 114–25.

Le Barbe, L., Lebel, T. and Tapsoba, D. (2002) Rainfall variability in West Africa during the years 1950–90. *J. Climate* 15(2), 187–202.

Le Borgue, J. (1979) Polar invasion into Mauretania and Senegal. *Ann. de Géog*. 88(485), 521–48.

Lin, C.u (1982) The establishment of the summer monsoon over the middle and lower reaches of the Yangtze River and the seasonal transition of circulation over East Asia in early summer. *Proc. Symp. Summer Monsoon South East Asia*, People's Press of Yunnan Province, Kunming, pp. 21–8 (in Chinese).

Lockwood, J. G. (1965) The Indian monsoon – a review. *Weather* 20, 2–8.

Logan, R. F. (1960) *The Central Namib Desert, South-west Africa*, National Academy of Sciences, National Research Council, Publication 758, Washington, DC, 162 pp.

Lowell, W. E. (1954) Local weather of the Chicama Valley, Peru. *Archiv. Met. Geophys. Biokl*. B 5, 41–51.

Lydolph, P. E. (1957) A comparative analysis of the dry western littorals. *Ann. Assn Amer. Geog*. 47, 213–30.

Maejima, I. (1967) Natural seasons and weather singularities in Japan, Geog. Report No. 2. Tokyo Metropolitan University, pp. 77–103.

Maley, J. (1982) Dust, clouds, rain types, and climatic variations in tropical North Africa. *Quaternary Res*. 18, 1–16.

Malkus, J. S. (1955–6) The effects of a large island upon the trade-wind air stream. *Quart. J. Roy. Met. Soc*. 81, 538–50; 82, 235–8.

Malkus, J. S. (1958) Tropical weather disturbances: why do so few become hurricanes? *Weather* 13, 75–89.

Malkus, J. S. and Riehl, H. (1964) *Cloud Structure and Distributions over the Tropical Pacific Ocean*, University of California Press, Berkeley and Los Angeles, 229pp.

Mason, B. J. (1970) Future developments in meteorology: an outlook to the year 2000. *Quart. J. Roy. Met. Soc*. 96, 349–68.

Matsumoto, J. (1985) Precipitation distribution and frontal zones over East Asia in the summer of 1979. *Bull. Dept Geog., Univ. Tokyo* 17, 45–61.

Meehl, G. A. (1987) The tropics and their role in the global climate system. *Geog. J.* 153, 21–36.

Memberry, D.A. (2001) Monsoon tropical cyclones. Part I. *Weather* 56, 431–8.

Mink, J. F. (1960) Distribution pattern of rainfall in the leeward Koolau Mountains, Oahu, Hawaii. *J. Geophys. Res*. 65, 2869–76.

Mohr, K. and Zipser, E. (1996) Mesoscale convective systems defined by their 85–GHz ice scattering signature: size and intensity comparison over tropical oceans and continents. *Monthly Weather Review* 124, 2417–37.

Molion, L. C. B. (1987) On the dynamic climatology of the Amazon Basin and associated rain-producing mechanisms. In Dickinson, R. E. (ed.) *The Geophysiology of Amazonia*, John Wiley & Sons, New York, pp. 391–405.

Musk, L. (1988) Outlook – changeable. *Geog. Mag*. 55, 532–3.

Neal, A. B., Butterworth, L. J. and Murphy, K. M. (1977) The morning glory. *Weather* 32, 176–83.

Nicholson, S. E. (1989) Long-term changes in African rainfall. *Weather* 44, 46–56.

Nicholson, S. E. and Flohn, H. (1980) African environmental and climatic changes and the general atmospheric circulation in late Pleistocene and Holocene. *Climatic Change* 2, 313–48.

NOAA (1992) *Experimental Long-lead Forecast Bulletin*, NOAA, Washington, DC.

Omotosho, J. B. (1985) The separate contributions of line squalls, thunderstorms and the monsoon to the total rainfall in Nigeria. *J. Climatology* 5, 543–52.

Palmén, E. (1948) On the formation and structure of tropical hurricanes. *Geophysica* 3, 26–38.

Palmer, C. E. (1951) Tropical meteorology. In Malone, T. F. (ed.) *Compendium of Meteorology*, American Meteorological Society, Boston, MA, pp. 859–80.

Physik, W. L. and Smith, R. K. (1985) Observations and dynamics of sea breezes in northern Australia. *Austral. Met. Mag*. 33, 51–63.

Pogosyan, K. P. and Ugarova, K. F. (1959) The influence of the Central Asian mountain massif on jet streams. *Meteorologiya Gidrologiya* 11, 16–25 (in Russian).

Quinn, W. H. and Neal, V. T. (1992) The historical record of El Niño. In Bradley, R. S. and Jones, P. D. (eds) *Climate Since A.D. 1500*, Routledge, London, pp. 623–48.

Raghavan, K. (1967) Influence of tropical storms on monsoon rainfall in India. *Weather* 22, 250–5.

Ramage, C. S. (1952) Relationships of general circulation to normal weather over southern Asia and the western Pacific during the cool season. *J. Met.* 9, 403–8.

Ramage, C. S. (1964) Diurnal variation of summer rainfall in Malaya. *J. Trop. Geog*. 19, 62–8.

Ramage, C. S. (1968) Problems of a monsoon ocean. *Weather* **23**, 28–36.

Ramage, C. S. (1986) El Niño. *Sci. American* 254, 76–83.

Ramage, C. S., Khalsa, S. J. S. and Meisner, B. N. (1980) The central Pacific near-equatorial convergence zone. *J. Geophys. Res*. 86(7), 6580–98.

Ramaswamy, C. (1956) On the sub-tropical jet stream and its role in the department of large-scale convection. *Tellus* 8, 26–60.

Ramaswamy, C. (1962) Breaks in the Indian summer monsoon as a phenomenon of interaction between the easterly and the sub-tropical westerly jet streams. *Tellus* 14, 337–49.

Rasmusson, E. M. (1985) El Niño and variations in climate. *Amer. Sci*. 73, 168–77.

Ratisbona, L. R. (1976) The climate of Brazil. In Schwerdtfeger, W. (ed.) *Climates of Central and South America*, World Survey of Climatology 12, Elsevier, Amsterdam, pp. 219–93.

Reynolds, R. (1985) Tropical meteorology. *Prog. Phys. Geog*. 9, 157–86.

Riehl, H. (1963) On the origin and possible modification of hurricanes. *Science* 141, 1001–10.

Rodwell, M. J. and Hoskins, B. J. (1996) Monsoons and the dynamics of deserts. *Quart. J. Roy. Met. Soc*. 122, 1385–404.

Ropelewski, C. F. and Halpert, M. S. (1987) Global and regional scale precipitation patterns associated with the El Niño/Southern Oscillation. *Monthly Weather Review* 115, 1606–25.

Rossignol-Strick, M. (1985) Mediterranean Quaternary sapropels, an immediate response of the African monsoon to variation in isolation. *Palaeogeog., Palaeoclim., Palaeoecol.* 49, 237–63.

Sadler, J. C. (1975a) The monsoon circulation and cloudiness over the GATE area. *Monthly Weather Review* 103, 369–87.

Sadler, J. C. (1975b) *The Upper Tropospheric Circulation over the Global Tropics*, UHMET–75–05, Department of Meteorology, University of Hawaii, 35pp.

Saha, R. R. (1973) Global distribution of double cloud bands over the tropical oceans. *Quart. J. Roy. Met. Soc.* 99, 551–5.

Saito, R. (1959) The climate of Japan and her meteorological disasters. *Proceedings of the International Geophysical Union*, Regional Conference in Tokyo, Japan, pp. 173–83.

Sawyer, J. S. (1970) Large-scale disturbance of the equatorial atmosphere. *Met. Mag*. 99, 1–9.

Shukla, J. and Wallace, M. J. (1983) Numerical simulation of the atmospheric response to equatorial Pacific sea-surface temperature anomalies. *J. Atmos. Sci*. 40, 1613–30.

Sikka, D. R. (1977) Some aspects of the life history, structure and movement of monsoon depressions. *Pure and Applied Geophysics* 15, 1501–29.

Suppiah, R. (1992) The Australian summer monsoon: a review. *Prog. Phys. Geog*. 16(3), 283–318.

Tao, Shi-yan (ed. for the Chinese Geographical Society) (1984) *Physical Geography of China*, Science Press, Beijing, 161pp. (in Chinese).

Thompson, B. W. (1951) An essay on the general circulation over South-East Asia and the West Pacific. *Quart. J. Roy. Met. Soc*. 569–97.

Trenberth, K. E. (1976) Spatial and temporal oscillations in the Southern Oscillation. *Quart. J. Roy. Met. Soc*. 102, 639–53.

Trenberth, K. E. (1990) General characteristics of El Niño–Southern Oscillation. In Glantz, M. H., Katz, R. W. and Nicholls, N. (eds) *Teleconnections Linking Worldwide Climate Anomalies* Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, pp. 13–42.

Trewartha, G. T. (1958) Climate as related to the jet stream in the Orient. *Erdkunde* 12, 205–14.

Van Heerden, J. and Taljaard, J. J. (1998) Africa and surrounding waters. In Karoly, D. J. and Vincent, D. G. (eds) *Meteorology of the Southern Hemisphere* 27(49), 141–74, American Meteorological Society, Boston, MA.

Vincent, D. G. (1994) The South Pacific Convergence Zone (SPCZ): a review. *Monthly Weather Review* 122(9), 1949–70.

Webster, P. J. (1987a) The elementary monsoon. In Fein, J. S. and Stephens, P. L. (eds) *Monsoons*, John Wiley & Sons, New York, pp. –32.

Webster, P. J. (1987b) The variable and interactive monsoon. In Fein, J. S. and Stephens, P. L. (eds) *Monsoons*, John Wiley & Sons, New York, pp. 269–330.

World Meteorological Organization (1972) Synoptic analysis and forecasting in the tropics of Asia and the south-west Pacific. WMO No. 321, Geneva, 524pp.

World Meteorological Organization (n.d.) *The Global Climate System. A Critical Review of the Climate System during 1982–1984*, World Climate Data Programme. WMO, Geneva, 52pp.

Wyrtki, K. (1982) The Southern Oscillation, ocean–atmosphere interaction and El Niño. *Marine Tech. Soc. J*. 16, 3–10.

Yarnal, B. (1985) Extratropical teleconnections with El Niño/Southern Oscillation (ENSO) events. *Prog. Phys. Geog*. 9, 315–52.

Ye, D. (1981) Some characteristics of the summer circulation over the Qinghai–Xizang (Tibet) plateau and its neighbourhood. *Bull. Amer. Met. Soc*. 62, 14–19.

Ye, D. and Gao, Y-X. (1981) The seasonal variation of the heat source and sink over Qinghai–Xizang plateau and its role in the general circulation. In *Geoecological and Ecological Studies of Qinghai–Xizang Plateau*, Vol. 2, Science Press, Beijing, pp. 1453–61.

Yoshino, M. M. (1969) Climatological studies on the polar frontal zones and the intertropical convergence zones over South, South-east and East Asia. *Climatol. Notes* 1, Hosei University, 71pp.

Yuter, S. E. and Houze, R. A. Jr. (1998) The natural variability of precipitating clouds over the western Pacific warm pool. *Quart. J. R. Met. Soc.* 124, 53–99.

12

Boundary layer climates

Learning objectives
When you have read this chapter you will:

- ☐ Understand the significance of surface characteristics for energy and moisture exchanges and thus small-scale climates,
- ☐ Appreciate how urban environments modify atmospheric conditions and the local climate,
- ☐ Know the characteristics of an urban heat island.

Meteorological phenomena encompass a wide range of space and timescales, from gusts of wind that swirl up leaves and litter to the global-scale wind systems that shape the planetary climate. Their time and length scales, and their kinetic energy, are illustrated in Figure 12.1 in comparison with those for a range of human activities. Small-scale turbulence, with wind eddies of a few metres' dimension and lasting for only a few seconds, represents the domain of *micrometeorology*, or boundary layer climates. Small-scale climates occur within the planetary boundary layer (see Chapter 6) and have vertical scales of the order of 10^3 m, horizontal scales of some 10^4 m, and timescales of about 10^5 seconds (i.e. one day). The boundary layer is typically 1 km thick, but varies between 20 m and several kilometres in different locations and at different times in the same location. Within this layer mechanical and convective diffusion processes transport mass, momentum and energy, as well as exchanging aerosols and chemicals between the lower atmosphere and the earth's surface. The boundary layer is especially prone to nocturnal cooling and diurnal heating, and within it the wind velocity decreases through friction from the free velocity aloft to lower values near the surface, and ultimately to the zero-velocity *roughness length* height (see Chapter 6A).

Diffusion processes within the boundary layer are of two types:

1. *Eddy diffusion*. Eddies involve parcels of air that transport energy, momentum and moisture from one location to another. Usually, they can be resolved into upward-spiralling vortices leading to transfers from the earth's surface to the atmosphere or from one vertical layer of air to another. These eddies can be defined by generalized streamlines (i.e. resolved fluctuations). They range in size from a few centimetres (10^{-2} m) in diameter above a heated surface to 1 to 2 m (10^0 m) resulting from small-scale convection and surface roughness, and grade into dust devils (10^1 m, lasting 10^1 to 10^2 s) and tornadoes (10^3 m, lasting 10^2 to 10^3 s).
2. *Turbulent diffusion*. These are apparently random (i.e. unresolved) fluctuations of instantaneous velocities having variations of a second or less.

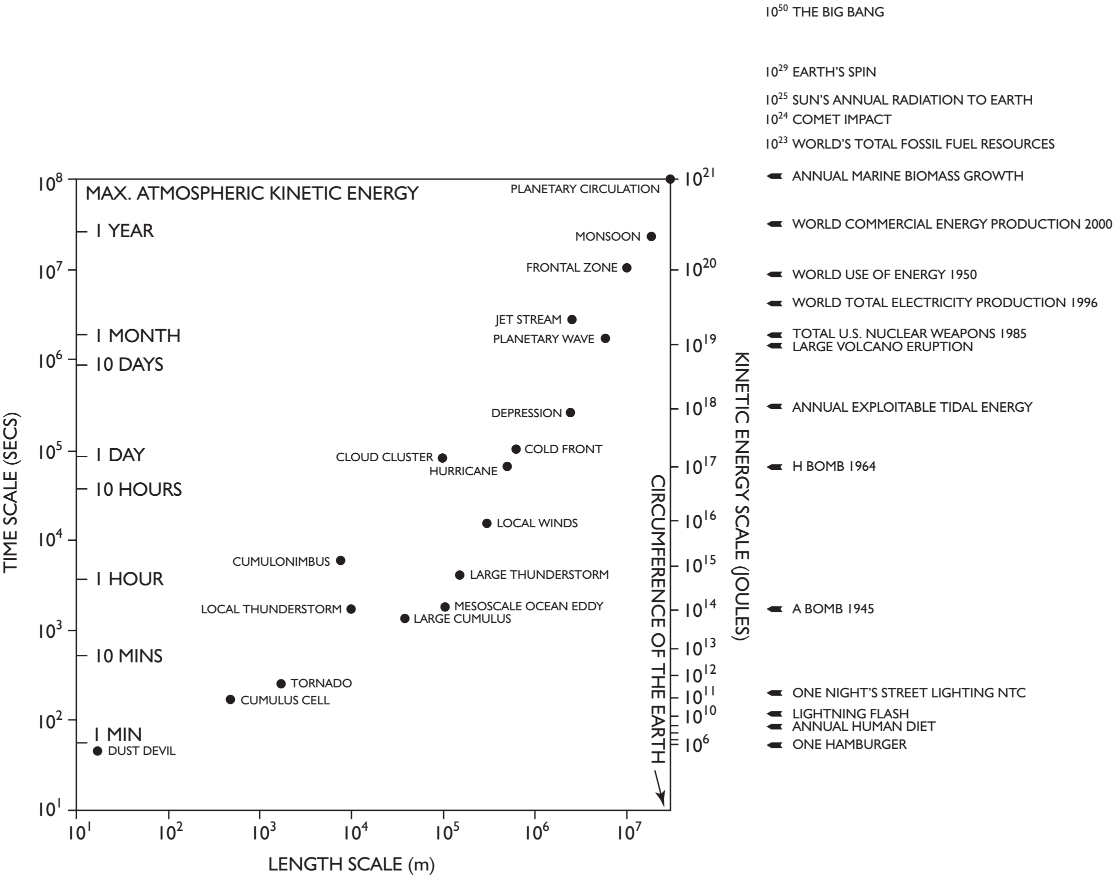


Figure 12.1 The relationship between the time and length scales of a range of meteorological phenomena together with their equivalent kinetic energy (KE) (joules). The equivalent KE values are shown for some other human and natural phenomena. 'Comet impact' refers to the KT (Cretaceous/Tertiary event). The Big Bang had an estimated energy equivalent to 10^{62} hamburgers!

A SURFACE ENERGY BUDGETS

We first review the process of energy exchange between the atmosphere and an unvegetated surface. The surface energy budget equation, discussed in Chapter 3D, is usually written as follows:

$$R_n + H + LE + G$$

where R_n, the net all-wavelength radiation,
$= [S(1 - a)] + L_n$

S = incoming short-wave radiation,
a = fractional albedo of the surface, and
L_n = the net outgoing long-wave radiation.

R_n is usually positive by day, since the absorbed solar radiation exceeds the net outgoing long-wave radiation; at night, when $S = 0$, R_n is determined by the negative magnitude of L_n.

The surface energy flux terms are:

G = ground heat flux,
H = turbulent sensible heat flux to the atmosphere,
LE = turbulent latent heat flux to the atmosphere (E = evaporation; L = latent heat of vaporization).

Positive values denote a flux away from the surface interface. By day, the available net radiation is balanced by turbulent fluxes of sensible heat (H) and latent heat (LE) into the atmosphere and by conductive heat flux into the ground (G). At night, the negative R_n caused by net outgoing long-wave radiation is offset by the supply of conductive heat from the soil (G) and turbulent heat from the air (H) (Figure 12.2A).

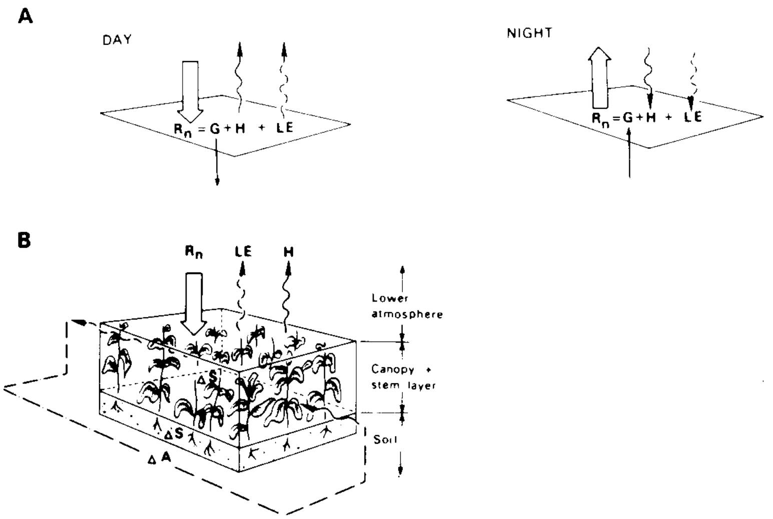


Figure 12.2 Energy flows involved in the energy balance of a simple surface during day and night (A) and a vegetated surface (B).

Source: After Oke (1978).

Occasionally, condensation may contribute heat to the surface.

Commonly, there is a small residual heat storage (ΔS) in the soil in spring/summer and a return of heat to the surface in autumn/winter. Where a vegetation canopy is present there may be a small additional biochemical heat storage, due to photosynthesis, as well as physical heat storage by leaves and stems. An additional energy component to be considered in areas of mixed canopy cover (forest/grassland, desert/oasis), and in water bodies, is the horizontal transfer (*advection*) of heat by wind and currents (ΔA; see Figure 12.2B). The atmosphere transports both sensible and latent heat.

B NON-VEGETATED NATURAL SURFACES

1 Rock and sand

The energy exchanges of dry desert surfaces are relatively simple. A representative diurnal pattern of energy exchange over desert surfaces is shown in Figure 12.3. The 2-m air temperature varies between 17 and 29°C, although the surface of the dry lake-bed reaches 57°C at midday. R_n reaches a maximum at about 13:00 hours when most of the heat is transferred to the air by turbulent convection; in the early morning the heating goes into the ground. At night, this soil heat is returned to the surface, offsetting radiative cooling. Over a twenty-four-hour period, about 90 per cent of the net radiation goes into sensible heat, 10 per cent into ground flux. Extreme surface temperatures exceeding 88°C (190°F) have been measured in Death Valley, California, and it seems that an upper limit is about 93°C (200°F).

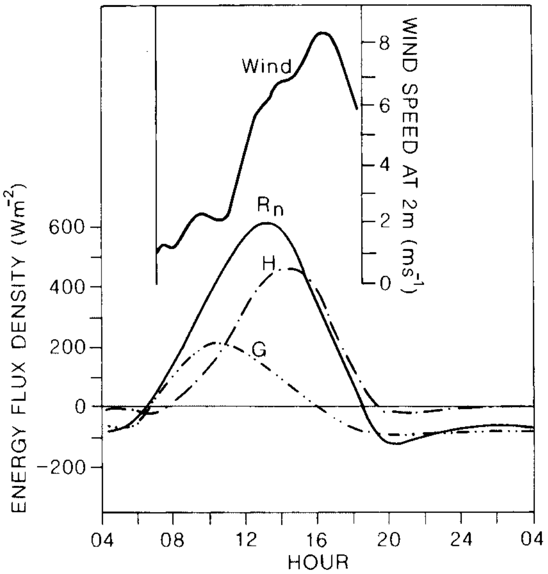


Figure 12.3 Energy flows involved at a dry-lake surface at El Mirage, California (35°N), on 10 to 11 June 1950. Wind speed due to surface turbulence was measured at a height of 2 m.

Source: After Vehrencamp (1953) and Oke (1978).

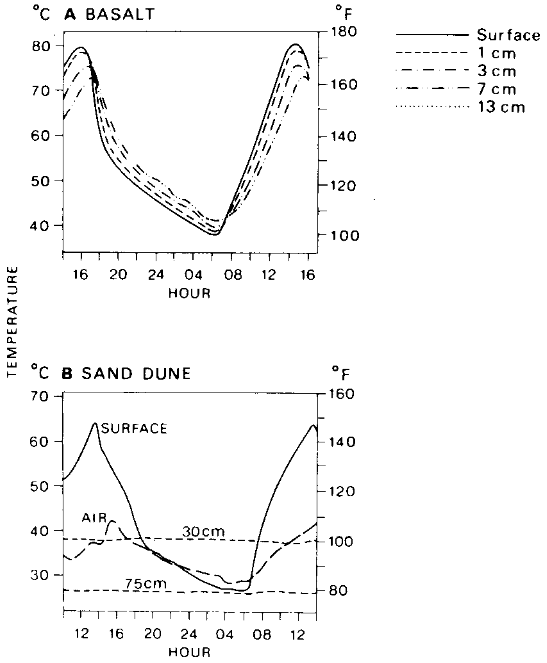


Figure 12.4 Diurnal temperatures near, at and below the surface in the Tibesti region, central Sahara, in mid-August 1961. (A) At the surface and at 1 cm, 3 cm and 7 cm below the surface of a basalt. (B) In the surface air layer, at the surface, and at 30 cm and 75 cm below the surface of a sand dune.

Source: After Peel (1974).

Surface properties modify the heat penetration, as shown by mid-August measurements in the Sahara (Figure 12.4). Maximum surface temperatures reached on dark-coloured basalt and light-coloured sandstone are almost identical, but the greater thermal conductivity of basalt (3.1 W m^{-1} K^{-1}) versus sandstone (2.4 W m^{-1} K^{-1}) gives a larger diurnal range and deeper penetration of the diurnal temperature wave, to about 1 m in the basalt. In sand, the temperature wave is negligible at 30 cm due to the low conductivity of intergranular air. Note that the surface range of temperature is several times that in the air. Sand also has an albedo of 0.35, compared with about 0.2 for a rock surface.

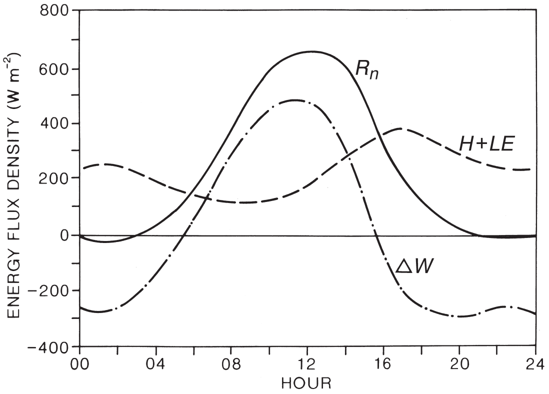


Figure 12.5 Average diurnal variation of the energy balance components in and above the tropical Atlantic Ocean during the period 20 June to 2 July 1969.

Source: After Holland. From Oke (1987). By permission of Routledge and Methuen & Co, London, and T.R. Oke.

2 Water

For a water body, the energy fluxes are apportioned very differently. Figure 12.5 illustrates the diurnal regime for the tropical Atlantic Ocean averaged for 20 June to 2 July 1969. The simple energy balance is based on the assumption that the horizontal advective term due to heat transfer by currents is zero and that the total energy input is absorbed in the upper 27 m of the ocean. Thus, between 06:00 and 16:00 hours, almost all of the net radiation is absorbed by the water layer (i.e. ΔW is positive) and at all other times the ocean water is heating the air through the transfer of sensible and latent heat of evaporation. The afternoon maximum is determined by the time of maximum temperature of the surface water.

3 Snow and ice

Surfaces that have snow or ice cover for much of the year present more complex energy budgets. The surface types include ice-covered ocean; glaciers, tundra; boreal forests, steppe, all of which are snow-covered during the long winter. Rather similar energy balances characterize the winter months (Figure 12.6). An exception is the local areas of ocean covered by thin sea ice and open leads in the ice that have 300 W m^{-2} available – more than the net radiation for boreal forests in summer. The spring transition on land is very rapid (see Figure 10.38). During the summer, when albedo becomes a critical surface parameter, there are important spatial contrasts. In summer, the radiation budget of sea ice more than 3 m thick is quite low and for ablating glaciers is lower still. Melting snow involves the additional energy balance component (ΔM), which is the net latent heat storage change (positive) due to melting (Figure

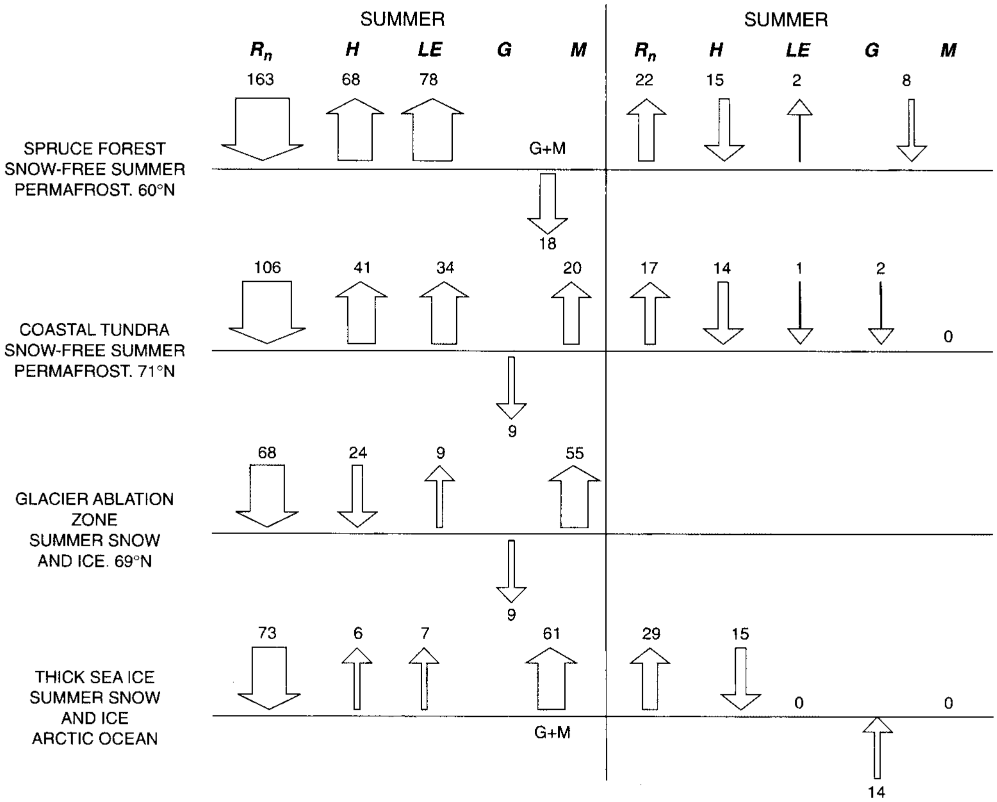

SUMMER
R_n
H
LE
G
M
163
68
78
SPRUCE FOREST SNOW-FREE SUMMER PERMAFROST. 60°N
G+M
18
106
41
34
20
COASTAL TUNDRA SNOW-FREE SUMMER PERMAFROST. 71°N
9
68
24
9
55
GLACIER ABLATION ZONE SUMMER SNOW AND ICE. 69°N
9
73
6
7
61
THICK SEA ICE SUMMER SNOW AND ICE ARCTIC OCEAN
G+M
SUMMER
R_n
H
LE
G
M
22
15
2
8
17
14
1
2
0
29
15
0
0
14

Figure 12.6 Energy balances (W m^{-2}) over four terrain types in the polar regions. M = energy used to melt snow.

Source: Weller and Wendler (1990). Reprinted from *Annals of Glaciology*, by permission of the International Glaciological Society.

12.7). In this example of snow melt at Bad Lake, Saskatchewan on 10 April 1974, the value of R_n was kept low by the high albedo of the snow (0.65). As the air was always warmer than the melting snow, there was a flow of sensible heat from the air at all times (i.e. H negative). Prior to noon, almost all the net radiation went into snow heat storage, causing melting, which peaked in the afternoon (ΔM maximum). Net radiation accounted for about 68 per cent of the snow melt and convection ($H + LE$) for 31 per cent. Snow melts earlier in the boreal forests than on the tundra, and as the albedo of the uncovered spruce forest tends to be lower than that of the tundra, the net radiation of the forest can be significantly greater than for the tundra. Thus, south of the arctic treeline the boreal forest acts as a major heat source.

C VEGETATED SURFACES

From the viewpoint of energy regime and plant canopy microclimate, it is useful to consider short crops and forests separately.

1 Short green crops

Short green crops, up to a metre or so in height, supplied with sufficient water and exposed to similar solar radiation conditions, all have a similar net radiation (R_n) balance. This is largely because of the small range of albedos, 20 to 30 per cent for short green crops compared with 9 to 18 per cent for forests. Canopy structure appears to be the primary reason for this albedo difference. General figures for rates of energy dispersal at noon on a June day in a 20-cm high stand of grass in the higher mid-latitudes are shown in Table 12.1.

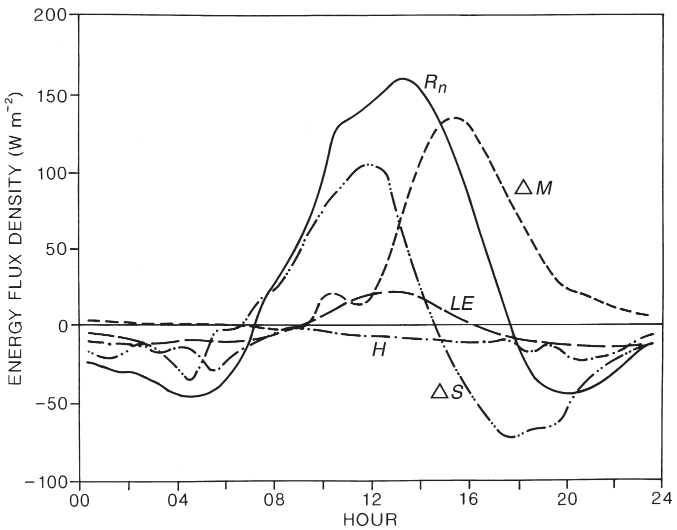


Figure 12.7 Energy balance components for a melting snow cover at Bad Lake, Saskatchewan (51°N) on 10 April 1974.

Source: Granger and Male. Modified by Oke (1987). By permission of Routledge and Methuen & Co, London, and T.R. Oke.

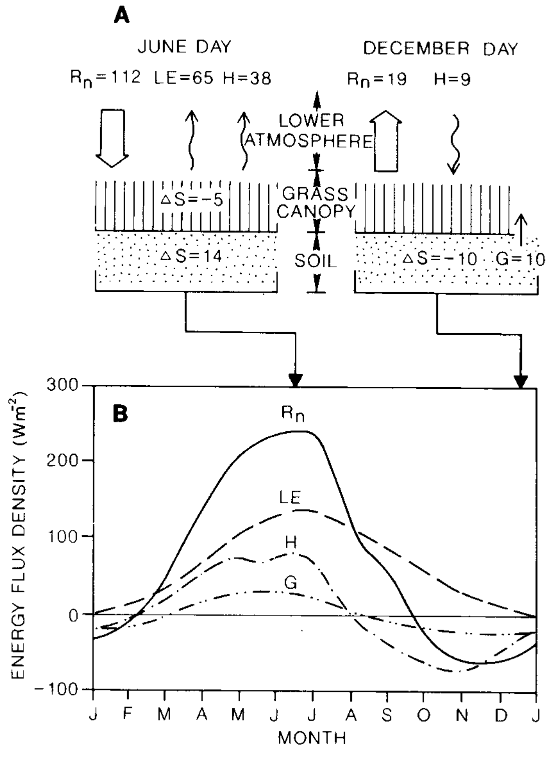


Figure 12.8 Energy fluxes over short grass near Copenhagen (56°N). (A) Totals for a day in June (seventeen hours daylight; maximum solar altitude 58°) and December (seven hours daylight; maximum solar altitude 11°). Units are W m^{-2}. (B) Seasonal curves of net radiation (R_n), latent heat (*LE*), sensible heat (*H*) and ground-heat flux (*G*).

Source: Data from Miller (1965); and after Sellers (1965).

Table 12.1 Rates of energy dispersal (W m^{-2}) at noon in a 20-cm stand of grass (in higher mid-latitudes on a June day).

Net radiation at the top of the crop	550
Physical heat storage in leaves	6
Biochemical heat storage (i.e. growth processes)	22
Received at soil surface	200

Figure 12.8 shows the diurnal and annual energy balances of a field of short grass near Copenhagen (56°N). For an average twenty-four-hour period in June, about 58 per cent of the incoming radiation is used in evapotranspiration. In December the small net outgoing radiation (i.e. R_n negative) is composed of 55 per cent heat supplied by the soil and 45 per cent sensible heat transfer from the air to the grass.

We can generalize the microclimate of short growing crops according to T. R. Oke (see Figure 12.9):

1 *Temperature*. In early afternoon, there is a temperature maximum just below the vegetation crown, where the maximum energy absorption is occurring. The temperature is lower near the soil surface, where heat flows into the soil. At night, the crop cools mainly by long-wave emission and by some continued transpiration, producing a temperature minimum at about two-thirds the height of the crop. Under calm conditions, a temperature inversion may form just above the crop.

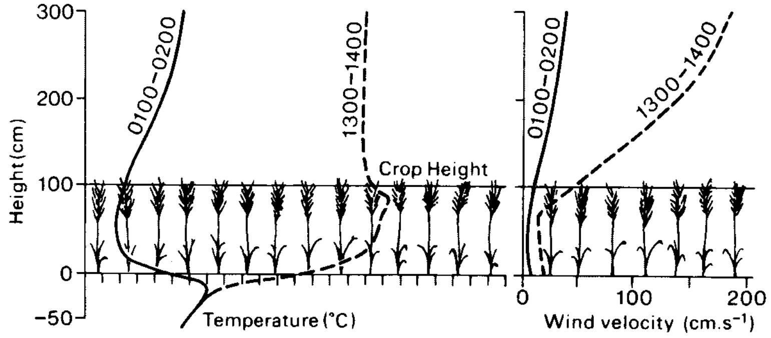


Figure 12.9 Temperature and wind-velocity profiles within and above a metre-high stand of barley at Rothamsted, southern England, on 23 July 1963 at 01:00 to 02:00 hours and 13:00 to 14:00 hours.

Source: After Long *et al*. (1964).

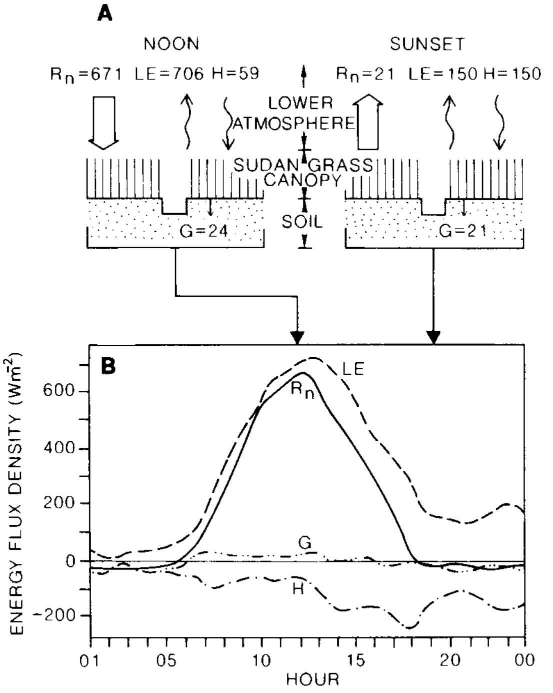


Figure 12.10 Energy flows involved in the energy diurnal balance of irrigated Sudan grass at Tempe, Arizona, on 20 July 1962.

Source: After Sellers (1965).

2 *Wind speed*. This is at a minimum in the upper crop canopy, where the foliage is most dense. There is a slight increase below and a marked increase above.
3 *Water vapour*. The maximum diurnal evapotranspiration rate and supply of water vapour occurs at about two-thirds the crop height, where the canopy is most dense.
4 *Carbon dioxide*. By day, CO_2 is absorbed through photosynthesis of growing plants and at night is emitted by respiration. The maximum sink and source of CO_2 is at about two-thirds the crop height.

Finally, we examine the conditions accompanying the growth of irrigated crops. Figure 12.10 illustrates the energy relationships in a 1-m high stand of irrigated Sudan grass at Tempe, Arizona, on 20 July 1962. The air temperature varied between 25 and 45°C. By day, evapotranspiration in the dry air was near its potential and *LE* (anomalously high due to a local temperature inversion) exceeded R_n, the deficiency being made up by a transfer of sensible heat from the air (*H* negative). Evaporation continued during the night due to a moderate wind (7 m s^{-1}) sustained by the continued heat flow from the air. Thus evapotranspiration leads to comparatively low diurnal temperatures within irrigated desert crops. Where the surface is inundated with water, as in a rice paddy-field, the energy balance components and thus the local climate take on something of the character of water bodies (see B, this chapter). In the afternoon and at night the water becomes the most important heat source and turbulent losses to the atmosphere are mainly in the form of the latent heat.

2 Forests

The vertical structure of a forest, which depends on the species composition, the ecological associations and the age of the stand, largely determines the forest microclimate. The climatic influence of a forest may be explained in terms of the geometry of the forest, including morphological characteristics, size, cover, age and stratification. Morphological characteristics include amount of branching (bifurcation), the periodicity of growth (i.e. evergreen or deciduous), together with the size, density and texture of the leaves. Tree size is obviously important. In temperate forests the sizes may be closely similar, whereas in tropical forests there may be great local variety. Crown coverage determines the physical obstruction presented by the canopy to radiation exchange and airflow.

Different vertical structures in tropical rainforests and temperate forests can have important microclimatic effects. In tropical forests the average height of the taller trees is around 46 to 55 m, with individual trees rising to over 60 m. The dominant height of temperate forest trees is generally up to 30 m. Tropical forests possess a great variety of species, seldom less than forty per hectare (100 hectares = 1 km^2) and sometimes over 100, compared with less than twenty-five (occasionally only one) tree species with a trunk diameter greater than 10 cm in Europe and North America. Some British woodlands have almost continuous canopy stratification, from low shrubs to the tops of 36-m beeches, whereas tropical forests are strongly stratified with dense undergrowth, simple trunks, and commonly two upper strata of foliage. This stratification results in more complex microclimates in tropical forests than temperate ones.

It is convenient to describe the climatic effects of forest stands in terms of their modification of energy transfers, airflow, humidity environment and thermal environment.

a Modification of energy transfers

Forest canopies change the pattern of incoming and outgoing radiation significantly. The short-wave reflectivity of forests depends partly on the characteristics of the trees and their density. Coniferous forests have albedos of about 8 to 14 per cent, while values for deciduous woods range between 12 and 18 per cent, increasing as the canopy becomes more open. Values for semi-arid savanna and scrub woodland are much higher.

Besides reflecting energy, the forest canopy traps energy. Measurements made in summer in a thirty-year old oak stand in the Voronezh district of Russia, indicate that 5.5 per cent of the net radiation at the top of the canopy is stored in the soil and the trees. Dense red beeches (*Fagus sylvatica*) intercept 80 per cent of the incoming radiation at the treetops and less than 5 per cent reaches the forest floor. The greatest trapping occurs in sunny conditions, because when the sky is overcast the diffuse incoming radiation has greater possibility of penetration laterally to the trunk space (Figure 12.11A). Visible light, however, does not give an altogether accurate picture of total energy penetration, because more ultraviolet than infra-red radiation is absorbed into the crowns. As far as light penetration is concerned, there are great variations depending on type of tree, tree spacing, time of year, age, crown density and height. About 50 to 75 per cent of the outside light intensity may penetrate to the floor of a birch–beech forest, 20 to 40 per cent for pine and 10 to 25 per cent for spruce and fir. However, for tropical forests in the Congo the figure may be as low as 0.1 per cent, and 0.01 per cent has been recorded for a dense elm stand in Germany. One of the most important effects of this is to reduce the length of daylight. For deciduous trees, more than 70 per cent of the light may

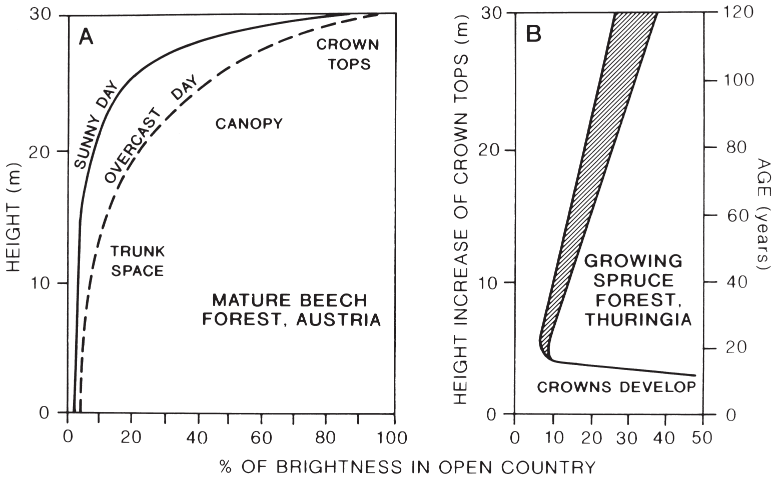


Figure 12.11 The amount of light beneath the forest canopy as a function of cloud cover and crown height. (A) For a thick stand of 120 to 150-year-old red beeches (*Fagus sylvatica*) at an elevation of 1000 m on a 20° southeast-facing slope near Lunz, Austria. (B) For a Thuringian spruce forest in Germany over more than 100 years of growth, during which the crown height increased to almost 30 m.

Source: After Geiger (1965).

penetrate when they are leafless. Tree age is also important in that this controls both crown cover and height. Figure 12.11B shows this rather complicated effect for spruce in the Thuringian Forest, Germany.

b Modification of airflow

Forests impede both the lateral and the vertical movement of air (Figure 12.12A). Air movement within forests is slight compared with that in the open, and quite large variations of outside wind velocity have little effect inside woods. Measurements in European forests show that 30 m of penetration reduces wind velocities to 60 to 80 per cent, 60 m to 50 per cent and 120 m to only 7 per cent. A wind of 2.2 m s^{-1} outside a Brazilian evergreen forest was reduced to 0.5 m s^{-1} at 100 m within it, and was negligible at 1000 m. In the same location, external storm winds of 28 m s^{-1} were reduced to 2 m s^{-1} some 11 km deep in the forest. Where there is a complex vertical structuring of the forest, wind velocities become more complex. Thus in the crowns (23 m) of a Panama rainforest the wind velocity was 75 per cent of that outside, while it was only 20 per cent in the undergrowth (2 m). Other influences include the density of the stand and the season. The effect of season on wind velocities in deciduous forests is shown in Figure 12.12B. In a Tennessee mixed-oak forest, forest wind velocities were 12 per cent of those in the open in January, but only 2 per cent in August.

Knowledge of the effect of forest barriers on winds has been used in the construction of windbreaks to protect crops and soil. Cypress breaks of the southern Rhône valley and Lombardy poplars (*Populus nigra*) of the Netherlands form distinctive features of the landscape. It has been found that the denser the obstruction the greater the shelter immediately behind it, although the downwind extent of its effect is reduced by lee turbulence set up by the barrier. A windbreak of about 40 per cent penetrability (Figure 12.13) gives the maximum protection. An obstruction begins to have an effect about eighteen times its own height upwind, and the downwind effect can be increased by the *back coupling* of more than one belt (see Figure 12.13).

There are some less obvious microclimatic effects of forest barriers. One of the most important is that the reduction of wind speed in forest clearings increases the frost risk on winter nights. Another is the removal of dust and fog droplets from the air by the filtering action of forests. Measurements 1.5 km upwind on the lee side and 1.5 km downwind of a kilometre-wide German forest gave dust counts (particles per litre) of 9000, less than 2000 and more than 4000, respectively. Fog droplets can be filtered from laterally moving air resulting in a higher precipitation catch within a forest than outside. The winter rainfall catch outside a eucalyptus forest near Melbourne, Australia, was 50 cm, whereas inside the forest it was 60 cm.

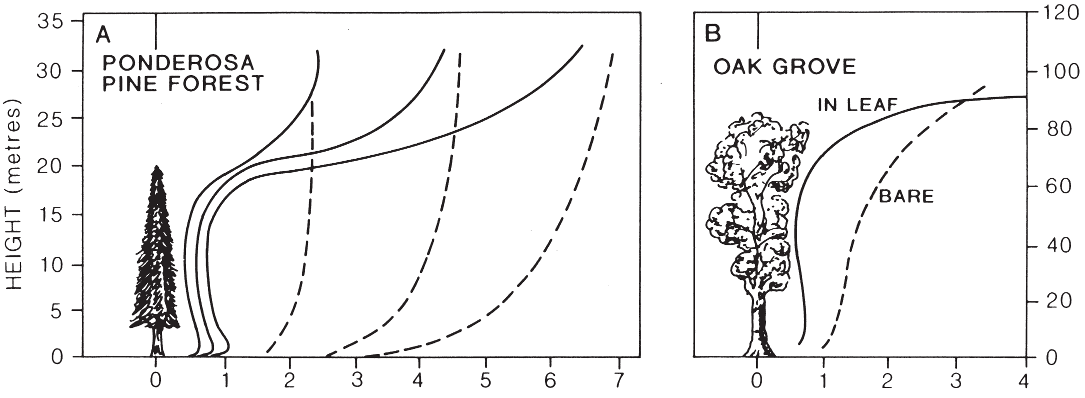


Figure 12.12 Influence on wind-velocity profiles exercised by: (A) a dense stand of 20-m high ponderosa pines (*Pinus ponderosa*) in the Shasta Experimental Forest, California. The dashed lines indicate the corresponding wind profiles over open country for general wind speeds of about 2.3, 4.6 and 7.0 m s^{-1}, respectively. (B) A grove of 25-m high oak trees, both bare and in leaf.

Sources: (A) After Fons, and Kittredge (1948). (B) After Geiger and Amann, and Geiger (1965).

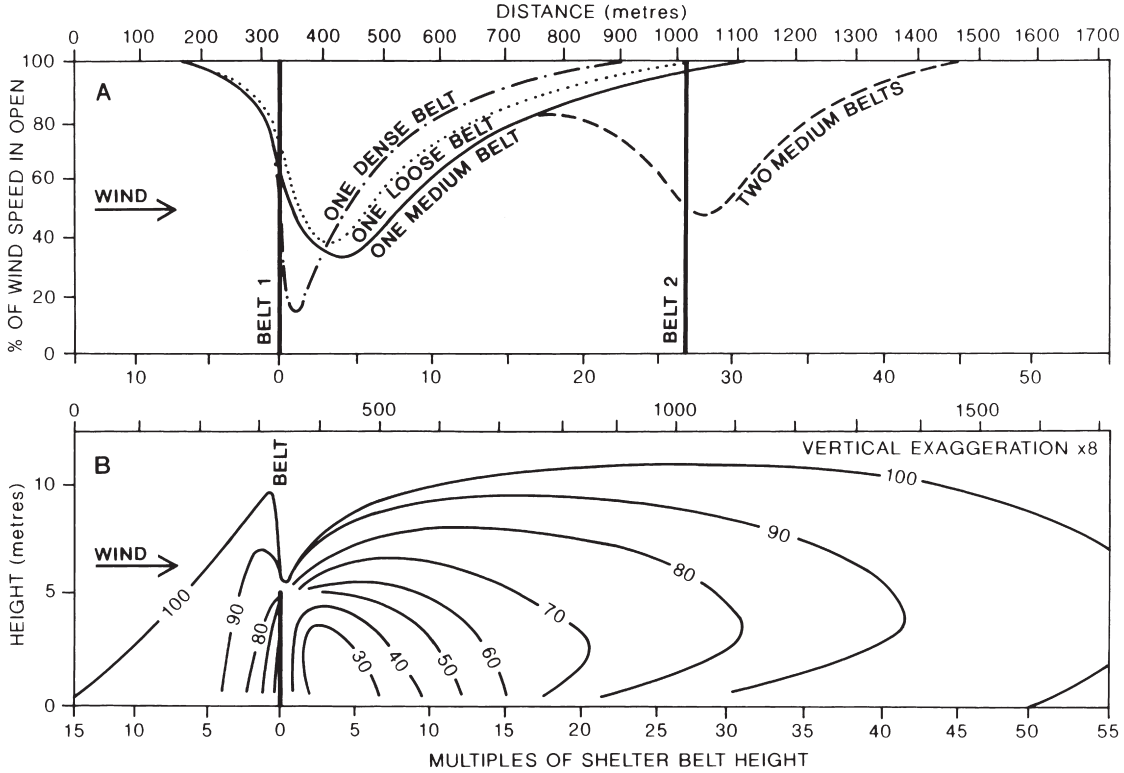


Figure 12.13 The influence of shelter belts on wind-velocity distributions (expressed as percentages of the velocity in the open). (A) The effects of one shelter belt of three different densities, and of two back-coupled medium-dense shelter belts. (B) The detailed effects of one half-solid shelter belt.

Sources: (A) After Nägeli, and Geiger (1965). (B) After Bates and Stoeckeler, and Kittredge (1948).

c Modification of the humidity environment

The humidity conditions within forest stands contrast strikingly with those in the open. Evaporation from the forest floor is usually much less because of the decreased direct sunlight, lower wind velocity, lower maximum temperature, and generally higher forest air humidity. Evaporation from the bare floor of pine forests is 70 per cent of that in the open for Arizona in summer and only 42 per cent for the Mediterranean region.

Unlike many cultivated crops, forest trees exhibit a wide range of physiological resistance to transpiration processes and, hence, the proportions of forest energy flows involved in evapotranspiration (*LE*) and sensible heat exchange (*H*) vary. In the Amazonian tropical broad-leaved forest, estimates suggest that after rain up to 80 per cent of the net solar radiation (R_n) is involved in evapotranspiration (*LE*) (Figure 12.14). Figure 12.15 compares diurnal energy flows during July for a pine forest in eastern England and a fir forest in British Columbia. In the former case, only 0.33 R_n is used for *LE* due to the high resistance of the pines to transpiration, whereas 0.66 R_n is similarly employed in the British Columbia fir forest, especially during the afternoon. Like short green crops, only a very small proportion of R_n is ultimately used for tree growth, an average figure being about 1.3 W m^{-2}, some 60 per cent of which produces wood tissue and 40 per cent forest litter.

During daylight, leaves transpire water through open pores, or *stomata*. This loss is controlled by the length of day, the leaf temperature (modified by evaporational cooling), surface area, the tree species and its age, as well as by the meteorological factors of available radiant energy, atmospheric vapour pressure and wind speed. Total evaporation figures are therefore extremely varied. The evaporation of water intercepted by the

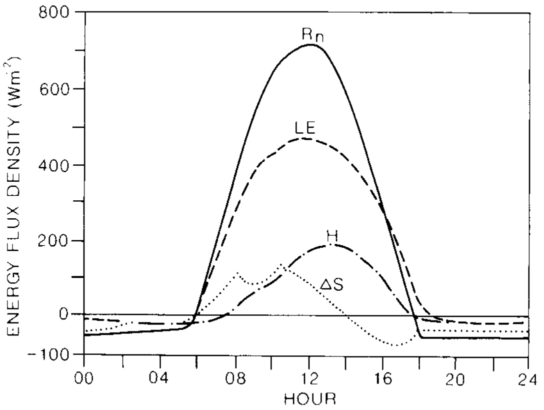


Figure 12.14 A computer simulation of energy flows involved in the diurnal energy balance of a primary tropical broad-leaved forest in the Amazon during a high-sun period on the second dry day following a 22-mm daily rainfall.

Source: After a Biosphere Atmosphere Transfer Scheme (BATS) model from Dickinson and Henderson-Sellers (1988), by permission of the Royal Meteorological Society, redrawn.

vegetation surfaces also enters into the totals, in addition to direct transpiration. Calculations made for a catchment covered with Norway spruce (*Picea abies*) in the Harz Mountains of Germany showed an annual evapotranspiration of 34 cm and additional interception losses of 24 cm.

The humidity of forest stands is linked closely to the amount of evapotranspiration and increases with the density of vegetation present. The increase in forest relative humidity over that outside averages 3 to 10 per cent and is especially marked in summer. Vapour pressures were higher within an oak stand in Tennessee than outside for every month except December. Tropical forests exhibit almost complete night saturation irrespective of elevation in the trunk space, whereas by day humidity is related inversely to elevation. Measurements in Amazonia show that in dry conditions daytime specific humidity in the lower trunk space (1.5 m) is near 20 g kg^{-1}, compared with 18 g kg^{-1} at the top of the canopy (36 m).

Recent research in boreal forests shows that they have low photosynthetic and carbon draw-down rates, and consequently low transpiration rates. Over the year, the uptake of CO_2 by photosynthesis is balanced by its loss through respiration. During the growing season, the evapotranspiration rate of boreal (mainly spruce) forests is surprisingly low (less than 2 mm per day). The low albedo, coupled with low energy use for evapotranspiration, leads to high available energy, high sensible heat fluxes and the development of a deep convective planetary boundary layer. This is particularly marked during spring and early summer due to intense mechanical and convective turbulence. In autumn, in contrast, soil freezing increases its heat capacity, leading to a lag in the climate system. There is less available energy and the boundary layer is shallow.

The influence of forests on precipitation is still unresolved. This is due partly to the difficulties of comparing rain-gauge catches in the open with those in forests, within clearings or beneath trees. In small clearings, low wind speeds cause little turbulence around the opening of the gauge and catches are generally greater than outside the forest. In larger clearings, downdrafts are more prevalent and consequently the precipitation catch increases. In a 25-m high pine and beech forest in Germany, catches in 12-m diameter clearings were 87 per cent of those upwind of the forest, but the catch rose to 105 per cent in clearings of 38 m. An analysis of precipitation records for Letzlinger Heath (Germany) before and after afforestation suggested a mean annual increase of 6 per cent, with the greatest excesses occurring during drier years. It seems that forests have little effect on cyclonic rain, but they may slightly increase orographic precipitation, by lifting and turbulence, of the order of 1 to 3 per cent in temperate regions.

A more important influence of forests on precipitation is through the direct interception of rainfall by the canopy. This varies with crown coverage, season and rainfall intensity. Measurements in German beech forests indicate that, on average, they intercept 43 per cent of precipitation in summer and 23 per cent in winter. Pine forests may intercept up to 94 per cent of low-intensity precipitation but as little as 15 per cent of high intensities, the average for temperate pines being about 30 per cent. In tropical rainforest, about 13 per cent of annual rainfall is intercepted. The intercepted precipitation either evaporates on the canopy, runs down the trunk, or drips to the ground. Assessment of the total precipitation reaching the ground (the through-fall) requires careful measurements of the stem flow and the contribution of drips from the canopy. Canopy interception contributes 15 to 25 per cent of total evaporation in tropical rainforests. It is not a total loss of moisture from the forest, since the solar energy used in the evaporating process is not available to remove soil moisture or transpiration water. However, the vegetation does not derive the benefit of water

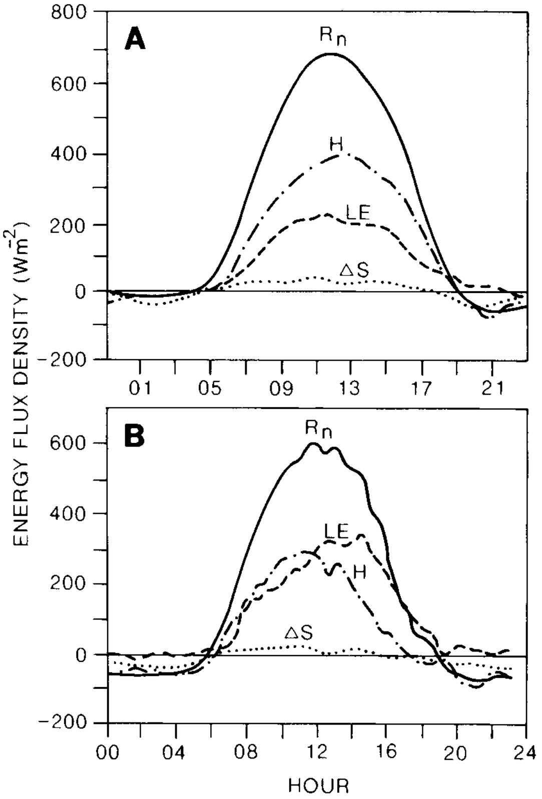


Figure 12.15 Energy components on a July day in two forest stands. (A) Scots and Corsican pine at Thetford, England (52°N), on 7 July 1971. Cloud cover was present during the period 00:00 to 05:00 hours. (B) Douglas fir stand at Haney, British Columbia (49°N), on 10 July 1970. Cloud cover was present during the period 11:00 to 20:00 hours.

Sources: (A) Data from Gay and Stewart (1974), after Oke (1978). (B) Data from McNaughton and Black (1973), after Oke (1978).

cycling through it via the soil. Canopy evaporation depends on net radiation receipts, and the type of species. Some Mediterranean oak forests intercept 35 per cent of rainfall and almost all evaporates from the canopy. Water balance studies indicate that evergreen forests allow 10 to 50 per cent more evapotranspiration than grass in the same climatic conditions. Grass normally reflects 10 to 15 per cent more solar radiation than coniferous tree species and hence less energy is available for evaporation. In addition, trees have a greater surface roughness, which increases turbulent air motion and, therefore, the evaporation efficiency. Evergreens allow transpiration to occur year-round. Nevertheless, research to verify these results and test various hypotheses is needed.

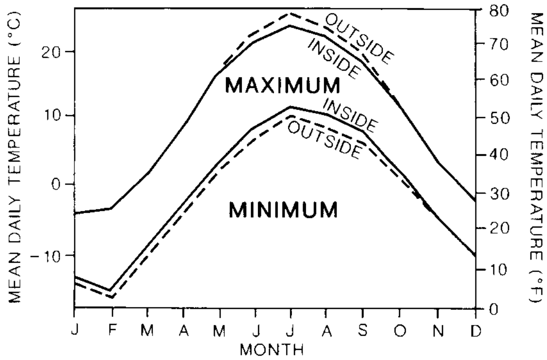


Figure 12.16 Seasonal regimes of mean daily maximum and minimum temperatures inside and outside a birch–beech–maple forest in Michigan.

Source: After US Department of Agriculture *Yearbook* (1941).

d Modification of the thermal environment

Forest vegetation has an important effect on micro-scale temperature conditions. Shelter from the sun, blanketing at night, heat loss by evapotranspiration, reduction of wind speed and the impeding of vertical air movement all influence the temperature environment. The most obvious effect of canopy cover is that, inside the forest, daily maximum temperatures are lower and minima are higher (Figure 12.16). This is particularly apparent during periods of high summer evapotranspiration, which depress daily maximum temperatures and cause mean monthly temperatures in tropical and temperate forests to fall well below that outside. In temperate forests at sea-level, the mean annual temperature may be about 0.6°C lower than that in surrounding open country, the mean monthly differences may reach 2.2°C in summer but not exceed 0.1°C in winter. On hot summer days the difference can be more than 2.8°C. Mean monthly temperatures and diurnal ranges for temperate beech, spruce and pine forests are given in Figure 12.17. This also shows that when trees transpire little in the summer (e.g. the *forteto* oak maquis of the Mediterranean), the high daytime temperatures reached in the sheltered woods may cause the pattern of mean monthly values to be the reverse of temperate forests. Even within individual climatic regions it is difficult to generalize, however. At elevations of 1000 m the lowering of temperate forest mean temperatures below those in the open may be double that at sea-level.

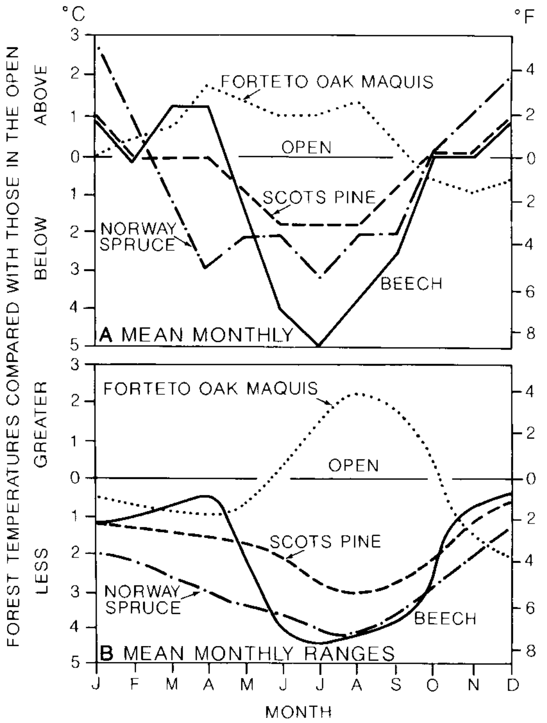


Figure 12.17 Seasonal regimes of (A) mean monthly temperatures and (B) mean monthly temperature ranges, compared with those in the open, for four types of Italian forest. Note the anomalous conditions associated with the *forteto* oak scrub (*maquis*), which transpires little.

Source: Food and Agriculture Organization of the United Nations (1962).

The vertical structure of forest stands gives rise to a complex temperature structure, even in relatively simple stands (Figure 12.18). For example, in a ponderosa pine forest (*Pinus ponderosa*) in Arizona the recorded mean June to July maximum was increased by 0.8°C simply by raising the thermometer from 1.5 to 2.4m above the forest floor. In stratified tropical forests the thermal picture is more complex. The dense canopy heats up considerably during the day and quickly loses its heat at night, showing a much greater diurnal temperature range than the undergrowth (Figure 12.18A). Whereas daily maximum temperatures of the second storey are intermediate between those of the tree-tops and the undergrowth, the nocturnal minima are higher than either tree-tops or undergrowth because the second storey is insulated by trapped air both above and below (Figure 12.18B). During dry conditions in the Amazonian rainforest, there is a similar decoupling of the air in the lower storey from the upper two-thirds of the canopy, as reflected by the reduced amplitude of diurnal temperature range. At night, the pattern is reversed: temperatures respond to radiative cooling in the lowest two-thirds of the vegetation canopy. Temperature variations within a layer up to 25-m height are now decoupled from those in the tree-tops and above.

D URBAN SURFACES

From a total of 6 billion in 2000, world population is projected to increase to 8.2 billion in 2025, with the proportion of urban dwellers rising from 40 to 60 per cent during the same period. Thus in this century the majority of the human race will live and work in association with urban climatic influences (see Box 12.1). The construction of every house, road or factory destroys existing microclimates and creates new ones of great complexity that depend on the design, density and function of the building. Despite the internal variation of urban climatic influences, it is possible to treat the effects of urban structures in terms of:

1 modification of atmospheric composition;
2 modification of the heat budget;
3 other effects of modifications of surface roughness and composition.

1 Modification of atmospheric composition

Urban pollution modifies the thermal properties of the atmosphere, cuts down the passage of sunlight, and provides abundant condensation nuclei. The modern urban atmosphere comprises a complex mixture of gases including ozone, sulphur dioxide, nitrogen oxides, and particulates such as mineral dust, carbon and complex hydrocarbons. First, we examine its sources under two main headings:

1 *Aerosols*. Suspended particulate matter (measured in mg m^{-3} or µg m^{-3}) consists chiefly of carbon, lead and aluminium compounds, and silica.
2 *Gases*. The production of gases (expressed in parts per million (ppm) or billion (ppb), respectively) may be viewed in terms of industrial and domestic coal burning releasing such gases as sulphur dioxide (SO_2), or from the standpoint of gasoline and oil

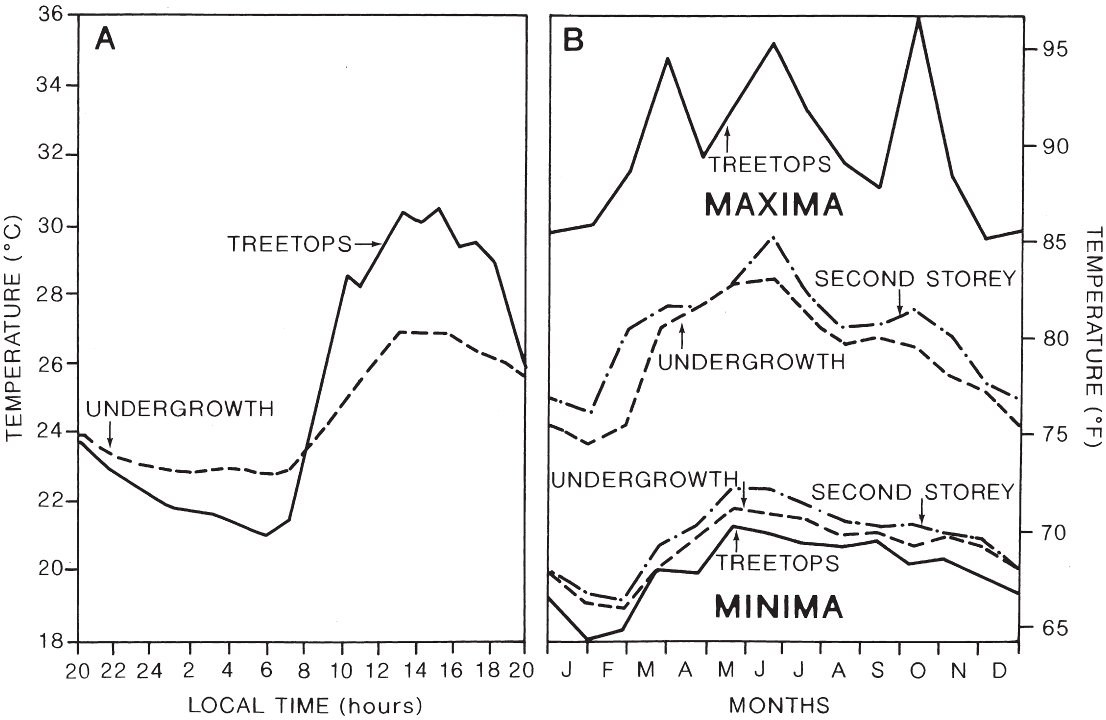


Figure 12.18 The effect of tropical rainforest stratification on temperature.* (A) Daily march of temperature (10 to 11 May 1936) in the tree-tops (24 m) and in the undergrowth (0.7 m) during the wet season in primary rainforest at Shasha Reserve, Nigeria. (B) Average weekly maximum and minimum temperatures in three layers of primary (Dipterocarp) forest, Mount Maquiling, Philippine Islands.

Sources: *After Richards (1952); (A) After Evans; (B) After Brown.

combustion producing carbon monoxide (CO), hydrocarbons (Hc), nitrogen oxides (NO_x), ozone (O3) and the like. A three-year survey of thirty-nine urban areas in the United States identified forty-eight hydrocarbon compounds: twenty-five paraffins (60 per cent of the total with a median concentration of 266 ppb carbon), fifteen aromatics (26 per cent of the total, 116 ppb C) and seven biogenic olefins (11 per cent, 47 ppb C). Biogenic hydrocarbons (olefins) emitted by vegetation are highly reactive. They destroy ozone and form aerosols in rural conditions, but cause ozone to form under urban conditions. Pine forests emit monoterpenes, C_{10} H_{18}, and deciduous woodlands isoprene, C_3 H_8; rural concentrations of these hydrocarbons are in the range 0.1 to 1.5 ppb and 0.6 to 2.3 ppb, respectively.

In dealing with atmospheric pollution it must be remembered, first, that the diffusion or concentration of pollutants is a function both of atmospheric stability (especially the presence of inversions) and of the horizontal air motion. In addition, it is generally greater on weekdays than at weekends or on holidays. Second, aerosols are removed from the atmosphere by settling out and by washing out. Third, certain gases are susceptible to complex chains of photochemical changes, which may destroy some gases but produce others.

a Aerosols

As discussed in Chapter 3A.2 and A.4, the global energy budget is affected significantly by the natural production of aerosols that are deflated from deserts, erupted from volcanoes, produced by fires and so on (see Chapter 13D.3). Over the twentieth century the average dust concentration increased, particularly in Eurasia, due only in part to volcanic eruptions. The proportion of atmospheric dust directly or indirectly attributable to human activity has been estimated at 30 per cent (see Chapter 2A.4). As an example of the latter, the North

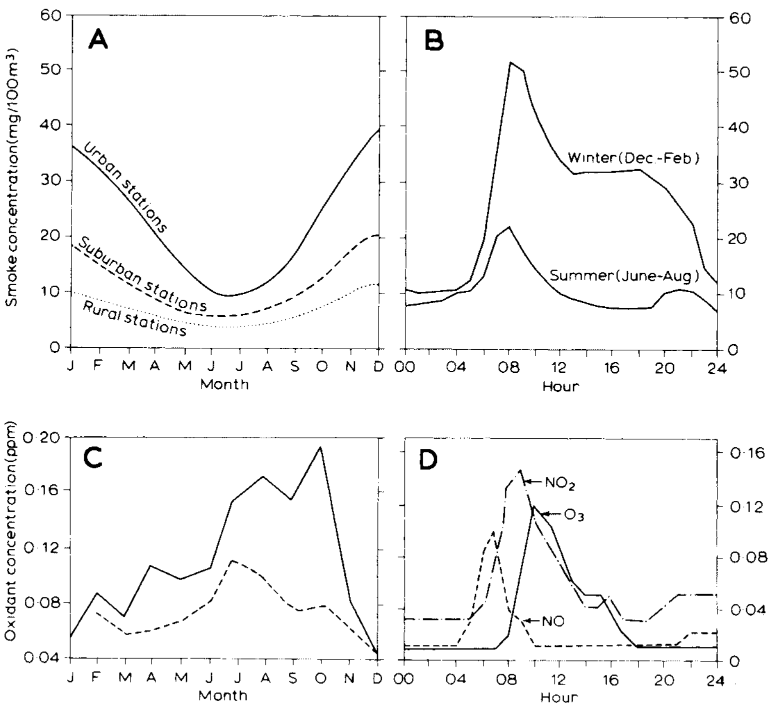


Figure 12.19 Annual and daily pollution cycles. (A) Annual cycle of smoke pollution in and around Leicester, England, during the period 1937 to 1939, before smoke abatement legislation was introduced. (B) Diurnal cycle of smoke pollution in Leicester during summer and winter, 1937 to 1939. (C) Annual cycle of mean daily maximum one-hour average oxidant concentrations for Los Angeles (1964 to 1965) and Denver (1965) (dashed). (D) Diurnal cycles of nitric oxide (NO), nitrogen dioxide (NO_2) and ozone (O_3) concentrations in Los Angeles on 19 July 1965.

Sources: (A), (B) After Meethan *et al.* (1980), (C), (D) After US DHEW (1970) and Oke (1978).

URBAN CLIMATES

box 12.1

significant 20th-c. advance

There was recognition of the role of cities in modifying local climate during the 1920s and 1930s. In his classic book *Climate near the Ground* Rudolf Geiger drew attention to many such findings. However, dedicated urban climate studies began in the 1950s. To supplement data from the few existing city weather stations, T. J. Chandler examined urban–rural temperature differences around London, England, at different times of the day and year by making traverses in an instrumented vehicle. By repeating the journey in the opposite direction, and averaging the results, the effect of time changes was essentially eliminated. Chandler wrote a classic book on the climate of London. Similar methods were adopted elsewhere and the vertical structure of the urban atmosphere was also investigated by mounting instruments on tall buildings and towers. Helmut Landsberg in the United States focused on European and North American cities with long historical records while Tim Oke in Canada conducted observational and modelling studies of urban energy budgets and radiative and turbulent transfers in urban 'canyons'.

The number of modern cities with populations in excess of ten million inhabitants was at least twenty in 2000, with many of these in the tropics and subtropics, but our present knowledge of urban effects in these climatic zones is limited.

Reference

Geiger, R., Aron, R. H. and Todhunter, P. (2003) *The Climate Near the Ground*, 6th edn. Rowman & Littlefield, Lanham, MD, 584pp.

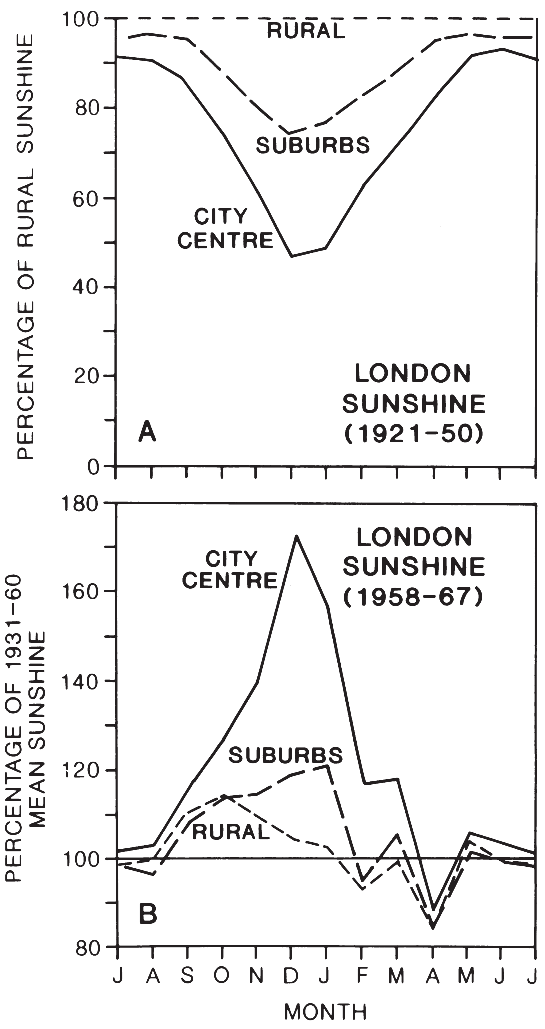


Figure 12.20 Sunshine in and around London. (A) Mean monthly bright sunshine recorded in the city and suburbs for the years 1921 to 1950, expressed as a percentage of that in adjacent rural areas. This shows clearly the effects of winter atmospheric pollution in the city. (B) Mean monthly bright sunshine recorded in the city, suburbs and surrounding rural areas during the period 1958 to 1967, expressed as a percentage of the averages for the period 1931 to 1960. This shows the effect of the 1956 Clean Air Act in increasing the receipt of winter sunshine, in particular in central London.

Sources: (A) After Chandler (1965); (B) After Jenkins (1969), reprinted from *Weather*, by permission of the Royal Meteorological Society. Crown copyright ©.

African tank battles of the Second World War disturbed the desert surface to such an extent that the material subsequently deflated was visible in clouds over the Caribbean. Soot aerosols generated by the Indonesian forest fires of 1999 September 1997 and March 2000 were transported across the region.

The background concentration of fine particles (PM_{10}, radius <10 μm) currently averages 20 to 30 μg m^{-3} in the British countryside but daily average values regularly exceed 50 μg m^{-3}, and occasionally exceed 100 μg m^{-3} in industrial cities near ground level. The greatest concentrations of smoke generally occur with low wind speed, low vertical turbulence, temperature inversions, high relative humidity and air moving from the pollution sources of factory districts or areas of high-density housing. The temporal character of domestic heating and power demands causes city smoke pollution to take on striking seasonal and diurnal cycles, with the greatest concentrations occurring at about 08:00 hours in early winter (Figure 12.19). The sudden morning increase is also partly a result of natural processes. Pollution trapped during the night beneath a stable layer a few hundred metres above the surface may be brought back to ground level (a process termed *fumigation*) when thermal convection sets off vertical mixing.

The most direct effect of particulate pollution is to reduce visibility, incoming radiation and sunshine. In Los Angeles, aerosol carbon accounts for 40 per cent of the total fine particle mass and is the major cause of severe visibility decreases, yet it is not routinely monitored. Half of this total is from vehicle exhausts and the remainder from industrial and other stationary fuel burning. Pollution, and the associated fogs (termed *smog*), used to cause some British cities to lose 25 to 55 per cent of incoming solar radiation during the period November to March. In 1945, it was estimated that the city of Leicester, England, lost 30 per cent of incoming radiation in winter, as against 6 per cent in summer. These losses are naturally greatest when the sun's rays strike the smog layer at a low angle. Compared with the radiation received in the surrounding countryside, Vienna lost 15 to 21 per cent of radiation when the sun's altitude is 30°, but the loss rises to 29 to 36 per cent with an altitude of 10°. The effect of smoke pollution is dramatically illustrated in Figure 12.20, which compares conditions in London before and after enforcement of the UK Clean Air Act of 1956. Before 1950, there was a striking difference of sunshine between the surrounding rural areas and the city centre (see Figure 12.20A), which could mean a loss of mean daily sunshine of sixteen minutes in the outer suburbs, twenty-five minutes in the inner suburbs and forty-four minutes in the city centre. It must be remembered, however, that smog layers also impeded the re-radiation of surface heat at night and that this blanketing effect contributed to higher night-time city temperatures. Occasionally, very stable atmospheric conditions combine with excessive pollution production to give dense smog of a lethal character. During the period 5 to 9 December 1952, a temperature inversion over London caused a dense fog with visibility of less than 10 m for forty-eight consecutive hours. There were 12,000 more deaths (mainly from chest complaints) during December 1952 to February 1953 compared with the same period the previous year. The close association of the incidence of fog with increasing industrialization and urbanization was evident in Prague, where the mean annual number of days with fog rose from seventy-nine during 1860 to 1880 to 217 during 1900 to 1920.

The use of smokeless fuels and other controls cut London's total smoke emission from 1.4 × 10^8 kg (141,000 tons) in 1952 to 0.9 × 10^8 kg (89,000 tons) in 1960. Figure 12.20B shows the increase in average monthly sunshine figures for 1958 to 1967 compared with those of 1931 to 1960. Since the early 1960s annual average concentrations of smoke and sulphur dioxide in the UK have fallen from 160 ppm and 60 ppm, respectively, to below 20 ppm and 10 ppm in the 1990s.

Visibility in the UK improved at many measuring sites during the late twentieth century. In the 1950s and 1960s, days with visibility at midday in the lowest 10th percentile were in the 4 to 5 km range, whereas in the 1990s this had improved to 6 to 9 km. Annual average 12 UTC visibility at Manchester airport was 10 km in 1950, but near 30 km in 1997. The improvements are attributed to improved vehicle fuel efficiency and catalytic converter installation in the 1970s.

b Gases

As well as particulate pollution produced by urban and industrial activities involving coal and coke combustion, there is the associated generation of pollutant gases. Before the Clean Air Act in the UK, it was estimated that domestic fires produced 80 to 90 per cent of London's smoke. However, these were responsible for only 30 per cent of the sulphur dioxide released into the atmosphere – the remainder being contributed by electricity power-stations (41 per cent) and factories (29 per cent). After the early 1960s, improved technology, the phasing out of coal fires and anti-pollution regulations brought about a striking decline in sulphur dioxide pollution in many European and North American cities (Figure 12.21). Nevertheless, the effect of the regulations was not always clear. The decrease in London's atmospheric pollution was not apparent until eight years after the introduction of the 1956 Clean Air Act, whereas in New York City the observed decrease began in the same year (1964) – *prior* to the air pollution control regulations there.

Urban complexes in many parts of the world are significantly affected by pollution resulting from the combustion of gasoline and diesel fuel by vehicles and aircraft, as well as from petrochemical industries. Los Angeles, lying in a topographically constricted basin and often subject to temperature inversions, is the prime example of such pollution, although this affects all modern cities. Even with controls, 7 per cent of the gasoline from private cars is emitted in an unburned or poorly oxidized form, another 3.5 per cent as photochemical smog and 33 to 40 per cent as carbon monoxide. Smog involves at least four main components: carbon soot, particulate organic matter (POM), sulphate (SO_4^{2-}) and peracyl nitrates (Pans). Half of the

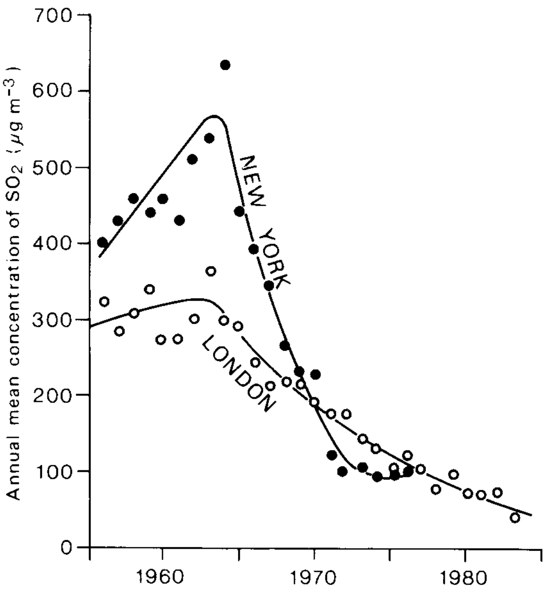


Figure 12.21 Annual mean concentration of sulphur dioxide (mg m^{-3}) measured in New York and London during a twenty-five- to thirty-year period. These show dramatic decreases of urban pollution by SO_2.

Source: From Brimblecombe (1986).

aerosol mass is typically POM and sulphate. However, there are important regional differences. For example, the sulphur content of fuels used in California is lower than in the eastern United States and Europe, and NO_2 emissions greatly exceed those of SO_2 in California. The production of the Los Angeles smog, which, unlike traditional city smogs, occurs characteristically during the daytime in summer and autumn, is the result of a very complex chain of chemical reactions termed *the disrupted photolytic cycle* (Figure 12.22). Ultraviolet radiation dissociates natural NO_2 into NO and O. Monatomic oxygen (O) may then combine with natural oxygen (O_2) to produce ozone (O_3). The ozone in turn reacts with the artificial NO to produce NO_2 (which goes back into the photochemical cycle forming a dangerous positive feedback loop) and oxygen. The hydrocarbons produced by the combustion of petrol combine with oxygen atoms to produce the hydrocarbon free radical HcO*, and these react with the products of the O_3–NO reaction to generate oxygen and photochemical smog. This smog exhibits well-developed annual and diurnal cycles in the Los Angeles basin (see Figures 12.19C and D). Annual levels of photochemical smog pollution in Los Angeles (from averages of the daily highest hourly figures) are greatest in late summer and autumn, when clear skies, light winds and temperature inversions combine with high amounts of solar radiation. The diurnal variations in individual components of the disrupted photolytic cycle indicate complex reactions. For example, an early morning concentration of NO_2 occurs due to the buildup of traffic and there is a peak of O_3 when incoming radiation receipts are high. The effect of smog is not only to modify the radiation budget of cities but also to produce a human health hazard.

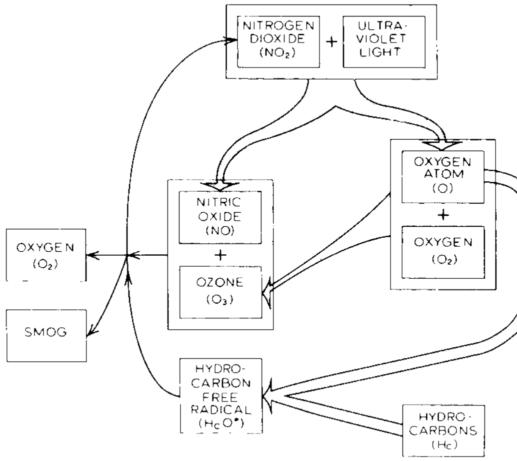


Figure 12.22 The NO_2 photolytic cycle disrupted by hydrocarbons to produce photochemical smog.

Sources: US DHEW (1970) and Oke (1978).

Evolving state and city regulations in the United States have given rise to considerable differences in the type and intensity of urban pollution. For example, Denver, Colorado, situated in a basin at 1500-m altitude, regularly had a winter ‘brown cloud’ of smog and high summer ozone levels in the 1970s and 1980s. By the beginning of this century, substantial improvements had been achieved through the mandatory use of gasoline additives in winter, restrictions on wood burning, and scrubbers installed on power plants.

c Pollution distribution and impacts

Polluted atmospheres often display well-marked physical features around urban areas that are very dependent upon environmental lapse rates, particularly the presence of temperature inversions, and on wind speed. A pollution dome develops as pollution accumulates under an inversion that forms the urban boundary layer (Figure 12.23A). A wind speed as low as 2 m s^{-1} is sufficient to displace the Cincinnati pollution dome downwind, and a wind speed of 3.5 m s^{-1} will disperse it into a plume. Figure 12.23B shows a section of an urban plume with the volume above the urban canopy of the building tops filled by buoyant mixing circulations. When an inversion lid prevents upward dispersion, but lapse conditions due to morning heating of the surface air allow convective plumes and associated downdrafts to bring pollution back to the surface, this process is termed *fumigation*. Downwind, *lofting* occurs above the temperature inversion at the top of the rural boundary layer, dispersing the pollution upwards. Figure 12.23C illustrates some features of a pollution plume up to 160 km downwind of St Louis on 18 July 1975. In view of the complexity of photochemical reactions, it is of note that ozone increases downwind due to photochemical reactions within the plume, but decreases over power plants as the result of other reactions with the emissions. This plume was observed to stretch for a total distance of 240 km, but under conditions of an intense pollution source, steady large-scale surface airflow and vertical atmospheric stability, pollution plumes may extend downwind for hundreds of kilometres. Plumes originating in the Chicago–Gary conurbation have been

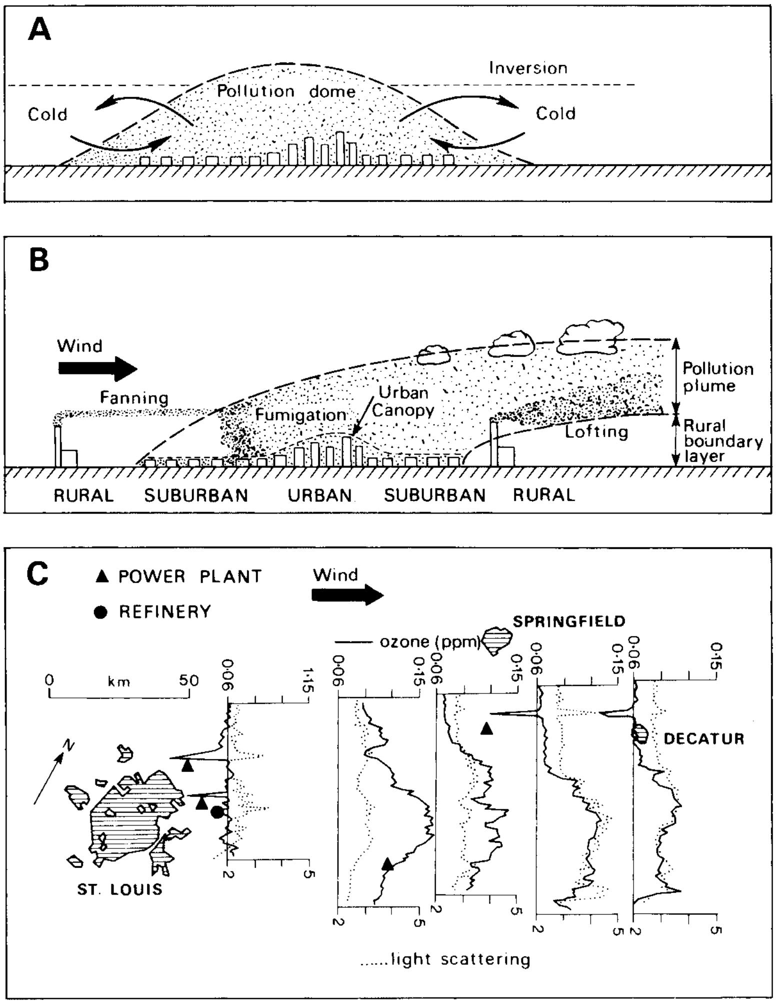

A
Inversion
Pollution dome
Cold
Cold
B
Wind
Pollution plume
Fanning
Urban Canopy
Fumigation
Lofting
Rural boundary layer
RURAL
SUBURBAN
URBAN
SUBURBAN
RURAL
C
▲ POWER PLANT
● REFINERY
Wind
SPRINGFIELD
—— ozone (ppm)
0 km 50
N
ST. LOUIS
DECATUR
0·06
1·15
0·15
2
5
......light scattering

Figure 12.23 Configurations of urban pollution. (A) Urban pollution dome. (B) Urban pollution plume in a stable situation (i.e. early morning following a clear night). Fanning is indicative of vertical atmospheric stability. (C) Pollution plume northeast of St Louis, Missouri, on 18 July 1975.

Sources: (B) After Oke (1978); (C) After White *et al*. (1976) and Oke (1978).

observed from high-flying aircraft to extend almost to Washington, DC, 950 km away.

The impacts of air pollution include: direct meteorological effects (on radiative transfer, sunshine, visibility, fog and cloud development), greenhouse gas production (by release of CO_2, CH_4, NO_x , CFCs and HFCs), photochemical effects (tropospheric ozone formation), acidification (processes involving SO_2 , NO_x and NH_3), and societal nuisance (dust, odour, smog) affecting health and the quality of life especially in urban areas.

2 Modification of the heat budget

The energy balance of the built surface is similar to soil surfaces described above, except for the heat production resulting from energy consumption by combustion, which in some cities may even exceed R_n during the winter. Although R_n may not be greatly different from that in nearby rural areas (except during times of significant pollution) heat storage by surfaces is greater (20 to 30 per cent of R_n by day), leading to greater nocturnal values of H; LE is much less in city centres. After long, dry periods, evapotranspiration may be zero in city centres, except for certain industrial operations, and in the case of irrigated parks and gardens, where LE may exceed R_n. This lack of LE means that by day 70 to 80 per cent of R_n may be transferred to the atmosphere as sensible heat (H). Beneath the urban canopy, the effects of elevation and aspect on the energy balance, which may vary strikingly even within one street, determine the microclimates of the streets and 'urban canyons'.

The complex nature of the urban modification of the heat budget is demonstrated by observations made in and around the city of Vancouver, Canada. Figure 12.24 compares the summer diurnal energy balances for rural and suburban locations. Rural areas show considerable consumption of net radiation (R_n) by evapotranspiration (LE) during the day, giving lower temperatures than in the suburbs. While the suburban gain of net radiation is greater by day, the loss is greater during the evening and night due to release of turbulent sensible heat from the suburban fabric (i.e. ΔS negative). The diurnal energy balance for the dry top of an urban canyon is symmetrical about midday (Figure 12.25C), and two-thirds of the net radiation is transferred into atmospheric sensible heat and one-third into heat storage in the building material (ΔS). Figure 12.25A–B explains this energy balance symmetry in terms of the behaviour of its components (i.e. canyon floor and east-facing wall); these make up a white, windowless urban canyon in early September aligned north–south and with a canyon height equal to its width. The east-facing wall receives the first radiation in the early morning, reaching a maximum at 10:00 hours, but being totally in shadow after 12:00 hours. Total R_n is low because the east-facing wall is often in shadow. The street level (i.e. canyon floor) is sunlit only in the middle of the day and R_n and H dispositions are symmetrical. The third component of the urban canyon total energy balance is the west-facing wall, which is a mirror image (centred on noon) of that of the east-facing wall. Consequently, the symmetry of the street-level energy balance and the mirror images of the east- and west-facing walls produce the symmetrical diurnal energy balance of R_n, H and ΔS observed at the canyon top.

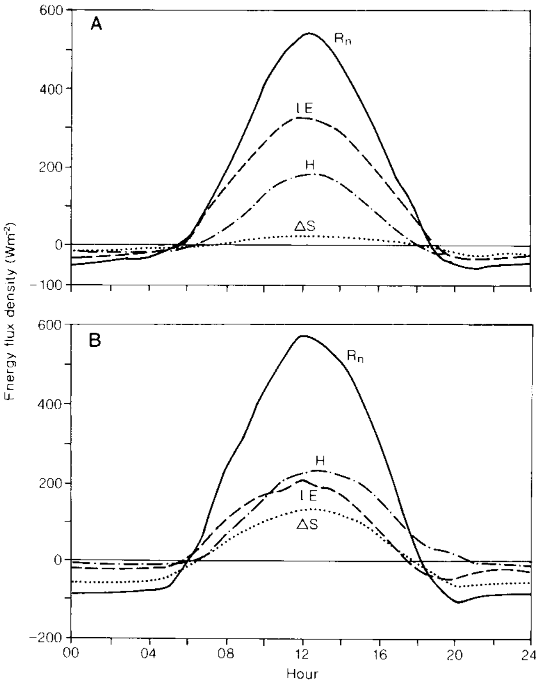


Figure 12.24 Average diurnal energy balances for (A) rural and (B) suburban locations in Greater Vancouver for thirty summer days.

Source: After Clough and Oke, from Oke (1988).

The thermal characteristics of urban areas contrast strongly with those of the surrounding countryside; the generally higher urban temperatures are the result of the interaction of the following factors:

1. Changes in the radiation balance due to atmospheric composition.
2. Changes in the radiation balance due to the albedo and thermal capacity of urban surface materials, and to canyon geometry.
3. The production of heat by buildings, traffic and industry.
4. The reduction of heat diffusion due to changes in airflow patterns caused by urban surface roughness.
5. The reduction in thermal energy required for evaporation and transpiration due to the surface character, rapid drainage and generally lower wind speeds of urban areas.

Consideration of factors 4 and 5 will be left to D.3 (this chapter).

a Atmospheric composition

Air pollution makes the *transmissivity* of urban atmospheres significantly lower than that of nearby rural areas. During the period 1960 to 1969, the atmospheric transmissivity over Detroit averaged 9 per cent less than that for nearby areas, and reached 25 per cent less under calm conditions. The increased absorption of solar radiation by aerosols plays a role in daytime heating of the boundary layer pollution dome (see Figure 12.23A) but is less important within the urban canopy layer, which extends to mean rooftop height (see Figure 12.23B). Table 12.2 compares urban and rural energy budgets for the Cincinnati region during summer 1968

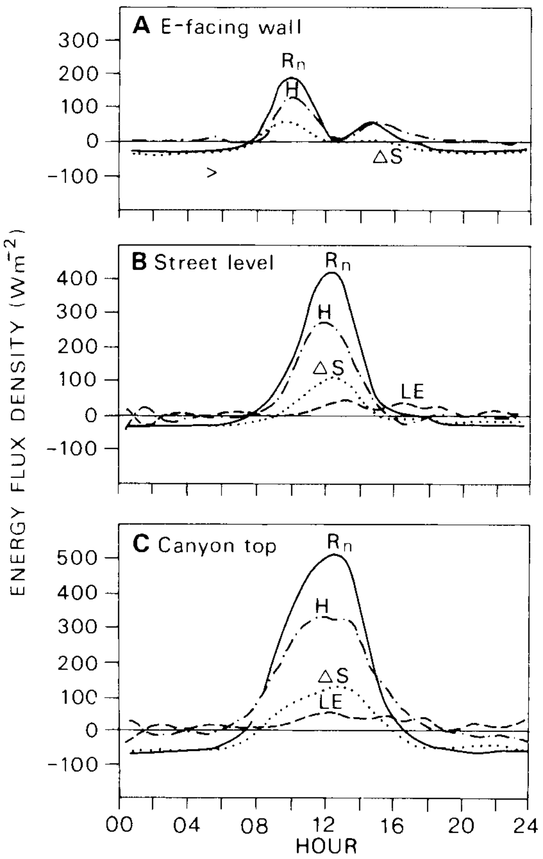


Figure 12.25 Diurnal variation of energy balance components for a N–S-oriented urban canyon in Vancouver, British Columbia, having white concrete walls, no windows, and a width/height ratio of 1:1, during the period 9 to 11 September 1973. (A) The average for the E-facing wall. (B) The average for the floor. (C) Averages of fluxes through the canyon top.

Source: After Nunez and Oke, from Oke (1978).

under anticyclonic conditions with $< 3/10$ cloud and a wind speed of <2 m s^{-1}. The data show that pollution reduces the incoming short-wave radiation, but a lower albedo and the greater surface area within urban canyons counterbalance this. The increased urban L_n at 12:00 and 20:00 LST is largely offset by anthropogenic heating (see below).

b Urban surfaces

Primary controls over a city's thermal climate are the character and density of urban surfaces; that is, the total *surface* area of buildings and roads, as well as the building geometry. Table 12.2 shows the relatively high heat absorption of the city surface. A problem of measurement is that the stronger the urban thermal influence, the weaker the heat absorption *at street level*, and, consequently, observations made only in streets may lead to erroneous results. The geometry of urban canyons is particularly important. It involves an increase in effective surface area and the trapping by multiple reflection of short-wave radiation, as well as a reduced 'sky view' (proportional to the areas of the hemisphere open to the sky), which decreases the loss of infra-red radiation. From analyses by T. R. Oke, there appears to be an inverse linear relationship on calm, clear summer nights between the sky view factor (0 to 1.0) and the maximum urban–rural temperature difference. The difference is 10 to 12°C for a sky view factor of 0.3, but only 3°C for a sky view factor of 0.8 to 0.9.

c Human heat production

Numerous studies show that urban conurbations now produce energy through combustion at rates comparable with incoming solar radiation in winter. Solar radiation in winter averages around 25 W m^{-2} in Europe, compared with similar heat production from large cities. Figure 12.26 illustrates the magnitude and spatial scale of artificial and natural energy fluxes and projected increases. In Cincinnati, a significant proportion of the energy budget is generated by human activity, even in summer (see Table 12.2). This averages 26 W m^{-2} or more, two-thirds of which was produced by industrial, commercial and domestic sources and one-third by cars. In the extreme situation of Arctic settlements during polar darkness, the energy balance during calm conditions depends only on net long-wave radiation and heat production by anthropogenic activities. In Reykjavik, Iceland (population 100,000) the anthropogenic heat release is 35 W m-^{2} mainly as a result of geothermal pavement heating and hot water pipelines.

d Heat islands

The net effect of urban thermal processes is to make city temperatures in mid-latitudes generally higher than in the surrounding rural areas. This is most pronounced after sunset during calm, clear weather, when cooling rates in the rural areas greatly exceed those in the urban areas. The energy balance differences that cause this effect depend on the radiation geometry and thermal

Table 12.2 Energy budget figures (W m^{-2}) for the Cincinnati region during the summer of 1968.

Area	*Central business district*			*Surrounding country*		
Time	*0800*	*1300*	*2000*	*0800*	*1300*	*2000*
Short-wave, incoming ($Q + q$)	288*	763	–	306	813	–
Short-wave, reflected [($Q + q$)a]	42†	120†	–	80	159	–
Net long-wave radiation (L_n)	–61	–100	–98	–61	–67	–67
Net radiation (R_n)	184	543	–98	165	587	–67
Heat produced by human activity	36	29	26‡	0	0	0

Notes: *Pollution peak.
†An urban surface reflects less than agricultural land, and a rough skyscraper complex can absorb up to six times more incoming radiation.
‡Replaces more than 25 per cent of the long-wave radiation loss in the evening.
Source: From Bach and Patterson (1966).

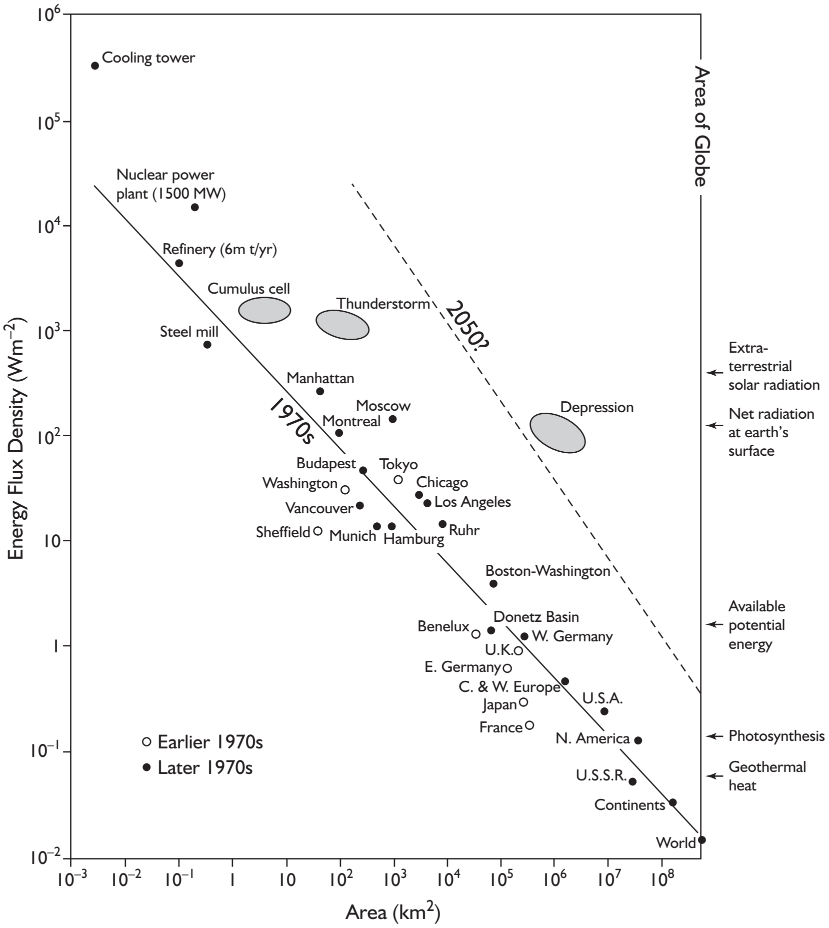


Figure 12.26 A comparison of natural and artificial heat sources in the global climate system on small, meso- and synoptic scales. Generalized regressions are given for artificial heat releases in the 1970s (early 1970s circles, late 1970s dots), together with predictions for 2050.

Sources: Modified after Pankrath (1980) and Bach (1979).

properties of the surface. It is thought that the canyon geometry effect dominates in the urban canopy layer, whereas the sensible heat input from urban surfaces determines the boundary layer heating. By day, the urban boundary layer is heated by increased absorption of short-wave radiation due to the pollution, as well as by sensible heat transferred from below and entrained by turbulence from above.

The *heat island* effect may result in minimum urban temperatures being 5 to 6°C greater than those of the surrounding countryside. These differences may reach 6 to 8°C in the early hours of calm, clear nights in large cities, when the heat stored by urban surfaces during the day (augmented by combustion heating) is released. Because this is a *relative* phenomenon, the heat island effect also depends on the rate of rural cooling, which is influenced by the magnitude of the regional environmental lapse rate.

For the period 1931 to 1960, the centre of London had a mean annual temperature of 11.0°C, compared with 10.3°C for the suburbs, and 9.6°C for the surrounding countryside. Calculations for London in the 1950s indicated that domestic fuel consumption gave rise to a 0.6°C warming in the city in winter and this accounted for one-third to one-half of the average city heat excess compared with adjacent rural areas. Differences are most evident during still air conditions, especially at night under a regional inversion (Figure 12.27). For the heat island effect to operate effectively there must be wind speeds of less than 5 to 6 m s^{-1}. It is especially apparent on calm nights during summer and early autumn, when it has steep cliff-like margins on the upwind edge of the city and the highest temperatures are associated with the highest density of urban dwellings. In the absence of regional winds, a well-developed heat island may generate its own inward local wind circulation at the surface. Thus the thermal contrasts of a city, like many of its climatic features, depend on its topographic situation and are greatest for sheltered sites with light winds. The fact that urban–rural temperature differences are greatest for London in summer, when direct heat combustion and atmospheric pollution are at a minimum, indicates that heat loss from buildings by radiation is the most important single factor contributing to the heat island effect. Seasonal differences are not necessarily the same, however, in other macroclimatic zones.

The effects on minimum temperatures are especially marked. For central Moscow, winter extremes below –28°C occurred only eleven times during 1950 to 1989 compared with twenty-three cases at Nemchinovka west of the city. Cologne, Germany, has an average of 34 per cent fewer days with minima below 0°C than its surrounding area. In London, Kew has an average of seventy-two more days with frost-free screen temperatures than rural Wisley. Precipitation characteristics are also affected; incidences of rural snowfall are often associated with either sleet or rain in the city centre.

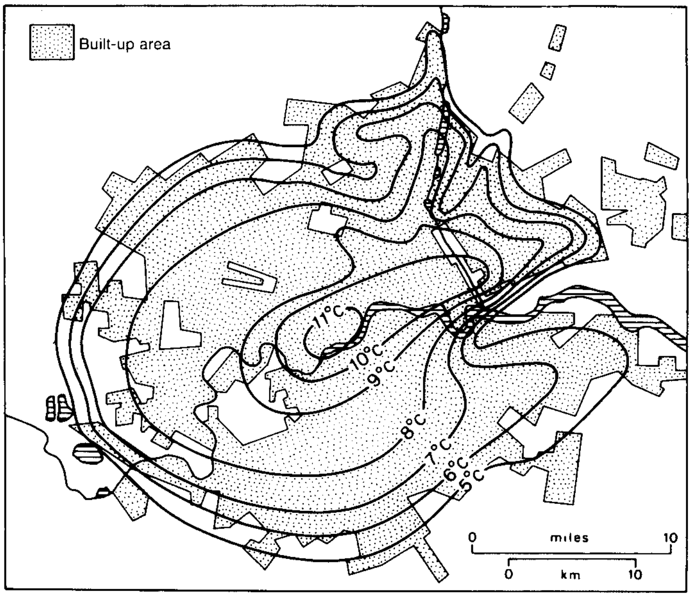


Figure 12.27 Distribution of minimum temperatures (°C) in London on 14 May 1959, showing the relationship between the 'urban heat island' and the built-up area.

Source: After Chandler (1965).

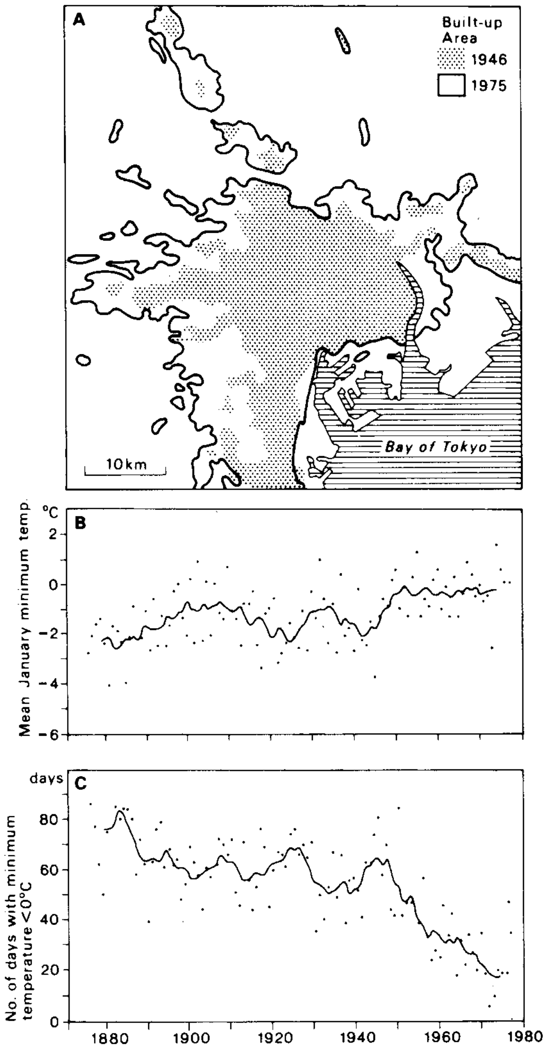


Figure 12.28 The built-up area of Tokyo in 1946 (A), the mean January minimum temperature (B), and number of days with subzero temperatures (C) between 1880 and 1975. During the Second World War, the population of the city fell from 10.36 million to 3.49 million and then increased to 10.4 million in 1953 and to 11.7 million in 1975.

Source: After Maejima *et al*. (1982).

Although it is difficult to isolate changes in temperatures that are due to urban effects from those due to other climatic factors (see Chapter 13), it has been suggested that city growth is often accompanied by an increase in mean annual temperature. At Osaka, Japan, temperatures have risen by 2.6°C in the past 100 years. Under calm conditions, the maximum difference in urban–rural temperatures is related statistically to population size, being nearly linear with the logarithm of the population. In North America, the maximum urban–rural temperature difference reaches 2.5°C for towns of 1000, 8°C for cities of 100,000 and 12°C for cities of one million people. European cities show a smaller temperature difference for equivalent populations, perhaps as a result of the generally lower building height.

A convincing example of the relationship between urban growth and climate is for Tokyo, which expanded greatly after 1880 and particularly after 1946 (Figure 12.28A) The population increased to 10.4 million in 1953 and to 11.7 million in 1975. During the period 1880 to 1975, there was a significant increase in mean January minimum temperatures and a decrease in the number of days with minimum temperatures below 0°C (Figures 12.28B and C). Although the graphs suggest a reversal of these trends during the Second World War (1942 to 1945), when evacuation almost halved Tokyo's population, it is clear that the basis of correlations of urban climate with population is complex. Urban density, industrial activity and the production of anthropogenic heat are all involved. Leicester, England, for example, when it had a population of 270,000, exhibited warming comparable in intensity with that of central London over smaller sectors. This suggests that the thermal influence of city size is not as important as that of urban density. The vertical extent of the heat island is little known, but is thought to exceed 100 to 300 m, especially early in the night. In the case of cities with skyscrapers, the vertical and horizontal patterns of wind and temperature are very complex (see Figure 12.29).

In some high-latitude cities there is a reverse 'cold island' effect of 1 to 3°C in summer. Low solar elevation angle causes shading of urban streets, in contrast to locations outside the built-up area.

3 Modification of surface characteristics

a Airflow

On average, city wind speeds are lower than those recorded in the surrounding open country owing to the sheltering effect of the buildings. Average city-centre wind speeds are usually at least 5 per cent less than those of the suburbs. However, the urban effect on air motion varies greatly depending on the time of day and the season. During the day, city wind speeds are

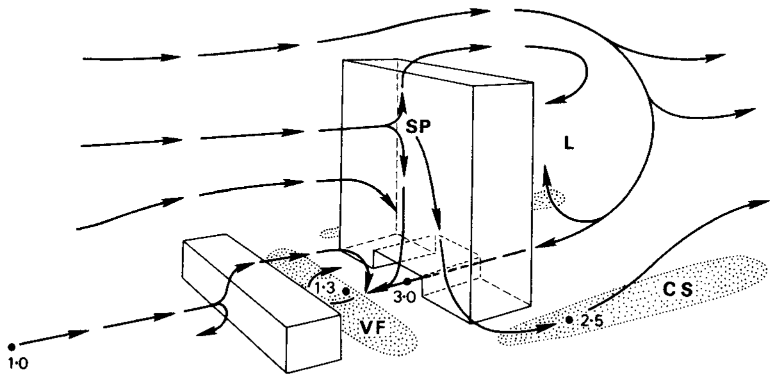


Figure 12.29 Details of urban airflow around two buildings of differing size and shape. Numbers give relative wind speeds; stippled areas are those of high wind velocity and turbulence at street level.

Notes: SP = stagnation point; CS = corner stream; VF = vortex flow; L = lee eddy.
Sources: After Plate (1972) and Oke (1978).

considerably lower than those of surrounding rural areas, but during the night the greater mechanical turbulence over the city means that the higher wind speeds aloft are transferred to the air at lower levels by turbulent mixing. During the day (13:00 hours), the mean annual wind speed for the period 1961 to 1962 at Heathrow Airport (open country within the suburbs) was 2.9 m s^{-1}, compared with 2.1 m s^{-1} in central London. The comparable figures at night (01:00 hours) were 2.2 m s^{-1} and 2.5 m s^{-1}. Rural–urban wind speed differences are most marked with strong winds, and the effects are therefore more evident during winter when a higher proportion of strong winds is recorded in mid-latitudes.

Urban structures affect the movement of air both by producing turbulence as a result of their surface roughness and by the channelling effects of the urban canyons. Figure 12.29 gives some idea of the complexity of airflow around urban structures, illustrating the great differences in ground-level wind velocity and direction, the development of vortices and lee eddies, and the reverse flows that may occur. Structures play a major role in the diffusion of pollution within the urban canopy; for example, narrow streets often cannot be flushed by vortices. The formation of high-velocity streams and eddies in the usually dry and dusty urban atmosphere, where there is an ample debris supply, leads to general urban airflows of only 5 m s^{-1} being annoying, and those of more than 20 m s^{-1} being dangerous.

b Moisture

The absence of large bodies of standing water in urban areas and the rapid removal of surface runoff through drains reduces local evaporation. The lack of extensive vegetation cover eliminates much evapotranspiration, and this is an important source of augmenting urban heat. For these reasons, the air of mid-latitude cities has a tendency towards lower absolute humidity than that of their surroundings, especially under conditions of light winds and cloudy skies. During calm, clear weather, the streets trap warm air, which retains its moisture because less dew is deposited on the warm surfaces of the city. Humidity contrasts between urban and rural areas are most noticeable in the case of relative humidity, which can be as much as 30 per cent less in the city by night as a result of the higher temperatures.

Urban influences on precipitation (excluding fog) are much more difficult to quantify, partly because there are few rain gauges in cities and partly because turbulent flow makes their ‘catch’ unreliable. It is fairly certain, however, that urban areas in Europe and North America are responsible for local conditions that, in summer especially, can trigger off excesses of precipitation under marginal conditions. Such triggering involves both thermal effects and the increased frictional convergence of built-up areas. European and North American cities tend to record 6 to 7 per cent more days with rain per year than their surrounding regions, giving a 5 to 10 per cent increase in urban precipitation. Over southeast England between 1951 and 1960, summer thunderstorm rain (which comprised 5 to 15 per cent of the total precipitation) was especially concentrated in west, central and south London, and contrasted strikingly with the distribution of mean annual total rainfall. During this period, London’s thunderstorm rain was 20 to 25 cm greater than that in rural southeast England. The effect is generally more marked in the cold season in North America, although urban areas in the Midwest

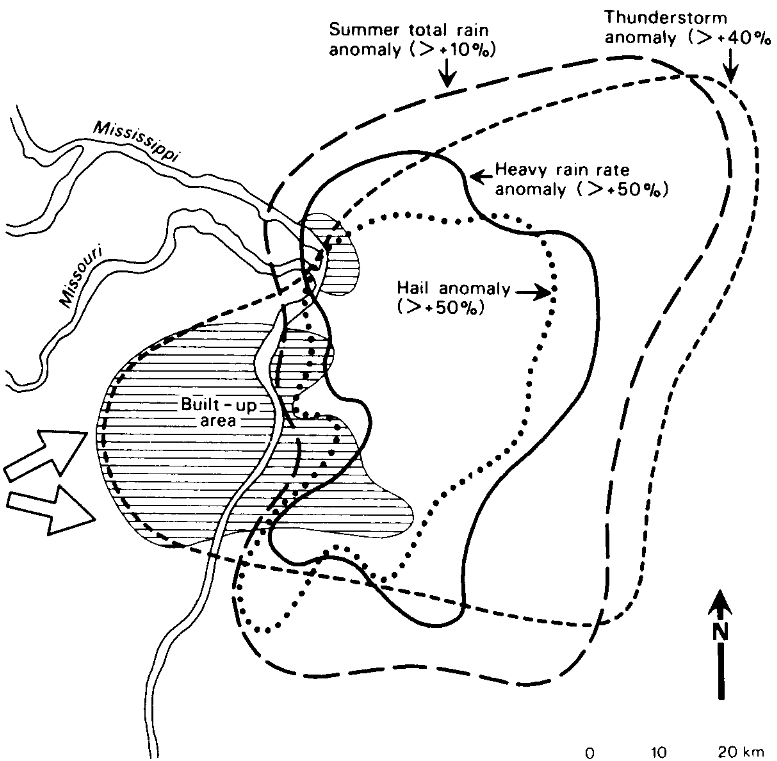

Summer total rain anomaly (>+10%)
Thunderstorm anomaly (>+40%
Mississippi
Missouri
Heavy rain rate anomaly (>+50%)
Hail anomaly (>+50%)
Built-up area
N
0
10
20 km

Figure 12.30 Anomalies of summer rainfall, rate of heavy rains, hail frequency and thunderstorm frequency downwind of the St Louis, MO, metropolitan area. Large arrows indicate the prevailing direction of motion of summer rain systems.

Source: After Changnon (1979). Reprinted by permission of the *Journal of the American Planning Association*.

significantly increase summer convective activity. More frequent thunderstorms and hail occur for 30 to 40 km downwind of industrial areas of St Louis, compared with rural areas (Figure 12.30). The anomalies illustrated here are among the best-documented urban effects. Many of the urban effects here are based on case studies. Table 12.3 gives a summary of average climatic differences between cities and their surroundings.

4 Tropical urban climates

A striking feature of recent and projected world population growth is the relative increase in the tropics and subtropics. Today there are thirty-four world cities with more than five million people, twenty-one of which are in the less-developed countries. By AD 2025 it is predicted that, of the thirteen cities that will have populations in the twenty to thirty-million range, eleven will be in less-developed countries (Mexico City, São Paulo, Lagos, Cairo, Karachi, Delhi, Bombay, Calcutta, Dhaka, Shanghai and Jakarta).

Despite the difficulties in extrapolating knowledge of urban climates from one region to another, the ubiquitous high-technology architecture of most modern city centres and multi-storey residential areas will tend to impose similar influences on their differing background climates. Nevertheless, most tropical urban built land differs from that in higher latitudes; it is commonly composed of high-density, single-storey buildings with few open spaces and poor drainage. In such a setting, the composition of roofs is more important than that of walls in terms of thermal energy exchanges, and the production of anthropogenic heat is more uniformly distributed spatially and is less intense than in European and North American cities. In the dry tropics, buildings have a relatively high thermal mass to delay heat penetration, and this, combined with the low soil moisture in the surrounding rural areas, makes the ratio of urban to rural thermal admittance greater than in temperate regions. However, it is difficult to generalize about the thermal role of cities in the dry tropics where urban vegetation can lead to 'oasis' effects. Building construction in the humid tropics is characteristically lightweight to promote essential ventilation. These cities differ greatly from temperate ones in that the thermal admittance is greater in rural

Table 12.3 Average urban climatic conditions compared with those of surrounding rural areas.

Atmospheric composition	
carbon dioxide	×2
sulphur dioxide	×200
nitrogen oxides	×10
carbon monoxide	×200(+)
total hydrocarbons	×20
particulate matter	×3 to 7
Radiation	
global solar	–15 to 20%
ultraviolet (winter)	–30%
sunshine duration	–5 to 15%
Temperature winter minimum (average)	+1 to 2°C
heating degree days	–10%
Wind speed annual mean	–20 to 30%
number of calms	+5 to 20%
Fog winter	+100%
summer	+30%
Cloud	+5 to 10%
Precipitation total	+5 to 10%
days with <5 mm	+10%

Source: Partly after World Meteorological Organization (1970).

than in urban areas due to high rural soil moisture levels and high urban albedos.

Tropical heat island tendencies are rather similar to those of temperate cities but are usually weaker, with different timings for temperature maxima, and with complications introduced by the effects of afternoon and evening convective rainstorms and by diurnal breezes. The thermal characteristics of tropical cities differ from those in mid-latitudes because of dissimilar urban morphology (e.g. building density, materials, geometry, green areas) and because they have fewer sources of anthropogenic heat. Urban areas in the tropics tend to have slower rates of cooling and warming than do the surrounding rural areas, and this causes the major nocturnal heat island effect to develop later than in mid-latitudes (i.e. around sunrise (Figure 12.31A)). Urban climates in the subtropics are well illustrated by four cities in Mexico (Table 12.4). The heat island effect is, as expected, greater for larger cities and best exemplified at night during the dry season (November to April), when anticyclonic conditions, clear skies and inversions are most common (Figure 12.31B). It is of note that in some tropical coastal cities (e.g. Veracruz; Figure 12.31A), afternoon urban heating may produce instability that reinforces the sea breeze effect to the point where there is a 'cool island' urban effect. Elevation may play a significant thermal role (Table 12.4), as in Mexico City, where the urban heat island may be accentuated by rapid nocturnal cooling of the surrounding countryside. Quito, Ecuador (2851 m) shows a maximum heat island effect by day (as much as 4°C) and weaker night-time effects, probably due to the nocturnal drainage of cold air from the nearby volcano Pichincha.

Ibadan, Nigeria (population over one million; elevation 210 m), at 7°N, records higher rural than urban temperatures in the morning and higher urban temperatures in the afternoon, especially in the dry season (November to mid-March). In December, the harmattan dust haze tends to reduce city maximum temperatures. During this season, mean monthly minimum temperatures are significantly greater in the urban heat island than in rural areas (March +12°C, but December only +2°C due to the atmospheric dust effect). In

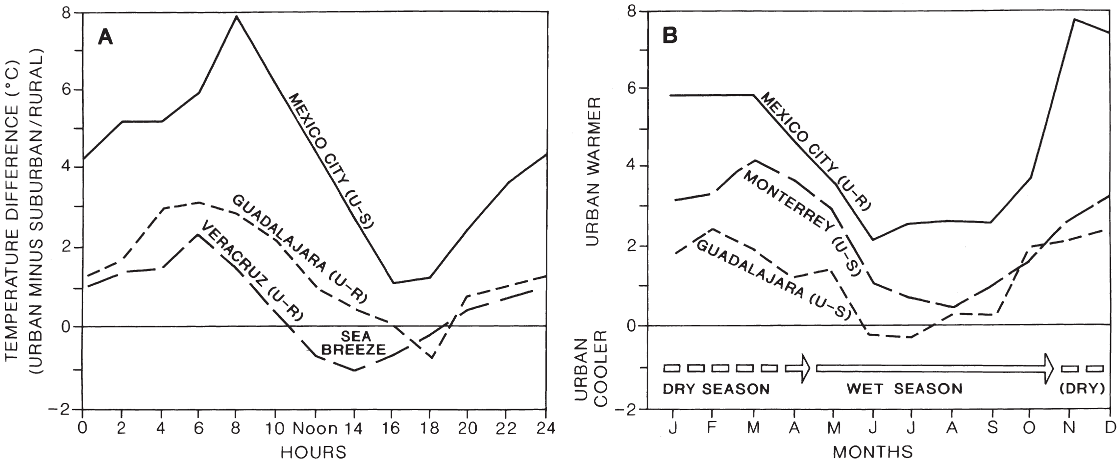


Figure 12.31 Diurnal (A) and seasonal (B) heat island intensity variations (i.e. urban minus rural or suburban temperature differences) for four Mexican cities (see Table 12.4).

Source: Jauregui (1987). Copyright © *Erdkunde*. Published by permission.

general, urban–rural minimum temperature differences vary between –2° and +15°C. Two other tropical cities exhibiting urban heat islands are Nairobi, Kenya (+3.5°C for minimum temperatures and +1.6°C for maximum temperatures) and Delhi, India (+3 to 5°C for minimum temperatures and +2 to 4°C for maximum temperatures).

Despite insufficient data, there seems to be some urban precipitation enhancement in the tropics, which is maintained for more of the year than that associated with summer convection in mid-latitudes.

Table 12.4 Population (1990) and elevation for four Mexican cities.

	Population (millions)	*Elevation (metres)*
Mexico City (19°25′N)	15.05	2380
Guadalajara (20°40′N)	1.65	1525
Monterey (25°49′N)	1.07	538
Veracruz (19°11′N)	0.33	SL

Source: Jauregui (1987).

SUMMARY

Small-scale climates are determined largely by the relative importance of the surface energy budget components, which vary in amount and sign depending on time of day and season. Bare land surfaces may have wide temperature variations controlled by *H* and *G*, whereas those of surface water bodies are strongly conditioned by *LE* and advective flows. Snow and ice surfaces have small energy transfers in winter with net outgoing radiation offset by transfers of *H* and *G* towards the surface. After snow melt, the net radiation is large and positive, balanced by turbulent energy losses. Vegetated surfaces have more complex exchanges usually dominated by *LE*; this may account for >50 per cent of the incoming radiation, especially where there is an ample water supply (including irrigation). Forests have a lower albedo (<0.10 for conifers) than most other vegetated surfaces (0.20 to 0.25). Their vertical structure produces a number of distinct microclimatic layers, particularly in tropical rainforests. Wind speeds are characteristically low in forests and trees form important shelter belts. Unlike short vegetation, various types of tree exhibit a variety of rates of evapotranspiration and thereby differentially affect local temperatures and forest humidity. Forests may have a marginal topographic effect on precipitation under convective conditions in temperate regions, but fog drip is more significant in foggy/cloudy areas. The disposition of forest moisture is very much affected by canopy interception and evaporation, but forested catchments appear to have greater evapotranspiration losses than those with a grass cover. Forest microclimates have lower temperatures and smaller diurnal ranges than their surroundings.

Urban climates are dominated by the geometry and composition of built-up surfaces and by the effects of human urban activities. The composition of the urban atmosphere is modified by the addition of aerosols, producing smoke pollution and fogs, by industrial gases such as sulphur dioxide, and by a chain of chemical reactions, initiated by automobile exhaust fumes, which causes smog and inhibits both incoming and outgoing radiation. Pollution domes and plumes are produced around cities under appropriate conditions of vertical temperature structure and wind velocity. H and G dominate the urban heat budget, except in city parks, and as much as 70 to 80 per cent of incoming radiation may become sensible heat, which is distributed very variably between the complex urban built forms. Urban influences combine to give generally higher temperatures than in the surrounding countryside, not least because of the growing importance of heat production by human activities. These factors lead to the urban heat island, which may be 6 to 8°C warmer than surrounding areas in the early hours of calm, clear nights, when heat stored by urban surfaces is being released. The urban–rural temperature difference under calm conditions is related statistically to the city population size; the urban canyon geometry and sky view factors are major controlling factors. The heat island may be a few hundred metres deep, depending on the building configuration. Urban wind speeds are generally lower than in rural areas by day, but the wind flow is complex, depending on the geometry of city structures. Cities tend to be less humid than rural areas, but their topography, roughness and thermal qualities can intensify summer convective activity over and downwind of the urban area, giving more thunderstorms and heavier storm rainfall. Tropical cities have heat islands, but the diurnal phase tends to be delayed relative to mid-latitude ones. The temperature amplitude is largest during dry season conditions.

DISCUSSION TOPICS

- In what ways do vegetated surfaces modify the surface climate compared with unvegetated ones and what processes are involved?
- What are the major effects of urban environments on atmospheric composition? (Data from air sampling sites in North America and Europe are available on the web.)
- Look for evidence from local weather station reports and/or vegetation types for topoclimatic differences in locations where you live/travel and consider whether these arise from differences in solar radiation, day/night temperatures, moisture balance, wind speed or combinations of these factors.
- Look for evidence of urban–rural climatic differences in cities near you using weather reports of day/night temperatures, visibility, snowfall events and so on.

FURTHER READING

Books

Bailey, W. G., Oke, T. R. and Rouse, W. R. (eds) (1997) *The Surface Climates of Canada*, McGill-Queen's University Press, Montreal and Kingston, 369 pp. [Sections on surface climate concepts and processes, the climatic regimes of six different natural surfaces, as well as agricultural and urban surfaces.]

Brimblecombe, P. (1986) *Air: Composition and Chemistry*, Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, 224pp. [Suitable introduction to atmospheric composition, gas phase chemistry, aerosols, air pollution sources and effects, and stratospheric ozone for environmental science students.]

Chandler, T. J. (1965) *The Climate of London*, Hutchinson, London, 292pp. [Classic account of the urban effects of the city of London in the 1950 to 1960s.]

Cotton, W. R. and Pielke, R. A. (1995) *Human Impacts on Weather and Climate*, Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, 288pp. [Treats intentional and accidental weather and climate modification on regional and global scales.]

Garratt, J. R. (1992) *The Atmospheric Boundary Layer*, Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, 316 pp). [Advanced level text on the atmospheric boundary layer and its modelling.]

Geiger, R. (1965) *The Climate Near the Ground* (2nd edn), Harvard University Press, Cambridge, MA, 611pp. [Classic descriptive text on local, topo- and microclimates; extensive references to European research.]

Kittredge, J. (1948) *Forest Influences*, McGraw-Hill, New York, 394pp. [Classic account of the effects of forests on climate and other aspects of the environment.]

Landsberg, H. E. (ed.) (1981) *General Climatology* 3, *World Survey of Climatology* 3, Elsevier, Amsterdam, 408pp. [Focuses on applied climatology with chapters on human bioclimatology, agricultural climatology and city climates.]

Lowry, W. P. (1969) *Weather and Life: An Introduction to Biometeorology*, Academic Press, New York, 305pp. [A readable introduction to energy and moisture in the environment, energy budgets of systems, the biological environment and the urban environment.]

Meetham, A. R., Bottom, D. W., Cayton, A. S., Henderson-Sellers, A. and Chambers, D. (1981) *Atmospheric Pollution* (4th edn), Pergamon Press, Oxford and London, 232pp.

Monteith, J. L. (1973) *Principles of Environmental Physics*, Arnold, London, 241pp. [Discusses radiative fluxes and radiation balance at the surface and in canopies, exchanges of heat, mass and momentum, and the micrometeorology of crops.]

Monteith, J. L. (ed.) (1975) *Vegetation and the Atmosphere*, Vol. 1: *Principles*, Academic Press, London, 278pp. [Chapters by specialists on micrometeorology and plants – radiation, exchanges of momentum, heat, moisture and particles, micrometeorological models and instruments.]

Munn, R. E. (1966) *Descriptive Micrometeorology*, Academic Press, New York, 245pp. [Readable introduction to processes in micrometeorology including urban pollution.]

Oke, T. R. (1978) *Boundary Layer Climates* (2nd edn), Methuen, London, 435pp. [Prime text on surface climate processes in natural and human-modified environments by a renowned urban climatologist.]

Richards, P. W. (1952) *The Tropical Rain Forest, An Ecological Study*, Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, 450pp. [A classic text on tropical forest biology and ecology that includes chapters on climatic and microclimatic conditions.]

Sellers, W. D. (1965) *Physical Climatology*, University of Chicago Press, Chicago, 272pp. [Classic and still valuable treatment of physical processes in meteorology and climatology.]

Sopper, W. E. and Lull, H. W. (eds) (1967) *International Symposium on Forest Hydrology*, Pergamon, Oxford and London, 813pp. [Includes contributions on moisture budget components in forests.]

Articles

Adebayo, Y. R. (1991) 'Heat island' in a humid tropical city and its relationship with potential evaporation. *Theoret. and App. Climatology* 43, 137–47.

Anderson, G. E. (1971) Mesoscale influences on wind fields. *J. App. Met*. 10, 377–86.

Atkinson, B. W. (1968) A preliminary examination of the possible effect of London's urban area on the distribution of thunder rainfall 1951–60. *Trans. Inst. Brit. Geog*. 44, 97–118.

Atkinson, B. W. (1977) *Urban Effects on Precipitation: An Investigation of London's Influence on the Severe Storm of August 1975*. Department of Geography, Queen Mary College, London, Occasional Paper No. 8, 31pp.

Atkinson, B. W. (1987) Precipitation. In Gregory, K. J. and Walling, D. E. (eds) *Human Activity and Environmental Processes*, John Wiley & Sons, Chichester, 31–50.

Bach, W. (1971) Atmospheric turbidity and air pollution in Greater Cincinnati, *Geog. Rev*. 61, 573–94.

Bach, W. (1979) Short-term climatic alterations caused by human activities, *Prog. Phys. Geog*. 3(1), 55–83.

Bach, W. and Patterson, W. (1966) Heat budget studies in Greater Cincinnati. *Proc. Assn Amer. Geog*. 1, 7–16.

Betts, A.K., Ball, J.H. and McCaughey, H. (2001) Near-surface climate in the boreal forest. *J. Geophys. Res.*, 106(D24), 33529–541.

Brimblecombe, P. and Bentham, G. (1997) The air that we breathe. Smogs, smoke and health. In Hulme, M. and Barrow, E. (eds) *The Climates of the British Isles. Present, Past and Future*, Routledge, London, pp. 243–61.

Caborn, J. M. (1955) The influence of shelter-belts on microclimate. *Quart. J. Roy. Met. Soc.* 81, 112–15.

Chandler, T. J. (1967) Absolute and relative humidities in towns. *Bull. Amer. Met. Soc*. 48, 394–9.

Changnon, S. A. (1969) Recent studies of urban effects on precipitation in the United States. *Bull. Amer. Met. Soc*. 50, 411–21.

Changnon, S. A. (1979) What to do about urban-generated weather and climate changes. *J. Amer. Plan. Assn*. 45(1), 36–48.

Coutts, J. R. H. (1955) Soil temperatures in an afforested area in Aberdeenshire. *Quart. J. Roy. Met. Soc*. 81, 72–9.

Dickinson, R. E. and Henderson-Sellers, A. (1988) Modelling tropical deforestation: a study of GCM land–surface parameterizations. *Quart. J. Roy. Met. Soc*. 114, 439–62.

Duckworth, F. S. and Sandberg, J. S. (1954) The effect of cities upon horizontal and vertical temperature gradients. *Bull. Amer. Met. Soc*. 35, 198–207.

Food and Agriculture Organization of the United Nations (1962) *Forest Influences*, Forestry and Forest Products Studies No. 15, Rome, 307pp.

Garnett, A. (1967) Some climatological problems in urban geography with special reference to air pollution. *Trans. Inst. Brit. Geog*. 42, 21–43.

Garratt, J. R. (1994) Review: the atmospheric boundary layer. *Earth-Science Reviews* 37, 89–134.

Gay, L. W. and Stewart, J. B. (1974) *Energy balance studies in coniferous forests*, Report No. 23, Inst. Hydrol., Nat. Env. Res. Coun., Wallingford.

Goldreich, Y. (1984) Urban topo-climatology. *Prog. Phys. Geog*. 8, 336–64.

Harriss, R. C. *et al*. (1990) The Amazon boundary layer experiment: wet season 1987. *J. Geophys. Res*. 95(D10), 16721–36.

Heintzenberg, J. (1989) Arctic haze: air pollution in polar regions. *Ambio* 18, 50–5.

Hewson, E. W. (1951) Atmospheric pollution. In Malone, T. F. (ed.) *Compendium of Meteorology*, American Meteorological Society, Boston, MA, pp. 1139–57.

Jauregui, E. (1987) Urban heat island development in medium and large urban areas in Mexico. *Erdkunde* 41, 48–51.

Jenkins, I. (1969) Increases in averages of sunshine in Greater London. *Weather* 24, 52–4.

Kessler, A. (1985) Heat balance climatology. In Essenwanger, B. M. (ed.) *General Climatology*, World Survey of Climatology 1A, Elsevier, Amsterdam, 224pp.

Koppány, Gy. (1975) Estimation of the life span of atmospheric motion systems by means of atmospheric energetics. *Met. Mag*. 104, 302–6.

Kubecka, P. (2001) A possible world record maximum natural ground surface temperature. *Weather* 56 (7), 218–21.

Landsberg, H. E. (1981) City climate. in Landsberg, H. E. (ed.) *General Climatology 3*, *World Survey of Climatology* 3, Elsevier, Amsterdam, pp. 299–334.

Long, I. F., Monteith, J. L., Penman, H. L. and Szeicz, G. (1964) The plant and its environment. *Meteorol. Rundschau* 17(4), 97–101.

McNaughton, K. and Black, T. A. (1973) A study of evapotranspiration from a Douglas fir forest using the energy balance approach. *Water Resources Research* 9, 1579–90.

Maejima, I. *et al*. (1982) Recent climatic change and urban growth in Tokyo and its environs. *Japanese Prog. Climatology*, March 1983, 1–22.

Marshall, W. A. L. (1952) *A Century of London Weather*, Met. Office, Air Ministry, Report.

Miess, M. (1979) The climate of cities. In Laurie, I. C. (ed.) *Nature in Cities*, Wiley, Chichester, pp. 91–104.

Miller, D. H. (1965) The heat and water budget of the earth's surface. *Adv. Geophys*. 11, 175–302.

Nicholas, F. W. and Lewis, J. E. (1980) Relationships between aerodynamic roughness and land use and land cover in Baltimore, Maryland. US Geol. Surv. Prof. Paper 1099–C, 36pp.

Nunez, M. and Oke, T.R. (1977) The energy balance of an urban canyon. *J. Appl. Met.* 16, 11–19

Oke, T. R. (1979) *Review of Urban Climatology 1973–76*. WMO Technical Note No. 169, Geneva, World Meteorological Organization, 100pp.

Oke, T. R. (1980) Climatic impacts of urbanization. In Bach, W., Pankrath, J. and Williams, J. (eds) *Interactions of Energy and Climate*, D. Reidel, Dordrecht, pp. 339–56.

Oke, T. R. (1982) The energetic basis of the heat island. *Quart. J. Roy. Met. Soc*. 108, 1–24.

Oke, T. R. (1986) *Urban Climatology and its Applications with Special Regard to Tropical Areas*, World Meteorological Organization Publication No. 652. Geneva, 534pp.

Oke, T. R. (1988) The urban energy balance. *Prog. Phys. Geog*. 12(4), 471–508.

Oke, T. R. and East, C. (1971) The urban boundary layer in Montreal. *Boundary-Layer Met*. 1, 411–37.

Pankrath, J. (1980) Impact of heat emissions in the Upper-Rhine region. In Bach, W., Pankrath, J. and Williams, J. (eds) *Interactions of Energy and Climate*, D. Reidel, Dordrecht, pp. 363–81.

Pease, R. W., Jenner, C. B. and Lewis, J. E. (1980) The influences of land use and land cover on climate analysis: an analysis of the Washington–Baltimore area. US Geol. Surv. Prof. Paper 1099–A, 39pp.

Peel, R. F. (1974) Insolation and weathering: some measures of diurnal temperature changes in exposed rocks in the Tibesti region, central Sahara. *Zeit. für Geomorph. Supp*. 21, 19–28.

Peterson, J. T. (1971) Climate of the city. In Detwyler, T. R. (ed.) *Man's Impact on Environment*, McGraw-Hill, New York, pp. 131–54.

Plate, E. (1972) Berücksichtigung von Windströmungen in der Bauleitplanung. In *Seminarberichte Rahmenthema Unweltschutz*, Institut für Stätebau und Landesplanung, Selbstverlag, Karlsruhe, pp. 201–29.

Reynolds, E. R. C. and Leyton, L. (1963) Measurement and significance of throughfall in forest stands. In Whitehead, F. M. and Rutter, A. J. (eds) *The Water Relations of Plants*, Blackwell Scientific Publications, Oxford, pp. 127–41.

Rutter, A. J. (1967) Evaporation in forests. *Endeavour* 97, 39–43.

Seinfeld, J. H. (1989) Urban air pollution: state of the science. *Science* 243, 745–52.

Shuttleworth, W. J. (1989) Micrometeorology of temperate and tropical forest. *Phil. Trans. Roy. Soc. London* B324, 299–334.

Shuttleworth, W. J. *et al*. (1985) Daily variation of temperature and humidity within and above the Amazonian forest. *Weather* 40, 102–8.

Steinecke, K. (1999) Urban climatological studies in the Reykjavik subarctic environment, Iceland. *Atmos. Environ*., 33 (24–5), 4157–62.

Sukachev, V. and Dylis, N. (1968) *Fundamentals of Forest Biogeoeconology*, Oliver & Boyd, Edinburgh, 672pp.

Terjung, W. H. and Louis, S. S-F. (1973) Solar radiation and urban heat islands. *Ann. Assn Amer. Geog*. 63, 181–207.

Terjung, W. H. and O'Rourke, P. A. (1980) Simulating the causal elements of urban heat islands. *Boundary-Layer Met*. 19, 93–118.

Terjung, W. H. and O'Rourke, P. A. (1981) Energy input and resultant surface temperatures for individual urban interfaces. *Archiv. Met. Geophys. Biokl*. B, 29, 1–22.

Tyson, P. D., Garstang, M. and Emmitt, G. D. (1973) *The Structure of Heat Islands*. Occasional Paper No. 12, Department of Geography and Environmental Studies, University of the Witwatersrand, Johannesburg, 71pp.

US Department of Health, Education and Welfare (1970) *Air Quality Criteria for Photochemical Oxidants*, National Air Pollution Control Administration, US Public Health Service, Publication No. AP–63, Washington, DC.

Vehrencamp, J. E. (1953) Experimental investigation of heat transfer at an air–earth interface. *Trans. Amer. Geophys. Union* 34, 22–30.

Weller, G. and Wendler, G. (1990) Energy budgets over various types of terrain in polar regions. *Annals of Glaciology* 14, 311–14.

White, W. H., Anderson, J. A., Blumenthal, D. L., Husar, R. B., Gillani, N. V., Husar, J. D. and Wilson, W. E. (1976) Formation and transport of secondary air pollutants: ozone and aerosols in the St Louis urban plume. *Science* 194, 187–9.

World Meteorological Organization (1970) *Urban Climates*, WMO Technical Note No. 108, 390pp.

Zon, R. (1941) Climate and the nation's forests. In *Climate and Man*, US Department of Agriculture Yearbook, pp. 477–98.

13

Climate change

Learning objectives
When you have read this chapter you will:

- ☐ Understand the difference between climate variability and climate change and know the characteristic features that may constitute a change of climate,
- ☐ Be aware of the different timescales on which past climatic conditions are studied and the sources of evidence that may be used,
- ☐ Recognize the major climatic forcing factors and feedback mechanisms and the timescales over which they may operate,
- ☐ Be aware of the anthropogenic contributions to climate change,
- ☐ Appreciate the possible impacts of climate change on environmental systems and on society.

A GENERAL CONSIDERATIONS

In this final chapter we examine the variation of climate on different timescales, related climatic forcing factors and projected future changes. Global climate change in the twentieth century has reinforced the recognition that climatic conditions are non-stationary and that human activities have major impacts on the climate system.

Realization that climate is far from being constant came only during the 1840s, when indisputable evidence of former ice ages was obtained. Yet, in many parts of the world, the climate has altered sufficiently within the past few thousand years to affect the possibilities for agriculture and settlement. Study of past climate began with a few individuals in the 1920s and more actively in the 1950s (see Box 13.1). Weather records for most parts of the world span only the last hundred years or so. However, *proxy* indicators of past conditions from tree rings, pollen in bog and lake sediments, ice core records of physical and chemical parameters and ocean foraminifera in sediments provide a wealth of paleoclimatic data.

It is first worthwhile to consider the nature of climate variations. The standard interval for climatic statistics adopted by the World Meteorological Organization is thirty years: 1971 to 2000, for example. However, for historical records and proxy indicators of climate, longer, arbitrary time intervals may be used to calculate average values. Tree rings and ice cores can give seasonal/annual records, while peat bog and ocean sediments may provide records with only 100- to 1000-year time resolution. Hence, short-term changes and the true rates of change may not be identifiable.

The present climatic state is usually described in terms of an average value (arithmetic mean, or the median value in a frequency distribution), a measure of

PIONEERS OF CLIMATIC CHANGE RESEARCH

box 13.1
significant 20th-c. advance

In the late nineteenth century, it was widely accepted that climatic conditions were described by long-term averages or *normals*. The longer the record, the better would be the approximations to the long-term mean. Geologists and a few meteorologists were aware that climates of the past had been very different from the present and sought explanations of Ice Ages in astronomical and solar variations. Two classic works by C. E. P. Brooks – *The Evolution of Climate* (1922) and *Climates of the Past* (1926) – provided a remarkably comprehensive picture of changes through geologic time and set out the possible factors, external and internal to the earth's climate system. It was not until the 1950s to 1960s, however, that awareness grew of important decadal-century scale climatic fluctuations. Historical weather records and proxy climatic data began to be assembled. Pioneers in historical climatology included Gerald Manley and Hubert Lamb in England, Herman Flohn in Germany, LeRoy Ladurie in France, and Murray Mitchell and Reid Bryson in the United States. In the 1970s attention turned initially to the possibility of a renewed Ice Age and then to concern over the greenhouse effect of increasing carbon dioxide concentrations in the atmosphere. The possibility of global cooling arose from two main sources; the first was paleoclimatological evidence that previous interglacial conditions lasted for only about 10,000 years and already the post-glacial Holocene period was of that length. A conference titled 'The Present Interglacial – how and when will it end?' took place at Brown University, Providence, RI, in 1972 (G. Kukla, R. Matthews and J. M. Mitchell). A second factor was concern over the role of aerosols in reducing incoming solar radiation. The early 1970s also saw an increase in the extent of northern hemisphere snow cover (Kukla, 1974). Almost simultaneously, however, the first conferences on carbon dioxide and greenhouse warming were taking place! The occurrence of abrupt climatic shifts during the last Late Pleistocene and Holocene began to be identified in the 1970s to 1980s. Most notable is the 1000-year-long severe cooling known as the Younger Dryas that occurred around 11,000 years ago.

Interest in past climates was driven by the concept that 'the past is the key to the future'. Hence, efforts were made to document conditions during historical times and the remote geological past, when global climate varied over a much wider range of extremes, and to determine their causes.

variation about the mean (the standard deviation, or interquartile range), the extreme values, and often the shape of the frequency distribution (see Note 1). A change in climate can occur in several different ways (Figure 13.1). For example, there may be a shift in the mean level (B), or a gradual trend in the mean (C). The variability may be periodic (A), quasi-periodic (B) or non-periodic (C), or alternatively it may show a progressive trend (D). It is necessary first to determine whether such changes are real or whether they are an artefact of changes in instrumentation, observational practices, station location or the surroundings of the instrumental site, or due to errors in the transcribed data. Even when changes are real, it may be difficult to ascribe them to unique causes because of the complexity of the climate system. Natural variability operates over a wide range of timescales, and superimposed on these natural variations in climate are the effects of human activities.

B CLIMATE FORCINGS AND FEEDBACKS

The average state of the climate system is controlled by a combination of *forcing* factors external to the system (solar variability, astronomical effects, tectonic processes and volcanic eruptions) and internal radiative forcings (atmospheric composition, cloud cover). There are also anthropogenically induced changes (in atmospheric composition, surface land cover) and *feedback effects* (such as changes in atmospheric water vapour content or cloudiness caused by global temperature changes). Figure 13.2 illustrates the complexity of the climate system. It is useful to try and assess the magnitude of such effects, globally and regionally, and the timescales over which they operate.

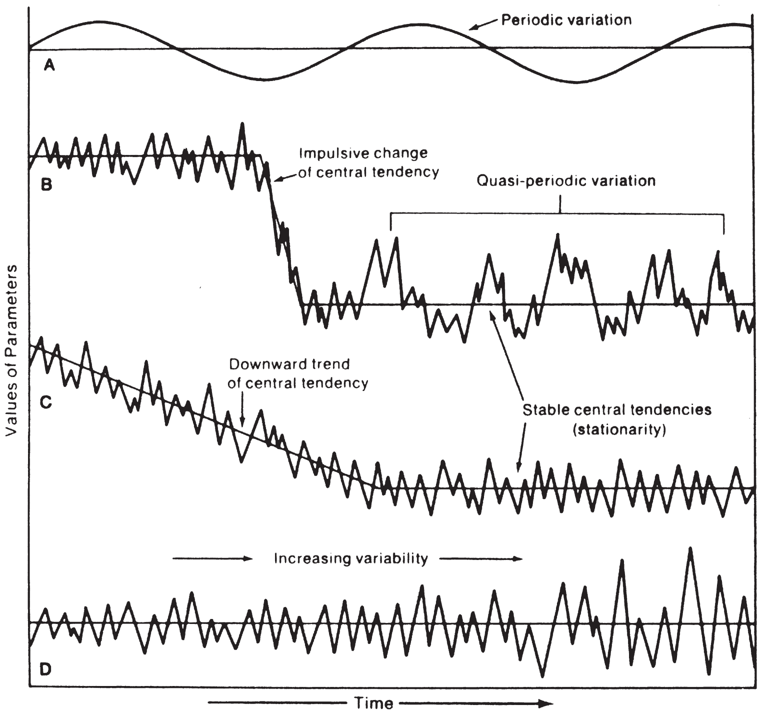


Figure 13.1 Different types of climatic variation. The scales are arbitrary.

Source: Hare (1979). Courtesy of the World Meteorological Organization.

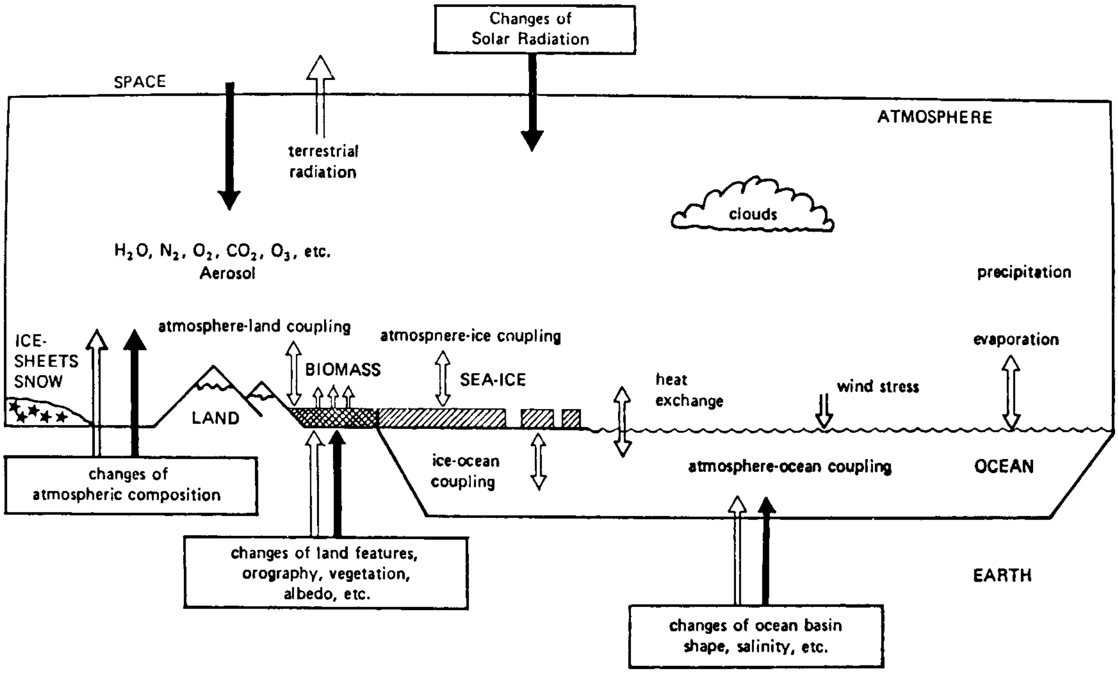

Changes of Solar Radiation
SPACE
terrestrial radiation
ATMOSPHERE
clouds
H₂O, N₂, O₂, CO₂, O₃, etc.
Aerosol
precipitation
atmosphere-land coupling
atmosphere-ice coupling
evaporation
ICE-SHEETS SNOW
BIOMASS
SEA-ICE
heat exchange
wind stress
LAND
ice-ocean coupling
atmosphere-ocean coupling
OCEAN
changes of atmospheric composition
changes of land features, orography, vegetation, albedo, etc.
EARTH
changes of ocean basin shape, salinity, etc.

Figure 13.2 The 'climate system'. External processes are shown by solid arrows; internal processes by open arrows.

Source: After US GARP Committee.

1 External forcing

Solar variability. The sun is a variable star, and it is known that early in the earth's history (during the Archean three billion years ago) solar irradiance was about 80 per cent of the modern value. Paradoxically, however, the effect of this 'faint early sun' was offset, most likely, by a concentration of carbon dioxide that was perhaps 100 times higher than now, and perhaps also by the effects of a largely water-covered earth. The approximately eleven-year solar cycle (and twenty-two-year magnetic field cycle) is well known. As discussed in Chapter 3, the sunspot cycle causes a ±1 W m^{-2} fluctuation in solar irradiance and much larger effects on ultraviolet radiation. Intervals when sunspot and solar flare activity were much reduced (especially the Maunder minimum of AD 1645 to 1715) may have had cumulative effects leading to temperature decreases of about 0.5°C. Solar variability seems to have played an important role in decadal-scale variations of global temperature until the late twentieth century, when anthropogenic effects became dominant.

Tectonic processes. On geological timescales, there have been great changes in continental positions and sizes, and in the configuration of ocean basins as a result of crustal processes (known as plate tectonics). These movements have also altered the size and location of mountain ranges and plateaus. As a result, the global circulation of the atmosphere and the pattern of ocean circulation have also been modified. Changes in continental location have contributed substantially to major ice age episodes (such as the Permo-Carboniferous glaciation of Gondwanaland) as well as to intervals with extensive arid (Permo-Triassic) or humid (coal deposits) environments during other geological periods. Over the past few million years, the uplift of the Tibetan Plateau and the Himalayan ranges has caused the onset, or intensification, of desert conditions in western China and Central Asia.

Astronomical periodicities. As noted in Chapter 3A.2, the earth's orbit around the sun is subject to long-term variations. There are three principal effects on incoming solar radiation: the eccentricity (or stretch) of the orbit, with periods of approximately 95,000 years and 410,000

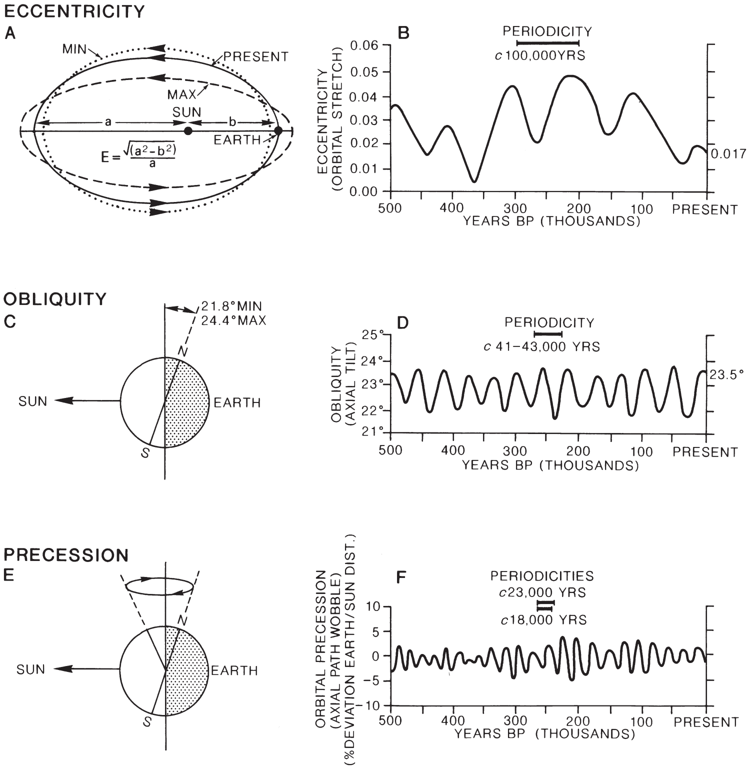


Figure 13.3 The astronomical (orbital) effects on the solar irradiance and their timescales over the past 500,000 years. (A) and (B) Eccentricity or orbital stretch. (C) and (D) Obliquity or axial tilt. (E) and (F) Precession or axial path wobble.

Sources: Partly after Broecker and Van Donk (1970), and Henderson-Sellers and McGuffie (1987). (B), (D) and (F) From *Review of Geophysics and Space Physics* 8, 1970, by permission of the American Geophysical Union.

Table 13.1 Orbital forcings and characteristics.

Element	*Index range*	*Present value*	*Average periodicity*
Obliquity of Ecliptic (ε) (Tilt of axis of rotation)	22–24.5°	23.4°	41ka
Effects equal in both hemispheres, effect intensifies poleward (for caloric seasons)			
Low ε Weak seasonality, steep poleward radiation gradient High ε Strong seasonality, more summer radiation at poles, weaker radiation gradient			
Precession of Equinox (ω) (Wobble of axis of rotation)	0.05 to –0.05	0.0164	19, 23ka
Changing earth–sun distance alters seasonal cycle structure; complex effect, modulated by eccentricity of orbit			
Eccentricity of Orbit (e)	0.005 to 0.0607	0.0167	410, 95ka
Gives 0.02% variation in annual incoming radiation; modifies amplitude of precession cycle changing seasonal duration and intensity; effects opposite in each hemisphere; greatest in low latitudes			

years; the tilt of the earth's axis (approximately 41,000 years); and a wobble in the earth's axis of rotation, which causes changes in the timing of perihelion (Figure 13.3). This precessional effect, with a period of about 21,000 years, is illustrated in Figure 3.3. The range of variation of these three components and their consequences are summarized in Table 13.1.

Volcanic eruptions. Major explosive eruptions inject dust and sulphur dioxide aerosols into the stratosphere, where they may circle the earth for several years causing brilliant sunsets (see Figure 2.11). Equatorial eruption plumes spread into both hemispheres, whereas plumes from eruptions in mid- to high latitudes are confined to that hemisphere. Records of such eruptions are preserved in the Antarctic and Greenland ice sheets for at least the last 150,000 years. Observational evidence from the last 100 years demonstrates that major eruptions cause a hemisphere/global cooling of 0.5 to 1.0°C in the year following the event, but there is strong regional variability.

Atmospheric composition. The effect of greenhouse gases on the energy budget and temperatures is discussed in Chapter 2. It was pointed out that there is a large 'natural' greenhouse caused by atmospheric water vapour, distinct from human-induced changes in other greenhouse trace gases over the past few centuries. Glacial–interglacial changes in terrestrial vegetation and in the oceanic uptake of trace gases, as a result of changes in the thermohaline circulation of the global ocean (see Chapter 7D), resulted in major fluctuations in atmospheric carbon dioxide (±50 ppm) and methane (±150 ppb). Negative (positive) excursions are associated with cold (warm) intervals, as illustrated in Figure 2.6. The changes in greenhouse gases (CO_2 and CH_4) and global temperatures are virtually coincident during both glacial and interglacial transitions, so that there is no clear causative agent. Both the long-term and rapid changes in atmospheric CO_2 seen in polar ice cores seem to result from the combined effects of ocean and land biological activity and ocean circulation shifts.

Rates of change. Obviously, changes in climate resulting from changes in the earth's geography through geological processes (e.g. the position and size of ocean basins, continents and mountain ranges) are only perceptible on timescales of millions of years. Such geographical changes have had immense paleoclimatic significance, but of more immediate concern for recent climate are the radiative forcing agents that affect the supply and disposition of solar radiation. Solar radiation changes are external inputs into the atmosphere–earth–ocean–ice system and they occur over a range of timescales from tens to hundreds of thousands and (probably) millions of years. Thus solar radiation is both a long-term and a short-term external forcing agent. Astronomical forcings give rise to global temperature fluctuations of ±2–5°C per 10,000 years. The timing of orbital forcing is also clearly represented in glacial–interglacial fluctuations with major glacial cycles spanning about 100,000 years (or 100 ka). However, the most striking fact to emerge from analysis of two recent deep ice cores in central Greenland is the great rapidity of large changes in atmospheric temperature, precipitation and aerosol levels, presumably as a result of major readjustments of atmospheric circulation. The onset and termination of the Younger Dryas cold episode 12,900 to 11,600 BP (before present) (see Figure 13.4), with a switch from glacial to interglacial conditions and back again, apparently occurred within a five-year time interval for both transitions! The processes driving such abrupt changes in atmospheric circulation regime are still unknown.

2 Short-term forcing and feedback

Internal radiative forcing agents mostly involve changes in atmospheric composition, cloud cover, aerosols and surface albedo. Although subject to long-term changes, it is their susceptibility to short-term anthropogenic influences that makes them of particular climatic interest. The interactions between short-term external solar radiative forcing and these internal radiative forcing agents are central to understanding and predicting near-term global climate trends. They operate through a complex *feedback mechanism* which can be either *positive* (i.e. self-enhancing) or *negative* (i.e. self-regulating or damping).

Positive feedback mechanisms affecting global climate appear to be widespread and particularly effective in response to temperature changes, which is a matter of especial current concern. Increases in global temperature lead to increases in atmospheric water vapour, increases in plant respiration, decreases in CO_2 dissolved in the oceans, and an increase in methane emissions from wetlands. All of these act to increase the global concentration of greenhouse gases and, hence, to increase global temperatures further. Ice and snow cover is involved in important positive feedback effects because a more extensive cover creates higher albedo and lower temperatures that further expand the ice and snow cover, producing additional cooling. Conversely,

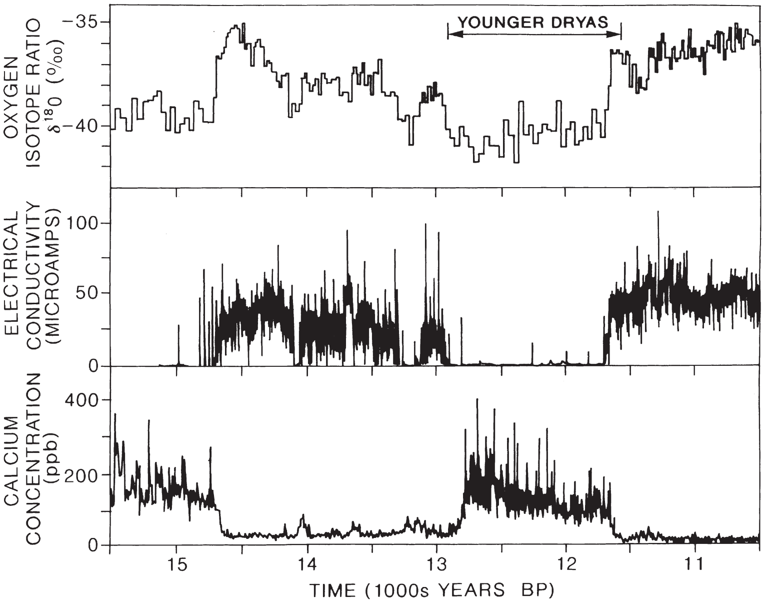


Figure 13.4 The late glacial to interglacial transition (14.7 to 11.6 ka) as indicated by $d^{18}O$ (ppm), electrical conductivity (micro-amps) and calcium concentrations (ppb) in the Greenland Ice Sheet Program (GISP) ice core from central Greenland.

Source: Reprinted by permission from Grootes (1995). Copyright © National Academy of Sciences. Courtesy of the US National Academy of Sciences, Washington, DC.

higher temperatures, which melt ice and snow, decrease the surface albedo, allowing more absorption of incoming solar radiation and lead to increased surface heating and further warming.

Negative feedback mechanisms appear to be much less important in the face of short-term radiative forcing and it appears that they can only reduce the rate of warming but cannot, of themselves, cause global cooling. Natural and anthropogenic aerosols are thought to have a net cooling effect but the magnitude is highly variable in time and space. Cloud cover effects are particularly complex, producing both positive and negative feedback. Negative feedback may operate when increased global heating leads to greater evaporation and greater amounts of high-altitude cloud cover, which reflect more incoming solar radiation and thus lessen the rise in global temperature.

C THE CLIMATIC RECORD

1 The geological record

To understand the significance of climatic trends over the past century, these trends need to be viewed against the background of past conditions. On geological timescales, global climate periodically undergoes major shifts between a generally warm, ice-free state and an ice age state with continental ice sheets. There have been at least seven major ice ages through geological time. The first occurred 2500 million years ago (Ma) in the Archean period, followed by three more between 900 and 600 Ma, in the Proterozoic. There were two ice ages in the Paleozoic era (the Ordovician, 500 to 430 Ma; and the Permo-Carboniferous, 345 to 225 Ma). The late Cenozoic glaciation began about 15 Ma in Antarctica and about three million years ago in northern high latitudes.

Major ice ages are determined by a combination of external and internal forcing (solar luminosity, continental location, tectonics and atmospheric CO_2 concentration). The ice sheets of the Ordovician and Permo-Carboniferous periods formed in high southern latitudes on the former mega-continent of Gondwanaland, whereas bipolar glaciation developed in the Pliocene–Pleistocene epoch. Alfred Wegener proposed continental drift as a major determinant of climates and biota in 1912, but this idea remained controversial until the motion of crustal plates was identified in the 1960s. Uplift of the western Cordilleras of North America and the Tibetan Plateau by plate movements during the Tertiary period (50 to 52 Ma) caused regional aridity to develop in the respective continental interiors. However, geographical factors are only part of the explanation of climate variations. The mid-Cretaceous period, about 100 Ma, was notably warm in high latitudes. This warmth may be attributable to atmospheric concentrations of carbon dioxide three to seven times those at present, augmented by the effects of alterations in land–sea distribution and ocean heat transport.

Within the major ice ages there are recurrent oscillations between glacial and interglacial conditions (see Box 13.2). Eight such cycles of global ice volume are recorded by land and ocean sediments during the last 0.8 to 0.9 Ma, each averaging ~100 ka, with only 10 per cent of each cycle as warm as the twentieth century (Figure 13.5D and E). Prior to 0.9 Ma, ice volume records have a dominant 41 ka periodicity, while ocean records of calcium carbonate indicate fluctuations of 400 ka. These periodicities represent the forcing of global climate by changes in incoming solar radiation associated with the earth's orbital variations (see Chapter 3A). Building on the work of nineteenth-century astronomers and geologists, calculations published by Milutin Milankovich in 1920 established an astronomical theory of glacial cycles. This became widely accepted only in the 1970s because the inadequate dating of glacial records, as well as the complex nature of radiation–climate relationships and the time lags involved in ice sheet buildup and decay allowed considerable scope for alternative explanations. The precession signature (19 and 23 ka) is most apparent in low-latitude records, whereas that of obliquity (41 ka) is represented in high latitudes. However, the 100-ka orbital eccentricity signal is generally dominant overall. This is surprising because the effect of eccentricity on incoming solar radiation is modest, implying some non-linear interaction in the climate system. Several models of ice sheet growth and decay, incorporating bedrock isostatic response with orbital radiative forcing, also generate ice oscillations with periods of about 100 ka, implying that internal dynamics are important.

Only four or five glaciations are identified on land due to the absence of continuous sedimentary records, but it is likely that in each of these glacial intervals large ice sheets covered northern North America and northern

DOCUMENTING PALAEOCLIMATE

box 13.2
significant 20th-c. advance

Geologists documenting the last Ice Age made the first studies of palaeoclimate in the late nineteenth century. Early progress was hampered by uncertainty as to the age of the earth and the length of the geological record. However, by 1902 it was accepted that there had been at least four or five glacial episodes in the Alps and in North America during the Pleistocene epoch. Explanations were sought in variations of the astronomical periods affecting the earth's orbit, notably by J. Croll (1875) and M. Milankovitch (1920, 1945), and in variations of the solar constant (G. C. Simpson, 1934, 1957). Confirmation that astronomical periodicities act as a 'pacemaker' of the Ice Ages was not forthcoming until the timing of major changes in planktonic foraminiferae in ocean sediment records could be accurately deciphered and dated in the 1970s (J. Hays, J. Imbrie and N. Shackleton, 1976).

The use of proxy evidence to investigate past climate began almost a century ago. In 1910 the Swedish scientist Baron G. de Geer used the annual deposits of sediments (varves) in glacial lakes to date changes in the vegetation inferred from the pollen record. Pollen cores spanning the post-glacial interval, extracted from peatbogs and lake sediments, began to be widely studied in Europe and North America in the 1950s to 1960s following the development of radiocarbon dating of organic materials by W. Libby in 1951. At the same time, the ocean sedimentary record of changes in marine microfauna – both surface (planktonic) and bottom (benthic) foraminifera – began to be investigated. Assemblages of fauna associated with different water masses (polar, subpolar, mid-latitude, tropical) enabled wide latitudinal shifts in ocean temperatures during the Quaternary epoch to be traced. The use of oxygen isotopic ratios (O^{18}/O^{16}) by C. Emiliani and S. Epstein provided independent estimates of ocean temperature and particularly changes in global ice volume. These records showed that there had been eight glacial/interglacial cycles during the past 800,000 years and the record was extended back in time.

In the southwestern United States, counts of annual tree rings had been used by archaeologists early in the twentieth century to date timbers in palaeo-Indian structures. In the 1950s to 1960s, ring width was investigated as a signal of summer drought in the desert margins and summer temperature at high elevations. The field of dendroclimatology, employing statistical methods, developed under the leadership of H. C. Fritts. Subsequently, F. Schweingruber introduced the use of ring density variations analysed by X-ray techniques as a seasonal indicator. The 1970s to 1980s saw numerous sophisticated biological indicators in use. These included insects, particularly beetles, diatoms, ostracods, pack rat middens containing plant macrofossils, and corals.

The most comprehensive information on the palaeo-atmosphere over the past 10,000 to 100,000 years has been retrieved from deep ice cores in Greenland, Antarctica and plateau ice-caps in low latitudes. The principal types of proxy data are: atmospheric temperatures from δO^{18} (developed for glacier ice by W. Dansgaard), accumulation from the annual layer thickness, carbon dioxide and methane concentrations from air bubbles trapped in the ice, volcanic activity from electrical conductivity variations caused by the sulfpates, aerosol load and sources (continental, marine and volcanic). The earliest deep cores were collected at Camp Century in northwest Greenland and Byrd station in West Antarctica in the 1960s, but the most important records are from two cores (GISP II and GRIP) from Summit, Greenland, and the longest from Vostok, East Antarctica. The first two span about 140,000 years and the latter 450,000 years.

Europe. Sea-levels were also lowered by about 130 m due to the large volume of water locked up in the ice. Records from tropical lake basins show that these regions were generally arid at those times. The last such glacial maximum climaxed about 20,000 years ago, and 'modern' climatic conditions became established only during post-glacial (Holocene) time – conventionally dated to 10,000 years BP. This timescale is used whenever dates are based on radiocarbon (carbon-14, ^{14}C) dating or other radiometric methods involving isotopic decay processes, such as potassium-argon (K–Ar).

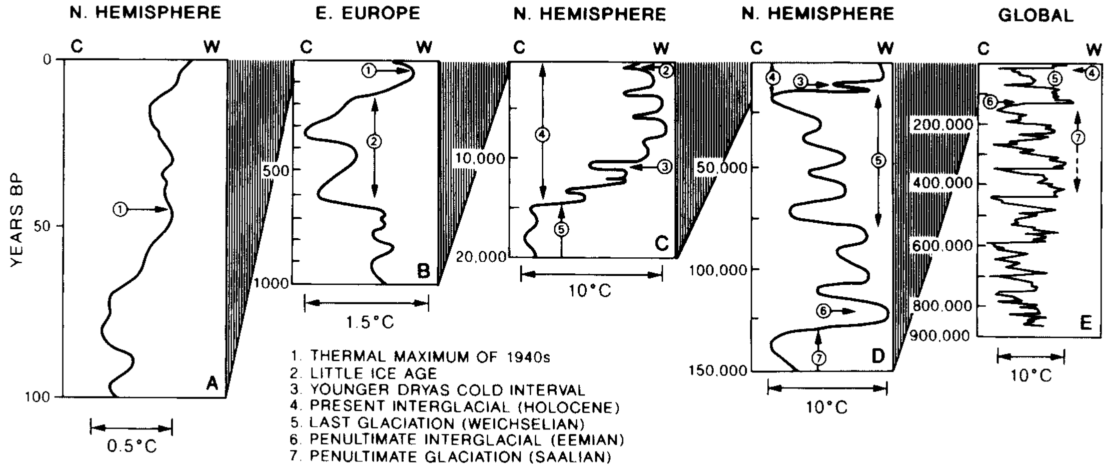


Figure 13.5 Main trends in global climate during the past million years or so. (A) Northern hemisphere, average land–air temperatures. (B) Eastern Europe, winter temperatures. (C) Northern hemisphere, average land–air temperatures. (D) Northern hemisphere, average air temperatures based partly on sea-surface temperatures. (E) Global average temperatures derived from deep-sea cores.

Source: Data taken from *Understanding Climatic Change: A Program for Action* (1975), National Academy Press, Washington, DC. Courtesy of the US National Academy of Sciences, Washington, DC.

Information on past climatic conditions is obtained from many proxy records. For example, the advance and retreat of glaciers represents a response to winter snowfall and summer melt. The history of vegetation, which indicates temperature and moisture conditions, can be traced from pollen types preserved in lake sediments and peatbogs. Former lake shorelines indicate changes in moisture balance. Estimates of seasonal climatic elements can be made from studies of annual snow/ice layers in cores taken from polar ice sheets, where no melt occurs. These layers also record past volcanic events through the inclusion of micro-particles and chemical compounds in the ice, while gas bubbles trapped in the ice provide data on the past composition of the atmosphere. In forest biomes where trees form an annual growth layer, the ring width can be interpreted through dendroclimatological studies in terms of moisture availability (in semi-arid regions) and summer warmth (near the polar and alpine tree lines). Ice cores document the past 150,000 years in Greenland and 450,000 years in Antarctica. Pollen sequences and lake level records usually span the past 10,000 to 20,000 years, while tree rings rarely extend more than 1000 years. For the last millennium, historical documents often record crop harvests or extreme weather events (droughts, floods, river and lake freezing, etc.).

2 Late glacial and post-glacial conditions

The 100-ka glacial cycles of the last 0.8 Ma show characteristic abrupt terminations. The last glaciation, for example, ended with abrupt warming about 14,700 to 13,000 BP, interrupted by a short cold regression (the Younger Dryas, 12,900 to 11,600 BP), followed by a renewed sharp warming trend (see Figure 13.4). These shifts clearly involve some non-linear processes and threshold effects, but many details remain unresolved.

Early Holocene warmth around 10,000 BP is attributed to July solar radiation being 30 to 40W m^{-2} greater than now in northern mid-latitudes, due to the combined orbital effects. Following the final retreat of the continental ice sheets from Europe and North America between 10,000 and 7000 years ago, the climate rapidly ameliorated in middle and higher latitudes. In the subtropics this interval was also generally wetter, with high lake levels in Africa and the Middle East. A *thermal maximum* was reached in the mid-latitudes about 5000 years ago, when summer temperatures were 1 to 2°C higher than today (see Figure 13.5B) and the Arctic tree line was several hundred kilometres further north in Eurasia and North America. By this time, subtropical desert regions were again very dry and were largely abandoned by primitive peoples. A temperature decline set in around 2000 years ago with colder, wetter conditions in Europe and North America. Although temperatures since have not equalled those of the thermal maximum, a warmer interval or intervals occurred between the ninth and mid-fifteenth centuries AD. Summer temperatures in Scandinavia, China, the Sierra Nevada (California), Canadian Rocky Mountains and Tasmania exceeded those that prevailed until the late twentieth century.

3 The past 1000 years

Temperature reconstructions for the northern hemisphere over the past millennium are based on several types of proxy data, but especially dendrochronology, ice cores and historical records. Figure 13.6 shows such reconstructions for the past millennium. Given that the range of twice the standard error is ±0.5°C until about 1600, there is still considerable disparity in different estimates of decadal mean values and their range of variation. Conditions appear to have been slightly warmer between AD 1050 and 1330 than between 1400 and 1900. Documentary records for western and central Europe show a warm phase around AD 1300. Icelandic records indicate mild conditions up to the late twelfth century, and this phase was marked by the Viking colonization of Greenland and the occupation of Ellesmere Island in the Canadian Arctic by the Innuit. Deteriorating conditions followed, and severe winters between AD 1450 and 1700 gave a ‘Little Ice Age’ with extensive Arctic pack-ice and glacier advances in some areas to maximum positions since the end of the Ice Age. These advances occurred at dates ranging from the mid-seventeenth to the late nineteenth century in Europe, as a result of the lag in glacier response and regional variability. The coldest interval of the Little Ice Age in the northern hemisphere was AD 1570 to 1730.

Climate records for the past 500 years suggest fluctuations on three time intervals: fifteen to thirty-five years with a peak-to-peak amplitude of 0.3°C; fifty to a hundred years with a 1.0°C amplitude over the North Atlantic–Arctic; and 100 to 400-year global oscillations of about 0.75°C. The shortest interval is apparently linked to ENSO/PNA circulation modes and the fifty- to hundred-year scale to low-frequency changes in the thermohaline circulation. Interdecadal variability seems to be mostly induced by atmospheric dynamics. Much of the variance in winter temperatures is associated with the varying strength of land/ocean contrasts in the 1000 to 500 mb thickness field.

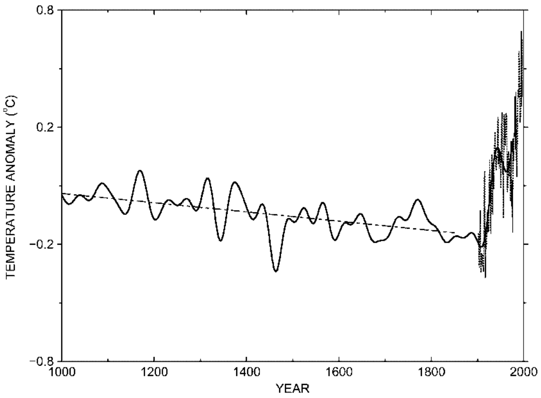


Figure 13.6 Trends of air temperature for the northern hemisphere over the past millennium. The reconstructed forty-year smoothed values are plotted for 1000 to 1880 together with the linear trend 1000 to 1850, and observed temperatures for 1902 to 1998. The reconstruction is based on estimates from ice cores, tree rings and historical records and has two standard error limits of about ±0.5°C during 1000 to 1600. The values are plotted as anomalies relative to 1961 to 1990.

Source: Adapted from Mann *et al*. (1999), courtesy of M.E. Mann, University of Virginia, and the American Geophysical Union.

Long instrumental records for stations in Europe and the eastern United States indicate that the warming trend that ended the ‘Little Ice Age’ had begun at least by the mid-nineteenth century (Figure 13.7). Global records since 1881 (Figure 13.8) show a significant, but irregular, temperature rise of between 0.3 and 0.6°C, probably closer to the upper estimate. This trend was least in the tropics and greatest in cloudy, maritime regions of high latitudes. Winter temperatures were most affected. The general temperature rise has not been continuous, however, and four phases can be identified:

1. *1881 to 1920*, during which there was mean annual oscillation within extreme limits of 0.4°C but no consistent trend.
2. *1920 to mid-1940s*, during which there was considerable warming averaging 0.4°C.
3. *The mid-1940s to early 1970s*, during which there were oscillations within extreme limits of less than 0.4°C, with the northern hemisphere cooling slightly on average and the southern hemisphere remaining fairly constant in temperature. Regionally, northern Siberia, the eastern Canadian Arctic and Alaska experienced a mean lowering of winter temperatures by 2 to 3°C between 1940 and 1949 and 1950 and

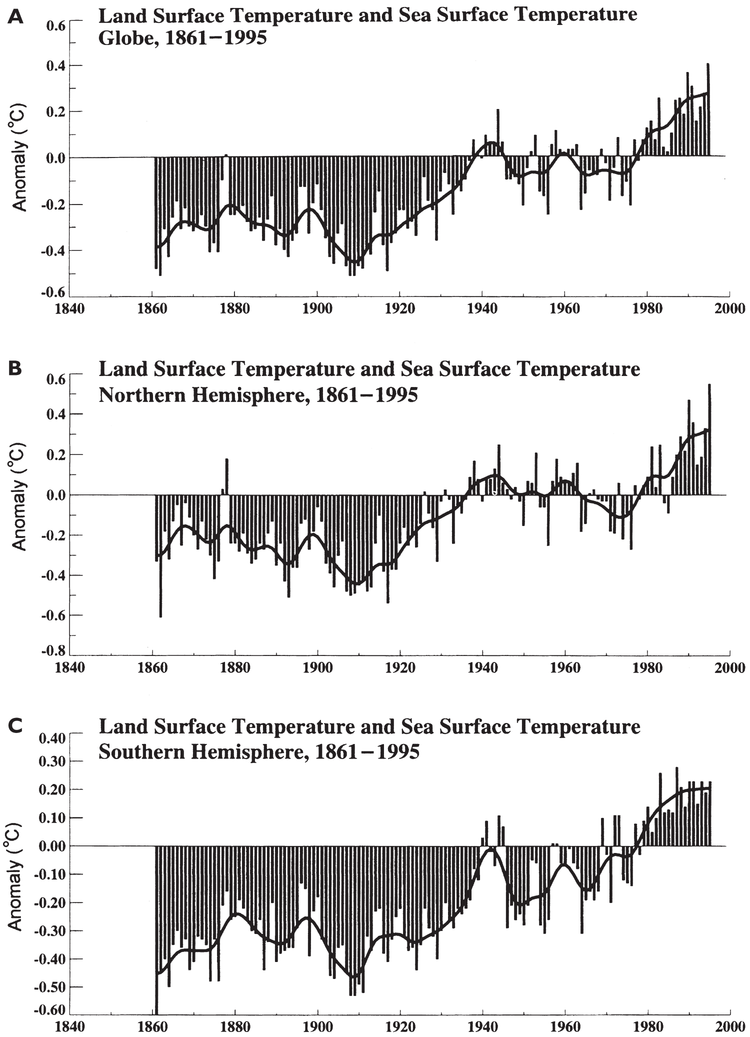


Figure 13.7 Long-term records of winter (December to February) and summer (June to August) temperatures over the past 200 years for a number of northern hemisphere stations, smoothed with a ten-year Gaussian filter.

Source: After Parker *et al*. (1996). Reproduced from *Weather* by permission of the Royal Meteorological Society, copyright ©.

1959; this was partly compensated by a slight warming in the western United States, eastern Europe and Japan.

4 *The mid-1970s to 2000*, during which there was a marked overall warming of about 0.5°C, except for areas of the North and South Pacific, North Atlantic, Europe, Amazonia and Antarctica (see Figure 13.9). In a few regions the warming exceeded 1.0°C.

Based on balloon soundings, the global tropospheric temperature increase (up to 8 km) since the late 1950s has been about 0.1°C/decade, similar to that at the surface. However, the satellite sounding record of tropospheric temperatures shows a lesser rate of warming than the surface air temperature: only 0.05° ±0.10 C/decade versus 0.15 ± 0.05 °C/decade. The differences are mainly in the tropics and subtropics and are not fully explained. Reasons include the effects of ENSO events and atmospheric aerosols. In the tropics, the tropospheric warming (1976 to 1990) exceeded that at the surface, while the opposite was found in high latitudes (except the Arctic).

Global temperatures during the past decade reached the highest levels on record and probably for the past millennium. The warmest years on record were 1998, 2001, 1995 and 1990, in that order (see Figures 13.6 and 13.8). In the southern hemisphere, where the twentieth-century warming was delayed, there has been a rather irregular warming since 1930 of about 0.5°C. The

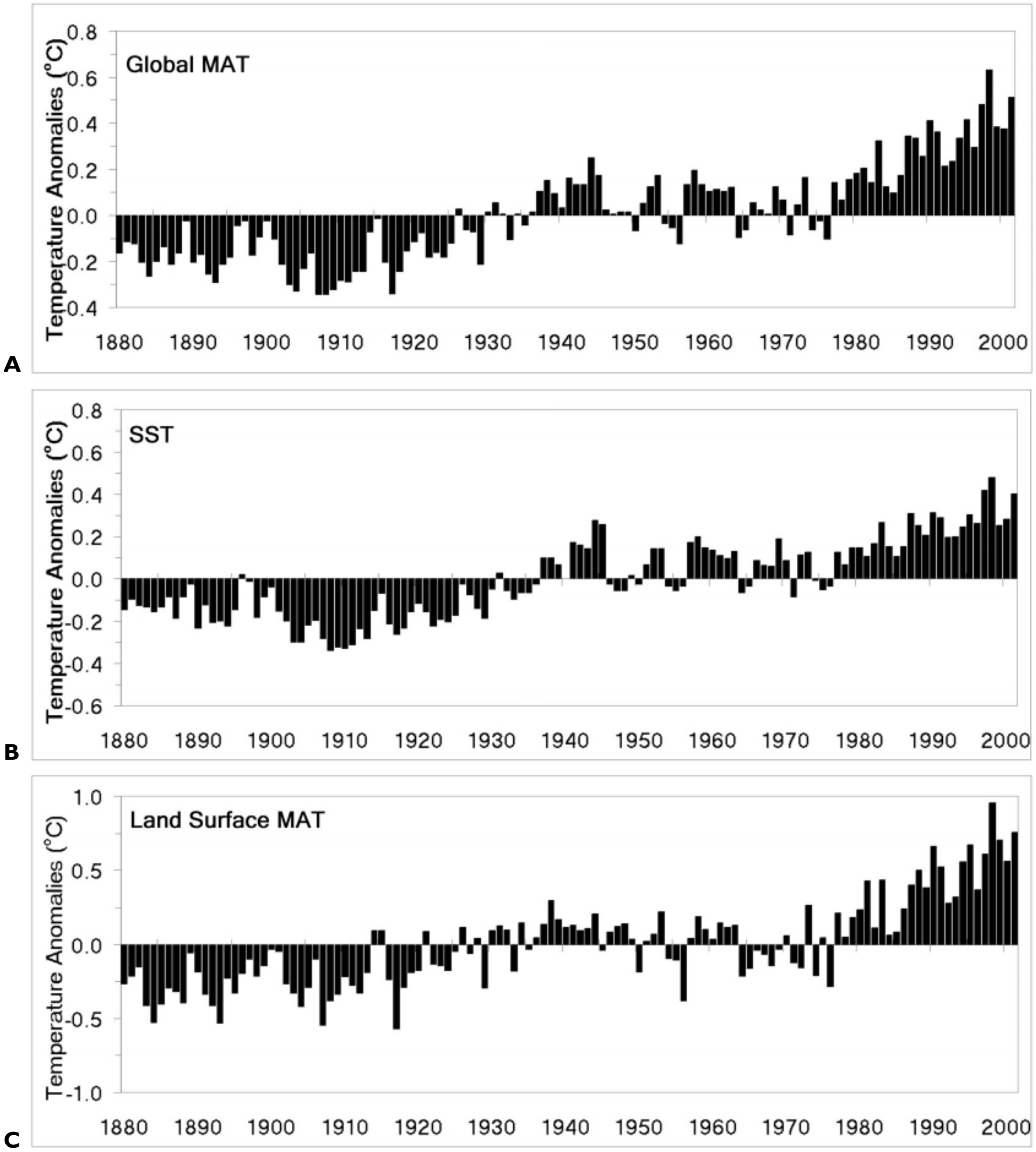


Figure 13.8 Global mean annual temperature anomalies (°C) from the base period 1880 to 2000 for: (A) Combined land–air and sea-surface temperatures. (B) Sea surface. (C) Land surface.

Source: Waple *et al*. (2002), by permission of the American Meteorological Society.

twentieth-century global warming was approximately 0.75°C, which appears to exceed natural trends (estimated from statistical modelling) of 0.3°C/100 years. There is now a wide consensus that this global warming is largely a result of increasing greenhouse gas concentrations, but some characteristics of change are problematic. For example, experiments with general circulation models for doubled CO_2 concentrations (see Figure 13.20) indicate significant amplification of warming in high latitudes in winter. This signal, attributable to feedback effects between surface albedo and temperature associated with reduced snow cover

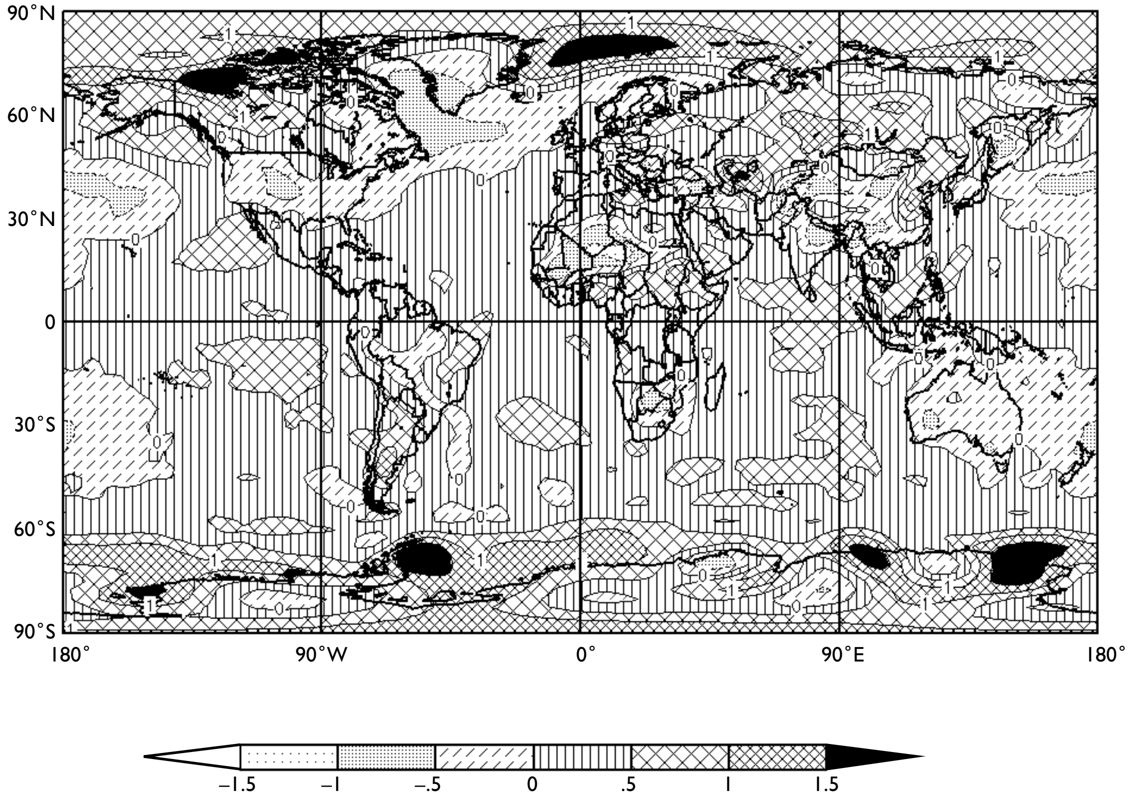


Figure 13.9 The global difference in 1000-mb air temperature between 1976 and 2000 and 1950 and 1975. The contour interval is 0.5°C.

Source: Climate Diagnostics Center, CIRES, University of Colorado, Boulder.

and sea ice, is apparent in northern high latitudes for the interval 1950 to 1975 and 1975 to 2000 (see Figure 13.9). In central England, the warming is evidenced by the increasing length of the growing season (daily mean temperature >5°C for five days in succession). The season lengthened by twenty-eight days over the twentieth century and was about 270 days in the 1990s compared with around 230 to 250 days in the eighteenth and nineteenth centuries.

A further tendency of the past fifty years or so is a decrease in the diurnal temperature range; night-time minimum temperatures increased by 0.8°C during 1951 to 1990 over at least half of the northern land areas compared with only 0.3°C for daytime maximum temperatures. This appears to be mainly a result of increased cloudiness, which, in turn, *may* be a response to increased greenhouse gases and tropospheric aerosols. However, the linkages are not yet adequately determined.

Precipitation records are much more difficult to characterize. Since the mid-twentieth century, decreases dominate much of the tropics and subtropics from North Africa eastward to Southeast Asia and Indonesia (Figure 13.10). Many of the dry episodes are associated with El Niño events. Equatorial South America and Australasia also show ENSO influences. The Indian monsoon area shows wetter and drier intervals; the drier periods are evident in the early twentieth century and during 1961 to 1990.

The West African records for this century (Figure 13.11) show a tendency for both wet and dry years to occur in runs of up to ten to eighteen years. Precipitation minima were experienced in the 1910s, 1940s and post-1968, with intervening wet years, in all of sub-Saharan West Africa. Throughout the two northern zones outlined in Figure 13.11, means for 1970 to 1984 were generally <50 per cent of those for 1950 to 1959, with deficits during 1981 and 1984 equal to or exceeding those of the

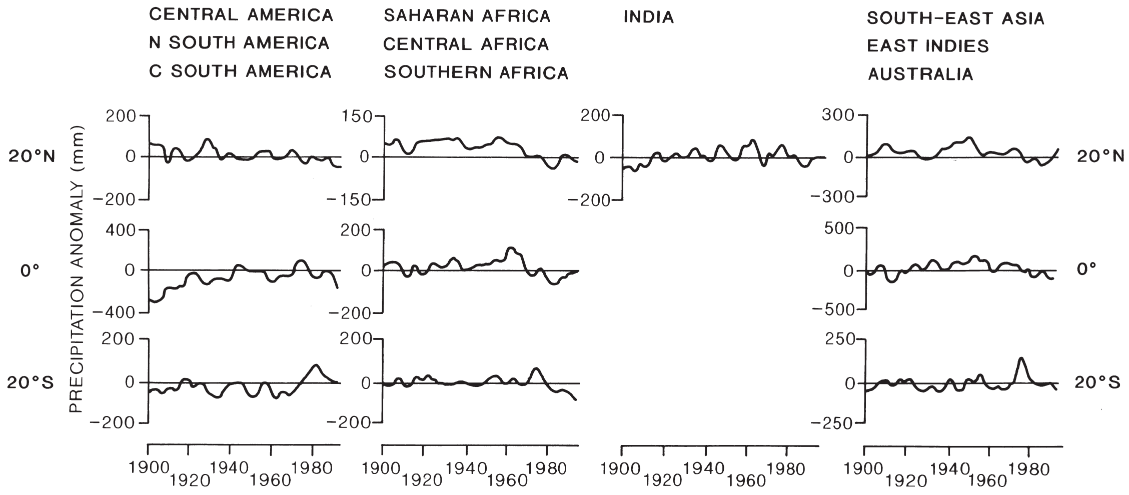


Figure 13.10 Variations of tropical and subtropical land area precipitation anomalies relative to 1961 to 1990; 9-point binomially smoothed curves superimposed on the annual anomalies.

Source: Houghton *et al*. (1996).

disastrous early 1970s drought. The deficits continued into the 1990s. It has been suggested that the severe drought is related to weakening of the tropical easterly jet stream and limited northward penetration of the West Africa southwesterly monsoon flow. However, Sharon Nicholson attributes the precipitation fluctuations to contraction and expansion of the Saharan arid core, rather than to north–south shifts of the desert margin. In Australia, rainfall changes have been related to changes in the location and intensity of subtropical anticyclones and associated changes in atmospheric circulation. Winter rainfall decreased in southwestern Australia while summer rainfall increased in the southeast, particularly after 1950. Northeastern Australia shows decadal oscillations and large inter-annual variability.

In middle latitudes, precipitation changes are usually less pronounced. Figure 13.12 illustrates long-term fluctuations for England and Wales in winter and summer. There is large interannual variability, and some decadal shifts of up to 30 per cent are evident. Winters have been wetter from about 1860 compared with earlier, while summer rainfall was lower from the latter nineteenth century than earlier; summer rainfall has also declined since 1960. Records for individual stations show that even over relatively short distances there may be considerable differences in the magnitude of anomalies, especially in an east–west direction across the British Isles.

Associated with the global warming in the late twentieth century are more frequent climatic extremes. For example, during the past three decades Britain has experienced several major droughts (1976, 1984, 1989 to 1992 and 1995); seven severe winter cold spells occurred between 1978 and 1987 (compared with only three in the preceding forty years); and several major windstorms (1987, 1989 and 1990) were recorded. The driest twenty-eight-month spell (1988 to 1992) recorded in Britain since 1850 was followed by the wettest thirty-two-month interval of the twentieth century. In the United States, the past twenty years has shown a marked increase in the interannual variability of mean winter temperatures and total precipitation, particularly when compared with the preceding twenty years. Nineteen eighty-three saw the most intense El Niño event for a century, followed by a comparable event in 1998, and Hurricane Gilbert (1988) was the most severe storm on record.

In the face of these changes and speculations, however, it must be remembered that non-anthropogenic temperature changes of considerable magnitude have been common since the end of the last glaciation. It is likely that part of the temperature increase during the past 100 years or so is a result of the general temperature upturn following the Little Ice Age (see Figures 13.5B and 13.6). It is therefore to be expected that global or hemispheric temperatures may vary through several

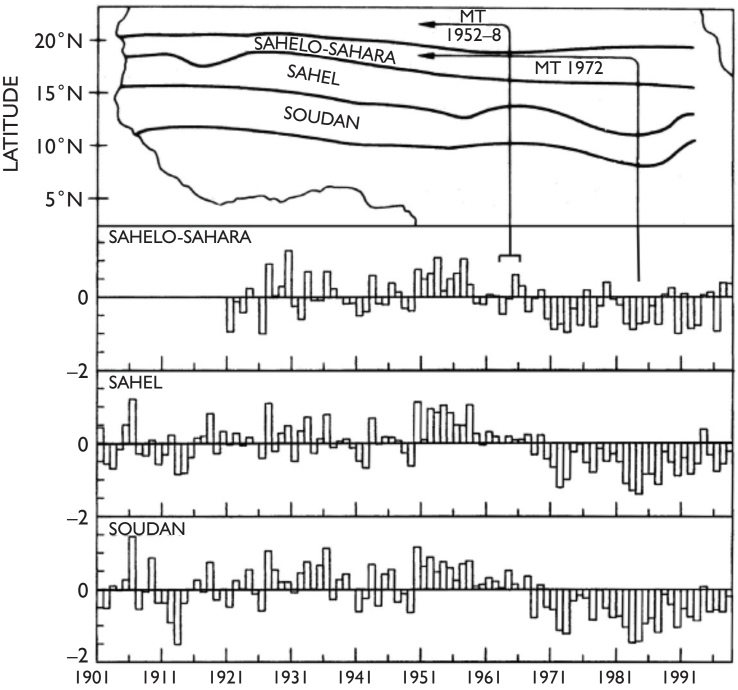


Figure 13.11 Rainfall variations (percentage of standard departures) between 1901 and 1998 for the Sahelo–Sahara, Sahel and Soudan zones of West Africa. The average positions of the monsoon trough (MT) in northern Nigeria during 1952 to 1958 and in 1972 (El Niño year) are shown.

Source: From Nicholson (1980) and Nicholson *et al*. (2000), p. 2630, fig. 3). Courtesy of the American Meteorological Society.

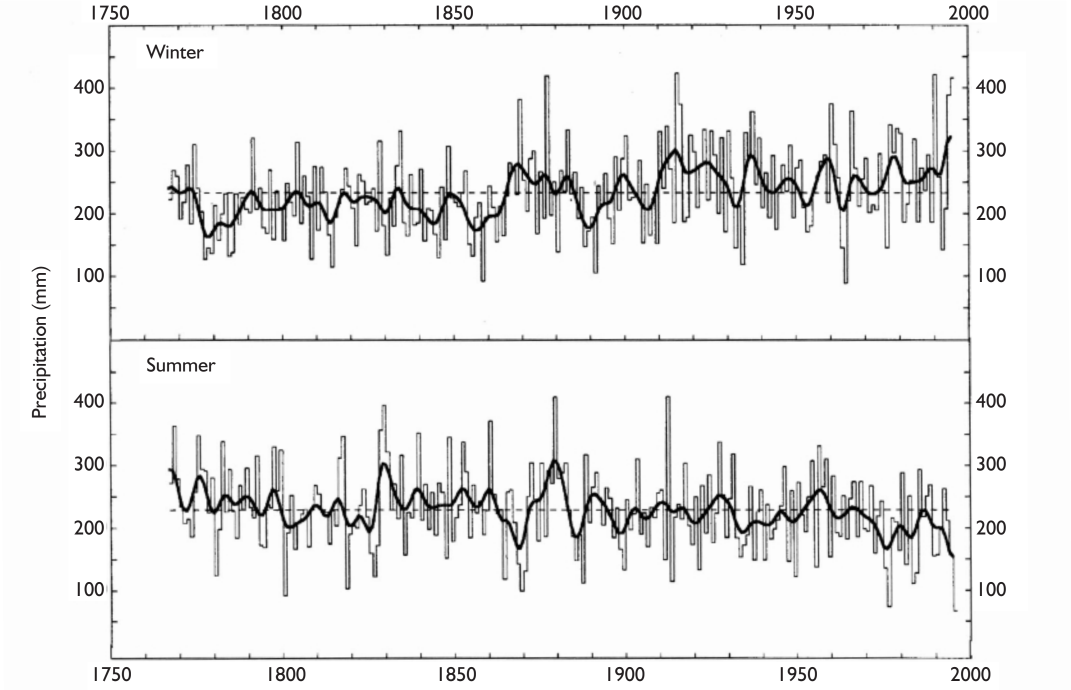


Figure 13.12 Time series of winter and summer precipitation (mm) for England and Wales, 1767 to 1995. The smooth line is a filter that suppresses variations of ≤ 10-yr length.

Source: From Jones *et al*. (1997, p. 204, fig. 10.5). Copyright © Routledge, London.

tenths of a degree Celsius within a few years. Neither is it easy to explain the existence of periods of relatively stable global temperatures (e.g. 1861 to 1920 and the mid-1940s to early 1970s) at times of continuing increases of greenhouse gas concentration. Nevertheless, the general warming since the mid-twentieth century and the most recent climatic events seem to be a response to the changes in atmospheric composition noted in Chapter 2A.4 (rather than to other forcing mechanisms such as solar variations). In addition, it is recognized that the course of climatic change is undoubtedly complicated by little-known global mechanisms such as the inertial effects of the oceans and the possibly periodic effects of deep ocean currents. Overall, there remains a strong impression that natural climatic variability may from time to time be merely offsetting an inexorable and increasingly menacing anthropogenic increase of global temperature.

D POSSIBLE CAUSES OF RECENT CLIMATIC CHANGE

Remarkably, the causes of the observed climatic changes over the past few centuries are no better understood than that of the last glacial cycle. A multiplicity of possible explanations exists and, indeed, more than one factor is likely to be involved. It is useful to try to distinguish between the natural causes that have existed throughout the earth's history and those attributable to human activities. However, in many instances – such as the production of tropospheric aerosols – the two operate together.

1 Circulation changes

The immediate cause of the climatic fluctuations in the early twentieth century appears to be the strength of the global wind circulation. The first thirty years of the century saw a pronounced increase in the vigour of the westerlies over the North Atlantic, the northeast trades, the summer monsoon of South Asia and the southern hemisphere westerlies (in summer). Over the North Atlantic, these changes consisted of an increased pressure gradient between the Azores high and the Icelandic low, as the latter deepened, and also between the Icelandic low and the Siberian high, which spread westward. These changes were accompanied by more northerly depression tracks, and this resulted in a significant increase in the frequency of mild south-westerly airflow over the British Isles between about 1900 and 1930, as reflected by the average annual frequency of Lamb's westerly airflow type (see Chapter 10A.3). For 1873 to 1897, 1898 to 1937, 1938 to 1961 and 1962 to 1995 the figures are 27, 38, 30 and 21 per cent, respectively. Coinciding with the westerly decline, cyclonic and anticyclonic types increased substantially (Figure 13.13). The decrease in westerly airflow during the last thirty-year interval, especially in winter, is linked with greater continentality in Europe. These regional indicators reflect a general decline in the overall strength of the mid-latitude circumpolar westerlies, accompanying an apparent expansion of the polar vortex.

Marked climatic fluctuations have occurred in the North Atlantic sector in association with the dominant phase of the North Atlantic Oscillation. This was mostly negative between the 1930s and 1970s but returned after 1980 to the mainly positive phase (giving enhanced westerly flow) that dominated the first two decades of the twentieth century. The winters 1995 to 1996 and 1996 to 1997, however, interrupted a run of mild winters in northern Europe.

Other coupled atmosphere–ocean anomalies may affect climatic trends on a global scale. For example, the occurrence and intensity of the warm phases of ENSO events are estimated to have increased the global mean temperature by about 0.06°C between 1950 and 1998.

2 Energy budgets

The key to these atmospheric variations must be linked to the heat balance of the earth–atmosphere system and this forces us to return to the fundamental energy considerations discussed in Chapter 3. The evidence for fluctuations greater than 0.5 per cent in the 'solar constant' is inconclusive, although significant variations apparently do occur in the emission of high-energy particles and ultraviolet radiation during brief solar flares. All solar activity follows the well-known Schwabe cycle of approximately eleven years, which is usually measured with reference to the period between sunspot maximum and minimum (see Figure 3.2). Recent solar cycles show that the solar irradiation varies by about 1.1 W m-^{2}, with a corresponding air temperature fluctuation of ≤0.1°C. As was pointed out in Chapter 3A.1, sunspot darkening is accompanied by increased emission from

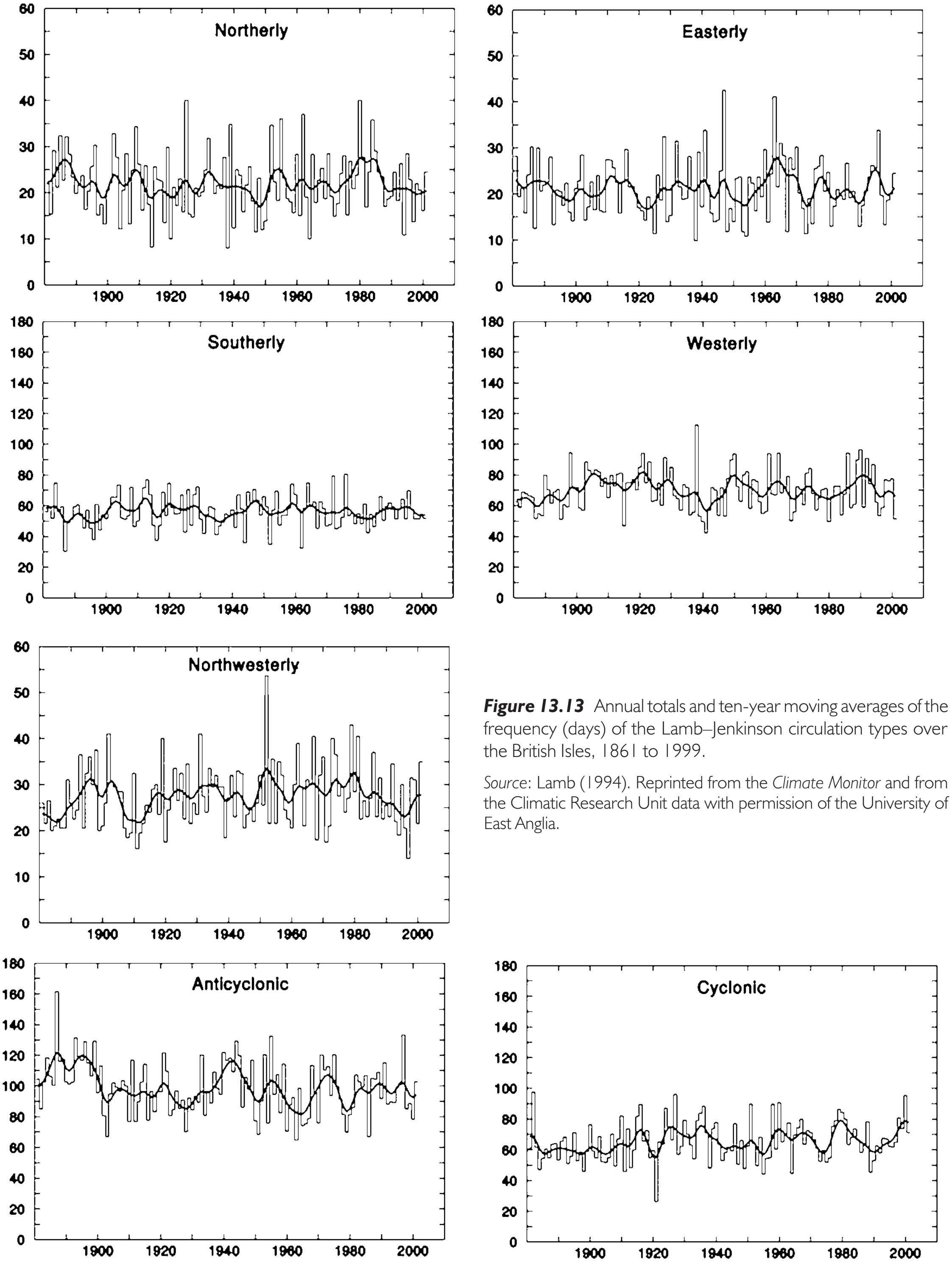


Figure 13.13 Annual totals and ten-year moving averages of the frequency (days) of the Lamb–Jenkinson circulation types over the British Isles, 1861 to 1999.

Source: Lamb (1994). Reprinted from the *Climate Monitor* and from the Climatic Research Unit data with permission of the University of East Anglia.

faculae that is 1.5 times greater than the darkening effect. There may also be a longer term variation of solar irradiance, based on data from sun-like stars in states resembling the Maunder sunspot minimum (1645 to 1715). These variations in solar irradiance appear to have largely determined global temperature fluctuations until the mid-nineteenth century, and about half of the warming between 1860 and 1950. Since the 1970s, anthropogenic forcing has accounted for half of the changes, solar forcing around 30 per cent and internal variability 10 to 20 per cent. The mechanisms involved in solar forcing are unclear. It is suggested by David Rind that, over a wide range of timescales, direct solar forcing is a relatively minor component of climate change compared with the its potential triggering of interactions involving a variety of feedback processes. There appear to be regional patterns in the temperature response to solar variability with the largest signals in low latitudes where there are large insolation totals and over oceans where the albedo is low. Hence, maximum responses are likely to occur over eastern tropical ocean areas. Recent GCM simulations suggest that enhanced solar irradiance during a sunspot maximum with a corresponding increase of about 1.5 per cent in column ozone modifies the global circulation; the Hadley cells weaken and the subtropical jet streams and Ferrel cells shift poleward. A statistical relationship has also been found between the occurrence of droughts in the western United States during the past 300 years, determined from tree ring data and the approximately twenty-two-year double (Hale) cycle of the reversal of the solar magnetic polarity. Drought areas are most extensive in the two to five years following a Hale sunspot minimum (i.e. alternate eleven-year sunspot minima). A mechanism is not established, however.

Changes in atmospheric composition may also have modified the atmospheric heat budget. The presence of increased amounts of volcanic dust and sulphate aerosols in the stratosphere is one suggested cause of the ‘Little Ice Age’. Major eruptions can result in a surface cooling of perhaps 0.5°C for one or two years after the event (see Box 13.3). Hence frequent volcanic activity would be required for persistently cooler conditions. Conversely, it is suggested that reduced volcanic activity after 1914 may have contributed in part to the early twentieth-century warming. New interest in this question has been aroused by eruptions of El Chichón (March 1982) and Mount Pinatubo (June 1991) (see Chapter 2A.4). Surface temperatures over the northern continents were up to 2°C below average in summer 1992 but up to 3°C above average in the winters of 1991 to 1992 and 1992 to 1993. Volcanic forcing is hard to determine because there have been few well-observed events.

The role of low-level aerosols is also complex. These originate naturally, from wind-blown soil and silt, as well as from atmospheric pollution due to human activities (industry, domestic heating and modern transportation) (Table 2.2). Their net radiative effect is negative due to scattering, but the magnitude is poorly determined (see below).

Striking evidence of cumulative human effects on the global energy budget is found in the increase in ocean heat content. The world ocean between the surface and 3000-m depth gained ~18×10^{22} J between 1955 and 1996 based on ocean temperature data. The quantitative significance of this number is apparent from Figure 12.1. By comparison, changes in the heat content of the atmosphere and of land ice and sea ice over the same period were an order of magnitude smaller. Model results imply that the change in ocean heat content was attributable to greenhouse gas-induced global warming. These anthropogenic factors are discussed below.

3 Anthropogenic factors

The growing influence of human activities on the environment is being increasingly recognized, and concern over the potential for global warming caused by such anthropogenic effects is growing. Four categories of climatic variable are subject to change (Table 13.2) and will now be considered in turn.

Changes in atmospheric composition associated with the explosive growth of world population, industry and technology have been described in Chapter 2A.4, and it is clear that these have led to dramatic increases in the concentration of greenhouse gases. The tendency of these increases is to increase radiative forcing and global temperatures; the percentage apportionment of radiative forcing of these greenhouse gas increases since the pre-industrial era is summarized in Table 13.3, together with the associated ranges of uncertainty and levels of confidence assigned to each factor. The radiative forcing effect of the minor trace gases is projected to increase steadily. Up to 1960, the cumulative CO_2 contribution since AD 1750 was about 67 per cent of the calculated 1.2 Wm^{-2} forcing, whereas for 1980 to 1990 the CO_2

VOLCANIC ERUPTIONS AND CLIMATE

box 13.3 **topical issue**

The eruption of Krakatao volcano in Indonesia in 1883 demonstrated the global significance of large explosive events in andesitic volcanic cones. The eruption was followed by dramatic red sunsets around the world, as a result of the injection of aerosols into the stratosphere, and by cooler conditions. However, after the 1912 eruption of Katmai in the Aleutian Islands there was a lull in volcanic activity until Agung in Bali erupted in 1963. Aerosols from equatorial eruptions can disperse into both hemispheres whereas those in middle and high latitudes cannot be transferred equatorward due to the upper circulation structure. Non-explosive eruptions of basaltic shield volcanoes of the Hawaiian type do not inject material into the stratosphere. Volcanic aerosols are often measured in terms of a dust veil index (DVI), first proposed by H. H. Lamb, that takes account of the maximum depletion of monthly average direct incoming radiation measured in the middle latitudes of the hemisphere concerned, the maximum spatial extent of the dust veil, and persistence of the dust veil. However, this cannot be calculated directly for historical events.

The largest DVI values are estimated for 1835 and 1815 to 1816. Volcanologists use a Volcanic Explosivity Index (VEI) to rank eruptions on a scale of 0–8. El Chichon (1982) and Agung (1963) are rated 4, but the index may not necessarily be a good indicator of climatic effects.

The atmospheric effects involve both micro-particles of dust as large particles rapidly settle out and gaseous sulphur, which forms sulphate aerosols. These lead to acidity in the snow falling on ice sheets and this can be measured by determing the signal of electrical conductivity in an ice core.

Sulphate aerosols play a significant radiative role by increasing atmospheric turbidity and therefore reducting the transmission of incoming solar radiation. Temperatures in mid-latitudes in the year following a major eruption are reduced on average by 0.5 to 1.0°C. Dramatic evidence of such effects was provided by the 'year without a summer' in 1816, following the eruption of Tambora in 1815. This seriously impacted on societies in many parts of the world. However, it also followed a series of cold winters in Europe. Mount Pinatubo caused a larger seasonal response over the northern continents amounting to 2°C cooling in summer 1992 and up to 3°C warming in the winters of 1991 to 1992 and 1992 to 1993.

It appears that repeated major eruptions are required in order for there to be long-term climatic effects. Ice core records provide long histories of volcanic eruptions through the late Pleistocene and do show episodes of more frequent eruptions.

Table 13.2 The four categories of climatic variable subject to change.

Variable changed	*Scale of effect*	*Sources of change*
Atmospheric composition	Local–global	Release of aerosols and trace gases
Surface properties; energy budgets	Regional	Deforestation; desertification; urbanization
Wind regime	Local–regional	Deforestation; urbanization
Hydrological cycle components	Local–regional	Deforestation; desertification, irrigation; urbanization

Table 13.3 Percentage apportionment of radiative forcing due to greenhouse gas increases.

	CO_2	CH_4	CFCs	Stratospheric H_2O*	N_2O
Since 1795	61	17	12	6	4
1980 to 1990	56	11	24	4	6

Note: *From the breakdown of CH_4.

contribution decreased to 56 per cent, with CFCs contributing 24 per cent and methane 11 per cent. For the entire period since AD 1765, the CO_2 contribution is about 60 per cent out of an estimated 2.4 W m^{-2} total greenhouse gas forcing, methane 20 per cent, CFCs 12 per cent and nitrous oxide 6 per cent. Figure 13.14 provides a summary of the global annual mean forcing from 1850 to 2000 and the level of confidence that can be ascribed to each factor.

The increase in global temperature forcing by the release of CFCs is particularly worrying. Ozone, which at high altitudes absorbs incoming short-wave radiation, is being dramatically destroyed above 25 km in the stratosphere (see Chapter 2A.7) by emissions of H_2O and NO_x by jet aircraft and by surface emissions of N_2O by combustion and, especially, of CFCs. It is estimated that CFCs are now accumulating in the stratosphere five times faster than they can be destroyed by ultraviolet radiation. Ozone circulates in the stratosphere from low to high latitudes and thus the occurrence of ozone in polar regions is diagnostic of its global concentration. In October 1984, an area of marked ozone depletion (the so-called 'ozone hole') was observed in the lower stratosphere (i.e. 12 to 24 km) centred on, but extending far beyond, the Antarctic continent. Ozone depletion is always greatest in the Antarctic spring, but in that year the ozone concentration was more than 40 per cent lower than in October 1977. By 1990, Antarctic ozone concentrations

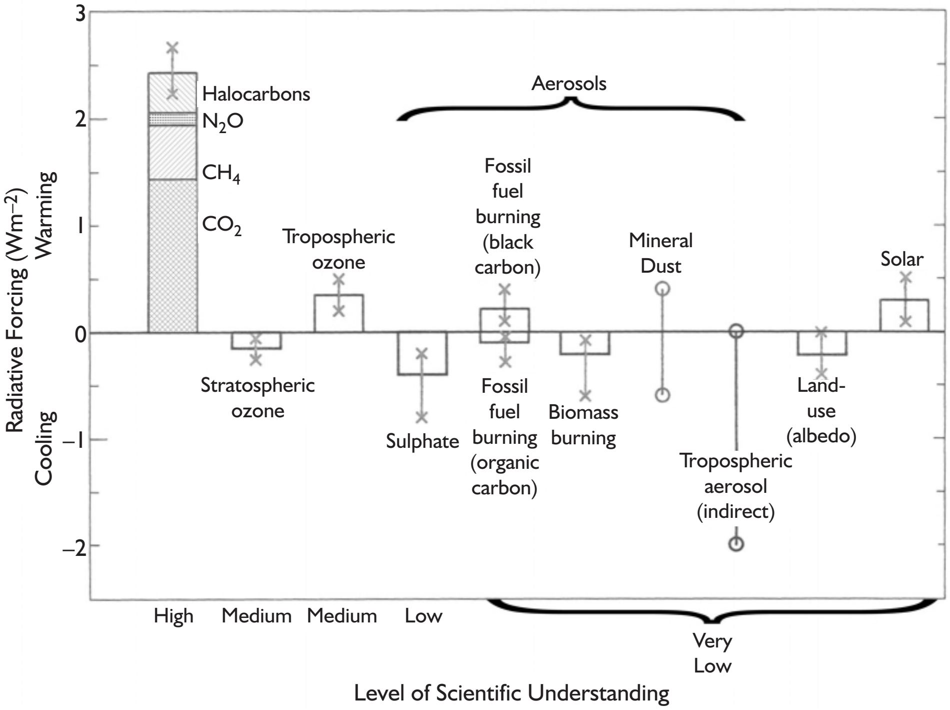


Figure 13.14 Estimates of global mean radiative forcing (W m^{-2}) due to changes in concentrations of greenhouse gases and anthropogenic aerosols (pre-industrial, about 1750 to about 2000) and to natural changes in solar output (1950 to the present). The error bars indicate the uncertainty ranges. The level of scientific understanding is considered high for greenhouse gases, medium for ozone, low for sulphate and very low for other factors to the right on the graph.

Source: Adapted from Ramaswamy *et al*., in Houghton *et al*. (2001). Reproduced by permission of the IPCC and Cambridge University Press.

had fallen to about 200 Dobson units in September to October (see Figure 2.9), compared with 400 units in the 1970s. In the extreme years (1993 to 1995), record minima of 116 DU have been recorded at the South Pole. It has been estimated that, because of the slowness of the global circulation of CFCs and of its reaction with ozone, even a cut in CFC emissions to the level of that in 1970 would not eliminate the Antarctic ozone hole for at least fifty years. Winter ozone depletion also occurs in the Arctic stratosphere and was well marked in 1996 and 1997, but absent in 1998. Localized mini-holes are fairly common, but extensive holes are rare even in cold stratospheric winters. It seems that whereas the Antarctic vortex is isolated from the mid-latitude circulation, the Arctic vortex is more dynamic so that transport of ozone from lower latitudes makes up much of the loss.

Predictions regarding the future climatic effects of changes in atmospheric composition will be treated in section F, this chapter.

The role of tropospheric aerosols in climate forcing and the magnitude of such effects are poorly known (see Figure 13.14). There are four key aerosol types (see Chapter 2A.4), and these have a variety of effects:

1. *Black carbon* – absorbs solar radiation; changes the vertical temperature gradient.
2. *Water-soluble inorganic species* (SO_2, NO_3, NH_4) – backscatter of direct beam solar radiation, indirect effect of CCN on cloud albedo and cloud droplet lifetime.
3. *Condensed organic species* – as (2).
4. *Mineral dust* – as (1), (2) and absorption/emission of infra-red radiation.

The global mean forcing exerted by the principal aerosols for 1750 to the present (see Figure 13.14) is approximately as follows:

- sulphate aerosols –0.4 W m^{-2};
- biomass-burning aerosols –0.1 W m^{-2} (fossil fuel organic carbon) and + 0.2 Wm^{-2} (fossil fuel black carbon);
- mineral dust aerosols are in the range 0.5 to –0.6 W m^{-2} for the direct effect but 0 to –2.0 W m^{-2} for the indirect effects on cloud condensation nuclei (CCN) for water clouds.

It should be emphasized that about 88 per cent of the total aerosol (see Table 2.2) input is of natural origin. The indirect effects of cloud condensation nuclei from anthropogenic sources are undetermined. Nevertheless, a ±15 per cent change of CCN within marine stratus clouds, which cover about 25 per cent of the earth, could change the global energy balance by ±1 W m^{-2}.

Indirect anthropogenic factors, such as increasing population pressures leading to overgrazing and forest clearance, may increase desertification which also contributes to the increase of wind-blown soil. The 'dust-bowl' years of the 1930s in the United States and the African Sahel drought since 1972 illustrate this, as well as dust transported from western China across the Pacific to Hawaii, and from the Sahara westward across the North Atlantic (see Plate 5).

The presence of particles in the atmosphere increases the backscatter of short-wave radiation, thereby increasing the planetary albedo and causing cooling, but the effect on infra-red radiation is one of surface warming. The net result is complicated by the surface albedo. Man-made aerosols cause net warming over snow and ice and most land surfaces, but cooling over the oceans, which have a low albedo. Natural aerosols probably cause general cooling. The overall effect on global surface temperature remains uncertain.

Changes in surface albedo occur naturally with season, but climatic forcing is also caused by anthropogenic vegetation changes. Human effects on vegetation cover have a long history. Burning of vegetation by Aborigines in Australia has been traced over the past 50,000 years, while significant deforestation began in Eurasia only during Neolithic times (*c*. 5000 BP), as evidenced by the appearance of agricultural species and weeds. Deforestation expanded in these areas between about AD 700 and 1700 as populations slowly grew, but it did not take place in North America until the westward movement of settlement in the eighteenth and nineteenth centuries. During the past half-century extensive deforestation has occurred in the tropical rainforests of Southeast Asia, Africa and South America. Estimates of current tropical deforestation suggest losses of 10^5 km^2/year, out of a total tropical forest area of 9×10^6 km^2. This annual figure is more than half the total land surface at present under irrigation. Forest destruction causes an increase in albedo of about 10 per cent locally, with consequences for surface energy and moisture budgets. However, the large-scale effect of deforestation in temperate and tropical latitudes on global surface albedo is estimated to be ≤0.001. The radiative forcing associated with albedo changes for 1750 to the present is estimated to be –0.2 W m^{-2}.

It should be noted that deforestation is difficult to define and monitor; it can refer to loss of forest cover with complete clearance and conversion to a different land use, or species' impoverishment without major changes in physical structure. The term desertification, applied in semi-arid regions, creates similar difficulties. The process of vegetation change and associated soil degradation is not attributable solely to human-induced changes but is triggered by natural rainfall fluctuations leading to droughts.

Deforestation affects world climate in two main ways – first, by altering the atmospheric composition and, second, by affecting the hydrological cycle and local soil conditions:

1. Forests store great amounts of carbon dioxide, so buffering the carbon dioxide cycle in the atmosphere. The carbon retained in the vegetation of the Amazon basin is equivalent to at least 20 per cent of the entire atmospheric CO_2. Destruction of the vegetation would release about four-fifths of this to the atmosphere, about half of which would dissolve in the oceans, but the other half would be added to the 16 per cent increase of atmospheric CO_2 already observed this century. The effect of this would be to accelerate global warming. A further effect of tropical forest destruction would be to reduce the natural production of nitrous oxide. Tropical forests and their soils produce up to half of the world's nitrous oxide, which helps to destroy stratospheric ozone. Any increase in ozone would warm the stratosphere, but lower global surface temperatures.
2. Tropical rainforests have a great effect on the hydrological cycle through their high evapotranspiration and their reduction of surface runoff (about one-third of the rain never reaches the ground, being intercepted and evaporating off the leaves). Forest destruction decreases evapotranspiration, atmospheric humidity, local rainfall amounts, interception, effective soil depth, and the height of the water-table and surface roughness (and thereby atmospheric turbulence and heat transfer). Conversely, deforestation increases the seasonality of rainfall, surface runoff, soil erosion, soil temperatures and surface albedo (and therefore near-surface air temperatures). All these tendencies operate to degrade existing primary and secondary tropical forests into savanna. Models designed to simulate the operation of Amazonian forests (with a 27°C air temperature and a mean monthly rainfall of 220 mm) can predict the impacts of their degradation to savanna conditions. This would lead to a decrease of evapotranspiration by up to 40 per cent, an increase of runoff from 14 per cent of rainfall to 43 per cent, and an average increase of soil temperature from 27 to 32°C.

E MODEL STRATEGIES FOR THE PREDICTION OF CLIMATE CHANGE

Concern regarding the longer term results of possible anthropogenic effects has prompted much recent research directed towards global climatic change during the twenty-first century. For this purpose, global mathematical models (see Chapter 8) have been employed, assuming radiative forcing by changes in atmospheric composition and based on assumptions of feedback within the atmosphere–earth–ocean–ice system (see B.2, this chapter).

Three general modelling strategies may be identified, as described below.

1. *Black box modelling* involves the statistical extrapolation of an historical time series (e.g. of past temperatures) into the future, without real concern for the mechanisms involved. Figure 13.15, for example, shows a crude attempt to describe the variation of mean annual temperature in the northern hemisphere between 1880 and 1980 in terms of a linear increase on which is superimposed a sinusoidal change. This has been projected to the end of the twenty-second century to predict a temperature increase of 0.6°C in 120 years. This prediction disregards the poor fit of the simple mathematical relationships to the scatter of points representing temperature. It also makes the very questionable assumption that during the next 120 years the mix and weighting of the factors controlling temperature in the northern hemisphere will resemble those that operated during the twentieth century. Clearly, this prediction is too simplistic
2. *Grey box modelling* is based on the assumption that the effects of the most important controlling variables can be identified, measured and superimposed to produce a satisfactory simulation of a past record, and that the resultant mathematical

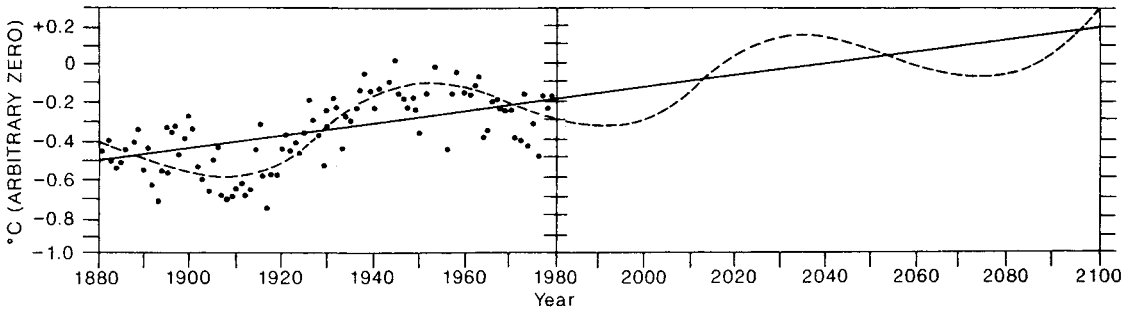


Figure 13.15 Plot of mean annual temperatures for the northern hemisphere for the period 1880 to 1980, to which have been fitted a linear trend and a sinusoidal oscillation. The latter have been extended to attempt a prediction to the year 2100.

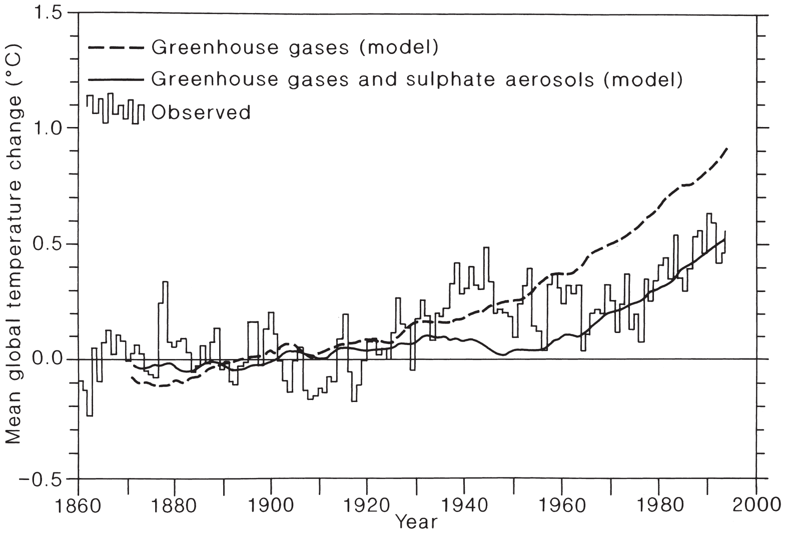


Figure 13.16 A grey box model of global mean warming from 1850 to 1990 using greenhouse gas forcing alone and greenhouse gas plus anthropogenic sulphate aerosol forcing. It is clear that the latter provides much the better fit to the observed temperature record.

Source: Houghton *et al*. (1996). Reproduced by permission of the IPCC and Cambridge University Press.

model is capable of being projected meaningfully into the future. Figure 13.16 shows one such attempt involving the variation of atmospheric CO_2 concentration and sulphate aerosols in the atmosphere. The difficulties of this type of approach to prediction are, again, quite obvious and fall into two categories:

- The fitting of a composite curve to the past record is uncertain. Have all the important variables been included? Have their actual and relative effects on hemispheric temperature been accurately determined? Is it legitimate to assume that the effect of each variable operates independently of that of the others to allow the cumulative effect to be calculated?
- The accurate prediction of future changes in CO_2 concentration is difficult and that of sulphate and other aerosols is even more uncertain.

It is clear that the complexity of the global climate system is such as to rule out the use of statistically or empirically based models, with their total reliance on past data, in favour of numerical ones.

3 *White box modelling* is based on detailed understanding of the structure and operation of the earth–atmosphere–ocean system, such that its possible future states can be simulated by applying assumed forcing mechanisms, particularly anthropogenic ones. Numerical model building involves bringing together locational, temporal and attribute information into a database that allows climatic processes

and interactions to be simulated, based on our current understanding of how they operate. Mathematical simulation of the white box kind is potentially very powerful but involves the need for a thorough understanding of the variables, states, feedbacks, transfers and forcings of the complex system (i.e. the parameters), together with the laws of physics of the atmosphere and oceans on which they are based. The most powerful of such models are coupled atmosphere–ocean general circulation models (GCM) (see Chapter 8). GCMs require very detailed calibration and adjustment. They are thus run with actual empirical data relating to past decades, in the light of which adjustments are made to model parameters (such as those relating to fluxes, feedbacks and forcing) in order to improve the overall performance of the model. The advantage of the GCM is that it attempts to take into account the total structure and dynamism of the earth–atmosphere–ocean system. Its disadvantages are its obvious failure to do this completely, the huge amount of data required to establish, test and run (i.e. force) this white box predictive model and also, extremely importantly, the lack of knowledge regarding the future forcing conditions.

F THE IPCC MODELS

The most sophisticated coupled atmosphere–ocean general circulation models in current use were developed under the aegis of the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change (IPCC). The panel issued three comprehensive reports in 1990, 1995 and 2001. These sought to assess the impacts of predicted increases in greenhouse gas concentrations during the twenty-first century. In the earlier reports the projected increases were based on four possible scenarios:

1. Business as usual (BAU). This envisaged modest controls and efficiency improvements over industrial emissions; uncontrolled agricultural emissions; depletion of tropical forests at the present rate. This would result in the world CO_2 concentration being more than twice the pre-industrial era level by the year 2070.
2. A shift towards lower-carbon fuels and natural gas.
3. Scenario B; plus immediate phasing out of CFCs, limitation of agricultural emissions; plus a gradual shift to renewable and nuclear energy sources.
4. An immediate shift to renewable and nuclear energy sources with CO_2 emissions reduced to 50 per cent of 1985 levels by 2050.

The Third Assessment Report of the IPCC issued in 2001 adopts a range of emission scenarios (contained in a Special Report on Emission Scenarios (SRES)) based on differing views of the global future. One set (A1) considers rapid economic growth, global population peaking in mid-century and then declining, and introduction of more efficient technologies. Three variants are: A1F1 fossil fuel intensive; A1T non-fossil energy sources, and A1B a balance across all energy sources. Scenario A2 considers global heterogeneity, increasing population, fragmented and slower technological change. A second set includes B1 where population trends are as in A1, but the global economy is service and information based, with clean, resource-efficient technologies. B2 envisages slower population increase, intermediate levels of economic development, and diverse, regionally oriented technological change. Figure 13.17 shows the projected changes in CO_2, CH_4 and CFC-11 concentrations during the twenty-first century, based on these scenarios. CO_2 concentrations are projected to rise to between 540 and 970 ppm by 2100, corresponding to increases of 90 and 250 per cent above the pre-industrial level. Methane concentration changes will range between –190 ppb and +1970 ppb above 1998 levels by 2100.

The associated projected increases in anthropogenic radiative forcing corresponding to the SRES cases of Figure 13.17 are shown in Figure 13.18. The projected range is 4 to 9 W m^{-2} by 2100. In 1995 it was estimated that to stabilize the concentration of greenhouse gases at 1990 levels would require the following *percentage reductions* in emissions resulting from human activities: CO_2 >60 per cent; CH_4 15 to 20 per cent; N_2O 70 to 80 per cent; CFCs 70 to 85 per cent. The 2001 IPCC report notes that to stabilize CO_2 concentrations at 450 (650) ppm would require anthropogenic emissions to drop below 1990 levels within a few decades (about a century).

The IPCC Scientific Assessment for 1990 predicted, with business as usual, an overall global temperature rise of 3.5°C by the end of the twenty-second century with a wide error band. Twenty numerical simulation models were run to equilibrium (reached at *c.* AD 2030) for the period 1850 to 2050, assuming a doubling of CO_2 during that period but employing only a relatively

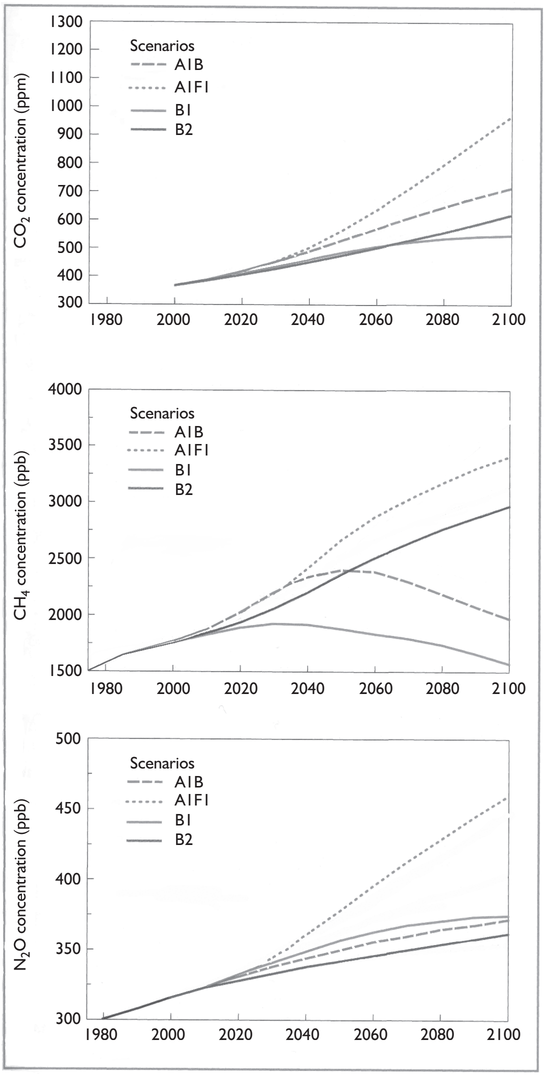


Figure 13.17 Predicted changes of CO_2, CH_4 and N_2O between 1980 and 2100 with new scenarios from the Special Report on Emission Scenarios (SRES). A1F1, A1B and B1 (see text).

Note: Units are in parts per million by volume (ppmv), parts per billion (ppbv) and parts per trillion (pptv), respectively.
Source: Adapted from Houghton *et al*. (2001). Reproduced by permission of the IPCC and Cambridge University Press. (Summary for policy-makers. Report of WG 1, IPCC, p. 65, fig. 18.)

simple model of the upper 50 to 100 m of the ocean. The major predictions of IPCC 1990 were as follows:

1 A general warming of the earth's surface and troposphere, and a cooling of the stratosphere and upper atmosphere as a result of the necessity for equilibrium between the incoming solar radiation and the outgoing terrestrial radiation. The stratosphere and mesosphere would cool by about 10°C and the thermosphere by 50°C, for CO_2 doubling, perhaps causing more frequent noctilucent clouds in the polar mesosphere.
2 A consequent increase in the overall temperature lapse rate, making the atmosphere more turbulent, increasing the frequency and intensity of depressions, tropical storms and hurricanes, and making mid-latitude winter storm tracks more stable in their positions.
3 Stronger warming of the earth's surface and troposphere in higher latitudes (especially at about 60° latitude) in late autumn and winter (by 4 to 8°C).
4 A tropical warming of less than the global mean (i.e. 2 to 3°C).
5 Amplified warming over northern mid-latitude continents in summer (by 4 to 6°C).
6 Increased precipitation in high latitudes and in the tropics throughout the year (by 10 to 20 per cent), and in mid-latitudes in winter (Table 13.4). This increase is mostly associated with zones of lower level convergence (i.e. mid-latitude storm tracks and the ITCZ).
7 Small changes in the dry subtropics.
8 Soil moisture increases in winter and decreases in summer in northern mid-latitude continents.
9 A reduced extent of sea ice extent and thickness.

The 1990 IPCC model was adjusted in 1992 to take account of the potential cooling effect of anthropogenic sulphate aerosols; other changes in greenhouse forcing; a possible slowdown of the thermohaline deep ocean circulation expected to accompany global warming; an upper mixed ocean layer 90 m deep with vertical mixing processes operating at 1 $cm^2\ s^{-1}$; revised estimates of the thermal differences between land and sea; and improved feedback assumptions, particularly relating to the effects of cloud cover. Later predictions were broadly similar to those associated with the 1990 model, but more moderate. They included a generally greater warming of the land than of the oceans in winter; minimal warming, or even cooling, around Antarctica and in the northern North Atlantic associated with deep ocean mixing (see Figure 13.19 for the increase by 2040 to 2049 relative to 1880 to 1889). They also showed rather less warming in high northern latitudes in late

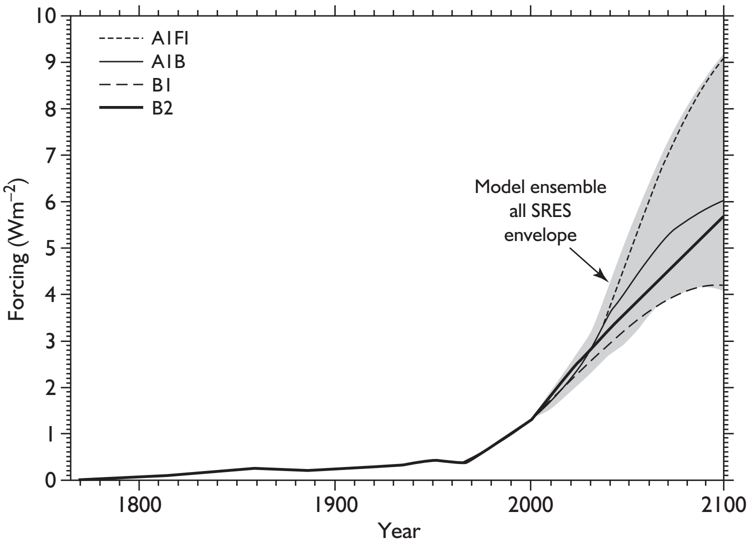


Figure 13.18 Model predicted atmospheric radiative forcing (W m^{-2}) for the emission scenarios shown in Figure 13.17.

Source: Adapted from Houghton *et al*. (2001). Reproduced by permission of the IPCC and Cambridge University Press. (Summary for policy-makers. Report of WG 1, IPCC, p. 66, fig. 19.)

autumn and winter associated with reduced sea ice and snow cover than was predicted in 1990, and little warming over the Arctic in summer. They indicated a reduction in diurnal temperature range over land in most seasons and most regions. The important prediction of an enhanced global hydrological cycle included increased rainfall over southern Europe, increased precipitation and soil moisture in high latitudes in winter, and, most important, the possibility that Asian summer monsoonal rainfall might be decreased due to the anthropogenic aerosol effect. More consideration was given to possible extreme climatic events. Predictions included an increase in extremely high temperatures and a decrease in winter days with extremely low temperatures; a decrease in diurnal temperature variability in certain regions; an increase in precipitation intensities and extreme rainfall events; and possibly more frequent or severe drought periods in warmer climates.

Since 1992, changes to the models include improved treatment of anthropogenic aerosols (direct and indirect effects) and non-CO_2 greenhouse gases. Overall, anthropogenic aerosols are believed to reduce the effects of greenhouse gas forcing by an average of one-third (range 20 to 40 per cent). The incorporation of an improved knowledge of ocean dynamics into the models has, however, been limited by the fact that although mesoscale ocean eddies can now be well modelled, the computational complexity involved limits their full integration into coupled atmosphere–ocean models. Most experiments are now run in a transient mode whereby the steady increase of greenhouse gas concentrations is simulated. Figure 13.20 illustrates the predicted warming expected when CO_2 concentrations will have doubled.

The 1995 estimate for global warming by the year 2100 was in the range 1.0–3.5°C based on six scenarios developed in 1992. Figure 13.21 shows the geographical distribution of the projected change in annual surface air temperature by 2100. The 2001 estimates project somewhat greater warming in the range 1.4 to 5.8°C by 2100 (Figure 13.22). The principal reason for this is that the expected emissions of sulphur dioxide are lower in the SRES scenarios. Warming will be greatest in northern high-latitude land areas in winter, particularly in North America. The global atmospheric moisture content and precipitation will increase, especially over northern mid- to high latitudes and these same regions can expect more intense precipitation events over land. Over most areas where mean precipitation increases, there will also be greater interannual variability.

G OTHER ENVIRONMENTAL IMPACTS OF CLIMATE CHANGE

1 Sea-level

The mechanisms influencing sea-level over the globe are extremely complex. Following the Last Glacial Maximum about 20,000 years ago, sea-level rose rapidly as the major ice sheets of North America and

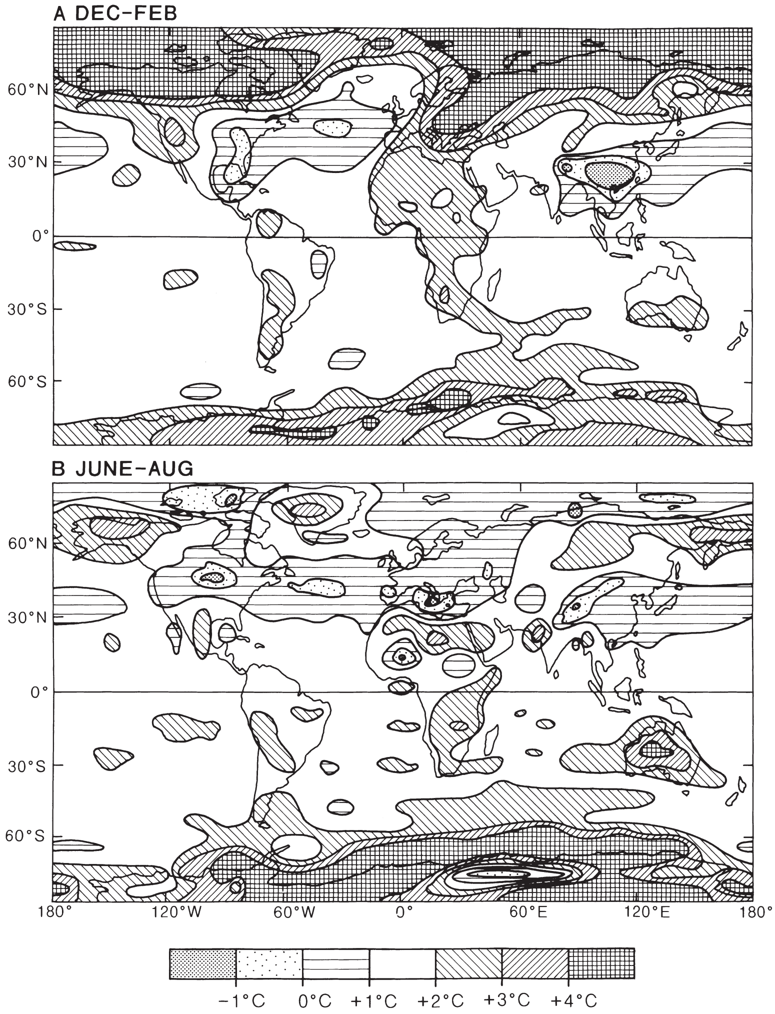


Figure 13.19 Simulations of changes in surface temperatures (°C) from 1880–89 to 2040–49 employing greenhouse gas and anthropogenic aerosol forcing.

Source: Houghton *et al*. (1996). Reproduced by permission of the IPCC and Cambridge University Press.

northern Europe melted. By 6000 years ago, sea-level had risen by about 120 m from the glacial low stand. Subsequently, the fluctuations have been only a few tens of cm. During the twentieth century, the mean rise based on tide gauges was between 1.0 and 2.0 mm/yr.

Sea-level changes are influenced by the following mechanisms (those of short timescales – i.e. tens of years – italicized):

1 *Changes in ocean water mass associated with changes in water storage within the atmosphere–earth–ocean–ice system (see Figure 4.1). Exchanges with glaciers and ice sheets are well recognized, but changes in ground water (aquifers) and those due to reservoir and dam building are poorly known.*
2 *Changes in ocean water volume (e.g. thermal expansion and contraction; salinity changes; changes in atmospheric pressure).*
3 Changes in earth crustal levels:

   - Tectonic (e.g. rise of ocean ridges; sea-floor subsidence; plate movements).
   - Isostatic (e.g. tectonic loading; ice and water loading).

4 Changes in the global distribution of water:

   - Terrestrial rotation effects.
   - Global axis changes.
   - Terrestrial gravity variations.

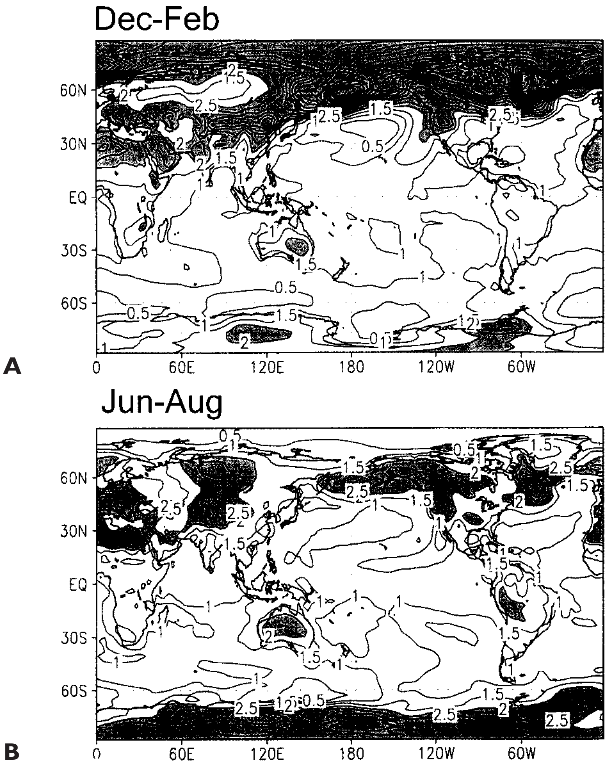

Dec-Feb
A
60N
30N
EQ
30S
60S
0
60E
120E
180
120W
60W
Jun-Aug
B
60N
30N
EQ
30S
60S
0
60E
120E
180
120W
60W

Figure 13.20 Seasonal differences of surface-air temperature for a transient experiment with a 1 per cent compound increase in CO_2 compared with a control experiment with the NCAR Climate System Model. (A) December to February. (B) June to August for years 60 to 79; CO_2 doubling is reached about year 70. Isotherm interval is 0.5°C; areas greater than 2°C are shaded.

Source: From Meehl *et al*. (2000, p. 1882, fig. 1 (b), (c)). Courtesy of the American Meteorological Society.

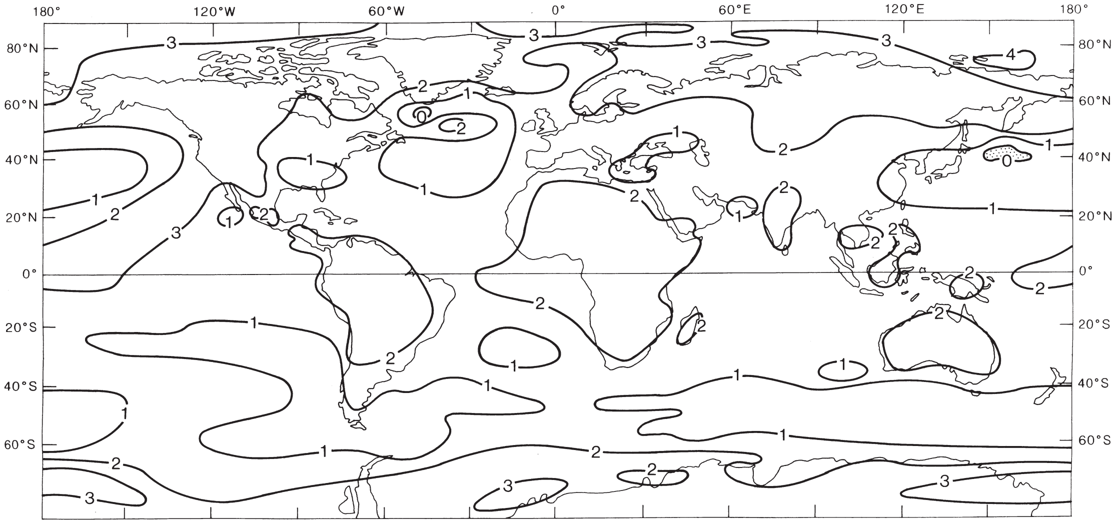

180°
120°W
60°W
0°
60°E
120°E
180°
80°N
60°N
40°N
20°N
0°
20°S
40°S
60°S

Figure 13.21 Predicted pattern of increases in annual surface temperature (°C) produced by an atmosphere–ocean coupled model for the period from the present to the year 2100, based on the forcing assumptions of a doubling of CO_2 plus increases in anthropogenic aerosols.

Source: Houghton *et al*. (1996). Reproduced by permission of the IPCC and Cambridge University Press.

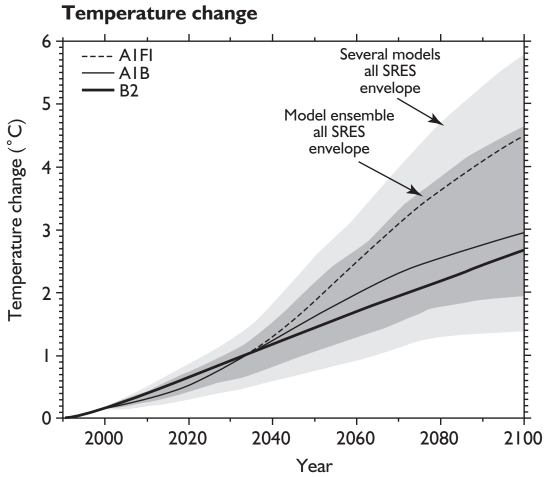


Figure 13.22 IPCC simulated increase in global mean temperatures for the scenarios, shown in Figure 13.17, together with the envelope of SRES projections and that for several models.

Source: Adapted from Houghton *et al*. (2001). Reproduced by permission of the IPCC and Cambridge University Press.

- Changes in the attraction of sun and moon.
- *Changes in the velocity of ocean currents*.

Over the past 100 years, the estimated rise of global sea-levels was by 10 to 25 cm or more. This is attributed to the following causes:

1 Thermal expansion of ocean waters (0.3 to 0.7 mm/yr; i.e. possibly 50 per cent or more). This is difficult to estimate due to lack of knowledge of deep ocean temperature change and the effects of oceanic circulations.
2 Glacier and small ice-cap melting (0.2–0.4 mm/yr; i.e. possibly 30 per cent). This is poorly known before 1960.
3 Greenland ice sheet thinning (0.0 to 0.1 mm/yr). This is poorly constrained although a good airborne altimetric measurement network is now in place.
4 Antarctic ice sheet thickening (–0.2 to 0.0 mm/yr). This is very uncertain; the Antarctic ice sheet is a large and complex system with its own internal mechanisms and a mass balance that changes slowly. Some workers believe the balance is positive, which would offset sea-level rise. This source has probably not yet contributed greatly to the global sea-level rise but may do so in the future.
5 Terrestrial water storage changes due to human activities (–1.1 to 0.4 mm/yr). This is the most uncertain component even as to sign of the contribution.

Figure 13.23 shows sea level rise up to AD 2100 for the selected SRES-based scenarios in Figure 13.17. The projected mean sea-level rise is close to 0.5 m, with a range from 0.20 to 0.86 m, based on coupled atmosphere–ocean GCM experiments.

This is because of the long lags in the responses of the huge oceans and ice sheet masses, but, by the same token, sea-level will continue to rise long after atmospheric forcing mechanisms have stabilized. Uncertainties regarding sea-level rise are still considerable, mainly because of our lack of knowledge concerning the behaviour of the large ice sheets, especially Antarctica. There is even the possibility that increased global warming may introduce a tendency for sea-level to *fall* due to increased snow accumulation rates in high latitudes. Another outside possibility is that a rise in sea-level might cause the West Antarctic ice sheet to be buoyed up and melt bodily (not just around the edges, as in the past) and cause a further catastrophic sea-level rise but spread over several hundred years. Further considerations are the possible effects of extreme sea-level events (such as tides, waves and storm surges), but these are extremely difficult to predict.

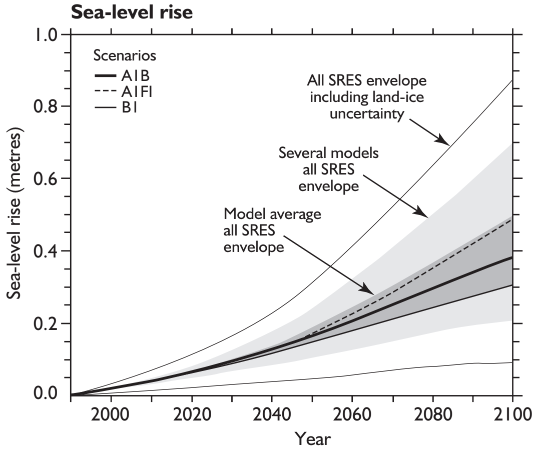


Figure 13.23 Predictions of sea-level rise (m) to the year 2100, for the scenarios shown in Figure 13.17 together with the envelope of SRES projections and that for several models.

Source: Houghton *et al*. (2001). Reproduced by permission of the IPCC and Cambridge University Press. (Policy-makers' summary, p. 14, fig 5e.)

2 Snow and ice

The effects of twentieth-century climate change on global snow and ice cover are apparent in many ways, but the responses differ widely as a result of the different factors and timescales involved. Snow cover is essentially seasonal, related to storm system precipitation and temperature levels. Sea ice is also seasonal around much of the Antarctic continent and in the marginal seas of the Arctic Ocean (see Figure 10.35A), but the central Arctic has thick multi-year ice. Seasonal (or first-year) ice grows and decays in response to ocean surface temperature, radiation balance, snowfall and ice motion due to winds and currents. The loss of multi-year ice from the Arctic is mainly through ice export. Glacier ice builds up from the net balance of snow accumulation and summer melt (ablation), but glacier flow transports ice towards the terminus, where it may melt or calve into water. In small glaciers, the ice may have a residence time of tens or hundreds of years, but in ice-caps and ice sheets this increases to 10^3 to 10^6 years.

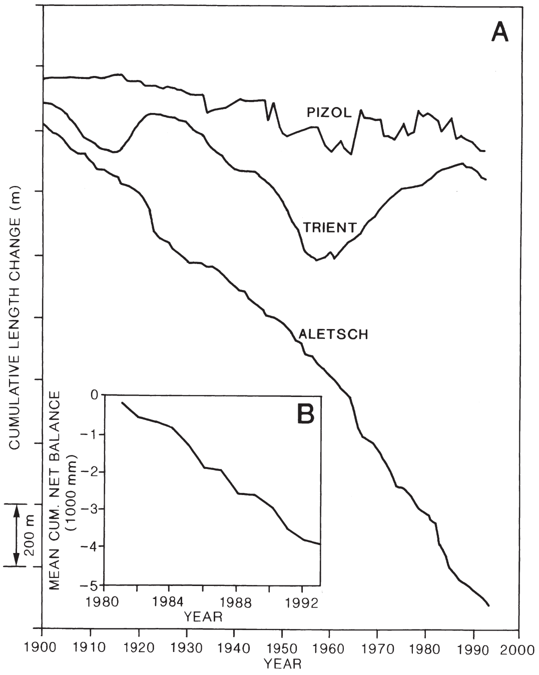


Figure 13.24 Trends in cumulative net mass balance for thirty-five glaciers in eleven mountain ranges in North America, Europe and Africa for 1980 to 1993 (B) and cumulative length changes since 1900 of characteristic glacier types in the Swiss Alps (A). Pizol is a cirque glacier; Trient is a medium-size mountain glacier; and the Aletsch is a large valley glacier.

Source: Haeberli (1995). Reproduced by permission of *Geografia Fisica e Dinamica Quaternaria*.

In the twentieth century, there has been a rapid retreat of most of the world's glaciers. Glaciers in the North Atlantic area retreated during the 1920s to the mid-1960s and since 1980, due largely to temperature increases, which have the effect of lengthening the ablation season with a corresponding raising of the snowline. In the past ten or fifteen years the freezing level in the troposphere has risen in the inner tropics by 100 to 150 m, contributing to rapid ice loss on equatorial glaciers in East Africa and the northern Andes. Also in the past decade or so, some glaciers in maritime climates (western North America and Scandinavia) have shown advances, due to heavier snowfalls during warmer winters. Major alpine glaciers in many areas of the world have lost mass and shrunk since the late nineteenth century, whereas smaller ones show short-term fluctuations in response to climatic variability (Figure 13.24). There has been accelerated retreat in some areas since the late 1970s, especially in Alaska and central Asia. Projections for AD 2050 suggest that a quarter of the present glacier mass may disappear with critical and irreversible long-term consequences for water resources in alpine countries.

Another tendency illustrating world warming is the retreat of Arctic sea ice. Ports in the Arctic remained free of ice for longer periods during the 1920s to 1950s, for example. This trend was reversed in the 1960s to 1970s, but since 1978 the annual extent of Arctic ice has decreased by almost 3 per cent per decade with large reductions in summer, particularly in the Eurasian Arctic in 1990, 1993 and 1995, north of Alaska in 1998 and in the central Arctic in 2001. Between the 1960s–70s and early 1990s, ice in the central Arctic Ocean thinned but the magnitude of this is uncertain due to spatial and seasonal sampling limitations. The changes may reflect a redistribution of the ice mass by shifts in ocean and wind circulations.

There appears to have been a slight increase in Antarctic ice extent, although comprehensive records began only with all-weather satellite coverage in 1973. Sea ice in both polar regions is expected to shrink and thin with continued warming, but modelling of these processes remains rudimentary.

Major iceberg calving events have occurred over the past ten or fifteen years along the Ross Ice Shelf. The

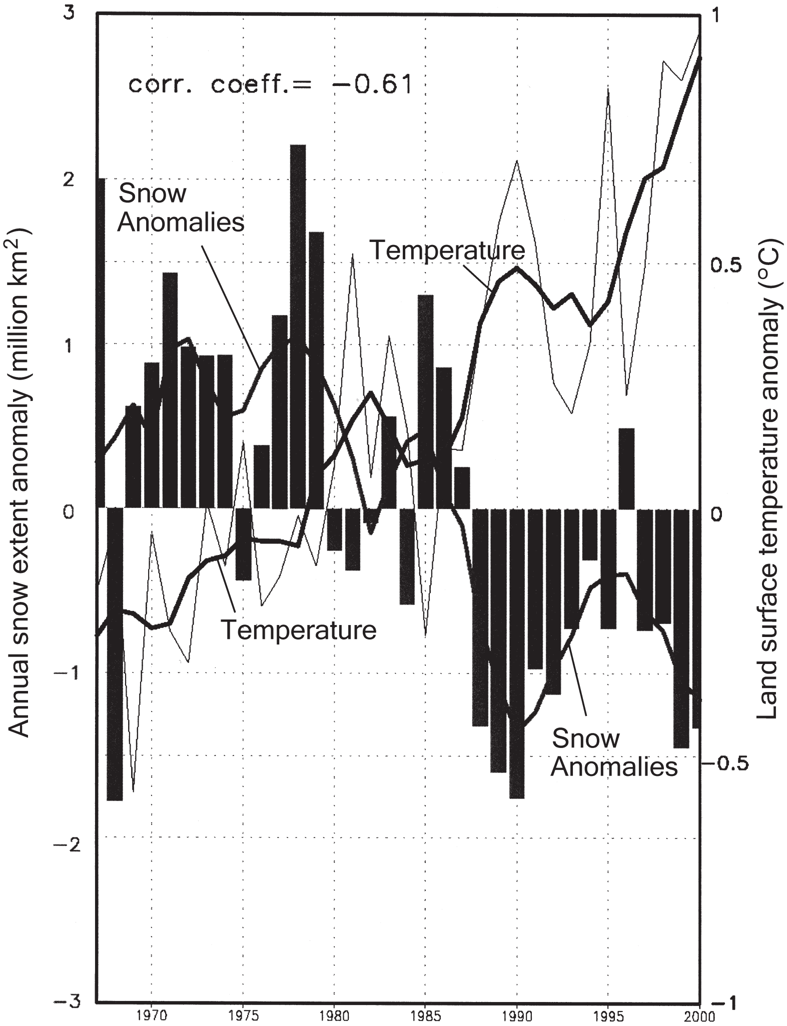


Figure 13.25 Time series of annual snow extent and land-surface temperature anomalies. Annual anomalies are the sum of monthly anomalies, area-averaged over the region north of 20°N, for the snow hydrological year, October to September. The snow anomaly (in million km^2) is on the left vertical axis, the temperature anomaly (°C) on the right vertical axis. Bar plot indicates snow anomalies, the fine line indicates temperature anomalies. The correlation coefficient, r is –0.61. The thick curves are five-year weighted mean values. Snow cover calculations are based on the NOAA/NESDIS snow cover maps for 1967 to 2000. Temperature calculations are based on the Jones datasets; anomalies are with respect to the period 1960 to 1990.

Source: D. Robinson, Rutgers University, and A. Bamzai, NOAA/OGP.

causes of such calving are more related to the long history of the ice shelves and ice dynamics than to recent climatic trends. However, the disintegration of ice shelves in the northern Antarctic Peninsula – the Wordie shelf on the west side in the 1980s and the northern Larsen shelf on the east side between 1995 and March 2002 – is attributed to regional warming of 2.5°C over the past fifty years.

Snow cover extent shows the clearest indication of a response to recent temperature trends. Northern hemisphere snow cover has been mapped by visible satellite images since 1966. Compared with the 1970s to mid-1980s, annual snow cover since 1988 has shrunk by about 10 per cent (Figure 13.25). The decrease is pronounced in spring and is well correlated with springtime warming. Winter snow extent shows little or no change. Nevertheless, annual snowfall in North America north of 55°N increased between 1950 and 1990. Much work remains to be done to analyse station snowfall and snow depth records, particularly since these variables are difficult to measure and the design of gauges and shields has changed through time. Scenarios for AD 2050 suggest a shorter snow cover period in North America, with a decrease of 70 per cent over the Great

Plains. In alpine areas, snowlines will rise by 100 to 400 m, depending on precipitation.

3 Hydrology

The difficulty of deducing the possible effects of climate change on hydrological regimes stems from several factors. There is the need to adapt large-scale climatic predictions derived from GCMs to the catchment scales appropriate to hydrological modelling; from errors in the climatic and hydrological data; and from converting climatic inputs into hydrological responses. Predicted climatic changes are expected to lead to:

1 A more vigorous world hydrological cycle.
2 More severe droughts and/or floods in some places and less severe ones in others.
3 An increase in precipitation intensities with possibly more extreme rainfall events.
4 Greater hydrological effects of climate change in drier areas than in wetter ones.
5 An increase in overall potential evapotranspiration.
6 An increase in the variability of river discharges along with that of rainfall.
7 A shift of runoff peak times from spring to winter in continental and mountain areas if snowfall decreases.
8 The greatest falls in lake water levels in dry regions with high evaporation.

The hydrological impacts of climate change may be greatest in currently arid or semi-arid regions, implying that the more severe runoff events there will particularly exacerbate soil erosion.

4 Vegetation

An increase in CO_2 is expected to enhance global plant growth up to a value of possibly around 1000 ppmv, when a saturation limit may be reached. However, deforestation could decrease the biosphere's capacity to act as a carbon sink. A sustained increase of only 1°C can cause considerable change in tree growth, regeneration and species extent. Species migrate only slowly but, eventually, extensive forested areas may change to new vegetation types, and it has been estimated that 33 per cent of the present forest area could be affected, with up to 65 per cent of the boreal zone being subject to change. Alpine tree lines appear to be quite resistant to climatic fluctuations. However, surveys of plant species on peaks in the European Alps indicate an upward migration of alpine plants by 1 to 4 m per decade during the twentieth century.

Tropical forests are likely to be affected more by human deforestation than by climate change. However, decreases of soil moisture are particularly damaging in hydrologically marginal areas. In the Amazon, climatic predictions support the idea of increased convection, and therefore of rainfall, in its western equatorial portion, where present rainfall is most abundant. Because of the particularly high temperature rises predicted for the high northern latitudes, boreal forests are expected to be strongly affected by their advance northward into tundra regions. This may produce positive feedback giving further regional warming because of the lower albedo of forests during the snow season. Climate change over the twenty-first century is expected to have least effect on temperate forests.

Wetlands at present cover 4 to 6 per cent of the land surface, having been reduced by human activities by more than half over the past 100 years. Climate change will affect wetlands mainly by altering their hydrological regimes. It is believed that eastern China, the USA and southern Europe will suffer a natural decline in the area of wetlands during this century, decreasing the methane flux to the atmosphere.

Drylands are expected to be profoundly affected by climatic change. Dry rangelands (including grasslands, shrublands, savannas, hot and cold deserts) occupy 45 per cent of the terrestrial land surface, contain one-third of the world's total carbon in their biomass, and support half of the world's livestock and one-sixth of the world's population. Low-latitude rangelands are most at risk both because an increase in CO_2 (increasing the carbon/nitrogen ratio) will decrease the nutrient value of forage and because the increasing frequency of extreme events will cause environmental degradation. Most deserts are likely to become hotter but not significantly wetter. Any increases in rainfall will tend to be associated with increased storm intensity. Greater wind speeds and evaporation may be expected to increase wind erosion, capillary rise and salinization of soils. Central Australia is one of the few places where desert conditions may improve.

A major consequence of global warming will be that desiccation and soil erosion will increase in semi-arid regions, rangelands and savannas adjacent to the world's deserts. This will accelerate the current rate of desertification, which is proceeding at six million hectares per year due partly to high rainfall variability and partly to unsuitable human agricultural activities such as overgrazing and over-intensive cultivation. Desertification was estimated to affect nearly 70 per cent of the total dryland area in the 1990s.

H POSTSCRIPT

Our ability to understand and anticipate climate change has increased considerably since the first IPCC Report appeared in 1990, but many problems and uncertainties remain. Key research needs include (not in order of importance):

- The development of more refined *forcing* scenarios through a better understanding of forcing mechanisms (past, present and future) such as those relating to economic growth, forest clearances, land use changes, sulphate aerosols, carbonaceous aerosols generated by biomass burning, and radiative trace gases other than CO_2 (e.g. methane and ozone). The incorporation of past anthropogenic forcing will generate more realistic warming in model simulations – so avoiding the present 'cold start' problem.
- Better understanding of *feedback* processes, notably those involving clouds and the surface radiation budget, interactions between the land biosphere and the carbon cycle, between climate and atmospheric chemistry, and those involving sea ice.
- The need for more information regarding the distribution of *clouds and their radiative effects*. It is clear that high and low clouds may have very different radiative effects and that under certain conditions cloud albedo may have the capacity to counterbalance much of the potential CO_2 warming effect.
- The need to increase the resolution of global climate models so that *small-scale physical processes* can be represented (e.g. those relating to clouds). This is part of the move to improve scale-coupling between global climate models and regional and smaller scale models.
- Greater understanding of *oceanic processes*, including the heat flux at the ocean surface, the upwelling diffusion–energy balance, and the role of the oceans in absorbing CO_2, especially by biological processes. The role of the oceans in heat transport and the delays it introduces into the climate system's response to forcing mechanisms are also poorly understood.
- More information regarding the *processes involved in the coupling between the atmosphere and the oceans*. A particular problem concerns the coupling of sea-surface temperatures (a vital part of the atmospheric model) with ocean surface energy flux, fresh water supplies and momentum or wind stress conditions (important parts of the ocean model). Attempts to link large parts of complex systems generally leads to 'drift' of the model's climate system towards a new, unrealistic, mean state.
- The *links between land-surface and atmospheric processes*, including the hydrological cycle and interactions between ice sheets and glaciers, on the one hand, and climate, on the other, need to be examined.
- The imperative to make a clear distinction between climate change related to anthropogenic causes and the *natural variability* of the space–time climate structure. Information on natural climatic variability can be gained from instrumental data, palaeoclimatic reconstructions and numerical models. An important feature of natural variability is rapid changes, which are at present little understood. These changes are characteristic of complex non-linear systems that are rapidly forced. Examples of such changes include rapid circulation changes in the North Atlantic and feedbacks associated with terrestrial ecosystem changes.
- The need for *the systematic collection of long-term instrumental and proxy observations* to do with solar output, atmospheric energy balance components, hydrological cycles, ocean characteristics, atmosphere and ocean coupling, and ecosystem changes.
- Finally, because numerical models of the world climate system are becoming ever more complex, there is a growing requirement for *massive computing facilities*; sometimes, weeks of expensive computer time are needed to run a single climatic simulation to achieve an equilibrium state.

SUMMARY

Changes in climate involve factors both external to and within the climate system. External ones include solar variability, astronomical effects on the earth's orbit and volcanic activity. Internal factors include natural variability within the climate system, and feedbacks between the atmosphere, ocean and land surface. During the twentieth century, human-induced climatic change on local and global scales has become a reality, primarily through changes in atmospheric composition and surface properties.

Climatic changes on geological timescales involve continental drift, volcanic activity and possible changes in solar output. Over the past few million years, glacial–interglacial cycles appear to have been strongly controlled by astronomical variations in the earth's orbit, although atmosphere–ocean–cryosphere feedbacks must also be involved in amplifying the initial changes in solar radiation.

During the twentieth century there has been a significant average global temperature increase of 0.5°C, greatest in the higher middle latitudes with warming, particularly during the 1920 to 1940s and since the early 1970s; the 1990s included several of the warmest years on record. Diurnal temperature ranges show a decrease over the past few decades and some regions are experiencing more frequent extreme conditions for temperature levels and precipitation amounts. Precipitation trends are less clear, particularly in the mid-latitudes, but the precipitation of dry subtropical regions has tended to oscillate widely. Climatic behaviour during the past twenty years supports the view that the anthropogenically induced increase of greenhouse gases and other pollutants is permanently affecting global climate.

Possible causes of climatic change are examined from the point of view of the global atmosphere–earth–ocean–ice system and with respect to forcing and feedback mechanisms. Whereas longer term changes are probably due to astronomical forcing mechanisms, short-term changes (i.e. the past 100 years) appear to be more obviously linked to anthropogenic factors. These are mainly changes in atmospheric composition, including aerosol loading, depletion of ozone and destruction of world vegetation. Natural and anthropogenic aerosol effects appear to be particularly important, but their net effect remains uncertain.

Climate predictions are being made using a variety of modelling strategies, of which coupled atmosphere–ocean GCMs are the most sophisticated. Predictions covering the next 100 years assuming a variety of emission scenarios for greenhouse gases and aerosols indicate a mean global temperature increase in the range 1.4 to 5.8°C by the year 2100, together with sea-level rises of about 50 cm. The magnitude of such predictions, based on computer modelling, are still uncertain, however, and are subject to large error bands due to our restricted knowledge of the operations of the global atmosphere–earth–ocean–ice system.

Alpine glaciers show a general twentieth-century shrinkage, but even the sign of the mass balance of Greenland and Antarctica is uncertain. Continental snow cover has decreased over the past decade, especially in spring, and Arctic sea ice was also less extensive in many recent summers. Hydrological models suggest that spring snow melt runoff would occur earlier and the variability in rainfall amounts would intensify floods and droughts. Vegetation cover and croplands will also be affected in the long term, but human-induced changes will predominate. Subtropical semi-arid areas are most likely to be affected by climatic trends.

Critical research needs include better data on cloud cover and radiation, ocean processes and their atmospheric coupling, feedback processes in general, and the relationships between large-scale and local/regional-scale processes and phenomena.

DISCUSSION TOPICS

- Examine the figures showing climatic time series in Chapter 13 for evidence of changes in mean and variance, and consider where step function changes have occurred and where trends can be detected.
- What are the different climate forcing factors at work on geological and historical timescales?
- What are the main advantages and limitations of different types of proxy records of palaeoclimate? Consider the climatic variables that can be inferred and the temporal resolution of the information.
- What are the main reasons for uncertainties in projections of climate for AD 2100?
- What are some of the possible impacts of projected climate changes in your region/country?

FURTHER READING

Books

Adger, W. N. and Brown, K. (1995) *Land Use and the Causes of Global Warming*, John Wiley & Sons, New York, 282pp. [Greenhouse gas emissions from land use sources and the effects of land use changes.]

Bolin, B., Döös, B. R., Jäger, J. and Warrick, R. A. (eds) (1986) *The Greenhouse Effect, Climatic Change, and Ecosystems*, John Wiley & Sons, Chichester, 541 pp. [A specialist assessment for the Scientific Committee on Problems of the Environment (SCOPE) of human effects on atmospheric composition, the carbon cycle, the nature of a warmer climate, and impacts on sea-level and terrestrial ecosystems.]

Bradley, R. S. (ed.) (1990) *Global Changes of the Past*, University Corporation for Atmospheric Research, Boulder, CO, 514pp. [Papers from a Global Change Institute meeting on proxy and observational evidence of past climates and related modelling studies.]

Bradley, R. S. (1999) *Quaternary Paleoclimatology: Reconstructing Climates of the Quaternary* (2nd edn), Academic Press, San Diego, 683pp. [Details of methods of palaeoclimatic reconstruction, dating of evidence and modelling palaeoclimates; numerous illustrations and references.]

Bradley, R. S. and Jones, P. D. (eds) (1992) *Climate Since A.D. 1500*, Routledge, London, 679pp. [Collected contributions focusing on the Little Ice Age and subsequent changes from proxy, historical and observational data.]

Bruce, J. P., Lee, H. and Haites, E. F. (eds) (1996) *Climate Change 1995: Economic and Social Dimensions of Climate Change*, Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change (IPCC), Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, 448pp.

Crowley, T. J. and North, G. R. (1991) *Paleoclimatology*, Oxford University Press, New York, 339pp. [Surveys the pre-Quaternary and Quaternary history of Earth's climate, presenting observational evidence and modelling results.]

Fris-Christensen, E., Froehlich, C., Haigh, J. D., Schluesser, M. and von Steiger, R. (eds) (2001) *Solar Variability and Climate*, Kluwer, Dordrecht, 440 pp. [Contributions on solar variations, solar influences on climate, climate observations and the role of the sun by leading specialists.]

Goodess, C. M., Palutikof, J. P. and Davies, T. D. (eds) (1992) *The Nature and Causes of Climate Change: Assessing the Long-term Future*, Belhaven Press, London, 248pp. [Contributions on natural and anthropogenic forcing, proxy records, Pleistocene reconstructions and model studies.]

Grove, J. M. (1988) *The Little Ice Age*, Methuen, London, 498pp. [Detailed account of the Little Ice Age in terms of the response of glaciers around the world.]

Harvey, L.D.D. (1998) *Global Warming. The Hard Science*, Prentice Hall/Pearson Education, Harlow, 336pp. [Detailed discussion of global warming – processes, feedbacks and environmental impacts.]

Henderson-Sellers, A. and McGuffie, K. (1987) *A Climate Modelling Primer*, John Wiley & Sons, Chichester, 217pp. [Describes the hierarchy of models.]

Houghton, J. T., Callander, B. A. and Varney, S. K. (eds) (1992) *Climate Change 1992: The Supplementary Report to the IPCC Scientific Assessment*, Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, 200pp. [A supplement to the 1990 IPCC Report with new information on trace gases and radiative forcing and revised scenarios to AD 2100.]

Houghton, J. T., Jenkins, G. J. and Ephraums, J. J. (eds) (1990) *Climate Change: The Scientific Basis*, Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, 365pp. [The First Assessment Report of the IPCC on global climate trends and causes.]

Houghton, J. T., Meira Filho, L. G., Callander, B. A., Harris, N., Kattenberg A. and Maskell, K. (eds) (1996) *Climate Change 1995: The Science of Climate Change*, Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, 572pp. [The Second Assessment Report of the IPCC on global climate trends and model projections.]

Houghton, J. Y., Ding, Y., Griggs, J., Noguer, M., van der Linden, P.J., Dai, X., Maskell, M. and Johnson, C.A. (2001) *Climate Change 2001. The Scientific Basis*, Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, 881pp. [The Third Assessment Report of the IPCC with the latest consensus on climate trends and projections to AD 2100.]

Hughes, M. K. and Diaz, H. F. (eds) (1994) *The Medieval Warm Period*, Kluwer Academic Publishers, Dordrecht, 342pp. [Contributions on the proxy and historical evidence concerning climates around the world during about AD 900 to 1300.]

Hulme, M. and Barrow, E. (eds) (1997) *Climates of the British Isles. Present, Past and Future*, Routledge, London, 454pp. [A modern comprehensive survey.]

Imbrie, J. and Imbrie, K. P. (1979) *Ice Ages: Solving the Mystery*, Macmillan, London, 224pp. [Readable account of the identification of the role of astronomical forcing – the Milankovitch effect – in Ice Age cycles, by one of the palaeoclimatologists involved.]

Lamb, H. H. (1977) *Climate: Present, Past and Future, 2: Climatic History and the Future*, Methuen, London, 835pp. [Classic synthesis by a renowned climate historian.]

McCarthy, J. J., Canziani, O. F., Leary, N. A., Dokken, D. J. and White, K.S. (eds) (2001) *Climate Change 2001: Impacts, Adaptation and Vulnerability*, Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, 1032 pp. [Working Group II contribution to the Third Assessment Report of the IPCC gives scenarios and assessments of potential impacts on water reources, coastal zones, ecosystems and human affairs; the regional treatment differs from that in the 1996 report of Zinyowera *et al*.]

McCormac, B. M. and Seliga, T. A. (1979) *Solar-Terrestrial Influences on Weather and Climate*, D. Reidel, Dordrecht, 340pp.

Pittock, A. B., Frakes, L. A., Jenssen, D., Peterson, J. A. and Zillman, J. W. (eds) (1978) *Climatic Change and Variability: A Southern Perspective*, Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, 455pp. [Conference papers including overviews.]

Wigley, T. M. L., Ingram, M. J. and Farmer, G. (eds) (1981) *Climate and History*, Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, 530pp. [Contributions on the reconstruction of past climates from proxy and historical data, climate interaction with human affairs and historical case studies.]

Williams, J. (ed.) (1978) *Carbon Dioxide, Climate and Society*, Pergamon, Oxford, 332pp. [Proceedings of one of the first wide-ranging conferences on the effects of increasing carbon dioxide on climate and the environment, and societal consequences.]

Zinyowera, M. C., Watson, R. T. and Moss, R. H. (eds) (1996) *Climate Change 1995: Impacts, Adaptations and Mitigation of Climate Change: Scientific–Technical Analysis*, Cambridge University Press, 879 pp). [Report of Working Group II of the IPCC on climatic impacts in different world regions and environments.]

Articles

Allen, M. (2002) Climate of the twentieth century: detection of change and attribution of causes. *Weather* 57(8), 296–303.

Anderson, D.E. (1997) Younger Dryas research and its implications for understanding abrupt climatic change. *Progr. Phys. Geog.* 21(2), 230–49.

Beer, J., Mende, W. and Stellmacher, W. (2000) The role of the sun in climate forcing. *Quatern. Sci. Rev.*, 19, 403–16.

Brádzil, R., Samaj, F. and Valovic, S. (1985) Variation of spatial annual precipitation sums in central Europe in the period 1881–1980. *J. Climatology* 5, 617–31.

Broecker, W. S. and Denton, G. S. (1990) What drives glacial cycles? *Sci. American* 262, 48–56.

Broecker, W. S. and Van Donk, J. (1970) Insolation changes, ice volumes and the O^{18} record in deep sea cores. *Rev. Geophys*. 8, 169–96.

Chu, P-S., Yu, Z-P. and Hastenrath, S. (1994) Detecting climate change concurrent with deforestation in the Amazon Basin. *Bull. Amer. Met. Soc*. 75(4), 579–83.

Church, J. M. *et al*. (2001) Changes in sea level. In J. M. Houghton *et al*. *Climate Change 2001. The Scientific Basis*, Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, pp. 639–93.

Davidson, G. (1992) Icy prospects for a warmer world. *New Scientist* 135(1833), 23–6.

Diaz, H. F. and Kiladis, G. N. (1995) Climatic variability on decadal to century time-scales. In Henderson-Sellers, A. (ed.) *Future Climates of the World: A Modelling Perspective*, World Surveys of Climatology, 16, Elsevier, Amsterdam, pp. 191–244.

Douglas, B. C. and Peltier, W. R. (2002) The puzzle of global sea-level rise. *Physics Today* 55 (3), 35–41.

Folland, C. K., Karl, T. R. and Salinger, M.J. (2002) Observed climate variability and change. *Weather* 57(8), 269–78.

French, J. R., Spencer, T. and Reed, D. J. (1995) Editorial – Geomorphic response to sea-level rise: existing evidence and future impacts. *Earth Surface Processes and Landforms* 20, 1–6.

Gilliland, R. L. (1982) Solar, volcanic and CO_2 forcing of recent climatic change. *Climatic Change* 4, 111–31.

Grootes, P. (1995) Ice cores as archives of decade-to-century scale climate variability. In *Natural Climate Variability on Decade-to-Century Time Scales*, National Academy Press, Washington, DC, pp. 544–54.

Haeberli, W. (1995) Glacier fluctuations and climate change detection. *Geografia Fisica e Dinamica Quaternaria* 18, 191–9.

Hansen, J. and Lacis, A. A. (1990) Sun and dust versus greenhouse gases: an assessment of their relative roles in global climate change. *Nature* 346, 713–19.

Hanson, J. E. and Sato, M. (2001) Trends of measured climate forcing agents. *Proc. Nat. Acad. Sci.* 98(26), 14778–83.

Hansen, J., Ruedy, R., Sato, M. and Lo, K. (2002) Global warming continues. *Science* 295, p. 275.

Hansen, J., Fung, I., Lacis, A., Rind, D., Lebedeff, S., Ruedy, R. and Russell, G. (1988) Global climatic changes as forecast by Goddard Institute for Space Studies three-dimensional model. *J. Geophys. Res*. 93(D8), 9341–64.

Hare, F. K. (1979) Climatic variation and variability: empirical evidence from meteorological and other sources. In *Proceedings of the World Climate Conference*, WMO Publication No. 537, WMO, Geneva, pp. 51–87.

Henderson-Sellers, A. and Wilson, M. F. (1983) Surface albedo data for climate modelling. *Rev. Geophys. Space Phys*. 21, 1743–8.

Hughes, M. K., Kelly, P. M., Pilcher, J. R. and La Marche, V. (eds) (1981) *Climate from Tree Rings*, Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, 400pp.

Hulme, M. (1992) Rainfall changes in Africa: 1931–60 to 1961–90. *Int. J. Climatol*. 12, 685–99.

Hulme, M. (1994) Global warming. *Prog. Phys. Geog*. 18, 401–10.

Jäger, J. and Barry, R. G. (1991) Climate. In Turner, B. L. II (ed.) *The Earth as Transformed by Human Actions*, Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, pp. 335–51.

Jones, P. D. and Bradley, R. S. (1992) Climatic variations in the longest instrumental records. In Bradley, R. S. and Jones, P. D. (eds) *Climate Since A.D. 1500*, Routledge, London, pp. 246–68.

Jones, P. D, Conway, D. and Briffa, K. (1997) Precipitation variability and drought. In Hulme, M. and Barrow, E. (eds) *Climates of the British Isles. Present, Past and Future*, Routledge, London, pp. 197–219.

Jones, P. D., Wigley, T. M. L. and Farmer, G. (1991) Marine and land temperature data sets: a comparison and a look at recent trends. In Schlesinger, M. E. (ed.) *Greenhouse-Gas-Induced Climatic Change*, Elsevier, Amsterdam, pp. 153–72.

Kelly, P. M. (1980) Climate: historical perspective and climatic trends. In Doornkamp, J. C. and Gregory, K. J. (eds) *Atlas of Drought in Britain, 1975–6*, Institute of British Geographers, London, pp. 9–11.

Kutzbach, J. E. and Street-Perrott, A. (1985) Milankovitch forcings of fluctuations in the level of tropical lakes from 18 to 0 kyr BP. *Nature* 317, 130–9.

Lamb, H. H. (1970) Volcanic dust in the atmosphere; with a chronology and an assessment of its meteorological significance. *Phil. Trans. Roy. Soc.* A 266, 425–533.

Lamb, H. H. (1994) British Isles daily wind and weather patterns 1588, 1781–86, 1972–1991 and shorter early sequences. *Climate Monitor* 20, 47–71.

Lean, J. and Rind, D. (2001) Sun–climate connections: earth's response to a variable star. *Science* 252(5515), 234–6.

Lean, J., Beer, J. and Bradley, R. (1995) Reconstruction of solar irradiance since 1610: implications for climate change. *Geophys. Res. Lett*. 22(23), 3195–8.

Levitus, S. *et al*. (2001) Anthropogenic warming of the Earth's climate system. *Science* 292(5515), 267–70.

Manley, G. (1958) Temperature trends in England, 1698–1957. *Archiv. Met. Geophy. Biokl.* (Vienna), B9, 413–33.

Mann, M. E., Park, J. and Bradley, R. S. (1995) Global interdecadal and century-scale climate oscillations during the past five centuries. *Nature* 378(6554), 266–70.

Mann, M. E., Bradley, R. S. and Hughes, M. K. (1999) Northern Hemisphere temperatures during the past millennium: Inferences, uncertainties and limitations. *Geophys. Res. Lett*. 26, 759–62.

Mather, J. R. and Sdasyuk, G. V. (eds) (1991) *Global Change: Geographical Approaches* (Sections 3.2.2, 3.2.3), University of Arizona Press, Tucson.

Meehl, G. A. and Washington, W. M. (1990) CO_2 climate sensitivity and snow–sea-ice albedo parameterization in an atmospheric GCM coupled to a mixed-layer ocean model. *Climatic Change* 16, 283–306.

Meehl, G. A. *et al*. (2000) Anthropogenic forcing and decadal climate variability in sensitivity experiments of twentieth- and twenty-first century climate. *J. Climate* 13: 3728–44.

Meier, M. F. and Wahr, J. M. (2002) Sea level is rising: do we know why. *Proc. Nat. Acad. Sci.* 99(10), 6524–6.

Mitchell, J. F. B., Johns, T. C., Gregory, J. M. and Tett, S. F. B. (1995) Climate response to increasing levels of greenhouse gases and sulphate aerosols. *Nature* 376, 501–4.

Mitchell, J. M. Jr. (ed.) (1968) Causes of climatic change. *Amer. Met. Soc. Monogr*. 8(30), 159pp.

Mitchell, T. D. and Hulme, M. (2002) Length of the growing season. *Weather* 57(5), 196–8.

Nicholson, S. E. (1980) The nature of rainfall fluctuations in subtropical West Africa. *Monthly Weather Review* 108, 473–87.

Nicholson, S. E., Some, B. and Kone, B. (2000) An analysis of recent rainfall conditions in West Africa, including the rainy seasons of the 1997 El Niño and the 1998 La Niña years. *J. Climate* 13(14), 2628–40.

Parker, D. E., Horton, E. B., Cullum, D. P. N. and Folland, C. K. (1996) Global and regional climate in 1995. *Weather* 51(6), 202–10.

Penner, J. E. *et al*. (2001) Aerosols, their direct and indirect effects. In J. T. Houghton *et al*. (eds) *Climate Change 2001. The Scientific Basis*, Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, pp. 289–348.

Pfister, C. (1985) Snow cover, snow lines and glaciers in central Europe since the 16th century. In Tooley, M. J. and Sheail, G. M. (eds) *The Climatic Scene*, Allen & Unwin, London, pp. 154–74.

Rind, D. (2002) The sun's role in climate variations. *Science* 296 (5569), 673–7.

Schimel, D. *et al*. (1996) Radiative forcing of climate change. In Houghton, J., Meira Filho, L. G., Callander, B. A., Harris, N., Kattenberg, A. and Maskell, K. (eds) *Climate Change 1995. The Science of Climate Change*, Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, pp. 65–131.

Schuurmans, C. J. E. (1984) Climate variability and its time changes in European countries, based on instrumental observations. In Flohn, H. and Fantechi, R. (eds) *The Climate of Europe: Past, Present and Future*, D. Reidel, Dordrecht, pp. 65–101.

Sewell, W. R. D. (ed.) (1966) *Human Dimensions of Weather Modification*, University of Chicago, Department of Geography, Research Paper No. 105, 423pp.

Sioli, H. (1985) The effects of deforestation in Amazonia. *Geog. J*. 151, 197–203.

Sokolik, I. N. and Toon, B. (1996) Direct radiative forcing by anthropogenic airborne mineral aerosols. *Nature* 381, 501–4.

Solomon, S. (1999) Stratospheric ozone depletion: a review of concepts and history. *Rev. Geophys.* 37(3), 275–316.

Stark, P. (1994) Climatic warming in the central Antarctic Peninsula area. *Weather* 49(6), 215–20.

Street, F. A. (1981) Tropical palaeoenvironments. *Prog. Phys. Geog*. 5, 157–85.

Study of Man's Impact on Climate (SMIC) (1971) *Inadvertent Climate Modification*, Massachusetts Institute of Technology Press, Cambridge, MA, 308pp.

Thompson, R. D. (1989) Short-term climatic change: evidence, causes, environmental consequences and strategies for action. *Prog. Phys. Geog*. 13(3), 315–47.

Tooley, M. J. and Shennan, I. (eds) (1987) Sea-level changes. *Trans. Inst. Brit. Geog. Sp. Pub*. 20, 397pp.

Waple, M. *et al*. (2002) Climate assessment for 2001. *Bull.Amer.Met. Soc*. 83(6), S1–62.

Weber, G.R. (1995) Seasonal and regional variations of tropospheric temperatures in the Northern Hemisphere, 1976–1990. *Int. J. Climatol*. 15, 259–74.

Wigley, M. L. and Raper, S. C. B. (1992) Implications for climate and sea level of revised IPCC emissions scenarios. *Nature* 357, 293–300.

Appendix 1

Climate classification

The purpose of any classification system is to obtain an efficient arrangement of information in a simplified and generalized form. Climate statistics can be organized in order to describe and delimit the major types of climate in quantitative terms. Obviously, any single classification can serve only a few purposes satisfactorily and many different schemes have therefore been developed. Many climatic classifications are concerned with the relationships between climate and vegetation or soils and rather few attempt to address the direct effects of climate on human beings.

Only the basic principles of the four groups of the most widely known classification systems are summarized here. Further information may be found in the listed references.

A GENERIC CLASSIFICATIONS RELATED TO PLANT GROWTH OR VEGETATION

Numerous schemes have been suggested for relating climate limits to plant growth or vegetation groups. They rely on two basic criteria: the degree of aridity and of warmth.

Aridity is not simply a matter of low precipitation, but of the ‘effective precipitation’ (i.e. precipitation minus evaporation). The ratio of rainfall/temperature is often used as an index of precipitation effectiveness, since higher temperatures increase evaporation. W. Köppen developed the pre-eminent example of such a classification. Between 1900 and 1936, he devised several classification schemes that involve considerable complexity in their full detail. The system has been used extensively in geographical teaching. The key features of Köppen’s approach are temperature criteria and aridity criteria.

Temperature criteria

Five of the six major climate types are based on monthly mean temperature values.

1. Tropical rainy climate: coldest month >18°C.
2. Dry climates.
3. Warm, temperate, rainy climates: coldest month between –3° and +18°C, warmest month >10°C.
4. Cold boreal forest climates: coldest month <–3°, warmest month >10°C. Note that many American workers use a modified version with 0°C as the C/D boundary.
5. Tundra climate: warmest month 0 to 10°C.
6. Perpetual frost climate: warmest month <0°C.

The arbitrary temperature limits stem from a variety of criteria. These are as follows: the 10°C summer isotherm correlates with the poleward limit of tree growth; the 18°C winter isotherm is critical for certain tropical plants; and the –3°C isotherm indicates a few weeks of snow cover. However, these correlations are far from precise. De Candolle determined the criteria in 1874 from the study of vegetation groups defined on a physiological basis (i.e. according to the internal functions of plant organs).

Aridity criteria

Precipitation	*Steppe (BS)/ desert (BW) boundary*	*Forest/steppe boundary*
Winter precipitation maximum	$r/t = 1$	$r/t = 2$
Precipitation evenly distributed	$r/(t + 7) = 1$	$r/(t + 7) = 2$
Summer precipitation maximum	$r/(t + 14) = 1$	$r/(t + 14) = 2$

where: r = annual precipitation (cm)
T = mean annual temperature (°C)

The criteria imply that, with winter precipitation, arid (desert) conditions occur where $r/T < 1$, semi-arid conditions where $1 < r/T < 2$. If the rain falls in summer, a larger amount is required to offset evaporation and maintain an equivalent effective precipitation.

Subdivisions of each major category are made with reference, first, to the seasonal distribution of precipitation. The most common of these are: f = no dry season; m = monsoonal, with a short dry season and heavy rains during the rest of the year; s = summer dry season; w = winter dry season). Second, there are further temperature criteria based on seasonality. Twenty-seven subtypes are recognized, of which twenty-three occur in Asia. The ten major Köppen types each have distinct annual energy budget regimes, as illustrated in Figure A1.1.

Figure A1.2A illustrates the distribution of the major Köppen climate types on a hypothetical continent of low and uniform elevation. Experiments using GCMs with and without orography show that, in fact, the poleward orientation of BS/BW climatic zones inland from the west coast is determined largely by the western Cordilleras. It would not be found on a low, uniform-elevation continent.

The Köppen climatic classification has proved useful in evaluating the accuracy of GCMs in simulating present climatic patterns and as a convenient index of change for climate scenarios projected for CO_2 doubling.

C. W. Thornthwaite introduced a further empirical classification in 1931. An expression for *precipitation efficiency* was obtained by relating measurements of pan evaporation to temperature and precipitation. The second element of the classification is an index of *thermal efficiency*, expressed by the positive departure of monthly mean temperatures from freezing-point. Distribution for these climatic provinces in North America and over the world have been published, but the classification is now largely of historical interest.

B ENERGY AND MOISTURE BUDGET CLASSIFICATIONS

Thornthwaite's most important contribution was his 1948 classification, based on the concept of potential evapotranspiration and the moisture budget (see Chapters 4C and 10B.3c). Potential evapotranspiration (PE) is calculated from the mean monthly temperature (in (C), with corrections for day length. For a thirty-day month (twelve-hour days):

PE (in cm) = $1.6(10t/I)^a$
where: I = the sum for 12 months of $(t/5)^{1.514}$
a = a further complex function of I.

Tables have been prepared for the easy computation of these factors.

The monthly water surplus (S) or deficit (D) is determined from a moisture budget assessment, taking into account stored soil moisture (Thornthwaite and Mather 1955; Mather 1985). A moisture index (Im) is given by:

$$Im = 100(S - D)/PE$$

This allows for variable soil moisture storage according to vegetation cover and soil type, and permits the evaporation rate to vary with the actual soil moisture content. The average water balance is calculated through a bookkeeping procedure. The mean values of the following variables are determined for each month: PE, potential evapotranspiration, precipitation minus PE; and Ws, soil water storage (a value assumed appropriate for that soil type at field capacity). Ws is reduced as the soil dries (DWs). AE is actual evapotranspiration. There are two cases: $AE = PE$, when Ws is at field capacity, or $(P - PE) > 0$; otherwise $AE = P + DWs$. The monthly moisture deficit, D, or surplus, S, is determined from $D = (PE - AE)$, or $S = (P - PE) > 0$, when $Ws \leq$ field capacity. Monthly deficits or surpluses are carried forward to the subsequent month.

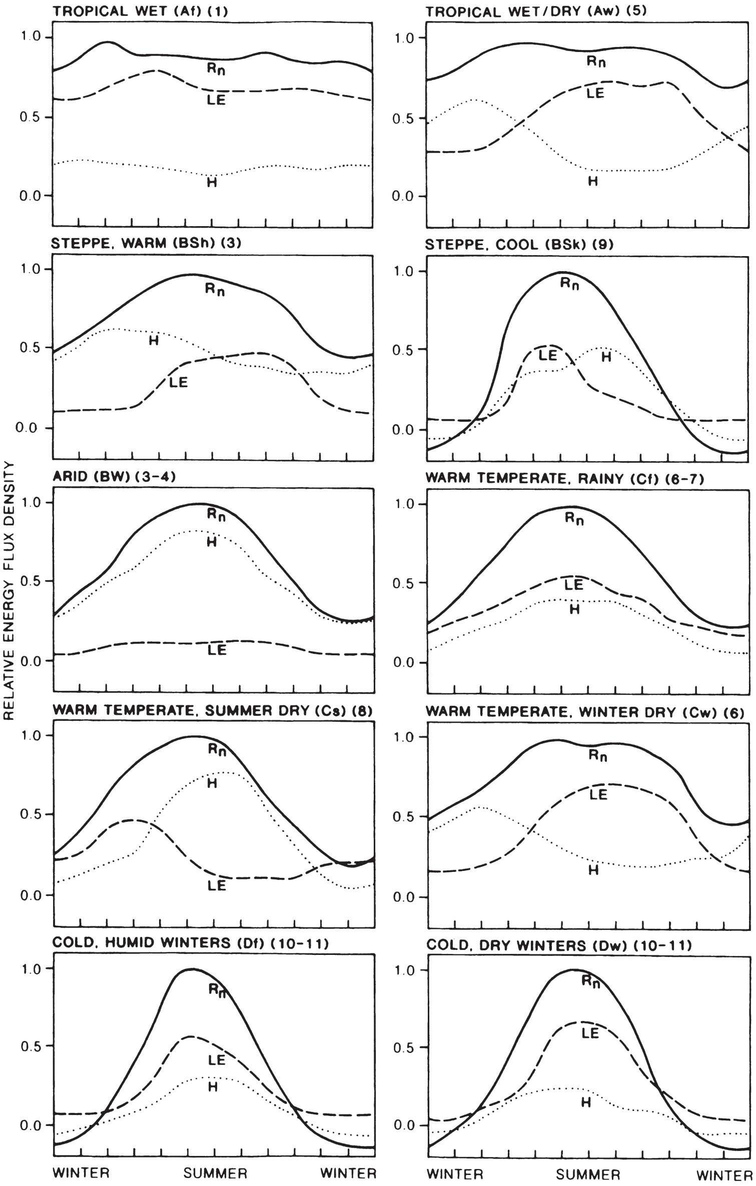


Figure A1.1 Characteristic annual energy balances for ten different climatic types (Köppen symbols and Strahler classification numbers shown). The ordinate shows energy flux density normalized with the maximum monthly net all-wavelength radiation (R_n) normalized with the maximum monthly value as unity. The abscissa intervals indicate the months of the year with summer in the centre. *H* = turbulent flux of sensible heat and *LE* = turbulent latent heat flux to the atmosphere.

Source: From Kraus and Alkhalaf (1995), copyright © John Wiley & Sons Ltd. Reproduced with permission.

A novel feature of the system is that the thermal efficiency is derived from the PE value, which itself is a function of temperature. The climate types defined by these two factors are shown in Table A1.1; both elements are subdivided according to the season of moisture deficit or surplus and the seasonal concentration of thermal efficiency.

The system has been applied to many regions, but no world map has been published. Unlike the Köppen approach, vegetation boundaries are not used to determine climatic ones. In eastern North America, vegetation boundaries do coincide reasonably closely with patterns of *PE*, but in tropical and semi-arid areas the method is less satisfactory.

M. I. Budyko developed a more fundamental approach using net radiation instead of temperature (see Chapter 4C). He related the net radiation available for evaporation from a wet surface (R_o) to the heat required to evaporate the mean annual precipitation (*L*r). This ratio R_o/Lr (where L = latent heat of evaporation) is

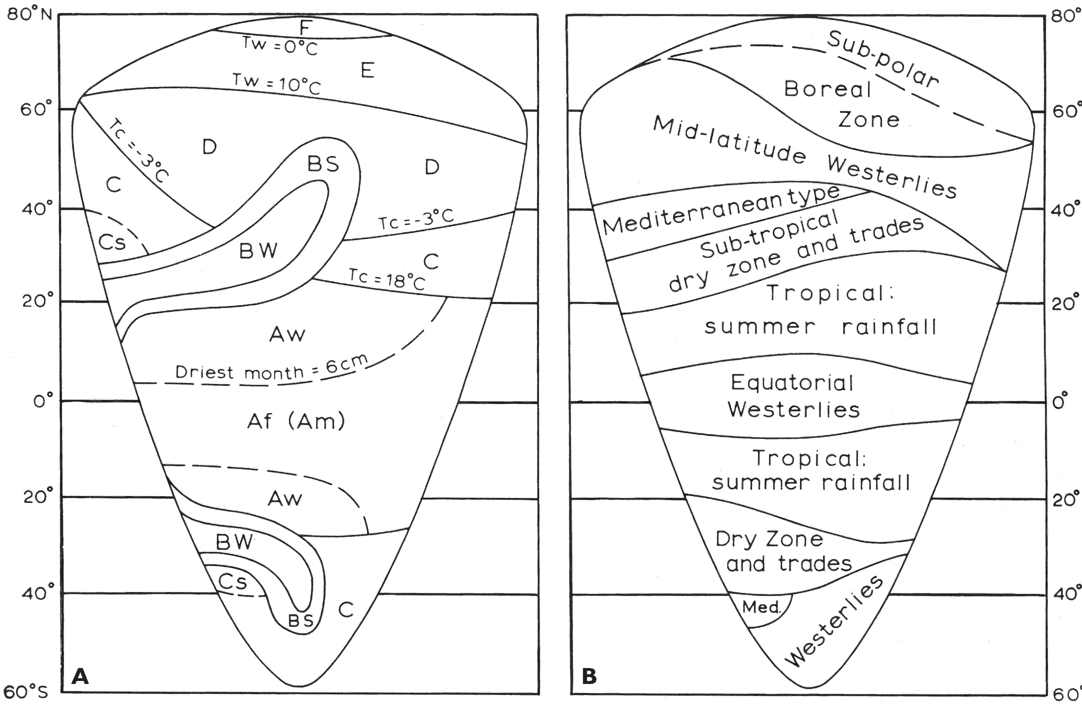

80°N
60°
40°
20°
0°
20°
40°
60°S
F
Tw = 0°C
E
Tw = 10°C
Tc = -3°C
D
BS
D
C
Cs
BW
Tc = -3°C
C
Tc = 18°C
Aw
Driest month = 6cm
Af (Am)
Aw
BW
Cs
BS
C
A
Sub-polar
Boreal Zone
Mid-latitude Westerlies
Mediterranean type
Sub-tropical dry zone and trades
Tropical: summer rainfall
Equatorial Westerlies
Tropical: summer rainfall
Dry Zone and trades
Med.
Westerlies
B
80°N
60°
40°
20°
0°
20°
40°
60°S

Figure A1.2 (A) The distribution of the major Köppen climatic types on a hypothetical continent of low and uniform elevation. Tw = mean temperature of warmest month; Tc = mean temperature of coldest month. (B) The distribution of Flohn's climatic types on a hypothetical continent of low and uniform elevation (see Note 1).

Source: From Flohn (1950). Copyright © *Erdkunde*. Published by permission.

Table A1.1 Thornthwaite's climatic classification.

		PE		
*Im (1955 system)**		*mm*	*in*	*Climatic type*
>100	Perhumid (*A*)	>1140	>44.9	Megathermal (*A*′)
20 to 100	Humid (B_1 to B_4)	570 to 1140	22.4 to 44.9	Mesothermal (B'_1 to B'_4)
0 to 20	Moist subhumid (C_2)	285 to 570	11.2 to 22.4	Microthermal (C'_1 to C'_2)
–33 to 0	Dry subhumid (C_1)	142 to 285	5.6 to 11.2	Tundra (*D*′)
–67 to –33	Semi-arid (*D*)	<142	<5.6	Frost (*E*′)
–100 to –67	Arid (*E*)			

Note: **Im* = *100(S – D)/PE* is equivalent to 100(*r*/*PE* – 1), where *r* = annual precipitation.

called the *radiational index of dryness*. It has a value of less than unity in humid areas and greater than unity in dry areas. Boundary values of R_o/Lr are: Desert (>3.0); Semi-desert (2.0 to 3.0); Steppe (1.0 to 2.0); Forest (0.33 to 1.0); Tundra (<0.33). In comparison with the revised Thornthwaite index ($Im = 100(r/PE - 1)$), note that $Im = 100(Lr/R_o - 1)$ if all the net radiation is used for evaporation from a wet surface (i.e. no energy is transferred into the ground by conduction or into the air as sensible heat). A general world map of Ro/Lr has appeared, but over large parts of the earth there are few measurements of net radiation.

Energy fluxes were used by Terjung and Louie (1972) to categorize the magnitude of energy input (net

Table A1.2 Radiation budget criteria for major climatic types. Units W m^{-2}.

Climatic type	*Annual short wave*	*Annual long wave*	*Annual range of short wave*
Land			
Tropical:	>140	<70	<100
Wet	>140	<50	<100
Wet/dry	>140	>50	<100
Desert		>90	
Steppe		$70<L_N<90$	
Subtropical	>140	<70	>100
Temperate	$100<S_N<140$	<70	
Boreal	$50<S_N<100$	<70	
Polar	$0<S_N<50$	<50	
Oceans			
Tropical	>210		<140
Convergence and stratus	$170<S_N<210$		<140
Subtropical	>150		>140
Temperate	$80<S_N<150$		
Polar	$0<S_N<80$		

Source: From Smith *et al*. (2002).

radiation and advection) and outputs (sensible heat and latent heat), and their seasonal range. On this basis, sixty-two climatic types were distinguished (in six broad groups), and a world map was provided. Smith *et al*. (2002) determine net short-wave and net long-wave radiation criteria for a climate classification with nine global types that is similar to Köppen's, developed by Trewartha and Horn (1980). Table A1.2 summarizes their criteria.

W. Lauer has prepared a new classification and map of world climate types based on thermal and hygric thresholds for both natural vegetation and agricultural crops. The limits of the four primary zones (tropical, subtropical, mid-latitude and polar regions) are determined from a radiation index (duration of daily sunshine hours). Climate types are then based on a thermal index (temperature sums) and a moisture index, which takes account of the difference between monthly precipitation and potential evaporation.

C GENETIC CLASSIFICATIONS

The genetic basis of large-scale (macro-) climates is the atmospheric circulation, and this can be related to regional climatology in terms of wind regimes or airmasses.

H. Flohn proposed one system in 1950. The major categories are based on the global wind belts and precipitation seasonality, as follows:

1 Equatorial westerly zone: constantly wet.
2 Tropical zone, winter trades: summer rainfall.
3 Subtropical dry zone (trades or subtropical high pressure): dry conditions prevail.
4 Subtropical winter-rain zone (mediterranean type): winter rainfall.
5 Extra-tropical westerly zone: precipitation throughout the year.
6 Subpolar zone: limited precipitation throughout the year.
6(a) Boreal, continental subtype: summer rainfall; limited winter snowfall.
7 High polar zone: meagre precipitation; summer rainfall, early winter snowfall.

Temperature does not appear explicitly in the scheme. Figure A1.2B shows the distribution of these types on a hypothetical continent. Rough agreement between these types and those of Köppen's scheme is apparent. Note that the boreal subtype is restricted to the northern hemisphere and that the subtropical zones do not occur on the eastern side of a landmass. Flohn's approach has value as an introductory teaching outline.

A. N. Strahler (1969) proposed a simple but effective genetic classification of world climates, based on the fundamental planetary mechanisms. Following a tripartite division by latitude (low, middle and high), regions are grouped according to the relative influence of the ITCZ, the subtropical high-pressure cells, cyclonic storms, high-latitude frontal zones and Polar/Arctic air sources. This gives fourteen classes and a separate category of Highland climates. Briefly, these are as follows:

(A) Low-latitude climates controlled by equatorial and tropical airmasses.

1 Wet equatorial climate (10°N to 10°S; Asia 10°S to 20°N) – converging equatorial and mT air masses produce heavy convectional rains; uniform temperature.
2 Trade wind littoral climate (10° to 25°N and S) – high sun trade winds alternate seasonally with subtropical high pressure; strong seasonality of rainfall, high temperatures.
3 Tropical desert and steppe (15° to 35°N and S) – dominance of subtropical high pressure gives low rainfall and high maximum temperatures with moderate annual range.
4 West Coast desert climate (15° to 30°N and S) – dominance of subtropical high pressure. Cool seas maintain low rainfall with fog and small annual temperature range.
5 Tropical wet – dry climate (5° to 15°N and S) – high sun wet season, low sun dry season; small annual temperature range.

(B) Mid-latitude climates controlled by both tropical and polar airmasses.

6 Humid subtropical climate (20° to 25°N and S) – high sun moist mT air and low sun cyclones give well-distributed annual rainfall with moderate temperature regime.
7 Marine west coast climate (40° to 60°N and S) – windward coasts with cyclones all year. Cloudy; well-distributed rainfall with low sun maximum.
8 Mediterranean climate (30° to 45°N and S). Hot, dry summers associated with the subtropical highs alternate with winter cyclones bringing ample rain.
9 Mid-latitude continental desert and steppe (35° to 50°N and S). Summer cT air alternates with winter cP air. Hot summers and cold winters give a large annual temperature range.
10 Humid continental climate (35° to 60°N). Central and eastern continental locations. Frontal cyclones. Cold winters, warm to hot summers, large annual temperature range. Well distributed precipitation.

(C) High-latitude climates controlled by polar and Arctic airmasses.

11 Continental sub-Arctic climates (50° to 70°N). Source region for cP air. Very cold winters, short, cool summers, extreme annual temperature range. Year-round cyclonic precipitation.
12 Marine sub-Arctic climate (50° to 60°N and 45° to 60°S). Dominated by the winter Arctic frontal zone. Cold, moist winters, cool summers; small annual temperature range.
13 Polar tundra climates (north of 55° to 60°N and south of 60°S). Arctic coastal margins dominated by cyclonic storms. Humid and cold, moderated somewhat by maritime influences in winter.
14 Ice sheet climates (Greenland and Antarctica). Source regions of Arctic and Antarctic air. Perpetual frost, low snowfall except near coasts.

(D) Highland climates – localized and varied in character.

D CLASSIFICATIONS OF CLIMATIC COMFORT

The body's thermal equilibrium is determined by metabolic rate, heat storage in body tissues, radiative and convective exchanges with the surroundings, and evaporative heat loss by sweating. In indoor conditions, about 60 per cent of body heat is lost by radiation and 25 per cent by evaporation from the lungs and skin. Outdoors, additional heat is lost by convective transfer due to the wind. Human comfort depends primarily on air temperature, relative humidity and wind speed (Buettner 1962). Comfort indices have been developed by physiological experiments in test chambers. They include measures of heat stress and windchill.

Windchill describes the cooling effect of low temperature and wind on bare skin. It is commonly expressed via a windchill equivalent temperature. For example, a 15 m s^{-1} wind with an air temperature of –10°C has a windchill equivalent of –25°C. A windchill of –30°C denotes a high risk of frostbite and corresponds to a heat loss of approximately 1600 W m^{-2}. Nomograms to determine windchill have been proposed as well as other formulae that include the protective effect of clothing.

Heat discomfort is assessed from measurements of air temperature and relative humidity. The US National Weather Service uses a heat index based on a measure of *apparent temperature* developed by R.G. Steadman for normally clothed individuals. The value of apparent temperature in the shade (TAPP) is approximately:

$$\text{TAPP} = -2.7 + 1.04\,T_A + 2.0e - 0.65\,V_{10}$$

where TA = midday temperature (°C), e = vapour pressure (mb), V_{10} = 10 m wind speed (m s^{-1}). Warnings are issued in the United States when the apparent temperature reaches 40.5°C for more than three hours/day on two consecutive days.

Another approach measures the thermal insulation provided by clothing. One 'clo' unit maintains a seated/resting person comfortable in surroundings of 21°C, relative humidity below 50 per cent and air movement of 10 cm s^{-1}. For example, the clo values of representative clothing are: tropical wear ≤0.25, light summer clothes 0.5, typical male/female day wear 1.0, winter wear with hat and overcoat 2.0 to 2.5, woollen winter sportswear 3.0, and polar clothing 3.6 to 4.5. The clo units correlate closely with windchill and inversely with the heat index. A bioclimatic classification that incorporates estimates of comfort using temperature, relative humidity, sunshine and wind speed data has been proposed for the United States by W. H. Terjung (1966).

FURTHER READING

Bailey, H. P. (1960) A method for determining the temperateness of climate. *Geografiska Annaler* 42, 1–16.

Budyko, M. I. (1956) *The Heat Balance of the Earth's Surface* (trans. N. I. Stepanova), US Weather Bureau, Washington, DC.

Budyko, M. I. (1974) *Climate and Life* (trans. D. H. Miller), Academic Press, New York (508pp.)

Buettner, K. J. (1962) Human aspects of bioclimatological classification. In Tromp, S. W. and Weihe, W. H. (eds) *Biometeorology*, Pergamon, Oxford and London, pp. 128–40.

Carter, D. B. (1954) Climates of Africa and India according to Thornthwaite's 1948 classification. *Publications in Climatology* 7(4), Laboratory of Climatology, Centerton, NJ.

Chang, J-H. (1959) An evaluation of the 1948 Thornthwaite classification. *Ann. Assn. Amer. Geog.* 49, 24–30.

Dixon, J. C. and Prior, M. J. (1987) Wind-chill indices – a review. *Met. Mag.* 116, 1–17.

Essenwanger, O. (2001) Classification of climates. In *General Climatology, Vol.1C. World Survey of Climatology*, Elsevier, Amsterdam, pp. 1–102.

Flohn, H. (1950) Neue Anschauungen über die allgemeine Zirkulation der Atmosphäre und ihre klimatische Bedeutung. *Erdkunde* 4, 141–62.

Flohn, H. (1957) Zur Frage der Einteilung der Klimazonen. *Erdkunde* 11, 161–75.

Gentilli, J. (1958) *A Geography of Climate*, University of Western Australia Press, pp. 120–66.

Gregory, S. (1954) Climatic classification and climatic change. *Erdkunde* 8, 246–52.

Kraus, H. and Alkhalaf, A. (1995) Characteristic surface energy budgets for different climate types. *Internat. J. Climatol*. 15, 275–84.

Lauer, W., Rafiqpoor, M. D. and Frankenberg, P. (1996) Die Klimate der Erde. Eine Klassifikation auf ökophysiologicher Grundlage auf der realen Vegetation. *Erdkunde* 50(4), 275–300.

Lohmann, U. *et al*. (1993) The Köppen climate classification as a diagnostic tool for general circulation models. *Climate Res*. 3, 277–94.

Mather, J. R. (1985) The water budget and the distribution of climates, vegetation and soils. *Publications in Climatology* 38(2), Center for Climatic Research, University of Delaware, Newark (36pp.)

Olgyay, V. (1963) *Design with Climate: Bioclimatic Approach to Architectural Regionalism*, Princeton University Press, Princeton, NJ (190pp.)

Oliver, J. E. (1970) A genetic approach to climatic classification. *Ann. Assn. Amer. Geog*. 60, 615–37. (Commentary, see 61, 815–20.)

Oliver, J. E. and Wilson, L. (1987) Climatic classification. In J. E. Oliver and R. W. Fairbridge (eds) *The Encyclopedia of Climatology*, Van Nostrand Reinhold, New York, pp. 231–6.

Rees, W. G. (1993) New wind-chill nomogram. *Polar Rec*. 29(170), 229–34.

Salmoud, J. and Smith, C.G. (1996) Back to basics: world climatic types. *Weather* 51: 11–18.

Sanderson, M.E. (1999) The classification of climates from Pythagoras to Koeppen. *Bull. Amer. Met. Soc*. 669–73.

Smith, G. L. *et al*. (2002) Surface radiation budget and climate classification. *J. Climate* 15(10), 1175–88.

Steadman, R. G. (1984) A universal scale of apparent temperature. *J. Clim. Appl. Met*. 23(12), 1674–87.

Steadman, R. G., Osczewski, R. J. and Schwerdt, R. W. (1995) Comments on 'Wind chill errors'. *Bull. Amer. Met. Soc*. 76(9), 1628–37.

Strahler, A. N. (1969) *Physical Geography* (3rd edn), Wiley, New York (733pp.)

Terjung, W. H. (1966) Physiologic climates of the conterminous United States: a bioclimatological classification based on man. *Ann. Assn. Amer. Geog*. 56, 141–79.

Terjung, W. H. and Louie, S. S-F. (1972) Energy input–output climates of the world. *Archiv. Met. Geophys. Biokl*. B 20, 127–66.

Thornthwaite, C. W. (1948) An approach towards a rational classification of climate. *Geog. Rev*. 38, 55–94.

Thornthwaite, C. W. and Mather, J. R. (1955) The water balance. *Publications in Climatology* 8(1), Laboratory of Climatology, Centerton, NJ (104pp.)

Thornthwaite, C. W. and Mather, J. R. (1957) Instructions and tables for computing potential evapotranspiration and the water balance. *Publications in Climatology* 10(3), Laboratory of Climatology, Centerton, NJ (129pp.)

Trewartha, G.E. and Horn, L. H. (1980) *An Introduction to Climate*, McGraw-Hill, New York, (416pp.)

Troll, C. (1958) Climatic seasons and climatic classification. *Oriental Geographer* 2, 141–65.

Yan, Y. Y. and Oliver, J. E. (1996) The clo: a utilitarian unit of measure weather/climate comfort. *Int. J. Climatol.* 16(9), 1045–56.

Appendix 2

Système International (SI) units

Quantity	*Dimensions*	*SI*	*cgs metric*	*British*
Length	L	m	10^2 cm	3.2808 ft
Area	L^2	m^2	10^4 cm^2	10.7640 ft^2
Volume	L^3	m^3	10^6 cm^3	35.3140 ft^3
Mass	M	kg	10^3 g	2.2046 lb
Density	ML^{-3}	kg m^{-3}	10^{-3} g cm^{-3}	
Time	T	s	s	
Velocity	LT^{-1}	m s^{-1}	10^2 cm s^{-1}	2.24 mi hr^{-1}
Acceleration	LT^{-2}	m s^{-2}	10^2 cm s^{-2}	
Force	MLT^{-2}	newton (kg m s^{-2})	10^5 dynes (10^5 g cm^{-1} s^{-2})	
Pressure	$ML^{-1}T^{-2}$	N m^{-2} (pascal)	10^{-2} mb	
Energy, work	ML^2T^{-2}	joule (kg m^2 s^{-2})	10^7 ergs (10^7 g cm^2 s^{-2})	
Power	ML^2T^{-3}	watt (kg m^2 s^{-1})	10^7 ergs s^{-1}	1.340×10^{-3}hp
Temperature	θ	kelvin (K)	°C	1.8°F
Heat energy	ML^2T^{-2} (or H)	joule (J)	0.2388 cal	9.470×10^{-4} BTU
Heat/radiation flux	HT^{-1}	watt (W) or J s^{-1}	0.2388 cal s^{-1}	3.412 BTU hr^{-1}
Heat flux density	$HL^{-2}T^{-1}$	W m^{-2}	2.388×10^{-5} cal cm^{-2} s^{-1}	

The *basic SI units* are metre, kilogram, second (m, kg, s):

1 mm = 0.03937 in — 1 in = 25.4 mm
1 m = 3.2808 feet — 1 ft = 0.3048 m
1 km = .6214 miles — 1 mi = 1.6090 km
1 kg = 2.2046 lb — 1 lb = 0.4536 kg
1 m s^{-1} = 2.2400 mi hr^{-1} — 1 mi hr^{-1} = 0.4460 m s^{-1}
1 m^2 = 10.7640 ft^2 — 1 ft^2 = 0.0929 m^2
1 km^2 = 0.3861 mi^2 — 1 mi^2 = 0.5900 km^2
1°C = 1.8°F — 1°F = 0.555°C

Temperature conversions may be determined by noting that:

$$\frac{T(°C)}{5} = \frac{T(°F) - 32}{9}$$

Density units = kg m^{-3}
Pressure units = N m^{-2} (= Pa); 100 Pa (=hPa) = 1 mb.
Mean sea-level pressure = 1013 mb (= 1013 hPa)

Radius of the sun = 7×10^8 m
Radius of the earth = 6.37×10^6 m
Mean earth–sun distance = 1.495×10^{11} m

Energy conversion factors:
4.1868 J = 1 calorie
J cm^{-2} = 0.2388 cal cm^{-2}
Watt = J s^{-1}
W m^{-2} = 1.433×10^{-8} cal^{-2} min^{-1}
697.8 W m^{-2} = 1 cal cm^{-2} min^{-1}

For *time sums*:
Day: 1 W m^{-2} = 8.64 J cm^{-2} dy^{-1}
= 2.064 cal cm^{-2} dy^{-1}
Day: 1 W m^{-2} = 8.64×10^4 J m^{-2} dy^{-1}
Month: 1 W m^{-2} = 2.592 M J m^{-2} $(30\ dy)^{-1}$
= 61.91 cal cm^{-2} $(30\ dy)^{-1}$
Year: 1 W m^{-2} = 31.536 M J m^{-2} yr^{-1}
= 753.4 cal cm^{-2} yr^{-1}

Gravitational acceleration (g) = 9.81 m s^{-2}
Latent heat of vaporization (288K) = 2.47×10^6 J kg^{-1}
Latent heat of fusion (273K) = 3.33×10^5 J kg^{-1}

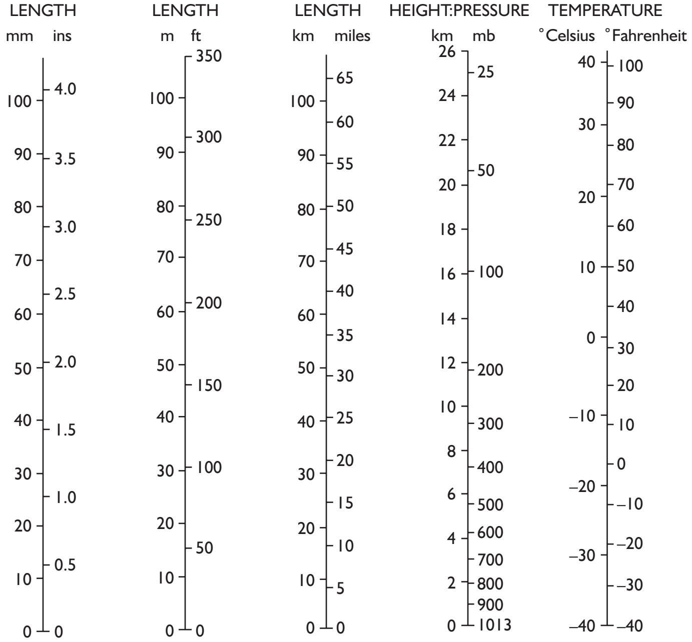


Figure A2.1 Nomograms of height, pressure, length and temperature.

Appendix 3

Synoptic weather maps

The synoptic weather map provides a generalized view of weather conditions over a large area at a given time. The map analysis smooths out local pressure and wind departures from the broad pattern. Such maps are usually prepared at six- or twelve-hourly intervals. Maps are generally prepared for mean sea-level pressure (or of height contours for the 1000 mb pressure surface) and at standard isobaric – 850, 700, 500, 300 mb, etc. The MSL pressure map typically shows isobars at 4 or 5 mb intervals, surface fronts and weather information.

Weather phenomena shown on the map are as follows:

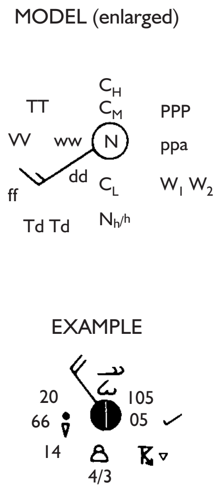
temperature
dew-point
wind direction
wind speed
pressure
cloud amount
type and height of cloud base
present weather
past weather (last six hours)
pressure tendency
pressure change (last three hours)
visibility

These data are presented in coded or symbolic form for each weather station. The plotting convention ('station model') is illustrated in Figure A3.1. The basic weather symbols are illustrated in Figure A3.2, and the synoptic code is given in Table A3.1.

REFERENCES

Pouncy, F. J. (2003) A history of cloud codes and symbols. *Weather* 58, 69–80.

Stubbs, M. W. (1981) New code for reporting surface observations – an introduction. *Weather* 36, 357–66.


MODEL (enlarged)
C_H
TT
C_M
PPP
VV
ww
N
ppa
dd
ff
C_L
W1 W2
Td Td
N_h/h
EXAMPLE
20
105
66
05
14
4/3

	KEY	EXAMPLE
N	Total cloud (oktas)[1]	7
dd	Wind direction (tens of degrees)	32
ff	Wind speed (knots)	20
VV	Visibility (code)	66
ww	Present weather (coded symbol)	80
W_1	Past weather (coded symbol)	9
W_2	“ ” “ ”	8
PPP	Sea-level pressure (mb)[2]	105
TT	Temperature (°C)[4]	20
N_h	Low cloud (oktas)[1]	4
C_L	Low cloud type (coded symbol)	2
h	Height of C_L (code)	3
C_M	Medium cloud type (coded symbol)	5
C_H	High cloud type (coded symbol)	2
Td Td	Dew-point temperature (°C)[4]	14
a	Barograph trace (coded symbol)	3
pp	3-hour pressure change (mb)[3]	05

[1] okta = eighth
[2] Pressure in tens, units and tenths mb: omitting initial 9 or 10 i.e. 105 = 1010·5
[3] Pressure change in units and tenths mb
[4] Rounded to nearest °C

Figure A3.1 Basic station model for plotting weather data. The key and example are tabulated in the internationally agreed sequence for teletype messages. These data would be preceded by an identifying station number, date and time.

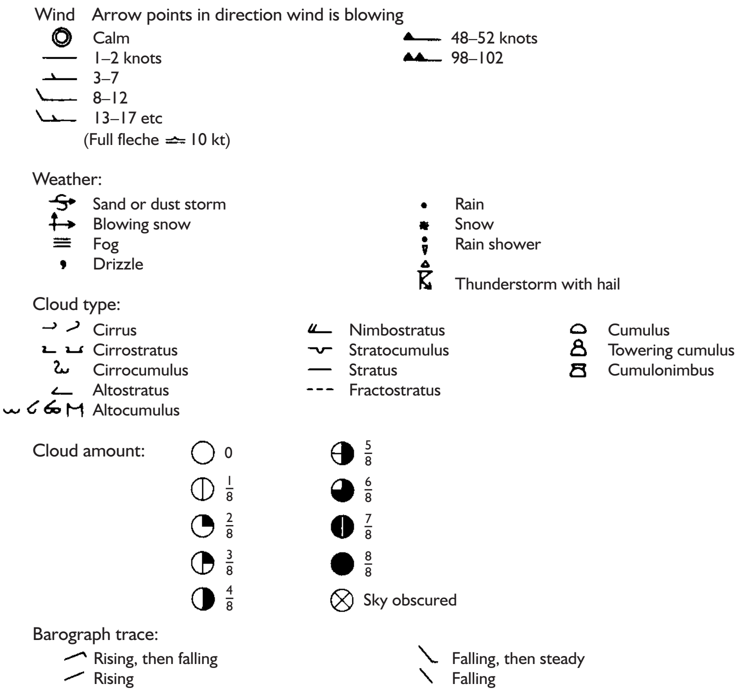

Wind Arrow points in direction wind is blowing
Calm
1–2 knots
3–7
8–12
13–17 etc
(Full fleche ≏ 10 kt)
48–52 knots
98–102
Weather:
Sand or dust storm
Blowing snow
Fog
Drizzle
Rain
Snow
Rain shower
Thunderstorm with hail
Cloud type:
Cirrus
Cirrostratus
Cirrocumulus
Altostratus
Altocumulus
Nimbostratus
Stratocumulus
Stratus
Fractostratus
Cumulus
Towering cumulus
Cumulonimbus
Cloud amount:
0
1/8
2/8
3/8
4/8
5/8
6/8
7/8
8/8
Sky obscured
Barograph trace:
Rising, then falling
Rising
Falling, then steady
Falling

Figure A3.2 Representative synoptic symbols.

Table A3.1 Synoptic code (World Meteorological Organization, January 1982).

Symbol	*Key*	*Example*	*Comments*
yy	Day of the month (GMT)	05	All groups are in blocks of five digits
GG	Time (GMT) to nearest hour	06	
^{i}w	Indicator for type of wind speed observation and units	4	Measured by anemometer (knots)
IIiii	International index number of station		
^{i}R	Indicator: precipitation data included/omitted (code)	3	Data omitted
^{i}X	Indicator: station type + ww W_1 W_2 included/omitted (code)	1	Manned station with ww W_1 W_2 included
h	Height of lowest cloud (code)	3	
vv	Visibility (code)	66	
N	Total cloud amount (oktas)	7	
dd	Wind direction (tens of degrees)	32	
ff	Wind speed (knots, or m s^{-1})	20	Knots
1	Header	1	
S_n	Sign of temperature (code)	0	Positive value
TTT	Temperature (0.1°C), plotted rounded to nearest 1°C	203	(1 = negative value)
2	Header	2	
S_n	Sign of temperature (code)	0	
$T_dT_dT_d$	Dew-point temperature (as TTT)	138	
4	Header	4	
PPPP	Mean sea-level pressure (tenths of mb, omitting thousands)	0105	
5	Header	5	
a	Characteristic of pressure tendency (coded symbol)	3	
ppp	Three-hour pressure tendency (tenths of mb)	005	
7	Header	7	
ww	Present weather (coded symbol)	80	
W_1	Past weather (coded symbol)	9	(W_1 must be greater than W_2)
W_2	Past weather (coded symbol)	8	
8	Header	8	
N_h	Amount of low cloud (oktas)	4	
C_L	Low cloud type (coded symbol)	2	
C_M	Medium cloud type (coded symbol)	5	
C_H	High cloud type (coded symbol)	2	

Note: Group 3 is for a report of surface pressure and group 6 for precipitation data.

Appendix 4

Data sources

A DAILY WEATHER MAPS AND DATA

Western Europe/North Atlantic: *Daily Weather Summary* (synoptic chart, data for the UK). London Weather Centre, 284 High Holborn, London WC1V 7HX, England.

Western Europe North Atlantic: *Monthly Weather Report* (published about fifteen months in arrears; tables for approximately 600 stations in the UK). London Weather Centre.

Europe – eastern North Atlantic: *European Daily Weather Report* (synopic chart). Deutsche Wetterdienst, Zentralamt D6050, Offenbach, Germany.

Europe – eastern/North Atlantic: *Weather Log* (daily synopic chart, supplement to *Weather* magazine). Royal Meteorological Society, Bracknell, Berkshire RG1 7LL, England.

North America: *Daily Weather Reports* (weekly publication). National Environmental Satellite Data and Information Service, NOAA, US Government Printing Office, Washington, DC 20402, USA.

B SATELLITE DATA

NOAA operational satellites (imagery, digital data). Satellite Data Services NCDC, NOAA/NESDIS, Asheville, NC 28801–5001, USA.

Defence Meteorological Satellite Program (data). National Geophysical Data Center, NOAA/NESDIS, 325 Broadway, Boulder, CO 80303, USA.

Metsat (imagery, digital data). ESOC, Robert-Bosil Str. 5, D-6100 Darmstadt, Federal Republic of Germany.

NASA research satellites (digital data). National Space Science Data Center, Goddard Space Flight Center, Greenbelt, MD 20771, USA.

UK Direct readout data from NOAA and Meteosat satellites are received at Dundee, Scotland. Dr P. E. Baylis, Department of Electrical Engineering, University of Dundee, Dundee DD1 4HN Scotland, UK.

C CLIMATIC DATA

Canadian Climate Center: *Climatic Perspectives* (197 weekly and monthly summary charts). Atmospheric Environment Service, 4905 Dufferin Street, Downsview, Ontario, Canada M3H 5T4.

Carbon Dioxide Information Center (CDIC): Data holdings and publications on climate – related variables and indices. Carbon Dioxide Information Center, Oak Ridge National Laboratory, Oak Ridge, TN 37931, USA.

National Center for Atmospheric Research, Boulder, CO 80307–3000, USA. Archives most global analyses and many global climate records.

National Climatic Center, NOAA/NESDIS: *Local Climatological Data* (1948–) (monthly tabulations, charts); *Monthly Climatic Data for the World* (May 1948–). National Climatic Data Center, Federal Building, Asheville, NC 28801, USA.

Climate Analysis Center, NOAA/NESDIS: *Climatic Diagnostics Bulletin* (1983–) (monthly summaries of selected diagnostic product from NMC analyses). Climate Analysis Center, NMC NOAA/NWS, World Weather Building, Washington, DC 20233, USA.

Climatic Research Unit, University of East Anglia: *Climate Monitor* (1976–) (monthly summaries, global and UK). Climatic Research Unit, University of East Anglia, Norwich NR4 7TJ, England.

World Climate Data Programme: *Climate System Monitoring Bulletin* (1984–) (monthly). World Climate Data Programme, WMO Secretariat, CP5, Geneva 20 CH-1211, Switzerland.

World Meteorological Centre, Melbourne: *Climate Monitoring Bulletin for the Southern Hemisphere* (1986–). Bureau of Meteorology, GPO Box 1289 K, Melbourne, Victoria 3001, Australia.

D SELECTED SOURCES OF INFORMATION ON THE WORLD WIDE WEB

World Meteorological Organization, Geneva, Switzerland
http://www.wmo.ch

National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, Washington, DC, USA
http://www.noaa.gov
http://www.crh.noaa.gov/den/windchill.html#definitions

National Climate Data Center, Asheville, NC, USA
http://www.ncdc.noaa.gov/ncdc.html

Climate Diagnostics Center, NOAA, Boulder, CO, USA
http://www.cdc.noaa.gov

National Snow and Ice Data Center, Boulder, CO, USA
http://nsidc.org

Environment Canada
http://www.on.doe.ca

European Centre for Medium-range Weather Forecasting
http://www.ecmwf.int

Climate Diagnostics Bulletin (US)
http://nic.fb4.noaa.gov

UK Meteorological Office
http://www.meto.gov.uk

US National Severe Storms Laboratory
http://www.nssl.uoknor.edu

NASA Earth Observatory
http://earthobservatory.nasa.gov

University Corporation for Atmospheric Research, Boulder, CO, USA
http://www.rap.ucar.edu/weather

FURTHER READING

Ahlquist, J. (1993) Free software and information via the computer network. *Bull. Amer. Met. Soc*. 74 (3), 377–86.

Brugge, R. (1994) Computer networks and meteorological information. *Weather* 49(9), 298–306.

Carleton, A. M. (1991) *Satellite Remote Sensing in Climatology*, Belhaven Press, London, and CRC Press, Boca Raton, Fla. (291pp.)

European Space Agency (1978) *Introduction to the Metsat System*, European Space Operations Centre, Darmstadt (54pp.)

European Space Agency (1978) *Atlas of Meteosat Imagery, Atlas Meteosat*, ESA-SP-1030, ESTEC, Nordwijk, The Netherlands (494pp.)

Finger, F. G., Laver, J. D., Bergman, K. H. and Patterson, V. L. (1958) The Climate Analysis Center's user information service. *Bull. Amer. Met. Soc*. 66, 413–20.

Hastings, D. A., Emery, W. J., Weaver, R. L., Fisher, W. J. and Ramsey, J. W. (1987) *Proceedings North American NOAA Polar Orbiter User Group First Meeting*, NOAA/NESDIS, US Department of Commerce, Boulder, CO, National Geophysical Data Center (273pp.)

Hattemer-Frey, H. A., Karl, T. R. and Quinlan, F. T. (1986) *An Annotated Inventory of Climatic Indices and Data Sets*, DOE/NBB-0080, Office of Energy Research, US Dept of Energy, Washington, DC (195pp.)

Jenne, R. L. and McKee, T. B. (1985) Data. In Houghton, D. D. (ed.) *Handbook of Applied Meteorology*, Wiley, New York, pp. 1175–281.

Meteorological Office (1958) *Tables of Temperature, Relative Humidity and Precipitation for the World*, HMSO, London.

Singleton, F. (1985) Weather data for schools. *Weather* 40, 310–13.

Stull, A. and Griffin, D. (1996) *Life on the Internet – Geosciences*, Prentice Hall, Upper Saddle River, NJ.

US Department of Commerce (1983) *NOAA Satellite Programs Briefing*, National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, Washington, DC (203pp.)

US Department of Commerce (1984) *North American Climate Data Catalog. Part 1*, National Environmental Data Referral Service, Publication NEDRES-1, National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, Washington, DC (614pp.)

World Meteorological Organization (1965) *Catalogue of Meteorological Data for Research*, WMO No. 174. TP-86, World Meteorological Organization, Geneva.

Notes

2 ATMOSPHERIC COMPOSITION, MASS AND STRUCTURE

1 Mixing ratio = ratio of number of molecules of ozone to molecules of air (parts per million by volume, ppm(v)). Concentration = mass per unit volume of air (molecules cubic metre).

2 K = degrees Kelvin (or Absolute). The degree symbol is omitted.
°C = degrees Celsius.
°C = K – 273.
Conversions for °C and °F are given in Appendix 2.

3 Joule = 0.2388 cal. The units of the International Metric System are given in Appendix 2. At present the data in many references are still in calories; a calorie is the heat required to raise the temperature of 1 g of water from 14.5°C to 15.5°C. In the United States, another unit formerly in common use is the Langley (ly) (ly $\text{min}^{-1} = 1 \text{ cal cm}^{-2} \text{ min}^{-1}$).

4 The equation for the so-called 'reduction' (actually the adjusted value is normally greater!) of station pressure (p_h) to sea-level pressure (p_0) is written:

$$p_o = p_h \exp\left(\frac{g_o}{R_d\bar{T}_v}\right) Z_p$$

where R_d = gas content for dry air; g_0 = global average of gravitational acceleration (9.8 ms^{-2}); Z_p = geopotential height of the station (geometric height in the lowest kilometre or so); $\bar{T}_v$ = mean virtual temperature. This is a fictitious temperature used in the ideal gas equation to compensate for the fact that the gas constant of moist air exceeds that of dry air. Even for hot, moist air, $\bar{T}_v$ is only a few degrees greater than the air temperature.

5 The official definition is the lowest level at which the lapse rate decreases to less than, or equal to, 2°C/km (provided that the average lapse rate of the 2-km layer does not exceed 2°C/km).

3 SOLAR RADIATION AND THE GLOBAL ENERGY BUDGET

1 The radiation flux (per unit area) received normal to the beam at the top of the earth's atmosphere is calculated from the total solar output weighted by $1/(4\pi D^2)$, where the solar distance $D = 1.5 \times 10^{11}$ m, since the surface area of a sphere of radius r (here equivalent to D) is $4\pi r^2$ – i.e. the radiation flux is $(6.24 \times 10^7 \text{ Wm}^{-2})\ (61.58 \times 10^{23} \text{ m}^2)/4\pi\ (2.235 \times 10^{22}) = 1367 \text{ W m}^{-2}$.

2 The albedos refer to the solar radiation received on each given surface: thus the incident radiation is different for planet earth, the global surface and global cloud cover, as well as between any of these and the individual cloud types or surfaces.

6 ATMOSPHERIC MOTION: PRINCIPLES

1 The centrifugal 'force' is equal in magnitude and opposite in sign to the centripetal acceleration. It is an apparent force that arises through inertia.

2 Apparent gravity, $g = 9.78 \text{ m s}^{-2}$ at the equator, 9.83m s^{-2} at the poles.

3 The vorticity, or circulation, about a rotating circular fluid disc is given by the product of the rotation on its boundary (ωR) and the circumference (2πR) where R = radius of the disc. The vorticity is then $2\omega pR^2$, or 2ω per unit area.

7 PLANETARY-SCALE MOTIONS IN THE ATMOSPHERE AND OCEAN

1 The geostrophic wind concept is equally applicable to contour charts. Heights on these charts are given in geopotential metres (g.p.m.) or decametres (g.p. dam). Geopotential and geometric heights are for most purposes identical.
2 The World Meteorological Organization recommends an arbitrary lower limit of 30 m s^{-1}.
3 Equatorial speed or rotation is 465 m s^{-1}.
4 Note that, at the equator, an east/west wind of 5 m s^{-1} represents an absolute motion of 460/470 m s^{-1} towards the east.

9 MID-LATITUDE SYNOPTIC AND MESOSCALE SYSTEMS

1 Resultant wind is the vector average of all wind directions and speeds.
2 This latter term is tending to be restricted to the tropical (hurricane) variety.

10 WEATHER AND CLIMATE IN MIDDLE AND HIGH LATITUDES

1 Standard indices of continentality developed by Gorcynski (see p. 215), Conrad and others are based on the annual range of temperature, scaled by the sine of the latitude angle as a reciprocal in the expression. This index is unsatisfactory for several reasons. The small amplitude of annual temperature range in humid tropical climates renders it unworkable for low latitudes. The latitude weighting is intended to compensate for summer–winter differences in solar radiation and thus temperatures, which were thought to increase uniformly with latitude. For North America, the differences peak at about 55°N. It should be noted that indices of the Gorcynski type are appropriate for regions of limited latitudinal extent as shown in Figure 10.2.

13 CLIMATE CHANGE

1 Statistics commonly reported for climatic data are: the *arithmetic mean*,

$$\bar{x} = \Sigma \frac{x_i}{n}$$

where Σ = sum of all values for i = l to n
x_i = an individual value
n = number of cases

and the *standard deviation*, *s* (pronounced sigma).

$$\sigma = \sqrt{\frac{\Sigma(x_i - \bar{x})^2}{n}}$$

which expresses the variability of observations. For precipitation data, the *coefficient of variation*, CV is often used:

$$CV = \frac{\sigma}{\bar{x}} \times 100\ (\%)$$

For a *normal* (or Gaussian) bell-shaped symmetrical frequency distribution, the arithmetic mean is the central value; 68.3 per cent of the distribution of values are within ± 1 σ of the mean and 94.5 per cent within ± 2 σ of the mean.

The frequency distribution of mean daily temperatures is usually approximately normal. However, the frequency distribution of annual (or monthly) totals of rainfall over a period of years may be 'skewed' with some years (months) having very large totals whereas most years (months) have low amounts. For such distributions the median is a more representative average statistic; the *median* is the middle value of a set of data ranked according to magnitude. Fifty per cent of the frequency distribution is above the median and 50 per cent below it. The variability may be represented by the 25 and 75 per centile values in the ranked distribution.

A third measure of central tendency is the *mode* – the value which occurs with greatest frequency. In a normal distribution the mean, median and mode are identical.

Frequency distributions for cloud amounts are commonly bimodal with more observations having small or large amounts of cloud cover than are in the middle range.

Bibliography

Ahrens, C.D. (2003) . *Meteorology Today. An Introduction to Weather, Climate and the Environment* (7th edn), Brooks/Cole (Thomson Learning), 624pp. [Basic introduction to meteorology, including weather forecasts, air pollution, global climate and climatic change; accompanying CD.]

Anthes, R. A. (1997) *Meteorology* (7th edn), Prentice-Hall, Upper Saddle River, NJ, 214pp. [Introduction to meteorology, weather and climate.]

Atkinson, B. W. (1981a) *Meso-scale Atmospheric Circulations*, Academic Press, London, 496pp. [Discusses the theoretical ideas and current understanding of the major mesoscale circulation features – sea/land breezes, mountain/valley winds, convective systems and so on.]

Atkinson, B. W. (ed.) (1981b) *Dynamical Meteorology*, Methuen, London, 250pp. [Collected papers, most originally published in *Weather*, introducing readers to the basic dynamical concepts of meteorology.]

Barry, R. G. (1992) *Mountain Weather and Climate* (2nd edn), Routledge, London and New York, 402pp. [Details the effects of altitude and orography on climatic elements, orographic effects on synoptic systems and airflow, the climatic characteristics of selected mountains, and climate change in mountains.]

Barry, R. G. and Carleton, A.M. (2001) *Dynamic and Synoptic Climatology*. Routledge, London, 620pp. [Graduate-level text on the global circulation and its major elements – planetary waves, blocking, and teleconnection patterns – as well as synoptic systems of middle and low latitudes and approaches to synoptic classification and their applications; there is also a chapter on climate data, including remote sensing data, and their analysis; extensive bibliographies.]

Berry, F. A., Bollay, E. and Beers, N. R. (eds) (1945) *Handbook of Meteorology*, McGraw-Hill, New York, 1068pp. [A classic handbook covering many topics.]

Bigg, G. (1996) *The Oceans and Climate*, Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, 266pp. [Undergraduate text dealing with the physical and chemical interactions of the oceans and climate, air–sea interaction and the role of the oceans in climate variability and change.]

Blüthgen, J. (1966) *Allgemeine Klimageographie* (2nd edn), W. de Gruyter, Berlin, 720pp. [A classic German work on climatology with extensive references.]

Bradley, R. S., Ahern, L. G. and Keimig, F. T. (1994) A computer-based atlas of global instrumental climate data. *Bull. Amer. Met. Soc*. **75**(1), 35–41.

Bruce, J. P. and Clark, R. H. (1966) *Introduction to Hydrometeorology*, Pergamon, Oxford, 319pp. [Valuable introductory text with no modern equivalent.]

Carleton, A. M. (1991) *Satellite Remote Sensing in Climatology*, Belhaven Press, London, 291pp. [A monograph on basic techniques and their climatological application in the study of clouds, cloud systems, atmospheric moisture and the energy budget.]

Crowe, P. R. (1971) *Concepts in Climatology*, Longman, London, 589pp. [A geographical climatology that covers processes non-mathematically, the general circulation, airmasses and frontal systems, and local climates.]

Geiger, R. (1965) *The Climate Near the Ground* (2nd edn), Harvard University Press, Cambridge, MA, 611pp. [Classic descriptive text on local, topo- and microclimates; extensive references to European research.]

Glickmann, T.S. (ed.) (2000) *Glossary of Meteorology* (2nd edn), American Meteorological Society, Boston, MA, 855pp. [Indispensable guide to terms and concepts in meteorology and related fields.]

Gordon, A., Grace, W., Schwerdtfeger, P. and Byron-Scott, R. (1995) *Dynamic Meteorology: A Basic Course*, Arnold, London, 325pp. [Explains the basic thermodynamics and dynamics of the atmosphere, with key equations; synoptic analysis and the tropical cyclone.]

Haltiner, G. J. and Martin, F. L. (1957) *Dynamical and Physical Meteorology*, McGraw-Hill, New York, 470pp. [Comprehensive account of the fundamentals of atmospheric dynamics and physical processes.]

Hartmann, D. L. (1994) *Global Physical Climatology*, Academic Press, New York, 408pp. [Covers the physical bases of climate – the energy and water balances, the atmospheric and ocean circulations, the physics of climate change, climate sensitivity and climate models.]

Henderson-Sellers, A. and Robinson, P. J. (1986) *Contemporary Climatology*, Longman, London, 439pp. [A non-mathematical treatment of physical climatology, the general circulation, selected regional and local climates and climate change and modelling.]

Hess, S. L. (1959) *Introduction to Theoretical Meteorology*, Henry Holt, New York, 362pp. [A clear and readable introduction to meteorological principles and processes.]

Houghton, D. D. (1985) *Handbook of Applied Meteorology*, Wiley, New York, 1461pp. [A valuuable reference source on measurements, a wide range of applications, societal impacts, resources includng data.]

Houghton, H. G. (1985) *Physical Meteorology*, MIT Press, Cambridge, MA, 442pp. [Advanced undergraduate–graduate text and reference work in atmospheric science; treats atmospheric aerosols, radiative transfer, cloud physics, optical phenomena and atmospheric electricity.]

Houghton, J. T. (ed.) (1984) *The Global Climate*, Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, 233pp. [Contributions by experts relating to the World Climate Research Programme including climate variability, GCMs, the role of clouds, land surface, deserts, the cryosphere, the upper ocean and its circulation, biogeochemistry and carbon dioxide.]

Kendrew, W. G. (1961) *The Climates of the Continents* (5th edn), Oxford University Press, London, 608pp. [Classic climatography with many regional details, figures and tables.]

Lamb, H. H. (1972) *Climate: Present, Past and Future 1: Fundamentals and Climate Now*, Methuen, London, 613pp. [Detailed presentation on the mechanisms of global climate and climatic variations; useful supplementary tables; second part summarizes world climatic conditions with extensive data tables; numerous references.]

List, R. J. (1951) *Smithsonian Meteorological Tables* (6th edn), Smithsonian Institution, Washington, 527pp. [A unique collection of atmospheric reference data.]

Lockwood, J. G. (1974) *World Climatology: An Environmental Approach*, Arnold, London, 330pp. [Undergraduate climatology text; following an overview of climatic processes and the general circulation, five chapters treat low-latitude climatic regions and five chapters cover mid- and high-latitude climates; clear diagrams and chapter references.]

Lockwood, J. G. (1979) *Causes of Climate*, Arnold, London, 260pp. [Covers the physical components of the climate system, atmospheric circulation, glacial and interglacial climates and model projections of the future.]

Lutgens, F. K. and Tarbuck, E. J. (1995) *The Atmosphere: An Introduction to Meteorology* (6th edn), Prentice-Hall, Englewood Cliffs, NJ, 462pp. [Descriptive introduction to atmospheric processes, weather, including forecasting, and world climates.]

McIlveen, R. (1992) *Fundamentals of Weather and Climate*, Chapman and Hall, London, 497pp. [Mainly quantitaive introduction to atmospheric processes, regional weather systems and the general cicrculation; mathematical derivations in appendices; numerical problems.]

McIntosh, D. H. and Thom, A. S. (1972) *Essentials of Meteorology*, Wykeham Publications, London, 239pp. [Introductory text covering main concepts in dynamics and thermodynamics of the atmosphere.]

Malone, T. F. (ed.) (1951) *Compendium of Meteorology*, American Meteorological Society, Boston, MA, 1334pp. [Status reports on all areas of meteorology in 1950.]

Martyn, D. (1992) *Climates of the World*, Elsevier, Amsterdam, 435pp. [A brief outline of climatic factors and elements followed by a climatography of land and ocean areas. Sources are mostly from the 1960s to 1970s; few tables.]

Morgan, J. M. and Morgan, M. D. (1997) *Meteorology: The Atmosphere and Science of Weather* (5th edn), Prentice-Hall, Upper Saddle River, NJ, 550pp. [Introduction to meteorology, weather and climate for non-science majors.]

Musk, L. F. (1988) *Weather Systems*, Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, 160 pp. [Basic introduction to weather systems.

Oliver, J. E. and Fairbridge, R. W. (eds) (1987) *The Encyclopedia of Climatology*, Van Nostrand Reinhold, New York, 986pp. [Comprehensive, illustrated articles and many references.]

Palmén, E. and Newton, C. W. (1969) *Atmosphere Circulation Systems: Their Structure and Physical Interpretation*, Academic Press, New York, 603pp. [A work that still lacks a modern equal in its overview of the global circulation and its major component elements.]

Pedgley, D. E. (1962) *A Course of Elementary Meteorology*, HMSO, London, 189pp. [A useful, concise introduction.]

Peixoto, J. P. and Oort, A. H. (1992) *Physics of Climate*, American Institute of Physics, New York, 520pp. [Advanced description of the mean states of the atmosphere and oceans and their variability, the characteristics of momentum, energy and moisture transports, the global energy cycle, and climate simulation.]

Petterssen, S. (1956) *Weather Analysis and Forecasting* (2 vols), McGraw-Hill, New York, 428 and 266pp. [Classical standard work of the 1950s; useful basic information on weather systems and fronts.]

Petterssen, S. (1969) *Introduction to Meteorology* (3rd edn), McGraw-Hill, New York, 333pp. [Classic introductory text including world climates.]

Pickard, G. L. and Emery, W. J. (1990) *Descriptive Physical Oceanography* (5th edn), Pergamon Press, Oxford [Readable introduction to physical properties, processes and circulation in the world's oceans.]

Reiter, E. R. (1963) *Jet Stream Meteorology*, University of Chicago Press, Chicago, IL, 515pp. [Classic text on jet streams, their mechanisms and associated weather.]

Rex, D. F. (ed.) (1969) *Climate of the Free Atmosphere. World Survey of Climatology Vol. 4*, Elsevier, Amsterdam, 450pp. [Details the structure of the atmosphere, cloud systems, the tropospheric circulation and jet streams, ozone and ultraviolet radiation, and the dynamics of the stratosphere.]

Schaefer, V. J. and Day, J. A. (1981) *A Field Guide to the Atmosphere*, Houghton Mifflin, Boston, MA, 359pp. [Popular text with good photographs of atmospheric phenomena.]

Singh, H. B. (ed.) (1992) *Composition, Chemistry, and Climate of the Atmosphere*, Van Nostrand Reinhold, New York, 527pp.

Strahler, A. N. (1965) *Introduction to Physical Geography*, Wiley, New York, 455pp. [Broad survey that includes climatic characteristics, controls and distribution of climate types.]

Strangeways, I. (2000) *Measuring the Natural Environment*, Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, 365pp. [Well-illustrated book on instruments for observing all surface weather and climate elements, together with practical information and many references.]

Stringer, E. T. (1972a) *Foundations of Climatology, An Introduction to Physical, Dynamic, Synoptic and Geographical Climatology*, W. H. Freeman, San Francisco, 586pp. [Text for climatology students; detailed coverage of atmospheric properties and processes, the general circulation, elementary dynamics and thermodynamics and synoptic methods; appendices with notes and formulae.]

Stringer, E. T. (1972b) *Techniques of Climatology*, W. H. Freeman, San Francisco, 539pp. [Companion volume to 1972a dealing with weather observations and their analysis, applications to radiation, temperature and clouds, and the study of regional climates.]

Sverdrup, H. V. (1945) *Oceanography for Meteorologists*, Allen & Unwin, London, 235pp. [Classic text on the meteorologically relevant aspects of oceanography.]

Sverdrup, H. V., Johnson, M. W. and Fleming, R. H. (1942) *The Oceans: Their Physics, Chemistry and General Biology*, Prentice-Hall, New York, 1087pp. [Classic reference work on the oceans.]

Trewartha, G. T. (1981) *The Earth's Problem Climates* (2nd edn), University of Wisconsin Press, Madison, 371pp. [Focuses on climatic regimes that do not fit into the usual global climatic classifications; circulation controls are emphasized.]

Trewartha, G. T. and Horne, L. H. (1980) *An Introduction to Climate* (5th edn), McGraw-Hill, New York, 416 pp. [A traditional climatology text.]

Van Loon, H. (ed.) (1984) *Climates of the Oceans: World Survey of Climatology* 15, Elsevier, Amsterdam, 716pp. [Substantive chapters on the climate of each of the world's ocean basins.]

Wallace, J. M. and Hobbs, P. V. (1977) *Atmospheric Science: An Introductory Survey*, Academic Press, New York, 467pp. [Comprehensive introductory text for meteorologists; atmospheric thermodynamics and dynamics, synoptic disturbances, global energy balance and the general circulation; numerical and qualitative problems.]

World Meteorological Organization (1962) *Climatological Normals (CLINO) for CLIMAT and CLIMAT SHIP stations for the period 1931–60*, World Meteorological Organization, Geneva.

Index

Note: Page numbers *in italic* refer to illustrations and tables. Suffix Ap refers to the appendices.

absorption: solar radiation 38, 44
acid deposition 11–12
adiabatic lapse rate 89–90
advection 57–9; *see also* heat transport
advection fog 183, 231
aerosols 12–13, 20–2, 95; climate change 370; climate forcing 373; urban climates 334–8; volcanic dust 371
Africa *see* African monsoon; Sahara; Sahel
African monsoon 292–7; atmospheric circulation *293*, *294*; monsoon trough 292–4, *293*; perturbations 295–7; rainfall *367*; southern Africa 297–9; West Africa 292–4, *295*, 296–7, *296*, *310*
air instability 91–5, 106; *see also* convection
air pollution: annual and daily cycles *335*; gases 333–4, 337–8; impacts 338–9, 340–1; particles and smoke *335*, 336–7; plumes 338, *339, Plate 4*; *see also* atmospheric composition
air stability 91–5
airflow types of H. H. Lamb *217*, *218*, 368, *369*
airflows: ana-cold fronts *191*; Britain 215–20, *217*, *218*, *220*, *221*; East Asian monsoon 289–90; forests 329, *329*; mountains 199; New England *Plate 9*; southern Africa 297–9, *299*; tropical easterly 298; urban areas 344–5, *345*; *see also* upper air patterns
airmass modification 181–3; age 183; dynamic changes 182; secondary airmasses 182–3; thermodynamic changes 181–2
airmasses 177–81; Britain 217–20, *218*; cold 178–9, 182; concept of 177; Mediterranean 242–4; mixing 74, *74*; North America *229*; source areas 177–81, *181*; warm 180–1, 182–3
airstreams 180–1
Alaska: tundra *255*
albedo *39*, 44; anthropogenic effects 373–4; mean annual *45*; planetary 54, 55; snow and ice 44, 324–5
Aleutian low 228–9
Alps: climatic effects 224
altitude: atmospheric composition 13–15; climatic effects in Europe 222–5; precipitation variations 80–4; pressure variation 127–9; solar radiation effect 48, *50*; temperature effect 25; wind velocity variation 129–33
Amazonia 299–302; precipitation *300*, 301–2, *302*
AMIP *see* Atmospheric Model Intercomparison Programme
ana-fronts 186, *189*
anabatic winds 120
angular momentum 139–40
angular velocity 113, 118–19
Antarctic trough 250
Antarctica 135, 255–6
anthropogenic impacts: aerosols *12*; climate change 370–4
anticyclones: Australia 247–9; blocking 85, 221–2, *222*, *223*; cold 129, *129*, 134; Europe 221–2; Mediterranean 244; subtropical 133–4, *136*, 144–5, *144*; vorticity *119*; warm 129, *129*
AO *see* Arctic Oscillation
AOGCMs *see* atmosphere–ocean general circulation models
Arctic front 195, *195*; North America 227–8
arctic front jet stream 133, *134*
Arctic Ocean 253–4
Arctic Oscillation (AO) 148
Arctic regions 134, 253–5, *254*; surface currents *251*
aridity criteria 392Ap
ascending air *see* convection
Asian monsoon 276–89; autumn 288–9; depressions 285–6, *285*; early summer 280–1; El Niño connection *307*; mean onset date *283*; spring 279–80; summer 281–8, *283*; winter 277–9
aspect: effect on solar radiation 48, *50*
astronomical periodicities 356–7, *356*
Atlantic Ocean: energy budget variation *324*; *see also* North Atlantic; South Atlantic

Atlantic polar front 193, *195*
atmosphere: energy budget 53–61, *53*; historical discoveries 1–2; layered structure 25–8, *25*; mass 22–4; solar radiation absorption 38–9
atmosphere–ocean general circulation models (AOGCMs) 163, *164*
atmospheric circulation 139–48, *Plate 1*; Africa *293*, *294*; climate change 368; Lamb–Jenkinson types *369*; mechanisms 139–42; meridional cells 142–5, *142*, *143*, *145*; North American singularities 228–9; northern hemisphere variations 146–8; zonal flow 145–6; *see also* pressure systems; Walker circulations; winds
atmospheric composition 9–22; aerosols 12–13, 334–8; climate change 370; forcing 357; gases 9–12; height variations 13–15; latitude and seasonal variations 15–16; temporal variations 16–22; urban areas 333–9, 340–1; *see also* air pollution
atmospheric energy 57–61
Atmospheric Model Intercomparison Programme (AMIP) 164–5, *165, Plate G*
atmospheric moisture budgets 64–88; Britain (Thornthwaite method) 72–3, *72*; climate classification 392–5Ap; condensation 73–4; content 66–7, *67*; evaporation 69–73; global hydrological cycle 64–5; humidity 66–8; meridional transfer *68*; North America 234–8, *238*; precipitation 74–86; transport 66–7; United States 73; urban areas 345–6, *346*; water storage *65*
atmospheric motion 112–26; convergence *117*, 118, 170, 266–7; divergence *117*, 118, 170, 197, 267; horizontal motion 112–17; local winds 120–5; vertical motion 118; vorticity 118–19, *119*; *see also* atmospheric circulation; winds
atmospheric pressure 22–4; *see also* pressure
Australasia 247–9, *250*
Australian summer monsoon 291–2
autumn: Asian monsoon 288–9
Azores High 133–4, 213, 245

Bai-u season 290
balloons: upper air measurements 128
baroclinic airstream 181
baroclinic instability 147
barometer 22
barotropic atmosphere 177, *178*
Bergeron–Findeisen theory 100–2
bibliography 405Ap, 409–11Ap
biomass burning 12, 373
biosphere 7
Bjerknes cyclone model 170, 184, 185–6, *185*
black body radiation 32–3, 54–5
black box modelling 374
blocking anticyclones 85, 221–2, *222*, *223*
bombs 198
bora winds 124–5, 245
boundary layer climates 321–52; non-vegetated natural surfaces 323–5; urban surfaces 333–48; vegetated surfaces 325–33
Bowen's ratio 71
Boyle's Law 22
Brazil: Amazonia 299–302
Britain: airflows and climate 215–20, *217*, *218*, *220*, *221*; annual moisture budget 72–3, *72*; climate changes 366, *367*, *369*; Lamb–Jenkinson circulation types *369*; orographic rainfall 224, *225*; rainfall and synoptic situations *219*; severe winters 222; singularities and natural seasons 220–1
Budyko, M.I.: climate classification 393–4Ap
buoyancy 93, 205

Canada: oceanic influences 231–3; precipitation 230–1, *230*; urban energy balances *340*, *341*; *see also* North America
canonical correlation analysis 174
carbon dioxide (CO2) 10, 16–18; doubling of 376, 378; fluxes *19*; greenhouse effect 52; oceanic absorption 157–8
Caribbean area easterly wave 266–7, 268, *273*
Catalytic effect 14
CCL *see* convective condensation level
central and southern Africa 292–9
centripetal acceleration 114–16
Charles's Law 22
CFCs *see* chlorofluorocarbons
China: East Asian monsoon 289–91; surface circulation 289–90, *290*; weather systems *282–3*, 289; winter monsoon 277–9
chinook winds 123–5, *124*, 233–4
chlorofluorocarbons (CFCs) 10, 19–20
circulation *see* atmospheric circulation; ocean circulation
cirrus clouds *98*, *Plate 14*
cities *see* urban climates
Clausius–Clapeyron relationship 24
Clean Air Act 336
climate change: anthropogenic factors 370–4; climatic record 359–68; environmental impacts 378–85; forcings 354–9; IPCC models 376–8; possible causes 368–74; prediction models 374–6; rates of change 357–8; research 354, 385; scales of variation 353–4, *355*, 371; sea-level changes 378–81; vegetation 384–5
climate classification 3, 391–8Ap; climatic comfort 396–7Ap; energy and moisture budget 392–5Ap; generic (plant growth/vegetation) 391–2Ap; genetic 395–6Ap
climate forcings 7, 354–9, 370, *372*; aerosols 373; earth–atmosphere–ocean system *166*; external 356–8; orbital *357*; radiative 370, 372–3, *372*, *375*; short-term and feedback 358–9; simulations 165–6
climate system *355*
climatic belts: West Africa 294, *294*
climatic comfort 396–7Ap
climatic data 404–5Ap
climatic extremes 366
climatic record 359–68; geological record 359–61; ice ages 359–61; last 1000 years 362–8; last million years *361*; late and post-glacial 361–2

climatology: historical discoveries 3–4
cloud clusters 265–6, 274–5, *275, Plates 1, 29*
cloud–ground (CG) strokes 108, 109
cloudiness maximum 264, 265
clouds *Plates 5–8, 14, H*; base height *97*; cirrus *Plate 14*; classification 96–8, *98*; cumulonimbus 103, 106, 190, 203, 271, 272, 287–8, *Plate 6*; cumulus 103, 265, *Plates 4, 25–6*; electrification 106–9; formation 95–6; frontal depressions 187–8, *189*, *190*; global cover 41, 99; origin 97; patterns 97; raindrop formation 99–102; seeding 101; solar radiation effect 39–40, *41*, 53; stratocumulus 187, 190; stratus 187; thunderclouds 106–9; zonal distribution *99*
coalescence theories 102
cold airmasses 178–9, 182
cold anticyclones 129, *129*, 134
cold fronts 185, 190, *191*
cold lows 201
cold ocean currents 309, *Plate 16*
cold pole 253
comma cloud *193*, 201, *Plate 19*
computer forecasting *see* numerical forecasting
condensation 73–4
condensation level 91, 94–5
condensation nuclei 95–6
conditional instability 93–4; second kind (CISK) 271
conduction 38
contact cooling 73–4
continentality 41, 47; Europe 215, *216*; North America 231
contour charts 129–30, *130*, 407
convection 38, 103, 106, 203; Amazonia 300; tropical oceans 267; tropical Pacific 304–5
convection cells: mesoscale areas 265, *266*; mesoscale complex 203–4; mesoscale systems 201–9, *202*, 266, 274–5; semi-arid southwest USA 240–1; tropical cyclones 271
convective condensation level (CCL) 91, *92*
convective instability 94, *94*
'convective type' precipitation 103, 104–5, *105*
convergence *117*, 118, 170, 266–7; *see also* intertropical convergence zone
conveyor belts: oceans 156–8, *156*; warm front 188, *189*, *191*
cool island urban effect 347
cooling: condensation 73–4
Coriolis force 113–14, *114*, 115; ocean circulation 150, 151, 153
Costa Rica: rainfall *105*
coupled models 163–4, *164*, 165
crop surfaces: energy budgets 325–7
cumulonimbus clouds 190, *Plate 6*; convection 103, 106, 203; hurricanes 271, 272; Tibet 287–8
cumulus clouds 103, 265, *Plates 4, 26*
currents *see* ocean currents
cut-off low 201, 298
cyclogenesis 185–6, *185*, *187*, 196–9
cyclones: Bjerknes model 170, 184, 185–6, *185*; forecasting 313; lee 199; North American tracks 226–7; polar front theory 184; South Atlantic 250–2, 255, *256*; subtropical 274; tropical 241; vorticity *119*; *see also* depressions; hurricanes; tropical cyclones; typhoons
'cyclonic type' precipitation 103, 104
cyclostrophic motion 115

DALR *see* dry adiabatic lapse rate
data sources 168–72, 404–5Ap
daylight length 37
deaths: tornadoes *207*, 208; tropical cyclones 269
deep ocean circulation 155–8
deforestation 373–4
depressions 103, 136, *Plate 23*; Asian monsoon 285–6, *285*; China and Japan *282*, 289; clouds 187–8, *189*, *190*; cross-sections *189*, *190*; Europe 213–14; formation 196–9; frontal-wave type 184–6; India 279; life cycle *185*, *187*; Mediterranean 242–4, *244*; non-frontal 199–201; North America 226, 227, *228, Plate 18*; occlusion 185–6, *185*, 191, *192*; polar 201; precipitation 188, *189*, *190*; rapid deepening 198–9; Saharan *248*; secondary 192; South Atlantic 250–2, 255, *256*; sub-Arctic 252; tracks 195, *196*, 199
descending air *144*
desertification 86, 374
dew 75
dew-point temperature 66
diffusion processes 321
disrupted photolytic cycle 338, *338*
disturbance lines (DLs) 274–5, *297*
diurnal variations: energy budgets *324*; radiation *56*; temperature 55–6, 365; tropical regions 311–12
divergence *117*, 118, 170, 197, 267
DLs *see* disturbance lines
doldrums 136, *138*
drizzle 74
drought 84–6, 366; drought area index *288*
dry adiabatic lapse rate (DALR) 89–90, 93, 123
dust: atmospheric 334–6, *Plate 4*; *see also* volcanic dust
dust veil index (DVI) 371

earth–atmosphere–ocean system *164*
earth's rotational deflective force 113–14, *114*, 115
East Asia: monsoon 289–91; typhoons *292*
easterly tropical jet stream 133, 293–4
easterly wave (Caribbean area) 266–7, 268, *273*
easterly winds (polar) *137*, 139
eddies: mid-latitude circulation 143, 145, 147; oceans 154, *154*
Ekman pumping 116, 151
Ekman spirals *116*, 150, *151*
El Niño 303, 305–6, *305*
El Niño–Southern Oscillation (ENSO) events 145, 146, 173, 174; forecasting 313; Pacific Ocean 302–6, *304*; PNA circulation *308*; teleconnections 306–9
electrification (thunderstorms) 106–9
electrostatic charges (thunderclouds) 106–9, *107*, *108*
elevation *see* altitude
ELR *see* environmental lapse rate

emissions: acid deposition 11; scenarios 376–8; *see also* fossil fuel combustion; greenhouse gases
energy, kinetic 57, 139, *141*, 322; potential 57, 139, 273
energy balance *see* energy budgets
energy budgets 2–3, 53–61; atmospheric balance 53–6, *53*; climate change 368–70; climate classification 392–5Ap; climatic types *393*Ap; diurnal variation *324*; horizontal heat transport 57–9; kinetic energy *322*; mean net planetary radiation *58*; non-vegetated surfaces 322–5, *323*; polar terrains *325*; spatial patterns 59–61; urban areas 339–44, *340*, *341*, *342*; vegetated surfaces 325–33, *326*, *327*; *see also* energy transfers; heat budgets; radiation; solar radiation
energy source (hurricanes) 273
energy transfers: climate classification 394–5Ap; conduction 38; convection 38; depressions 198; forests 328–9, *331*, *332*; general circulation 139; horizontal (advection) 57–9; oceans 152–3, *152*, 155–7, *156*; polewards *143*; radiation 37–8; schematic changes *141*; spatial patterns 59–61; vertical motion 48–50, *60*, *61*; *see also* heat transport
England: high-intensity rain *80*; *see also* Britain
ensemble forecasts 171, 173
ENSO events *see* El Niño-Southern Oscillation events
entrainment 94
environmental impacts on climate change 378–85
environmental lapse rate (ELR) 90, 93, 94
equations: atmosphere 162–3
equations of state 22
equatorial air 183
equatorial currents 151–2
equatorial trough of low pressure 134, 136, 263–4, *263*
equatorial westerly winds 136–9, *137*, *138*
Europe 213–25; 1976 drought 85, *85*; blocking anomalies 221–2, *223*; oceanicity and continentality 215, *216*; pressure and wind conditions 213–15; singularities and natural seasons 220–1; topographic effects 222–5; *see also* Britain; Mediterranean climate
evaporation *68*, 69–73; Britain 72–3; calculation 71–2; discoveries 2; global pattern *70*, 72; North America *239*; rates 69–70; Thornthwaite/Mather ratio *239*; zonal distribution *69*
evapotranspiration 71; forests 330–1; potential 71, 392–3Ap; urban areas 339–40
exosphere 28
external forcings 356–8
extremes of climate 366
eye of hurricane 271–2, *Plate 28*

fall-winds 124–5
feedback mechanisms 358–9
Ferrel cells 3, 142–3, *142*
Ferrel westerlies *137*, 139
Findeison *see* Bergeron–Findeisen theory
flooding 236, *237*
fog 74, 97, 183, 231, 309
föhn winds 123–4, *124*, 224
forcings *see* climate forcings
forecasting: data sources 168–70; hurricanes 273; long-range 172–5, *173*, 313; ‘nowcasting’ 172; short- and medium-range 170–2, 312–13; tropical weather 312–13
forests 327–33; airflows 329, *329*; boreal 331; climate change 384; deforestation 373–4; energy transfers 328–9, *328*, *331*; geometry and structure 327–8; humidity and precipitation 330–2; temperate *328*, 329, *332*; temperature regime 332–3, *334*; tropical 328, 329, *334*
form drag 116–17
fossil fuel combustion 18, 52
freezing nuclei 100–1
freezing rain 74
friagem 302
frictional forces 116–17
frontal waves 184; depressions 184–6; families 191–3; vortex developments *193*; zones of development 193–6
frontal zones *132*, *134*, *194*, *195*, *196*; North America 227–8, *228*
frontogenesis 183–6, *188*, 193–6
frontolysis 191
fronts 183, *185*, 186–92, *190*; cold 185, 190, *191*; intertropical 263; oceans 153; warm 185, 187–9, *Plate 17*
frost pocket 121
fumigation 338, *339*

GARP *see* Global Atmospheric Research Programme
gas laws 22
gases: greenhouse 10, 16–20, 51–2, 370, 372; primary 9; reactive species 10–12; urban climates 333–4, 337–8
general circulation models (GCMs) 162–5; physical processes *163*; simpler variants 166–7; simulations 166
generic classification of climate 391–2Ap
genetic classification of climate 395–6Ap
Genoa-type depressions 244
geological record 359–61
geopotential heights 407, *Plate G*
geostationary operational environmental satellites (GOES) 168, 169, 170, *Plate 18*
geostrophic winds 114, *115*, 132
GFS *see* global forecast system model
glaciations 359–61
glacier retreat 382
Global Atmospheric Research Programme (GARP) 6
global climate system 6–7
Global Forecast System (GFS) model 170–1
global patterns: cloud cover 97, 99; evaporation *70*, 72; general circulation 2, 139–48; heat budget 53–6, *53*; heat transport 57–61; precipitation 79–80, *81*, *82*; pressure 127–36, *194*; solar radiation *42*; surface winds *194*; wind belts 136–9, *137*
global scale: carbon cycle 17–18, *17*; climate trends *361*; heat sources *342*; hydrological cycle 64–5
global warming 363–5, 366–8, 370, *375*

GOES *see* geostationary operational environmental satellites
gradient wind 115
graupel 74, 102, 106, 107
greenhouse effect 51–3
greenhouse gases 10, 16–20, 51–2, 370, 372; IPCC scenarios *377*, *378*, *380*; radiative forcing 370, 372–3, *372*, *375*; simulations 166; warming effect 51, *52*
grey box modelling 374–5, *375*
Gulf Stream 152–3, *Plate B*

Hadley cells 3, *141*, 142, *142*, 143
hailstones 74, 102, 203
hair hygrograph 1
Halley, Edmund 3
Harmattan 180, 293
heat *see* latest heat; sensible heat transfer
heat budgets: global 53–6; spatial patterns 59–61; urban climates 339–44; *see also* heat transport; temperatures
heat discomfort 397Ap
heat islands: tropical regions 347–8, *348*; urban areas 341–4
heat transport 57–9; latent heat 38, 59, *60*; oceans 152–3, *152*, 155–7, *156*; sensible heat *61*; thermal cells 142–3, *143*
height *see* altitude
HFCs *see* hydrogenated halocarbons
high latitudes 249–56; climate classification 396Ap; polar regions 253–6; southern westerlies 249–52; sub-Arctic 252–3
high-intensity rain 75, *77*, *78*, *80*
high-pressure cells: Australia 248, 249; Sahara 246–7; subtropical 133, 297, 300; *see also* anticyclones
high-velocity ocean currents 152–3
historical climate change 362–8
history of meteorology and climatology 1–8
hoar frost 75
horizontal heat transport *see* heat transport
horizontal motion laws 112–17
human heat production 341; *see also* anthropogenic impacts
humidity 66–8; forests 330–2; *see also* moisture budgets
hurricanes 269–73; forecasting 172, 273; frequency *271*; Hurricane Andrew (1992) *Plates 21, 22*; Hurricane Caroline (1975) *Plate 28*; Hurricane Gilbert (1988) 269–70; Hurricane Hugo (1989) *Plate F*; model *272*; USA 241
hydrogenated halocarbons (HFCs) 10
hydrological cycle 64–5
hydrology and climate change 374, 384
hydrostatic equilibrium 23–4
hygroscopic nuclei 95

ice ages 359–61
ice cover: Antarctica 255; climate change 382–3; energy budgets 324–5; Greenland 255; sea ice 253–4, 382–3
ice crystals: raindrop formation 100–1, *101*; thunderstorms 106–7
ice pellets 102
Icelandic Low 213, 368
index cycle *147*
India: drought area index *288*; meridional circulation *277*; monsoon circulation 278–80; monsoon rainfall *281*, 284–7, *284*, *286*, *288*; rainfall 310
infra-red radiation *33*, 51–3, 54–5, *54*
insolation *see* solar radiation
instability 91–4
instruments *see* balloons; radar meteorology; satellite meteorology
intertropical convergence zone (ITCZ) 5, 136, 263–5, *264, Plate 24*; mid-latitudes *194*, 195–6; South America 300–1; southern Africa 297–8, 299
Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change (IPCC) models 376–8
intertropical front (ITF) 263
ionosphere 28
IPCC *see* Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change
irradiation *242*
irrigated crops 327
isobar 90
isotach 118
isotherm 90
ITCZ *see* intertropical convergence zone
ITF *see* intertropical front

Japan: depressions *282*; East Asian monsoon 290–1, *291*; precipitation 290–1, *291*; Tokyo heat island 344, *344*
jet streams 4–5, 132–3, *132*, *134*, *294*; 90°E meridian 278–9, *278*; discovery 133; easterly tropical 284, *284*, *293*; Mediterranean *243*; mid-latitudes 197–8, *197*, *198*, *200*; North America *227*; North Pacific *Plate 15*; velocity *Plate D*

kata-fronts 186, *189*
katabatic winds 120–1
kelvin, degrees 406
kinetic energy 57, 139, *141*, *322*
kohler curves 95, *96*
Köppen, W.P.: climate classification 3, 391Ap, 392Ap, *393Ap*, *394Ap*
Kuroshio current 152

La Niña 304; *see also* El Niño
land and sea breezes 121–2, *121*, *122*, *310*, 311–12
land surfaces: solar radiation effect 41–8; temperatures *200*; *see also* continentality
lapse rates 50–1; adiabatic 89–90, 93, 123; environmental 90
late glacial conditions *358*, 361–2
latent heat 106; hurricane formation 273; transfer 38, 59, *60*; vaporization 69
latitude: atmospheric composition 15–16; diurnal and annual temperature 55–6; solar radiation effect *37*, *39*, 40–1; *see also* high latitudes; low latitudes; middle latitudes
layered structure: atmosphere 25–8, *25*; oceans 149–51
lee cyclones 199

lee waves 122, *123, Plates 7, 13*
light: daylight length 37; forests *328*
lightning 107–9, *Plate 12*; global distribution *Plate C*
'Little Ice Age' 362, 370
local winds 120–5; Mediterranean 245–6, *246*
London: heat island 343, *343*; sunshine *336*
long waves 130–1, *131*
long-range forecasts 172–5, *173*, 313
long-wave radiation *see* infra-red radiation
low latitudes: climate classification 396Ap; *see also* tropics
low-pressure cells: equatorial trough 134, 263–4, *263*; polar *Plate 19*; subpolar 134, 135–6
low-pressure systems: tropics 267, 268, *269*; *see also* cyclones; depressions
lysimeter 71

magnetosphere 28
maps (synoptic) 401–3Ap
maritime frontal cyclones 186
mass of atmosphere 22–4
mass mixing ratio 66
MCAs *see* mesoscale convective areas
MCC *see* mesoscale convective complex
MCSs *see* mesoscale convective systems
Mediterranean air 183
Mediterranean climate 241–6; anticyclones 244–5; depressions 242–4, *244*; winter 242–3
Mediterranean front 193
meridional cells 142–3
meridional circulation: India *277*
mesopause *25*, 27
mesoscale convective areas (MCAs) 265, *266*
mesoscale convective complex (MCC) 203–4
mesoscale convective systems (MCSs) 201–9, 274–5
mesosphere *25*, 27–8
Meteosat 168, 169, *Plate 1*
methane (CH_4) 10, 18, *19*, 372
microclimate: forests 327–33; short growing crops 326–7; *see also* urban climates
micrometeorology *see* boundary layer climates
middle latitudes: Australia 247–9; climate classification 396Ap; depressions 184–6; Europe 213–25, 241–6; frontal zone *132*; historical discoveries 4–5; North Africa 246–7; North America 225–41; synoptic systems 177–212; westerlies *137*, 139, 140–2, *140*; zonal index 146–7, *147*, *148*
Mie scattering 38
millibar 22
Mississippi valley rainfall 236, *237*
mistral 245
mixing condensation level 94–5
model output statistics (MOS) 171–2
models: atmosphere–ocean general circulation 163, *164*; climate change prediction 374–6; comparison 164–5, *165*; drift 164; general circulation 162–76; global forecast system 171; IPCC, climate change 376–8; regional 168; simulations 166–8
MODIS imagery *Plate H*
moisture, content 667; transport 67–8
moisture budgets *see* atmospheric moisture budgets
monsoon depression 274, *285*
monsoons 5; African 292–7; Asian 276–89; Australian summer 291–2; East Asian 289–91; ENSO events 306, *307*
'Morning Glory' (Australia) 312
MOS *see* model output statistics
mountain and valley winds 120–1, *120*
mountains: airflows 199; Europe 222–5; North America 225, 230–1; precipitation 103–6, 123, 180–4; upper-air circulation 131; winds associated with 122–5; *see also* orographic rainfall

NAO *see* North Atlantic Oscillation
National Centers for Environmental Prediction (NCEP): forecasting 170–1, 173–4
natural seasons, Europe 220–1; Japan *291*
New Zealand: precipitation *104*; pressure systems 249, *256*; rainfall *251*
nitrogen reactive gas species 10–11
nitrous oxide (N_2O) 10, 18–19; pollution 338, *338*
NOAA satellites 168, 169, 170
noctilucent clouds *25*, 27, 377
nocturnal rainfall peak 311–12
non-frontal depressions 199–201
non-squall systems 274, *275*
non-vegetated surfaces: energy budgets 322, 323–5
North Africa 246–7
North America 225–38; actual weather (Dec 1985) *174*; central, convection cells 203–4, *204*; continentality and oceanicity 231–3; depressions 226, 227, *228, Plate 18*; ENSO teleconnections 308; evaporation *239*; frontogenesis *188*; interior and eastern 231–8; mountain barriers 225, 226, 230–1; one month weather forecast (Dec 1985) *173*; precipitation and moisture balance 234–8, *235*; pressure systems 226–9; temperate west coast and Cordillera 229–31; temperature variability *232*; urban energy balances 340–1, *342*; warm and cold spells 233–4; *see also* Canada; United States
North Atlantic Current 215
North Atlantic Oscillation (NAO) 147–8, 308, *Plate E*
northern hemisphere circulation 146–8
Norwegian school of meteorologists 183–4, *185*
nor'westers 280
notes 406–8Ap
'nowcasting' 172
numerical forecasting 170–5
numerical models 162–76

occlusions 185–6, *185*, 191, *192*
ocean circulation 149–59; atmosphere interaction *150*; carbon dioxide absorption 158; conveyor belt 151, 156–8, *156*; Coriolis force 150, 153; currents 151–4, *153*, 309, *Plate 16*; deep water interactions 155–8; eddies and rings 154, *154*; ENSO events 304–6; gyres 151; horizontal 151–4; thermocline and above 149–53; surface *154*; vertical 149–51

ocean currents: cold 309, *Plate 16*; equatorial 151–2; high velocity 152–3
ocean fronts 153
ocean-surface temperature 199, *200*; *see also* sea-surface temperatures
oceanicity: Europe 215; North America 231–3
oceans: confluence zones 265; precipitation *82*; thermal role 47
orbital forcings *357*
orographic rainfall 80–4, 103–6; British Columbia 230–1; Europe 222, 224, *225*; tropical regions 309–10
ozone (O_3) 10, 14–16, 20, *21*; air pollution 338; depletion 372–3; stratosphere 51–3; tropospheric 51, *338*

Pacific Ocean: convergence zone 265, *265, Plate 24*; ENSO events 302–6; ITCZ 264–5; jet streams *Plate 15*
Pacific polar front 193, *195*
Pacific–North America (PNA) pattern 226, *308*
palaeoclimate records 6, 360–1
Palmer Drought Severity Index (PDSI) 73
particles 12–13; pollution 336–7; scattering 373
path curve 90, *92*
PBL *see* planetary boundary layer
PDSI *see* Palmer Drought Severity Index
PE *see* potential evapotranspiration
Penman, H.L.: evaporation calculation 72
perihelion shifts *36*
permafrost 252–3, 254–5
perturbations (African monsoon) 295–7
photochemical smog 338
pioneers: climate change research 354; climatological discoveries 1–6
planetary albedo 54, 55
planetary boundary layer (PBL) 116
PNA pattern *see* Pacific–North America pattern
polar air depressions 201
polar cell 142, *142*
polar easterly winds *137*, 139
polar fronts 193–5, *195*; cyclones theory 184; jet stream 132–3, *134*, *143*; North America 227
polar low pressure 134, 135–6, *Plate 19*
polar night 16, 27
polar regions 253–6, *325*; *see also* Antarctica; Arctic regions
polar stratospheric clouds *25*, 27
pollution *see* air pollution
potential energy 139, *141*
potential evapotranspiration (PE) 71, 392–3Ap
precipitation 74–86; altitudinal maximum 80–4; Amazon basin *300*, 301–2, *302*; anomaly *223*; distribution factors 80; drought 84–6; Europe and North Africa *247*; forests 331–2; formation 99–102; former USSR *254*; forms 74–5; frontal depressions 188, *189*, *190*; global pattern 79–80, *81*, *82*; intensity and frequency 75–9; last 1000 years 365–6, *366*, *367*; measurement 75; North American seasonal regimes 234–8, *235–6*; origin and types 103–6; orographic enhancement 224, *225*; radar tracking 76; semi-arid southwest USA 240–1; solid 102; urban areas 345–6, *346*; western Canada *230*; *see also* hail; rainfall; sleet; snow
precipitation efficiency 392Ap
pressure: atmospheric 22–4; mean world *194*; predicting 170; sea-level distribution *135*; SLP *299*; surface conditions 133–6, *135*; vapour 24; variation with height 127–9
pressure systems: Australasia 247–9; Europe 213–15; North America 226–9; vertical variation 128–9; *see also* high-pressure cells; low-pressure cells
pressure-gradient force 113
primary gases 9
psychrometer 67
pycnocline 149

Quasi-Biennial Oscillation (QBO) 273

radar meteorology 76; forecasting 172; Hurricane Hugo (1989) *Plate F*
radiation 37–8; annual net distribution *60*; balance *53*, *57*; black body 32–3, 54–5; climate classification 393–4Ap, *395*Ap; diurnal variations *56*; mean net planetary budget *58*; net balance *59*; planetary *33*, *54*, 55; scattering 37–8, 39; *see also* energy budgets; solar radiation
radiational index of dryness 394Ap
radiative forcing 370, 372–3, *372*, *378*
rain gauges 75
rain shadow 124
raindrop formation 99–102
rainfall 74, 75; annual tropical distribution *277*; Asian monsoon *284*, 290–1; Britain *219*; duration *77*, *78*, *79*; extent and frequency 76–9, *78*; Indian monsoon *281*, 284–7, *284*, *286*, *288*; intensity 75–6, *77*; interception 331–2; mountains 83–4; nocturnal peak 311–12; orographic 80–4, 103–6, 222, 224; Sierra Leone *267*; wave disturbances 268; West Africa 296–7, *296*; world record 75, *77*, 310
rainmaking 101
Rayleigh scattering 38
reactive gas species 10–12
reflection: solar radiation 44
regional models 168
relative humidity 66
research: climate change 354, 385
return period: rainstorms 76
Richardson Number 205
rime 75
rock surfaces: energy flows 323–4
Rossby waves: oceans 154; upper air 4–5, 130–1, *131*, 133, 196, *197*
rotation 119
rotors 122, *123*
roughness length 116–117
rural climates: urban comparison *347*

Sahara: depressions *248*; high pressure 246–7
Sahel 85, *367*
SALR *see* saturated adiabatic lapse rate

sand surfaces: energy flows 323–4
satellite meteorology 168–70, 404Ap, 404Ap, *Plates 1–5, 14, 18*; cloud cover *Plate H*; cloud patterns 97; false colour image *Plate B*; upper air measurements 128
saturated adiabatic lapse rate (SALR) 90, 93, 123
saturation mixing ratio 90
saturation vapour pressure 24
scale of climate variation 353–4, *355*, 371
scale of meteorological systems 202
Scandinavia: anticyclonic blocking *223*; orographic rainfall 222
scattering: radiation 37–8, 39
scenarios: IPCC 376
scirocco 244, 245
sea: solar radiation effect 41–8; *see also* oceanicity; oceans
sea breezes 121–2, *121*, *122*, *310*, 311–12
sea ice *150*, 251, *Plate A*; Arctic 253–4; retreat 382–3
sea-level changes 378–81; causes 381; mechanisms 379
sea-level pressure distribution *135*
sea-level temperatures *43*
sea-surface temperatures (SSTs) 199, *200*, *Plate B*; anomalies 297; cyclone formation 270, 273; ITCZ location 263
seasons: atmospheric composition variations 15–16; Europe 220–1; North America 228–9; solar radiation 40
secondary airmasses 182–3
secondary depressions 192
'seeder–feeder' cloud mechanism *104*, 106
seeding: clouds 101
sensible heat transfer 38, *61*
sheet lightning 108
shelter belts *330*
short- and medium-range forecasts 170–2, 312–13
short-term forcing 358–9
short-wave radiation *see* solar radiation
showers 103, 201
SI units 399–400Ap
Siberian high pressure 129, 213
simulations 166–8
singularities: Europe 220–1; North America 228–9
sky view 341
sleet 75, 102
smog 336, 337–8
smoke pollution *335*, 336–7
snow 74, 102, 224–5
snow cover *44*, *255*, *Plate A*; albedo 44, 324–5; annual average duration *44*; climate change 383–4; energy budget 324–5, *326*; polar regions 253, 254
snow crystals *Plate 10*
snowfall 230, 233
snowline 225, 231
SOI *see* Southern Oscillation Index
soil conductivity 45–6, *47*
soil moisture *72*, *238*
solar constant 33–4, 53
solar irradiance 34, 356, 370
solar radiation 32–51, *54*; albedo *39*, 44, *45*, 54, 55; atmosphere effect 38–9; cloud cover effect 39–40, *41*, 53; distance from sun 34–6; elevation and aspect 48, *50*; energy spectrum *46*; energy transfer 37–8; heat budget 53–6; historical discoveries 2–3; land and sea effect 41–8; latitude effect *37*, *39*, 40–1; length of day 37; mean annual global *42*; solar output 32–4; spectral distribution *33*; sun's altitude 36–7; surface incidence *50*; vertical temperature gradient 48–51
solid precipitation 102
source areas of airmasses 177–81, *181*
South America: cool ocean currents 309; ENSO teleconnections 308
South Atlantic: cyclones 250–2, 255, *256*
South Pacific convergence zone (SPCZ) *264*, 265, *Plate 24*
southern Africa 297–9
Southern Oscillation (SO) 5, *145*, 146, 302–4, *303*
Southern Oscillation Index (SOI) 146
southern westerlies 249–52, 255
SPCZ *see* South Pacific convergence zone
specific heats 2, 46
specific humidity 66
spring: Asian monsoon 279–80; North America 228–9
sprites 109
squall lines 186, 201–3, 280; African monsoon 296; systems 274, *275*
SSTs *see* sea-surface temperatures
stability *see* air stability
station model 402Ap
Stefan's Law 33, 51
storms: historical discoveries 4; *see also* cyclones
Strahler, A.N.: climate classification *393*, 396
stratocumulus clouds 97, *98*; fronts 187, 190
stratopause *25*, *26*, 27
stratosphere *25*, 27; ozone 14–15, 20, *21*
stratus clouds 97, 98, 187
sub-Arctic 252–3
sublimation 38, 71
subpolar low pressure 134, 135–6
subtropical cyclones 274
subtropical high-pressure cells 297, 300, *Plate 23*; anticyclones 133–4, *136*, 144–5, *144*; oceanic gyres 151
subtropical jet stream 133, *134*, *141*, *143*
subtropical margins 238–49; Australasia 247–9; Mediterranean 241–6; North Africa 246–7; USA southeast and southwest 238–41
sulphur dioxide (SO_2) pollution 11, 337–8, *337*
sulphur reactive gas species 11
summer: airmasses *179*; Asian monsoon 280–8, *283*
sun: altitude of 36–7; distance from 34–6; *see also* solar radiation
sunshine 336–7, *336*
sunspots 34, *35*
super-cell thunderstorms 204–5, 206, *206*
supersaturation 95, 96
surface energy budgets 322–3; non-vegetated natural 323–5; urban areas 339–44; vegetated 325–33

surface pressure conditions 133–6, *135*
surface wind *194*
symbols (synoptic) 402Ap
synoptic anomalies: Europe 221–2
synoptic climatology 216
synoptic code 403Ap
synoptic reports *167*, 168
synoptic systems (mid-latitudes) 177–212
synoptic weather maps 401–3Ap
Système International (SI) Units 399Ap

tectonic processes 356
teleconnections of ENSO events 306–9
television and infra-red observing satellites (TIROS) 168, 169, *Plates 2*, *3*
temperature anomalies: blocking anticyclones *223*; Medicine Hat 233, *234*; sea-surface 158, 297; world *49*
temperature inversions 2; airmasses 179; Amazonia 299–300; polar areas 51; tornadoes 205–6; troposphere *25*, 26; *see also* Trade Wind Inversion
temperatures: adiabatic changes 89–91; airmasses *179*, *180*; Antarctica *256*; classification criteria 391Ap; diurnal and annual variations 55–6, *56*; forests 332–3, *334*; greenhouse gases effect *52*; land surface *200*; last 1000 years 362–5, *363*, *364*, *365*, *375*; mean annual range *56*; mean annual regimes *48*; mean daily maximum *42*; mean ocean-surface *157*; mean sea-level *43*; mountain variations 231; North American variability *232*; oceans 47–8, 199, *200*; predicted increases *380*; Sahara *324*; sea-level *43*; seasonal differences *380*; short growing crops 326; simulations of change *379*; soils 45–6, *47*; thermal maximum 361; tropics 40–1; urban areas 341–4; vertical gradient 48–51; water depth variation *46*
temporals 274
tephigram 90–1, *90*, *92*, *93*
terrain roughness 116–17, *116*
terrestrial radiation *see* infra-red radiation
thermal cells 142–3
thermal efficiency 392Ap, 393Ap
thermal equator 41, 264
thermal lows 199–201
thermal wind 131–2, *132*
thermocline 149–51, 152
thermohaline oceanic circulation *150*, 155, *156*
thermometers: Galileo 1; wet-bulb 66–7
thermosphere *25*, 28
thickness of the 1000–500 mb layer 131, *132*
Thornthwaite, C.W.: climate classification 392–3Ap, *394Ap*; evaporation calculation 72–3, *72*
thunderstorms 203, 204, *Plates 11, 24*; electrification 106–9; Florida 241; lifecycle *105*, 106; nocturnal 237; occurrence 109; severe, US *205*; squall line 201; super-cell 204–5, 206, *206*; western Europe *219*, 220
Tibetan Plateau monsoon 280–1, 287–8
time: atmospheric composition variations 16–22
TIROS *see* television and infra-red observing satellites
topographic effects: Europe 222–5; North America 230–1; tropical regions 309–11; *see also* mountains; orographic rainfall
tornadoes 205–9, 272, *Plate 20*; characteristics, US *207*; mechanism 206–8; multiple suction vortices *208*; synoptic conditions *208*
Trade Wind Inversion 2, 267, *268*
trade winds 136, *137*, *138*, 267–8
transpiration 70–1, 330–1
tropical climates 262
tropical cloud clusters 265–6, 274–5, *275*
tropical cyclones 241, 269–74; eye 271–2, *271*; formation 270–1; frequencies and occurrence *270*; warm core 271; *see also* hurricanes; typhoons
tropical easterly airflows 136, 298
tropical rainfall: distribution 277; mountains 82–3
tropical regions 5, 262–3; cool ocean currents 309; diurnal variations 311–12; solar radiation 40–1; topographic effects 309–11; urban climates 346–8; weather forecasting 312–13
tropical storms *see* tropical cyclones
tropical weather 5, 262–3
tropopause *25*, 26, 27; meridional structure *134*
troposphere 25–6; convergence and divergence *118*; jet streams 132–3, *134*
trowal 191
tundra 254–5, *255*, 325
turbulence 117, 202, 321, 345
typhoons 269–73, *292, Plates 23, 27*

United Kingdom Meteorological Office 313
United States: drought *84*; interior southeast 241; PDSI 73; semi-arid southwest 238–41; *see also* North America
upper air patterns 129–31, *Plates 15, 18*; Asian monsoon 280–1; contour charts 129–30, *130*; measurements 128; mountain barriers 131; surface relationship 196–9
upper wind conditions 131–3
upwelling: cold (La Niña) 304; oceans *150*, 155, *155*; warm (El Niño) 303, 305–6, *305*
urban climates 333–48; 20th century advances 335; aerosols 334–8; airflows 344–5, *345*; heat budgets 339–44, *340*; heat islands 341–4, 347–8, *348*; moisture budget 345–6, *346*; rural comparison *347*; sunshine 336–7, *336*; tropical regions 346–8

valley winds 120–1, *120*
vapour pressure 24
vegetated surfaces 325–33; forests 327–33; short green crops 325–7, *326*, *327*
vegetation and climate change 384–5
vehicle pollution 336, 337
vertical motion 118; instability 204; oceanic circulation 149–51; transfer of heat *60*
vertical temperature gradient 48–51
volcanic dust 21, 334; atmospheric material *23*; climate change 370, 371; forcing 357; ice core evidence *21*

vortices: hurricanes 271–2, *273*; oceanic *Plate 16*; tornadoes 206, *208*; tropical storms 271, 274
vorticity 118–19; conservation of 130–1, 266; equation 197

wake low 203
Walker circulations 143, 145–6, *145*, 302–4, *304*
warm airmasses 180–1, 182–3
warm anticyclones 129, *129*
warm core (hurricane) 271
warm fronts 185, 187–9, *Plate 17*
water budgets 64–5; *see also* atmospheric moisture budgets
water droplets 95–6; *see also* raindrop formation
water storage *65*
water surface energy budget 324
water vapour (H_2O) 10, 13–14, 16; flux 68; greenhouse effect 52; storage *65*
waterspouts 206
wave disturbances 266–9
waves: African monsoon 295; lee 122, *123, Plates 6, 10*; long 130–1, *131*; *see also* frontal waves; Rossby waves
WCRP *see* World Climate Research Programme
weather maps: daily 404Ap; synoptic 401–3Ap
weather prediction *see* forecasting
weather systems: historical discoveries 4–5; scale and life spans 202, 322
weather types: Britain 216–17, *218*, 220
websites 405Ap
West Africa: monsoon 292–4; rainfall 296–7, *296*, *310*; wind speeds *295*
west coast mountains precipitation 103–5, 222, 223–5, 230–1
westerly winds *26*; average components *140*; equatorial 136–9, *137*, *138*; mid-latitudes *137*, 139, 140–2, *140*; southern 249–52, 255; southern Africa 298; zonal index 146–7, *147*, *148*
Western Ghats: monsoon rainfall 286–7, *288*
wet-bulb thermometer 66–7
white box modelling 375–6
Wien's Law 34
wind belts: climate classification 395Ap; global 136–9
wind reversals *see* monsoons
wind shear 131, 270; lateral 119
wind speeds: 90°E meridian *278*; forests *329*, *330*; increases 368; jet streams *Plate D*; mean zonal speeds *141*; tropical cyclones 269, 271; urban areas 344–5; variation with height 129–33; West Africa *295*; western Europe 214–15, *214*
windbreaks 329
windchill 396–7Ap
winds: equatorial westerlies 136–9, *137*, *138*; Europe 213–15; frictional forces 116–17; geostrophic 132; global belts 136–9, *137*; land and sea breezes 121–2, *121*, *122*; Mediterranean *243*, 245; mid-latitude westerlies *137*, 139, 140–2, *140*; mountain and valley 120–1, *120*; polar easterlies *137*, 139; southern westerlies 249–52; topographic origin 122–5; trades 136, *137*, *138*; upper wind conditions 131–3; world surface distribution *194*; *see also* atmospheric motion
windward slopes precipitation *83*, *104*, 123, *124*
winter: airmasses *178*; Asian monsoon 277–9; Mediterranean 242–3
World Climate Research Programme (WCRP) 6

Younger Dryas *358*, 361

Zaire air boundary (ZAB) 298
zonal air circulation 145–6
zonal index variations 146–7, *147*, *148*, *149*, *Plate 15*